An Oshkosh Corporation Company

Service and Maintenance Manual

Model
740AJ

SN 0300185828 to Present

3121651

January 07, 2019 - Rev D

ANSI

CE

AS/NZS

SECTION A. INTRODUCTION - MAINTENANCE SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

A GENERAL

This section contains the general safety precautions which must be observed during maintenance of the aerial platform. It is of utmost importance that maintenance personnel pay strict attention to these warnings and precautions to avoid possible injury to themselves or others, or damage to the equipment. A maintenance program must be followed to ensure that the machine is safe to operate.

⚠ WARNING

MODIFICATION OR ALTERATION OF AN AERIAL WORK PLATFORM SHALL BE MADE ONLY WITH WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM THE MANUFACTURER.

The specific precautions to be observed during maintenance are inserted at the appropriate point in the manual. These precautions are, for the most part, those that apply when servicing hydraulic and larger machine component parts.

Your safety, and that of others, is the first consideration when engaging in the maintenance of equipment. Always be conscious of weight. Never attempt to move heavy parts without the aid of a mechanical device. Do not allow heavy objects to rest in an unstable position. When raising a portion of the equipment, ensure that adequate support is provided.

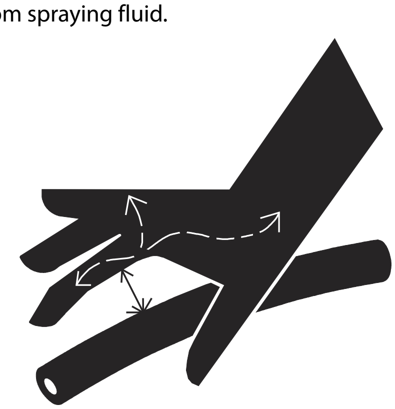
⚠ WARNING

SINCE THE MACHINE MANUFACTURER HAS NO DIRECT CONTROL OVER THE FIELD INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE, SAFETY IN THIS AREA RESPONSIBILITY OF THE OWNER/OPERATOR.

B HYDRAULIC SYSTEM SAFETY

It should be noted that the machines hydraulic systems operate at extremely high potentially dangerous pressures. Every effort should be made to relieve any system pressure prior to disconnecting or removing any portion of the system.

Do not use your hand to check for leaks. Use a piece of cardboard or paper to search for leaks. Wear gloves to help protect hands from spraying fluid.



C MAINTENANCE

⚠ WARNING

FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH SAFETY PRECAUTIONS LISTED IN THIS SECTION COULD RESULT IN MACHINE DAMAGE, PERSONNEL INJURY OR DEATH AND IS A SAFETY VIOLATION.

- ENSURE REPLACEMENT PARTS OR COMPONENTS ARE IDENTICAL OR EQUIVALENT TO ORIGINAL PARTS OR COMPONENTS.
- NO SMOKING IS MANDATORY. NEVER REFUEL DURING ELECTRICAL STORMS. ENSURE THAT FUEL CAP IS CLOSED AND SECURE AT ALL OTHER TIMES.
- REMOVE ALL RINGS, WATCHES AND JEWELRY WHEN PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE.
- DO NOT WEAR LONG HAIR UNRESTRAINED, OR LOOSE-FITTING CLOTHING AND NECKTIES WHICH ARE APT TO BECOME CAUGHT ON OR ENTANGLED IN EQUIPMENT.
- OBSERVE AND OBEY ALL WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS ON MACHINE AND IN SERVICE MANUAL.
- KEEP OIL, GREASE, WATER, ETC. WIPED FROM STANDING SURFACES AND HAND HOLDS.
- USE CAUTION WHEN CHECKING A HOT, PRESSURIZED COOLANT SYSTEM.
- NEVER WORK UNDER AN ELEVATED BOOM UNTIL BOOM HAS BEEN SAFELY RESTRAINED FROM ANY MOVEMENT BY BLOCKING OR OVERHEAD SLING, OR BOOM SAFETY PROP HAS BEEN ENGAGED.
- BEFORE MAKING ADJUSTMENTS, LUBRICATING OR PERFORMING ANY OTHER MAINTENANCE, SHUT OFF ALL POWER CONTROLS.
- BATTERY SHOULD ALWAYS BE DISCONNECTED DURING REPLACEMENT OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS.
- KEEP ALL SUPPORT EQUIPMENT AND ATTACHMENTS STOWED IN THEIR PROPER PLACE.
- USE ONLY APPROVED, NONFLAMMABLE CLEANING SOLVENTS.

REVISON LOG

Original Issue	A - September 1, 2017
Revised	B - October 6, 2017
Revised	C - June 29, 2018 - Revised Covers
Revised	D - January 07, 2019 - Revised pages 4-69, 4-71 through 4-74

SECTION NO. TITLE PAGE NO.

SECTION A - INTRODUCTION - MAINTENANCE SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

A General A-1
B Hydraulic System Safety A-1
C Maintenance A-1

SECTION 1 - SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 Operating specifications 1-1
1.2 Dimensional Data 1-1
1.3 Capacities 1-1
1.4 Engine Data 1-1
1.5 Tires 1-2
1.6 Component Data 1-2
Drive System 1-2
Swing System 1-2
Auxiliary Power Pump 1-2
1.7 Torque Requirements 1-3
1.8 Hydraulic Oil 1-3
1.9 Major Component Weights 1-5
Critical Stability Weights 1-5
1.10 Operator Maintenance 1-7
Propane Fuel Filter Replacement 1-11
Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief 1-11

SECTION 2 - GENERAL

2.1 Machine Preparation, Inspection, and Maintenance 2-1
General 2-1
Preparation, Inspection, and Maintenance 2-1
Pre-Start Inspection 2-1
Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection 2-1
Annual Machine Inspection 2-1
Preventative Maintenance 2-1
2.2 Service and Guidelines 2-2
General 2-2
Safety and Workmanship 2-2
Cleanliness 2-2
Components Removal and Installation 2-2
Component Disassembly and Reassembly 2-2
Pressure-Fit Parts 2-3
Bearings 2-3
Gaskets 2-3
Bolt Usage and Torque Application 2-3
Hydraulic Lines and Electrical Wiring 2-3
Hydraulic System 2-3
Lubrication 2-3
Battery 2-3
Lubrication and Servicing 2-3
2.3 Lubrication and Information 2-3
Hydraulic System 2-3
Hydraulic Oil 2-4
Changing Hydraulic Oil 2-4
Lubrication Specifications 2-4
2.4 Cylinder Drift Test 2-5
Theory 2-5
Cylinder Leakage Test 2-5
Cylinder Thermal Drift 2-5
2.5 Pins and Composite Bearing Repair Guidelines 2-6

SECTION NO. TITLE PAGE NO.

2.6 Welding on JLG Equipment . . . 2-6
Do the Following When Welding on JLG Equipment . . . 2-6
Do NOT Do the Following When Welding on JLG Equipment . . . 2-6

SECTION 3 - CHASSIS & TURNTABLE

3.1 Tires & Wheels . . . 3-1
Tire Inflation . . . 3-1
Tire Damage . . . 3-1
Tire Replacement . . . 3-1
Wheel Replacement . . . 3-1
Wheel Installation . . . 3-1
3.2 Tow Bar (If Equipped) . . . 3-2
3.3 Oscillating Axle Lockout Test
(If Equipped)3-5
3.4 Wheel Drive Assembly . . . 3-8
Removal . . . 3-8
Installation . . . 3-8
3.5 Drive Hub . . . 3-9
Disassembly . . . 3-9
Cleaning and Inspection . . . 3-9
Repair . . . 3-9
Assembly . . . 3-11
3.6 Drive Brake . . . 3-17
Disassembly . . . 3-17
Inspection . . . 3-17
Assembly . . . 3-17
3.7 Drive Motor . . . 3-19
Description . . . 3-19
Disassembly . . . 3-19
Inspection . . . 3-23
Assembly . . . 3-25
Initial Start-up Procedures . . . 3-30
Troubleshooting . . . 3-31
Shaft Seal Replacement . . . 3-32
Loop Flushing Valve . . . 3-33
3.8 Swing Hub . . . 3-35
Roll, Leak And Brake Testing . . . 3-35
Tightening and Torquing Bolts . . . 3-35
Motor Control Valve Disassembly . . . 3-36
Motor and Brake Disassembly . . . 3-37
Main Drive Disassembly . . . 3-38
Hub-Shaft Disassembly . . . 3-39
Carrier Disassembly . . . 3-40
Hub-Shaft Assembly . . . 3-41
Carrier Assembly . . . 3-41
Main Drive Assembly . . . 3-42
Motor and Brake Assembly . . . 3-43
Motor Control Valve Assembly . . . 3-43
3.9 Swing Motor . . . 3-46
Disassembly and Inspection . . . 3-46
Assembly . . . 3-53
One Piece Stator Construction . . . 3-61
3.10 Swing Hub Removal . . . 3-62
3.11 Swing Hub Installation . . . 3-62
Procedure for Setting Swing Gear Backlash . . . 3-62
Swing Drive Lubrication . . . 3-63

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
3.12	Swing Bearing	3-64
	Turntable Bearing Mounting Bolt Condition Check	3-64
	Wear Tolerance	3-67
	Swing Bearing Replacement	3-67
	Swing Bearing Torque Values	3-68
3.13	Tilt Indicator System	3-70
3.14	Spark Arrester Cleaning Instructions	3-70
3.15	Rotary Coupling	3-71
3.16	Generator	3-76
	Maintenance Schedule	3-76
	Overload Protection	3-76
	Inspecting Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings	3-76
	Troubleshooting	3-78
	Generator Disassembly and Assembly	3-79
	Lead Connection List for Generator	3-86
3.17	Auxiliary Power System	3-87
3.18	Deutz Engine	3-88
3.19	Deutz Engine - TD2011L04	3-95
	Glow Plugs	3-95
	Check Oil Level	3-95
	Replacing Engine Oil	3-96
	Replacing the Oil Filter	3-97
	Replacing the Primary Fuel Filter	3-97
3.20	Deutz Engine - TD2.9L4	3-98
	Glow Plugs	3-98
	Check Oil Level	3-98
	Replacing Engine Oil	3-98
	Replacing the Oil Filter	3-99
	Replacing the Primary Fuel Filters	3-99
3.21	Dual Fuel System	3-100
	Changing from Gasoline to LP Gas	3-100
	Changing from LP Gas to Gasoline	3-100
3.22	Deutz EMR 2	3-101
3.23	GM Engine General Maintenance	3-113
	Maintenance of the Drive Belt	3-113
	Engine Electrical System Maintenance	3-113
	Checking/Filling Engine Oil Level	3-113
	Changing the Engine Oil	3-114
	Coolant Fill Procedure - Dual Fuel Engine	3-114
3.24	GM Engine Dual Fuel System	3-115
	Fuel Filter	3-115
	Electric Lock Off	3-116
	EPR Assembly	3-116
	Low Pressure Regulator (LPR)	3-116
	Air Fuel Mixer	3-117
	Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)	3-117
	Engine Control Module	3-118
	Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor	3-118
	Gasoline Multi Point Fuel Injection System (MPFI)	3-118
	Gasoline Fuel Pump	3-119
	Gasoline Pressure And Temperature Sensor Manifold	3-119
	Fuel Filter	3-119
	Fuel Injector Rail	3-119
	Fuel Injector	3-119

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
3.25	GM Engine Fuel System Repair	3-120
	Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief	3-120
	Propane Fuel System Leak Test	3-120
	Propane Fuel Filter Replacement	3-121
	Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR) Assembly Replacement	3-122
	Electronic Throttle Control Replacement	3-123
	Mixer Replacement	3-125
	Coolant Hose Replacement	3-125
	Vapor Hose Replacement	3-125
	Engine Control Module Replacement	3-126
	Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor Replacement	3-126
3.26	GM Engine LPG Fuel System Diagnosis	3-127
	Fuel System Description	3-127
	Diagnostic Aids	3-127
3.27	Air Compressor	3-210
	Description	3-210
	Oil Injection	3-210
	Inlet Valve and Control Valving	3-210
	Air Filter Unit	3-210
	Oil Reservoir and Primary Oil Separation	3-210
	Secondary Spin-On Oil Coalescer/Separator	3-210
	Spin-On Oil Filter	3-210
	Minimum Pressure Valve/Check Valve Assembly	3-212
	Hydraulic Drive System	3-212
	Compressor Cooling System	3-212
	Initial Startup	3-212
	Normal Startup Procedure	3-213
	Normal Shutdown Procedure	3-213
	Daily Operation	3-213
	General Maintenance	3-213
	Lubrication Guide	3-214
	Oil Filter Replacement	3-214
	Coalescer (Air/Oil Separator) Replacement	3-215
	Air Filter Replacement	3-215
	Belts - Tightening and Replacement	3-215
	Cooler Core Cleaning (Exterior)	3-216
	Adding/Changing Compressor Oil	3-216
	Pressure Adjustments	3-216
	Intake Control	3-217
	Minimum Pressure Valve	3-217
	Compressor Thermal Valve	3-217
	Safety Shutdown Systems	3-217
	Troubleshooting	3-217
3.28	Counterweight	3-220

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION 4 - BOOM & PLATFORM

4.1 Platform 4-1
Platform Valve Removal 4-1
Platform Valve Installation 4-1
Support Removal 4-2
Support Installation 4-3
4.2 Rotator and Slave Cylinder 4-5
Removal 4-5
Installation 4-5
4.3 Boom System 4-6
Switch Systems 4-6
Above Elevation (Above Horizontal) Cutout System 4-6
Transport Position Interlock System (CE only) 4-6
Platform Control Enable System 4-6
Function Speed Control System 4-6
Platform 4-6
Main Lift End Stroke Dampening System 4-7
QuikStick Lift System 4-7
Tower Boom Sequence Valve System 4-7
Upright Level Override System 4-7
Ground Control Keyswitch System 4-7
4.4 Main Boom Powertrack 4-9
Removal 4-9
Installation 4-9
4.5 Powertrack Maintenance 4-14
Flat Bar Removal 4-14
Round Bar/Poly Bar Removal 4-14
Removing and Installing Links 4-15
Installing a New Flat Bar 4-18
Installing a New Round Bar/Poly Roller 4-19
Replacing a Fixed End Bracket 4-19
Replacing a Moving End Bracket 4-20
Replacing a One Piece Bracket 4-20
4.6 Boom Cleanliness Guidelines 4-21
4.7 Main Boom Assembly 4-22
Removal 4-22
Disassembly 4-23
Inspection 4-23
Assembly 4-23
Installation 4-24
4.8 Upright 4-25
Removal 4-25
Installation 4-26
4.9 Tower Boom Assembly 4-27
Removal 4-27
Inspection 4-27
Installation 4-28
Tower Out of Sync 4-28
4.10 Articulating Jib 4-31
Removal 4-31
Disassembly 4-31
Inspection 4-31
Assembly 4-32
Installation 4-32

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
4.11	Upright Monitoring System	4-32
	Re-Synchronizing Upright	4-32
	Calibration	4-34
	Calibration Faults	4-38
	Function Check	4-39
	Service Mode/Tower Boom Retrieval	4-40
4.12	UMS Troubleshooting and Fault Messages	4-46
	Backward Stability Concern Message	4-46
	Forward Stability Concern Message	4-46
	Auto Detection Input Low Message	4-46
	UMS Sensor Communications Lost	4-46
	Out of Usable Range Message	4-46
	UMS Sensor Not Calibrated Message	4-47
	UMS Sensor Faulted Message	4-47
	Incompatible Software Detected Message	4-47
	Calibration Faults	4-47
4.13	Sequence for Hose Replacement in the Tower Boom	4-47
4.14	Limit Switches Adjustment	4-48
	Main Boom Horizontal Limit Switch	4-48
	Tower Boom Horizontal Limit Switch	4-48
4.15	Boom Valve Adjustment	4-48
	Main Boom	4-48
4.16	Rotator Assembly	4-51
	Theory of Operation	4-51
	Required Tools	4-52
	Making a Seal Tool	4-52
	Before Disassembly	4-52
	Disassembly	4-55
	Inspection	4-59
	Assembly	4-59
	Installing Counterbalance Valve	4-65
	Greasing Thrust Washers	4-66
	Testing the Actuator	4-66
	Installation and Bleeding	4-67
4.17	Foot Switch Adjustment	4-67
	Troubleshooting	4-68
4.18	Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System	4-69
	Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Types	4-69
	Inspection Before Use	4-69
	Inspecting Line Tenser	4-69
	Inspecting Slip Indicator	4-70
	Annual Inspection and Certification	4-70
	Installation	4-70
4.19	Skyguard	4-73
	Operation	4-73
	Function Test	4-73
	Diagnostics & Troubleshooting	4-74

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION 5 - BASIC HYDRAULICS INFORMATION & SCHEMATICS

5.1 Lubricating O-Rings in the Hydraulic System 5-1
Cup and Brush 5-1
Dip Method 5-2
Spray Method 5-2
Brush-on Method 5-2
5.2 Hydraulic cylinders 5-3
Slave Cylinder 5-3
Upright Level Cylinder 5-9
Jib Lift Cylinder 5-15
Main Boom Lift Cylinder 5-21
Tower Boom Lift Cylinder 5-27
Master Cylinder 5-33
Steer Cylinder 5-39
Main Boom Telescope Cylinder 5-44
5.3 Cylinder Removal and Installation 5-50
Main Boom Telescope Cylinder Removal 5-50
Main Boom Telescope Cylinder Installation 5-52
Main Lift Cylinder Removal 5-53
Main Lift Cylinder Installation 5-54
Upright Level Cylinder Removal 5-55
Upright Level Cylinder Installation 5-56
Tower Boom Lift Cylinder Removal 5-56
Tower Boom Lift Cylinder Installation 5-57
Slave Cylinder Removal 5-58
Slave Cylinder Installation 5-58
5.4 Hydraulic Pump W/hayes Pump Drive Coupling Lubrication 5-59
5.5 Pressure Setting Procedures 5-59
Set Up the Function Pump 5-59
Adjustments Made at the Main Valve Block 5-70
Adjustments Made at the Platform Valve Block 5-70
5.6 Hydraulic Component Start-Up Procedures and Recommendations 5-71
5.7 Hydraulic Drive Pump Pre-fill Procedure 5-73
5.8 Function Pump 5-74
Removal 5-74
Installation 5-74
Initial Start-up Procedures 5-76
Fluid and Filter Maintenance 5-76
Troubleshooting 5-77
Set Up the Function Pump 5-81
Shaft Seal Replacement 5-82
Control Assembly 5-82
Plug and Fitting Sizes and Torques 5-84
5.9 Hydrostatic Pump 5-85
Removal 5-85
Installation 5-85
Servo Controlled Piston Pump 5-86
Charge Pump Adapter Assembly 5-89
Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly 5-90
Manual Servo Control Assembly Options 5-91
Rotating Kit Assembly 5-93
Fault-logic Trouble Shooting 5-94
Start-up Procedure 5-99
5.10 Hydraulic Schematics 5-100

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION 6 - JLG CONTROL SYSTEM

6.1 JLG Control System Analyzer Kit Instructions 6-1
Introduction. 6-1
To Connect the JLG Control System Analyzer 6-2
Using the Analyzer 6-2
Changing the Access Level of the Hand Held Analyzer 6-3
Adjusting Configuration Using the Hand Held Analyzer 6-4
Machine Setup 6-4
Level Vehicle Description 6-5
6.2 Machine Personality Settings and Function Speeds 6-18
6.3 Machine Orientation When Setting Function Speeds 6-21
Test Notes. 6-21
6.4 LSS System 6-22
Diagnostic Menu 6-23
Calibration Procedure 6-24
Testing & Evaluation 6-28
Troubleshooting 6-29
6.5 Resetting The MSSO System 6-30
6.6 CANbus Communications 6-31
Analyzer Diagnostics Menu Structure 6-47

SECTION 7 - BASIC ELECTRICAL INFORMATION & SCHEMATICS

7.1 General 7-1
7.2 Multimeter Basics 7-1
Grounding 7-1
Backprobing 7-1
Min/Max 7-1
Polarity 7-1
Scale 7-1
Voltage Measurement 7-1
Resistance Measurement 7-2
Continuity Measurement 7-2
Current Measurement 7-3
7.3 Applying Silicone Dielectric Compound to Electrical Connections 7-3
Installation of Dielectric Grease 7-4
Deutsch HD, DT, DTM, DRC Series 7-4
AMP Seal 7-4
AMP Mate-N-Lok 7-5
DIN Connectors 7-5
Exclusions. 7-5
7.4 AMP Connector 7-8
Assembly 7-8
Disassembly. 7-10
Wedge Lock 7-10
Service - Voltage Reading 7-10
7.5 Deutsch Connectors 7-12
DT/DTP Series Assembly 7-12
DT/DTP Series Disassembly 7-12
HD30/HDP20 Series Assembly 7-13
HD30/HDP20 Series Disassembly. 7-13
7.6 Telematics Gateway. 7-14
Telematics-Ready (TCU) Plug. 7-14
7.7 Electrical Schematics 7-20

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
1-1.	Maintenance and Lubrication Diagram	1-6
1-2.	Deutz 2011 Engine Dipstick	1-9
1-3.	Filter Lock Assembly	1-11
1-4.	Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 1 of 5)	1-12
1-5.	Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 2 of 5)	1-13
1-6.	Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 3 of 5)	1-14
1-7.	Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 4 of 5)	1-15
1-8.	Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 5 of 5)	1-16
2-1.	Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - Deutz	2-10
2-2.	Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - GM	2-11
3-1.	Tow Bar	3-2
3-2.	Axle and Steering Installation without Tow Package	3-3
3-3.	Axle and Steering Installation with Tow Package	3-4
3-4.	Chassis Component Location	3-6
3-5.	Turntable Component Location	3-7
3-6.	Wheel Drive Installation	3-8
3-7.	Drive Hub	3-16
3-8.	Drive Brake	3-18
3-9.	Drive Motor Cross Section	3-19
3-10.	Loop Flushing Spool	3-19
3-11.	Plugs, Fittings, and Speed Sensor	3-20
3-12.	End Cap	3-20
3-13.	Valve Plate & Rear Shaft Bearing	3-21
3-14.	Cylinder Kit	3-21
3-15.	Shaft Seal	3-21
3-16.	Shaft & Front Bearing	3-22
3-17.	SwashPlate & Servo Piston	3-22
3-18.	Cylinder Kit Disassembly	3-23
3-19.	Servo Piston	3-25
3-20.	Cylinder Kit Assembly	3-26
3-21.	Swashplate and Journal Bearing	3-26
3-22.	Shaft and Front Bearing	3-27
3-23.	Cylinder Kit Installation	3-27
3-24.	Servo Spring and Minimum Angle Stop	3-27
3-25.	Valve Plate and Rear Bearing	3-28
3-26.	End Cap	3-28
3-27.	Shaft Seal	3-29
3-28.	Plugs and Fittings Installation	3-29
3-29.	Loop Flushing Spool	3-30
3-30.	Removing the Shaft Seal	3-32
3-31.	Loop Flushing Spool	3-33
3-32.	Swing System	3-34
3-33.	Motor Control Valve	3-36
3-34.	Motor and Brake	3-37
3-35.	Main Drive Assembly	3-38
3-36.	Hub-Shaft	3-39
3-37.	Carrier	3-40
3-38.	Swing Drive Assembly	3-44
3-39.	Swing Motor and Brake Assembly	3-45
3-40.	Swing Drive Motor	3-47
3-41.	Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement (Sheet 1 of 2)	3-65
3-42.	Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement (Sheet 2 of 2)	3-66
3-43.	Swing Bolt Feeler Gauge Check	3-67
3-44.	Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point	3-67
3-45.	Swing Bearing Removal	3-69
3-46.	Swing Bearing Torque Sequence	3-70
3-47.	Rotary Coupling Seal Installation	3-71

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
3-48.	Rotary Coupling Cutaway	3-72
3-49.	Rotary Coupling Port Location (9 Port)	3-73
3-50.	Rotary Coupling Installation	3-74
3-51.	Inspecting Generator Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings	3-77
3-52.	Generator Disassembly and Assembly	3-79
3-53.	Generator Troubleshooting Circuit Diagram (Sheet 1 of 2)	3-80
3-54.	Generator Troubleshooting Circuit Diagram (Sheet 2 of 2)	3-81
3-55.	Generator Electrical Circuit Diagram	3-82
3-56.	Power Board PC1 Electrical Circuit Diagram	3-83
3-57.	Power Board PC2 Electrical Circuit Diagram (Sheet 1 of 2)	3-84
3-58.	Power Board PC2 Electrical Circuit Diagram (Sheet 2 of 2)	3-85
3-59.	Auxiliary Power System	3-87
3-60.	Deutz D2011 Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2	3-88
3-61.	Deutz D2011 Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2	3-89
3-62.	Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 5	3-90
3-63.	Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 5	3-91
3-64.	Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 3 of 5	3-92
3-65.	Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 4 of 5	3-93
3-66.	Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 5 of 5	3-94
3-67.	Deutz Engine Dipstick	3-95
3-68.	Engine Oil Viscosity	3-96
3-69.	Deutz Engine Dipstick	3-98
3-70.	Engine Oil Viscosity	3-98
3-71.	Location of the Oil Filter	3-99
3-72.	Location of the Primary Fuel Filter	3-99
3-73.	EMR 2 Engine Side Equipment	3-101
3-74.	Deutz EMR 2 Troubleshooting Flow Chart	3-102
3-75.	Deutz EMR 2 Vehicle Side Connection Diagram	3-103
3-76.	Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 1 of 2	3-104
3-77.	Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 2 of 2	3-105
3-78.	EMR 2 Engine Plug Pin Identification	3-106
3-79.	EMR 2 Vehicle Plug Pin Identification	3-107
3-80.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 1 of 5	3-108
3-81.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 2 of 5	3-109
3-82.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 3 of 5	3-110
3-83.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 4 of 5	3-111
3-84.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 5 of 5	3-112
3-85.	Engine Oil Dip Stick	3-113
3-86.	Electric Fuel Lock Off	3-116
3-87.	EPR Assembly	3-116
3-88.	Low Pressure Regulators	3-116
3-89.	Air Fuel Mixer	3-117
3-90.	ETC throttle control device	3-117
3-91.	LPG Engine Control Unit (ECM)	3-118
3-92.	ECM Assembly	3-118
3-93.	Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO)	3-118
3-94.	Gasoline Fuel Pressure and Temperature Manifold Assembly	3-119
3-95.	Filter Lock Assembly	3-121
3-96.	EPR Assembly	3-122
3-97.	Pressure Regulator Section	3-122
3-98.	(TMAP) Sensor & Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)	3-123
3-99.	Mixer Assembly	3-124
3-100.	EPR Assembly	3-127
3-101.	Air Compressor	3-211
3-102.	Counterweight	3-220
4-1.	Location of Components Platform Support	4-2
4-2.	Platform Support Torque Values	4-4

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
4-3.	Location of Components-Rotator and Slave Cylinder	4-5
4-4.	Boom Components Location	4-8
4-5.	Location of Components - Powertrack	4-9
4-6.	Powertrack Installation Main Boom (Sheet 1 of 2)	4-10
4-7.	Powertrack Installation Main Boom (Sheet 2 of 2)	4-11
4-8.	Hose and Cables Installation Tower Boom (Sheet 1 of 2)	4-12
4-9.	Hose and Cables Installation Tower Boom (Sheet 2 of 2)	4-13
4-10.	Location of Components - Upright	4-25
4-11.	Location of Components - Tower Boom	4-27
4-12.	Location of Components - Articulating Jib	4-31
4-13.	Releveling Valve	4-32
4-14.	Boom Upright Positioning	4-33
4-15.	UMS Sensor Location	4-43
4-16.	UMS Module Location	4-44
4-17.	UMS Module Pin Identification	4-45
4-18.	Boom Valve and Limit Switches Location (Sheet 1 of 2)	4-49
4-19.	Boom Valve and Limit Switches Location (Sheet 2 of 2)	4-50
4-20.	Rotator - Exploded View	4-53
4-21.	Rotator - Assembly Drawing	4-54
4-22.	Rotator Counterbalance Valve	4-65
4-23.	Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Types	4-69
4-24.	Line Tenser - Transfastener Type	4-69
4-25.	Line Tenser - Shuttle Type	4-70
4-26.	Slip Indicator - System OK	4-70
4-27.	Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Components - Transfastener Type	4-71
4-28.	Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Components - Shuttle Type	4-72
5-1.	Cylinder Barrel Support	5-3
5-2.	Capscrew Removal	5-3
5-3.	Cylinder Rod Support	5-3
5-4.	Slave Cylinder	5-4
5-5.	Tapered Bushing Removal	5-5
5-6.	Composite Bearing Installation	5-6
5-7.	Rod Seal Installation	5-6
5-8.	Cylinder Head Seal Installation	5-6
5-9.	Wiper Seal Installation	5-7
5-10.	Installation of Head Seal Kit	5-7
5-11.	Tapered Bushing Installation	5-7
5-12.	Seating the Tapered Bearing	5-7
5-13.	Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation	5-8
5-14.	Piston Seal Kit Installation	5-8
5-15.	Rod Assembly Installation	5-8
5-16.	Cylinder Barrel Support	5-9
5-17.	Capscrew Removal	5-9
5-18.	Cylinder Rod Support	5-9
5-19.	Upright Level Cylinder	5-10
5-20.	Tapered Bushing Removal	5-11
5-21.	Composite Bearing Installation	5-12
5-22.	Rod Seal Installation	5-12
5-23.	Cylinder Head Seal Installation	5-12
5-24.	Wiper Seal Installation	5-13
5-25.	Installation of Head Seal Kit	5-13
5-26.	Tapered Bushing Installation	5-13
5-27.	Seating the Tapered Bearing	5-13
5-28.	Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation	5-14
5-29.	Piston Seal Kit Installation	5-14
5-30.	Rod Assembly Installation	5-14
5-31.	Cylinder Barrel Support	5-15

FIGURE NO. TITLE PAGE NO.

5-32. Capscrew Removal . . . 5-15
5-33. Cylinder Rod Support. . . . 5-15
5-34. Jib Lift Cylinder. . . . 5-16
5-35. Tapered Bushing Removal . . . 5-17
5-36. Composite Bearing Installation . . . 5-18
5-37. Rod Seal Installation . . . 5-18
5-38. Cylinder Head Seal Installation . . . 5-18
5-39. Wiper Seal Installation . . . 5-19
5-40. Installation of Head Seal Kit . . . 5-19
5-41. Tapered Bushing Installation. . . . 5-19
5-42. Seating the Tapered Bearing . . . 5-19
5-43. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation . . . 5-20
5-44. Piston Seal Kit Installation. . . . 5-20
5-45. Rod Assembly Installation . . . 5-20
5-46. Cylinder Barrel Support . . . 5-21
5-47. Capscrew Removal . . . 5-21
5-48. Cylinder Rod Support. . . . 5-21
5-49. Main Boom Lift Cylinder . . . 5-22
5-50. Tapered Bushing Removal . . . 5-23
5-51. Composite Bearing Installation . . . 5-24
5-52. Rod Seal Installation . . . 5-24
5-53. Cylinder Head Seal Installation . . . 5-24
5-54. Wiper Seal Installation . . . 5-25
5-55. Installation of Head Seal Kit . . . 5-25
5-56. Tapered Bushing Installation. . . . 5-25
5-57. Seating the Tapered Bearing . . . 5-25
5-58. Piston Seal Kit Installation. . . . 5-26
5-59. Rod Assembly Installation . . . 5-26
5-60. Cylinder Barrel Support . . . 5-27
5-61. Capscrew Removal . . . 5-27
5-62. Cylinder Rod Support. . . . 5-27
5-63. Tower Boom Lift Cylinder . . . 5-28
5-64. Tapered Bushing Removal . . . 5-29
5-65. Composite Bearing Installation . . . 5-30
5-66. Rod Seal Installation . . . 5-30
5-67. Cylinder Head Seal Installation . . . 5-30
5-68. Wiper Seal Installation . . . 5-31
5-69. Installation of Head Seal Kit . . . 5-31
5-70. Tapered Bushing Installation. . . . 5-31
5-71. Seating the Tapered Bearing . . . 5-31
5-72. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation . . . 5-32
5-73. Piston Seal Kit Installation. . . . 5-32
5-74. Rod Assembly Installation . . . 5-32
5-75. Cylinder Barrel Support . . . 5-33
5-76. Capscrew Removal . . . 5-33
5-77. Cylinder Rod Support. . . . 5-33
5-78. Master Cylinder . . . 5-34
5-79. Tapered Bushing Removal . . . 5-35
5-80. Composite Bearing Installation . . . 5-36
5-81. Rod Seal Installation . . . 5-36
5-82. Cylinder Head Seal Installation . . . 5-36
5-83. Wiper Seal Installation . . . 5-37
5-84. Installation of Head Seal Kit . . . 5-37
5-85. Tapered Bushing Installation. . . . 5-37
5-86. Seating the Tapered Bearing . . . 5-37
5-87. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation . . . 5-38
5-88. Piston Seal Kit Installation. . . . 5-38

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
5-89.	Rod Assembly Installation	5-38
5-90.	Cylinder Barrel Support	5-39
5-91.	Spanner Nut Removal	5-39
5-92.	Cylinder Rod Support	5-39
5-93.	Steer Cylinder	5-40
5-94.	Composite Bearing Installation	5-41
5-95.	Rod Seal Installation	5-42
5-96.	Cylinder Head Seal Installation	5-42
5-97.	Wiper Seal Installation	5-42
5-98.	Installation of Head Seal Kit	5-42
5-99.	Piston Seal Kit Installation	5-43
5-100.	Cylinder Barrel Support	5-44
5-101.	Capscrew Removal	5-44
5-102.	Cylinder Rod Support	5-44
5-103.	Main Boom Telescopic Cylinder	5-45
5-104.	Tapered Bushing Removal	5-46
5-105.	Composite Bearing Installation	5-47
5-106.	Rod Seal Installation	5-47
5-107.	Cylinder Head Seal Installation	5-47
5-108.	Wiper Seal Installation	5-48
5-109.	Installation of Head Seal Kit	5-48
5-110.	Tapered Bushing Installation	5-48
5-111.	Seating the Tapered Bearing	5-48
5-112.	Piston Seal Kit Installation	5-49
5-113.	Rod Assembly Installation	5-49
5-114.	Components Main Boom and Tower Boom	5-50
5-115.	Main Control Valve Pressure Adjustments (SN 0300185828 through 0300194175)	5-60
5-116.	Main Valve Components (SN 0300185828 through 0300194175) - Sheet 1 of 2	5-61
5-117.	Main Valve Components (SN 0300185828 through 0300194175) - Sheet 2 of 2	5-62
5-118.	Main Control Valve Pressure Adjustments (SN 0300194176 to Present)	5-63
5-119.	Main Valve Components (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 1 of 2	5-64
5-120.	Main Valve Components (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 2 of 2	5-65
5-121.	Valve Component Torque (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 1 of 2	5-66
5-122.	Valve Component Torque (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 2 of 2	5-67
5-123.	Platform Control Valve Identification	5-68
5-124.	Platform Control Valve Component Torque	5-69
5-125.	Gauge Port Locations	5-75
5-126.	Load Sensing Control Adjustment	5-81
5-127.	Pressure Compensation Control Adjustment	5-81
5-128.	Shaft Seal and Retaining Ring	5-82
5-129.	Control Assembly	5-82
5-130.	Plug Locations, Sizes, and Torques	5-84
5-131.	Endcover Inspection	5-86
5-132.	Housing Inspection	5-87
5-133.	Servo Piston Installation	5-87
5-134.	Bearing or Bushing Inspection	5-89
5-135.	Charge Pump Adapter Assembly	5-89
5-136.	Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly	5-90
5-137.	Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly Option	5-91
5-138.	Neutral Lockout Switch Assembly	5-92
5-139.	Rotating Kit Assembly	5-93
5-140.	Gauge Locations	5-94
5-141.	Fault- logic Troubleshooting	5-95
5-142.	Fault- logic Troubleshooting	5-96
5-143.	Fault- logic Troubleshooting	5-97
5-144.	Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 1 of 6	5-100
5-145.	Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 2 of 6	5-101

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
5-146.	Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 3 of 6	5-102
5-147.	Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 4 of 6	5-103
5-148.	Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 5 of 6	5-104
5-149.	Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 6 of 6	5-105
6-1.	Hand Held Analyzer	6-1
6-2.	ADE Block Diagram	6-7
6-3.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 1 of 8	6-32
6-4.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 2 of 8	6-33
6-5.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 3 of 8	6-34
6-6.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 4 of 8	6-35
6-7.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 5 of 8	6-36
6-8.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 6 of 8	6-37
6-9.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 7 of 8	6-38
6-10.	Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 8 of 8	6-39
6-11.	Fault Code Light Location	6-40
6-12.	Analyzer Connecting Points	6-41
6-13.	Ground Control Module - Sheet 1 of 3	6-42
6-14.	Ground Control Module - Sheet 2 of 3	6-43
6-15.	Ground Control Module - Sheet 3 of 3	6-44
6-16.	Platform Control Module - Sheet 1 of 2	6-45
6-17.	Platform Control Module - Sheet 2 of 2	6-46
7-1.	Voltage Measurement (DC)	7-1
7-2.	Resistance Measurement	7-2
7-3.	Continuity Measurement	7-2
7-4.	Current Measurement (DC)	7-3
7-5.	Application to Female Contacts	7-4
7-6.	Use of Seal Plugs	7-5
7-7.	Brad-Harrison M12	7-6
7-8.	Phoenix Contact M12	7-6
7-9.	Connector Assembly Figure 1	7-8
7-10.	AMP Connector	7-8
7-11.	Connector Assembly Figure 2	7-9
7-12.	Connector Assembly Figure 3	7-9
7-13.	Connector Assembly Figure 4	7-9
7-14.	Connector Disassembly	7-10
7-15.	Connector Installation	7-11
7-16.	DT/DTP Contact Installation	7-12
7-17.	DT/DTP Contact Removal	7-12
7-18.	HD/HDP Contact Installation	7-13
7-19.	HD/HDP Locking Contacts Into Position	7-13
7-20.	HD/HDP Contact Removal	7-13
7-21.	HD/HDP Unlocking Contacts	7-13
7-22.	Telematics Gateway Harness - Sheet 1 of 3	7-15
7-23.	Telematics Gateway Harness - Sheet 2 of 3	7-16
7-24.	Telematics Gateway Harness - Sheet 3 of 3	7-17
7-25.	Electrical Components Installation - Sheet 1 of 2	7-18
7-26.	Electrical Components Installation - Sheet 2 of 2	7-19
7-27.	Electrical Schematic GM - Sheet 1 of 2	7-20
7-28.	Electrical Schematic GM - Sheet 2 of 2	7-21
7-29.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 1 of 14	7-22
7-30.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 2 of 14	7-23
7-31.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 3 of 14	7-24
7-32.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 4 of 14	7-25
7-33.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 5 of 14	7-26
7-34.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 6 of 14	7-27
7-35.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 7 of 14	7-28
7-36.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 8 of 14	7-29

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
7-37.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 9 of 14	7-30
7-38.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 10 of 14	7-31
7-39.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 11 of 14	7-32
7-40.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 12 of 14	7-33
7-41.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 13 of 14	7-34
7-42.	Electrical Schematic - Sheet 14 of 14	7-35

TABLE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
1-1	Operating Specifications	1-1
1-2	Dimensional Data	1-1
1-3	Capacities	1-1
1-4	Deutz D2011L04 Specifications	1-1
1-5	Deutz TD 2.9 Specifications	1-2
1-6	GM 3.0L Specifications	1-2
1-7	Tire Specifications	1-2
1-8	Drive System Specifications	1-2
1-9	Swing System Specifications	1-2
1-10	Auxiliary Power Pump Specifications	1-2
1-11	Torque Requirements	1-3
1-12	Hydraulic Oil	1-3
1-13	Mobilfluid 424 Specs	1-3
1-14	Mobil DTE 10 Excel 32 Specs	1-4
1-15	Mobil EAL 224 H Specs	1-4
1-16	UCon Hydrolube HP-5046 Specs	1-4
1-17	Major Component Weights	1-5
1-18	Critical Stability Weights	1-5
1-19	Lubrication Specifications	1-7
2-1	Inspection and Maintenance	2-2
2-2	Cylinder Drift	2-5
2-3	Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule	2-7
3-1	Wheel Torque Chart	3-2
3-2	Displacement Identifiers	3-21
3-3	Slipper Foot Thickness & End Play	3-23
3-4	Cylinder Block Measurements	3-24
3-5	Excessive Noise and/or Vibration	3-31
3-6	System Operating Hot	3-31
3-7	Won't Shift or Slow to Start	3-31
3-8	Coupling Port Information Table (9 port)	3-75
3-9	Troubleshooting	3-78
3-10	Lead Connection List for Generator	3-86
3-11	LPG Fuel System Diagnosis	3-128
3-12	Symptom Diagnosis	3-130
3-13	DTC to SPN/FMI Cross Reference Chart	3-138
3-14	Engine Fault Codes	3-140
3-15	Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)	3-188
3-16	Prime Lubricant Characteristics	3-214
3-17	Air Compressor Troubleshooting	3-218
4-1	Troubleshooting	4-68
4-2	SkyGuard Function Table	4-74
5-1	Symbols Used	5-75
5-2	Gauge and Port information	5-75
5-3	Fluid and Filter Change Interval	5-76
5-4	Excessive Noise and/ or Vibration	5-77
5-5	Actuator Response is Sluggish	5-77
5-6	System Operating Hot	5-78
5-7	Low Pump Output Flow	5-78
5-8	Pressure or Flow Instability	5-79
5-9	System Pressure Not Reaching Pressure Compensator Setting	5-79
5-10	High Inlet Vacuum	5-80
6-1	Analyzer Abbreviations	6-5
6-2	Machine Configuration Programming Information	6-8
6-3	Machine Configuration Programming Settings	6-16
6-4	Machine Personality Settings	6-18
6-5	Function Speeds	6-21
6-6	Diagnostic Menu Descriptions	6-23

TABLE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
6-7	Accessory Weights	6-25
6-8	SkyGlazier Capacity Reductions	6-27
6-9	Pipe Rack Capacity Reductions	6-27
6-10	LSS Troubleshooting Chart	6-29
6-11	ADJUSTMENTS - Personality Descriptions	6-47
6-12	Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart	6-50

TABLE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

This page left blank intentionally.

SECTION 1. SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 OPERATING SPECIFICATIONS

Table 1-1. Operating Specifications

Maximum Work Load (Capacity) ANSI Unrestricted: CE/AUS Unrestricted:	 500 lb. (227 kg) 507 lb. (230 kg)
Maximum Travel Grade with boom in stowed position (Gradeability) 4WD	45%
Maximum Travel Grade with boom in stowed position (Side Slope)	5° ANSI 3° CE/AUS
Maximum Vertical Platform Height	74 ft. (22.5 m)
Maximum Horizontal Platform Reach	51 ft. 10 in. (15.8 m)
Ground Clearance	12 in. (30 cm)
Wheelbase	10 ft. (3.05 m)
Maximum Tire Load	17,755 lb. (8060 kg)
Maximum Drive Speed	3.0 mph (4.8 kph)
Maximum Hyd. Operating Pressure	4500 psi (310 bar)
Electrical System Voltage	12 volts
Jet Blast Rating	90 mph (145 kph)
Max. Ground Bearing Pressure	84 psi (5.3 kg/cm^3)
Gross Machine Weight	37,400 lb. (16,964 kg)

1.2 DIMENSIONAL DATA

Table 1-2. Dimensional Data

Turning Radius (Outside)	14 ft. 6 in. (4.42 m)
Turning Radius (Inside)	11 ft. (2.13 m)
Boom Elevation: Above Grade Below Grade	 +80 ft. 3 in. (24.46 m) -13 ft. 1 in. (3.99 m)
Machine Height Stowed	9 ft. 9.5 in. (2.98 m)
Machine Length (Stowed)	36 ft. 6 in. (11.13 m)
Machine Width	8 ft. (2.44 m)
Wheelbase	10 ft. (3.05 m)

1.3 CAPACITIES

Table 1-3. Capacities

Fuel Tank	Approx. 39 Gal. (147.6 L)
Hydraulic Tank	Approx. 40 Gal. (151.4 L)
Hydraulic System (Including Tank)	77 Gal.(291.4 L)
Drive Hub	44 ounces (1.3 L)
Drive Brake	2.7 ounces (80 ml)
Engine Crankcase Deutz D2011L04 Deutz TD 2.9L GM	 11 Quarts (10.5 L) 2.4 Gal. (8.9 L) w/Filter 4.5 Quarts (4.25 L) w/Filter
Air Compressor	4 Quarts (3.8 L)

1.4 ENGINE DATA

Table 1-4. Deutz D2011L04 Specifications

Type	Liquid Cooled (Oil)
Fuel	Diesel
Oil Capacity Cooling System Crankcase Total Capacity	 5 Quarts (4.5 L) 11 Quarts (10.5 L) w/Filter 16 Quarts (15 L)
Idle RPM	1000
Low RPM	1800
High RPM	2600
Alternator	55 Amp, belt drive
Fuel Consumption	0.88 GPH (3.33 lph)
Battery	1000 Cold Cranking Amps, 210 minutes Reserve Capacity, 12 VDC
Horsepower	61.6 hp (46 kw) @ 2600 RPM, full load

Table 1-5. Deutz TD 2.9 Specifications

Fuel	Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (15 ppm)
Output	67 hp (50 kw)
Torque	173 ft. lbs. (234 Nm) @ 1800rpm
Oil Capacity (Crankcase)	2.4 Gal. (8.9 L) w/Filter
Cooling System	0.8 Gal. (3 L)
Low RPM	1200 ± 50 rpm
High RPM	2600 ± 50 rpm
Alternator	95 Amp
Glow Plug	80 Amp
Starter	12 V (3.2 kw)
Fuel Consumption	0.65 GPH (2.48 lph)

Table 1-6. GM 3.0L Specifications

Fuel	Gasoline/LP Gas
No. of Cylinders	4
BHP Gasoline LP	 80.5 hp @ 3000 rpm 75 hp @ 3000 rpm
Bore	4 in. (101.6 mm)
Stroke	3.6 in. (91.44 mm)
Displacement	181 cu.in. (3.0 L, 2966 cc)
Oil Capacity w/filter	4.5 Quarts (4.25 L)
Minimum Oil Pressure at idle Hot	 6 psi (0.4 bar) @ 1000 rpm 18 psi (1.2 bar) @ 2000 rpm
Compression Ratio	9.2:1
Firing Order	1-3-4-2
High RPM	3000
Low RPM	1000
Oil Capacity	4.3 L (1.14 gal)
Cooling System	3.8 L (1 gal)
Alternator Rating	70 Amp
Torque Gasoline LP	 149.2 ft. lbs. (202.2 Nm) @ 2200 rpm 149.6 ft. lbs. (202.8 Nm) @ 1600 rpm

1.5 TIRES

Table 1-7. Tire Specifications

SIZE	TYPE	PLY RATING	LOAD RANGE	PRESSURE
15-625	pneumatic	16	H	95 psi (6.5 bar)
15-625	foam-filled	16	H	N/A
18-625	foam-filled	16	H	N/A

1.6 COMPONENT DATA

Drive System

Table 1-8. Drive System Specifications

Drive Motor Displacement	2.13 cu. in. (35 cc) max. 0.63 cu. in. (10.3 cc) min.
Drive Hub Ratio	87:1
Drive Brake	Automatic spring applied, hydraulically released multi-plate wet disc brakes.

Swing System

Table 1-9. Swing System Specifications

Swing Motor Displacement	4 cu. in. (66 cm^3)
Swing Brake	Automatic spring applied hydraulically released multi-plate wet disc brakes
Swing Hub Ratio	36.13:1

Auxiliary Power Pump

Table 1-10. Auxiliary Power Pump Specifications

Pump Output	1.43 GPM (5.6 lpm) @ 1800 psi. (124 bar)
Pump Displacement	0.273 cu. in. (4.48 cm^3)
Valving	Non-Adj. Unloader Preset to 230 psi Adjustable Relief Set at 1800 psi.
Motor	24V.D.C. 5.0 Extended Duty
Rotation	Counterclockwise

1.7 TORQUE REQUIREMENTS

Table 1-11. Torque Requirements

DESCRIPTION	TORQUE VALUE (DRY)	INTERVAL HOURS
Wheel Bolts	300 ft. lbs. (407 Nm)	150
Support to Rotator Bolts	40 ft. lbs. (55 Nm)	150
Rotator Center Bolt	586 ft. lbs. (795 Nm)	150
Swing Bearing Bolts	190 ft. lbs. (260 Nm)	50/600*
Starter or Aux Pump Solenoid Contacts Coil	 95 in. lbs. (10.5 Nm) 40 in. lbs. (4.5 Nm)	As required
*Check swing bearing bolts for security after first 50 hours of operation and every 600 hours thereafter. (See Swing Bearing in Section 3.)		
NOTE: *When maintenance becomes necessary or a fastener has loosened, refer to the Torque Chart to determine proper torque value.*		

1.8 HYDRAULIC OIL

Table 1-12. Hydraulic Oil

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE	S.A.E. VISCOSITY GRADE
+0° to + 180° F (-18° to +83° C)	10W
+0° to + 210° F (-18° to +99° C)	10W-20, 10W-30
+50° to + 210° F (+10° to +99° C)	20W-20

NOTE: *Hydraulic oils must have anti-wear qualities at least to API Service Classification GL-3, and sufficient chemical stability for mobile hydraulic system service. JLG Industries recommends Mobilfluid 424 hydraulic oil, which has an SAE viscosity index of 152.*

NOTE: *When temperatures remain consistently below 20 degrees F. (-7 degrees C.), JLG Industries recommends the use of Mobil DTE10.*

Aside from JLG recommendations, it is not advisable to mix oils of different brands or types, as they may not contain the same required additives or be of comparable viscosities. If use of hydraulic oil other than Mobilfluid 424 is desired, contact JLG Industries for proper recommendations.

Table 1-13. Mobilfluid 424 Specs

SAE Grade	10W30
ISO Grade	55
Gravity, API	29.0
Density, Lb/Gal. 60°F	7.35
Pour Point, Max	-46°F (-43°C)
Flash Point, Min.	442°F (228°C)
Viscosity	
Brookfield, cP at -18°C	2700
at 40° C	55 cSt
at 100° C	9.3 cSt
Viscosity Index	152

Table 1-14. Mobil DTE 10 Excel 32 Specs

ISO Viscosity Grade	32
Pour Point, °C Max.	-54
Flash Point, °C Min.	250
Viscosity	
cSt @ 40° C	32.7
cSt @ 100° C	6.63
cSt @ 100° F	32.7
cSt @ 212° F	6.63
Viscosity Index	164
Density (Kg/l) @ 15°C	0.8468
Density (lb/in^3) @ 60°F	0.0305

Table 1-15. Mobil EAL 224 H Specs

Type	Biodegradable Vegetable Oil
ISO Viscosity Grade	32/46
Specific Gravity	0.922
Pour Point °C (°F)	-32° (-25°)
Flash Point °C (°F)	220° (428°)
Rust Protection, ASTM D 665A & BB	Pass Color, ASTM D 1500 Max 2.0
Operating Temp	-17° to 82°C (0 to 180°F)
Stored Temp	Must be Above 14°C (32°F)
Viscosity	
ASTM D445 cST 40°C	37
ASTM D445 cST 100°C	8.4
Viscosity Index, ASTM D 2270	213

Table 1-16. UCon Hydrolube HP-5046 Specs

pH	9.1
Specific Gravity, 20/20°F	1.082
Pour Point, °C (°F)	<-50 (<58)
Appearance	Red Liquid
Viscosity	
at 0°C (32°F)	340cST (1600SUS)
at 40°C (104°F)	46cST (215SUS)
at 65°C (150°F)	22cST (106SUS)
Viscosity Index	170

1.9 MAJOR COMPONENT WEIGHTS

Table 1-17. Major Component Weights

MAJOR COMPONENTS	LBS.	KG.
Platform & Control Console	250	113
Main Boom (Inc. Slave Cylinder Rotator, Support)	3185	1445
Main Lift Cylinder	444.7	202
Main Telescope Cylinder	459	208
Upright	1175	535
Upright Level Cylinder	529.5	240
Tower Boom Complete	3450	1565
Tower Lift Cylinder	544	247
Jib Level Cylinder	77.2	35
Jib Lift Cylinder	63	29
Master Cylinder	58	26
Steer Cylinder	32.4	15
Turntable Counterweight	4805	2180
Turntable Complete (Including Engine)	10625	4820
Chassis Complete (Pneumatic Tires)	13350	6060
Chassis Complete (Foam Filled Tires)	12220	5545
Machine Complete (GVW) w/ Pneumatic Tires	34200	15513
Machine Complete (GVW) w/ Foam Filled Tires	33100	15014
NOTE: *The above components are separate assemblies. Example: "TURNTABLE COMPLETE" does not include booms, upright, lift cylinders or platform. The weights of these components must be added for the total weight.*		

Critical Stability Weights

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT REPLACE ITEMS CRITICAL TO STABILITY WITH ITEMS OF DIFFERENT WEIGHT OR SPECIFICATION (FOR EXAMPLE: BATTERIES, FILLED TIRES, COUNTER WEIGHT, ENGINE, AND PLATFORM) DO NOT MODIFY UNIT IN ANY WAY TO EFFECT STABILITY.

Table 1-18. Critical Stability Weights

COMPONENTS		LBS.	KG.
Tire & Wheel Size (Foam Filled Only)	15-625	544	247
	18-625	601	273
Engine	Deutz	534	242
	GM w/pumps	1030	468
Counterweight	Turntable	4805	2180
Wheel Hubs	Front&Rear	218	99
Platform	6 ft. (1.83 m)	205	93
	8 ft. (2.44 m)	230	105

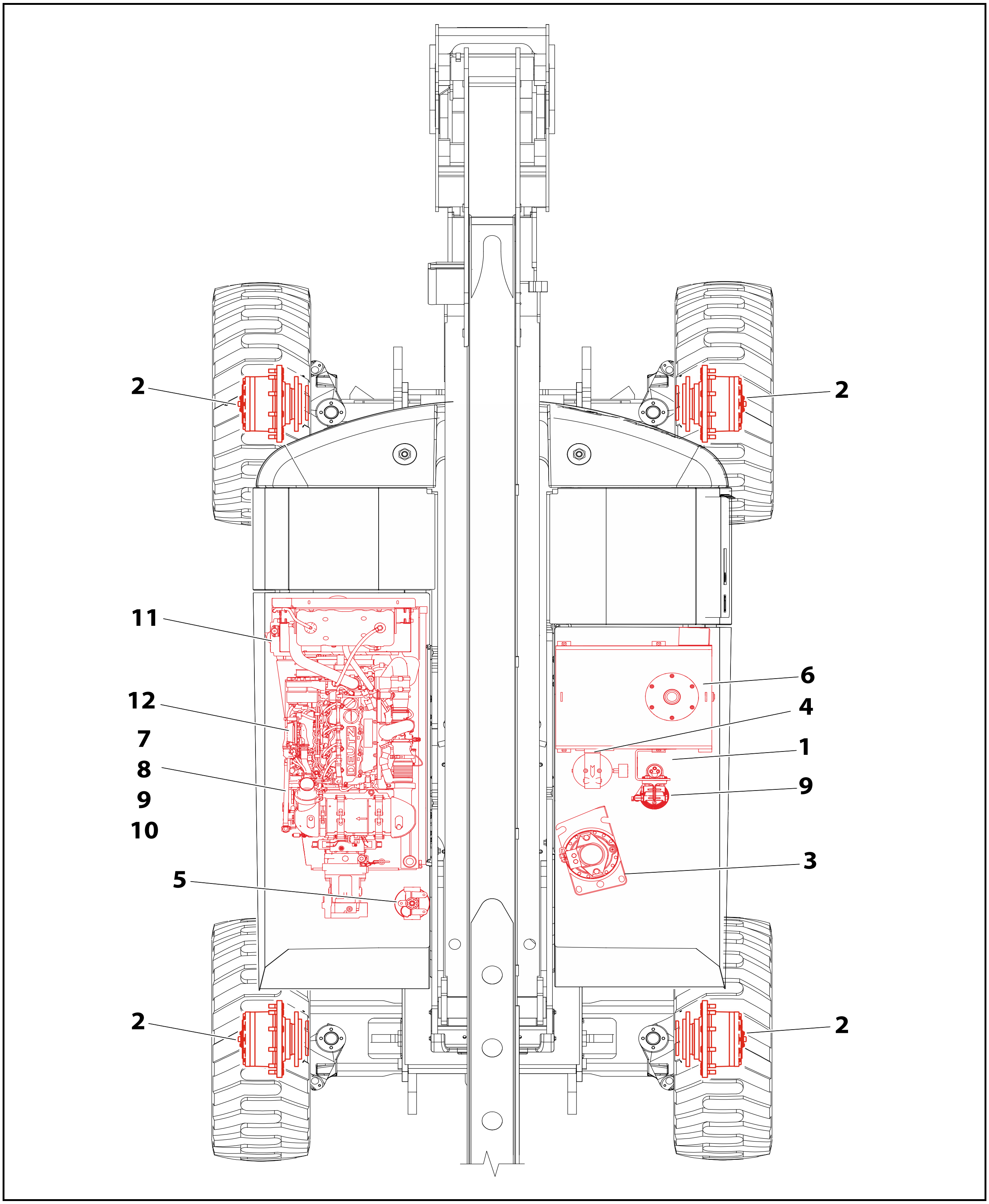


Figure 1-1. Maintenance and Lubrication Diagram

1.10 OPERATOR MAINTENANCE

NOTE: *The following numbers correspond to those in Figure 1-1., Maintenance and Lubrication Diagram.*

Table 1-19. Lubrication Specifications.

KEY	SPECIFICATIONS
MPG	Multipurpose Grease having a minimum dripping point of 350° F (177° C). Excellent water resistance and adhesive qualities, and being of extreme pressure type. (Timken OK 40 pounds minimum.)
EPGL	Extreme Pressure Gear Lube (oil) meeting API service classification GL-5 or MIL-Spec MIL-L-2105
HO	Hydraulic Oil. API service classification GL-3, e.g. Mobilfluid 424
EO	Engine (crankcase) Oil. Gas - API SF, SH, SG class, MIL-L-2104. Diesel - API CC/CD class, MIL-L-2104B/MIL-L-2104C

NOTICE

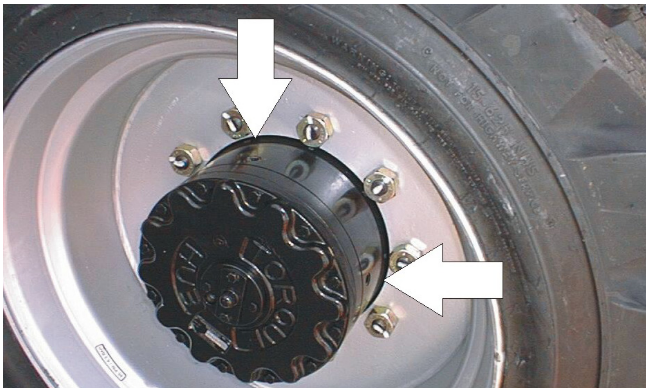
LUBRICATION INTERVALS ARE BASED ON MACHINE OPERATION UNDER NORMAL CONDITIONS. FOR MACHINES USED IN MULTI-SHIFT OPERATIONS AND/OR EXPOSED TO HOSTILE ENVIRONMENTS OR CONDITIONS, LUBRICATION FREQUENCIES MUST BE INCREASED ACCORDINGLY.

NOTE: *It is recommended as a good practice to replace all filters at the same time.*

1. Swing Bearing - Internal Ball Bearing

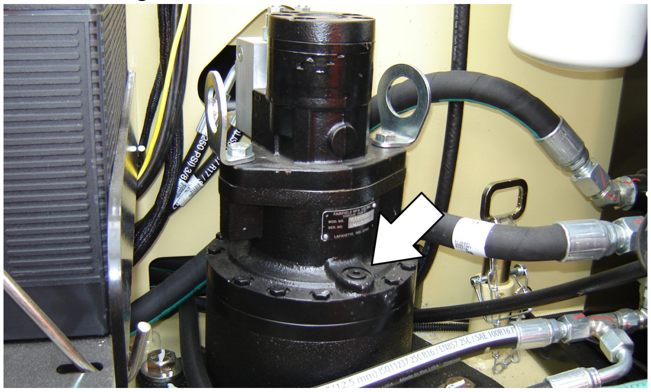
Lube Point(s) - 2 Grease Fittings
Capacity - A/R
Lube - MPG
Interval - Every 3 months or 150 hours of operation.
Comments - Remote Access.

2. Wheel Drive Hub



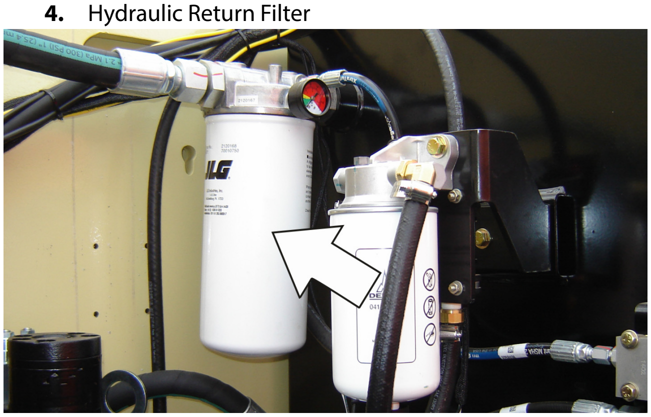
Lube Point(s) - Level/Fill Plug
Capacity - 17 oz. (0.5 L) - 1/2 Full
Lube - EPGL
Interval - Check level every 3 months or 150 hours of operation; change every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation.
Comments - Place Fill port at 12 o'clock position and check port at 3 o'clock position. Pour lubricant into fill port until it just starts to flow out of check port.

3. Swing Drive Hub



Lube Point(s) - Level/Fill Plug
Capacity - 43 oz. (1.3 L)
Lube - 90w80 Gear oil
Interval - Check level every 3 months or 150 hours of operation; change every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation.

4. Hydraulic Return Filter

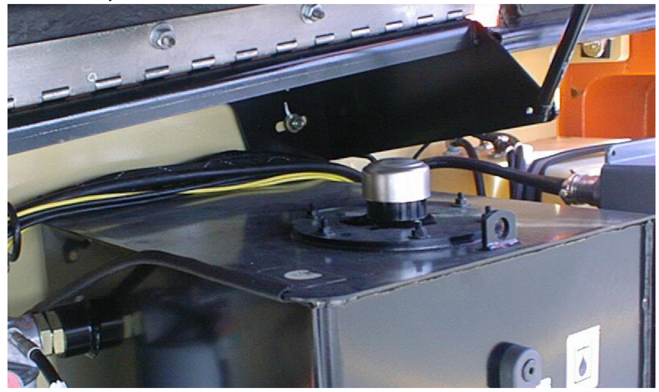


Interval - Change after first 50 hours and every 6 months or 300 hours. Thereafter or as indicated by Condition Indicator.

5. Hydraulic Charge Filter

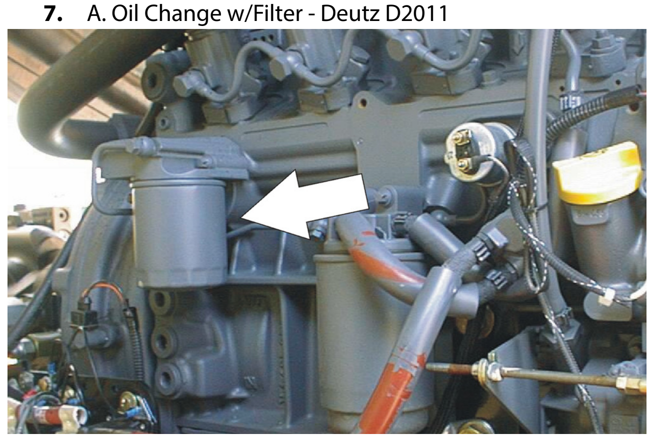
Interval - Change after first 50 hours and every 6 months or 300 hours. Thereafter or as indicated by Condition Indicator.

6. Hydraulic Tank



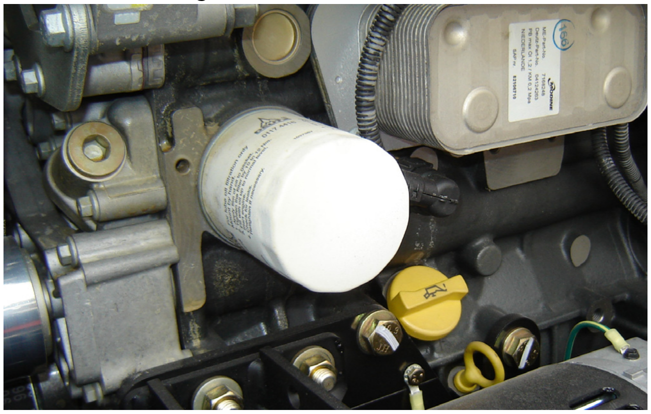
Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap
Capacity - 40 Gal. (151 L) Tank; 77 Gal. (291.4 L) System
Lube - HO
Interval - Check Level daily; Change every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation.

7. A. Oil Change w/Filter - Deutz D2011

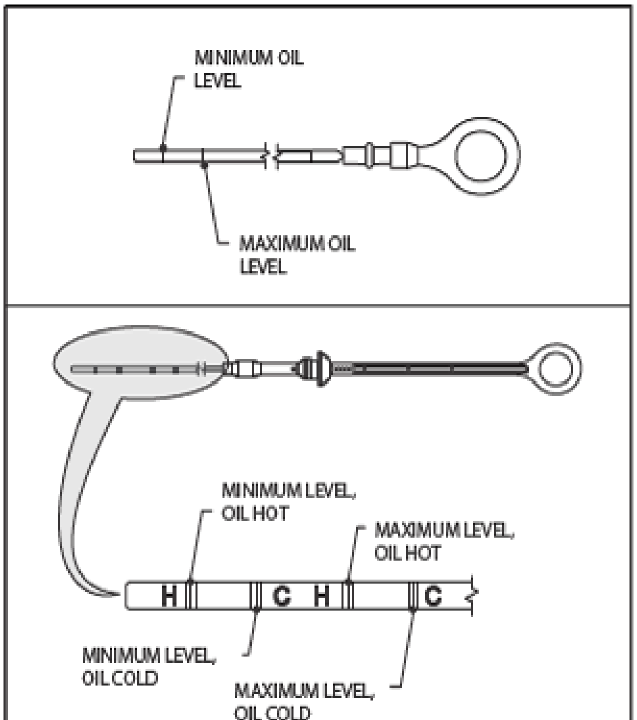


Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
Capacity - 11 Quarts (10.5 L) Crankcase
Lube - EO
Interval - Every Year or 1200 hours of operation.
Comments - Check level daily/Change in accordance with engine manual. Refer to Figure 1-2., Deutz 2011 Engine Dipstick.

B. Oil Change w/Filter - Deutz TD2.9



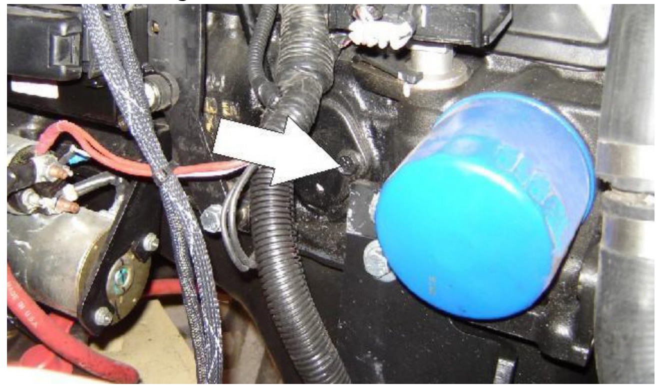
Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
Capacity - 9.6 Quarts (9.0 L)
Lube - EO
Interval - Every Year or 600 hours of operation.
Comments - Check level daily/Change in accordance with engine manual.



NOTE: *Hot oil checks should be made a period of 5 minutes after the engine has been shut down.*

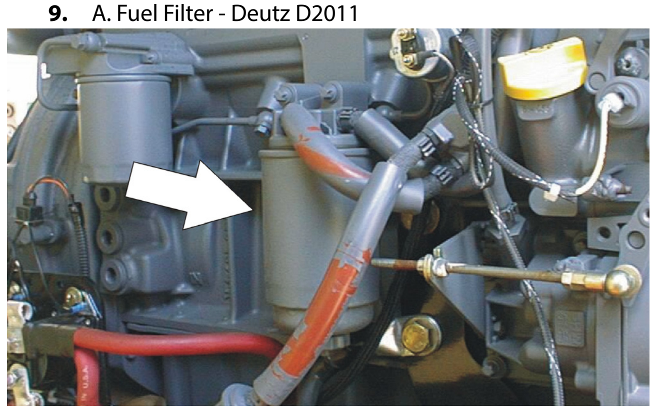
Figure 1-2. Deutz 2011 Engine Dipstick

8. Oil Change w/Filter - GM



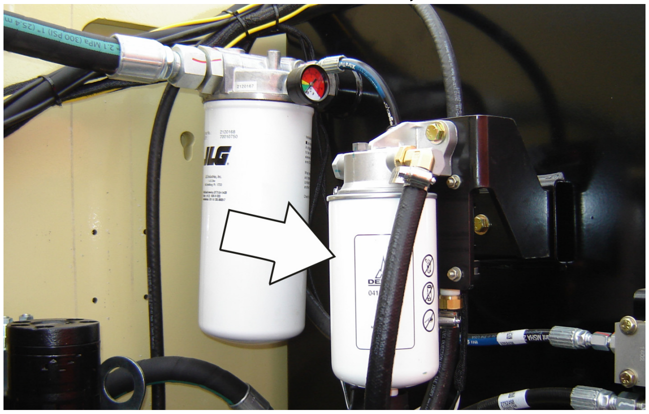
Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
(JLG P/N 7027965)
Capacity - 4.5 Quarts (4.25 L) w/filter
Lube - EO
Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation.
Comments - Check level daily/Change in accordance with engine manual.

9. A. Fuel Filter - Deutz D2011



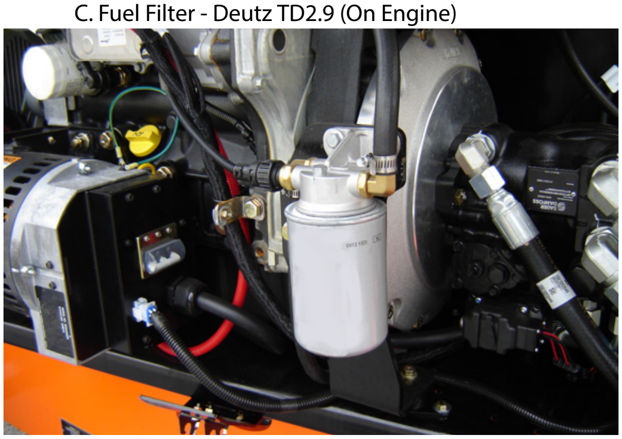
Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every Year or 600 hours of operation.

B. Fuel Filter - Deutz TD2.9 (On Hydraulic Tank)



Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Change in accordance with engine manual.

C. Fuel Filter - Deutz TD2.9 (On Engine)

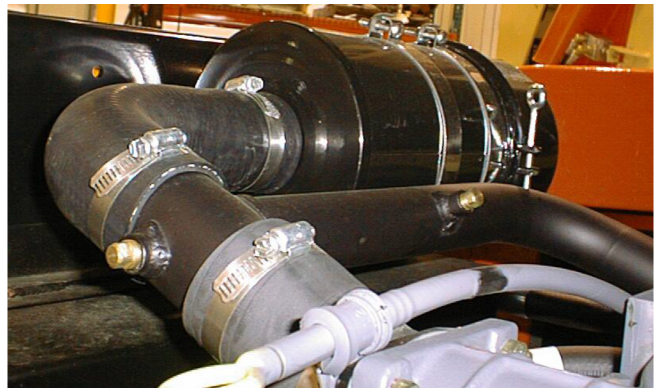


Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Change in accordance with engine manual.

10. Fuel Filter (Gasoline) - GM

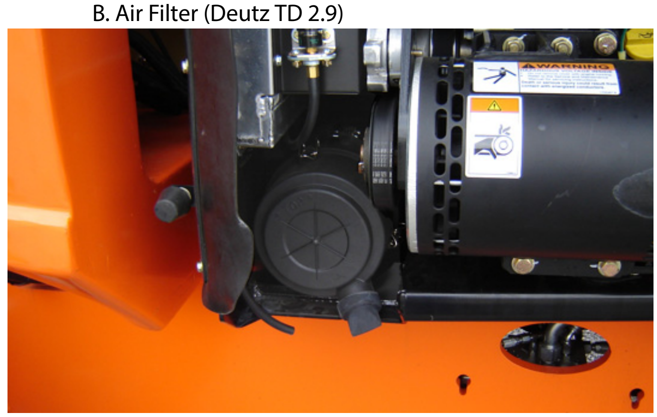
Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every 6 months or 300 hours of operation.

11. A. Air Filter



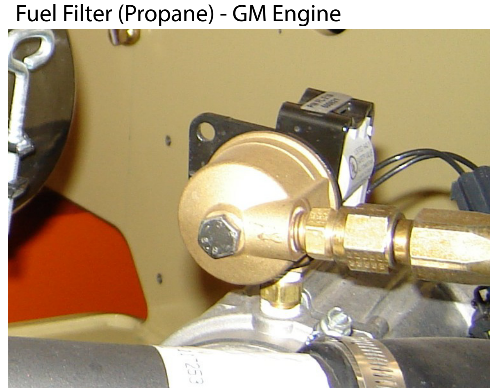
Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every 6 months or 300 hours of operation or as indicated by the condition indicator.

B. Air Filter (Deutz TD 2.9)



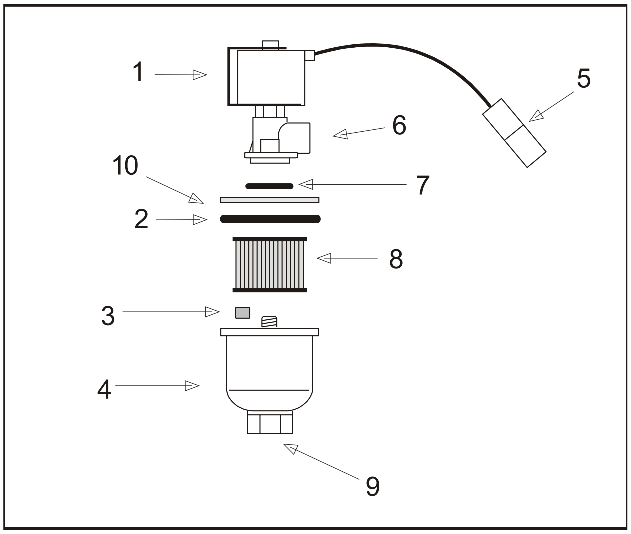
Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every 6 months or 300 hours of operation or as indicated by the condition indicator.

12. Fuel Filter (Propane) - GM Engine



Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation.
Comments - Replace filter. Refer to Propane Fuel Filter Replacement.

Propane Fuel Filter Replacement



1.	Electric Lock Off Solenoid	6.	Fuel Outlet
2.	Housing Seal	7.	O-ring
3.	Filter Magnet	8.	Filter
4.	Filter Housing	9.	Fuel Inlet
5.	Electrical Connector	10.	Ring

Figure 1-3. Filter Lock Assembly

REMOVAL

1. Relieve the propane fuel system pressure. Refer to Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Slowly loosen the Filter housing and remove it.
4. Pull the filter housing from the Electric lock off assembly.
5. Remove the filter from the housing.
6. Locate Filter magnet and remove it.
7. Remove and discard the housing seal.
8. Remove and discard the retaining bolt seal.
9. Remove and discard mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

BE SURE TO REINSTALL THE FILTER MAGNET INTO THE HOUSING BEFORE INSTALLING NEW SEAL.

1. Install the mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.
2. Install the retaining bolt seal.
3. Install the housing seal.
4. Drop the magnet into the bottom of the filter housing.
5. Install the filter into the housing.
6. Install the retaining bolt into the filter housing.
7. Install the filter up to the bottom of the electric lock off.
8. Tighten the filter bowl retainer to 106 in. lbs. (12 Nm).
9. Open manual shut-off valve. Start the vehicle and leak check the propane fuel system at each serviced fitting.

Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief

CAUTION

THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM OPERATES AT PRESSURES UP TO 312 PSI (21.5 BAR). TO MINIMIZE THE RISK OF FIRE AND PERSONAL INJURY, RELIEVE THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE (WHERE APPLICABLE) BEFORE SERVICING THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM COMPONENTS.

To relieve propane fuel system pressure:

1. Close the manual shut-off valve on the propane fuel tank.
2. Start and run the vehicle until the engine stalls.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

CAUTION

RESIDUAL VAPOR PRESSURE WILL BE PRESENT IN THE FUEL SYSTEM. ENSURE THE WORK AREA IS WELL VENTILATED BEFORE DISCONNECTING ANY FUEL LINE.

				Values for Zinc Yellow Chromate Fasteners (Ref 4150707)															
				SAE GRADE 5 BOLTS & GRADE 2 NUTS									SAE GRADE 8 (HEX HD) BOLTS & GRADE 8 NUTS*						
Size	TPI	Bolt Dia	Tensile Stress Area	Clamp Load	Torque (Dry)		Torque Lubricated		Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140)		Torque (Loctite® 262™ or Vibra-TITE™ 131)		Clamp Load	Torque (Dry or Loctite® 263) K= 0.20		Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140) K=.18		Torque (Loctite® 262™ or Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15	
		In	Sq In	LB	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	LB	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]
4	40	0.1120	0.00604	380	8	0.9	6	0.7											
	48	0.1120	0.00661	420	9	1.0	7	0.8											
6	32	0.1380	0.00909	580	16	1.8	12	1.4											
	40	0.1380	0.01015	610	18	2.0	13	1.5											
8	32	0.1640	0.01400	900	30	3.4	22	2.5											
	36	0.1640	0.01474	940	31	3.5	23	2.6					1320	43	5				
10	24	0.1900	0.01750	1120	43	4.8	32	3.5					1580	60	7				
	32	0.1900	0.02000	1285	49	5.5	36	4					1800	68	8				
1/4	20	0.2500	0.0318	2020	96	10.8	75	9	105	12			2860	143	16	129	15		
	28	0.2500	0.0364	2320	120	13.5	86	10	135	15			3280	164	19	148	17		
		In	Sq In	LB	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	LB	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]
5/16	18	0.3125	0.0524	3340	17	23	13	18	19	26	16	22	4720	25	35	20	25	20	25
	24	0.3125	0.0580	3700	19	26	14	19	21	29	17	23	5220	25	35	25	35	20	25
3/8	16	0.3750	0.0775	4940	30	41	23	31	35	48	28	38	7000	45	60	40	55	35	50
	24	0.3750	0.0878	5600	35	47	25	34	40	54	32	43	7900	50	70	45	60	35	50
7/16	14	0.4375	0.1063	6800	50	68	35	47	55	75	45	61	9550	70	95	65	90	50	70
	20	0.4375	0.1187	7550	55	75	40	54	60	82	50	68	10700	80	110	70	95	60	80
1/2	13	0.5000	0.1419	9050	75	102	55	75	85	116	68	92	12750	105	145	95	130	80	110
	20	0.5000	0.1599	10700	90	122	65	88	100	136	80	108	14400	120	165	110	150	90	120
9/16	12	0.5625	0.1820	11600	110	149	80	108	120	163	98	133	16400	155	210	140	190	115	155
	18	0.5625	0.2030	12950	120	163	90	122	135	184	109	148	18250	170	230	155	210	130	175
5/8	11	0.6250	0.2260	14400	150	203	110	149	165	224	135	183	20350	210	285	190	260	160	220
	18	0.6250	0.2560	16300	170	230	130	176	190	258	153	207	23000	240	325	215	290	180	245
3/4	10	0.7500	0.3340	21300	260	353	200		285	388	240	325	30100	375	510	340	460	280	380
	16	0.7500	0.3730	23800	300	407	220	298	330	449	268	363	33600	420	570	380	515	315	430
7/8	9	0.8750	0.4620	29400	430	583	320	434	475	646	386	523	41600	605	825	545	740	455	620
	14	0.8750	0.5090	32400	470	637	350	475	520	707	425	576	45800	670	910	600	815	500	680
1	8	1.0000	0.6060	38600	640	868	480	651	675	918	579	785	51500	860	1170	770	1045	645	875
	12	1.0000	0.6630	42200	700	949	530	719	735	1000	633	858	59700	995	1355	895	1215	745	1015
1 1/8	7	1.1250	0.7630	42300	800	1085	600	813	840	1142	714	968	68700	1290	1755	1160	1580	965	1310
	12	1.1250	0.8560	47500	880	1193	660	895	925	1258	802	1087	77000	1445	1965	1300	1770	1085	1475
1 1/4	7	1.2500	0.9690	53800	1120	1518	840	1139	1175	1598	1009	1368	87200	1815	2470	1635	2225	1365	1855
	12	1.2500	1.0730	59600	1240	1681	920	1247	1300	1768	1118	1516	96600	2015	2740	1810	2460	1510	2055
1 3/8	6	1.3750	1.1550	64100	1460	1979	1100	1491	1525	2074	1322	1792	104000	2385	3245	2145	2915	1785	2430
	12	1.3750	1.3150	73000	1680	2278	1260	1708	1750	2380	1506	2042	118100	2705	3680	2435	3310	2030	2760
1 1/2	6	1.5000	1.4050	78000	1940	2630	1460	1979	2025	2754	1755	2379	126500	3165	4305	2845	3870	2370	3225
	12	1.5000	1.5800	87700	2200	2983	1640	2224	2300	3128	1974	2676	142200	3555	4835	3200	4350	2665	3625

NOTES:
1. THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS
2. ALL TORQUE VALUES ARE STATIC TORQUE MEASURED PER STANDARD AUDIT METHODS TOLERANCE = ±10%
3. * ASSEMBLY USES HARDENED WASHER

NO. 5000059 REV. K

REFERENCE JLG THREAD LOCKING COMPOUND

JLG P/N	Loctite® P/N	ND Industries P/N	Description
0100011	242™	Vibra-TITE™ 121	Medium Strength (Blue)
0100019	271™	Vibra-TITE™ 140	High Strength (Red)
0100071	262™	Vibra-TITE™ 131	Medium - High Strength (Red)

Figure 1-4. Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 1 of 5)

				Values for Magni Coating Fasteners (Ref 4150701)													
				SAE GRADE 5 BOLTS & GRADE 2 NUTS							SAE GRADE 8 (HEX HD) BOLTS & GRADE 8 NUTS*						
Size	TPI	Bolt Dia	Tensile Stress Area	Clamp Load	Torque (Dry) K=0.17		Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140) K=0.16		Torque (Loctite® 262™ or Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15		Clamp Load	Torque (Dry or Loctite® 263) K= 0.17		Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140) K=.16		Torque (Loctite® 262™ or Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15	
		In	Sq In	LB	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	LB	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]
4	40	0.1120	0.00604	380	7	0.8											
	48	0.1120	0.00661	420	8	0.9											
6	32	0.1380	0.00909	580	14	1.5											
	40	0.1380	0.01015	610	14	1.6											
8	32	0.1640	0.01400	900	25	2.8											
	36	0.1640	0.01474	940	26	2.9					1320	37	4				
10	24	0.1900	0.01750	1120	36	4.1					1580	51	6				
	32	0.1900	0.02000	1285	42	4.7					1800	58	7				
1/4	20	0.2500	0.0318	2020	86	9.7	80	9			2860	122	14	114	13		
	28	0.2500	0.0364	2320	99	11.1	95	11			3280	139	16	131	15		
		In	Sq In	LB	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	LB	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]
5/16	18	0.3125	0.0524	3340	15	20	14	19	15	20	4720	20	25	20	25	20	25
	24	0.3125	0.0580	3700	15	20	15	21	15	20	5220	25	35	20	25	20	25
3/8	16	0.3750	0.0775	4940	25	35	25	34	25	34	7000	35	50	35	50	35	50
	24	0.3750	0.0878	5600	30	40	28	38	25	34	7900	40	55	40	55	35	50
7/16	14	0.4375	0.1063	6800	40	55	40	54	35	48	9550	60	80	55	75	50	70
	20	0.4375	0.1187	7550	45	60	44	60	40	54	10700	65	90	60	80	60	80
1/2	13	0.5000	0.1419	9050	65	90	60	82	55	75	12750	90	120	85	115	80	110
	20	0.5000	0.1599	10700	75	100	71	97	65	88	14400	100	135	95	130	90	120
9/16	12	0.5625	0.1820	11600	90	120	87	118	80	109	16400	130	175	125	170	115	155
	18	0.5625	0.2030	12950	105	145	97	132	90	122	18250	145	195	135	185	130	175
5/8	11	0.6250	0.2260	14400	130	175	120	163	115	156	20350	180	245	170	230	160	220
	18	0.6250	0.2560	16300	145	195	136	185	125	170	23000	205	280	190	260	180	245
3/4	10	0.7500	0.3340	21300	225	305	213	290	200	272	30100	320	435	300	410	280	380
	16	0.7500	0.3730	23800	255	345	238	324	225	306	33600	355	485	335	455	315	430
7/8	9	0.8750	0.4620	29400	365	495	343	466	320	435	41600	515	700	485	660	455	620
	14	0.8750	0.5090	32400	400	545	378	514	355	483	45800	570	775	535	730	500	680
1	8	1.0000	0.6060	38600	545	740	515	700	480	653	51500	730	995	685	930	645	875
	12	1.0000	0.6630	42200	600	815	563	765	530	721	59700	845	1150	795	1080	745	1015
1 1/8	7	1.1250	0.7630	42300	675	920	635	863	595	809	68700	1095	1490	1030	1400	965	1310
	12	1.1250	0.8560	47500	755	1025	713	969	670	911	77000	1225	1665	1155	1570	1085	1475
1 1/4	7	1.2500	0.9690	53800	955	1300	897	1219	840	1142	87200	1545	2100	1455	1980	1365	1855
	12	1.2500	1.0730	59600	1055	1435	993	1351	930	1265	96600	1710	2325	1610	2190	1510	2055
1 3/8	6	1.3750	1.1550	64100	1250	1700	1175	1598	1100	1496	104000	2025	2755	1905	2590	1785	2430
	12	1.3750	1.3150	73000	1420	1930	1338	1820	1255	1707	118100	2300	3130	2165	2945	2030	2760
1 1/2	6	1.5000	1.4050	78000	1660	2260	1560	2122	1465	1992	126500	2690	3660	2530	3440	2370	3225
	12	1.5000	1.5800	87700	1865	2535	1754	2385	1645	2237	142200	3020	4105	2845	3870	2665	3625

NOTES:
1. THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS
2. ALL TORQUE VALUES ARE STATIC TORQUE MEASURED PER STANDARD AUDIT METHODS TOLERANCE = ±10%
3. * ASSEMBLY USES HARDENED WASHER

NO. 5000059 REV. K

Figure 1-5. Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 2 of 5)

Size	TPI	Bolt Dia	Tensile Stress Area	SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS — Magni Coating (Ref 4150701)* Clamp Load See Note 4	Torque (Dry) K = .17		Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140 OR Precoat 85®) K=0.16		Torque (Loctite® 262™ or Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15		Zinc Yellow Chromate Fasteners (Ref 4150707)* Clamp Load See Note 4	Torque (Dry) K = .20		Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140 OR Precoat 85®) K=0.18		Torque (Loctite® 262™ or Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15	
		In	Sq In	LB	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	LB	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]	IN-LB	[N.m]
4	40	0.1120	0.00604														
	48	0.1120	0.00661														
6	32	0.1380	0.00909														
	40	0.1380	0.01015														
8	32	0.1640	0.01400														
	36	0.1640	0.01474														
10	24	0.1900	0.01750														
	32	0.1900	0.02000														
1/4	20	0.2500	0.0318	2860	122	14	114	13			2860	143	16	129	15		
	28	0.2500	0.0364	3280	139	16	131	15			3280	164	19	148	17		
		In	Sq In	LB	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	LB	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]	FT-LB	[N.m]
5/16	18	0.3125	0.0524	4720	20	25	20	25	20	25	4720	25	35	20	25	20	25
	24	0.3125	0.0580	5220	25	35	20	25	20	25	5220	25	35	25	35	20	25
3/8	16	0.3750	0.0775	7000	35	50	35	50	35	50	7000	45	60	40	55	35	50
	24	0.3750	0.0878	7900	40	55	40	55	35	50	7900	50	70	45	60	35	50
7/16	14	0.4375	0.1063	9550	60	80	55	75	50	70	9550	70	95	65	90	50	70
	20	0.4375	0.1187	10700	65	90	60	80	60	80	10700	80	110	70	95	60	80
1/2	13	0.5000	0.1419	12750	90	120	85	115	80	110	12750	105	145	95	130	80	110
	20	0.5000	0.1599	14400	100	135	95	130	90	120	14400	120	165	110	150	90	120
9/16	12	0.5625	0.1820	16400	130	175	125	170	115	155	16400	155	210	140	190	115	155
	18	0.5625	0.2030	18250	145	195	135	185	130	175	18250	170	230	155	210	130	175
5/8	11	0.6250	0.2260	20350	180	245	170	230	160	220	20350	210	285	190	260	160	220
	18	0.6250	0.2560	23000	205	280	190	260	180	245	23000	240	325	215	290	180	245
3/4	10	0.7500	0.3340	30100	320	435	300		280	380	30100	375	510	340	460	280	380
	16	0.7500	0.3730	33600	355	485	335	455	315	430	33600	420	570	380	515	315	430
7/8	9	0.8750	0.4620	41600	515	700	485	660	455	620	41600	605	825	545	740	455	620
	14	0.8750	0.5090	45800	570	775	535	730	500	680	45800	670	910	600	815	500	680
1	8	1.0000	0.6060	51500	730	995	685	930	645	875	51500	860	1170	775	1055	645	875
	12	1.0000	0.6630	59700	845	1150	795	1080	745	1015	59700	995	1355	895	1215	745	1015
1 1/8	7	1.1250	0.7630	68700	1095	1490	1030	1400	965	1310	68700	1290	1755	1160	1580	965	1310
	12	1.1250	0.8560	77000	1225	1665	1155	1570	1085	1475	77000	1445	1965	1300	1770	1085	1475
1 1/4	7	1.2500	0.9690	87200	1545	2100	1455	1980	1365	1855	87200	1815	2470	1635	2225	1365	1855
	12	1.2500	1.0730	96600	1710	2325	1610	2190	1510	2055	96600	2015	2740	1810	2460	1510	2055
1 3/8	6	1.3750	1.1550	104000	2025	2755	1905	2590	1785	2430	104000	2385	3245	2145	2915	1785	2430
	12	1.3750	1.3150	118100	2300	3130	2165	2945	2030	2760	118100	2705	3680	2435	3310	2030	2760
1 1/2	6	1.5000	1.4050	126500	2690	3660	2530	3440	2370	3225	126500	3165	4305	2845	3870	2370	3225
	12	1.5000	1.5800	142200	3020	4105	2845	3870	2665	3625	142200	3555	4835	3200	4350	2665	3625

NOTES: 1. THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS
2. ALL TORQUE VALUES ARE STATIC TORQUE MEASURED PER STANDARD AUDIT METHODS TOLERANCE = ±10%
*3. ASSEMBLY USES HARDENED WASHER OR FASTENER IS PLACED AGAINST PLATED STEEL OR RAW ALUMINUM
4. CLAMP LOAD LISTED FOR SHCS IS SAME AS GRADE 8 OR CLASS 10.9 AND DOES NOT REPRESENT FULL STRENGTH CAPABILITY OF SHCS. IF HIGHER LOAD IS REQUIRED, ADDITIONAL TESTING IS REQUIRED.

NO. 5000059 REV. K

Figure 1-6. Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 3 of 5)

			Values for Zinc Yellow Chromate Fasteners (Ref 4150707)								
			CLASS 8.8 METRIC (HEX/SOCKET HEAD) BOLTS CLASS 8 METRIC NUTS					CLASS 10.9 METRIC (HEX HEAD) BOLTS CLASS 10 METRIC NUTS CLASS 12.9 SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS M3 - M5*			
Size	PITCH	Tensile Stress Area	Clamp Load	Torque (Dry or Loctite® 263™)	Torque (Lub)	Torque (Loctite® 262™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 131)	Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140)	Clamp Load	Torque (Dry or Loctite® 263™) K = 0.20	Torque (Lub OR Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140) K= 0.18	Torque (Loctite® 262™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15
		Sq mm	KN	[N.m]	[N.m]	[N.m]	[N.m]	KN	[N.m]	[N.m]	[N.m]
3	0.5	5.03	2.19	1.3	1.0	1.2	1.4	3.13			
3.5	0.6	6.78	2.95	2.1	1.6	1.9	2.3	4.22			
4	0.7	8.78	3.82	3.1	2.3	2.8	3.4	5.47			
5	0.8	14.20	6.18	6.2	4.6	5.6	6.8	8.85			
6	1	20.10	8.74	11	7.9	9.4	12	12.5			
7	1	28.90	12.6	18	13	16	19	18.0	25	23	19
8	1.25	36.60	15.9	26	19	23	28	22.8	37	33	27
10	1.5	58.00	25.2	50	38	45	55	36.1	70	65	55
12	1.75	84.30	36.7	88	66	79	97	52.5	125	115	95
14	2	115	50.0	140	105	126	154	71.6	200	180	150
16	2	157	68.3	219	164	197	241	97.8	315	280	235
18	2.5	192	83.5	301	226	271	331	119.5	430	385	325
20	2.5	245	106.5	426	320	383	469	152.5	610	550	460
22	2.5	303	132.0	581	436	523	639	189.0	830	750	625
24	3	353	153.5	737	553	663	811	222.0	1065	960	800
27	3	459	199.5	1080	810	970	1130	286.0	1545	1390	1160
30	3.5	561	244.0	1460	1100	1320	1530	349.5	2095	1885	1575
33	3.5	694	302.0	1990	1490	1790	2090	432.5	2855	2570	2140
36	4	817	355.5	2560	1920	2300	2690	509.0	3665	3300	2750
42	4.5	1120	487.0	4090	3070	3680	4290	698.0	5865	5275	4395

NOTES: 1. THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS
2. ALL TORQUE VALUES ARE STATIC TORQUE MEASURED PER STANDARD AUDIT METHODS TOLERANCE = ±10%
*3. ASSEMBLY USES HARDENED WASHER OR FASTENER IS PLACED AGAINST PLATED STEEL OR RAW ALUMINUM
4. CLAMP LOAD LISTED FOR SHCS IS SAME AS GRADE 8 OR CLASS 10.9 AND DOES NOT REPRESENT FULL STRENGTH CAPABILITY OF SHCS. IF HIGHER LOAD IS REQUIRED, ADDITIONAL TESTING IS REQUIRED.

NO. 5000059 REV. K

Figure 1-7. Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 4 of 5)

Values for Magni Coated Fasteners (Ref 4150701)										
			CLASS 8.8 METRIC (HEX/SOCKET HEAD) BOLTS CLASS 8 METRIC NUTS				CLASS 10.9 METRIC (HEX HEAD) BOLTS CLASS 10 METRIC NUTS CLASS 12.9 SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS M6 AND ABOVE*			
Size	PITCH	Tensile Stress Area	Clamp Load	Torque (Dry or Loctite® 263™) K=0.17	Torque (Loctite® 262™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.16	Torque (Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140) K=0.15	Clamp Load	Torque (Dry or Loctite® 263™) K = 0.17	Torque (Lub OR Loctite® 242™ or 271™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 111 or 140) K= 0.16	Torque (Loctite® 262™ OR Vibra-TITE™ 131) K=0.15
		Sq mm	KN	[N.m]	[N.m]	[N.m]	KN	[N.m]	[N.m]	[N.m]
3	0.5	5.03	2.19	1.1	1.1	1.0	3.13			
3.5	0.6	6.78	2.95	1.8	1.7	1.5	4.22			
4	0.7	8.78	3.82	2.6	2.4	2.3	5.47			
5	0.8	14.20	6.18	5.3	4.9	4.6	8.85			
6	1	20.10	8.74	9	8.4	7.9	12.5	13	12	11
7	1	28.90	12.6	15	14	13	18.0	21	20	19
8	1.25	36.60	15.9	22	20	19	22.8	31	29	27
10	1.5	58.00	25.2	43	40	38	36.1	61	58	55
12	1.75	84.30	36.7	75	70	66	52.5	105	100	95
14	2	115	50.0	119	110	105	71.6	170	160	150
16	2	157	68.3	186	175	165	97.8	265	250	235
18	2.5	192	83.5	256	240	225	119.5	365	345	325
20	2.5	245	106.5	362	340	320	152.5	520	490	460
22	2.5	303	132.0	494	465	435	189.0	705	665	625
24	3	353	153.5	627	590	555	222.0	905	850	800
27	3	459	199.5	916	860	810	286.0	1315	1235	1160
30	3.5	561	244.0	1245	1170	1100	349.5	1780	1680	1575
33	3.5	694	302.0	1694	1595	1495	432.5	2425	2285	2140
36	4	817	355.5	2176	2050	1920	509.0	3115	2930	2750
42	4.5	1120	487.0	3477	3275	3070	698.0	4985	4690	4395

NOTES: 1. THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS
2. ALL TORQUE VALUES ARE STATIC TORQUE MEASURED PER STANDARD AUDIT METHODS TOLERANCE = ±10%
*3. ASSEMBLY USES HARDENED WASHER OR FASTENER IS PLACED AGAINST PLATED STEEL OR RAW ALUMINUM
4. CLAMP LOAD LISTED FOR SHCS IS SAME AS GRADE 8 OR CLASS 10.9 AND DOES NOT REPRESENT FULL STRENGTH CAPABILITY OF SHCS. IF HIGHER LOAD IS REQUIRED, ADDITIONAL TESTING IS REQUIRED.

NO. 5000059 REV. K

Figure 1-8. Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 5 of 5)

SECTION 2. GENERAL

2.1 MACHINE PREPARATION, INSPECTION, AND MAINTENANCE

General

This section provides the necessary information needed by those personnel that are responsible to place the machine in operation readiness and maintain its safe operating condition. For maximum service life and safe operation, ensure that all the necessary inspections and maintenance have been completed before placing the machine into service. With proper care, maintenance and inspections performed per JLG's recommendations with any and all discrepancies corrected, this product will be fit for continued use.

Preparation, Inspection, and Maintenance

It is important to establish and conform to a comprehensive inspection and preventive maintenance program. The following table outlines the periodic machine inspections and maintenance recommended by JLG Industries, Inc. Consult your national, regional, or local regulations for further requirements for aerial work platforms. The frequency of inspections and maintenance must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

Pre-Start Inspection

It is the User's or Operator's primary responsibility to perform a Pre-Start Inspection of the machine prior to use daily or at each change of operator. Reference the Operator's and Safety Manual for completion procedures for the Pre-Start Inspection. The Operator and Safety Manual must be read in its entirety and understood prior to performing the Pre-Start Inspection.

Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection

The Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection shall be performed by a qualified JLG equipment mechanic. JLG Industries, Inc. recognizes a qualified JLG equipment mechanic as a person who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, extensive knowledge, training, or experience, has successfully demonstrated the ability and proficiency to service, repair, and maintain the subject JLG product model.

The Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection procedures are performed in the same manner, but at different times. The Pre-Delivery Inspection shall be performed prior to each sale, lease, or rental delivery. The Frequent Inspection shall be accomplished for each machine in service for 3 months or 150 hours (whichever comes first); out of service for a period of more than 3 months; or when purchased used. The frequency of this inspection must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

Reference the JLG Pre-Delivery and Frequent Inspection Form and the Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule for items requiring inspection during the performance of these inspections. Reference the appropriate areas of this manual for servicing and maintenance procedures.

Annual Machine Inspection

The Annual Machine Inspection must be performed on an annual basis, no later than thirteen (13) months from the date of the prior Annual Machine Inspection. JLG Industries recommends this task be performed by a Factory-Trained Service Technician. JLG Industries, Inc. recognizes a Factory-Trained Service Technician as a person who has successfully completed the JLG Service Training School for the subject JLG product model. Reference the machine Service and Maintenance Manual and appropriate JLG inspection form for performance of this inspection.

Reference the JLG Annual Machine Inspection Form and the Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule for items requiring inspection during the performance of this inspection. Reference the appropriate areas of this manual for servicing and maintenance procedures.

For the purpose of receiving safety-related bulletins, it is important that JLG Industries, Inc. has updated ownership information for each machine. When performing each Annual Machine Inspection, notify JLG Industries, Inc. of the current machine ownership.

Preventative Maintenance

In conjunction with the specified inspections, maintenance shall be performed by a qualified JLG equipment mechanic. JLG Industries, Inc. recognizes a qualified JLG equipment mechanic as a person who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, extensive knowledge, training, or experience, has successfully demonstrated the ability and proficiency to service, repair, and maintain the subject JLG product model.

Reference the Preventive Maintenance Schedule and the appropriate areas of this manual for servicing and maintenance procedures. The frequency of service and maintenance must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

Table 2-1. Inspection and Maintenance

Type	Frequency	Primary Responsibility	Service Qualification	Reference
Pre-Start Inspection	Before using each day; or whenever there's an Operator change.	User or Operator	User or Operator	Operator and Safety Manual
Pre-Delivery Inspection (See Note)	Before each sale, lease, or rental delivery.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Qualified JLG Mechanic	Service and Maintenance Manual and applicable JLG inspection form.
Frequent Inspection (See Note)	In service for 3 months or 150 hours, whichever comes first; or Out of service for a period of more than 3 months; or purchased used.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Qualified JLG Mechanic	Service and Maintenance Manual and applicable JLG inspection form.
Annual Machine Inspection (See Note)	Annually, no later than 13 months from the date of the prior inspection.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Factory Trained Service Technician (Recommended)	Service and Maintenance Manual and applicable JLG inspection form.
Preventative Maintenance	At intervals as specified in the Service and Maintenance Manual.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Qualified JLG Mechanic	Service and Maintenance Manual

NOTE: *Inspections forms are available from JLG. Use the Service and Maintenance Manual to perform inspections.*

2.2 SERVICE AND GUIDELINES

General

The following information is provided to assist you in the use and application of servicing and maintenance procedures contained in this book.

Safety and Workmanship

Your safety, and that of others, is the first consideration when engaging in the maintenance of equipment. Always be conscious of weight. Never attempt to move heavy parts without the aid of a mechanical device. Do not allow heavy objects to rest in an unstable position. When raising a portion of the equipment, ensure that adequate support is provided.

Cleanliness

1. The most important single item in preserving the long service life of a machine is to keep dirt and foreign materials out of the vital components. Precautions have been taken to safeguard against this. Shields, covers, seals, and filters are provided to keep air, fuel, and oil supplies clean; however, these items must be maintained on a scheduled basis in order to function properly.
2. At any time when air, fuel, or oil lines are disconnected, clear adjacent areas as well as the openings and fittings themselves. As soon as a line or component is disconnected, cap or cover all openings to prevent entry of foreign matter.
3. Clean and inspect all parts during servicing or maintenance, and assure that all passages and openings are unobstructed. Cover all parts to keep them clean. Be sure all parts are clean before they are installed. New parts should remain in their containers until they are ready to be used.

Components Removal and Installation

1. Use adjustable lifting devices, whenever possible, if mechanical assistance is required. All slings (chains, cables, etc.) should be parallel to each other and as near perpendicular as possible to top of part being lifted.
2. Should it be necessary to remove a component on an angle, keep in mind that the capacity of an eyebolt or similar bracket lessens, as the angle between the supporting structure and the component becomes less than 90 degrees.
3. If a part resists removal, check to see whether all nuts, bolts, cables, brackets, wiring, etc., have been removed and that no adjacent parts are interfering.

Component Disassembly and Reassembly

When disassembling or reassembling a component, complete the procedural steps in sequence. Do not partially disassemble or assemble one part, then start on another. Always recheck your work to assure that nothing has been overlooked. Do not make any adjustments, other than those recommended, without obtaining proper approval.

Pressure-Fit Parts

When assembling pressure-fit parts, use a molybdenum disulfide base compound or equivalent to lubricate the mating surface.

Bearings

1. When a bearing is removed, cover it to keep out dirt and abrasives. Clean bearings in nonflammable cleaning solvent and allow to drip dry. Compressed air can be used but do not spin the bearing.
2. Discard bearings if the races and balls (or rollers) are pitted, scored, or burned.
3. If bearing is found to be serviceable, apply a light coat of oil and wrap it in clean (waxed) paper. Do not unwrap reusable or new bearings until they are ready to install.
4. Lubricate new or used serviceable bearings before installation. When pressing a bearing into a retainer or bore, apply pressure to the outer race. If the bearing is to be installed on a shaft, apply pressure to the inner race.

Gaskets

Check that holes in gaskets align with openings in the mating parts. If it becomes necessary to hand-fabricate a gasket, use gasket material or stock of equivalent material and thickness. Be sure to cut holes in the right location, as blank gaskets can cause serious system damage.

Bolt Usage and Torque Application

NOTICE

SELF LOCKING FASTENERS, SUCH AS NYLON INSERT AND THREAD DEFORMING LOCKNUTS, ARE NOT INTENDED TO BE REINSTALLED AFTER REMOVAL.

1. Always use new replacement hardware when installing locking fasteners. Use bolts of proper length. A bolt which is too long will bottom before the head is tight against its related part. If a bolt is too short, there will not be enough thread area to engage and hold the part properly. When replacing bolts, use only those having the same specifications of the original, or one which is equivalent.
2. Unless specific torque requirements are given within the text, standard torque values should be used on heat-treated bolts, studs, and steel nuts, in accordance with recommended shop practices. (See Torque Chart Section 1).

Hydraulic Lines and Electrical Wiring

Clearly mark or tag hydraulic lines and electrical wiring, as well as their receptacles, when disconnecting or removing them from the unit. This will assure that they are correctly reinstalled.

Hydraulic System

1. Keep the system clean. If evidence of metal or rubber particles are found in the hydraulic system, drain and flush the entire system.
2. Disassemble and reassemble parts on clean work surface. Clean all metal parts with non-flammable cleaning solvent. Lubricate components, as required, to aid assembly.

Lubrication

Service applicable components with the amount, type, and grade of lubricant recommended in this manual, at the specified intervals. When recommended lubricants are not available, consult your local supplier for an equivalent that meets or exceeds the specifications listed.

Battery

Clean battery using a non-metallic brush and a solution of baking soda and water. Rinse with clean water. After cleaning, thoroughly dry battery and coat terminals with an anti corrosion compound.

Lubrication and Servicing

Components and assemblies requiring lubrication and servicing are shown in the Lubrication Chart in Section 1.

2.3 LUBRICATION AND INFORMATION

Hydraulic System

1. The primary enemy of a hydraulic system is contamination. Contaminants enter the system by various means, e.g., using inadequate hydraulic oil, allowing moisture, grease, filings, sealing components, sand, etc., to enter when performing maintenance, or by permitting the pump to cavitate due to insufficient system warm-up or leaks in the pump supply (suction) lines.
2. The design and manufacturing tolerances of the component working parts are very close, therefore, even the smallest amount of dirt or foreign matter entering a system can cause wear or damage to the components and generally results in faulty operation. Every precaution must be taken to keep hydraulic oil clean, including reserve oil in storage. Hydraulic system filters should be checked, cleaned, and/or replaced as necessary, at the specified intervals required in the Lubrication Chart in Section 1. Always examine filters for evidence of metal particles.
3. Cloudy oils indicate a high moisture content which permits organic growth, resulting in oxidation or corrosion. If this condition occurs, the system must be drained, flushed, and refilled with clean oil.

4. It is not advisable to mix oils of different brands or types, as they may not contain the same required additives or be of comparable viscosities. Good grade mineral oils, with viscosities suited to the ambient temperatures in which the machine is operating, are recommended for use.

NOTE: *Metal particles may appear in the oil or filters of new machines due to the wear-in of meshing components.*

Hydraulic Oil

1. Refer to Section 1 for recommendations for viscosity ranges.
2. JLG recommends Mobilfluid 424 hydraulic oil, which has an SAE viscosity of 10W-30 and a viscosity index of 152.

NOTE: *Start-up of hydraulic system with oil temperatures below -15 degrees F (-26 degrees C) is not recommended. If it is necessary to start the system in a sub-zero environment, it will be necessary to heat the oil with a low density, 100VAC heater to a minimum temperature of -15 degrees F (-26 degrees C).*

3. The only exception to the above is to drain and fill the system with Mobil DTE 10 oil or its equivalent. This will allow start up at temperatures down to -20 degrees F (-29 degrees C). However, use of this oil will give poor performance at temperatures above 120 degrees F (49 degrees C). Systems using DTE 10 oil should not be operated at temperatures above 200 degrees F (94 degrees C) under any condition.

Changing Hydraulic Oil

1. Filter elements must be changed after the first 50 hours of operation and every 300 hours (unless specified otherwise) thereafter. If it is necessary to change the oil, use only those oils meeting or exceeding the specifications appearing in this manual. If unable to obtain the same type of oil supplied with the machine, consult local supplier for assistance in selecting the proper equivalent. Avoid mixing petroleum and synthetic base oils.
2. Use every precaution to keep the hydraulic oil clean. If the oil must be poured from the original container into another, be sure to clean all possible contaminants from the service container. Always clean the mesh element of the filter and replace the cartridge any time the system oil is changed.
3. While the unit is shut down, a good preventive maintenance measure is to make a thorough inspection of all hydraulic components, lines, fittings, etc., as well as a functional check of each system, before placing the machine back in service.

Lubrication Specifications

Specified lubricants, as recommended by the component manufacturers, are always the best choice, however, multi-purpose greases usually have the qualities which meet a variety of single purpose grease requirements. Should any question arise, regarding the use of greases in maintenance stock, consult your local supplier for evaluation. Refer to Section 1 for an explanation of the lubricant key designations appearing in the Lubrication Chart.

2.4 CYLINDER DRIFT TEST

Theory

When a hydraulic cylinder is supporting a load, cylinder drift may occur as a result of any of the circumstances below:

- Normal leakage of load holding valves or malfunction of load holding valves. See Cylinder Leakage Test and "Cylinder Drift" below for evaluation.
- Damaged or worn piston seals.
- Normal thermal expansion or contraction of the hydraulic oil within cylinders (See Cylinder Thermal Drift below).

The first two circumstances may result in cylinder movement due to oil leaking out of the cylinder externally or by leaking back to tank or due to oil leaking internally from one cylinder chamber to the other.

Thermal expansion or contraction of oil in hydraulic cylinders is a normal occurrence and does not result in oil leaking out of the cylinder or leaking internally from one cylinder chamber to the other. Thermal expansion or contraction is the tendency for materials to change size in response to a change in temperature.

Cylinder Leakage Test

Cylinder oil must be at stabilized ambient temperature before beginning this test.

Measure drift at cylinder rod with a calibrated dial indicator.

In an area free of obstructions, cylinder must have load applied and appropriately positioned to detect drift.

Cylinder leakage is acceptable if it passes this test.

Table 2-2. Cylinder Drift

Cylinder Bore Diameter		Max. Acceptable Drift in 10 Minutes	
inches	mm	inches	mm
3	76.2	0.026	0.66
3.5	89	0.019	0.48
4	101.6	0.015	0.38
5	127	0.009	0.22
6	152.4	0.006	0.15
7	177.8	0.005	0.13
8	203.2	0.004	0.10
9	228.6	0.003	0.08

NOTE: *The information is based on 6 drops per minute cylinder leakage.*

Cylinder Thermal Drift

The oil in all hydraulic cylinders will expand or contract due to thermal effects over time and may result in changes to the boom and/or platform position while the machine is stationary. These effects occur as the cylinder oil changes temperature, usually from a higher oil temperature as it cools and approaches the ambient air temperature. Results of these effects are related to several factors including cylinder length and change in temperature over the time the cylinder remains stationary.

2.5 PINS AND COMPOSITE BEARING REPAIR GUIDELINES

Filament wound bearings.

1. Pinned joints should be disassembled and inspected if the following occurs:
   a. Excessive sloppiness in joints.
   b. Noise originating from the joint during operation.
2. Filament wound bearings should be replaced if any of the following is observed:
   a. Frayed or separated fibers on the liner surface.
   b. Cracked or damaged liner backing.
   c. Bearings that have moved or spun in their housing.
   d. Debris embedded in liner surface.
3. Pins should be replaced if any of the following is observed (pin should be properly cleaned prior to inspection):
   a. Detectable wear in the bearing area.
   b. Flaking, pealing, scoring, or scratches on the pin surface.
   c. Rusting of the pin in the bearing area.
4. Re-assembly of pinned joints using filament wound bearings.
   a. Housing should be blown out to remove all dirt and debris. Bearings and bearing housings must be free of all contamination.
   b. Bearing/pins should be cleaned with a solvent to remove all grease and oil. Filament wound bearing are a dry joint and should not be lubricated unless otherwise instructed (i.e. sheave pins).
   c. Pins should be inspected to ensure it is free of burrs, nicks, and scratches which would damage the bearing during installation and operation.

2.6 WELDING ON JLG EQUIPMENT

NOTE: *This instruction applies to repairs, or modifications to the machine and to welding performed from the machine on an external structure, or component.*

Do the Following When Welding on JLG Equipment

- Disconnect the battery.
- Disconnect the moment pin connection (where fitted).
- Ground only to structure being welded.

Do NOT Do the Following When Welding on JLG Equipment

- Ground on frame and weld on any other area than the chassis.
- Ground on turntable and weld on any other area than the turntable.
- Ground on the platform/support and weld on any other area than the platform/support.
- Ground on a specific boom section and weld on any other area than that specific boom section.
- Allow pins, wear pads, wire ropes, bearings, gearing, seals, valves, electrical wiring, or hoses to be between the grounding position and the welded area.

NOTICE

FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH THE ABOVE REQUIREMENTS MAY RESULT IN COMPONENT DAMAGE (I.E. ELECTRONIC MODULES, SWING BEARING, COLLECTOR RING, BOOM WIRE ROPES ETC.).

Table 2-3. Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule

AREA	INTERVAL		
	Pre-Delivery[1] or Frequent[2] Inspection	Annual[3] (Yearly) Inspection	Every 2 Years
Boom Assembly			
Boom Weldments	1,2,4	1,2,4	
Hose/Cable Carrier Installations	1,2,9,12	1,2,9,12	
Pivot Pins and Pin Retainers	1,2	1,2	
Sheaves, Sheave Pins	1,2	1,2	
Bearings	1,2	1,2	
Wear Pads	1,2	1,2	
Covers or Shields	1,2	1,2	
Extend/Retract Chain or Cable Systems	1,2,3	1,2,3	
Boom Assembly	1,2,3,4,5	1,2,3,4,5,7,9,14	
Platform Assembly			
Platform		1,2	
Railing	1	1,2	
Gate	1,5	1,5	
Floor	1	1,2	
Rotator	5,9,15	5,9,15	
Lanyard Anchorage Point	1,2,10	1,2,10	
Turntable Assembly			
Swing Bearing or Worm Gear	1,2,14	1,2,3,13,14	
Oil Coupling	9	9	
Swing Drive System	11	11	
Turntable Lock	1,2,5	1,2,5	
Hood, Hood Props, Hood Latches	5	1,2,5	
Chassis Assembly			
Tires	16,17,18	16,17,18	
Wheel Nuts/Bolts	15	15	
Wheel Bearings			14,24
Oscillating Axle/Lockout Cylinder Systems	5,8	5,8	
Extendable Axle Systems	5,8	5,8	
Steer Components	1,2	1,2	
Spindle Thrust Bearing/Washers	1,2	1,2	
Drive Hubs	11	11	

Table 2-3. Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule

AREA	INTERVAL		
	Pre-Delivery[1] or Frequent[2] Inspection	Annual[3] (Yearly) Inspection	Every 2 Years
Functions/Controls			
Platform Controls	5,6	6	
Ground Controls	5,6	6	
Function Control Locks, Guards, or Detents	1,5	5	
Footswitch	5	5	
Emergency Stop Switches (Ground & Platform)	5	5	
Function Limit or Cutout Switch Systems	5	5	
Drive Brakes	5	5	
Swing Brakes	5	5	
Auxiliary Power	5	5	
Power System			
Engine Idle, Throttle, and RPM	3	3	
Engine Fluids (Oil, Coolant, Fuel)	9,11	11	
Air/Fuel Filter	1,7	7	
Exhaust System	1,9	9	
Batteries	1,9	19	
Battery Fluid	11	11	
Battery Charger	5	5	
Fuel Reservoir, Cap, and Breather	1,2,5	1,5	
Hydraulic/Electric System			
Hydraulic Pumps	1,2,9	1,2,9	
Hydraulic Cylinders	1,2,7,9	1,2,9	
Cylinder Attachment Pins and Pin Retainers	1,2,9	1,2	
Hydraulic Hoses, Lines, and Fittings	1,2,9,12	1,2,9,12	
Hydraulic Reservoir, Cap, and Breather	1,2,5,9	1,5	24
Hydraulic Filter	1,7,9	7	
Hydraulic Fluid	7,11	7,11	
Electrical Connections	1,20	20	
Instruments, Gauges, Switches, Lights, Horn	1	5,23	
General			
Operation and Safety Manuals in Storage Box	21	21	
ANSI and AEM Manuals/Handbooks Installed (ANSI Markets Only)		21	
Capacity Decals Installed, Secure, Legible	21	21	
All Decals/Placards Installed, Secure, Legible	21	21	

Table 2-3. Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule

AREA	INTERVAL		
	Pre-Delivery[1] or Frequent[2] Inspection	Annual[3] (Yearly) Inspection	Every 2 Years
Annual Machine Inspection Due		21	
No Unauthorized Modifications or Additions	21	21	
All Relevant Safety Publications Incorporated	21	21	
General Structural Condition and Welds	2,4	2,4	
All Fasteners, Pins, Shields, and Covers	1,2	1,2	
Grease and Lubricate to Specifications	22	22	
Function Test of All Systems	21	21, 22	
Paint and Appearance	7	7	
Stamp Inspection Date on Frame		22	
Notify JLG of Machine Ownership		22	

Footnotes:

[1] Prior to each sale, lease, or delivery

[2] In service for 3 months or 150 Hours; or Out of service for 3 months or more; or Purchased used

[3] Annually, no later than 13 months from the date of the prior inspection

Performance Codes:

1 - Check for proper and secure installation
2 - Visual inspection for damage, cracks, distortion or excessive wear
3 - Check for proper adjustment
4 - Check for cracked or broken welds
5 - Operates Properly
6 - Returns to neutral or "off" position when released
7 - Clean and free of debris
8 - Interlocks function properly
9 - Check for signs of leakage
10 - Decals installed and legible
11 - Check for proper fluid level
12 - Check for chafing and proper routing
13 - Check for proper tolerances
14 - Properly lubricated
15 - Torqued to proper specification
16 - No gouges, excessive wear, or cords showing
17 - Properly inflated and seated around rim
18 - Proper and authorized components
19 - Fully charged
20 - No loose connections, corrosion, or abrasions
21 - Verify
22 - Perform
23 - Sealed Properly
24 - Drain, Clean, Refill

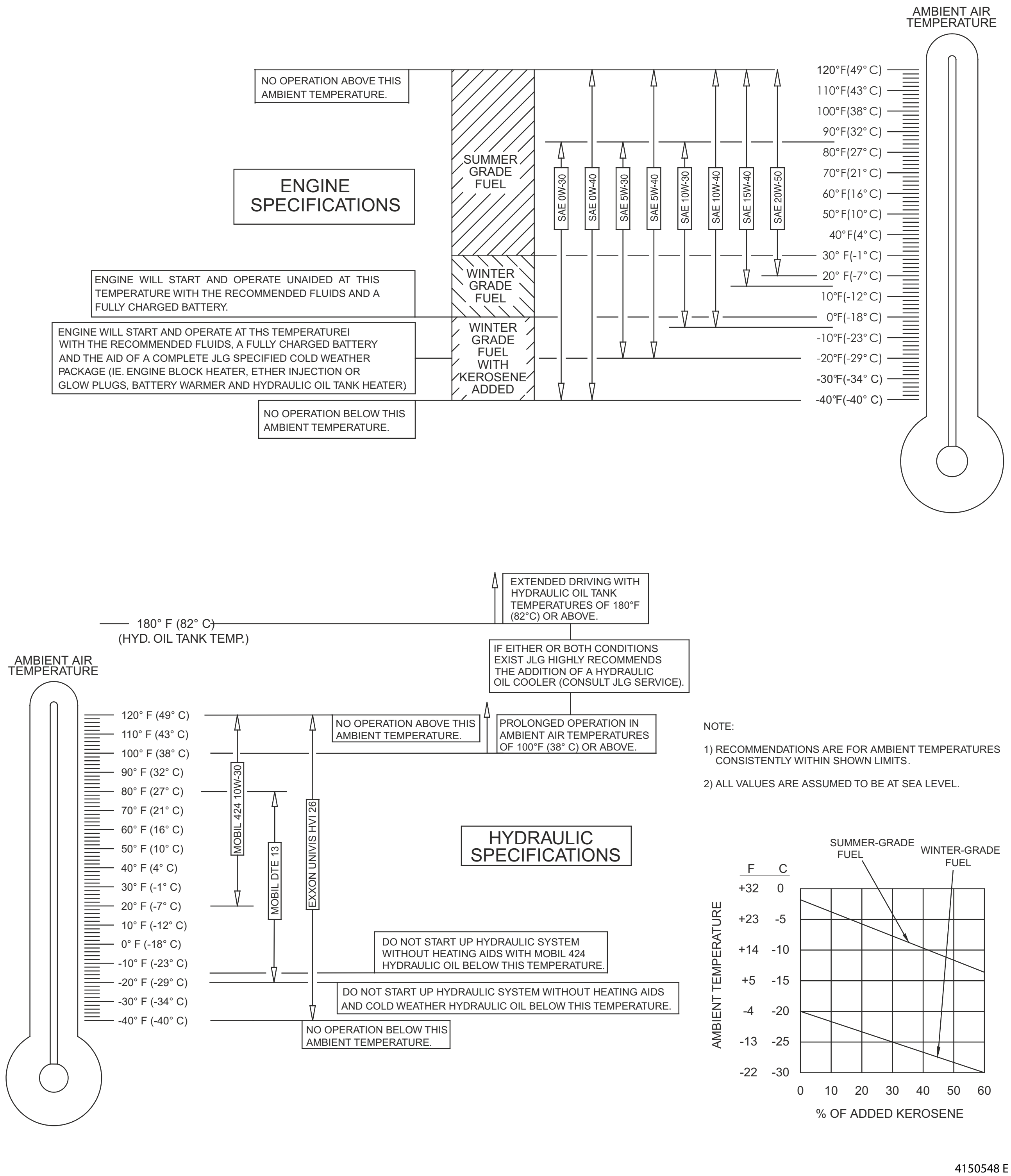


Figure 2-1. Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - Deutz

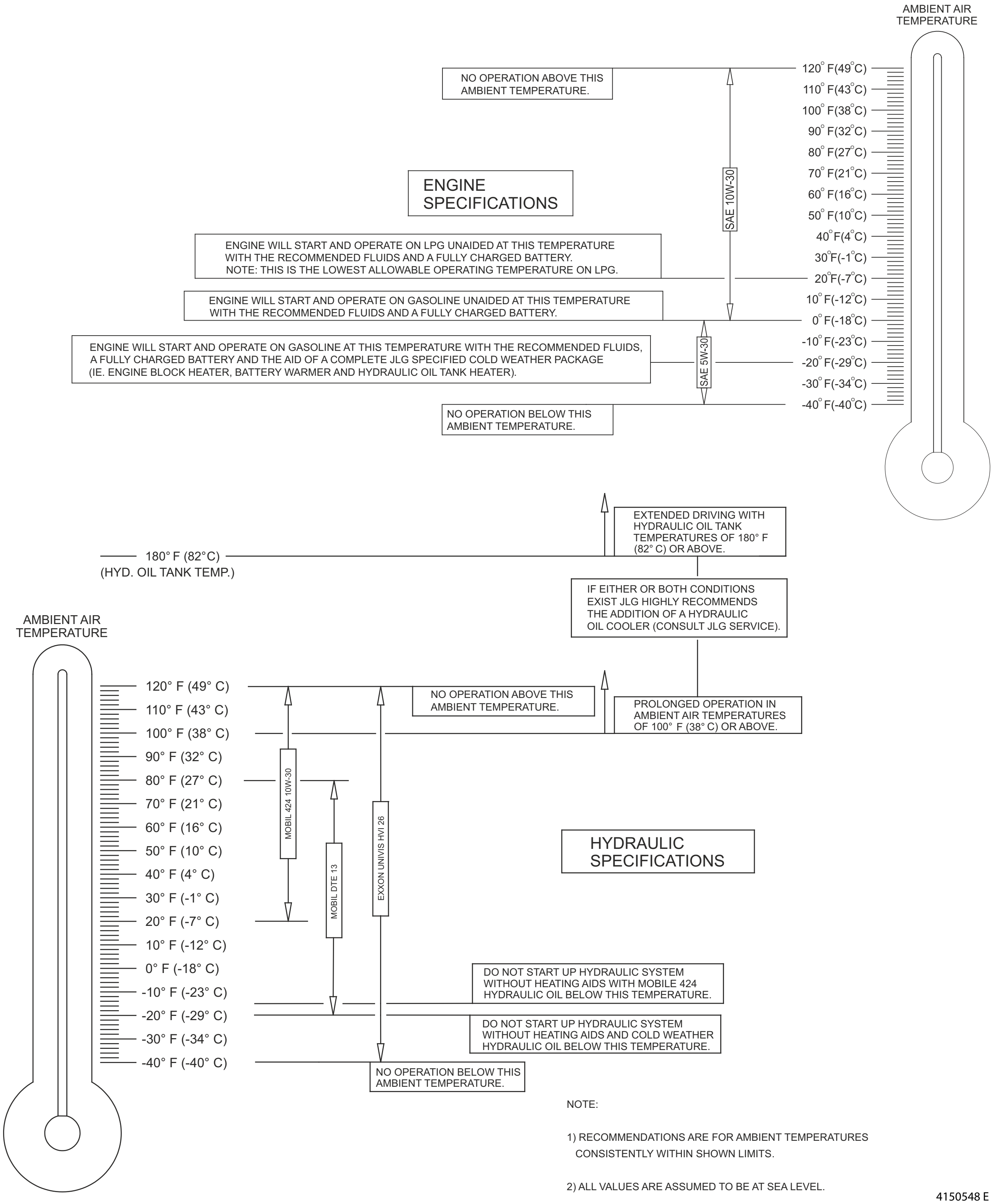


Figure 2-2. Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - GM

NOTES:

SECTION 3. CHASSIS & TURNTABLE

3.1 TIRES & WHEELS

Tire Inflation

The air pressure for pneumatic tires must be equal to the air pressure that is stenciled on the side of the JLG product or rim decal for safe and proper operational characteristics.

Tire Damage

For pneumatic tires, JLG Industries, Inc. recommends that when any cut, rip, or tear is discovered that exposes sidewall or tread area cords in the tire, measures must be taken to remove the JLG product from service immediately. Arrangements must be made for replacement of the tire or tire assembly.

For polyurethane foam filled tires, JLG Industries, Inc. recommends that when any of the following are discovered, measures must be taken to remove the JLG product from service immediately and arrangements must be made for replacement of the tire or tire assembly.

- a smooth, even cut through the cord plies which exceeds 3 in. (7.5 cm) in total length.
- any tears or rips (ragged edges) in the cord plies which exceeds 1 in. (2.5 cm) in any direction.
- any punctures which exceed 1 in. in diameter.
- any damage to the bead area cords of the tire.

If a tire is damaged but is within the above noted criteria, the tire must be inspected on a daily basis to insure the damage has not propagated beyond the allowable criteria.

Tire Replacement

JLG recommends a replacement tire be the same size, ply and brand as originally installed on the machine. Please refer to the JLG Parts Manual for the part number of the approved tires for a particular machine model. If not using a JLG approved replacement tire, we recommend that replacement tires have the following characteristics:

- Equal or greater ply/load rating and size of original.
- Tire tread contact width equal or greater than original.
- Wheel diameter, width, and offset dimensions equal to the original.
- Approved for the application by the manufacturer (including inflation pressure and maximum tire load).

Unless specifically approved by JLG Industries Inc. do not replace a foam filled or ballast filled tire assembly with a pneumatic tire. When selecting and installing a replacement tire, ensure that all tires are inflated to the pressure recommended by JLG. Due to size variations between tire brands, both tires on the same axle should be the same.

Wheel Replacement

The rims installed on each product model have been designed for stability requirements which consist of track width, tire pressure, and load capacity. Size changes such as rim width, center piece location, larger or smaller diameter, etc., without written factory recommendations, may result in an unsafe condition regarding stability.

Wheel Installation

It is extremely important to apply and maintain proper wheel mounting torque.

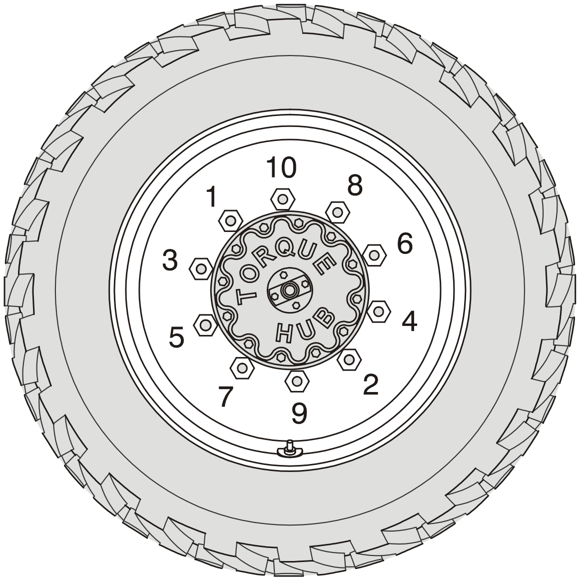
⚠ WARNING

WHEEL NUTS MUST BE INSTALLED AND MAINTAINED AT THE PROPER TORQUE TO PREVENT LOOSE WHEELS, BROKEN STUDS, AND POSSIBLE DANGEROUS SEPARATION OF WHEEL FROM THE AXLE. BE SURE TO USE ONLY THE NUTS MATCHED TO THE CONE ANGLE OF THE WHEEL.

Tighten the lug nuts to the proper torque to prevent wheels from coming loose. Use a torque wrench to tighten the fasteners. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the fasteners with a lug wrench, then immediately have a service garage or dealer tighten the lug nuts to the proper torque. Over-tightening will result in breaking the studs or permanently deforming the mounting stud holes in the wheels. The proper procedure for attaching wheels is as follows:

1. Start all nuts by hand to prevent cross threading. DO NOT use a lubricant on threads or nuts.

2. Tighten nuts in the following sequence:



3. The tightening of the nuts should be done in stages. Following the recommended sequence, tighten nuts per wheel torque chart.

Table 3-1. Wheel Torque Chart

TORQUE SEQUENCE		
1st Stage	2nd Stage	3rd Stage
70 ft. lbs. (95 Nm)	170 ft. lbs. (225 Nm)	300 ft. lbs. (405 Nm)

4. Wheel nuts should be torqued after first 50 hours of operation and after each wheel removal. Check torque every 3 months or 150 hours of operation.

3.2 TOW BAR (IF EQUIPPED)

⚠ WARNING

RUNAWAY VEHICLE/MACHINE HAZARD. MACHINE HAS NO TOWING BRAKES. TOWING VEHICLE MUST BE ABLE TO CONTROL MACHINE AT ALL TIMES. ON-HIGHWAY TOWING NOT PERMITTED. FAILURE TO FOLLOW INSTRUCTIONS COULD CAUSE SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.

MAXIMUM TOWING SPEED 5 M.P.H. (8 K.M.H.)

MAXIMUM TOWING GRADE 25%.

Prior to towing the machine, complete the following:

⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT TOW MACHINE WITH ENGINE OPERATING OR DRIVE HUBS ENGAGED.

1. Retract, lower and position boom in travel position; lock turntable.
2. Lower tow bar and connect to towing vehicle.
3. Disconnect drive hubs by inverting disconnect cap.
4. Position steer/tow selector valve for towing; pull valve knob out for towing. The machine is now in the towing mode.

After towing the machine, complete the following:

1. Actuate steer/tow selector valve for steering; push valve knob in to the actuated position.
2. Reconnect drive hubs by inverting disconnect cap.
3. Disconnect tow bar from towing vehicle and place it in the stowed position as shown in Figure 3-1. The machine is now in the driving mode.

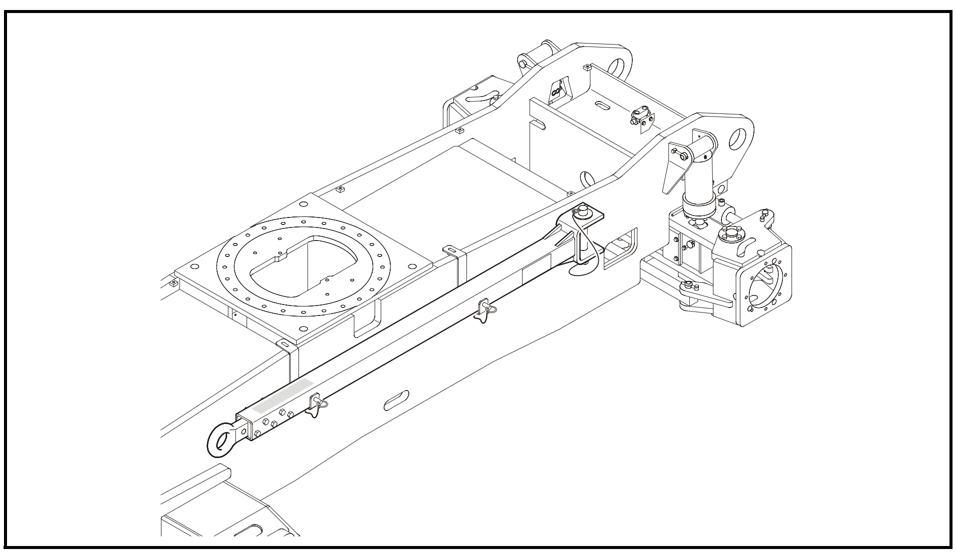
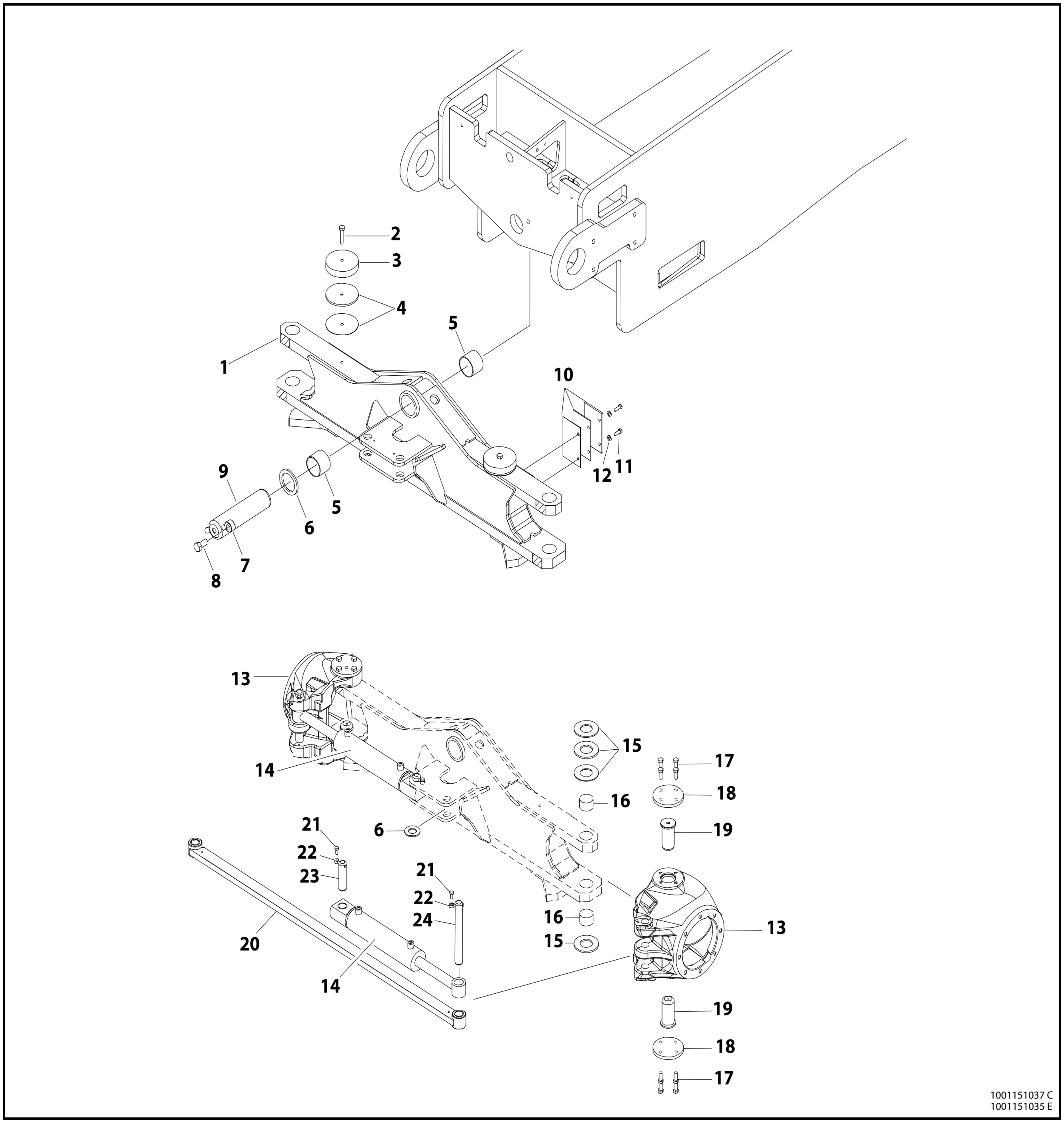
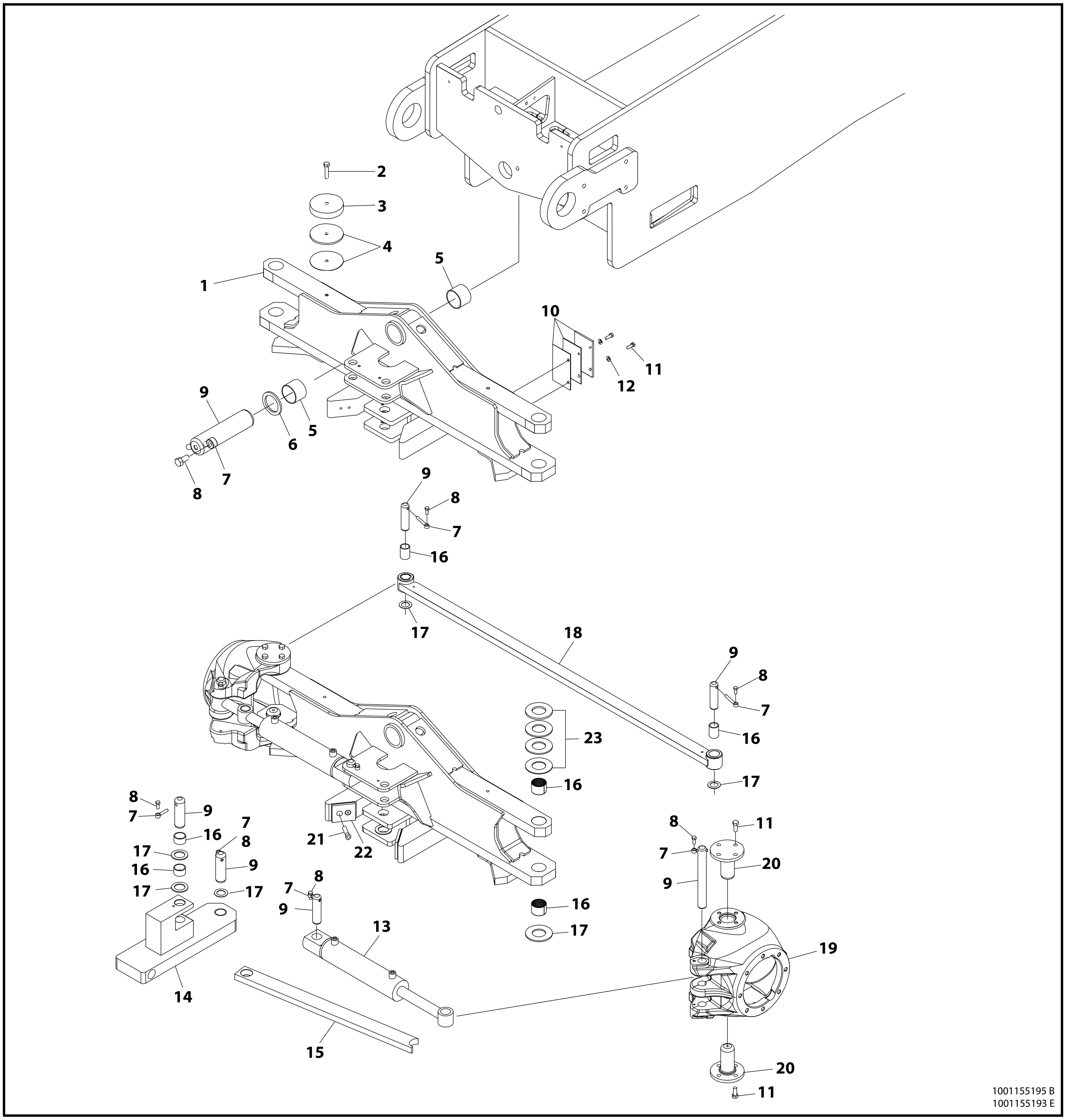


Figure 3-1. Tow Bar



1. Axle	7. Keeper Pin	13. Spindle	19. Kingpin
2. Bolt	8. Bolt	14. Steer Cylinder Assembly	20. Tie-Rod
3. Stop Plate	9. Pin	15. Thrust Washer	21. Bolt
4. Shim	10. Shim	16. Bearing	22. Keeper Pin
5. Bushing	11. Bolt	17. Bolt	23. Pin
6. Special Washer	12. Washer	18. Plate	24. Pin

Figure 3-2. Axle and Steering Installation without Tow Package



1. Axle	5. Bushing	9. Pin	13. Steer Cylinder Assembly	17. Thrust Washer	21. Bolt
2. Bolt	6. Special Washer	10. Shim	14. Pivot Bar	18. Tie-Rod	22. Stop Pad
3. Stop Plate	7. Keeper Pin	11. Bolt	15. Link	19. Spindle	23. Special Washer
4. Shim	8. Bolt	12. Washer	16. Bushing	20. Kingpin	

Figure 3-3. Axle and Steering Installation with Tow Package

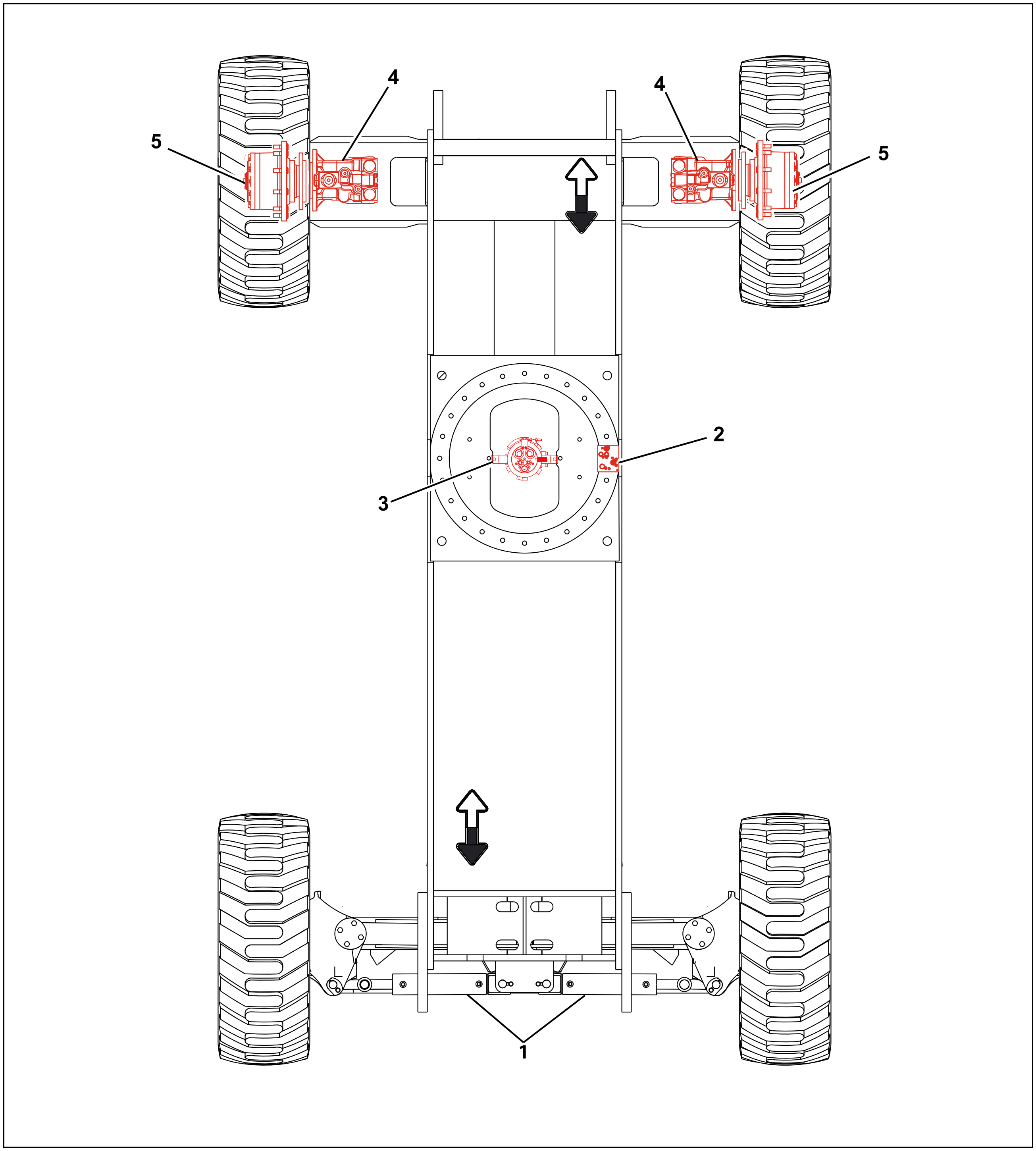
3.3 OSCILLATING AXLE LOCKOUT TEST (IF EQUIPPED)

NOTICE

LOCKOUT SYSTEM TEST MUST BE PERFORMED QUARTERLY, ANY TIME A SYSTEM COMPONENT IS REPLACED, OR WHEN IMPROPER SYSTEM OPERATION IS SUSPECTED.

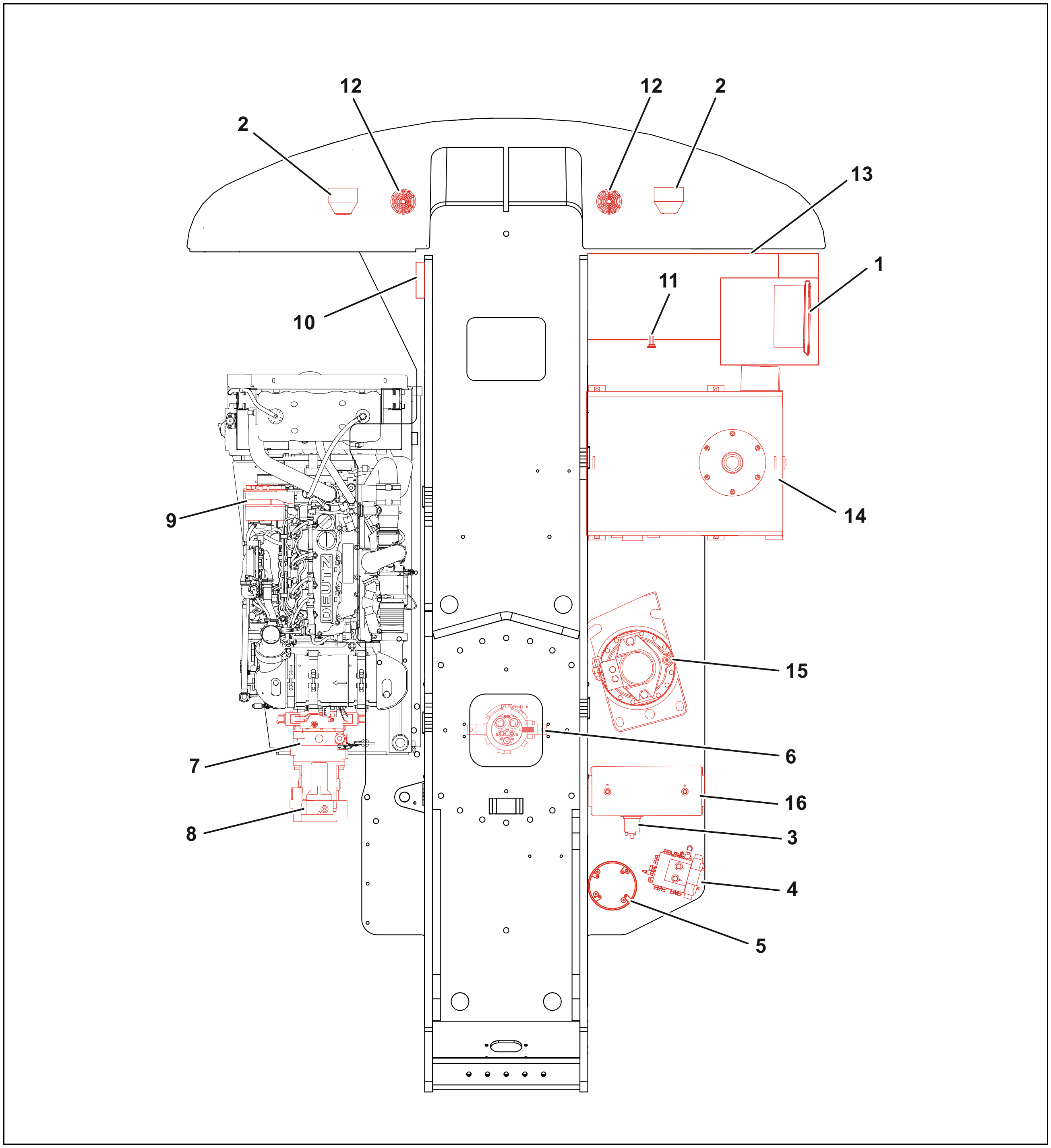
NOTE: *Ensure boom is fully retracted, lowered, and centered between drive wheels prior to beginning lockout cylinder test.*

1. Place a 6 in. (15.2 cm) high block with ascension ramp in front of left front wheel.
2. From platform control station, Start Engine.
3. Position Drive Speed/Torque Select switch to slow.
4. Place DRIVE control lever to FORWARD position and carefully drive machine up ascension ramp until left front wheel is on top of block.
5. Carefully activate SWING control lever and position boom over right side of machine.
6. With boom over right side of machine, place DRIVE control lever to REVERSE and drive machine off of block and ramp.
7. Have an assistant check to see that left front or right rear wheel remains elevated in position off of ground.
8. Carefully activate SWING control lever and return boom to stowed position (centered between drive wheels). When boom reaches center, stowed position, lockout cylinders should release and allow wheel to rest on ground, it may be necessary activate DRIVE to release cylinders.
9. Place the 6 in. (15.2 cm) high block with ascension ramp in front of right front wheel.
10. Place DRIVE control lever to FORWARD and carefully drive machine up ascension ramp until right front wheel is on top of block.
11. Carefully activate SWING control lever and position boom over left side of machine.
12. With boom over left side of machine, place DRIVE control lever to REVERSE and drive machine off of block and ramp.
13. Have an assistant check to see that right front or left rear wheel remains elevated in position off of ground.
14. Carefully activate SWING control lever and return boom to stowed position (centered between drive wheels). When boom reaches center, stowed position, lockout cylinders should release and allow wheel to rest on ground, it may be necessary activate DRIVE to release cylinders.
15. If lockout cylinders do not function properly, have qualified personnel correct the malfunction prior to any further operation.



1. Steer Cylinder Assembly
2. Flow Divider Valve
3. Swivel
4. Drive Motor
5. Drive Hub

Figure 3-4. Chassis Component Location



1. Ground Control Box
2. Headlight
3. Auxiliary Power Relay
4. Main Control Valve
5. Auxiliary Power Pump
6. Swivel
7. Drive Pumps
8. Function Pump
9. Generator
10. Deutz Module & Diagnostic Connector
11. Fuel Level Sensor
12. Strobe
13. Fuel Tank
14. Hydraulic Oil Tank
15. Swing Drive
16. Battery

Figure 3-5. Turntable Component Location

3.4 WHEEL DRIVE ASSEMBLY

Removal

NOTE: *The drive motor can be removed through the axle flange as part of the wheel drive assembly or they can be removed separately through the bottom of the frame while leaving the torque hub bolted to the axle.*

1. Use a jack to lift the frame enough so the tire and wheel assembly is off of the ground. Place blocking strong enough to support the weight of the machine under the frame and remove the jack.

NOTE: *The foam-filled tire & wheel assembly weighs approximately 601 lbs. (272.5 kg).*

2. Remove hardware securing wheel and remove wheel assembly. Using suitable lifting device lift the wheel assembly and place in a suitable area.
3. Through the access holes in the axle, tag and disconnect the hydraulic lines running to the drive motor. Cap or plug all openings to ensure no dirt enters the hydraulic system.

NOTE: *The drive hub and drive motor assembly weighs approximately 256 lbs. (116.1 kg).*

4. Use a supporting device capable of handling the weight of the drive hub, and drive motor, and unbolt the torque hub from the frame. Remove the entire assembly from the machine.
5. Remove the nuts and washers that secure the drive motor to the torque hub and remove the drive motor.

Installation

1. Install the washers and nuts to secure the torque hub and drive motor and torque to 70 ft. lbs. (102 Nm).
2. Place the torque hub flange against the mounting flange on the axle and fasten it in place with the bolts and washers. Torque the bolts to 165 ft. lbs. (224 Nm).
3. Using adequate support, install wheel into wheel assembly and secure with bolts and nuts. Torque the nuts to 300 ft. lbs. (407 Nm).

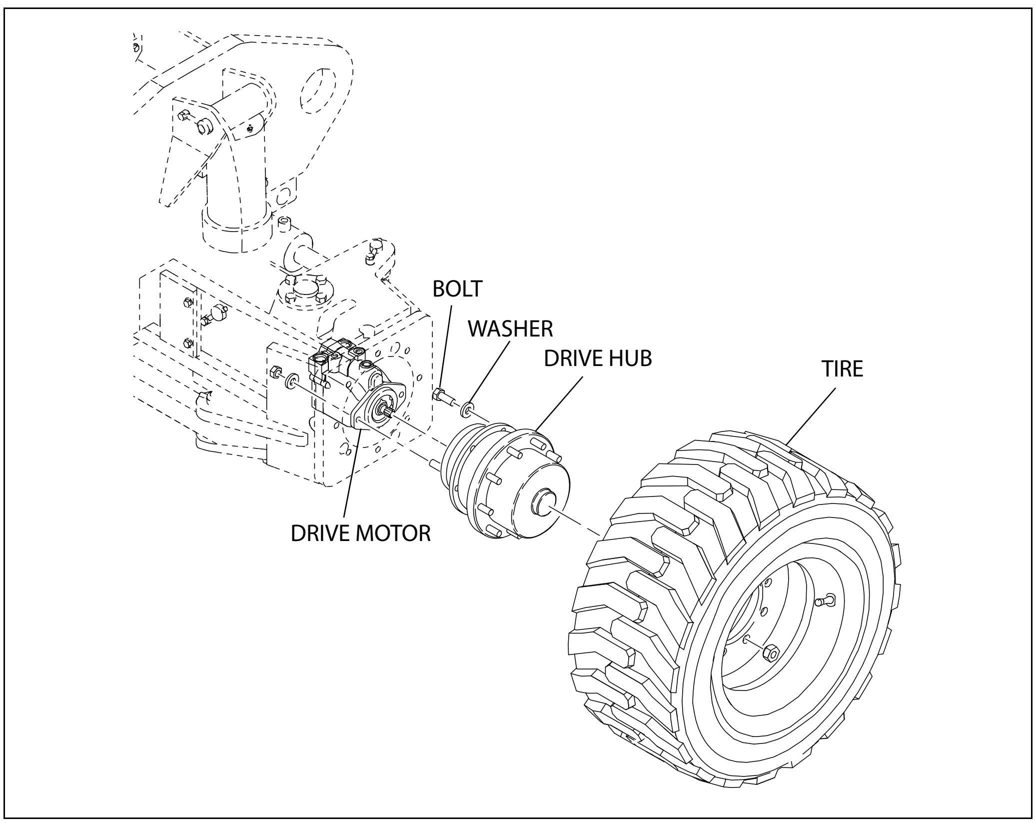


Figure 3-6. Wheel Drive Installation

3.5 DRIVE HUB

Disassembly

1. Position hub over suitable container and remove drain plugs (10) from unit. Allow oil to completely drain, then replace drain plugs.
2. Remove bolts (41) securing cover assembly to hub (7). Remove cover assembly (23) and discard o-ring seal (22).
3. Lift carrier assembly and top thrust washer and thrust bearing(39, 40) from hub. Thrust washer may stick inside cover.
4. Pry ring gear (21) loose from hub and remove it. Remove o-ring seal (22) from hub counterbore and discard it.
5. Remove input gear (37) and thrust spacer (36) from input shaft assembly and remove input shaft assembly from hub.
6. Lift internal gear (12) and thrust washer and thrust bearing (39, 40) from hub. Thrust washer may stick to bottom of carrier.
7. Remove retaining ring (9) from spindle (1) and discard; lift hub from spindle.

⚠ CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING RETAINING RING REMOVAL.

8. Remove inside bearing cone (6) and bearing shim (8).
9. If necessary, pry seal (2) out of hub using screwdriver or pry bar. With seal removed, outside bearing cone (4) can be removed.
10. If necessary, remove inner and outer bearing cups (3, 5) using a suitable slide hammer puller or driven out with a punch.
11. To remove the cluster gears from the carrier, drive the anti-roll pin into the planet shaft of the cluster gear. After the planet shaft is removed, the roll pin should be driven out of the planet shaft.

NOTICE

WHEN REBUILDING TORQUE HUB, REMOVE AND REPLACE ALL O-RINGS AND RETAINING RINGS.

Cleaning and Inspection

1. Thoroughly clean all parts in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect bearing cups and cones for damage, pitting, corrosion, or excessive wear. If necessary, replace bearings as a complete set ensuring that they remain covered until use.
3. Inspect bearing mounting surfaces on spindle, hub, input shaft and carrier. Replace components as necessary.
4. Inspect all geared components for chipped or broken teeth and for excessive or uneven wear patterns.
5. Inspect carrier for damage, especially in anti-roll pin and planet shaft hole areas.
6. Inspect all planet shafts for scoring or other damage.
7. Inspect all threaded components for damage including stretching, thread deformation, or twisting.
8. Inspect seal mounting area in hub for burrs or sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces or replace components as necessary.
9. Inspect cover for cracks or other damage, and o-ring sealing area for burrs or sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces or replace cover as necessary.

Repair

1. Cover Assembly.
   a. Remove two bolts (25) securing disconnect cap (26) to cover (23) and remove cap.
   b. Remove two bolts (25) securing cover cap (24) to cover and remove cap.
   c. Remove disconnect rod (27) from cap and remove o-rings (28, 29) from cover cap. Discard o-rings.
   d. If necessary, remove pipe plug (30) from cover.
   e. Clean and inspect parts in accordance with Cleaning and Inspection procedures. Replace parts as necessary.
   f. If removed, screw pipe plug into cover.
   g. Slip o-ring (29) over cover cap and against face.
   h. Place o-ring (28) into cover cap internal groove. Disconnect rod may be used to push o-ring into groove.
   i. Place cover cap into cover with large hole located over pipe plug. Secure cover cap to cover with two bolts. Torque bolts to 70-80 in. lbs. (7.9-9.0 Nm).
   j. Place disconnect cap over cover cap with nipple facing out and secure with two bolts. Torque bolts to 70-80 in. lbs. (7.9-9.0 Nm).
   k. Turn cover over and push disconnect rod into cover cap. Rod will be held in place by friction from o-ring.
2. Carrier Assembly.
   a. Drive anti-roll pin (19) into planet shaft (17) using a suitable punch.
   b. Using a suitable press, press planet shaft from carrier (13). After planet shaft is removed, drive anti-roll pin from shaft.
   c. Remove cluster gear (18) and thrust washers (14) from carriers.

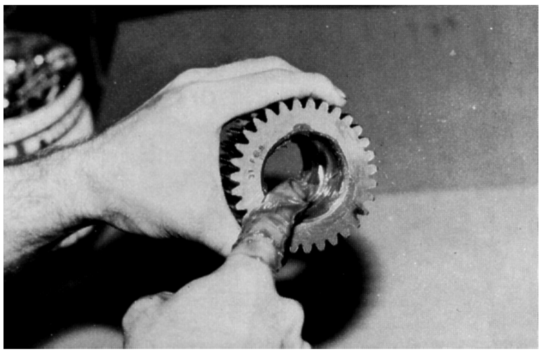
d. Remove needle rollers (15) from cluster gear bore.

e. Remove spacer (16) from cluster gear bore and remove second set of needle rollers (15).

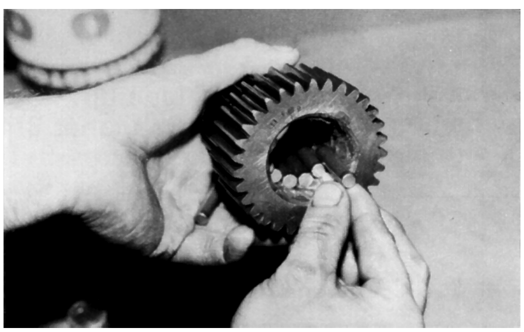
f. Repeat steps (a) through (e) for remaining two cluster gears.

g. Clean and inspect all parts in accordance with Cleaning and Inspection procedures. Replace parts as necessary.

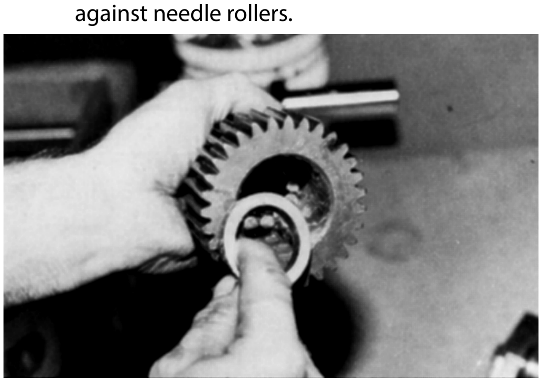
h. Apply a coat of grease or petroleum jelly to cluster gear bore.



i. Place needle rollers into cluster gear bore.



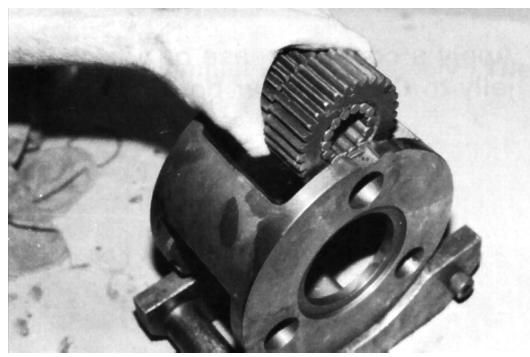
j. Place spacer into opposite side of cluster gear and against needle rollers.



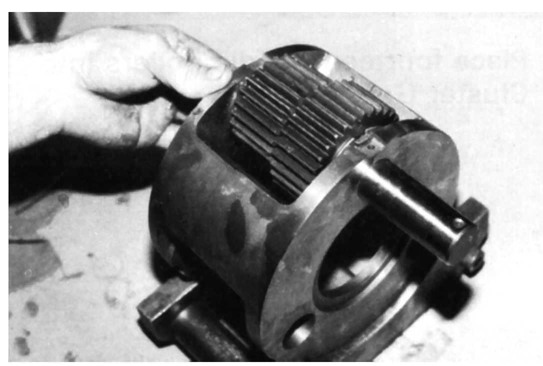
k. Place second set of needle rollers into cluster gear.

l. Apply grease or petroleum jelly to tang side of two thrust washers. Place thrust washers against bosses in carrier with washer tang fitting into slot in carrier outside diameter.

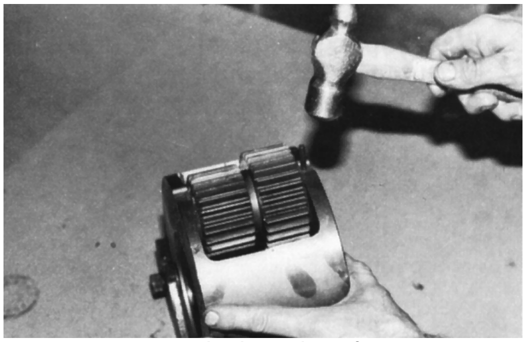
m. While keeping thrust washers in place, slide cluster gear into carrier with larger gear on side with small pin hole.



n. Line up cluster gear and thrust washers with hole in carrier and slide planet shaft through. Ensure chamfered side of hole in planet shaft is lined up with pin hole in carrier.



o. Drive anti-roll pin flush into carrier hole, locking planet shaft into place.



p. Repeat steps (h) through (o) for remaining two cluster gears.

3. Input Shaft Assembly.

CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING RETAINING RING REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

a. Carefully remove retaining ring (33) from counterbore in the spindle (1) and discard retaining ring.

b. Remove two washers (31) and spring (32) from input shaft.

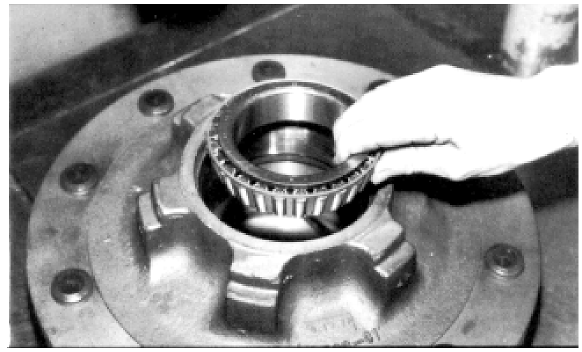
c. Clean and inspect all parts in accordance with Cleaning and Inspection procedures. Replace parts as necessary.

d. Place washer (31), spring (32), and washer (31), in that order, onto input shaft.

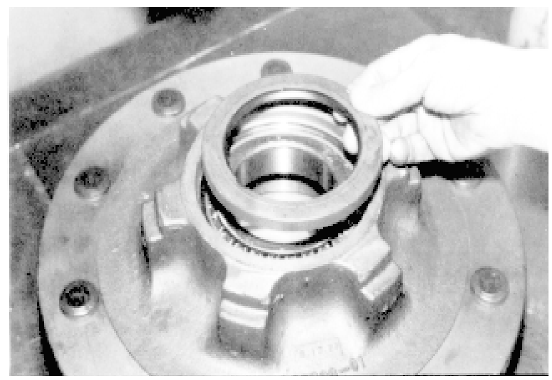
Assembly

1. Using a suitable press, press new bearing cups (3, 5), with large inside diameters facing out, into hub (7) counterbores.

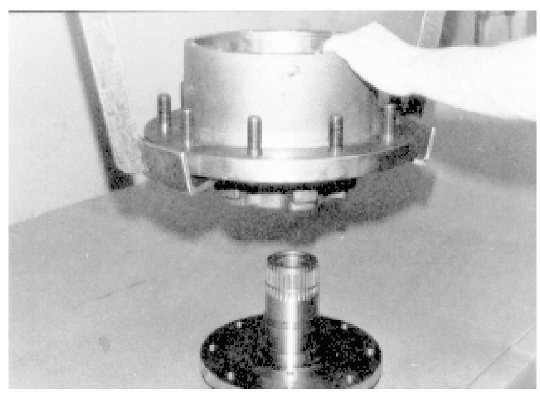
2. Place bearing cone (4) into bearing cup (3) in small end of hub.



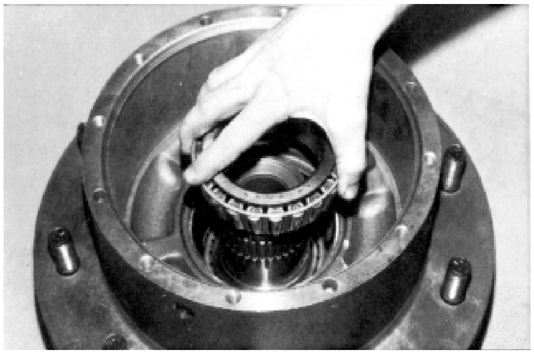
3. Press new seal (2) into hub counterbore with flat metal side facing in. Use a flat object to ensure that seal is pressed evenly and is flush with hub face.



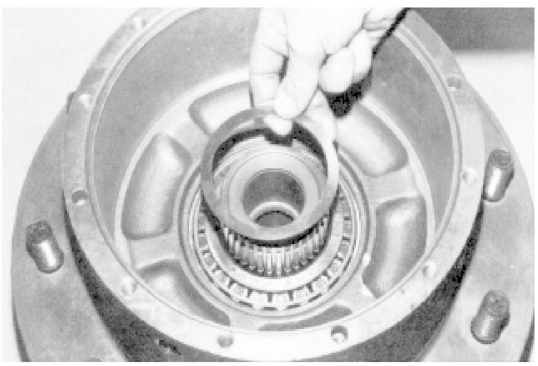
4. Lower hub onto spindle (1) with large open end up.



5. Place bearing cone (6) over end of spindle and into bearing cup.



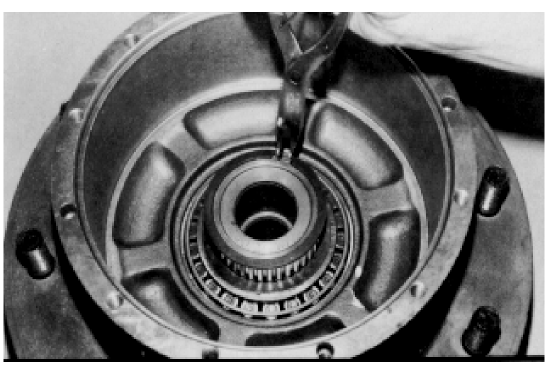
6. Place bearing shim (8) over end of spindle and against bearing cone.



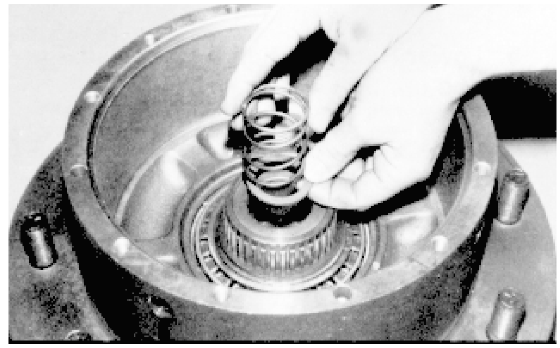
⚠ CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING RETAINING RING INSTALLATION.

7. Install retaining ring (9) completely into spindle groove and against bearing shim. Ensure retaining ring is entirely in groove.

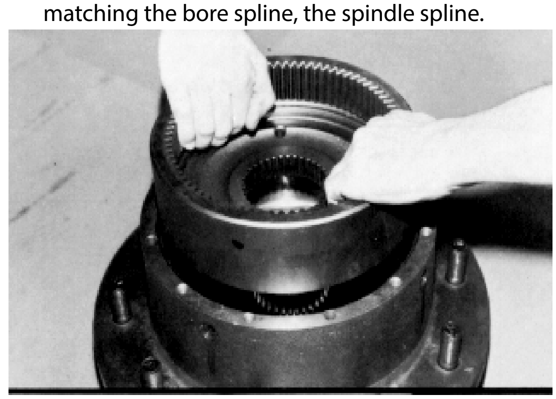


8. The disengage spacer and spring are installed into the counterbore of the spindle.

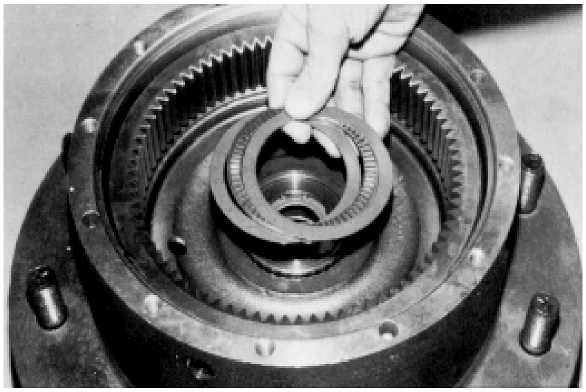


9. Install retaining ring into input shaft groove to secure spacers and spring to shaft.

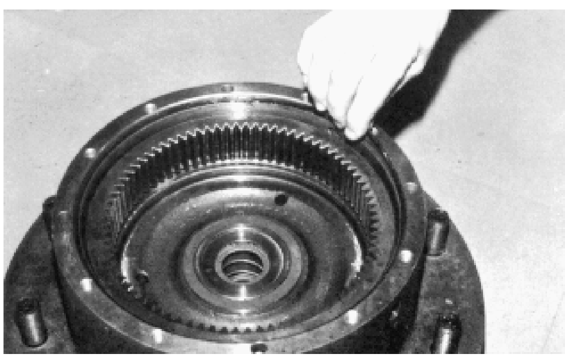
10. Place the internal gear (12) onto end of spindle by matching the bore spline, the spindle spline.



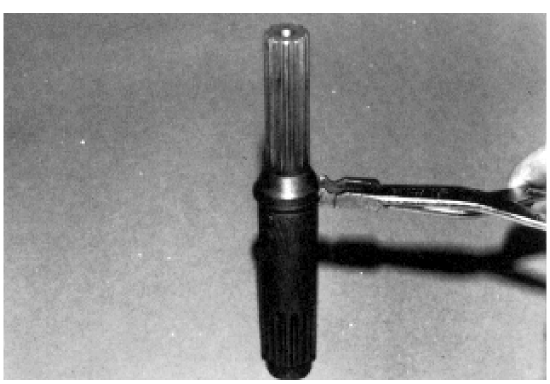
11. Install thrust washers and thrust bearing (39, 40) on the portion of the spindle which extends into the internal gear.



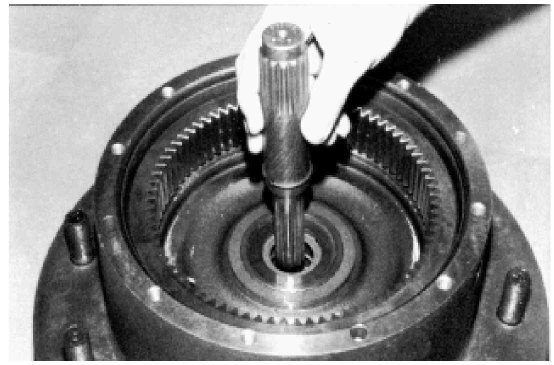
12. The o-ring is placed into the counterbore provided in the hub. Slight stretching may be necessary. Use sufficient grease or petroleum jelly to hold in place.



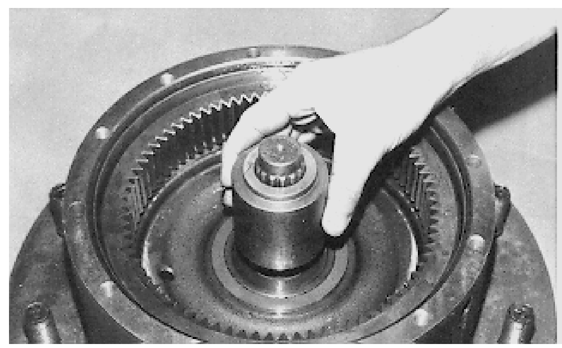
13. Install retaining ring (34) into input shaft retaining ring groove.



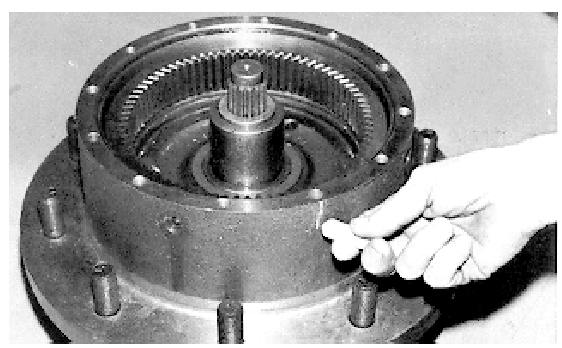
14. Place input shaft assembly (35) into spindle bore with unsplined end facing out.
The action of the spring should be checked at this point.



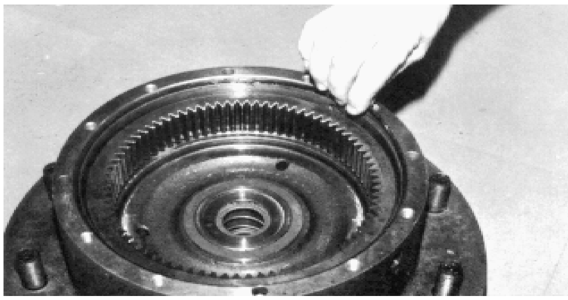
15. Place thrust spacer (36) over input shaft (35) with counterbore side facing spindle.



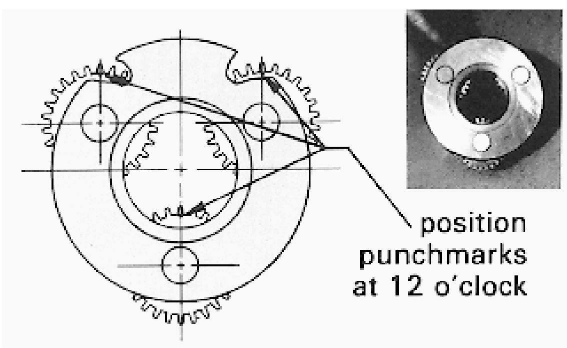
16. Locate the four counter reamed holes in the face of the hub, mark them for later identification.



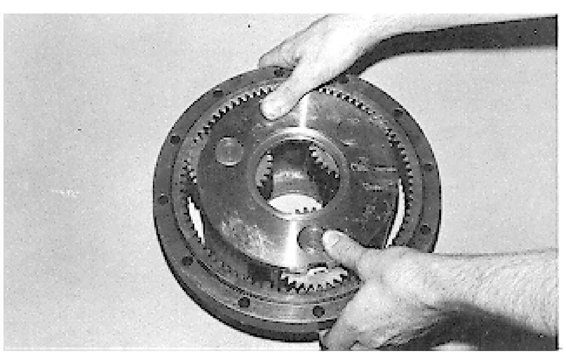
17. Place o-ring (22) into cover assembly counterbore. Use petroleum jelly or grease to hold o-ring in place. Slight stretching of o-ring may be necessary to insure proper seating.



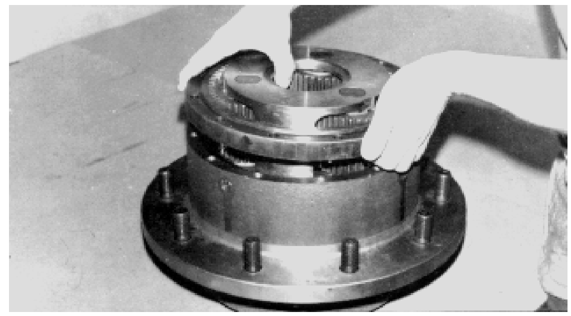
18. Place carrier assembly on a flat surface with large gears up and positioned as shown. Find punch marked tooth on each large gear and locate at 12 o'clock (straight up) from each planet pin. Marked tooth will be located just under carrier on upper two gears.



19. With shoulder side of ring gear (21) facing down, place ring gear over (into mesh with) large gears. Ensure punch marks remain in correct location during ring gear installation. The side of the ring gear with 'X' stamped on it should be up.

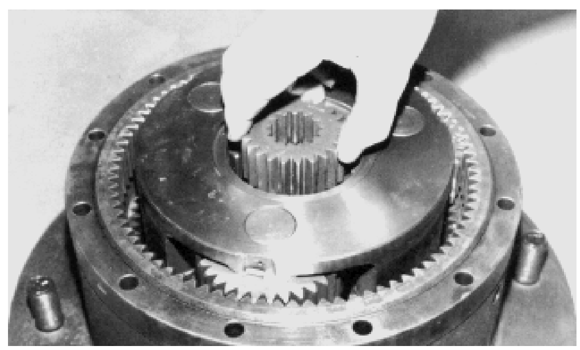


20. While holding ring gear, and cluster gears in mesh, place small side of cluster gears into mesh with internal gear. On ring gear, locate hole marked 'X' over one of the marked counterbore holes in hub.

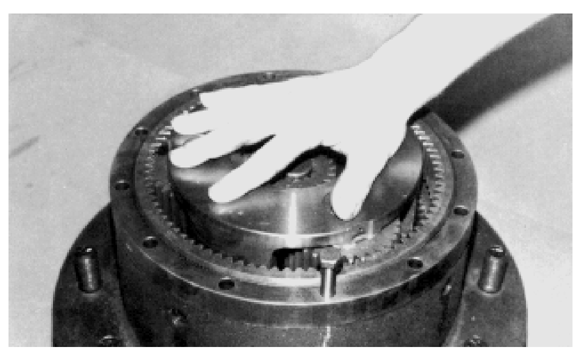


NOTE: *If gears do not mesh easily or carrier assembly does not rotate freely, then remove carrier and ring gear and check cluster gear timing.*

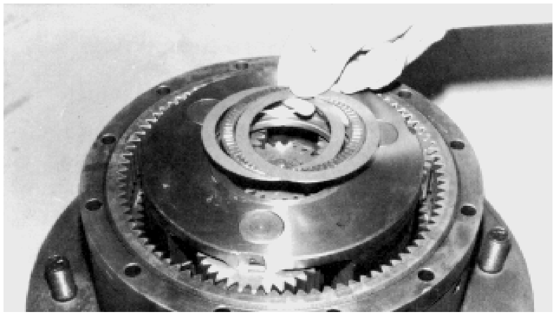
21. Install input gear (37) into the carrier assembly, meshing with large diameter cluster gears (18). Counterbore in bore of input gear must be to outside of carrier assembly.



22. After inserting at least one bolt in the proper location, rotate the carrier. Check freedom of rotation and timing.



23. Install thrust washers and thrust bearing (39, 40) into carrier counterbore.

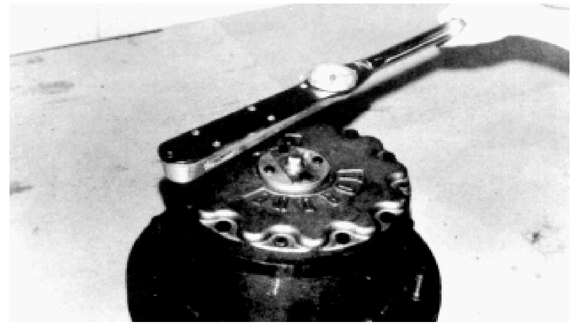


24. Place o-ring (22) into cover assembly counterbore. Use petroleum jelly or grease to hold o-ring in place.

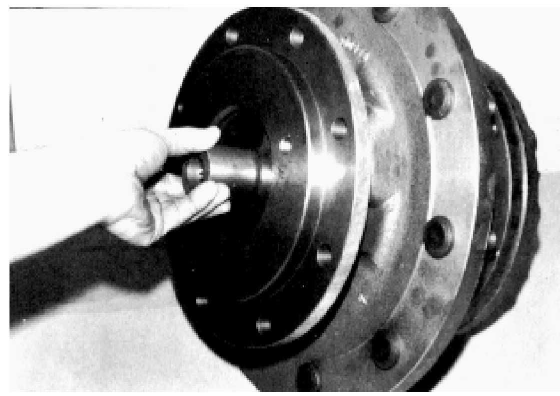
25. Place cover assembly over ring gear with oil level check plug in cover located approximately 90 degrees from oil fill plug in hub.

26. Locate four bolts (42), 90 degrees apart into counterbore holes in hub marked in step (16). Torque bolts to 47 ft. lbs. (64 Nm).

27. Install bolts (41) in remaining holes. Torque bolts to 47 ft. lbs. (64 Nm).



28. Place coupling (1) into spindle and onto input shaft.



29. Fill hub one-half full of EPGL 90 lubricant before operation.

1. Spindle
2. Seal
3. Bearing Cup
4. Bearing Cone
5. Bearing Cup
6. Bearing Cone
7. Hub
8. Spacer
9. Retaining Ring
10. Plug
11. Wheel Bolt
12. Internal Gear
13. Carrier
14. Thrust Washer
15. Needle Roller
16. Spacer
17. Planet Shaft
18. Cluster Gear
19. Roll Pin
20. Not Used
21. Cluster Gear
22. O-ring
23. Cover
24. Cover Cap
25. Bolt
26. Disconnect Cap
27. Disconnect Rod
28. O-ring
29. O-ring
30. Pipe Plug
31. Washer
32. Spring
33. Retaining Ring
34. Retaining Ring
35. Input Shaft
36. Thrust Spacer
37. Input Gear
38. Not Used
39. Thrust Washer
40. Thrust Bearing
41. Bolt
42. Coupling

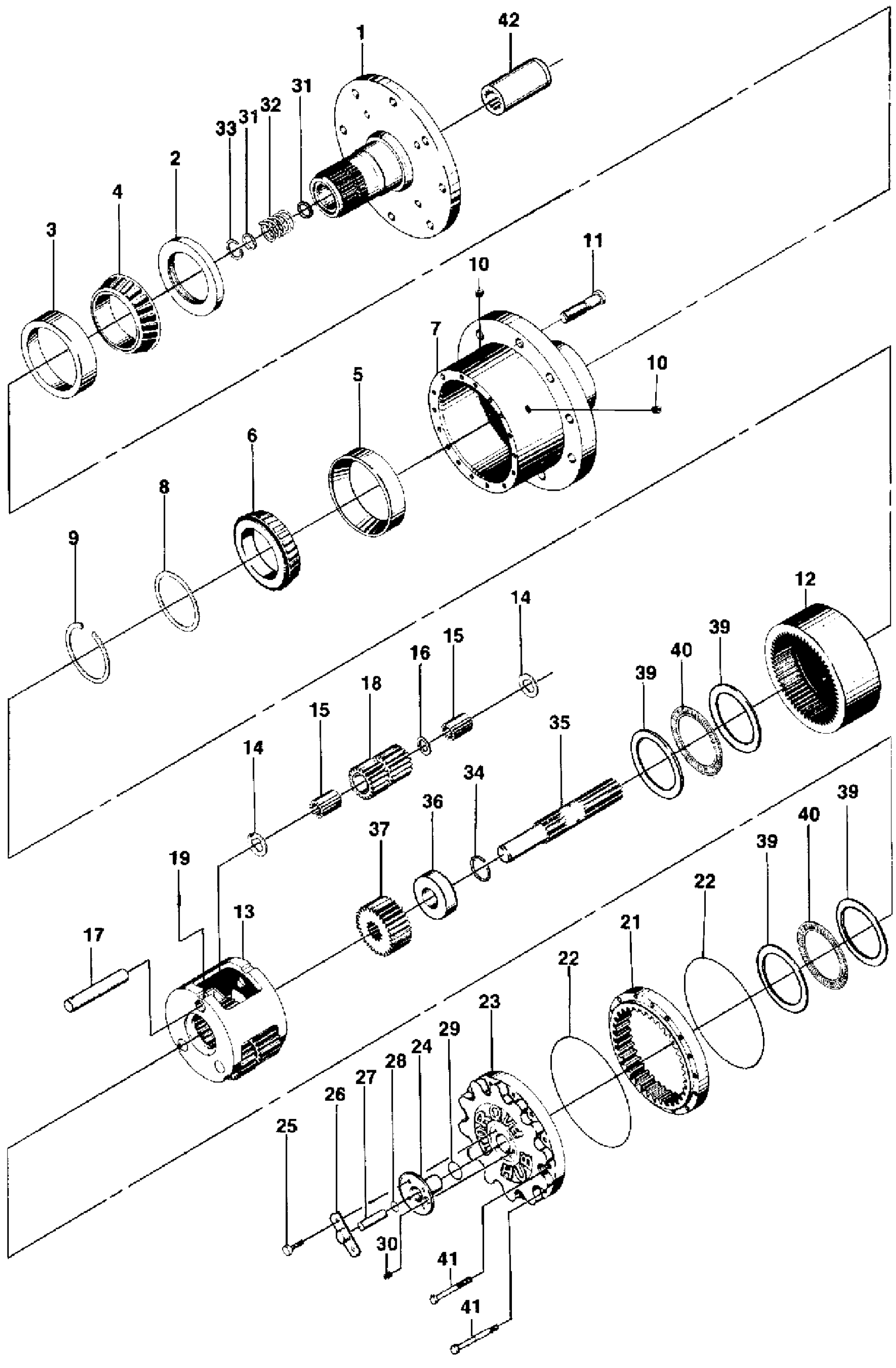


Figure 3-7. Drive Hub

3.6 DRIVE BRAKE

Disassembly

1. Supporting brake: remove the socket head capscrews and washers (13 & 14) in equal increments to ensure the spring pressure within the brake is reduced gradually and evenly.

   If a press is available, the cylinder housing (8) can be restrained while removing the capscrews and washers (13 & 14).

   The brake assembly can now be fully dismantled and the parts examined.
2. Remove cylinder housing (8) and piston (9) subassembly and dismantle if required, removing o-ring seals (15 & 17) and backing rings (16 & 18) as necessary.
3. Remove gasket (7) from housing (2).
4. Remove friction plates (3 & 6) and pressure plate (4).
5. Remove two dowel pins (19).
6. Remove springs (22 & 23).
7. Should it be necessary to replace ball bearing (10) or shaft seal (12), reverse remainder of brake subassembly, supporting on face C of housing (2).
8. Remove internal retaining ring (11).
9. Using arbor press or similar to break Loctite seal, remove brake shaft (1) from housing (2) and lay aside.
10. Reverse housing (2) and press out ball bearing (10). Shaft seal (12) can also be removed if necessary.

Inspection

1. Inspect friction plates (3 & 6) and friction surface on pressure plate (4) for wear or damage.
2. Examine friction plates (3) and brake shaft (1) for wear or damage to the splines.
3. Examine input and output splines of brake shaft (1) for wear or damage.
4. Examine compression springs (22 & 23) for damage or fatigue.
5. Check ball bearing (10) for axial float or wear.
6. Examine o-ring seals (15 & 17) and backing rings (16 & 18) for damage.

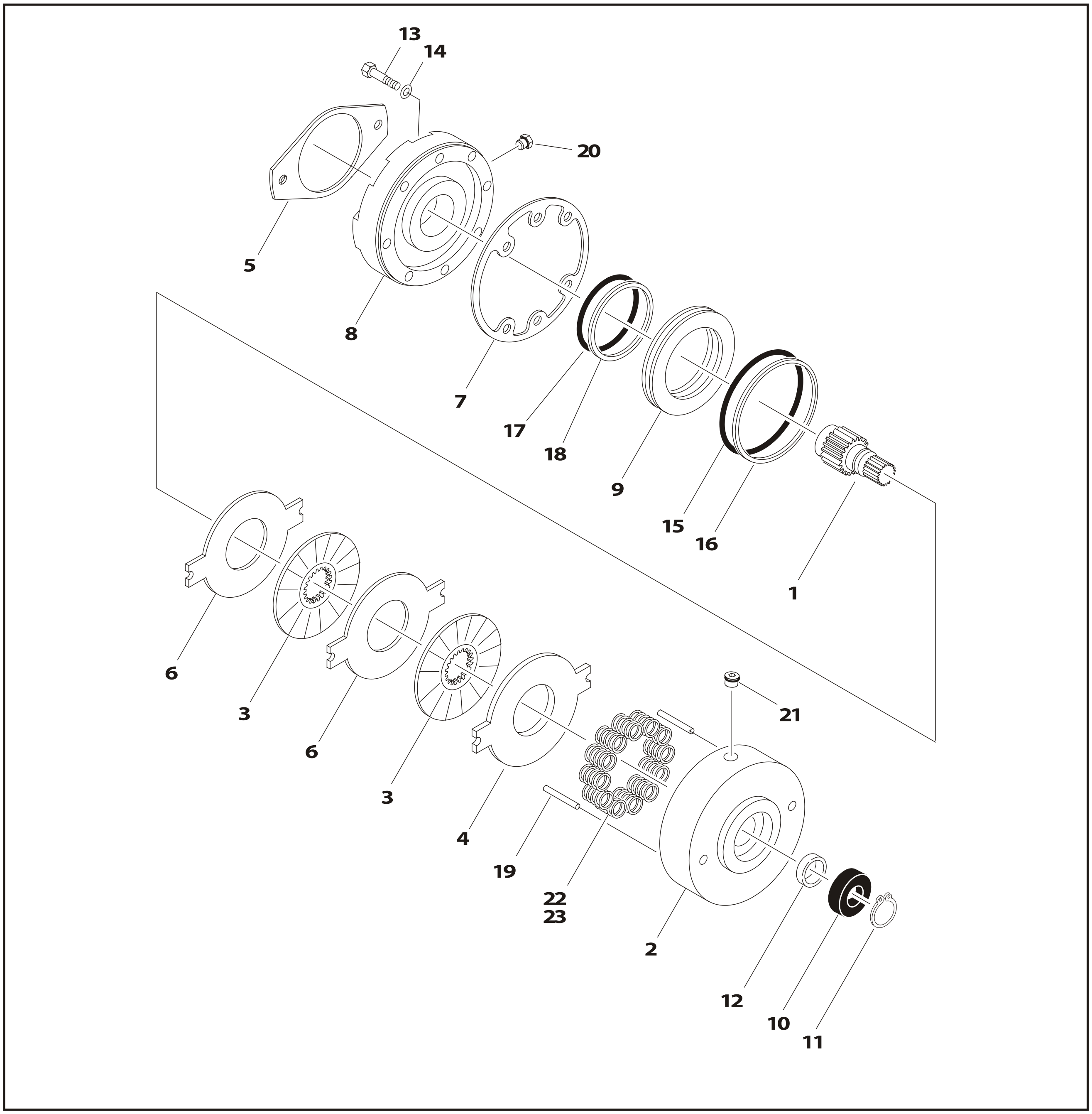
Assembly

1. Lightly lubricate rotary shaft seal (12) and assemble to housing (2) taking care not to damage seal lip.
2. Apply ring of Loctite 641 or equivalent adhesive to full circumference of housing (2) bearing recess adjacent to shoulder.

   Apply complete coverage of Loctite 641 to outside diameter of bearing (10) and assemble fully In housing (2), retaining with internal retaining ring (11). Remove excess adhesive with a clean cloth.

   Press shaft (1) through bearing (10), ensuring bearing inner ring Is adequately supported.
3. Assemble correct quantity of springs (22 & 23) in orientation required.
4. Lubricate o-ring seals (15 & 17) with Molykote 55M (or equivalent) silicon grease and assemble together with backing rings (16 & 18) to piston (9). To ensure correct brake operation. It is important that the backing rings are assembled opposite to the pressurized side of piston.
5. Correctly orientate piston (9) aligning spaces with the two dowel pin holes and, assemble into cylinder housing (8) taking care not to damage seals and carefully lay aside.
6. Locate 2-off pins (19) in housing (2) followed by pressure plate (4) and friction plates i.e. an inner (3) followed by an outer (6) in correct sequence.
7. Position gasket (7) in correct orientation.
8. Align two holes in cylinder with dowel pins (19) and assemble piston & cylinder sub-assembly to remainder of brake securing with 6 capscrews and washers (13 & 14). Torque to 55 ft. lbs. (75 Nm).

NOTE: *The use of a suitable press (hydraulic or arbor) pressing down on cylinder end face B will ease assembly of the capscrews (13).*



1. Shaft	6. Outer Plate	11. Retaining Ring	16. Backup Ring	21. Plug
2. Housing	7. Gasket	12. Shaft Seal	17. O-ring	22. Spring (Natural)
3. Friction Plate	8. Cylinder Housing	13. Capscrew	18. Backup Ring	23. Spring (Blue)
4. Pressure Plate	9. Piston	14. Lockwasher	19. Dowel Pin	
5. Gasket	10. Ball Bearing	15. O-ring	20. Plug	

Figure 3-8. Drive Brake

3.7 DRIVE MOTOR

Description

The drive motors are low to medium power, two-position axial piston motors incorporating an integral servo piston. They are designed for operation in both open and closed circuit applications. The standard control is a direct acting single line hydraulic control. The integral servo piston controls motor displacement.

The motors are spring biased to maximum displacement and hydraulically shifted to minimum displacement. Minimum and maximum displacement can be set with fixed internal stops. The large diameter servo piston allows smooth acceleration and deceleration with relatively large circuit orificing.

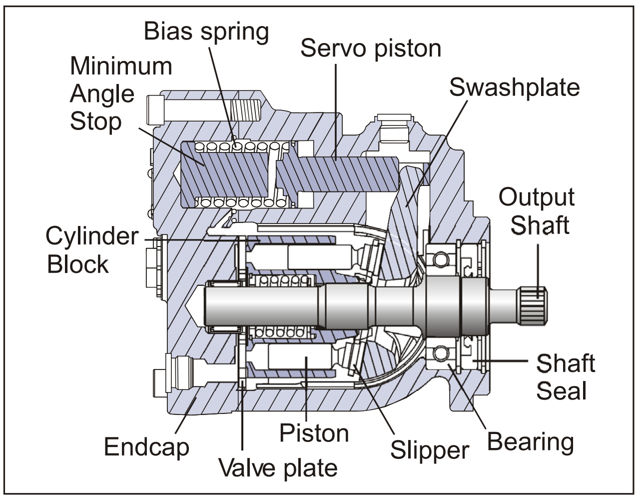


Figure 3-9. Drive Motor Cross Section

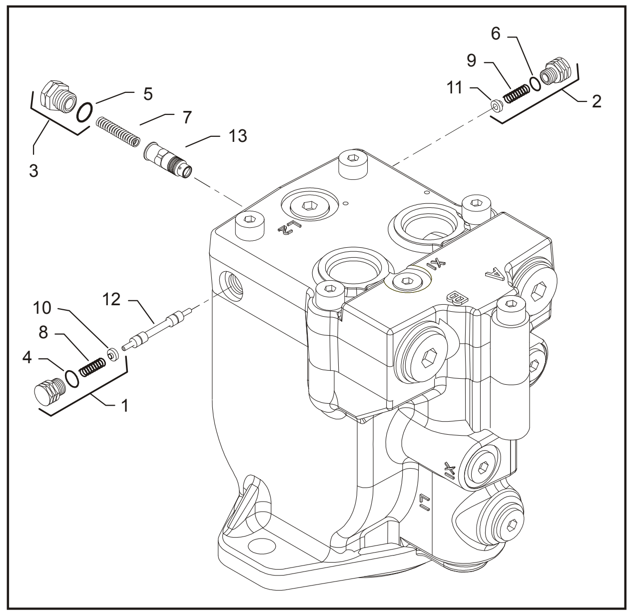
Disassembly

NOTE: *Removal of the endcap voids warranty.*

During assembly, coat all moving parts with a film of clean hydraulic oil. This assures that these parts will be lubricated during start-up.

Replace all o-rings and gaskets.

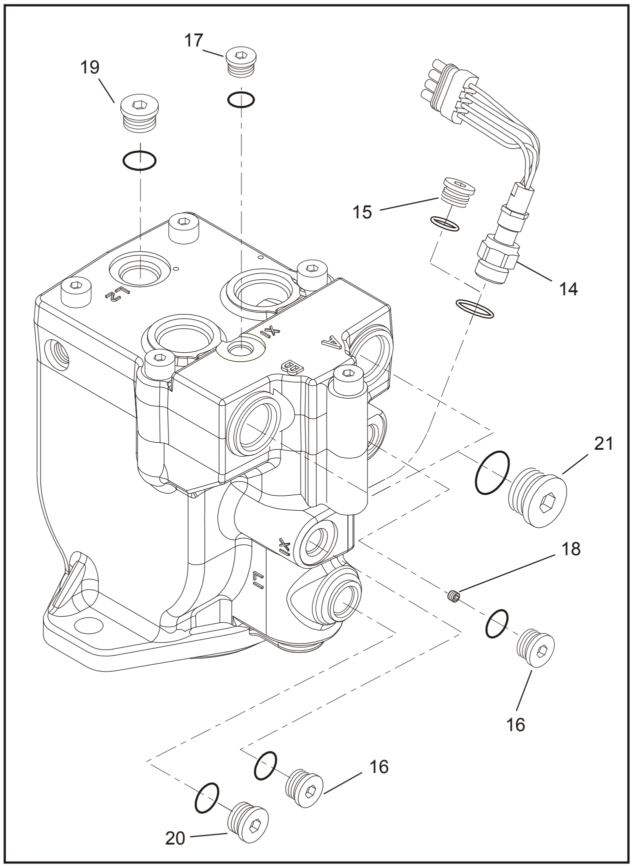
It is recommended that all o-rings be replaced. Lightly lubricate all o-rings with clean petroleum jelly prior to assembly.



1. Plug	5. O-ring	9. Spring	12. Shift Spool
2. Plug	6. O-ring	10. Washer	13. Orifice Poppet
3. Plug	7. Spring	11. Washer	
4. O-ring	8. Spring		

Figure 3-10. Loop Flushing Spool

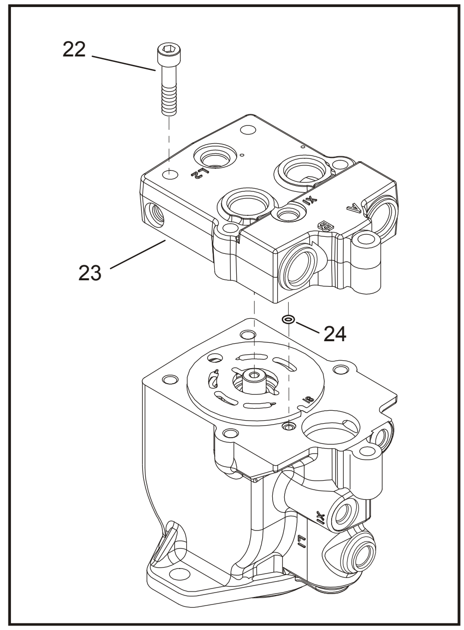
1. Using a 11/16 in. wrench remove plug (1) and (2).
2. Using a 5/8 in. hex wrench remove plug (3).
3. Remove o-rings (4, 5, and 6).
4. Using pliers, remove centering springs (7, 8, and 9).
5. Remove spring retaining washers (10 and 11).
6. Remove shift spool (12).
7. Remove orifice poppet (13).



14. Lock Nut
15. O-ring Plug
16. Control Line Plug
17. Control Line Plug
18. Cavity Plug
19. Drain Plug
20. Drain Plug
21. Work Port Plug

Figure 3-11. Plugs, Fittings, and Speed Sensor

8. Remove all fittings from the unit. Discard o-rings on the fittings.
9. Using an 11/16 in. hex wrench, loosen the speed sensor lock nut (14) if equipped. Then remove the speed sensor using a Vi in. hex wrench. Units without speed sensor have an o-ring plug (15) installed in that location; remove it with a Va inch internal hex wrench.
10. Using a 1/4 in. internal hex wrench, remove control line plugs (16, 17). Discard o-rings. Using a 3 mm hex wrench, remove cavity plug (18, if equipped with two-line control) from X2 cavity.
11. Using a 5/16 in. internal hex wrench, remove drain plugs (19, 20). Discard o-rings.
12. Using a 9/16 in. internal hex wrench, remove work port plugs (21, if equipped with axial ports). Discard o-rings.

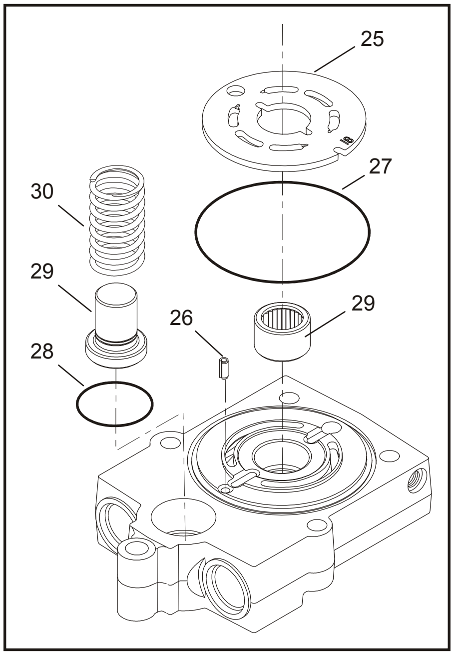


22. Screw
23. End Cap
24. O-ring

Figure 3-12. End Cap

13. Using an 8 mm internal hex wrench, remove the endcap screws (22).
14. Remove the endcap (23). Remove o-ring (24) from the housing or endcap.

    When the endcap screws are removed, pressure from the servo spring will cause the endcap to bind on the shaft. Press down on the portion of the endcap covering the servo piston and hold the endcap level while removing.



25. Valve Plate
26. End Cap
27. O-ring
28. O-ring
29. Angle Stop
30. Servo Spring

Figure 3-13. Valve Plate & Rear Shaft Bearing

NOTICE

TAKE CARE NOT TO SCRATCH THE SURFACE OF THE VALVE PLATE.

15. Remove the valve plate (25) and timing pin (26) from the endcap.

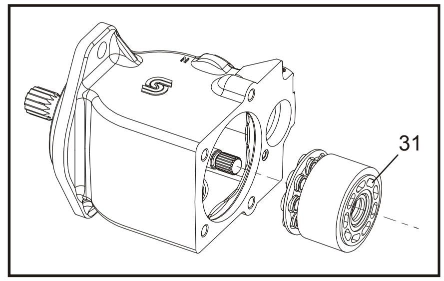
    Each displacement has a unique valve plate. For identification, the last two digits of the valve plate part number are stamped on its surface.

16. Remove and discard the o-rings (27 and 28).

17. Remove the rear shaft bearing (29) from the endcap with a bearing puller.

    The bearing may be difficult to remove with a puller. Try this as an alternative: Pack the bearing cavity with heavy grease. After the shaft is removed, insert it into the bearing cavity and tap lightly with a soft mallet on the splined end. The grease will force the bearing out. Use caution not to drive the bearing past the rear shaft journal as the bearing may become trapped on the shaft and damaged.

18. Remove minimum angle stop (29) and servo spring (30) from the housing.



31. Cylinder Kit Assembly

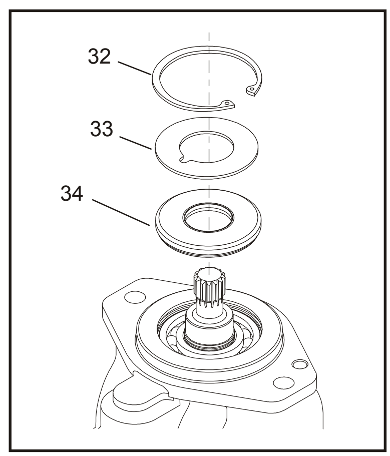
Figure 3-14. Cylinder Kit

19. Turn the housing on its side and remove the cylinder kit assembly (31). Set the assembly aside, being careful not to scratch the running surface.

NOTE: *Grooves on the surface of the cylinder kit identify its displacement:*

Table 3-2. Displacement Identifiers

# of Grooves	Frame L	Frame K
1	25	38
2	30	45
3	35	--

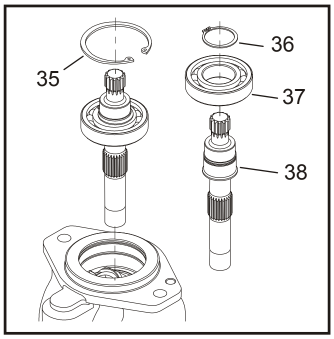


32. Snap Ring
33. Support Washer
34. Shaft Seal

Figure 3-15. Shaft Seal

20. Turn the housing over and remove the snap ring (32) retaining the shaft seal and support washer. Remove the support washer (33) and carefully pry out the shaft seal (34). Discard the seal.

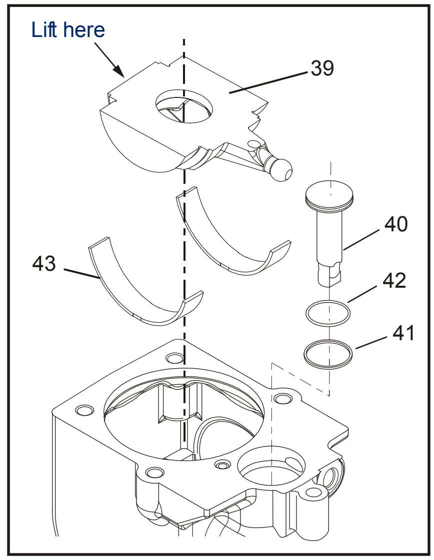
    To avoid damaging the shaft during seal removal. Install a large sheet metal screw into the chuck of a slide hammer. Drive the screw into the seal surface and use the slide hammer to pull the seal.



35. Inner Snap Ring
36. Snap Ring
37. Bearing
38. Shaft

Figure 3-16. Shaft & Front Bearing

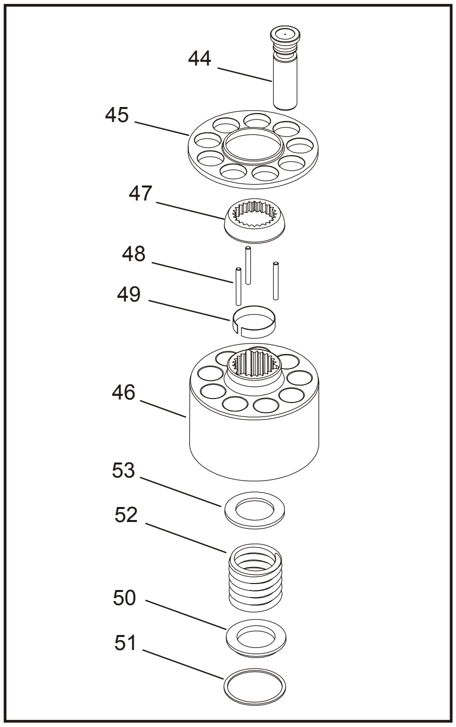
21. Remove the inner snap ring (35) and the shaft / bearing assembly.
22. Remove the snap-ring (36) retaining the shaft front bearing. Pull the bearing (37) off of the shaft (38).



39. Swashplate
40. Servo Piston
41. Piston Seal
42. O-ring
43. Journal Bearings

Figure 3-17. SwashPlate & Servo Piston

23. Turn housing over and remove the swashplate (39) by lifting on the end opposite the servo lever.
24. Remove the servo piston (40). Remove the piston seal (41) and o-ring (42) from the servo piston. Discard the seal and o-ring.
25. Remove the journal bearings (43) from the housing. If the bearings are to be reused, note the location and orientation of each bearing for reassembly.



44. Piston
45. Slipper Retainer
46. Cylinder Block
47. Ball Guide
48. Holddown Pins
49. Retaining Ring
50. Block Spring Washer
51. Spiral Retaining Ring
52. Block Spring
53. Inner Block Spring Washer

Figure 3-18. Cylinder Kit Disassembly

26. Remove pistons (44) and slipper retainer (45) from the cylinder block (46).

    The pistons are not selectively fitted, however units with high hourly usage may develop wear patterns. Number the pistons and bores for reassembly if they are to be reused.

27. Remove the ball guide (47), hold-down pins (48), and retaining ring (49) from the cylinder block.

NOTE: *Most repairs do not require block spring removal. Perform this procedure only if you suspect problems with the block spring.*

⚠ WARNING

RISK OF PERSONAL INJURY: COMPRESSING THE BLOCK SPRING REQUIRES FORCE OF ABOUT 80 TO 90 LBF (350 TO 400 N). USE A PRESS SUFFICIENT TO MAINTAIN THIS FORCE WITH REASONABLE EFFORT. ENSURE THE SPRING IS SECURE BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO REMOVE THE SPIRAL RETAINING RING. RELEASE THE PRESSURE SLOWLY AFTER THE RETAINING RING IS REMOVED.

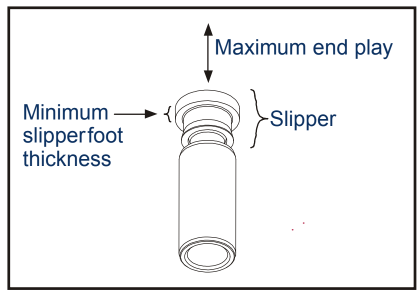
28. Turn the block over. Using a press, apply pressure on the block spring washer (50) to compress the block spring. Compress the spring enough to safely remove the spiral retaining ring (51). While maintaining pressure, unwind the spiral retaining ring (51). Carefully release the pressure and remove the outer block spring washer (50), block spring (52), and inner block spring washer (53) from the cylinder block.

Inspection

After disassembly, wash all parts (including the end-cap and housing) thoroughly with clean solvent and allow to air dry. Blow out oil passages in the housing and endcap with compressed air. Conduct inspection in a clean area and keep all parts free from contamination. Clean and dry parts again after any rework or resurfacing.

PISTON

Inspect the pistons for damage and discoloration. Discolored pistons may indicate excessive heat; do not reuse.



SLIPPERS

Inspect the running surface of the slippers. Replace any piston assemblies with scored or excessively rounded slipper edges. Measure the slipper foot thickness. Replace any piston assemblies with excessively worn slippers. Check the slipper axial end-play. Replace any piston assemblies with excessive end-play.

Minimum slipper foot thickness and maximum axial end-play are given in the table below.

Table 3-3. Slipper Foot Thickness & End Play

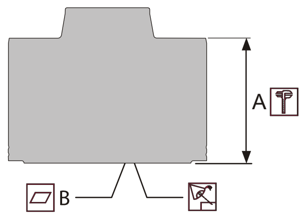
Measurement	L Frame mm (in.)	K Frame mm (in.)
Slipper Foot Thickness	2.71 (0.11)	4.07 (0.16)
Piston/Slipper End Play	0.15 (0.006)	

CYLINDER BLOCK

Measure the cylinder block height. Replace blocks worn beyond the minimum height specification. Inspect the running surface of the cylinder block. Replace or resurface worn or scratched blocks. Blocks may be resurfaced to the specifications shown in the drawing, provided resurfacing will not reduce the block height below the minimum specification. See Table 3-4, Cylinder Block Measurements.

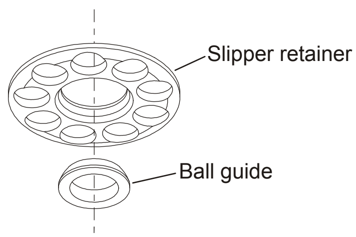
Table 3-4. Cylinder Block Measurements

Measurement	L25 mm (in.)	L30 mm (in.)	L35 mm (in.)	K38 mm (in.)	K45 mm (in.)
Minimum Cylinder Block Height (A)	50.8 (2.00)	50.8 (2.00)	50.8 (2.00)	54.4 (2.14)	54.4 (2.14)
Cylinder Block Surface Flatness	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)



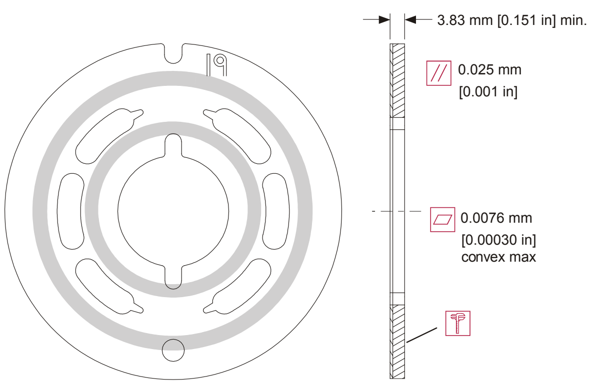
BALL GUIDE AND SLIPPER RETAINER

Inspect the ball guide and slipper retainer for damage, discoloration, or excessive wear. A discolored ball guide or slipper retainer indicates excessive heat. Do not reuse.



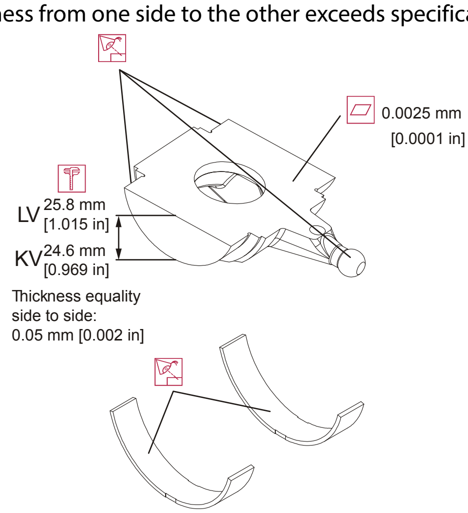
VALVE PLATE

The condition of the valve plate is critical to the efficiency of the motor. Inspect the valve plate surfaces carefully for excessive wear, grooves, or scratches. Replace or resurface grooved or scratched valve plates. Measure the valve plate thickness and replace if worn beyond the minimum specification. Valve plates may be resurfaced to the specifications shown in the drawing, provided resurfacing will not reduce the thickness below the minimum specification.



SWASHPLATE AND JOURNAL BEARINGS

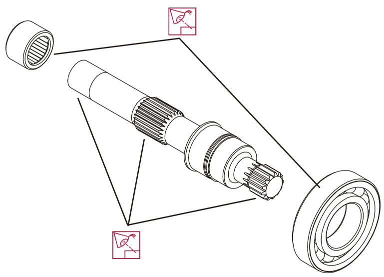
Inspect the running face, servo ball-joint, and swashplate journal surfaces for damage or excessive wear. Some material transfer may appear on these surfaces and is acceptable providing the surface condition meets specifications shown. Measure the swashplate thickness from the journals to the running face. Replace swashplate if damaged or worn beyond minimum specification. Replace swashplate if the difference in thickness from one side to the other exceeds specification.



Inspect the journal bearings for damage or excessive wear. Replace journal bearings if scratched, warped, or excessively worn. The polymer wear layer must be smooth and intact.

SHAFT BEARINGS

Inspect bearings for excessive wear or contamination. Rotate the bearings while feeling for uneven movement. Bearings should spin smoothly and freely. Replace bearings that appear worn or do not rotate smoothly.

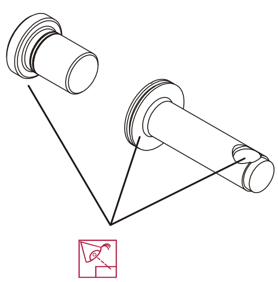


SHAFT

Inspect the motor shaft. Look for damage or excessive wear on the output and block splines. Inspect the bearing surfaces and sealing surface. Replace shafts with damaged or excessively worn splines, bearing surfaces, or sealing surfaces.

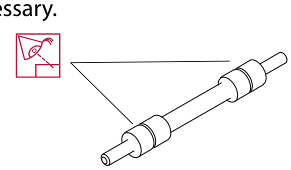
SERVO PISTON AND MINIMUM ANGLE STOP

Inspect the minimum angle stop, servo piston head, and servo piston ball-socket for damage or excessive wear. Replace if necessary.



LOOP FLUSHING SPOOL

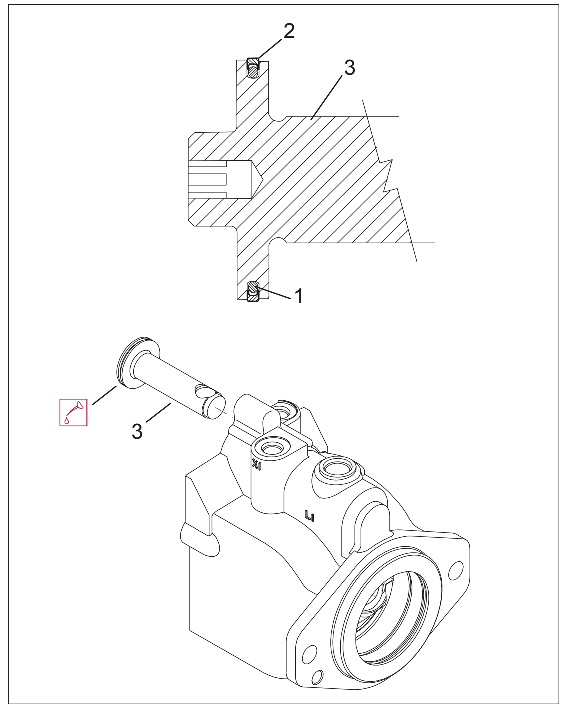
Inspect the loop flushing spool. Check for cracks or damage. Replace if necessary.



Assembly

1. Install new o-ring (1) and piston seal (2) to the servo piston (3). Install the piston seal over the o-ring.

   Installing the piston seal stretches it, making it difficult to install the servo piston in its bore. Allow 30 minutes for the seal to relax after installation. To speed up seal relaxation, compress the seal by installing the piston head into the servo cavity in the end-cap and let it stand for at least five minutes.



1. O-ring
2. Piston Seal
3. Servo Piston

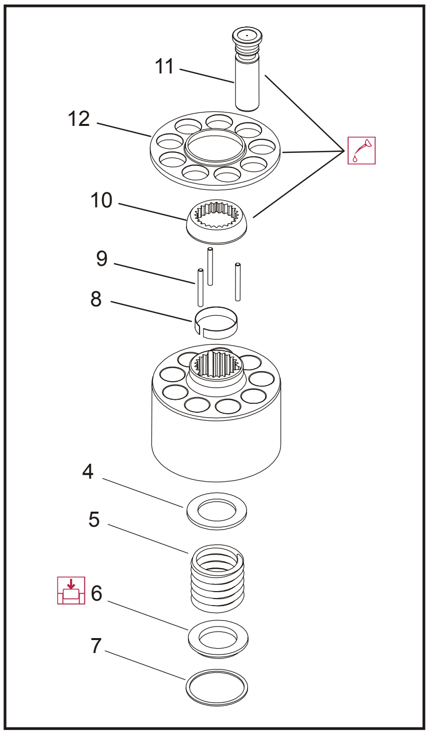
Figure 3-19. Servo Piston

2. After piston seal has relaxed, lubricate and install servo piston into the housing bore. Align the piston with the ball socket facing the inside of the housing.

WARNING

RISK OF PERSONAL INJURY: COMPRESSING THE BLOCK SPRING REQUIRES ABOUT 80 TO 90 LBF (350 TO 400 N) OF FORCE. USE A PRESS SUFFICIENT TO MAINTAIN THIS FORCE WITH REASONABLE EFFORT. ENSURE THE SPRING IS SECURE BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO INSTALL THE SPIRAL RETAINING RING. RELEASE THE PRESSURE SLOWLY AFTER THE RETAINING RING IS INSTALLED.

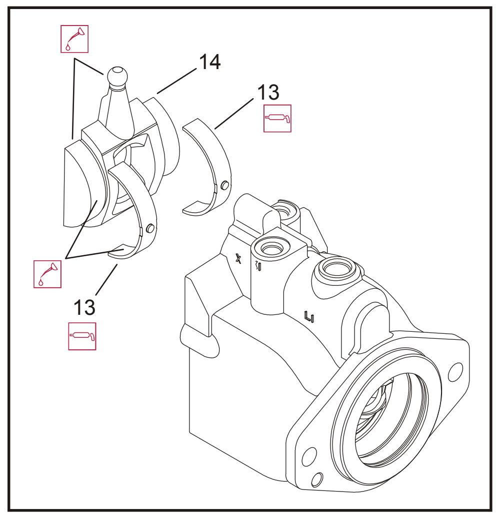
3. Install the inner block spring washer (4), block spring (5), and outer washer (6) into the cylinder block. Using a press, compress the block spring enough to expose the retaining ring groove. Wind the spiral retaining ring (7) into the groove in the cylinder block.



4. Block Spring Washer
5. Block Spring
6. Outer Washer
7. Spiral Retaining Ring
8. Retaining Ring
9. Holddown Pins
10. Ball Guide
11. Piston
12. Slipper Retainer

Figure 3-20. Cylinder Kit Assembly

4. Turn the block over and install the retaining ring (8), hold-down pins (9), and ball guide (10) to the cylinder block.
5. Install the pistons (11) to the slipper retainer (12). Install the piston/retainer assembly into the cylinder block. Ensure the concave surface of the retainer seats on the ball guide. If reusing the pistons, install them to the original block bores. Lubricate the pistons, slippers, retainer, and ball guide before assembly. Set the cylinder kit aside on a clean surface until needed.
6. Install the journal bearings (13) into the housing seats. Use assembly grease to keep the bearings seated during assembly. Ensure the locating nubs drop into the cavities in the seats. If reusing the bearings, install them in the original location and orientation. Lubricate the journal bearings.

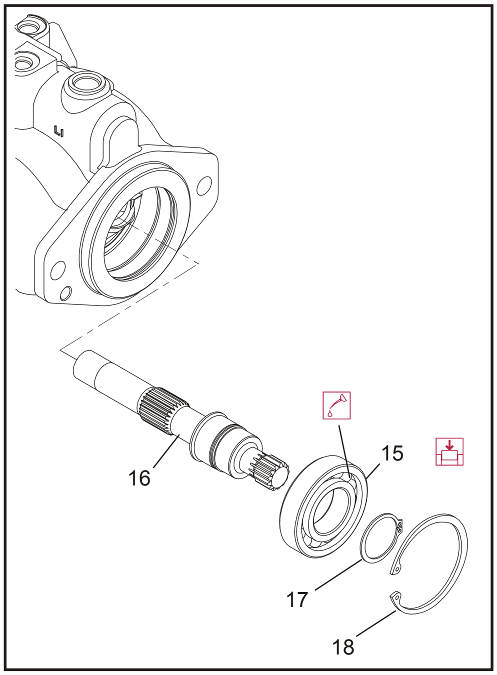


13. Journal Bearings
14. Swashplate

Figure 3-21. Swashplate and Journal Bearing

7. Install the swashplate (14) into the housing. Tilt the swashplate and guide the servo lever ball into its socket in the servo piston rod. Ensure the swashplate seats into the journal bearings and moves freely. Lubricate the running surface of the swashplate.

8. Press front shaft bearing (15) onto shaft (16). Press bearing onto shaft with lettering facing out. Lubricate bearing rollers. Install snap-ring (17) onto shaft.

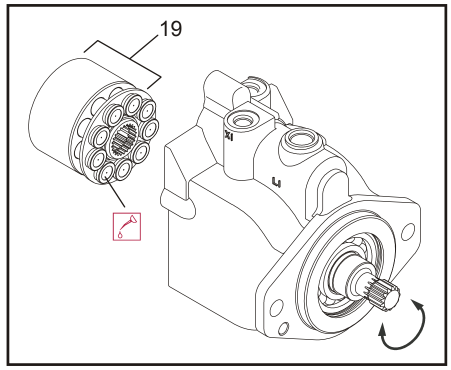


15. Front Shaft Bearing
16. Shaft
17. Snap Ring
18. Snap Ring

Figure 3-22. Shaft and Front Bearing

9. While holding the swashplate in place, turn the housing on its side. Install the install shaft/bearing assembly into housing from the flange end. Install the snap-ring (18).

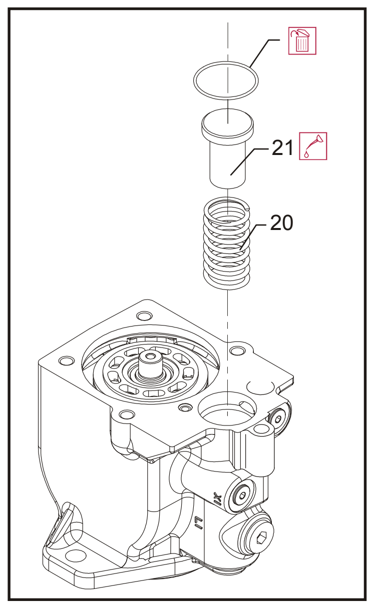
10. Verify swashplate and bearings are properly seated. Install the cylinder kit (19) onto the shaft. Install with the slippers facing the swashplate. Rock the shaft to align the block splines and slide the cylinder kit into place. Orient the motor with the shaft pointing downward and verify the cylinder kit, swashplate, journal bearings, and servo piston are all secure and properly installed.



19. Cylinder Kit

Figure 3-23. Cylinder Kit Installation

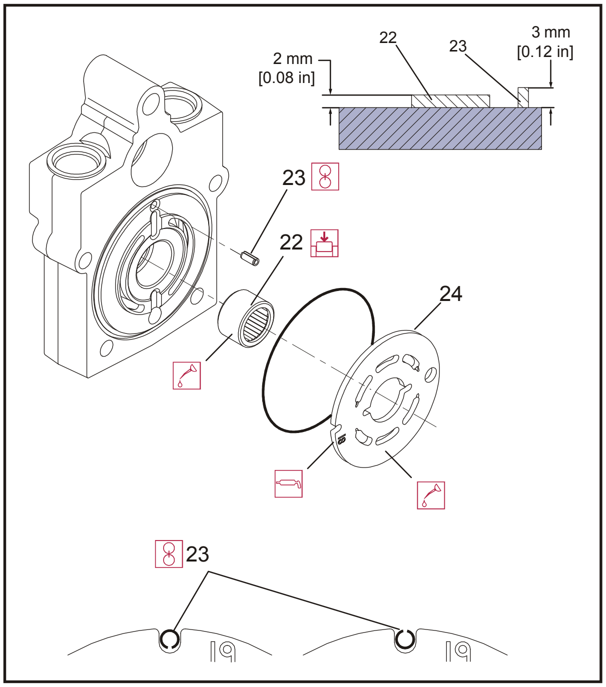
11. Lubricate and install the servo spring (20), and minimum angle stop (21) into the housing bore.



20. Servo Spring
21. Minimum Angle Stop

Figure 3-24. Servo Spring and Minimum Angle Stop

12. Press the rear shaft bearing (22) into the endcap. Install the bearing with letters facing out. Press until bearing surface is 0.08 ±0.01 in. (2 ±0.25 mm) above endcap surface.



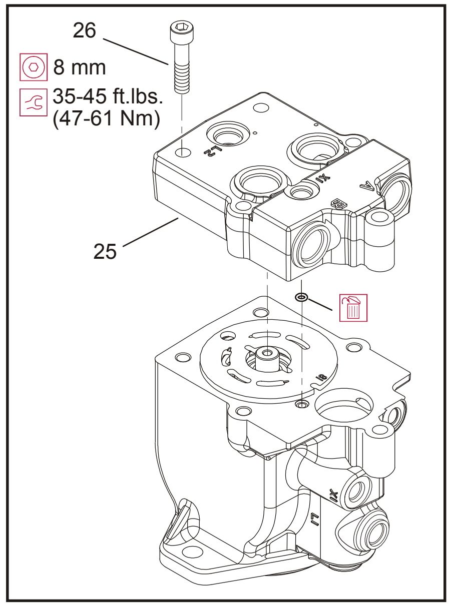
22. Rear Shaft Bearing
23. Timing Pin
24. Valve Plate

Figure 3-25. Valve Plate and Rear Bearing

13. Install timing pin (23) into its bore in the endcap. Install the pin with its groove facing toward or away from the shaft. Press the pin until the end protrudes 0.12 ±0.01 in (3 ±0.25 mm) above endcap surface.

14. Install the valve plate (24) onto the endcap. Install the valve plate with the yellow surface toward the cylinder block. Align the slot in the valve plate with the timing pin. Apply a liberal coat of assembly grease to the endcap side of the valve plate to keep it in place during installation.

15. Install the endcap (25) onto the housing with the endcap screws (26). Check to ensure the endcap will properly seat onto the housing without interference. Improper assembly of the internal components may prevent the endcap from seating properly. Ensure the o-rings seat properly when installing the endcap.



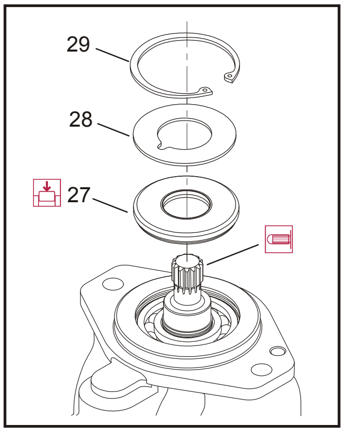
25. End Cap
26. Screw

Figure 3-26. End Cap

16. Using an 8 mm internal hex wrench, tighten the endcap screws. Tighten the screws in opposite corners slowly and evenly to compress the servo spring and properly seat the endcap. Torque endcap screws 35-45 ft. lbs. (47-61 Nm).

17. Before installing the shaft seal, ensure the shaft turns smoothly with less than 120 in. lbs. (13.5 Nm) of force. If the shaft does not turn smoothly within the specified maximum force, disassemble and check the unit.

18. Cover shaft splines with an installation sleeve. Install a new shaft seal (27) with the cup side facing the motor. Press seal into housing until it bottoms out. Press evenly to avoid binding and damaging the seal. Install seal support washer (28) and snap ring (29).



27. Shaft Seal
28. Seal Support Washer
29. Snap Ring

Figure 3-27. Shaft Seal

19. Install remaining plugs and fittings to the housing. Refer to the drawing below for wrench sizes and installation torques.

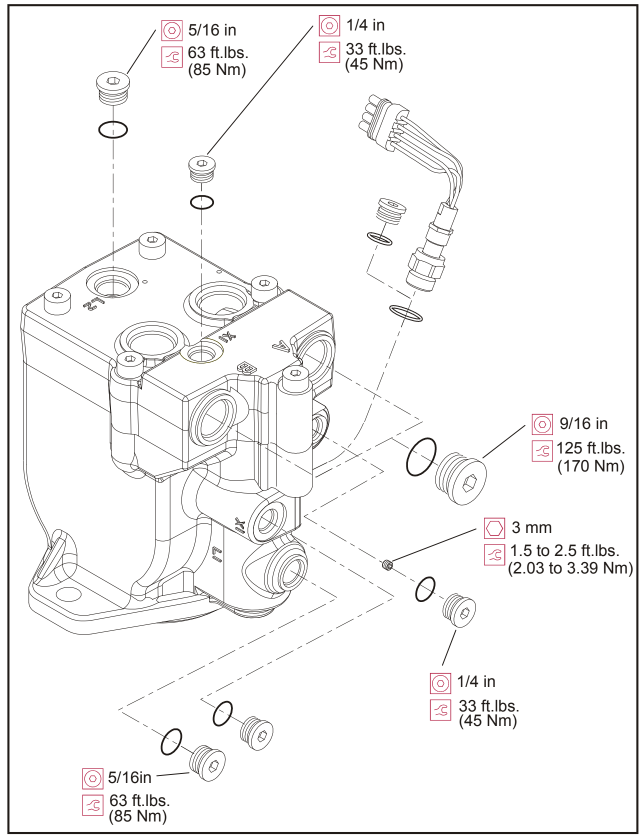
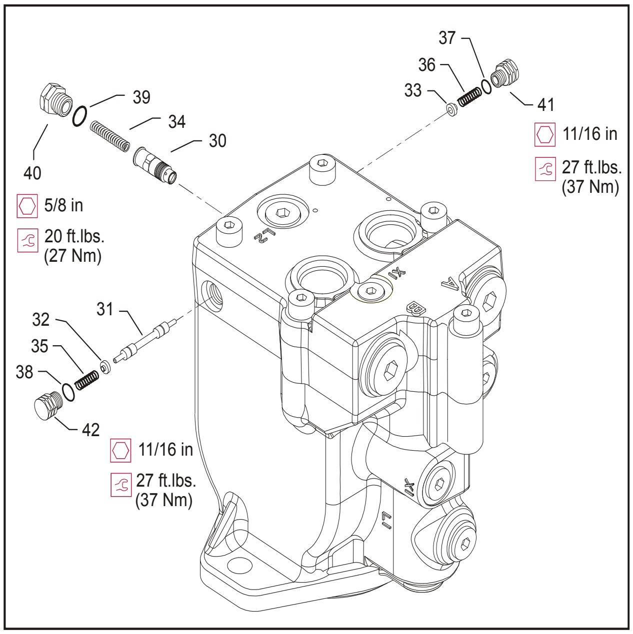


Figure 3-28. Plugs and Fittings Installation

20. Install orifice poppet (30).



30. Orifice Poppet	34. Spring	37. O-ring	40. Plug
31. Shift Spool	35. Spring	38. O-ring	41. Plug
32. Spring	36. Spring	39. O-ring	42. Plug
33. Spring			

Figure 3-29. Loop Flushing Spool

21. Install shift spool (31).
22. Install spring retaining washers onto springs (32 and 33).
23. Carefully install centering springs (34, 35, and 36).
24. Install new o-rings (37, 38, and 39).
25. Using a 5/8 in. wrench torque plug (40) to 20 ft. lbs. (27 Nm).
26. Using a 11/16 in. wrench, torque plugs (41 and 42) to 27 ft. lbs. (37 Nm).

Initial Start-up Procedures

Follow this procedure when starting-up a new motor or when installing a motor that has been removed.

Prior to installing the motor, inspect for damage incurred during shipping. Make certain all system components (reservoir, hoses, valves, fittings, heat exchanger, etc.) are clean prior to filling with fluid.

1. Fill the reservoir with recommended hydraulic fluid. Always filter fluid through a 10 micron filter when pouring into the reservoir. Never reuse hydraulic fluid.
2. Fill the inlet line leading from the pump to the reservoir. Check the inlet line for properly tightened fittings and be certain it is free of restrictions and air leaks.
3. Fill the pump and motor housing with clean hydraulic fluid. Pour filtered oil directly into the upper most case drain port.
4. To ensure the pump and motor stay filled with oil, install case drain lines into the upper most case drain ports.
5. Install a 0 to 500 psi (0 to 35 bar) gauge in the charge pressure gauge port of the pump to monitor system pressure during start up.
6. While watching the pressure gauge, run the engine at the lowest possible speed until system pressure builds to normal levels (minimum 160 psi (11 bar)). Once system pressure is established, increase to full operating speed. If system pressure is not maintained, shut down the prime mover, determine cause, and take corrective action.
7. Operate the hydraulic system for at least fifteen minutes under light load conditions.
8. Check and adjust control settings as necessary after installation.
9. Shut down the prime mover and remove the pressure gauge. Replace plug at the charge pressure gauge port.
10. Check the fluid level in the reservoir; add clean filtered fluid if necessary. The motor is now ready for operation.

Troubleshooting

Table 3-5. Excessive Noise and/or Vibration

Item	Description	Action
Check oil level in reservoir and oil supply to the motor.	Insufficient hydraulic fluid could lead to cavitation that would cause system noise.	Fill the reservoir to the proper level and ensure that oil supply to the motor is adequate and the lines are unobstructed.
Check for air in the system.	Air trapped within the system lines, or the motor itself, could result in cavitation that would cause system noise.	Ensure that all of the system lines and components are purged of air.
Inspect the output shaft couplings.	A loose or incorrect shaft coupling will produce vibrations that could result in system noise.	Ensure that the correct coupling is used and that it fits properly onto the shaft.
Inspect the output shaft alignment.	Misaligned shafts create excessive frictional vibration that could result in system noise.	Ensure that the shafts are properly aligned.
Hydraulic oil viscosity above limits.	Viscosity above acceptable limits will result in cavitation that would lead to system noise.	Replace hydraulic oil with appropriate fluid for operating conditions.

Table 3-6. System Operating Hot

Item	Description	Action
Check oil level in reservoir and oil supply to the pump.	Insufficient amount of hydraulic fluid will not meet the cooling demands of the system.	Fill the reservoir to the proper level.
Inspect the heat exchanger, (if so equipped).	If the heat exchanger fails, or becomes obstructed, it may not meet the cooling demands of the system.	Ensure that heat exchanger is receiving adequate air flow and that the heat exchanger is in good operating condition. Repair or replace as necessary.
Check the system relief valves.	If a system relief valve becomes unseated for an extended period of time or fails for any other reason, the system could become overheated.	Repair or replace any malfunctioning relief valves as applicable and verify that the loads on the machine are not excessive.

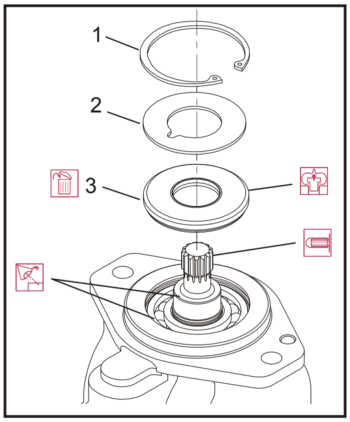
Table 3-7. Won't Shift or Slow to Start

Item	Description	Action
Check the signal line to the servo control port.	Obstructed or restricted flow through the servo control signal lines could result in slow shift or no shift conditions within the motor.	Ensure that the signal lines are not obstructed or restricted and that signal pressure is adequate to shift the motor.
Check that the correct supply and drain orifices are properly installed, and are not obstructed.	Supply and drain orifices determine the shift rate of the motor. The smaller the orifice, the longer the time it takes to shift the motor. Obstruction will also increase shift times.	Ensure that the proper control orifices are installed in the motor and verify that they are not obstructed. Clean or replace as necessary.

Shaft Seal Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Remove the snap ring (1) retaining the shaft seal and support washer.



1. Snap Ring
2. Support Washer
3. Shaft Seal

Figure 3-30. Removing the Shaft Seal

2. Remove the support washer (2).
3. Carefully pry out the shaft seal (3).

   To avoid damaging the shaft during removal, install a large sheet metal screw into the chuck of a slide hammer. Drive the screw into the seal surface and use the slide hammer to pull the seal.
4. Discard the seal.

INSPECT THE COMPONENTS

Inspect the new seal, the motor housing seal bore, and the sealing area on the shaft for rust, wear, and contamination. Polish the shaft and clean the housing if necessary.

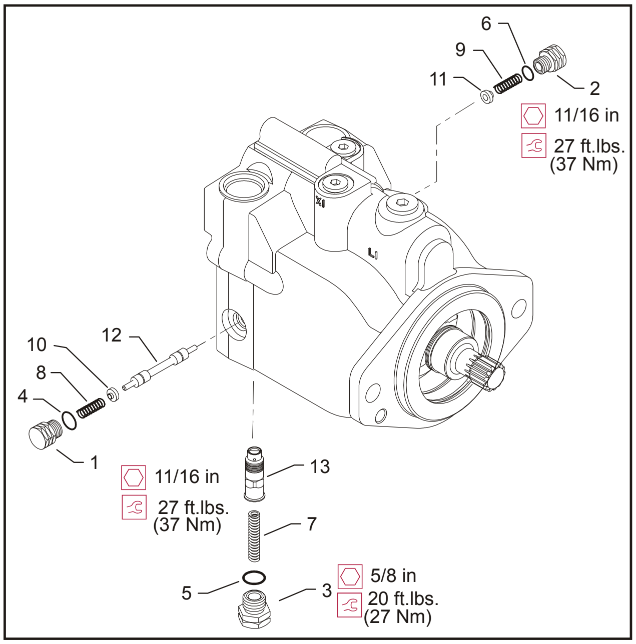
INSTALLATION

1. Cover the shaft splines with an installation sleeve to protect the shaft seal during installation.
2. Install a new shaft seal with the cupped side facing the motor. Press seal into housing until it bottoms out. Press evenly to avoid binding and damaging the seal.
3. Install seal support washer.
4. Install snap ring.
5. Remove the installation sleeve.

Loop Flushing Valve

REMOVAL

1. Using a 11/16 in. internal hex wrench remove plug (1) and (2).



1. Plug
2. Plug
3. Plug
4. O-ring
5. O-ring
6. O-ring
7. Spring
8. Spring
9. Spring
10. Washer
11. Washer
12. Shift Spool
13. Orifice Poppet

Figure 3-31. Loop Flushing Spool

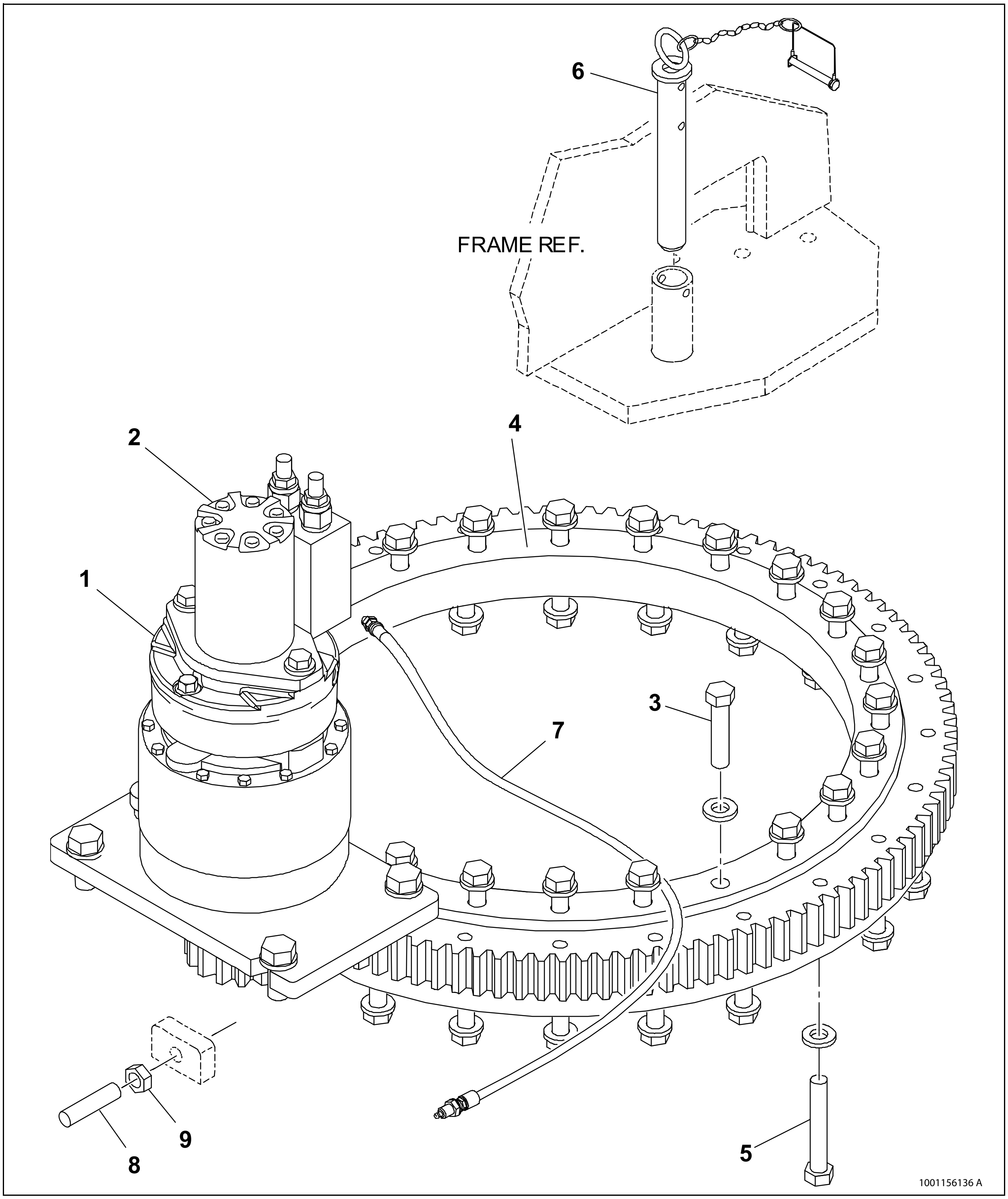
2. Using a 1/4 in. hex wrench remove plug (3).
3. Remove o-rings (4, 5, and 6).
4. Using pliers, remove centering springs (7, 8, and 9).
5. Remove spring retaining washers (10 and 11).
6. Remove shift spool (12).
7. Remove orifice poppet (13).

INSPECT THE COMPONENTS

Inspect new o-rings and the sealing area for rust, wear, or contamination. Also check springs and poppet for wear.

INSTALLATION

1. Install orifice poppet (13).
2. Install shift spool (12).
3. Install spring retaining washers onto springs (10 and 11).
4. Carefully install centering springs (7, 8, and 9).
5. Install new o-rings (6, 4, and 5).
6. Using a 1/4 in. hex wrench torque plug (3) to 20 ft. lbs. (27 Nm).
7. Using a 11/16 in. internal hex, torque plugs (2 and 1) to 27 ft. lbs. (37 Nm).



1. Swing Drive
2. Swing Motor
3. Inner Race Bearing Bolt
4. Swing Bearing
5. Outer Race Bearing Bolt
6. Turntable Lock Pin
7. Grease Line
8. Bolt
9. Jam Nut

Figure 3-32. Swing System

3.8 SWING HUB

Roll, Leak And Brake Testing

Torque-Hub units should always be roll and leak tested before disassembly and after assembly to make sure that the unit's gears, bearings and seals are working properly. The following information briefly outlines what to look for when performing these tests.

Roll Test

The purpose of the roll test is to determine if the unit's gears are rotating freely and properly. You should be able to rotate the gears in your unit by applying constant force to the roll checker. If you feel more drag in the gears only at certain points, then the gears are not rolling freely and should be examined for improper installation or defects. Some gear packages roll with more difficulty than others. Do not be concerned if the gears in your unit seem to roll hard as long as they roll with consistency. Release the pressure at the Brake Housing (6) and remove the test fixtures.

Leak Test (Main Unit)

The purpose of a leak test is to make sure the unit is air tight. You can tell if your unit has a leak if the pressure gauge reading on your air checker starts to fall after the unit has been pressurized and allowed to equalize. Leaks will most likely occur at the pipe plugs, the main seal or wherever o-rings or gaskets are located. The exact location of a leak can usually be detected by brushing a soap and water solution around the main seal and where the o-rings or gaskets meet on the exterior of the unit, then checking for air bubbles. If a leak is detected in a seal, o-ring or gasket, the part must be replaced, and the unit rechecked. Leak test at 10 psi (0.7 bar) for 20 minutes.

Brake Test

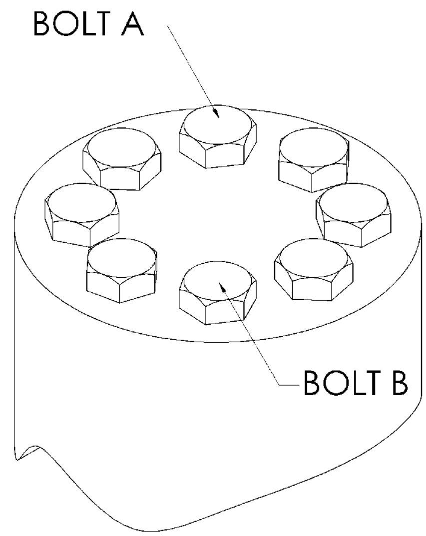
The brake test must be performed with the Motor removed and the Brake Test Plate (T-214404) installed. Install the Hex Bolts through Brake Test Plate and torque to 80 - 100 ft. lbs. (108-135 Nm). Install Roll Checking Tool (T-212731) and apply 210 psi (14 bar) to the o-ring port in the side of the Brake Housing. The roll checking fixture should roll freely. Increase the pressure to 3000 psi (207 bar) and perform the Roll Test.

NOTE: *Failure to perform this lest may result in damaged or ineffective brake parts.*

Tightening and Torquing Bolts

If an air impact wrench is used to tighten bolts, extreme care should be taken to ensure that the bolts are not tightened beyond their specified torque.

The following steps describe how to tighten and torque bolts or socket head capscrews in a bolt circle.

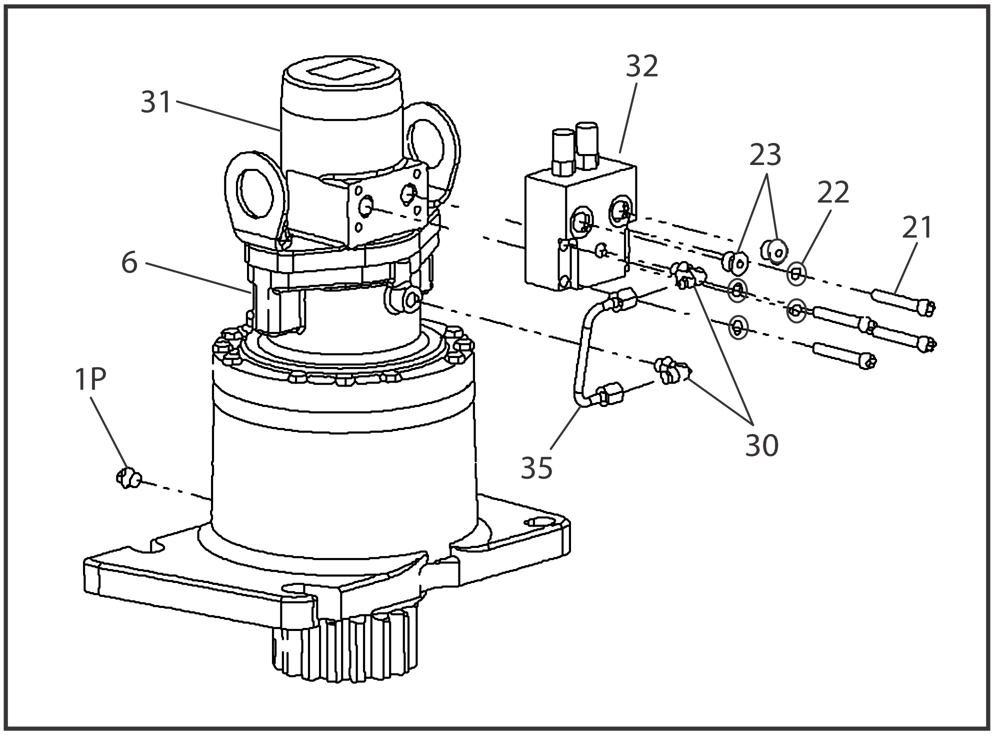


1. Tighten (but do not torque) bolt “A" until snug.
2. Go to the opposite side of the bolt circle and tighten bolt “B” until equally snug.
3. Crisscross around the bolt circle and tighten remaining bolts.
4. Now use a torque wrench to apply the specified torque to bolt “A”.
5. Using the same sequence, crisscross around the bolt circle and apply an equal torque to the remaining bolts.

Motor Control Valve Disassembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-33.*

1. Place unit on bench with the motor end up.
2. Remove O-ring Plug (1P) and drain the oil from the gear-box.
3. Remove Hydraulic Tubing Assembly (35) by loosening fittings on both ends of tube with a wrench.
4. Using a wrench, loosen jam nuts on Elbow Fittings (30) and remove fittings from Brake (6) and Motor Control Valve (32).
5. Remove O-ring Plugs (23) from Motor Control Valve (32).
6. Remove Motor Control Valve (32) from Motor (31) by removing the four Bolts (21) and washers (22).



1P. O-ring Plug
6. Hydraulic Brake
21. Hex Bolt
22. Lockwasher
23. Plug
30. Elbow Fitting
31. Hydraulic Motor
32. Motor Control Valve
35. Hydraulic Tubing

Figure 3-33. Motor Control Valve

Motor and Brake Disassembly

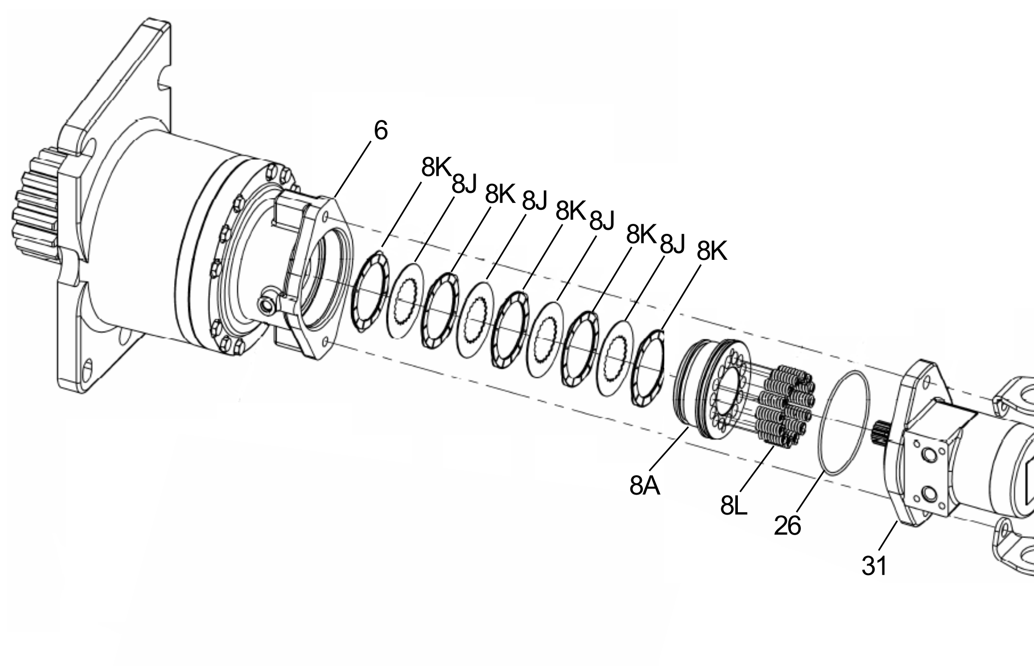
NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-34.*

1. With unit resting on bench with Motor (31) end up, loosen Hex Bolts (29) and remove Lift Lugs (28) from the Motor (31).
2. Pull Motor (31) straight up and remove Motor (31) from Brake Housing (6).
3. Remove O-ring (26) from between Motor (31) and Brake Housing (6).
4. Remove the Springs (8L) from the piston.
5. Apply less than 50 psi (3.45 bar) air to the "brake port" to remove Brake Piston (8A).

CAUTION

THE PISTON MAY MOVE QUICKLY. EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING THIS PROCEDURE.

6. Remove Rotors (8J) and Stators (8K) from Brake Housing (6).



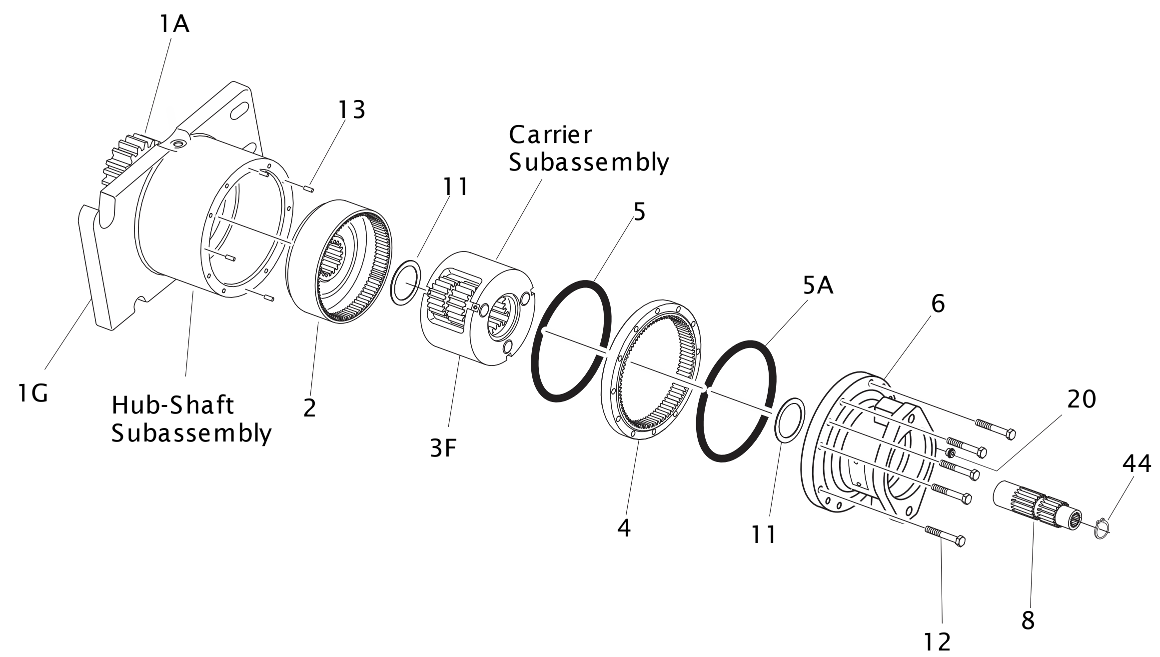
6. Brake Housing	26. O-ring
8A. Brake Piston	28. Lift Lug
8L. Spring	29. Hex Bolt
8J. Rotors	31. Motor
8K. Stator	

Figure 3-34. Motor and Brake

Main Drive Disassembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-35.*

1. Remove Sun Gear (8) with Retaining Ring (44) inside.
2. With the unit resting on the Output Shaft (Pinion) (1A), remove the Bolts (12) from the Brake Housing (6).
3. Remove the Brake Housing (6) from the main assembly.
4. Remove O-ring (5A) from between Brake Housing (6) and Ring Gear (4).
5. Remove Thrust Washer (11) from between Brake Housing (6) and Carrier Subassembly.
6. Remove Ring Gear (4) from Housing (1G).
7. Remove O-ring (5) from between Ring Gear (4) and Housing (1G).
8. Remove Carrier Sub-Assembly.
9. Remove Thrust Washer (11) from between Carrier Sub-Assembly and Internal Gear (2).
10. Remove Internal Gear (2).



1A. Output Shaft (Pinion)	5. O-ring	12. Bolt
1G. Housing	5A. O-ring	13. Dowel Pin
2. Internal Gear	6. Brake Housing	20. Pipe Plug
3F. Carrier subassembly	8. Sun Gear	44. Ring
4. Ring Gear	11. Thrust Washer	

Figure 3-35. Main Drive Assembly

Hub-Shaft Disassembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-36.*

1. Using retaining ring pliers remove Retaining Ring (1I) from groove in Output Shaft (1A) and discard.

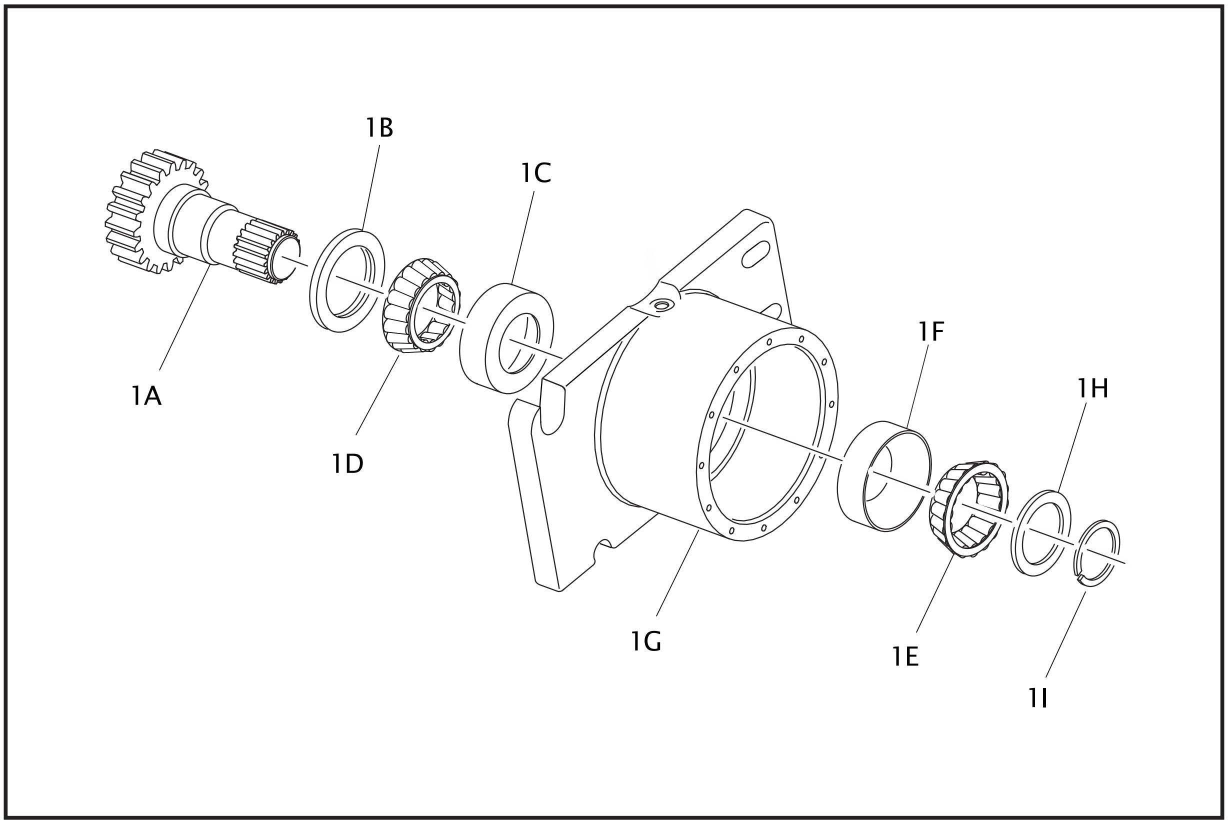
⚠ CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING THIS PROCEDURE.

2. Remove Thrust Washer (1H).
3. While supporting the Housing (1G) on the Output Shaft (1A) end, press the Output Shaft (1A) out of the Housing (1G).

NOTE: *The Lip Seal (1B) will be pressed out of the Housing (1G) by the Bearing Cone (1D) during this step.*

4. Remove the Bearing Cone (1E) from the Housing (1G).
5. Use a bearing puller to remove the Bearing Cone (1D) from the Shaft (1A).
6. Bearing Cups (1C & 1F) will remain in Housing (1G).



1A. Output Shaft
1B. Lip Seal
1C. Bearing Cup
1D. Bearing Cone
1E. Bearing Cone
1F. Bearing Cup
1G. Housing
1H. Thrust Washer
1I. Retaining Ring

Figure 3-36. Hub-Shaft

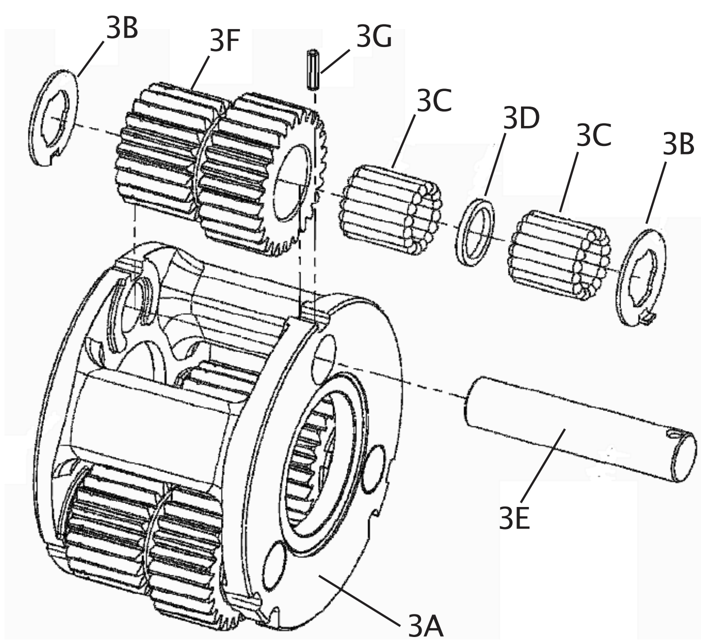
Carrier Disassembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-37.*

1. Using a 3/16 in. punch drive the Roll Pin (3G) which holds the Planet Shaft (3E) in the Carrier (3A) down into the Planet Shaft (3E) until it bottoms.

NOTE: *Make sure that the Roll Pin has bottomed. Otherwise, damage to the carrier could occur when the Planet Shaft is removed.*

2. Remove the Planet Shaft (3E) from the Carrier (3A). Use a small punch to remove the Roll Pin (3D) from the Planet Shaft (3E).
3. Slide the Planet Gear (3F), the two Thrust Washers (3B) out of the Carrier (3A).
4. Remove both rows of Needle Bearings (3C) and the Spacer (3D) from the bore of the Planet Gear (3F).
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 for the remaining two Cluster Gears (3F).



3A. Carrier
3B. Thrust Washers
3C. Needle Bearing
3D. Spacer
3E. Planet Shaft
3F. Cluster Gear
3G. Roll Pin

Figure 3-37. Carrier

Hub-Shaft Assembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-36.*

1. Press Bearing Cup (1C) into Housing (1G) taking care to insure cup starts square with the bore of Hub (1G).
2. Place Bearing Cone (1D) in Bearing Cup (1C) in Housing (1G).
3. Press or tap Seal (1B) Into the counterbore of Housing (1G) to the point where it becomes flush with the Housing (1G) face. Care should be taken to insure Seal (1B) is being correctly installed (smooth face up). Apply grease to the rubber portion of the seal bore.
4. Invert Hub (1G) and press Bearing Cup (1E) into counterbore of Housing (1G).
5. Carefully lower Housing (1G) onto the Output Shaft (1A) until Bearing Cone (1D) contacts the Output Shaft (1A).
6. Press on the small end of the Bearing Cone (1D), being careful not to contact the bearing cage, until the Bearing Cone (1D) seats on the shoulder of the Output Shaft (1A).
7. Start the Bearing Cone (1F) onto the Output Shaft (1A).
8. Press or tap the Bearing Cone (1F) onto the Output Shaft (1A) until it is just seated in the Bearing Cup (1E). while rotating the Housing (G).
9. Install Bearing Spacer (1H) onto Output Shaft (1A) and against Bearing Cone (1F).
10. Install Retaining Ring (1I) into the groove in the Output Shaft (1A). This Retaining Ring (1I) should never be reused in a repair or rebuild.

⚠ WARNING

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING THIS PROCEDURE.

11. Tap the Retaining Ring (1I) with a soft metal punch to ensure that the Retaining Ring (1I) is completely seated in the groove of the Output Shaft (IA).

⚠ WARNING

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING THIS PROCEDURE.

12. Install O-ring Plug (1P) and torque to 23 to 24 ft. lbs. (31 to 32 Nm).

Carrier Assembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-37.*

1. Apply a liberal Coat of grease to the bore of Cluster Gear (3F). This will enable the Needle Rollers (3C) to be held in place during assembly.
2. Install the first row of Needle Rollers (3C) into the bore of Cluster Gear (3F).
3. Insert Spacer (3D) into bore of Cluster Gear (3F) on top of the Needle Rollers (3C).
4. Place second row of Needle Rollers (3C) into bore of Cluster Gear (3F) against Spacer (3D).
5. Place Carrier (3A) so that one of the roll pin holes is straight up.
6. Start Planet Shaft (3E) through the hole in Carrier (3A). Using ample grease to hold it in position, slide one Thrust Washer (3B) over the Planet Shaft (3E) with the tang resting in the cast slot of the Carrier (3A).
7. With large end of Cluster Gear (3F) facing the roll pin hole in the Carrier, place the Cluster Gear into position in carrier (3A) and push Planet Shaft (3E) through the Cluster Gear (3F) without going all the way through.
8. Slide the second Thrust Washer (3B) between the Cluster Gear (3F) and the Carrier (3A) with the tang of the washer located in the cast slot of the Carrier (3A). Finish sliding the Planet Shaft (3E) through the Thrust Washer (3B) and into the Carrier (3A).
9. Position the non-chamfered side on the Planet Shaft (3E) roll pin hole so that it is in line with the hole in the Carrier (3A) using a 1/8 in. (3 mm) diameter punch.
10. After using a 3/16 in. (5 mm) punch to align the two roll pin holes. Drive the Roll Pin (3G) through Carrier (3A) and into the Planet Shaft (3E) until the Roll Pin (3G) is flush with the bottom of the cast slot in the Carrier (3A) outside diameter at the thrust washer (3B) tang. Use a 1/4 in. (6 mm) pin punch to make sure the Roll Pin (3G) is flush in the slot.
11. Repeat Steps 1 through 10 for the remaining two Cluster Gears (3F).

Main Drive Assembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-35.*

1. With the Hub Shaft Sub-Assembly resting on the Shaft (1A) install Internal Gear (2). The spline of the Internal Gear (2) bore will mesh with the spline of the Output Shaft (1A). This will be a tight fit.
2. Inspect the location of the Internal Gear (2) on the Output Shaft (1A). The portion of the Output Shaft (1A) should protrude through the Internal Gear (2) bore.
3. Install 4 Dowel Pins (13) into counterbore holes in Hub (IG).
4. Install Thrust Washer (11) in counterbore of Carrier Sub-Assembly (Small Cluster-Gear end) Use grease to hold in place.
5. Place O-ring (5) into Hub counter-bore. Use grease to hold O-ring in place.

⚠ WARNING

BEWARE OF SHARP EDGES OF THE COUNTERBORE WHILE SEATING THIS ORING.

6. Place Carrier Sub-Assembly on bench with the large end of Cluster Gears (3F) facing up with one at the 12 o'clock position. Find the punch marked tooth on each gear at the large end and locate at 12 o'clock (straight up) from each planet pin. Marked tooth will be located just under the Carrier on upper two gears. Check the timing through the slots in the carrier (See Carrier Sub-Assembly).
7. With large shoulder side of Ring Gear (4) facing down, place Ring Gear (4) over (into mesh with) cluster gears (3F). Be sure that cluster gear timing marks (punch marks) remain in correct location during Ring Gear (4) installation. The side of the Ring Gear (4) with an "X" or punch mark stamped on it should be up.
8. While holding Ring Gear (4) and Cluster Gears (3F) in mesh, place small end of Cluster Gears (3F) into mesh with the Internal Gear (2). On the Ring Gear (4) locate the hole marked "X", or punch marked, over one of the marked counter-bored holes (Step 5) in Hub (1G). Check timing through the slots in the carrier. Rotate carrier in assembly to check for freedom of rotation.

NOTE: *If gears do not mesh easily or Carrier Assembly does not rotate freely, then remove the Carrier and Ring Gear and check the Cluster Gear timing.*

9. Install Thrust Washer (11) into the counterbore on the face of the carrier. Use grease to hold in place.
10. Place O-ring (5A) into counter-bore or Brake Housing (6). Use grease to hold O-Ring in place.

⚠ CAUTION

BEWARE OF SHARP EDGES OF THE COUNTER-BORE WHILE SEATING THIS O-RING.

11. Install the Brake Housing (6), taking care to correctly align Pipe Plug (20) with those in the Hub (I G).
12. Install Bolts (12) through the Brake Housing (6) into the Hub (1G) and torque to 23-27 ft. lbs. (31-37 Nm).
13. With gearbox standing on the pinion end fill gearbox with 43 oz. of ISO VG150/VG220 gear Oil.
14. Install Retaining Ring (44) into the groove in the Sun Gear (8).
15. Install the Sun Gear (8) into mesh with the Planet Gears (3F).
16. Install Pipe Plug (20) into Cover (6) torque to 23 to 24 ft. lbs. (31-32 Nm).

Motor and Brake Assembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-34.*

1. Alternate Stators (8K) (O.D. lobes) with Rotors (8J) (I.D. splines) into bore of Brake Housing (6). starting with a Stator (8K) and ending with a Stator (8K).
2. Grease the O-rings (8F) & (8D) and Backup rings (8H) & (8E). and place them in their respective grooves in the Brake Housing (6) and Piston (8A). Make sure the Backup rings are correctly positioned.
3. Apply grease sparingly to the Piston O.D. (8A) and the bore of the Brake Housing (6). Insert Piston (8A) into Brake Housing (6) be sure not to damage the O-rings.
4. Install Springs (8L) into the spring pockets of the Piston (8A).
5. Test the brake and perform the roll test. Remove the Brake Test Plate.
6. Install the O-ring (26) onto the pilot of the Motor (31), use grease to keep the O-ring in place.
7. Place Motor (31) into Brake pilot, and line up holes.
8. Assemble Lift Lugs (28) onto Hex Bolts (29). Assemble Hex Bolts (29) with Lift Lugs (28) through the Motor (31) and Brake (6) against Motor flange. Torque to 80-100 ft. lbs. (108-136 Nm).

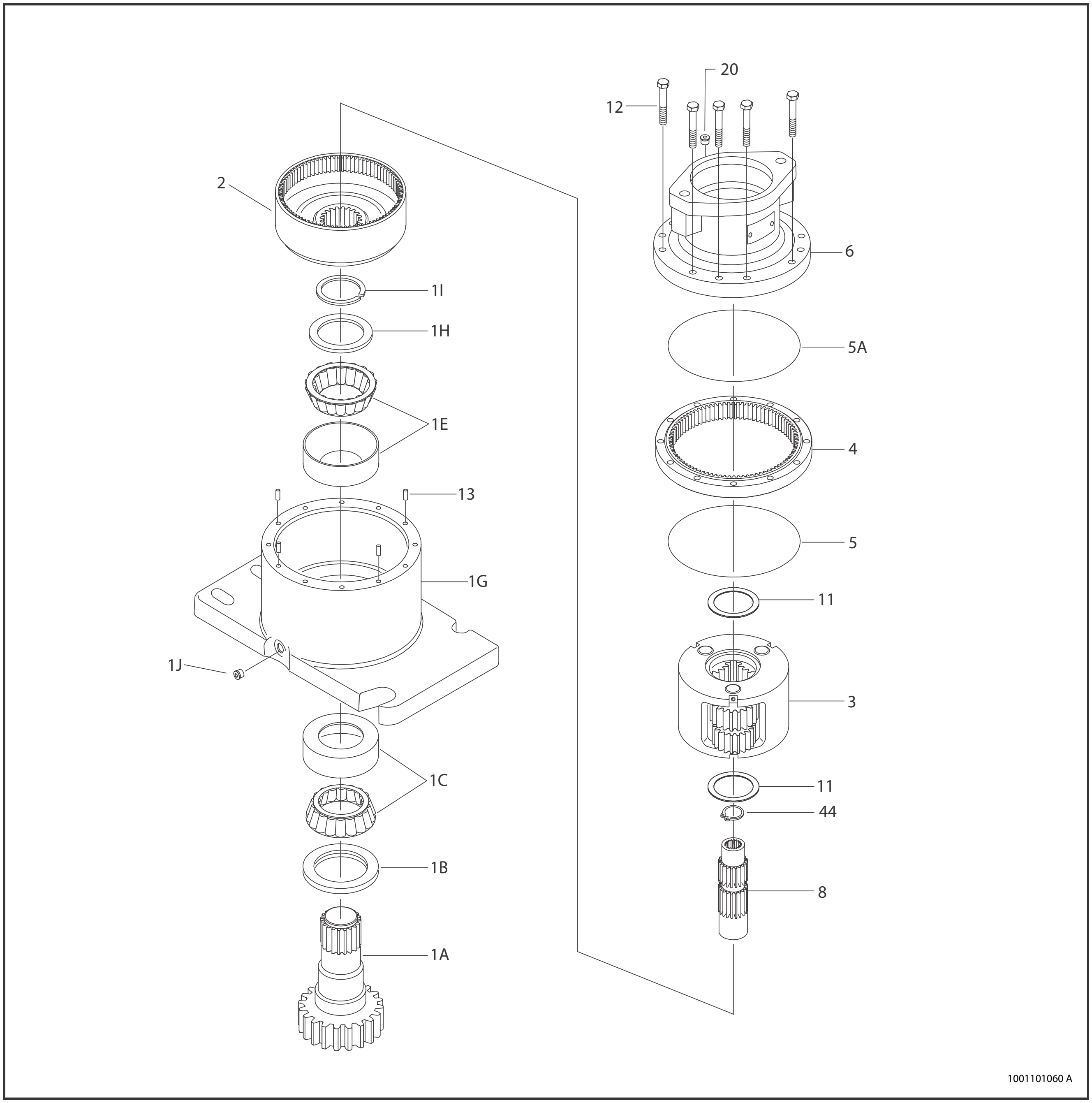
Motor Control Valve Assembly

NOTE: *Refer to Figure 3-33.*

1. Lay assembly down with motor ports facing up. Remove the two plastic plugs in the motor ports, being careful not to lose the O-ring in each port. Assemble the Motor control Valve (32) onto the Motor (31) with Bolt (21) and Lock Washers (22). Torque Bolts (21) to 23-27 ft. lbs. (31-37 Nm).

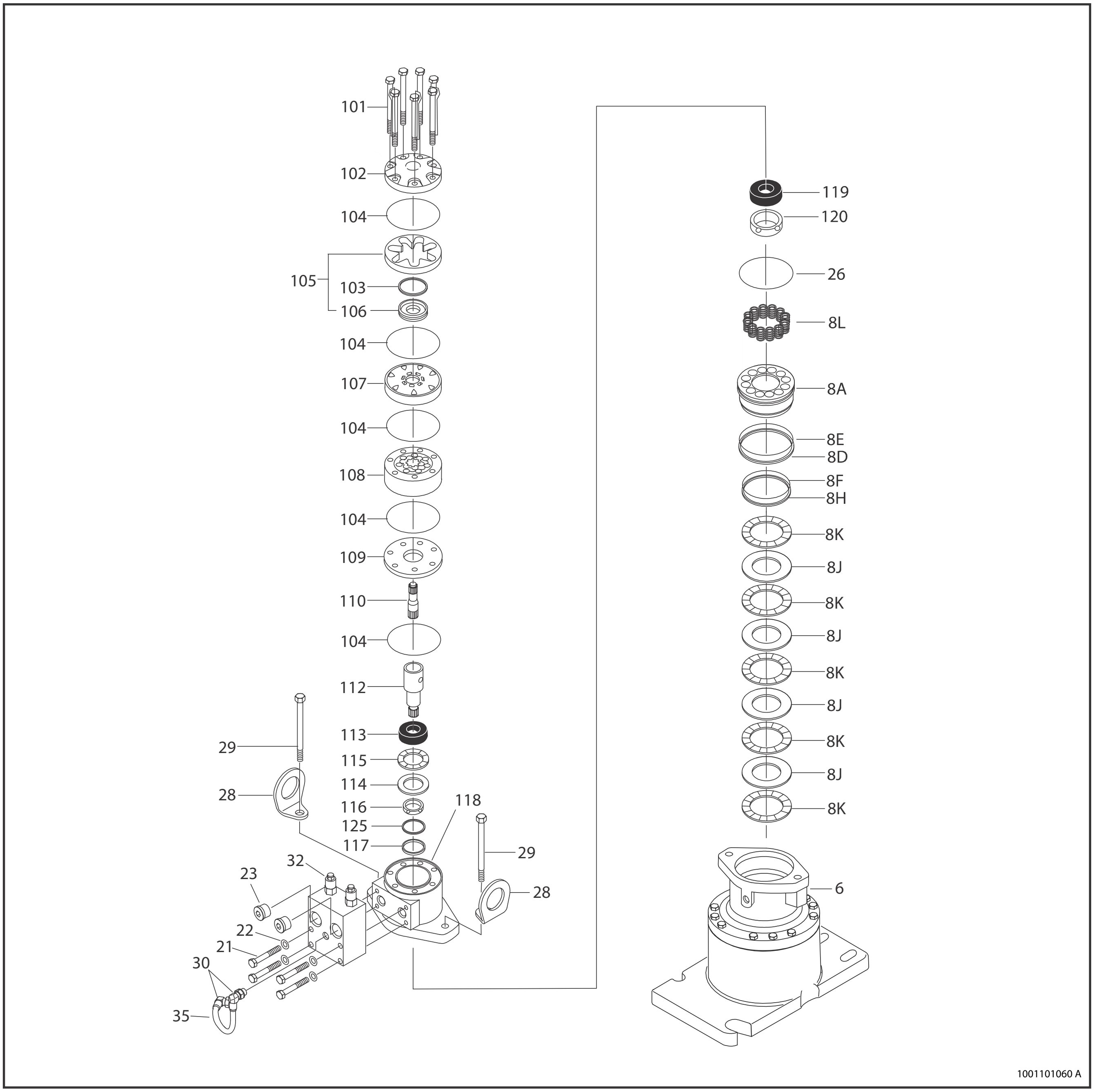
NOTE: *Be sure to align the holes in the control valve with the motor ports.*

2. Install Elbow Fittings (30) into Brake (6). Do not tighten jam nuts.
3. Install Elbow Fittings (30) into Motor Control Valve (32). Do not tighten jam nuts.
4. Assemble Tube (35) into Elbow Fittings (30) and torque to 13-15 ft. lbs. (18-20 Nm). Tighten the jam nuts on the Elbow Fittings (30) and torque to 13-15 ft. lbs. (18-20 Nm).
5. Install one O-ring Plug (23) into Motor Control Valve (32) and torque to 30-31 ft. lbs. (41-42 Nm).
6. Pressure test brake, tube and control valve connections by applying 3000 psi (207 bar) pressure to the open port in the Motor Control Valve (32) and holding lor 1 minute. Check lor leaks al the control-valve-motor interface and the tube connections. Release pressure and install the remaining O-ring Plug (23) into Motor Control Valve (32) and torque to 30-31 ft. lbs. (41-42 Nm).



1A. Output Shaft	1G. Housing	2. Internal Gear	5A. O-Ring	12. Bolt
1B. Lip Seal	1H. Thrust Washer	3. Carrier Assembly	6. Brake Housing	13. Dowel Pin
1C. Bearing	1I. Retaining Ring	4. Ring Gear	8. Sun Gear	20. Pipe Plug
1D. Bearing	1J. Pipe Plug	5. O-Ring	11. Thrust washer	44. Internal Retaining Ring

Figure 3-38. Swing Drive Assembly



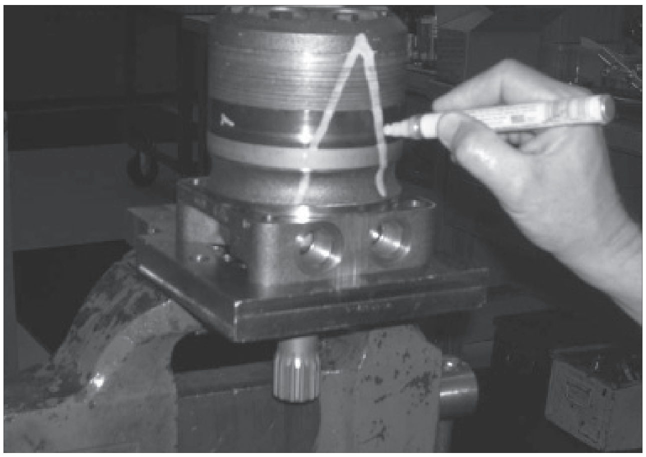
6. Brake Housing	8L. Spring	35. Tube	108. Rotor Set	117. Backup Washer
8A. Piston	21. Thrust Washer	101. Bolt	109. Wear Plate	118. Housing
8D. O-Ring	22. Lock washer	102. End Cover	110. Drive Link	119. Outer Bearing
8E. Backup Ring	23. Pipe Plug	103. Commutator Seal	112. Coupling Shaft	120. Seal
8F. O-Ring	26. O-Ring	104. Ring Seal	113. Inner Bearing	125. Backup Washer
8H. Backup Ring	28. Lifting lug	105. Commutator and Ring Assy	114. Thrust Washer	
8J. Rotor Disc	29. Bolt	106. Ring	115. Thrust Bearing	
8K. Stator Disc	30. Elbow	107. Manifold	116. Inner Seal	

Figure 3-39. Swing Motor and Brake Assembly

3.9 SWING MOTOR

Disassembly and Inspection

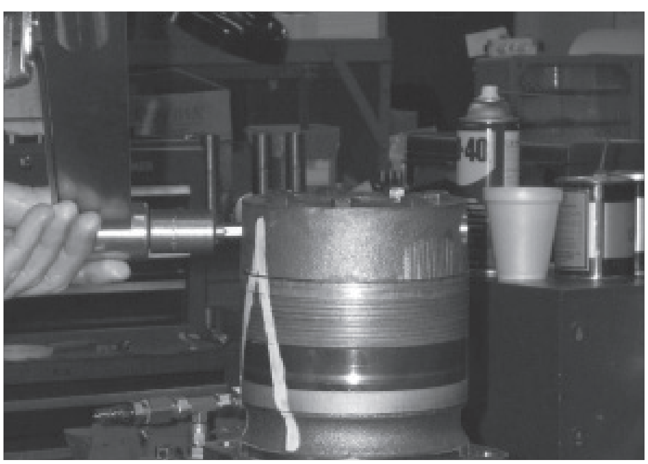
1. Place the Torqmotor™ in a soft jawed vice, with coupling shaft (12) pointed down and the vise jaws clamping firmly on the sides of the housing (18) mounting flange or port bosses. Remove manifold port O-rings (18A) if applicable.

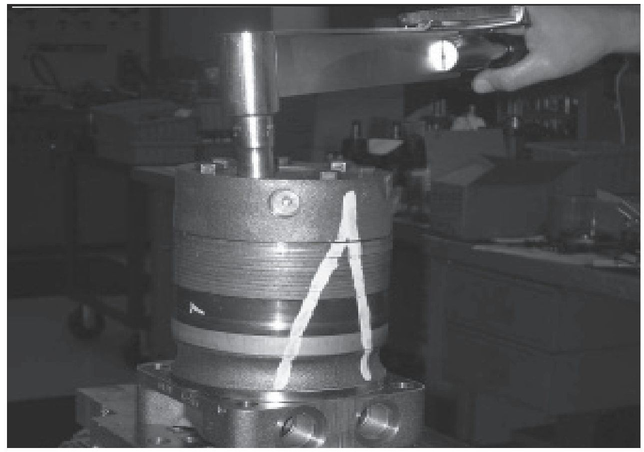


WARNING

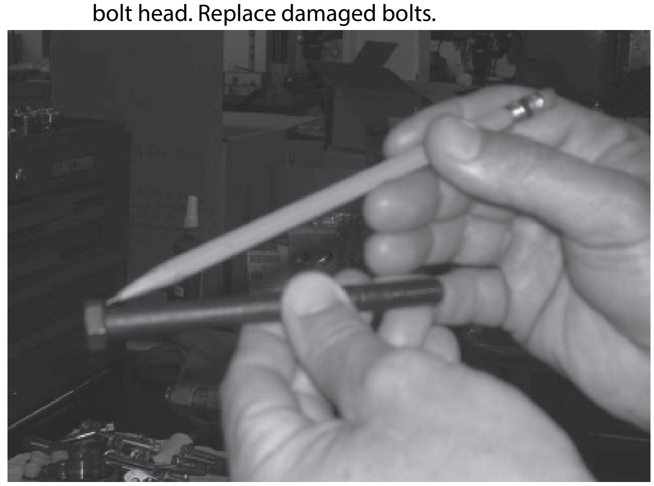
IF THE TORQMOTOR™ IS NOT FIRMLY HELD IN THE VISE, IT COULD BE DISLODGED DURINGTHE SERVICE PROCEDURES, CAUSING INJURY.

2. Scribe an alignment mark down and across the Torqmotor™ components from end cover (2) to housing (18) to facilitate reassembly orientation where required. Loosen two shuttle or relief valve plugs (21) for disassembly later if included in end cover. 3/16 or 3/8 in. Allen wrench or 1 in. hex socket required.

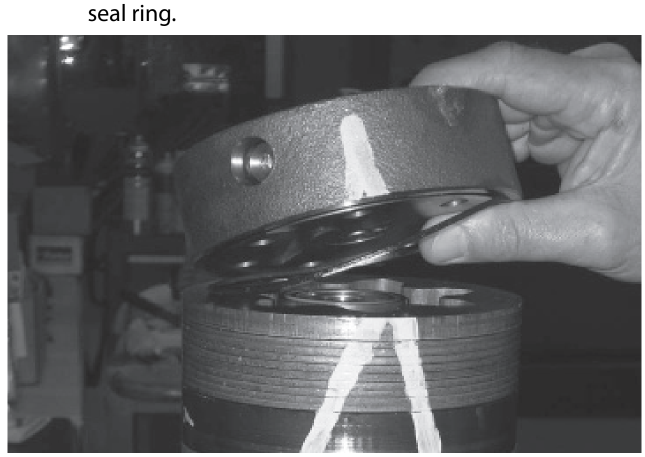




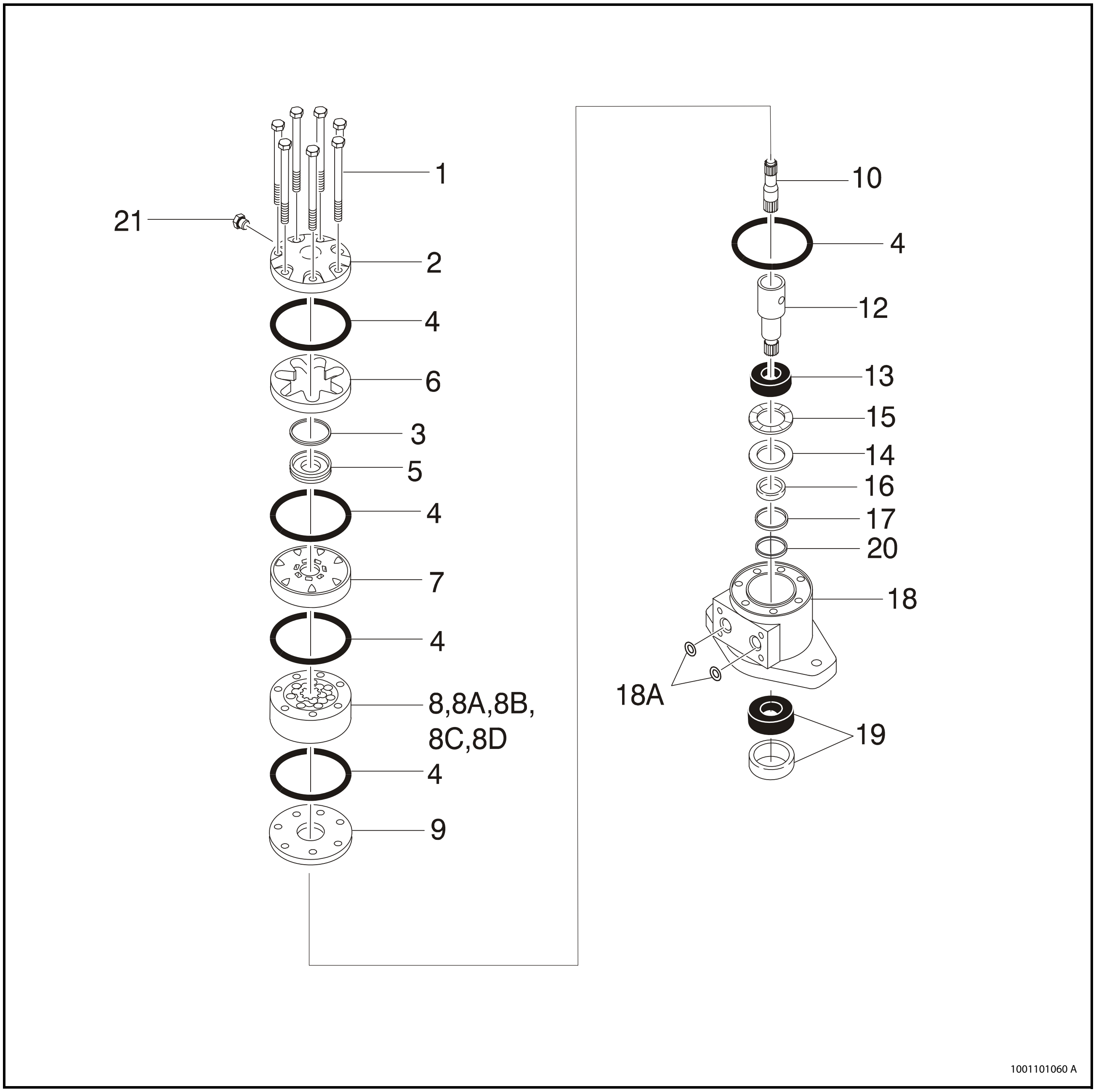
3. Remove the five, six, or seven special ring head bolts (1) using an appropriate 1/2 or 9/16 in. size socket. Inspect bolts for damaged threads, or sealing rings, under the bolt head. Replace damaged bolts.



4. Remove end cover assembly (2) and seal ring (4). Discard seal ring.



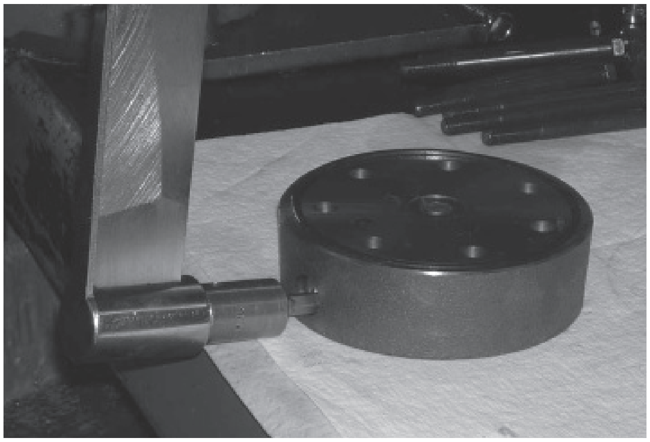
NOTE: *Refer to the appropriate "alternate cover construction" on the exploded view to determine the end cover construction being serviced.*



1. Special Bolts
2. End Cover
3. Seal Ring-Commutator
4. Seal Ring
5. Commutator Ring
6. Commutator Ring
7. Manifold
8. Rotor Set
8A. Rotor
8B. Stator or Stator Vane
8D. Stator Half
9. Wear Plate
10. Drive Link
11. Not Used
12. Coupling Shaft
13. Bearing/Bushing, Inner
14. Thrust Washer
15. Thrust Bearing
16. Seal
17. Backup Washer
18. Housing
18A. O-Ring
19. Bearing/Bushing, Outer
20. Backup Washer
21. Plug

Figure 3-40. Swing Drive Motor

5. If the end cover (2) is equipped with shuttle valve components, remove the two previously loosened plugs (21).



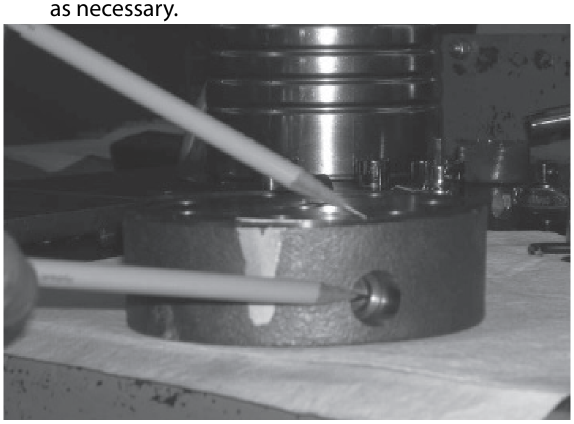
NOTICE

BE READY TO CATCH THE SHUTTLE VALVE OR RELIEF VALVE COMPONENTS THAT WILL FALL OUT OF THE END COVER VALVE CAVITY WHEN THE PLUGS ARE REMOVED.

NOTE: *O- ring is not included in seal kit but serviced separately, if required.*

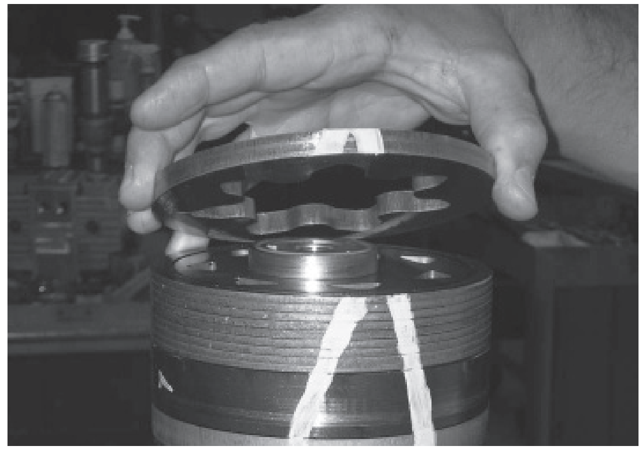
NOTE: *The insert and if included the orifice plug in the end cover (2) must not be removed as they are serviced as an integral part of the end cover.*

6. Thoroughly wash end cover (2) in proper solvent and blow dry. Be sure the end cover valve apertures, including the internal orifice plug, are free of contamination. Inspect end cover for cracks and the bolt head recesses for good bolt head sealing surfaces. Replace end cover as necessary.

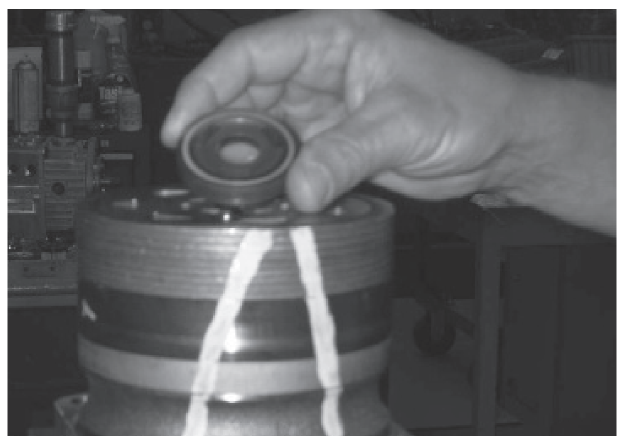


NOTE: *A polished pattern (not scratches) on the cover from rotation of the commutator (5) is normal. Discoloration would indicate excess fluid temperature, thermal shock, or excess speed and require system investigation for cause and close inspection of end cover, commutator, manifold, and rotor set.*

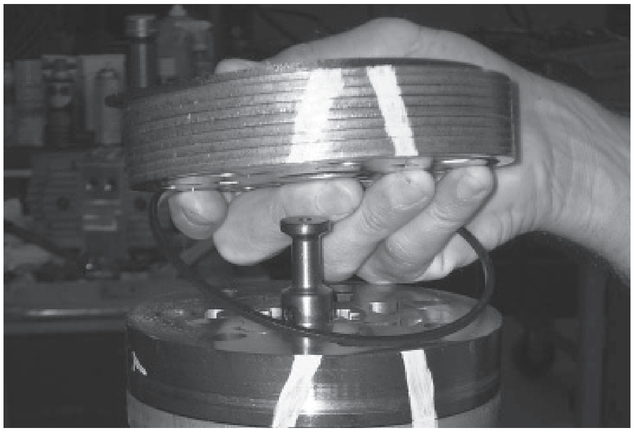
7. Remove commutator ring (6). Inspect commutator ring for cracks, or burrs.



8. Remove commutator (5) and seal ring (3) Remove seal ring from commutator, using an air hose to blow air into ring groove until seal ring is lifted out and discard seal ring. Inspect commutator for cracks or burrs, wear, scoring, spalling or brinelling. If any of these conditions exist, replace commutator and commutator ring as a matched set.

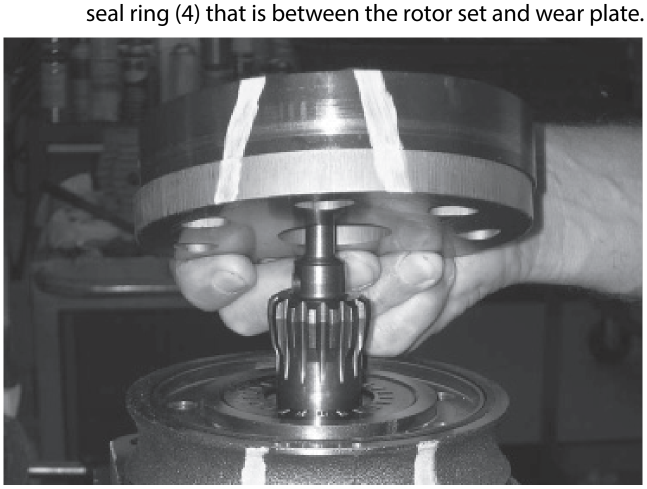


9. Remove manifold (7) and inspect for cracks surface scoring, brinelling or spalling. Replace manifold if any of these conditions exist. A polished pattern on the ground surface from commutator or rotor rotation is normal. Remove and discard the seal rings (4) that are on both sides of the manifold.



NOTE: *The manifold is constructed of plates bonded together to form an integral component not subject to further disassembly for service. Compare configuration of both sides oft hem an if old to ensure that same surface is reassembled against the rotor set.*

10. Remove rotor set (8) and warplane (9), together to retain the rotor set in its assembled form, maintaining the same rotor vane (8C) to stator (8B) contact surfaces. The drive link (10) may come away from the coupling shaft (12) with the rotor set, and wear plate.You may have to shift the rotor set on the warplane to work the drive link out of the rotor (8A) and warplane. Inspect the rotor set in its assembled form for nicks, scoring, or spalling on any surface and for broken or worn splines. If the rotor set component requires replacement, the complete rotor set must be replaced as it is a matched set. Inspect the warplane for cracks, brinelling, or scoring. Discard seal ring (4) that is between the rotor set and wear plate.

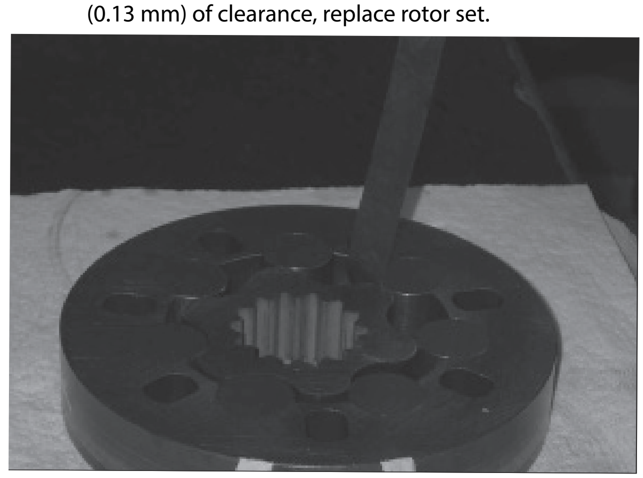


NOTE: *The rotor set (8) components may become disassembled during service procedures. Marking the surface of the rotor and stator that is facing UP, with etching ink or grease pencil before removal from Torqmotor™ will ensure correct reassembly of rotor into stator and rotor set into Torqmotor™. Marking all rotor components and mating spline components for exact repositioning at assembly will ensure maximum wear life and performance of rotor set and Torqmotor™.*

NOTE: *Series TG and TH may have a rotor set with two stator halves (8B & 8D) with a seal ring (4) between them and two sets of seven vanes (8C & 8E). Discard seal ring only if stator halves become disassembled during the service procedures.*

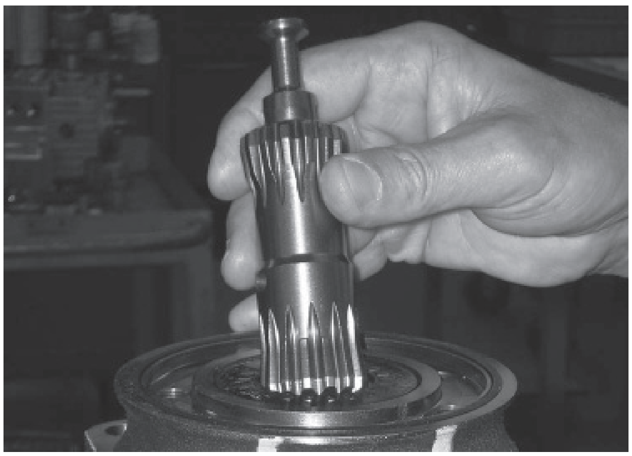
NOTE: *A polished pattern on the wear plate from rotor rotation is normal.*

11. Place rotor set (8) and wear plate (9) on a flat surface and center rotor (8A) in stator (8B) such that two rotor lobes (180 degrees apart) and a roller vane (8C) centerline are on the same stator centerline. Check the rotor lobe to roller vane clearance with a feeler gage at this common centerline. If there is more than 0.005 in. (0.13 mm) of clearance, replace rotor set.

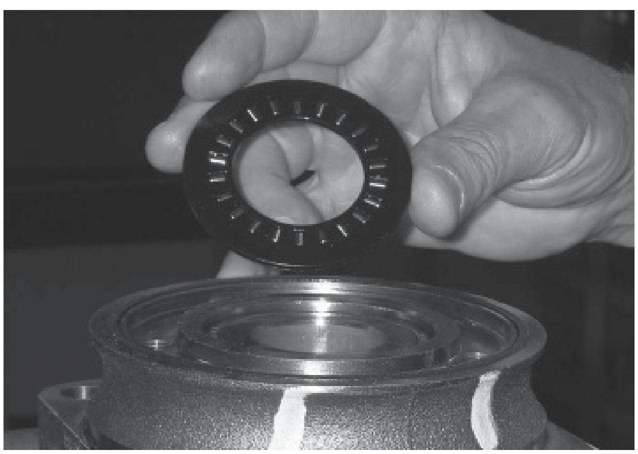


NOTE: *If rotor set (8) has two stator halves (8B & 8D) and two sets of seven vanes (8C & 8E) as shown in the alternate construction TG rotor set assembly view, check the rotor lobe to roller vane clearance at both ends of rotor.*

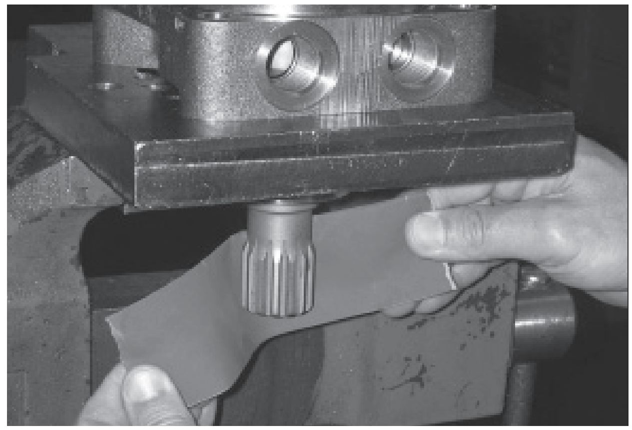
12. Remove drive link (10) from coupling shaft (12) if it was not removed with rotor set and wear plate. Inspect drive link for cracks and worn or damaged splines. No perceptible lash (play) should be noted between mating spline parts. Remove and discard seal ring (4) from housing (18).



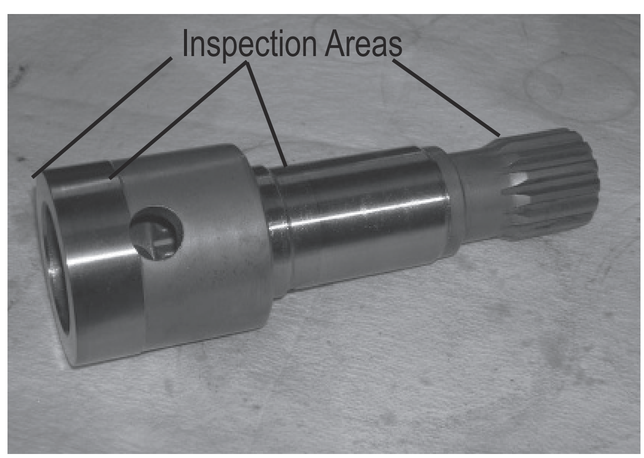
13. Remove thrust bearing (11) from top of coupling shaft (12). Inspect for wear, brinelling, corrosion and a full complement of retained rollers.



14. Check exposed portion of coupling shaft (12) to be sure you have removed all signs of rust and corrosion which might prevent its withdrawal through the seal and bearing. Crocus cloth or fine emery paper may be used. Remove any key (12A), nut (12B), washer (12C), bolt (12D), lock washer (12E), or retaining ring (12F).



15. Remove coupling shaft (12), by pushing on the output end of shaft. Inspect coupling shaft bearing and seal surfaces for spalling, nicks, grooves, severe wear or corrosion and discoloration. Inspect for damaged or worn internal and external splines or keyway. Replace coupling shaft if any of these conditions exist.

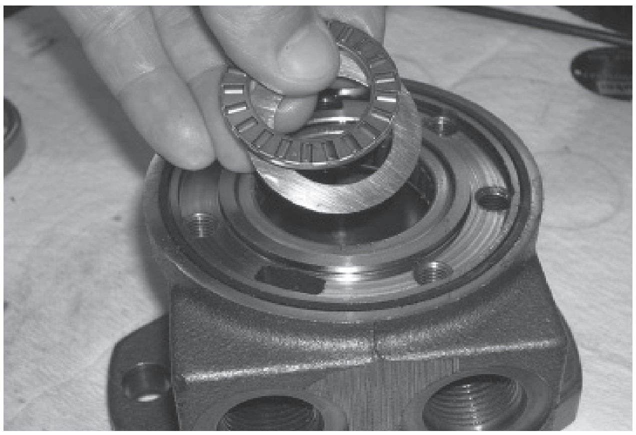


NOTE: *Minor shaft wear in seal area is permissible. If wear exceeds 0.020 in. (0.51 mm) diametrically, replace coupling shaft.*

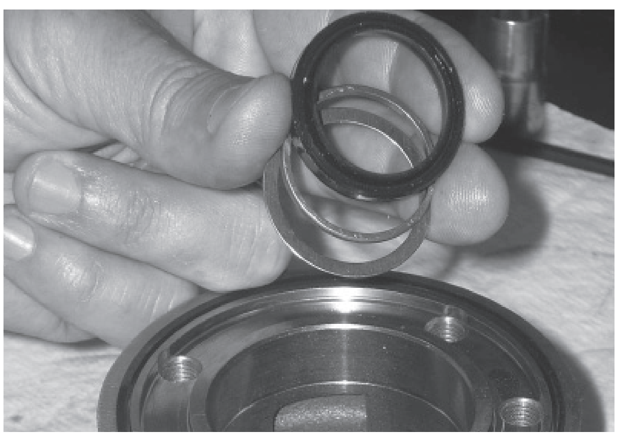
NOTE: *A slight "polish" is permissible in the shaft bearing areas. Anything more would require coupling shaft replacement.*

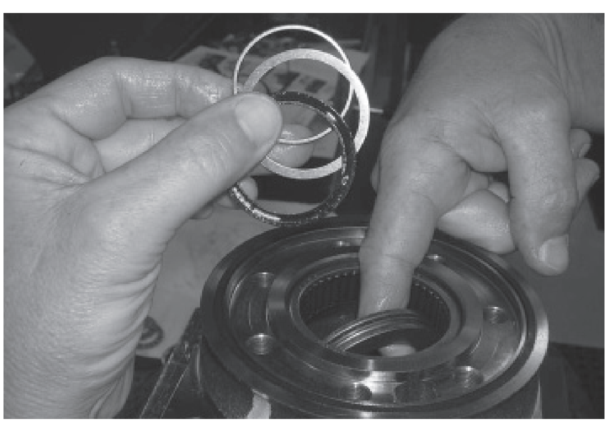
16. Remove and discard seal ring (4) from housing (18).

17. Remove thrust bearing (15) and thrust washer (14) Inspect for wear, brinelling, corrosion and a full complement of retained rollers.



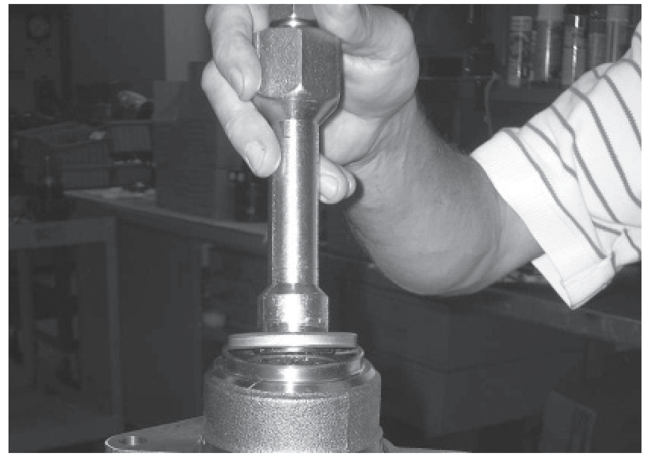
18. Remove seal (16) and backup washer (17) from Small Frame, housing (18). Discard both.



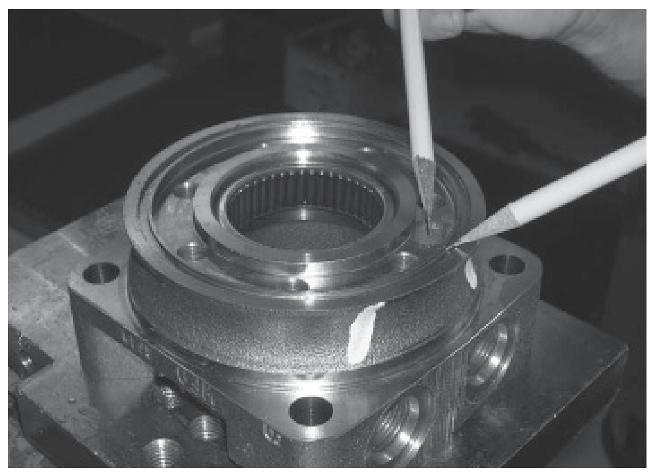


19. Remove housing (18) from vise, invert it and remove and discard seal.

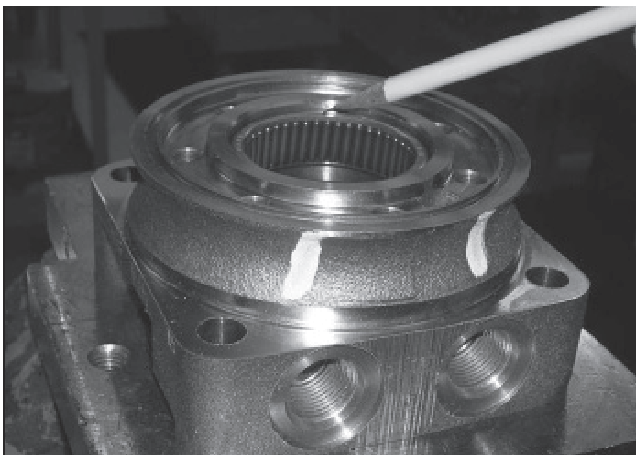
20. A blind hole bearing or seal puller is required.

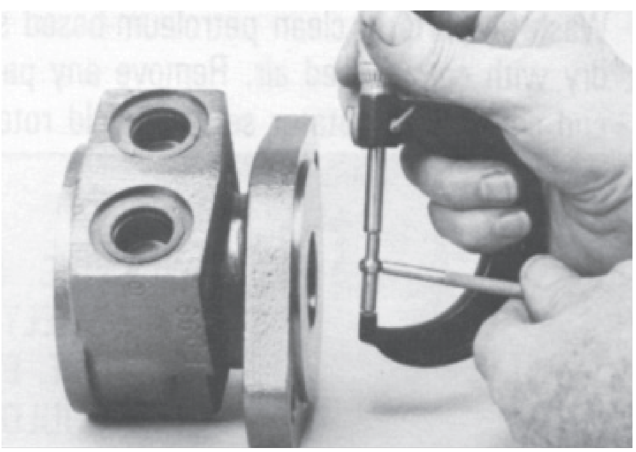


21. Inspect housing (18) assembly for cracks, the machined surfaces for nicks, burrs, brinelling or corrosion. Remove burrs that can be removed without changing dimensional characteristics. Inspect tapped holes for thread damage. If the housing is defective in these areas, discard the housing assembly.



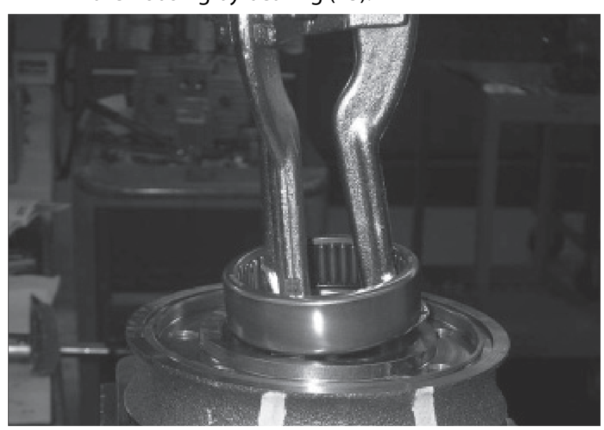
22. If the housing (18) assembly has passed inspection to this point, inspect the housing bearings/bushings (19) and (13) and if they are captured in the housing cavity the two thrust washers (14) and thrust bearing (15). The bearing rollers must be firmly retained in the bearing cages, but must rotate and orbit freely. All rollers and thrust washers must be free of brinelling and corrosion. The bushing (19) or (13) to coupling shaft diameter clearance must not exceed 0.010 in. (0.025 mm). A bearing, bushing, or thrust washer that does not pass inspection must be replaced. If the housing has passed this inspection the disassembly of the Torqmotor™ is completed.

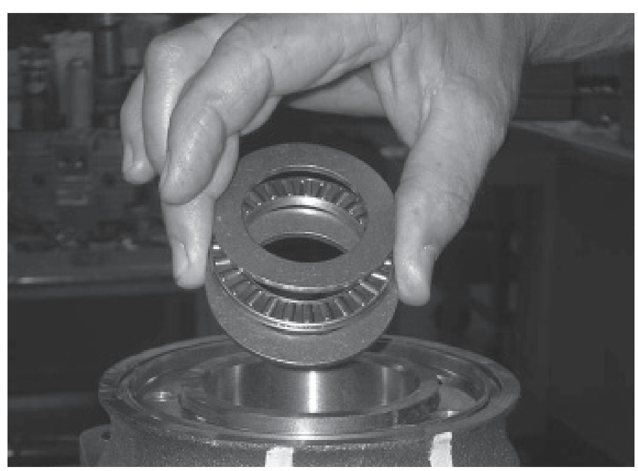




NOTE: *The depth or location of bearing/bushing (13) in relation to the housing wear plate surface and the depth or location of bearing/bushing (19) in relation to the beginning of bearing/bushing counterbore should be measured and noted before removing the bearings/ bushings. This will facilitate the correct reassembly of new bearings/bushings.*

23. If the bearings, bushing or thrust washers must be replaced use a suitable size bearing puller to remove bearing/bushings (19) and (13) from housing (18) without damaging the housing. Remove thrust washers (14) and thrust bearing (15) if they were previously retained in the housing by bearing (13).





Assembly

Replace all seals and seal rings with new ones each time you reassemble the Torqmotor™ unit. Lubricate all seals and seal rings with SAE 10W40 oil or clean grease before assembly.

NOTE: *Individual seals and seal rings as well as a complete seal kit are available. The parts should be available through most OEM parts distributors or Parker approved Torqmotor™ distributors. (Contact your local dealer for availability).*

NOTE: *Unless otherwise indicated, do not oil or grease parts before assembly.*

Wash all parts in clean petroleum-based solvents before assembly. Blow them dry with compressed air. Remove any paint chips from mating surfaces of the end cover, commutator set, manifold rotor set, wear plate and housing and from port and sealing areas.

DANGER

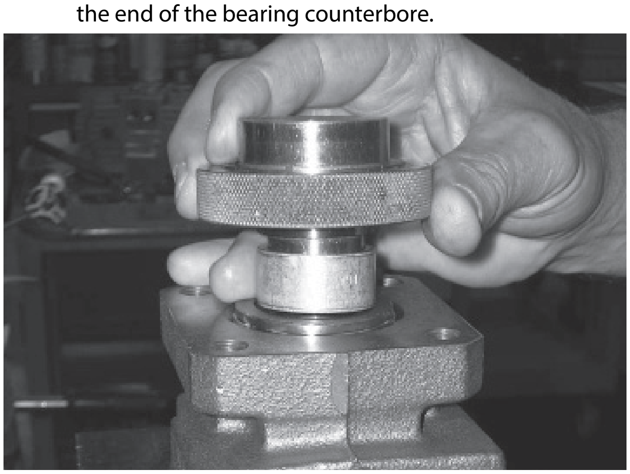
SINCE THEY ARE FLAMMABLE, BE EXTREMELY CAREFUL WHEN USING ANY SOLVENT. EVEN A SMALL EXPLOSION OR FIRE COULD CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH.

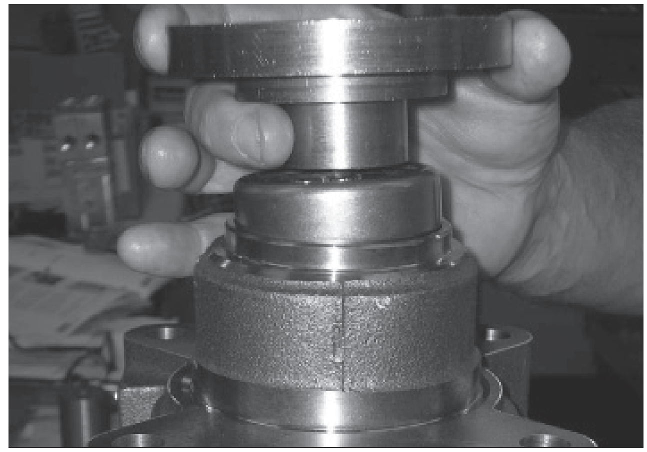
WARNING

WEAR EYE PROTECTION AND BE SURE TO COMPLY WITH OSHA OR OTHER MAXIMUM AIR PRESSURE REQUIREMENTS.

1. If the housing (18) bearing components were removed for replacement, thoroughly coat and pack a new outer bearing/bushing (19) with clean corrosion resistant grease recommended in the material section. Press the new bearing/bushing into the counterbore at the mounting flange end of the housing, using the appropriate sized bearing mandrel, which will control the bearing/ bushing depth.

   Torqmotor™ housings require the use of bearing mandrel to press bearing/ bushing (19) into the housing to a required depth of 0.151/0.161 in. (3.84/4.09 mm) from the end of the bearing counterbore.





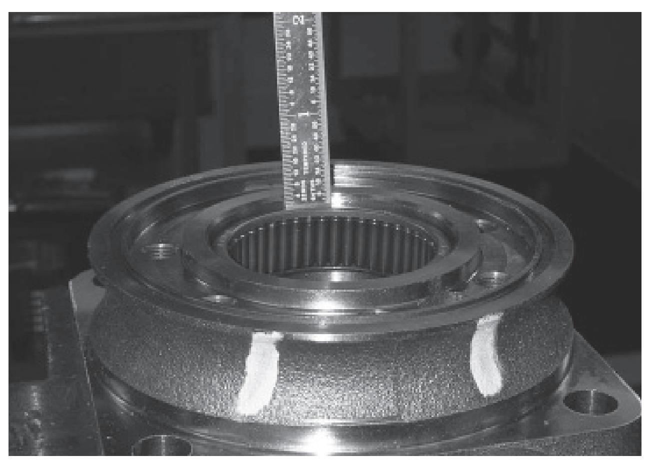
NOTE: *Bearing mandrel must be pressed against the lettered end of bearing shell. Take care that the housing bore is square with the press base and the bearing/bushing is not cocked when pressing a bearing/bushing into the housing.*

NOTICE

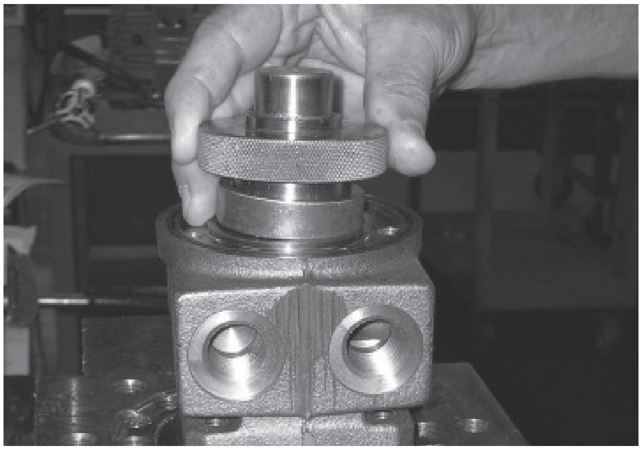
IF THE BEARING MANDREL SPECIFIED IN THE "TOOLS AND MATERIALS REQUIRED FOR SERVICING" SECTION IS NOT AVAILABLE AND ALTERNATE METHODS ARE USED TO PRESS IN BEARING/BUSHING (13) AND (19) THE BEARING/BUSHING DEPTHS SPECIFIED MUST BE ACHIEVED TO INSURE ADEQUATE BEARING SUPPORT AND CORRECT RELATIONSHIP TO ADJACENT COMPONENTS WHEN ASSEMBLED.

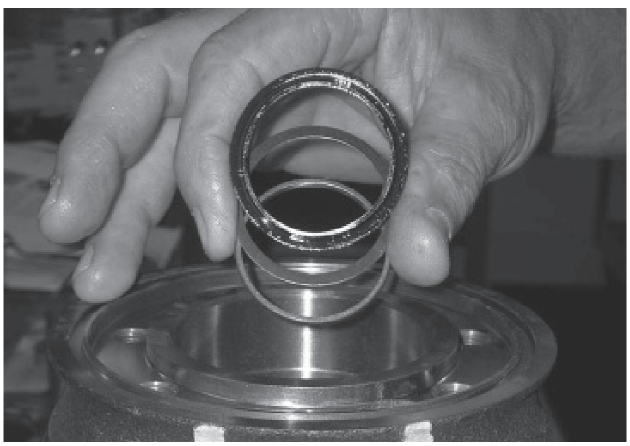
NOTICE

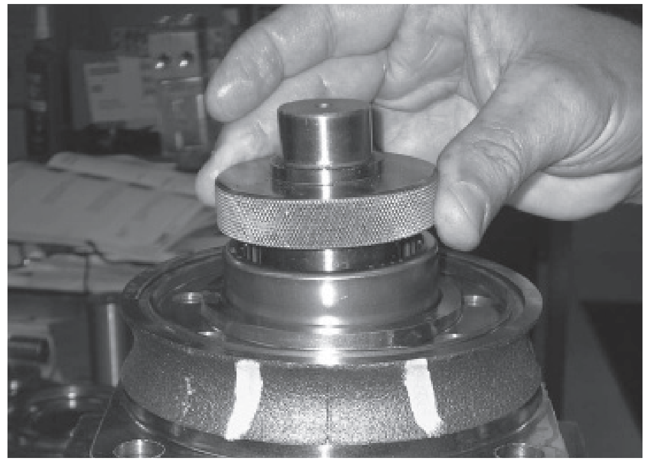
BECAUSE THE BEARING/BUSHINGS (13) AND (19) HAVE A PRESS FIT INTO THE HOUSING THEY MUST BE DISCARDED WHEN REMOVED. THEY MUST NOT BE REUSED.



2. The Torqmotor™ inner housing bearing/bushing (13) can now be pressed into its counterbore in housing (18) flush to 0.03 in. (0.76 mm) below the housing wear plate contact face. Use the opposite end of the bearing mandrel that was used to press in the outer bearing/ bushing (19).

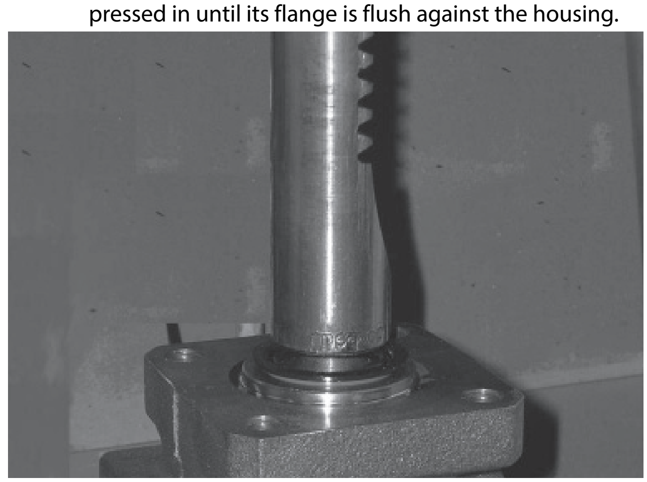


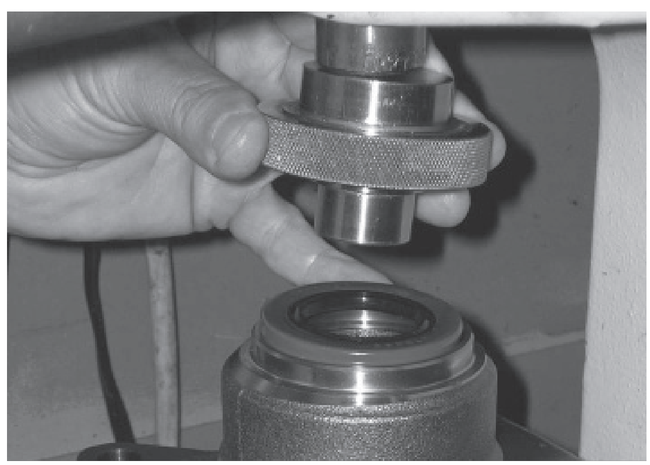




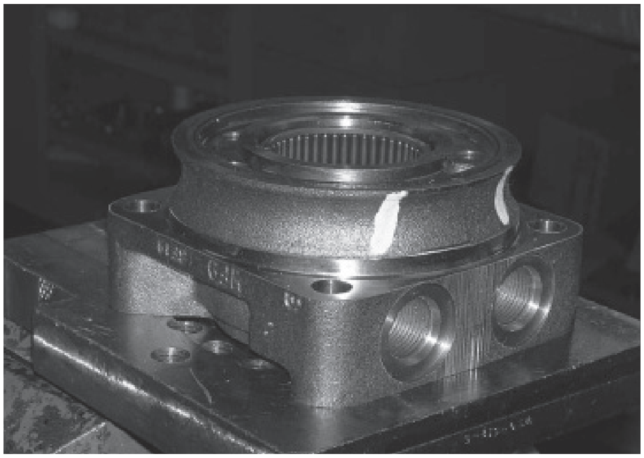
3. Press a new dirt and water seal (20) into the housing (18) outer bearing counterbore.

   The Torqmotor™ dirt and water seal (20) must be pressed in until its flange is flush against the housing.

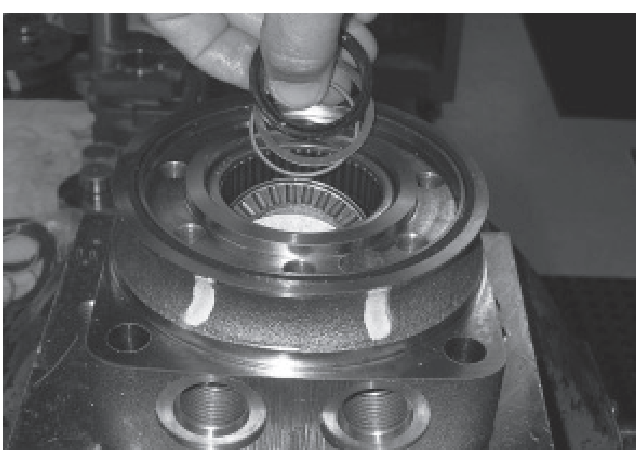




4. Place housing (18) assembly into a soft jawed vise with the coupling shaft bore down, clamping against the mounting flange.



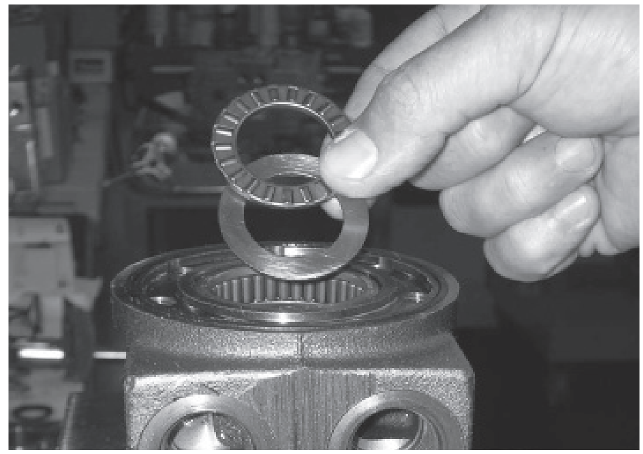
5. On the Torqmotor™ assemble a new backup washer (17) and new seal (16) with the seal lip facing toward the inside of Torqmotor™, into their respective counterbores in housing (18) if they were not assembled in procedure 2.



NOTICE

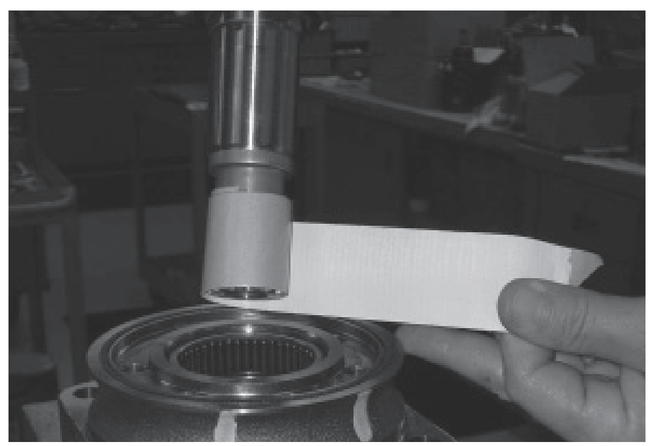
ORIGINAL DESIGN LARGE FRAME, TF & TG TORQMOTORS™ THAT DO NOT HAVE BACKUP WASHER (25) WHEN DISASSEMBLED MUST BE ASSEMBLED WITH A NEW BACKUP WASHER (17), NEW BACKUP WASHER (25), AND NEW SEAL (16).

6. Assemble thrust washer (14) then thrust bearing (15) that was removed from the Torqmotor™.

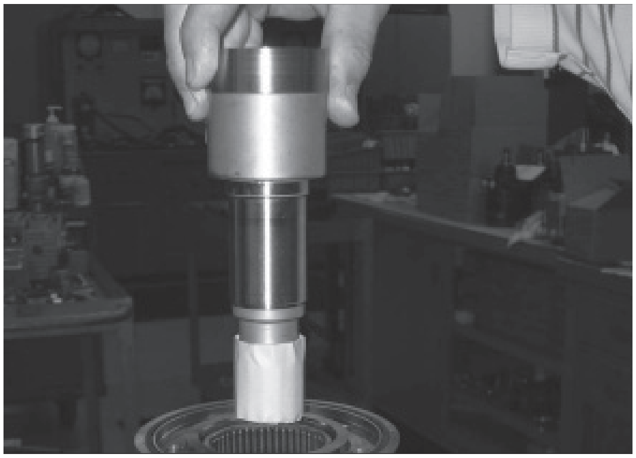


NOTE: *Torqmotors™ require one thrust washer (14) with thrust bearing (15). The coupling shaft will be seated directly against the thrust.*

7. Apply masking tape around splines or keyway on shaft (12) to prevent damage to seal.



8. Be sure that a generous amount of clean corrosion resistant grease has been applied to the lower (outer) housing bearing/bushing (19). Install the coupling shaft (12) into housing (18), seating it against the thrust bearing (15) in the housings.



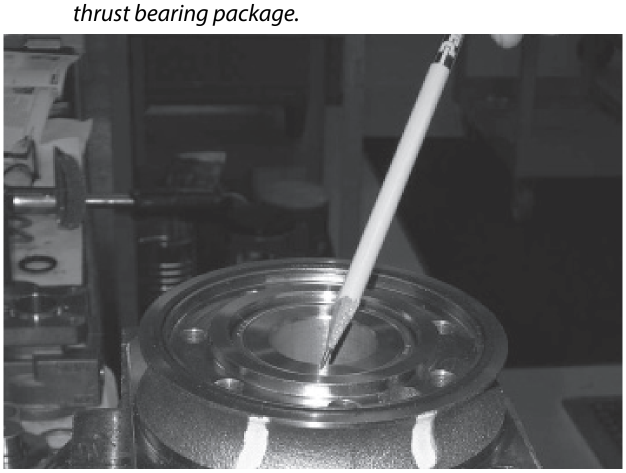
NOTICE

THE OUTER BEARING (19) IS NOT LUBRICATED BY THE SYSTEM'S HYDRAULIC FLUID. BE SURE IT IS THOROUGHLY PACKED WITH THE RECOMMENDED GREASE, PARKER GEAR GREASE SPECIFICATION #045236, E/M LUBRICANT #K-70M.

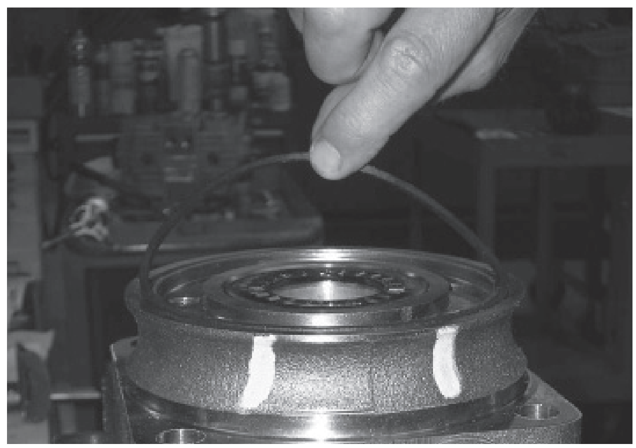
NOTE: *Mobil Mobilith SHC ® 460.*

NOTE: *A 102Tube (P/N 406010) is included in each seal kit.*

NOTE: *The coupling shaft (12) will be flush or just below the housing wear plate surface on Torqmotors™ when properly seated. The coupling shaft must rotate smoothly on the thrust bearing package.*

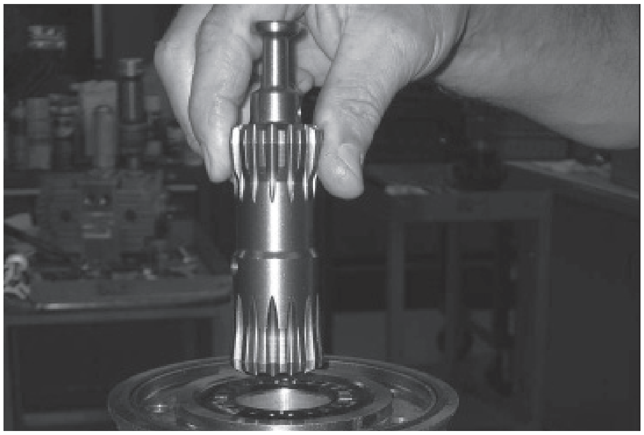


9. Apply a small amount of clean grease to a new seal ring (4) and insert it into the housing (18) seal ring groove.



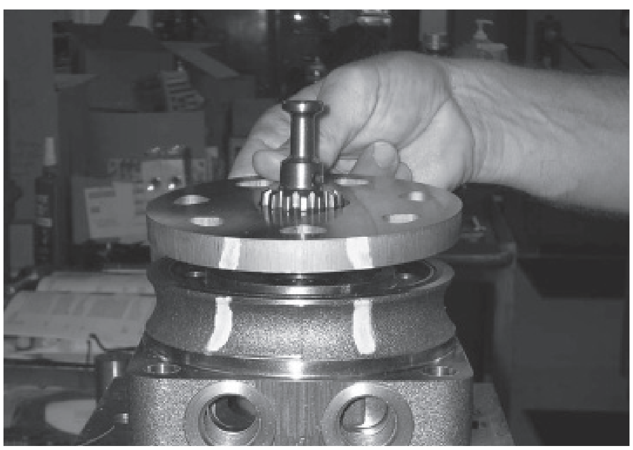
NOTE: *One or two alignment studs screwed finger tight into housing (18) bolt holes, approximately 180 degrees apart, will facilitate the assembly and alignment of components as required in the following procedures. The studs can be made by cutting off the heads of either 3/8-24 UNF 2A or 5/16-24 UNF 2A bolts as required that are over 0.5 in. (12.7 mm) longer than the bolts (1) used in the Torqmotor™.*

10. Install drive link (10) the long splined end down into the coupling shaft (12) and engage the drive link splines into mesh with the coupling shaft splines.

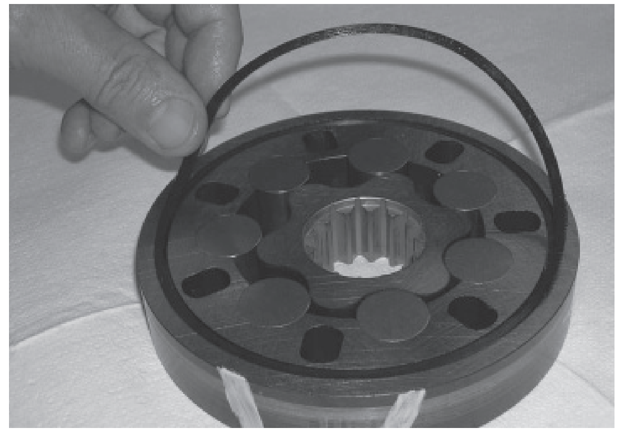


NOTE: *Use any alignment marks put on the coupling shaft and drive link before disassembly to assemble the drive link splines in their original position in the mating coupling shaft splines.*

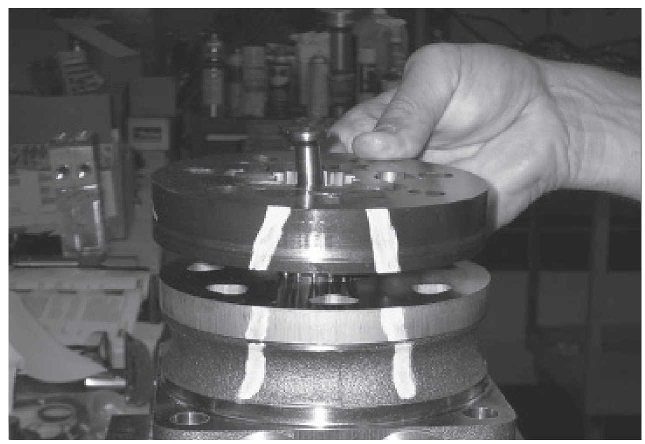
11. Assemble wear plate (9) over the drive link (10) and alignment studs onto the housing (18).



12. Apply a small amount of clean grease to a new seal ring (4) and assemble it into the seal ring groove on the wear plate side of the rotor set stator (8B).



13. Install the assembled rotor set (8) onto wear plate (9) with rotor (8A) counterbore and seal ring side down and the splines into mesh with the drive link splines.

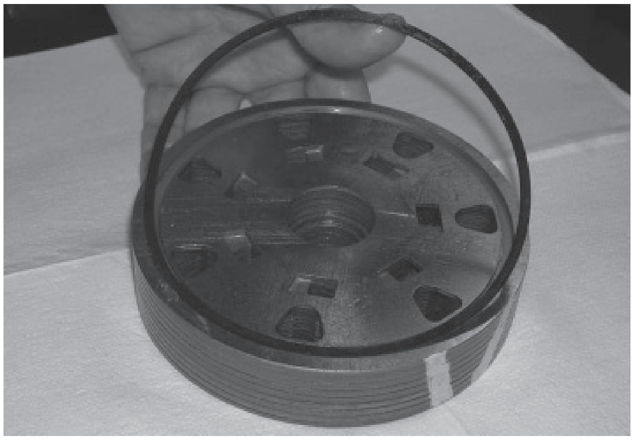


NOTE: *It may be necessary to turn one alignment stud out of the housing (18) temporarily to assemble rotor set (8) or manifold (7) over the drive link.*

NOTE: *If necessary, go to the appropriate, "Rotor Set Component Assembly Procedure."*

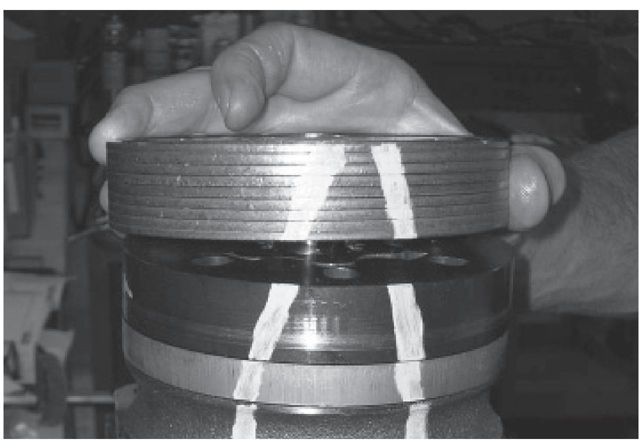
NOTE: *The rotor set rotor counterbore side must be down against wear plate for drive link clearance and to maintain the original rotor-drive link spline contact. A rotor set without a counterbore and that was not etched before disassembly can be reinstalled using the drive link spline pattern on the rotor splines if apparent, to determine which side was down. The rotor set seal ring groove faces toward the wear plate (9).*

14. Apply clean grease to a new seal ring (4) and assemble it in the seal ring groove in the rotor set contact side of manifold (7).

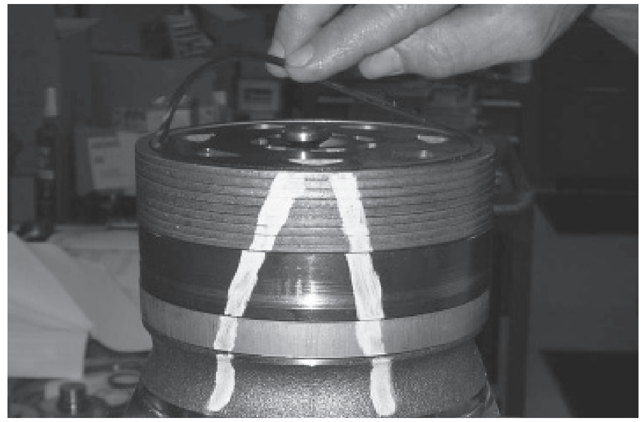


NOTE: *The manifold (7) is made up of several plates bonded together permanently to form an integral component. The manifold surface that must contact the rotor set has it's series of irregular shaped cavities on the largest circumference or circle around the inside diameter. The polished impression left on the manifold by the rotor set is another indication of which surface must contact the rotor set.*

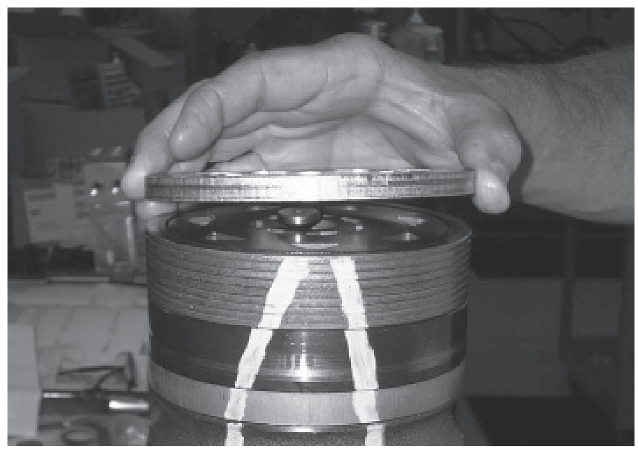
15. Assemble the manifold (7) over the alignment studs and drive link (10) and onto the rotor set. Be sure the correct manifold surface is against the rotor set.



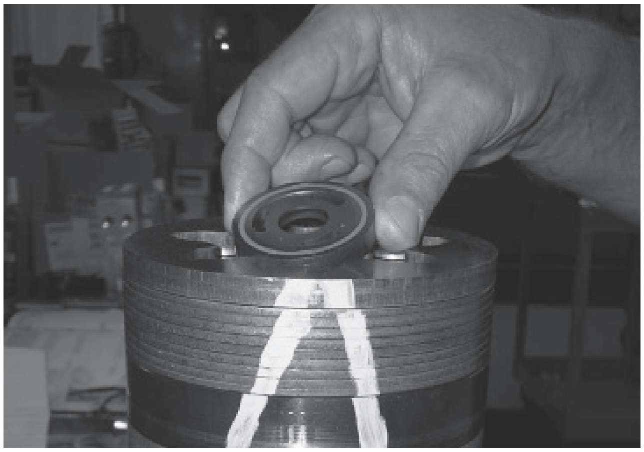
16. Apply grease to a new seal ring (4) and insert it in the seal ring groove exposed on the manifold.



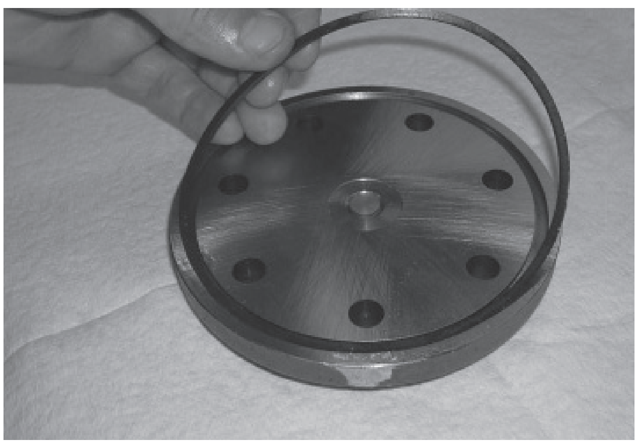
17. Assemble the commutator ring (6) over alignment studs onto the manifold.

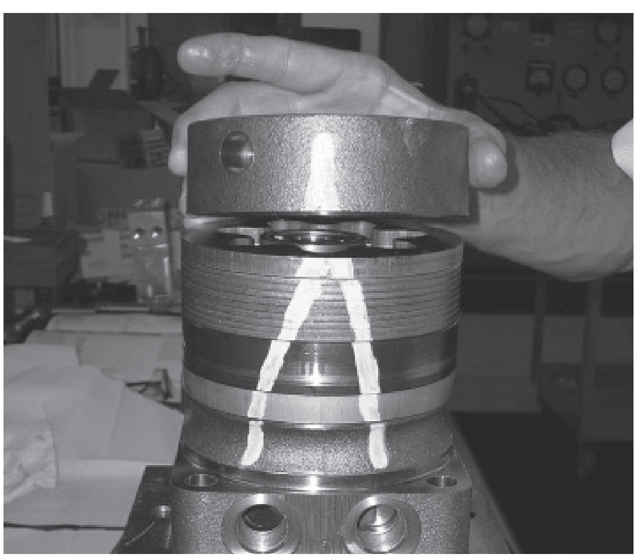


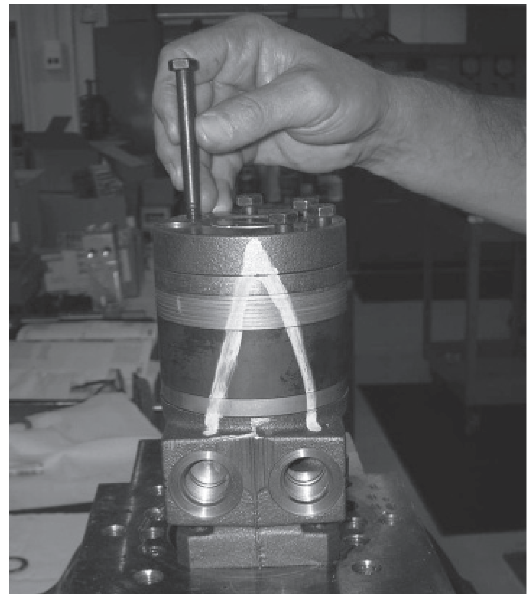
18. Assemble a new seal ring (3) flat side up, into commutator (5) and assemble commutator over the end of drive link (10) onto manifold (7) with seal ring side up.



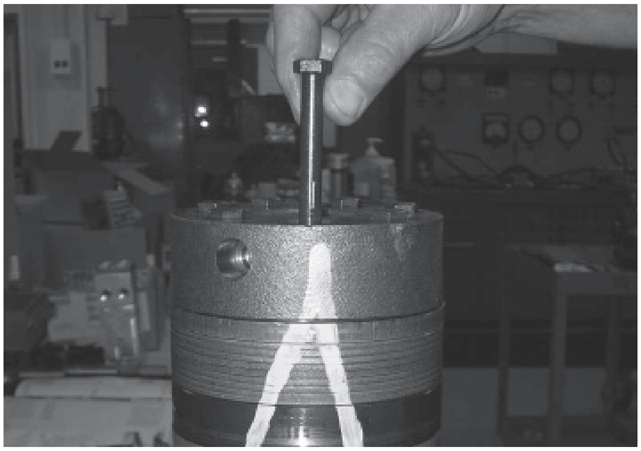
19. Assemble a new seal ring (4) into end cover (2) and assemble end cover over the alignment studs and onto the commutator set. If the end cover has only 5 bolt holes be sure the cover holes are aligned with the 5 threaded holes in housing (18). The correct 5 bolt end cover bolt hole relationship to housing port bosses.

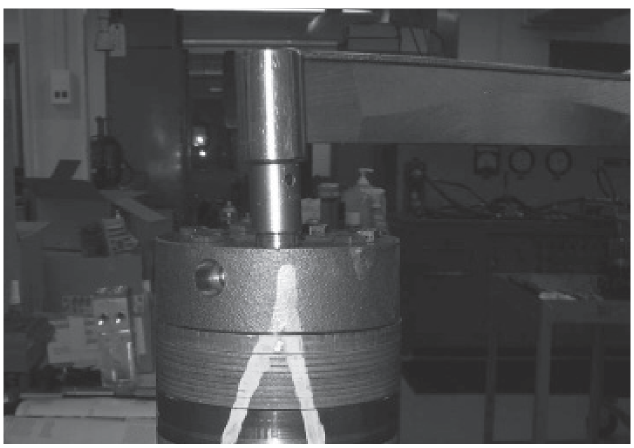


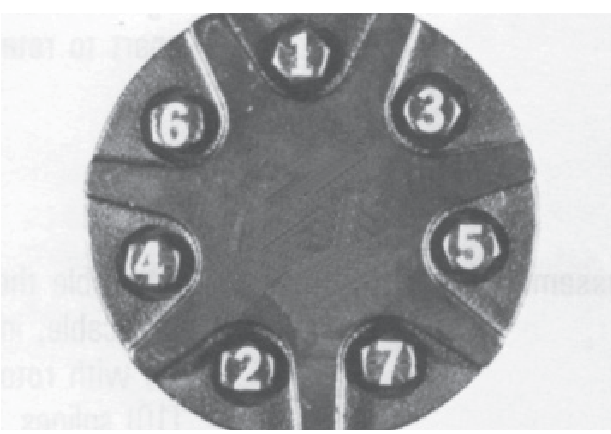




20. Assemble the 5 or 7 special bolts (1) and screw in finger tight. Remove and replace the two alignment studs with bolts after the other bolts are in place. Alternately and progressively tighten the bolts to pull the end cover and other components into place with a final torque of 50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm) for the seven 3/8-24 threaded bolts.



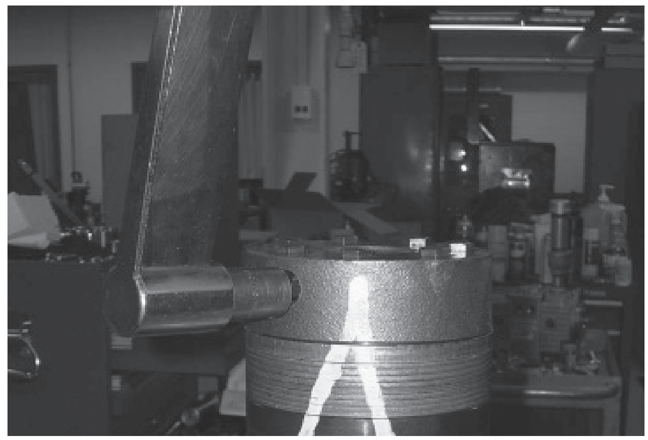


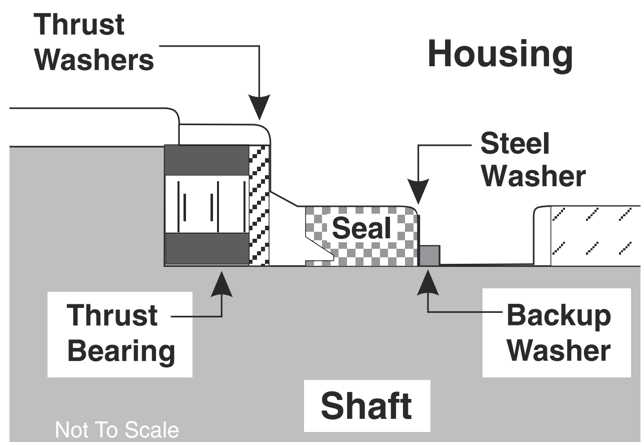


NOTE: *The special bolts required for use with the relief or shuttle valve (24) end cover assembly (2) are longer than the bolts required with standard and cover assembly. Refer to the individual service parts lists or parts list charts for correct service part number if replacement is required.*

21. Torque the two shuttle valve plug assemblies (21) in end cover assembly to 9-12 ft. lbs. (12-16 Nm) if cover is so equipped.

    Torque the two relief valve plug assemblies (21) in end cover assembly to 45-55 ft. lbs. (61-75 Nm) if cover is so equipped.



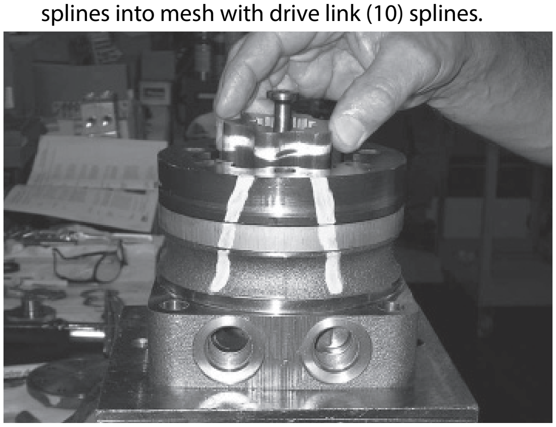


One Piece Stator Construction

A disassembled rotor (8A) stator (8B) and vanes (8C) that cannot be readily assembled by hand can be assembled by the following procedures.

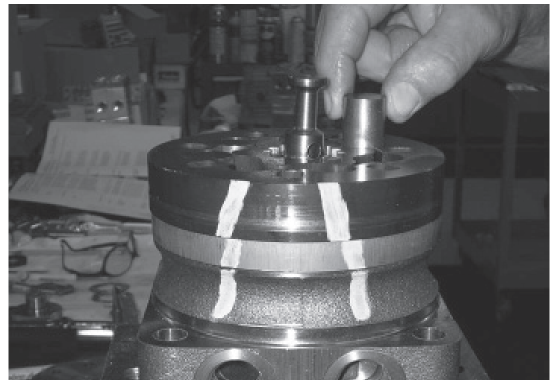
1. Place stator (8B) onto wear plate (9) with seal ring (4) side down, after following Torqmotor™ assembly procedures 1 through 13. Be sure the seal ring is in place.

2. If assembly alignment studs are not being utilized, align stator bolt holes with wear plate and housing bolt holes and turn two bolts (1) finger tight into bolt holes approximately 180 degrees apart to retain stator and wear plate stationary.
3. Assemble the rotor (8A), counterbore down if applicable, into stator (8B), and onto wear plate (9) with rotor splines into mesh with drive link (10) splines.



NOTE: *If the manifold side of the rotor was etched during Torqmotor disassembly, this side should be up. If the rotor is not etched and does not have a counterbore, use the drive link spline contact pattern apparent on the rotor splines to determine the rotor side that must be against the wear plate.*

4. Assemble six vanes (8C), or as many vanes that will readily assemble into the stator vane pockets.



NOTICE

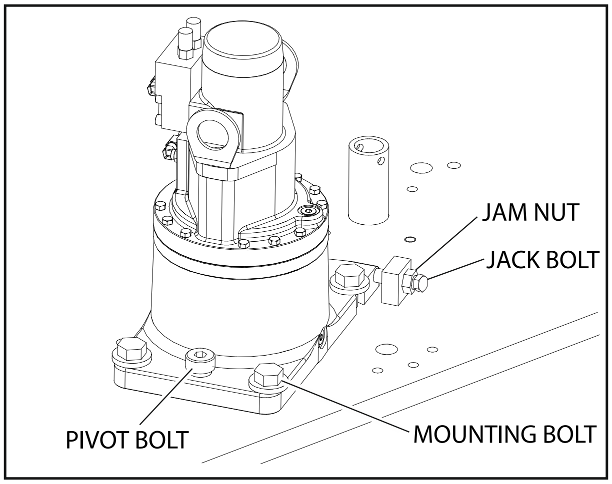
EXCESSIVE FORCE USED TO PUSH THE ROTOR VANES INTO PLACE COULD SHEAR OFF THE COATING APPLIED TO THE STATOR VANE POCKETS.

5. Grasp the output end of coupling shaft (12) with locking pliers or other appropriate turning device and rotate coupling shaft, drive link and rotor to seat the rotor and the assembled vanes (8C) into stator (8B), creating the necessary clearance to assemble the seventh or full complement of seven vanes. Assemble the seven vanes using minimum force.

6. Remove the two assembled bolts (1) if used to retain stator and wear plate.

3.10 SWING HUB REMOVAL

1. Disconnect all wiring harness terminals connected to the swing motor.
2. Gently loosen the jack bolt. Do not remove.
3. Remove the pivot bolt using allen wrench.



4. Remove the mounting bolts securing swing drive hub to the turntable.
5. Using the suitable lifting device, remove the swing drive hub from mounting plate without damaging the swing gear.
6. Place swing drive hub in the clean area.
7. Refer to Section 3.8, Swing Hub for swing drive maintenance.

3.11 SWING HUB INSTALLATION

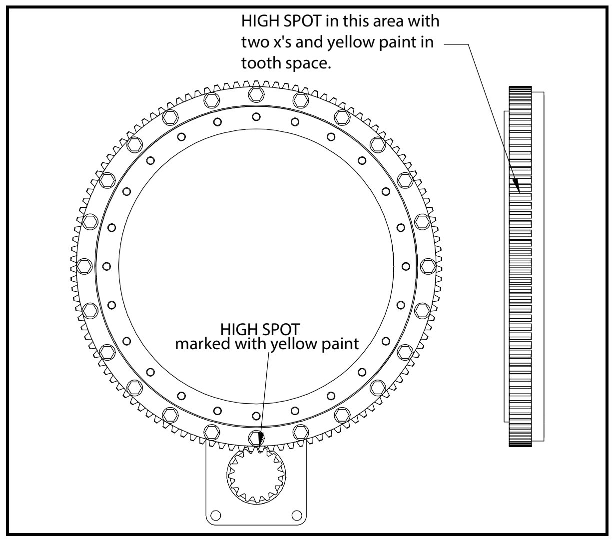
Ensure mounting plate and mounting location of the turntable baseplate are clean and painted with a uniform coating of minimum thickness (no runs, drips, etc.).

Procedure for Setting Swing Gear Backlash

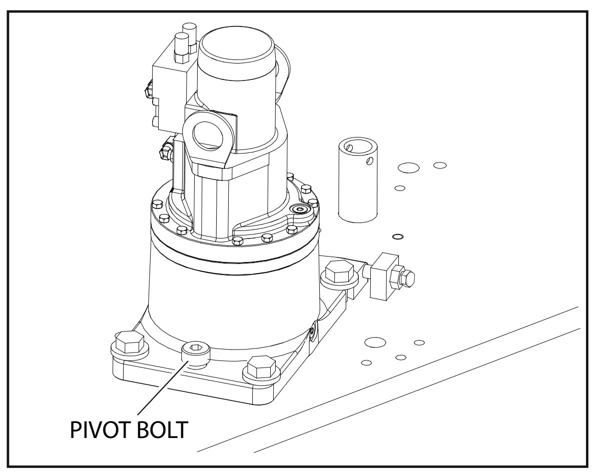
Set backlash to 0.010 - 0.015 in. (0.254 - 0.381 mm) using the following procedure:

1. Place the machine on firm, level ground.
2. Place shim between pinion and bearing at bearing high spot (shown below).

NOTE: *High spot will be marked with yellow paint.*

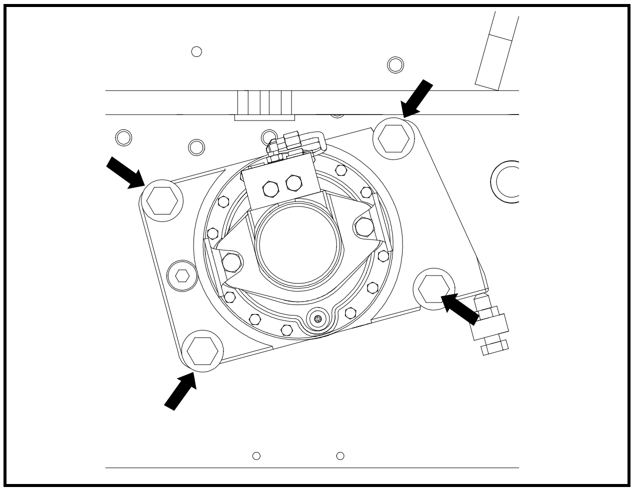


3. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 and torque pivot bolt to 205 ft. lbs. (280 Nm) (shown below).

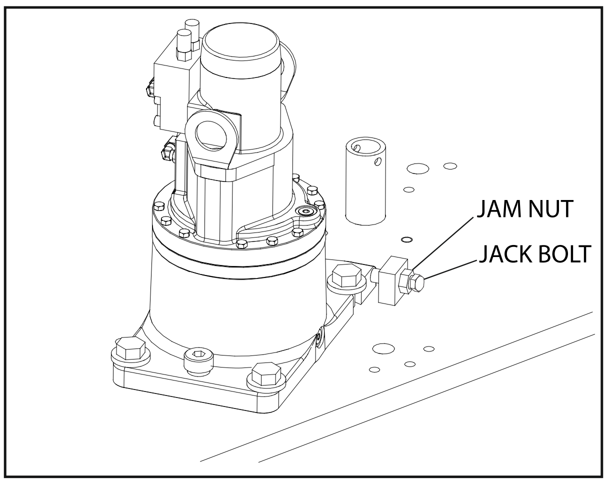


NOTE: *Make sure the turntable is properly supported during the following step. The turntable can swing a few degrees when the turntable lock is removed if the turntable is not balanced properly.*

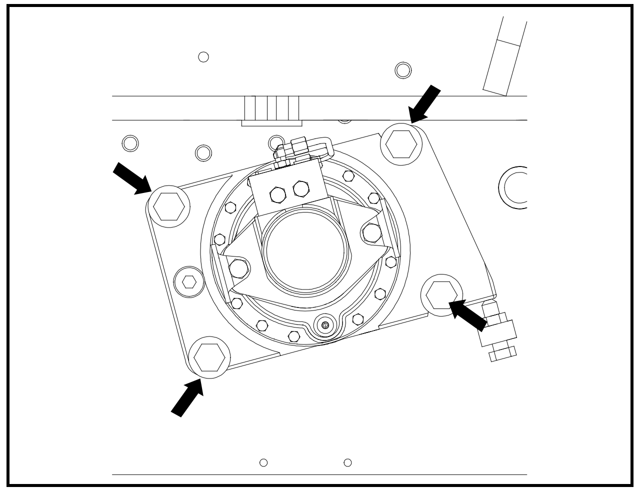
4. Remove turntable lock pin.
5. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 and pre-torque swing drive mounting bolts to 30 ft. lbs. (40 Nm).



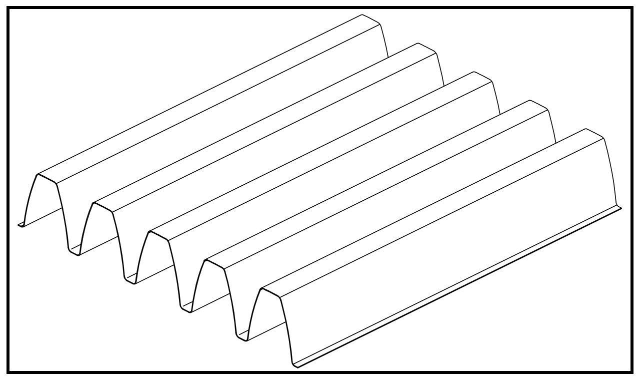
6. Tighten jack bolt until pinion is completely snug against shim and bearing then loosen jack bolt.



7. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 and torque jack bolt 50 ft. lbs. (68 Nm).
8. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 and tighten jam nut.
9. Torque mounting bolts to 340 ft. lbs. (460 Nm).

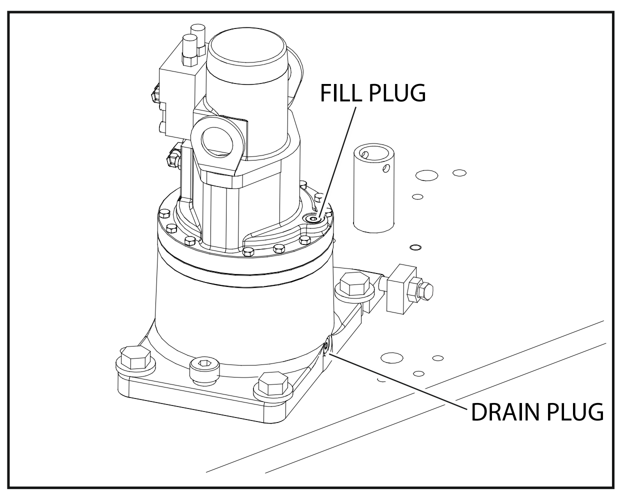


10. Remove shim and discard.



Swing Drive Lubrication

Fill Swing Drive Gearbox with 43 oz (1.27 L) 90w80gear oil with EP additives. Oil should cover the ring gear. Torque pipe plug to 23-25 ft. lbs. (31- 33 Nm).



3.12 SWING BEARING

Turntable Bearing Mounting Bolt Condition Check

NOTICE

THE SWING BEARING IS ONE OF THE MOST CRITICAL POINTS ON AN AERIAL LIFT. IT IS HERE THAT THE STRESSES OF LIFTING ARE CONCENTRATED, AT THE CENTER OF ROTATION. BECAUSE OF THIS, PROPER MAINTENANCE OF THE SWING BEARING BOLTS IS A MUST FOR SAFE OPERATION.

NOTE: *This check is designed to replace the existing bearing bolt torque checks on JLG Lifts in service. This check must be performed after the first 50 hours of machine operation and every 600 hours of machine operation thereafter. If during this check any bolts are found to be missing or loose, replace missing or loose bolts with new bolts and torque to the value specified in the torque chart, after lubricating the bolt threads with JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019. After replacing and retorquing bolt or bolts recheck all existing bolts for looseness.*

1. Check the frame to bearing attach bolts as follows:
    - **a.** Elevate the fully extended main boom to horizontal. (See Figure 3-42.)
    - **b.** At the positions indicated on Figure 3-43., try to insert a 0015 in. feeler gauge between the bolt and hardened washer at the arrow indicated position.
    - **c.** Ensure that the 0.0015 in. feeler gauge will not penetrate under the bolt head to the bolt shank.
    - **d.** Swing the turntable 90 degrees, and check some selected bolts at the new position.
    - **e.** Continue rotating the turntable at 90 degrees intervals until a sampling of bolts have been checked in all quadrants.
2. Check the turntable to bearing Attach bolts as follows:
    - **a.** Elevate the fully retracted main boom to full elevation.
    - **b.** At the position indicated on Figure 3-41., try to insert the 0.0015 in. feeler gauge between the bolt head and hardened washer at the arrow indicated position.
    - **c.** Lower the boom to horizontal and fully extend the boom.
    - **d.** At the position indicated on Figure 3-43., try and insert the 0.0015 in. feeler gauge between the bolt head and hardened washer at the arrow indicated position.

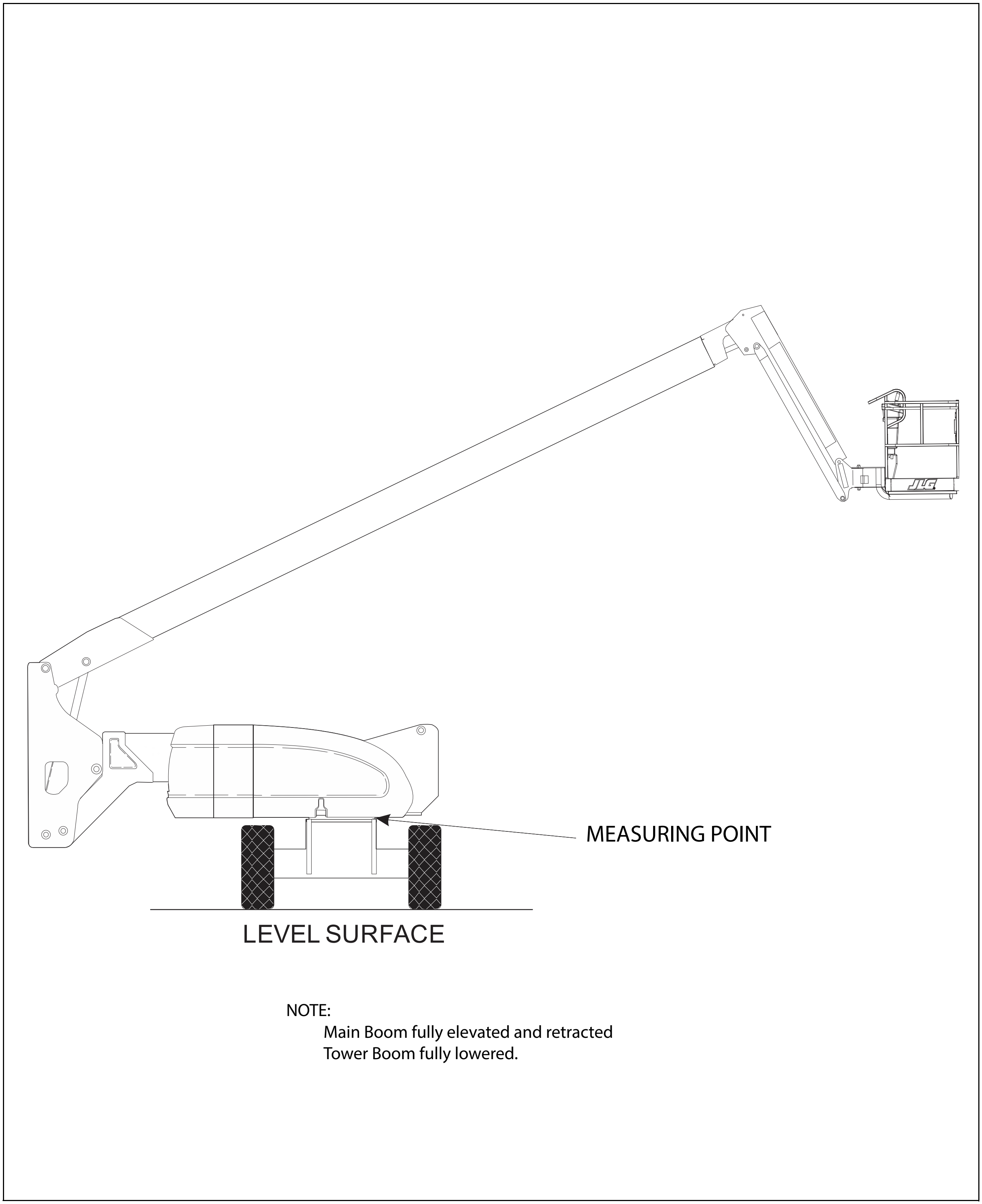


Figure 3-41. Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement (Sheet 1 of 2)

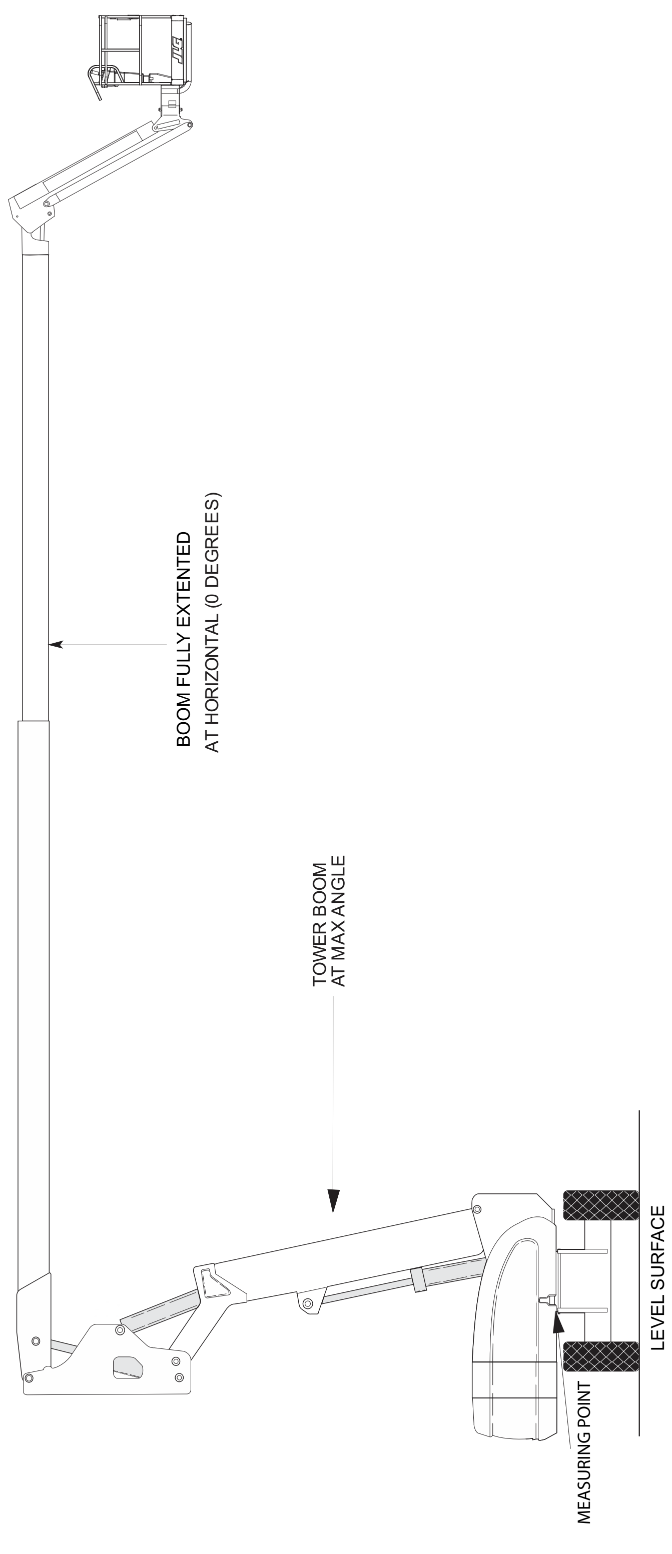


Figure 3-42. Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement (Sheet 2 of 2)

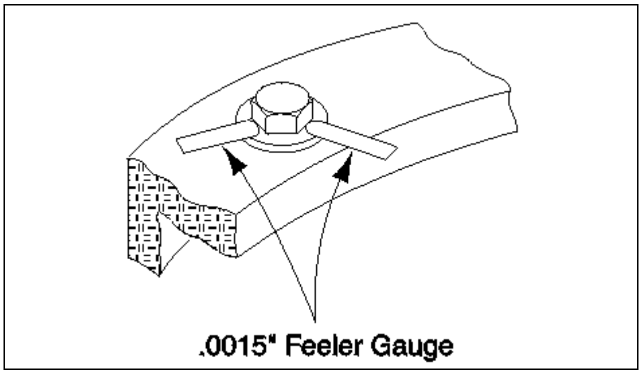


Figure 3-43. Swing Bolt Feeler Gauge Check

Wear Tolerance

1. From the underside of the machine, at rear center, with the main boom fully elevated and fully retracted, and tower boom stowed, as shown in Figure 3-41., Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement (Sheet 1 of 2), using a magnetic base dial indicator, measure and record the distance between the swing bearing and turntable. See Figure 3-44., Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point.
2. At the same point, with the main boom at horizontal and fully extended, and the tower boom fully elevated and fully retracted as shown in Figure 3-42., Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement (Sheet 2 of 2). Using a magnetic base dial indicator, measure and record the distance between the swing bearing and turntable. See Figure 3-44., Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point.
3. If a difference greater than 0.079 in. (2.00 mm) is determined, the swing bearing should be replaced.
4. If a difference less than 0.079 in. (2.00 mm) is determined, and any of the following conditions exist, the bearing should be removed, disassembled, and inspected for the following:
   a. Metal particles in the grease.
   b. Increased drive power required.
   c. Noise.
   d. Rough rotation.
5. If bearing inspection shows no defects, reassemble and return to service.

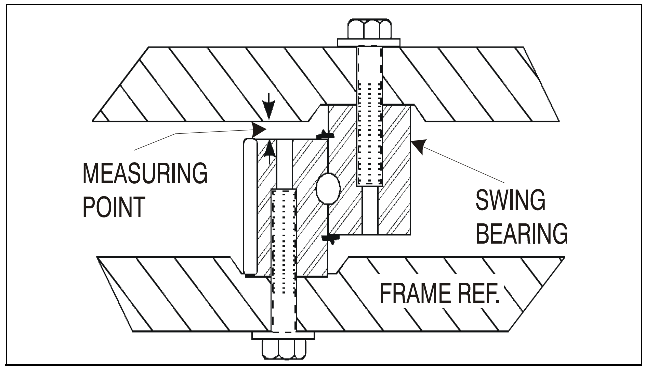


Figure 3-44. Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point

Swing Bearing Replacement

REMOVAL

1. From Ground Control station, operate the boom adequately to provide access to frame opening to rotary coupling.

WARNING

NEVER WORK BENEATH THE BOOM WITHOUT FIRST ENGAGING BOOM SAFETY PROP OR PROVIDING ADEQUATE OVERHEAD SLING SUPPORT AND/OR BLOCKING.

2. Attach an adequate support sling to the boom and draw all slack from sling. Prop or block the boom if feasible.
3. From inside turntable, remove mounting hardware which attach rotary coupling retaining yoke brackets to turntable.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID THE ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO THE SYSTEM.

4. Tag and disconnect the hydraulic lines from the fittings on the top of the rotary coupling. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Immediately cap lines and ports.
5. Attach suitable overhead lifting equipment to the base of the turntable weldment.
6. Use a suitable tool to scribe a line on the inner race of the swing bearing and on the underside of the turntable. This will aid in aligning the bearing upon installation. Remove the bolts and washers which attach the turntable to the bearing inner race. Discard the bolts.
7. Use the lifting equipment to carefully lift the complete turntable assembly from the bearing. Ensure that no damage occurs to the turntable, bearing or frame-mounted components.

8. Carefully place the turntable on a suitably supported trestle.
9. Use a suitable tool to scribe a line on the outer race of the swing bearing and the frame. This line will aid in aligning the bearing upon installation. Remove the bolts and washers which attach the outer race of the bearing to the frame. Discard the bolts. Use suitable lifting equipment to remove the bearing from the frame, then move the bearing to a clean, suitably supported work area.

INSTALLATION

1. Using suitable lifting equipment, carefully lower the swing bearing into position on the frame. Ensure the scribed line of the outer race of the bearing aligns with the scribed line on the frame. If a new swing bearing is used, ensure that the filler plug fitting is at 90 degrees from the fore and aft center line of the frame.

CAUTION

JLG INDUSTRIES RECOMMENDS THAT ALL REMOVED BEARING BOLTS BE DISCARDED AND REPLACED WITH NEW BOLTS. SINCE THE SWING BEARING IS THE ONLY STRUCTURAL LINK BETWEEN THE FRAME AND TURNTABLE, IT IS IMPERATIVE THAT SUCH REPLACEMENT HARDWARE MEETS JLG SPECIFICATIONS. USE OF GENUINE JLG HARDWARE IS HIGHLY RECOMMENDED.

2. Apply a light coating of JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 to the new bearing bolts, and loosely install the bolts and washers through the frame and outer race of bearing.

NOTICE

IF COMPRESSED AIR OR ELECTRICALLY OPERATED IMPACT WRENCH IS USED FOR TIGHTENING THE BEARING ATTACHMENT BOLTS, THE TORQUE SETTING ACCURACY OF THE TOOL SHOULD BE CHECKED PRIOR TO USE.

3. Refer to the Torque Sequence diagram as shown in Figure 3-46., Swing Bearing Torque Sequence. Clean any residue off the new bearing bolts, then apply a light coating of JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 and install the bolts and washers through the frame and outer race of the bearing. Tighten the bolts to an initial torque of 190 Ft. lbs. (260 Nm) w/JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019.
4. Remove the lifting equipment from the bearing.
5. Using suitable lifting equipment, carefully position the turntable assembly above the machine frame.
6. Carefully lower the turntable onto the swing bearing, ensuring that the scribed line of the inner race of the bearing aligns with scribed line on the turntable. If a new swing bearing is used, ensure that the filler plug fitting is at 90 degrees from the fore and aft center line of the turntable.
7. Clean any residue off the new bearing bolts, then apply a light coating of JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 and install the bolts and washers through the turntable and inner race of the bearing.
8. Following the Torque Sequence diagram shown in Figure 3-46., Swing Bearing Torque Sequence, tighten the bolts to a torque of 190 ft. lbs. (260 Nm) w/Loctite.
9. Remove the lifting equipment.
10. Install the rotary coupling retaining yoke brackets, apply a light coating of JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the attaching bolts and secure the yoke to the turntable with the mounting hardware.
11. Connect the hydraulic lines to the rotary coupling as tagged prior to removal.
12. At ground control station, use boom lift control to lower boom to stowed position.
13. Using all applicable safety precautions, activate the hydraulic system and check the swing system for proper and safe operation.

Swing Bearing Torque Values

1. Outer Race - 190 ft. lbs. (260 Nm) w/JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019.
2. Inner Race - 190 ft. lbs. (260 Nm) w/JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019.
3. See Swing Bearing Torquing Sequence.

WARNING

CHECK THE INNER AND OUTER SWING BEARING BOLTS FOR MISSING OR LOOSENESS AFTER FIRST 50 HOURS OF OPERATION, AND EVERY 600 HOURS THEREAFTER.

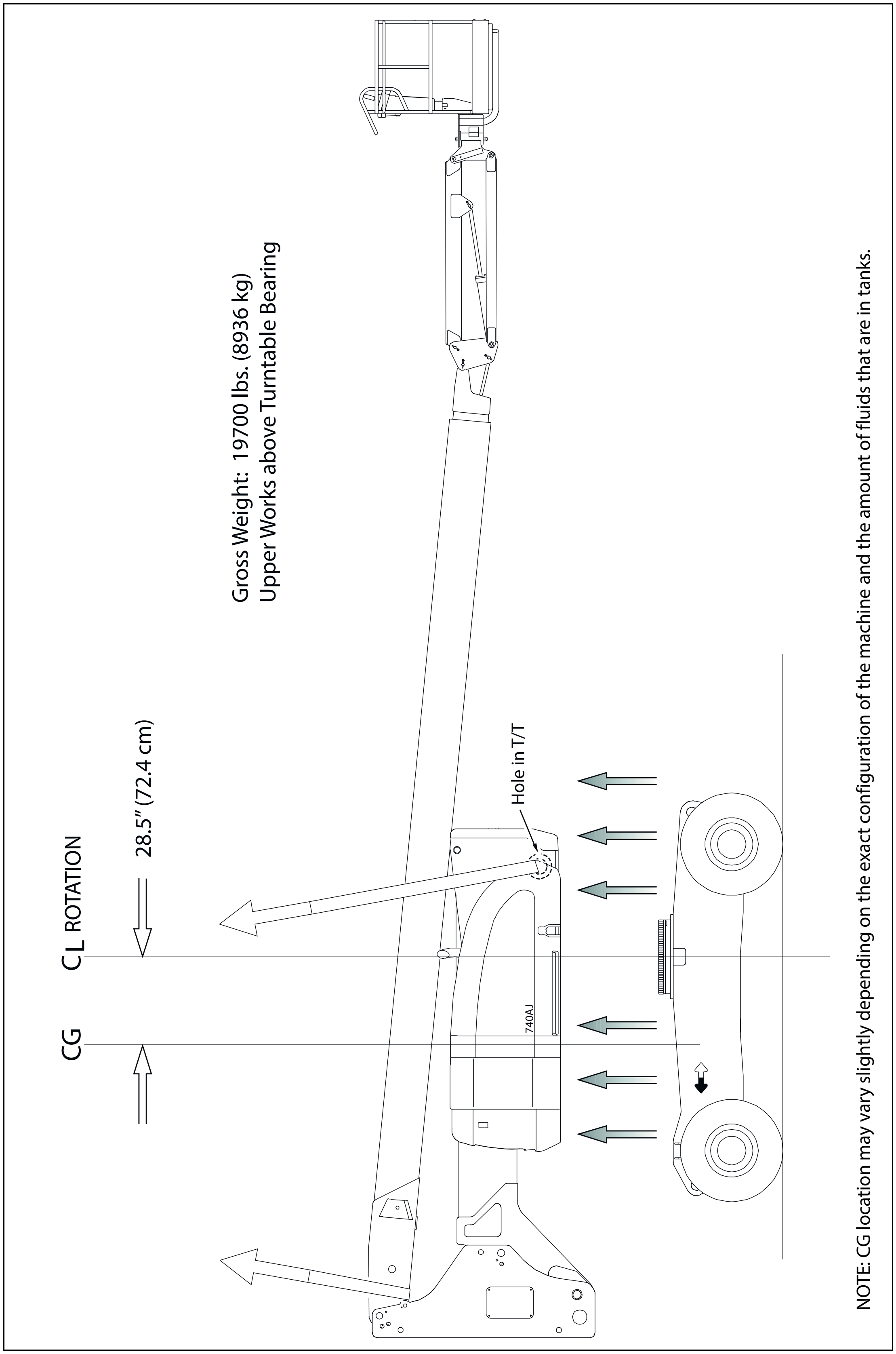
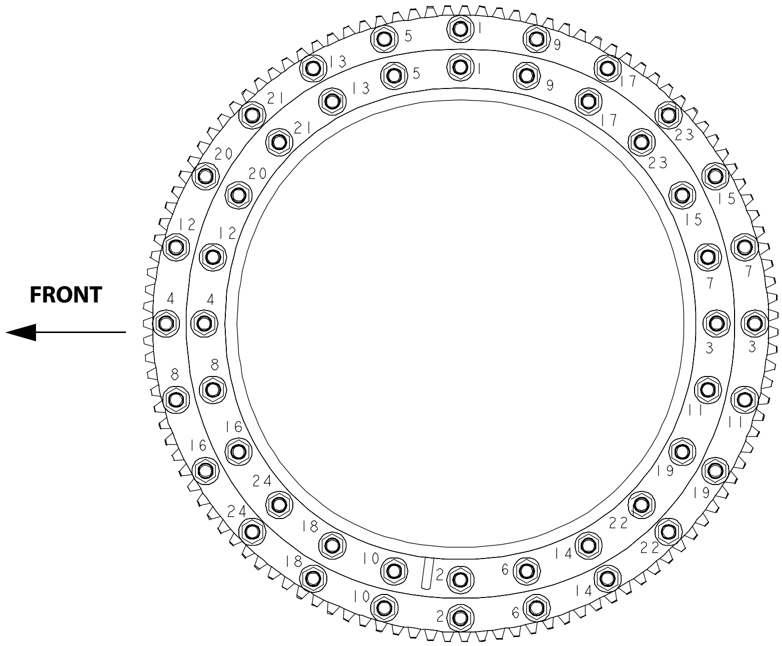


Figure 3-45. Swing Bearing Removal



NOTE: *Swing Bearing Torque Sequence is typical for both inner and outer races.*

Figure 3-46. Swing Bearing Torque Sequence

3.13 TILT INDICATOR SYSTEM

1. The tilt indicator system measures the turntable angle with respect to level ground. The tilt switch itself has two settings; 5 (or 4 degree dependent upon market) and 8.5 degrees.

2. The smaller angle is used for the purpose of warning the operator by means of the tilt light in the platform display panel.

3. Additionally when used in conjunction with the "above elevation cutout system" or the "transport position interlock system", the tilt switch will cause an alarm to sound, and automatically put the machine in the creep speed mode. With the exception of the speed cutback, this is a warning system only.

4. The machine will continue to function. The operator is responsible to prevent the machine from attaining an unstable position. The 8.5 degree angle is used exclusively for the purpose of automatically shifting the drive motors to the maximum displacement position (slow speed).

3.14 SPARK ARRESTER CLEANING INSTRUCTIONS

1. Remove the cleanout plug in the bottom of spark arrester (muffler).

2. Without causing deformation (or any type of damage to the spark arrester) repeatedly tap on the arrester near the cleanout plug. This may be enough to begin drainage of the spark trap.

3. An industrial vacuum cleaner can do a complete job at this point.

   a. Start the engine in a safe area. Then alternate between low idle and high idle for two to three minutes.

   b. Operate the engine as required by the application for two to three minutes.

   c. Install the cleanout plug.

3.15 ROTARY COUPLING

Use the following procedure to install the seal kit.

1. If not already removed, remove the axle oscillation valve from the cylinder barrel. The spool of the valve protrudes into the barrel and will damage the spool and seals if left in place.
2. Remove snap ring (7) from end.
3. Remove thrust ring (6) from the same end.
4. Remove center body (1) from housing (3).
5. Cut off old seals (2, 4, 5).
6. Remove proximity switch.
7. Assemble lip seals (2) in direction shown in Figure 3-47., Rotary Coupling Seal Installation.
8. Reassemble O-ring (4).
9. Heat cap seals (5) in hydraulic oil for 5 minutes at 300° F (149° C).
10. Assemble cap seals over O-rings.
11. Reinsert center body into housing (lube with hydraulic oil).
12. Replace thrust ring and snap ring.
13. Install proximity switch as shown in Figure 3-50.

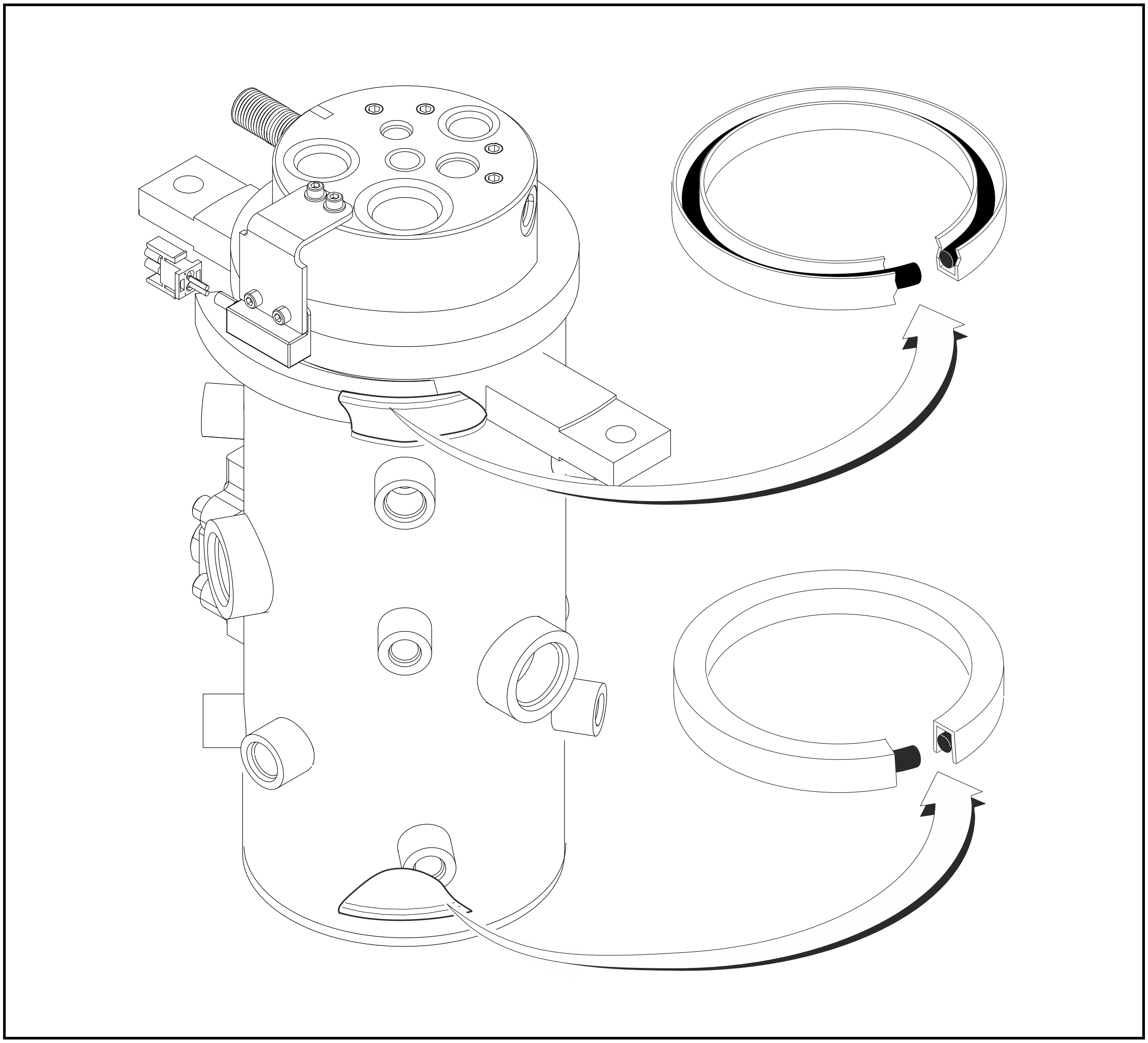
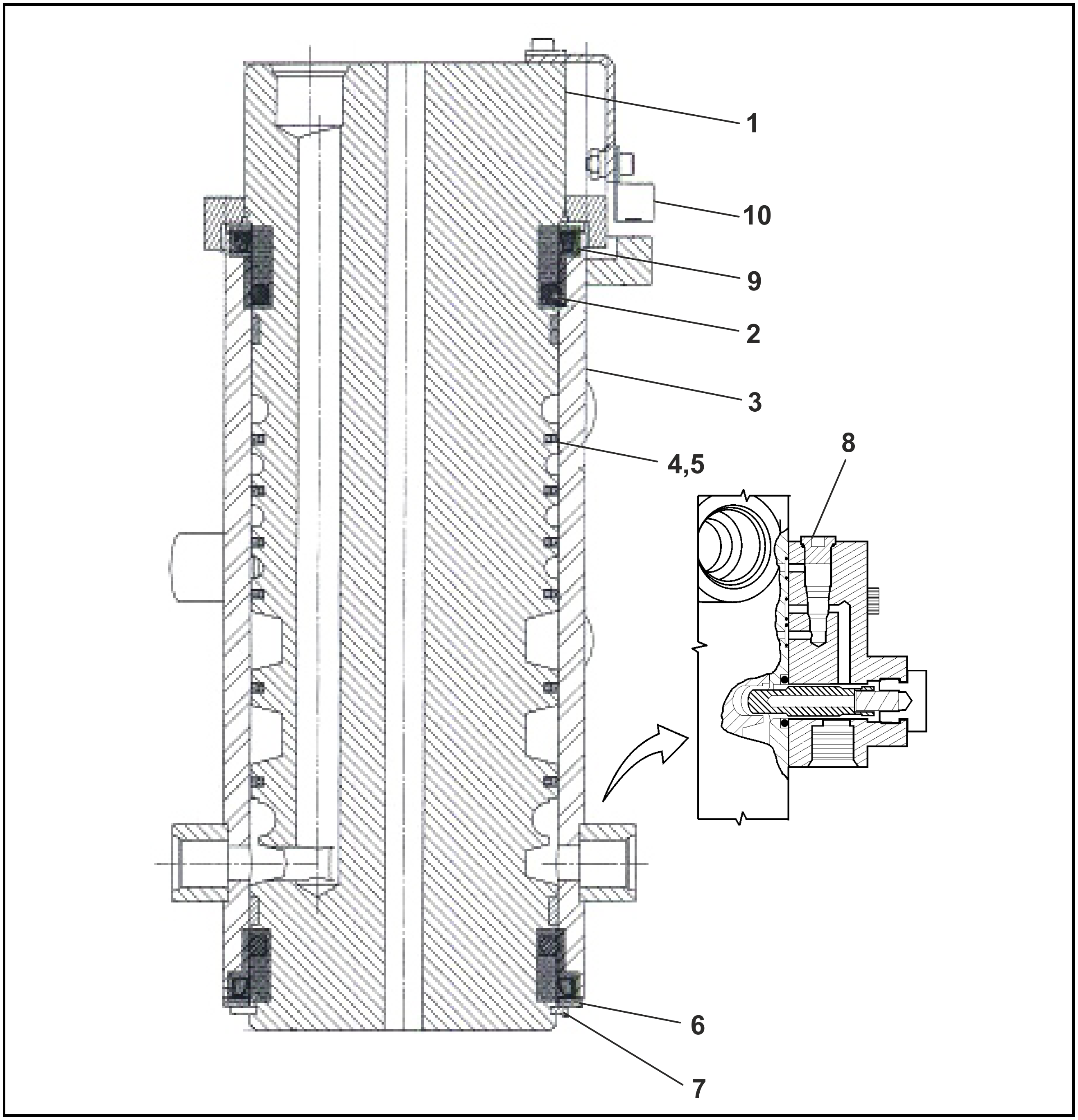


Figure 3-47. Rotary Coupling Seal Installation



1. Center Body
2. Seal
3. Housing
4. O-ring
5. Seal
6. Thrust Ring
7. Snap Ring
8. Valve Block (Axle Oscillation)
9. O-ring
10. Proximity Switch

Figure 3-48. Rotary Coupling Cutaway

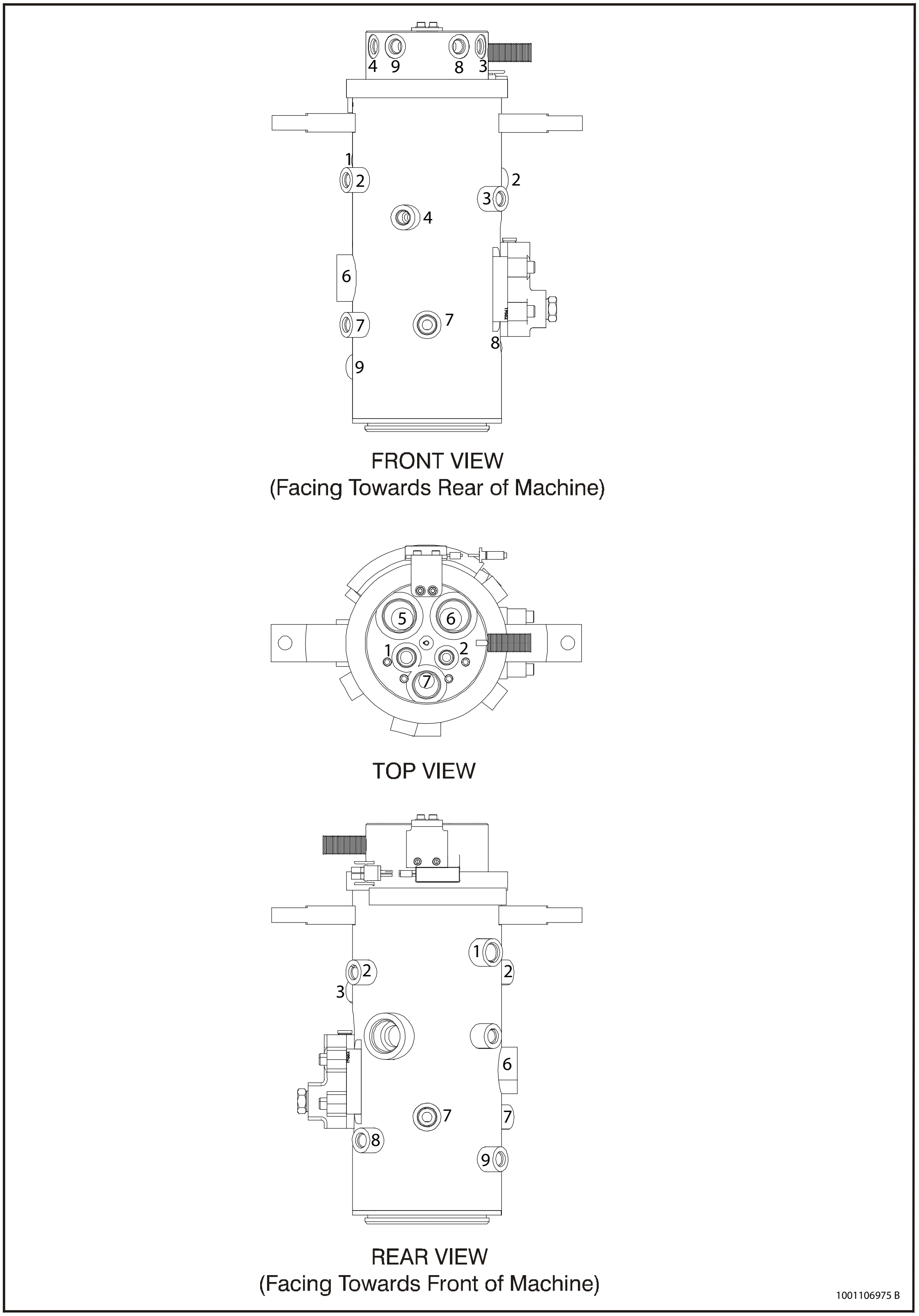
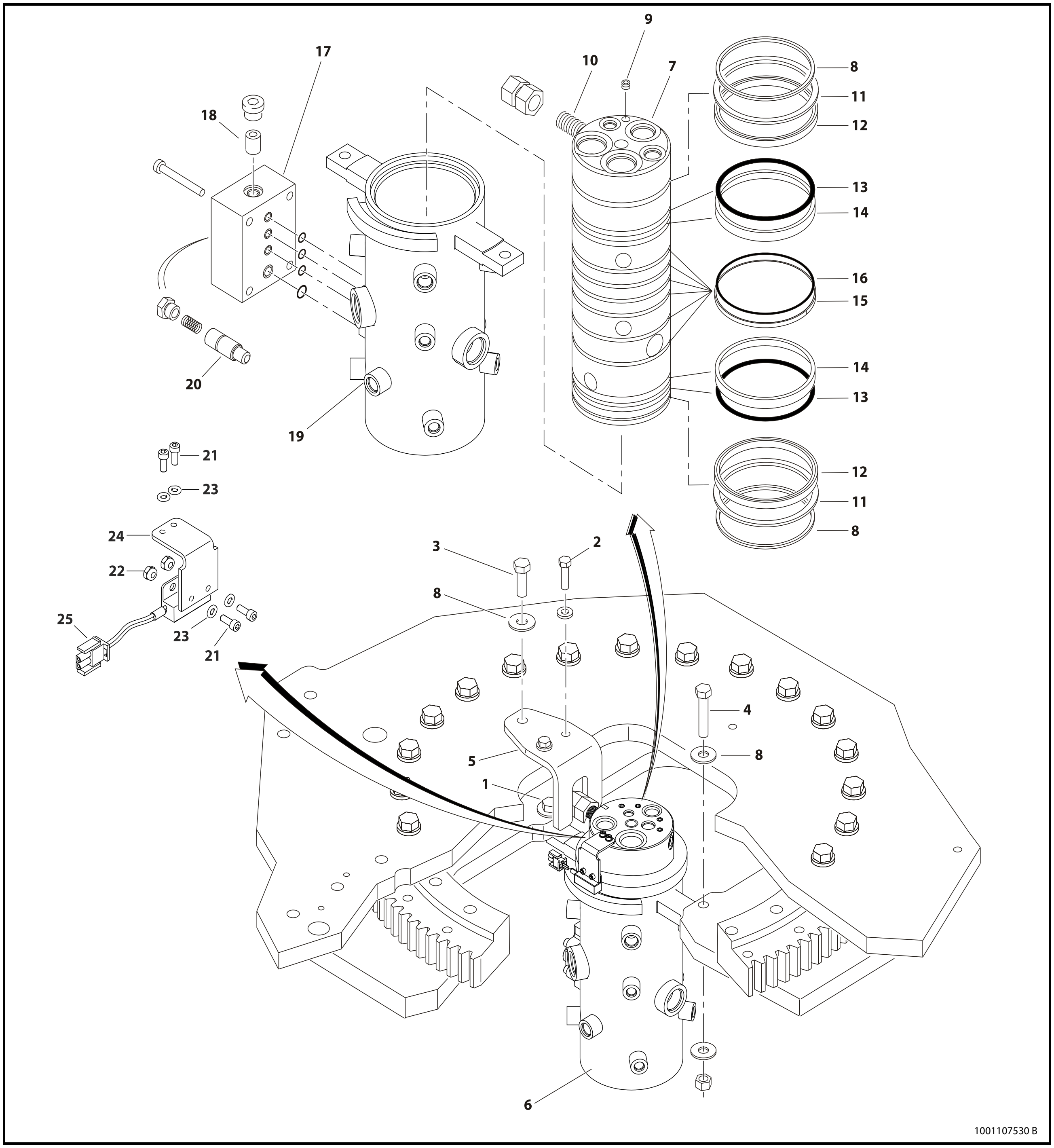


Figure 3-49. Rotary Coupling Port Location (9 Port)



1. JLG Threadlocker	6. Rotary Coupling	11. Ring	16. O-ring	21. Bolt
2. Bolt	7. Spool	12. Seal	17. Valve	22. Nut
3. Bolt	8. Retaining Ring	13. O-ring	18. Check Valve	23. Washer
4. Bolt	9. Plug	14. Bearing	19. Case	24. Bracket
5. Bracket	10. Torque Lug	15. Cap Seal	20. Plunger Valve	25. Proximity Switch

Figure 3-50. Rotary Coupling Installation

Table 3-8. Coupling Port Information Table (9 port)

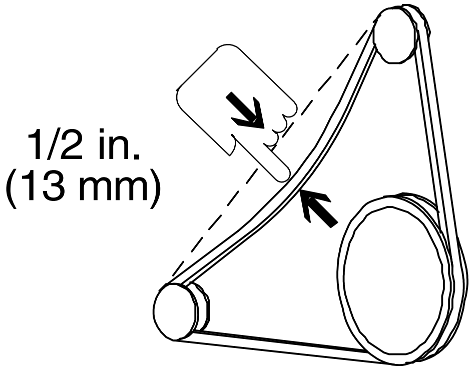
Port No.	Outlets	Port Size	Description	Operating Pressure PSI (Bar)	Proof Pressure PSI (Bar)
1	1	-8	Brake	450 (31)	675 (46.5)
2	2	-6	2 Speed	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
3	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (258.5)
4	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (258.5)
5	2	1-6, 1-16	Drive Reverse	4500(310)	6750(465)
6	1	-16	Drive Forward	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
7	3	2-8, 1-6	Drain	250 (17)	375 (26)
8	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (258.5)
9	1	-6	Steer	2500(172)	3750 (258.5)

3.16 GENERATOR

Maintenance Schedule

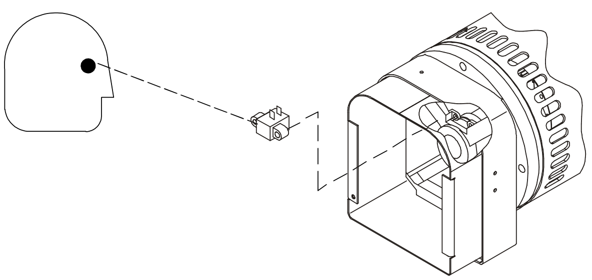
EVERY 250 HOURS

Every 250 hours of operation, check the drive belt for proper tension.

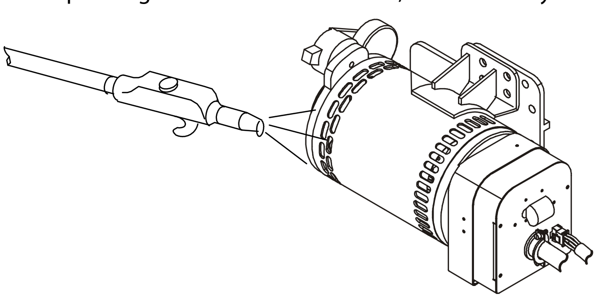


EVERY 500 HOURS

Every 500 hours of operation, service the generator brushes and slip rings. Hostile environments may require more frequent service.



Every 500 hours of service, blow out the inside of the generator. If operating in a hostile environment, clean monthly.

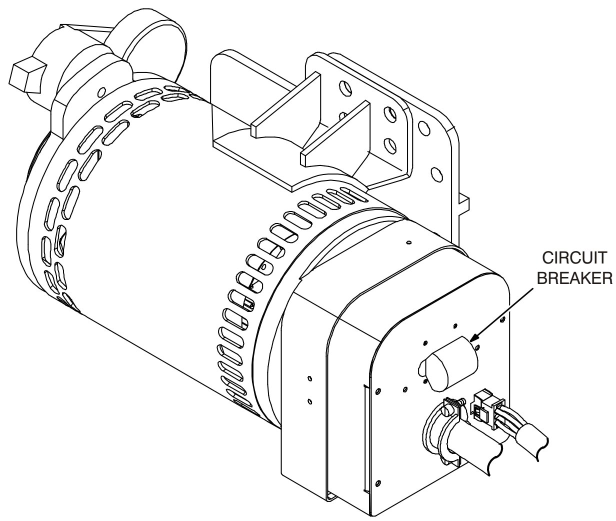


Overload Protection

⚠ CAUTION

STOP THE ENGINE WHENEVER CHECKING OR INSPECTING THE CIRCUIT BREAKER.

The circuit breaker protects the generator windings from overload. If the circuit breaker opens, generator output stops. If the circuit breaker continues to open, check for faulty equipment connected to the platform receptacles.



Inspecting Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings

Refer to Figure 3-51., Inspecting Generator Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings.

INSPECTING BRUSH POSITION

Inspect brush alignment with slip rings. View alignment through the air vents in the stator barrel. The brushes must ride completely on the slip rings.

INSPECTING BRUSHES

Remove the end panel. Inspect the wires. Remove the brush holder assembly. Pull the brushes from the holders.

Replace the brushes if damaged, or if the brush is at or near minimum length.

CLEANING SLIP RINGS

Visually inspect the slip rings. Under normal use, the rings turn dark brown.
If the slip rings are corroded or their surface is uneven, remove the belt to turn the shaft by hand for cleaning.
Clean the rings with 220 grit emery paper. Remove as little material as possible. If the rings are deeply pitted and do not clean up, consult generator factory service.

Reinstall the belt, brush holder assembly, and end panel.

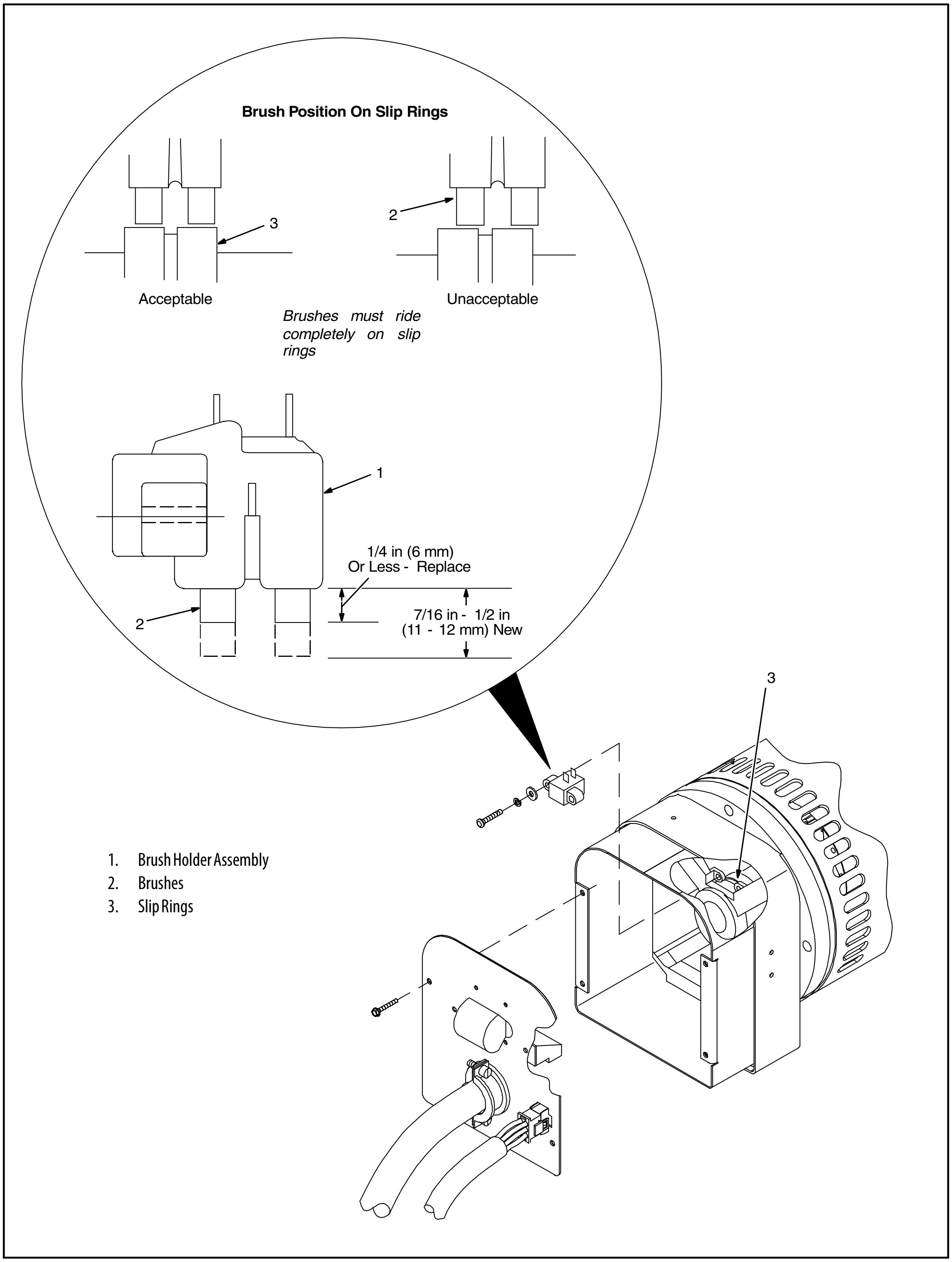


Figure 3-51. Inspecting Generator Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings

Troubleshooting

Table 3-9. Troubleshooting

Trouble	Remedy
No generator output at platform AC receptacles.	Be sure generator control switch is turned on at platform.
	Check and secure electrical connections at platform, generator, and control box.
	Be sure all equipment is turned off when starting unit.
	Reset circuit breaker CB1.
	Check plug PLG3 connection and/or connections at receptacles RC3 and RC5.
	Be sure + 12 volts DC input voltage is being supplied to control box.
	Check slip rings, wiring to brushes, and brush position on slip rings. Install new brushes if necessary.
	Disconnect leads 12 and 13 from brushes, and check continuity across slip rings (nominal reading is 26 ohms). Replace generator if rotor is open.
	Disconnect stator weld leads 1, 2, and 3 from circuit breaker CB1 , and check continuity between leads. Replace generator if necessary.
	Disconnect plug PLG4 and check continuity between exciter leads 5 and 6. Replace generator if necessary.
	Check power board PC1 and connections, and replace if necessary.
	Check control board PC2 and connections, and replace if necessary.
Low generator output at platform AC receptacles.	Verify generator is running at 3600 rpm (60 Hz) or 3000 rpm (50 Hz).
	Check slip rings, wiring to brushes, and brush position on slip rings. Install new brushes if necessary.
	Disconnect leads 12 and 13 from brushes, and check continuity across slip rings nominal reading is 26 ohms). Replace generator if rotor is open.
	Disconnect stator weld leads 1, 2, and 3 from circuit breaker CB1, and check continuity between leads. Replace generator if necessary.
	Disconnect plug PLG4 and check continuity between exciter leads 5 and 6. Replace generator if necessary.
	Check power board PC1 and connections, and replace if necessary.
	Check control board PC2 and connections, and replace if necessary.
High generator output at platform AC receptacles.	Verify generator is running at 3600 rpm (60 Hz) or 3000 rpm (50 Hz).
	Check slip rings, wiring to brushes, and brush position on slip rings. Install new brushes if necessary.
	Check power board PC1 and connections, and replace if necessary.
	Check control board PC2 and connections, and replace if necessary.
Erratic generator output at platform AC receptacles.	Check and secure electrical connections at platform, generator, and control box.
	Verify generator is running at 3600 rpm (60 Hz) or 3000 rpm (50 Hz).
	Check slip rings, wiring to brushes, and brush position on slip rings. Install new brushes n necessary.
	Disconnect leads 12 and 13 from brushes, and check continuity across slip rings nominal reading is 26 ohms). Replace generator if rotor is open.
	Check power board PC1 and connections, and replace if necessary.
	Check control board PC2 and connections, and replace if necessary.

Generator Disassembly and Assembly

Refer to Figure 3-53. and Figure 3-54. to determine if trouble is in stator, rotor, control box, or combination of these components.

1. Rotor
2. Stator Assembly

⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT DAMAGE ROTOR OR STATOR WINDINGS DURING DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY PROCEDURE.

DISASSEMBLY

1. Mark and disconnect all electrical leads, secure using cable ties.
2. Remove brush holder assembly.
3. Disassemble generator parts shown in Figure 3-52.
4. Clean all parts with approved solvent and dry with compressed air, If applicable.
5. Inspect all part for damage. Replace if necessary.

ASSEMBLY

1. Assemble generator parts using torque values in table.
2. Reconnect all leads. Use cable ties to secure leads away from moving or hot parts.

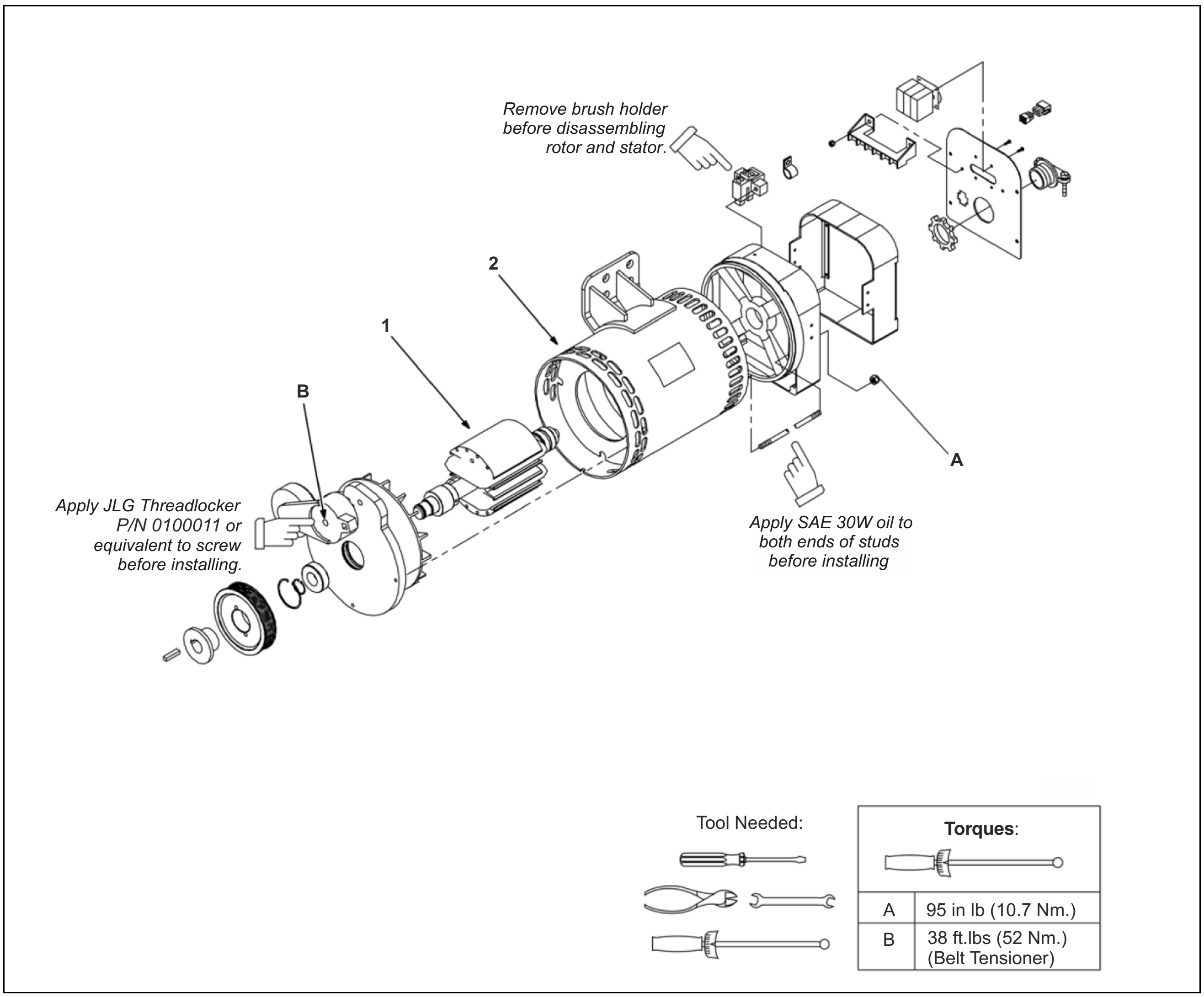


Figure 3-52. Generator Disassembly and Assembly

Resistance Values	
a) Tolerance – ±10% unless specified b) Condition – 70°F (21°C); cold machine (no warm-up) c) Wiring Diagram d) Stop generator before checking resistance	
R1	26 ohms
R2	1 ohm
R3 thru R5	Less than 1 ohm

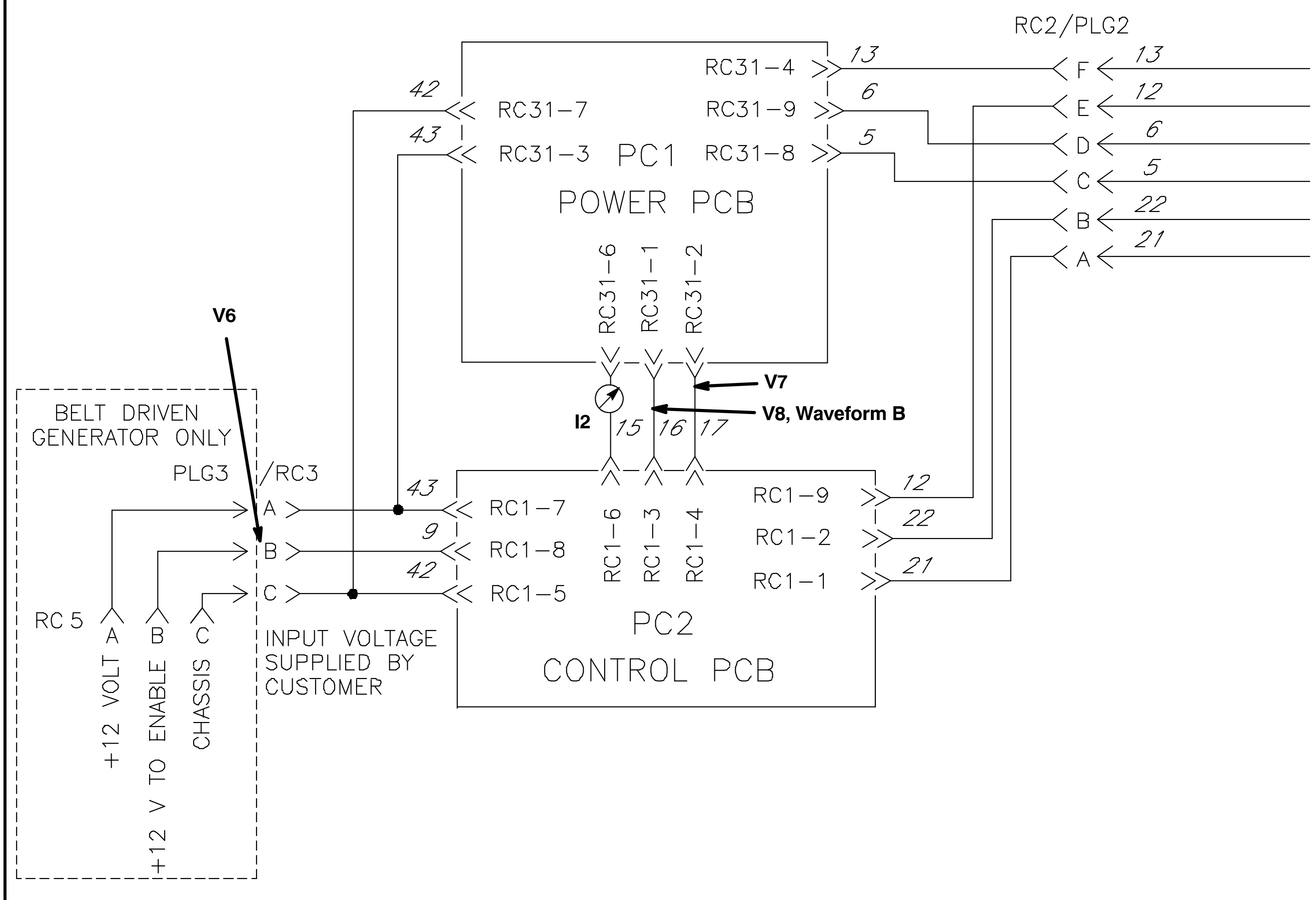
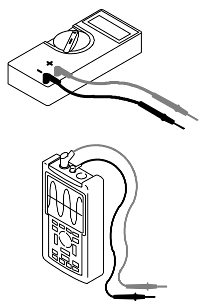


Figure 3-53. Generator Troubleshooting Circuit Diagram (Sheet 1 of 2)

Test Equipment Needed:



Amperage Readings	
a) Tolerance – ±5% unless specified	
b) Condition – 70°F (21°C); cold machine (no warm-up); no load	
I1	1 amps DC (60 Hz) No greater than 3.5 amps DC under load
I2	1 amps DC (60 Hz) No greater than 3.5 amps DC under load

Voltage Readings	
a) Tolerance – ±10% unless specified	
b) Condition – 70°F (21°C); cold machine (no warm-up); no load	
c) Weld/power rpm unless specified	
d) Reference – single arrow: reference to circuit common (lead 42); double arrow: reference to points indicated	
e) Wiring Diagram	
V1	Rotor: +25 volts DC at no load ±20%; +75 volts DC at full load ±10%
V2	Exciter: 150 volts AC
V3	Voltage Feedback: 240 volts AC
V4	Output (Odd Leg): 245 volts AC
V5	Output: 120 volts AC
V6	Generator Enable: +12 volts DC when generator is enabled (On); 0 volts DC when not enabled (Off)
V7	Shutdown Signal: +12 volts DC when shutdown is latched; 0 volts DC when not latched
V8	PWM Signal: 0 to +15 volts DC

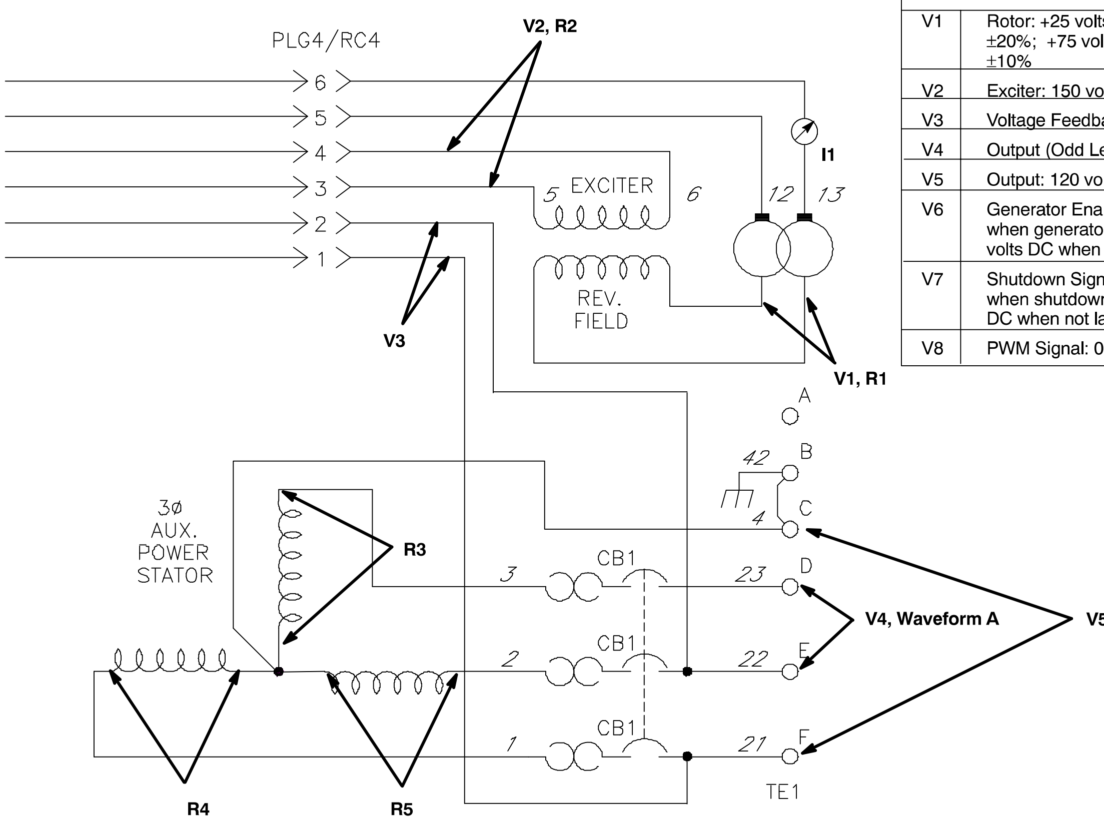


Figure 3-54. Generator Troubleshooting Circuit Diagram (Sheet 2 of 2)

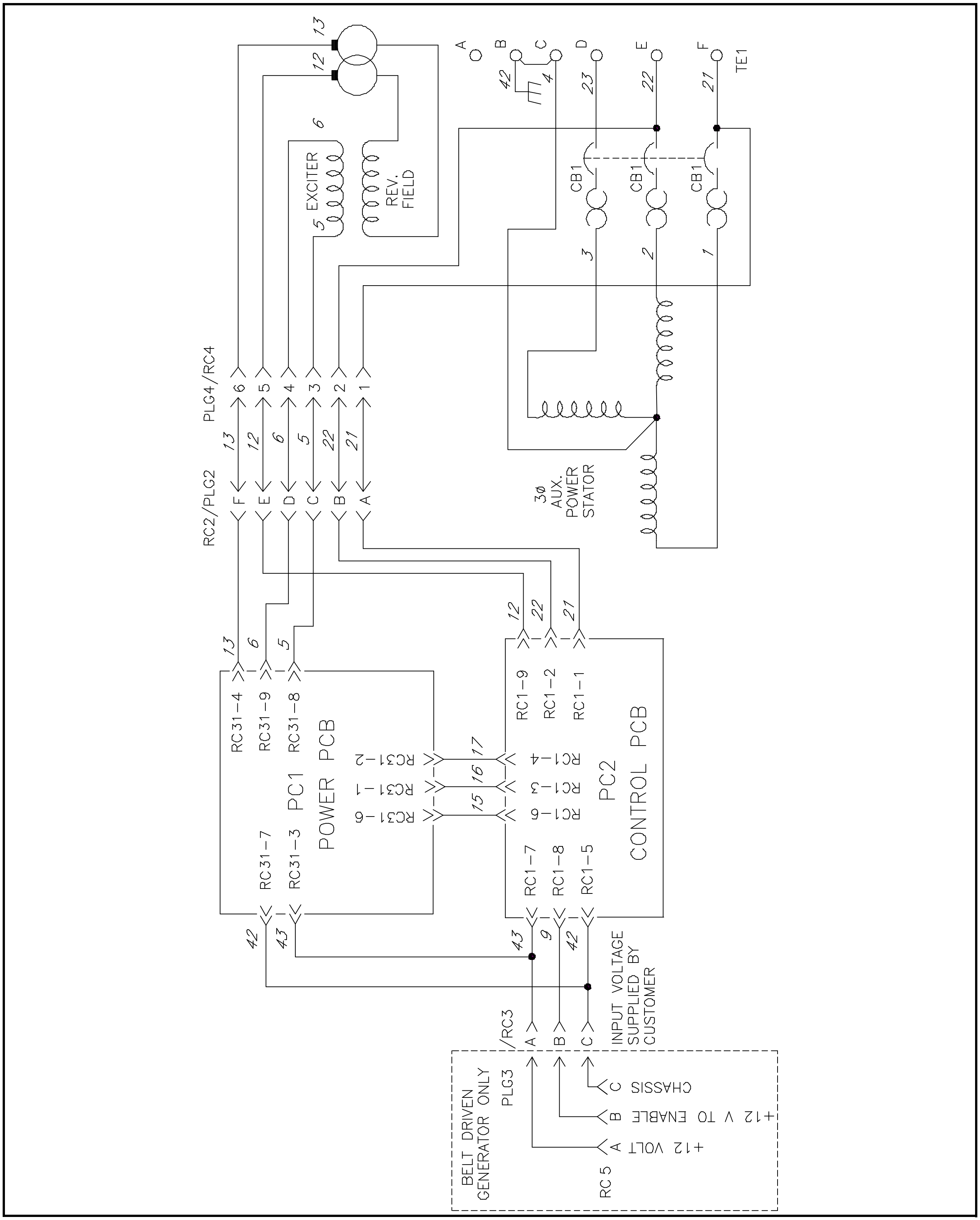


Figure 3-55. Generator Electrical Circuit Diagram

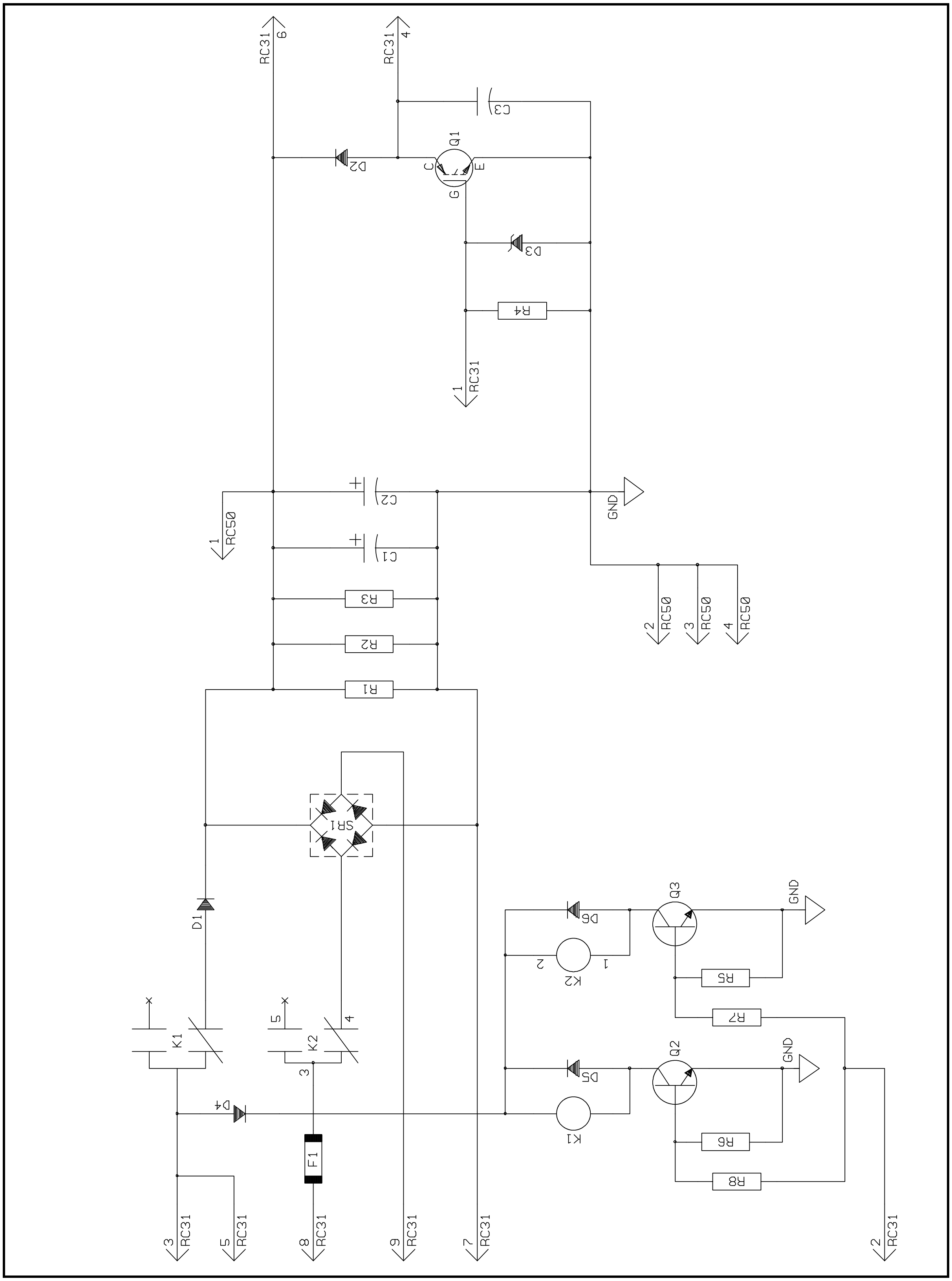
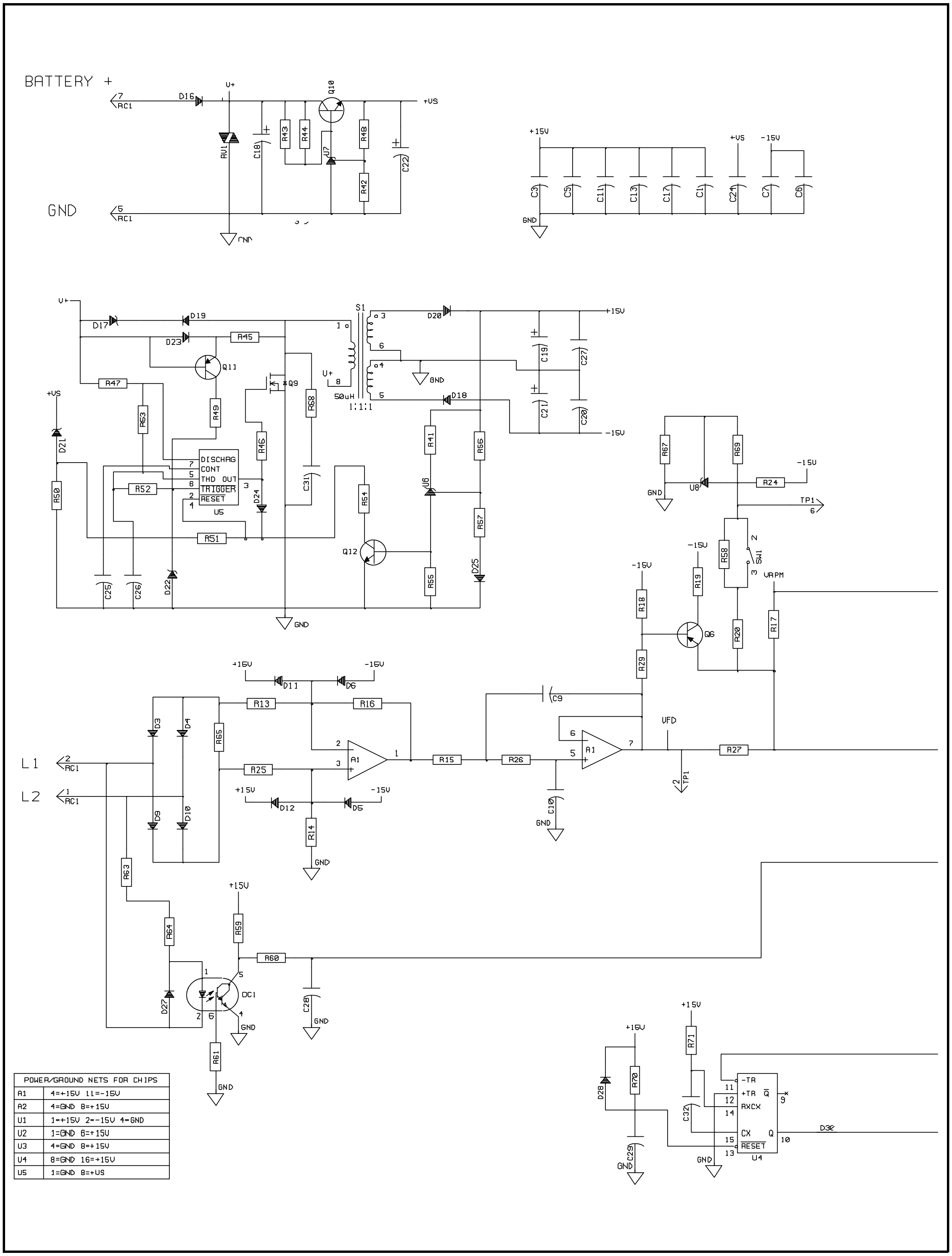


Figure 3-56. Power Board PC1 Electrical Circuit Diagram



POWER/GROUND NETS FOR CHIPS	
A1	4=+15V 11=-15V
A2	4=GND 8=+15V
U1	1=+15V 2=-15V 4=GND
U2	1=GND 8=+15V
U3	4=GND 8=+15V
U4	8=GND 16=+15V
U5	1=GND 8=+VS

Figure 3-57. Power Board PC2 Electrical Circuit Diagram (Sheet 1 of 2)

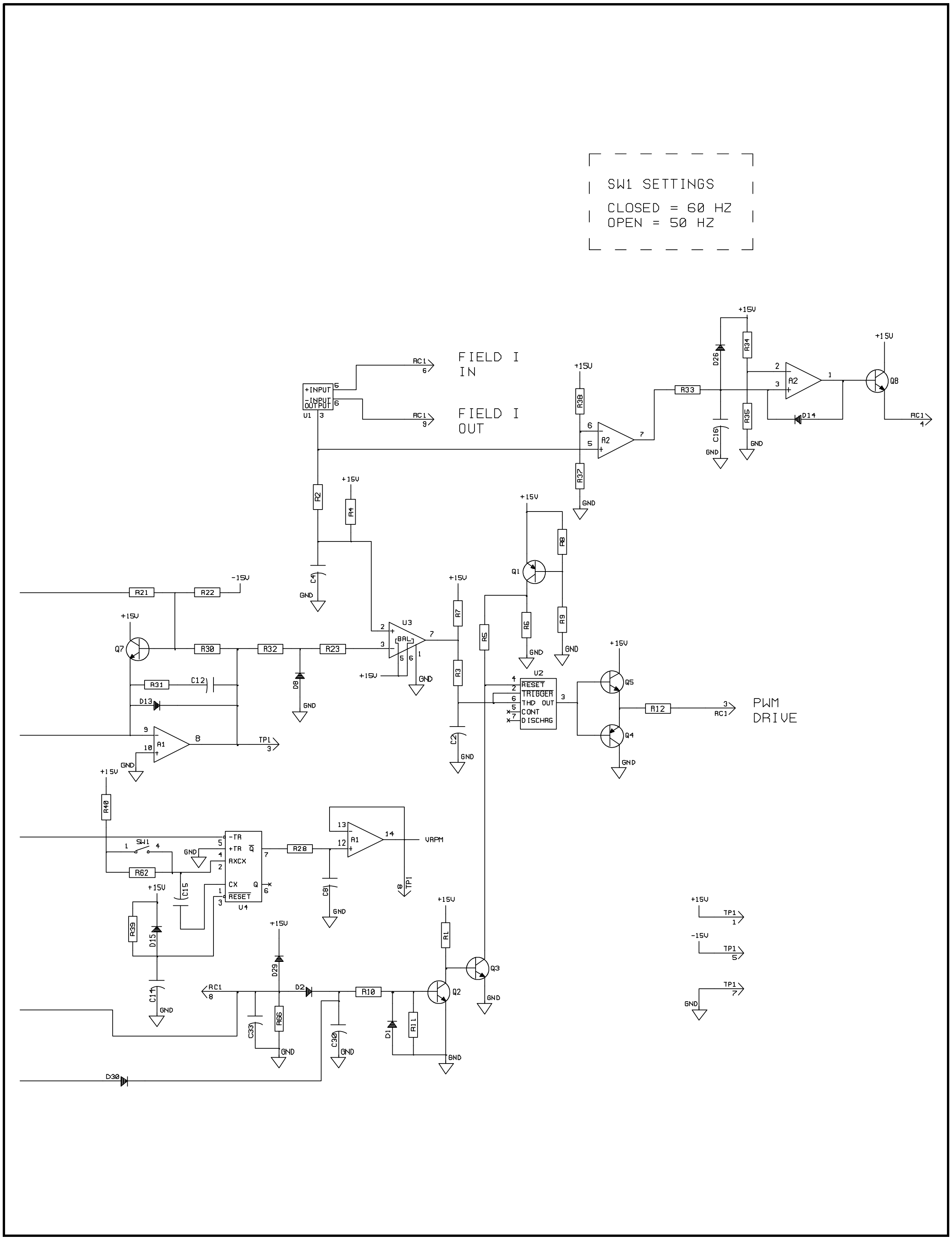


Figure 3-58. Power Board PC2 Electrical Circuit Diagram (Sheet 2 of 2)

Lead Connection List for Generator

NOTE: *Table shows physical lead connections and should be used with circuit diagram (table replaces wiring diagram).*

NOTE: *Apply small amount of dielectric grade, nonconductive electric grease to connectors where factory-applied grease had been present.*

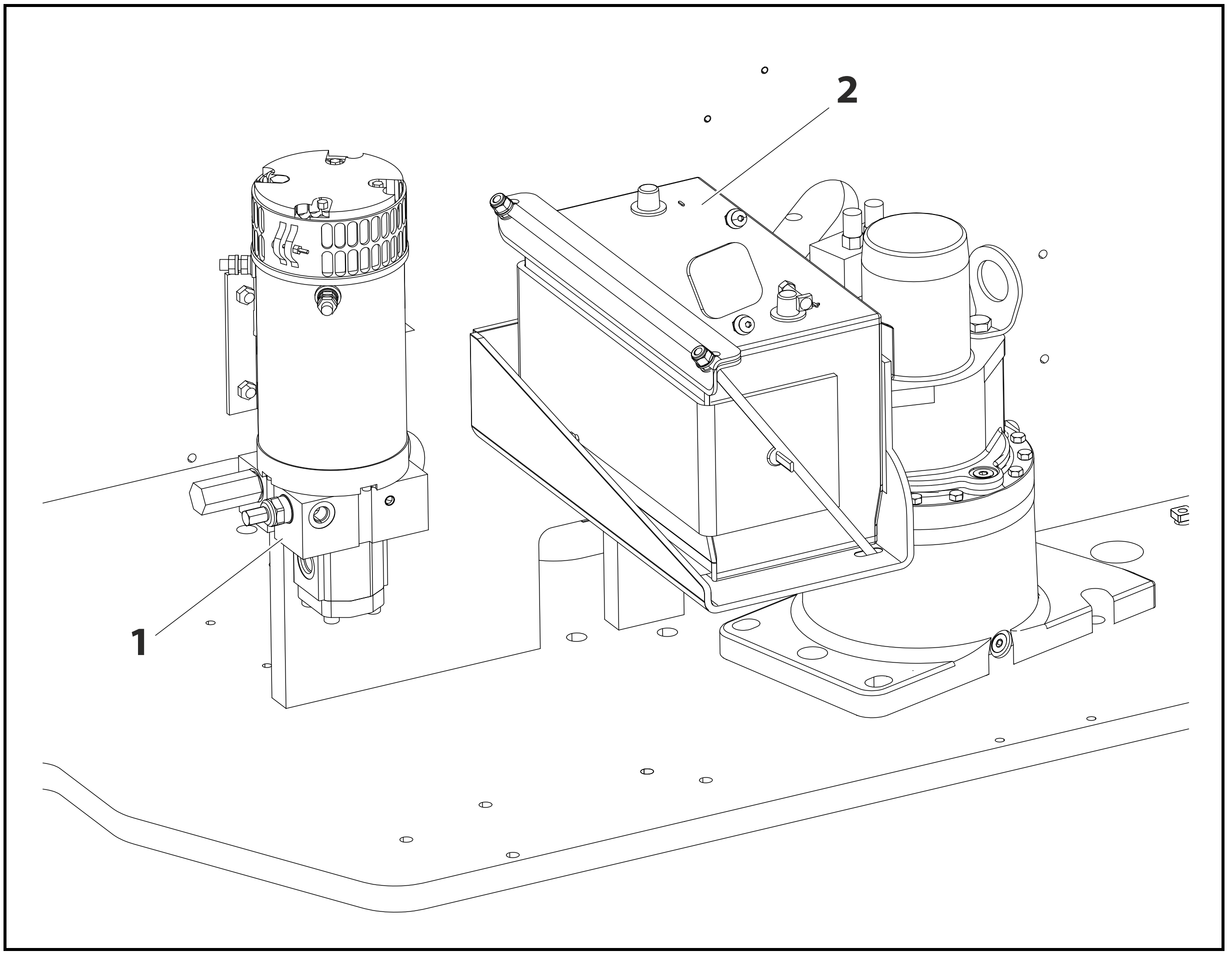
Table 3-10. Lead Connection List for Generator

Leads	Connections
1A	STATOR TO CB1
2A	STATOR TO CB1
3A	STATOR TO CB1
4A	STATOR TO TE1 (C)
5A	STATOR TO RC4 (3)
5B	PLG2 (C) TO PLG4 (3)
5C	RC2 (C) PLG31 (8)
6A	STATOR TO RC4 (4)
6B	PLG2 (D) TO PLG4 (4)
6C	RC2 (D) PLG31 (9)
9A	RC5 (B) TO PLG3 (B) (Customer Supplied)
9B	RC3 (B) PLG1 (8)
12A	PLG2 (E) TO PLG4 (5)
12B	RC2 (E) PLG1 (9)
12C	RC4 (5) TO BRUSH
13A	PLG2 (F) TO PLG4 (6)
13B	RC2 (F) PLG31 (4)
13C	RC4 (6) TO BRUSH
15A	PLG1 (6) TO PLG31 (6)
16A	PLG1 (3) TO PLG31 (1)
17A	PLG1 (4) TO PLG31 (2)
21A	CB1 TO TE1 (F)
21B	PLG2 (A) TO PLG4 (1)
21C	PLG1 (1) TO RC2 (A)
21D	RC4 (1) TO CB1
22A	CB1 TO TE1 (E)
22B	PLG2 (B) TO PLG4 (2)
22C	PLG1 (2) TO RC2 (B)
22D	RC4 (2) TO CB1
23A	CB1 TO TE1 (D)
42A	RC5 (C) TO PLG3 (C) (Customer Supplied)
42B	RC3 (C) TO CONNECTION POINT 1
42C	PLG31 (7) TO CONNECTION POINT 1
42D	PLG1 (5) TO CONNECTION POINT 1
42F	END BELL SHROUD TO ENGINE MOUNT
42G	CHASSIS TO TE1 (B)
43A	RC5 (A) TO PLG3 (A) (Customer Supplied)
43B	RC3 (A) TO CONNECTION POINT 2
43C	PLG31 (3) TO CONNECTION POINT 2
43D	PLG1 (7) TO CONNECTION POINT 2

3.17 AUXILIARY POWER SYSTEM

The auxiliary power system is intended as a secondary means of moving the boom in the event of primary power loss. This system uses an electric motor/pump unit powered by a 12V (extended upto 24V DC) battery.

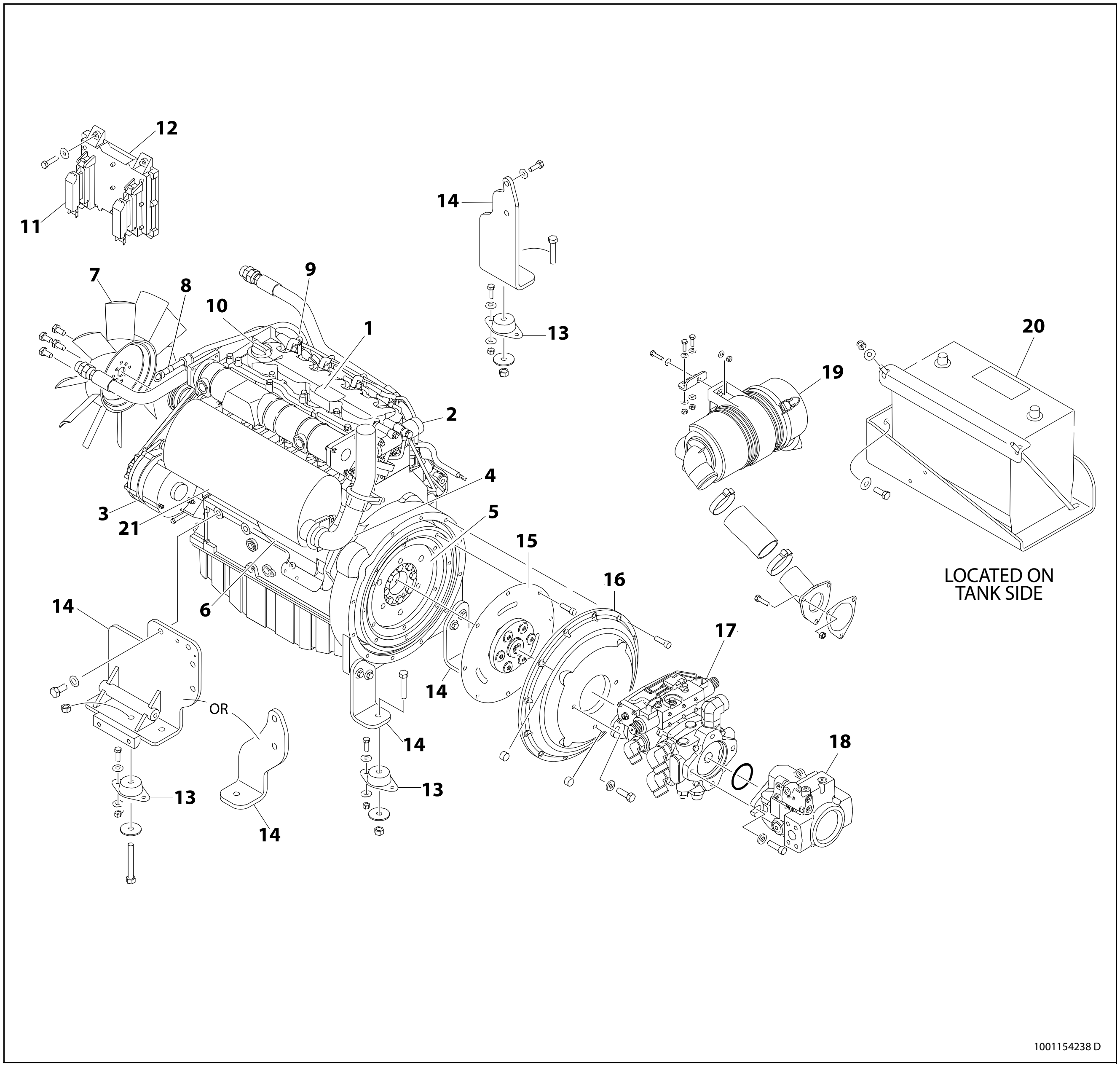
The auxiliary pump functions to provide sufficient oil flow to operate the basic machine functions should the main pump or engine fail. The auxiliary pump will operate tower boom lift, tower telescope, main boom lift, main telescope and swing. The Auxiliary Power control switch energizes the electrically operated hydraulic pump.



1. Auxiliary Pump
2. Battery

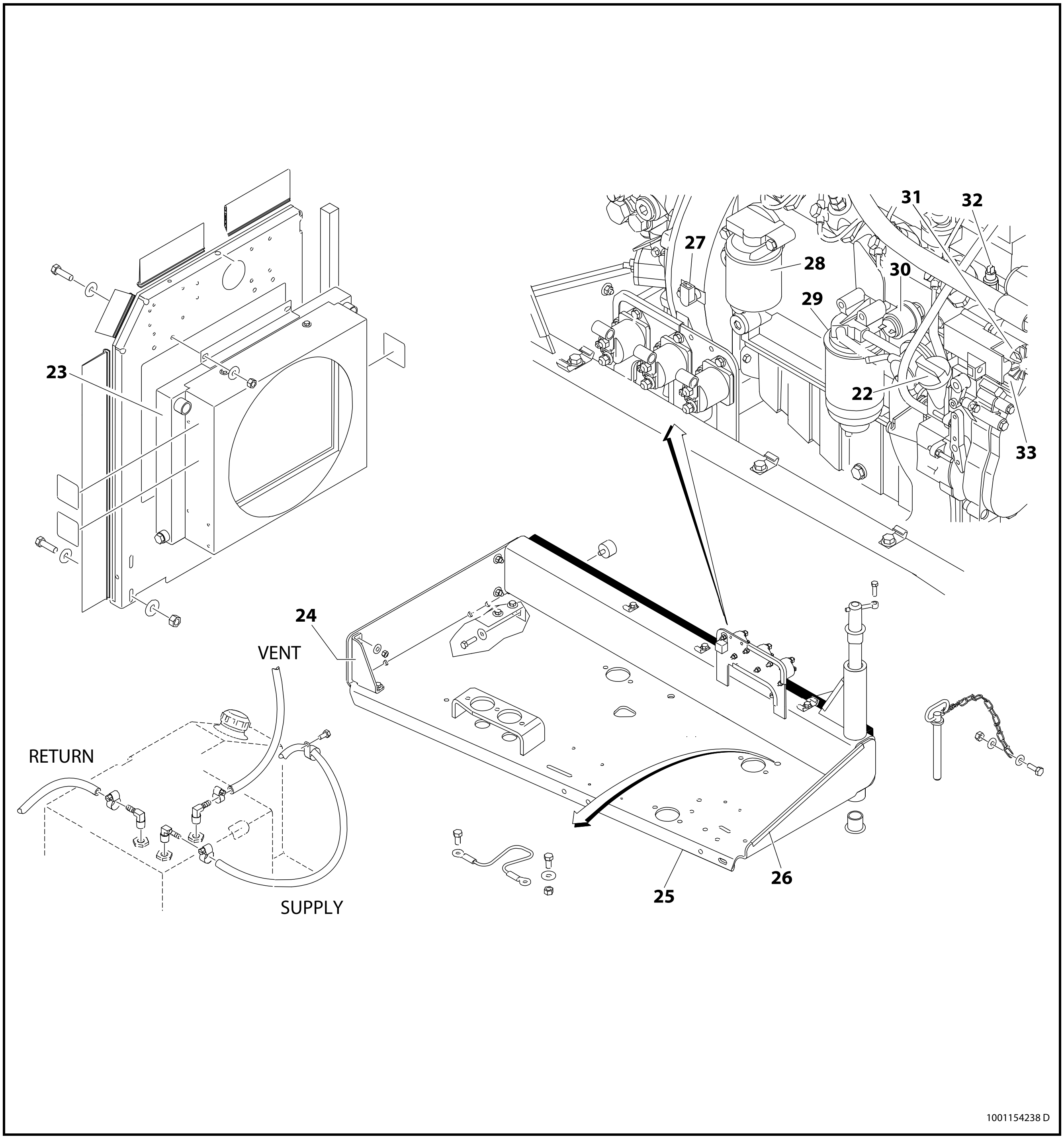
Figure 3-59. Auxiliary Power System

3.18 DEUTZ ENGINE



1. Deutz D2011 Engine
2. Thermostat
3. Alternator
4. Exhaust Pipe
5. Flywheel
6. Starter
7. Fan
8. Dipstick
9. Glow Plug
10. Filler cap
11. Engine Harness
12. Control Module
13. Mount Motor
14. Support Engine
15. Coupling
16. Adapter Pump Plate
17. Hydrostatic Pump Assembly
18. Variable Pump
19. Air Cleaner Assembly
20. Battery
21. Muffler

Figure 3-60. Deutz D2011 Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2



22. Filler Cap	25. Tray Engine	28. Oil filter	31. Throttle Actuator
23. Radiator	26. Flex-Trim	29. Fuel Filter	32. Temperature Transmitter
24. Gusset	27. Speed Sensor	30. Oil Pressure Sensor	33. Glow Plug

Figure 3-61. Deutz D2011 Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2

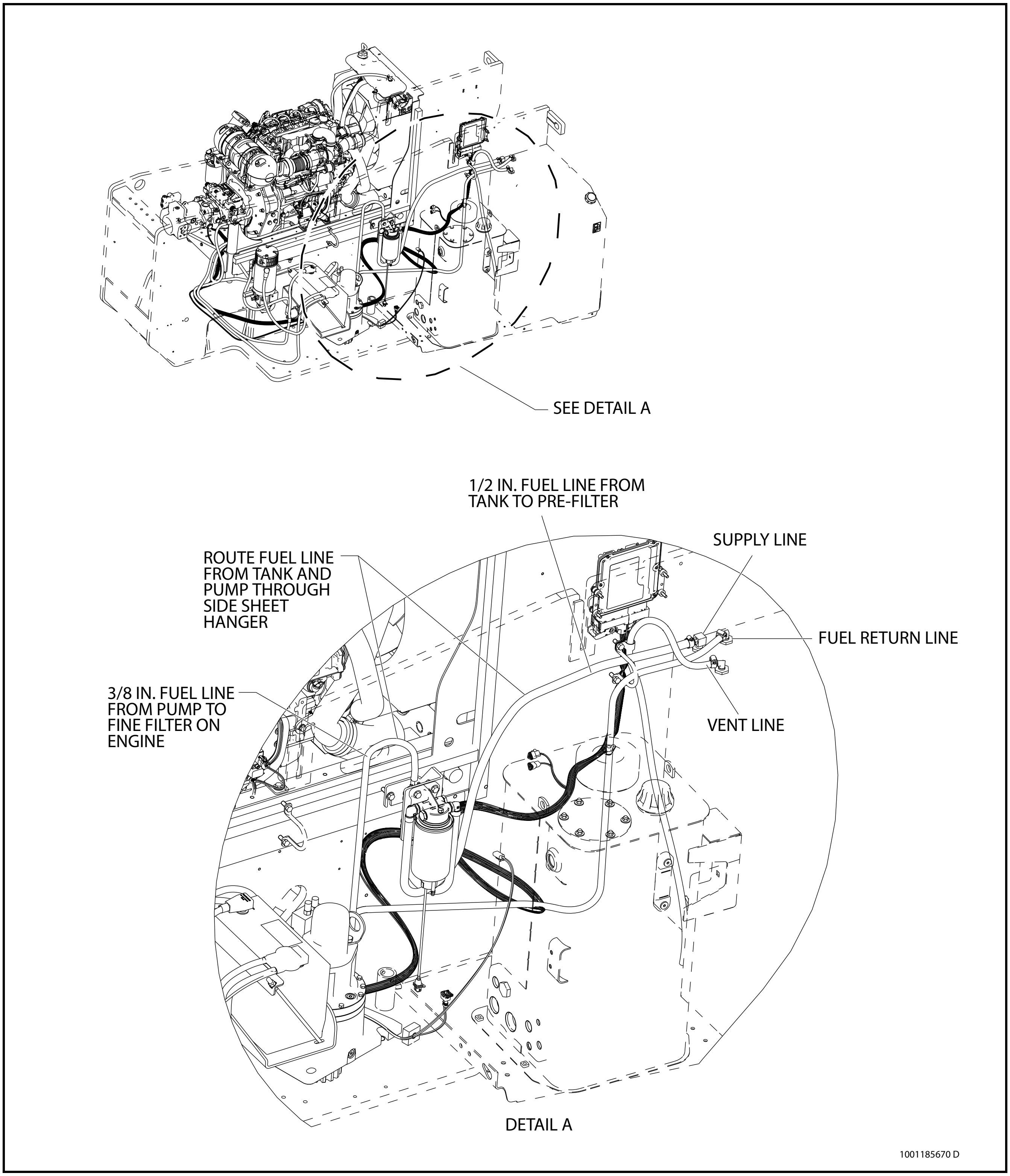


Figure 3-62. Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 5

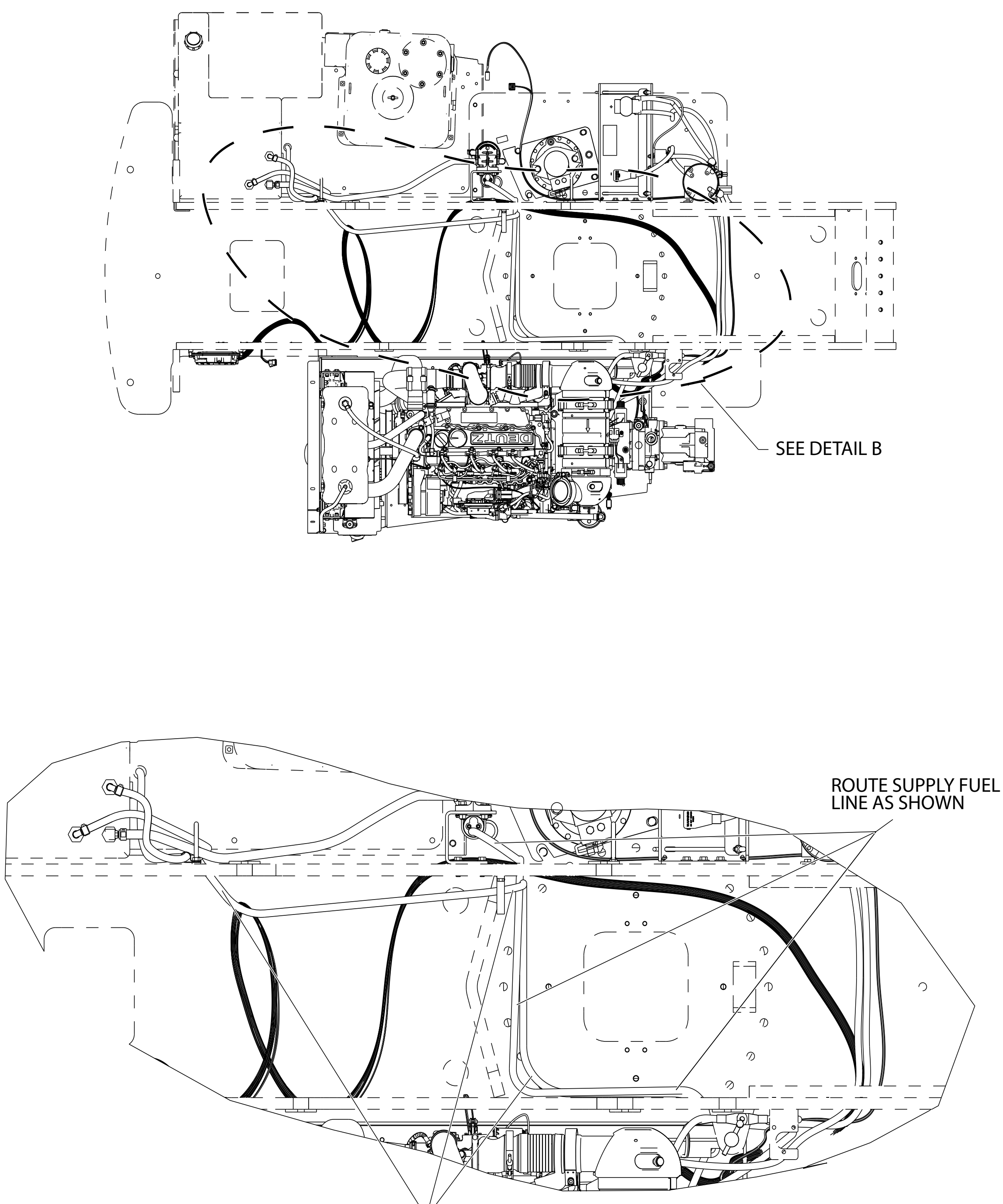


Figure 3-63. Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 5

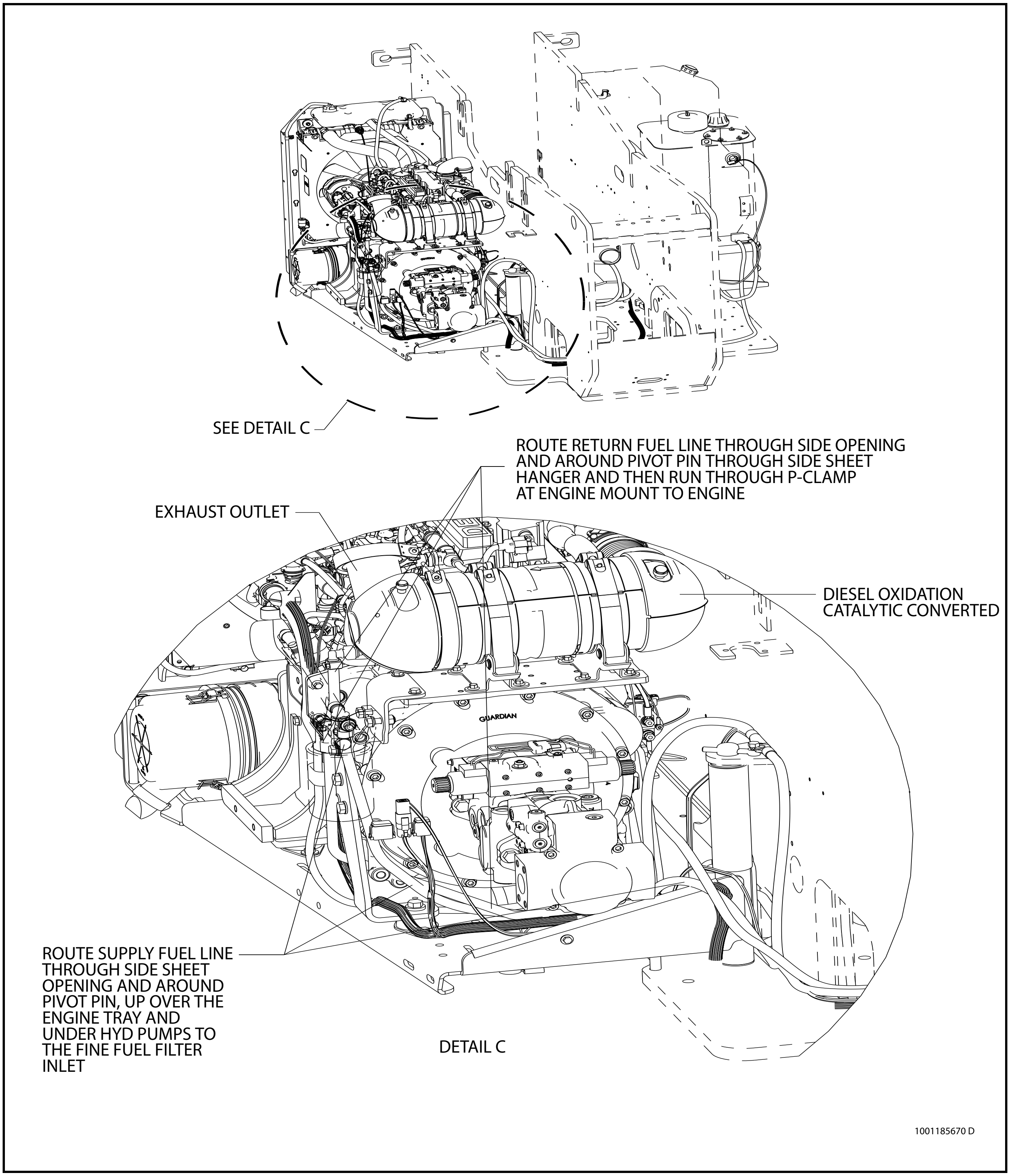


Figure 3-64. Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 3 of 5

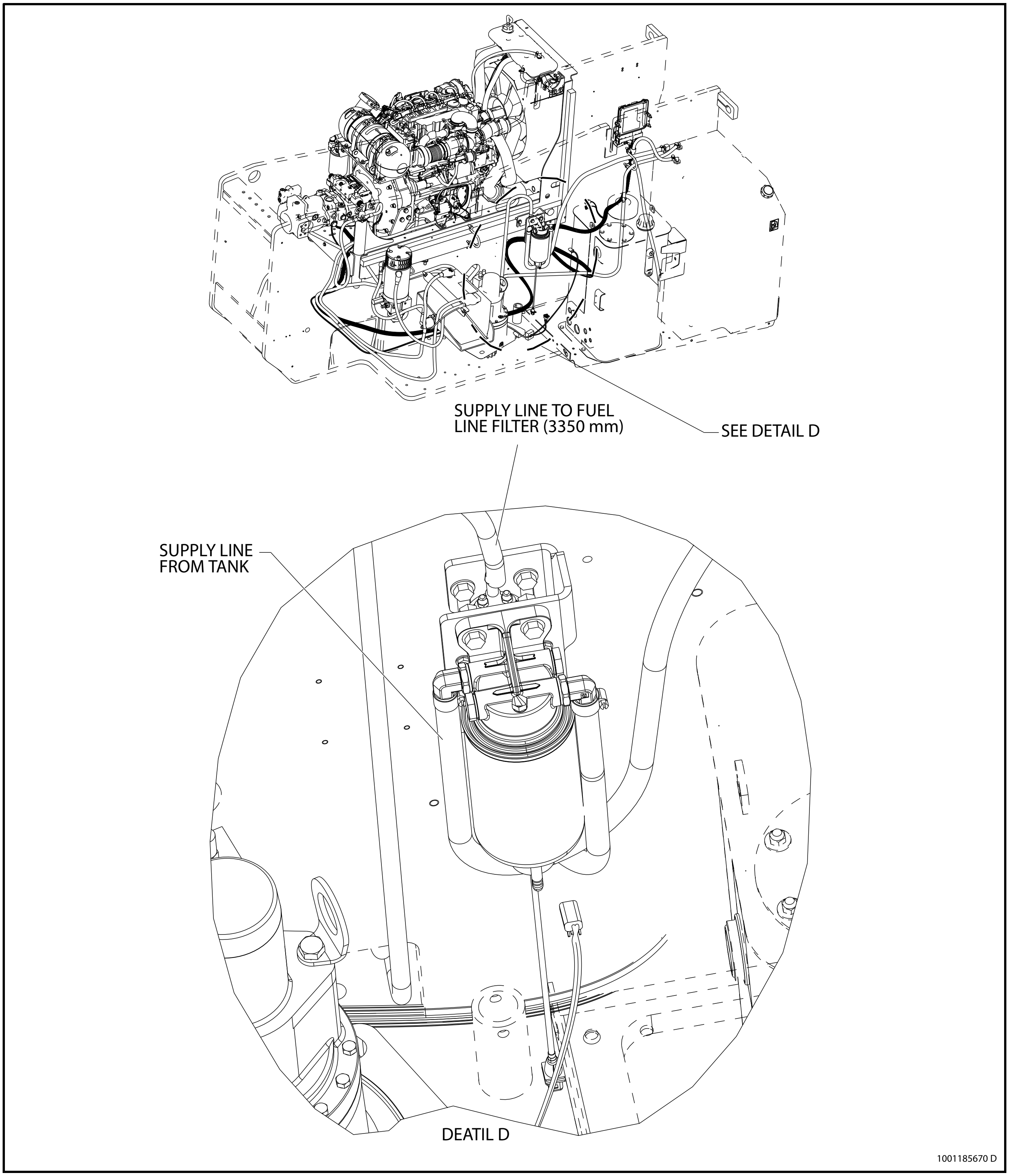


Figure 3-65. Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 4 of 5

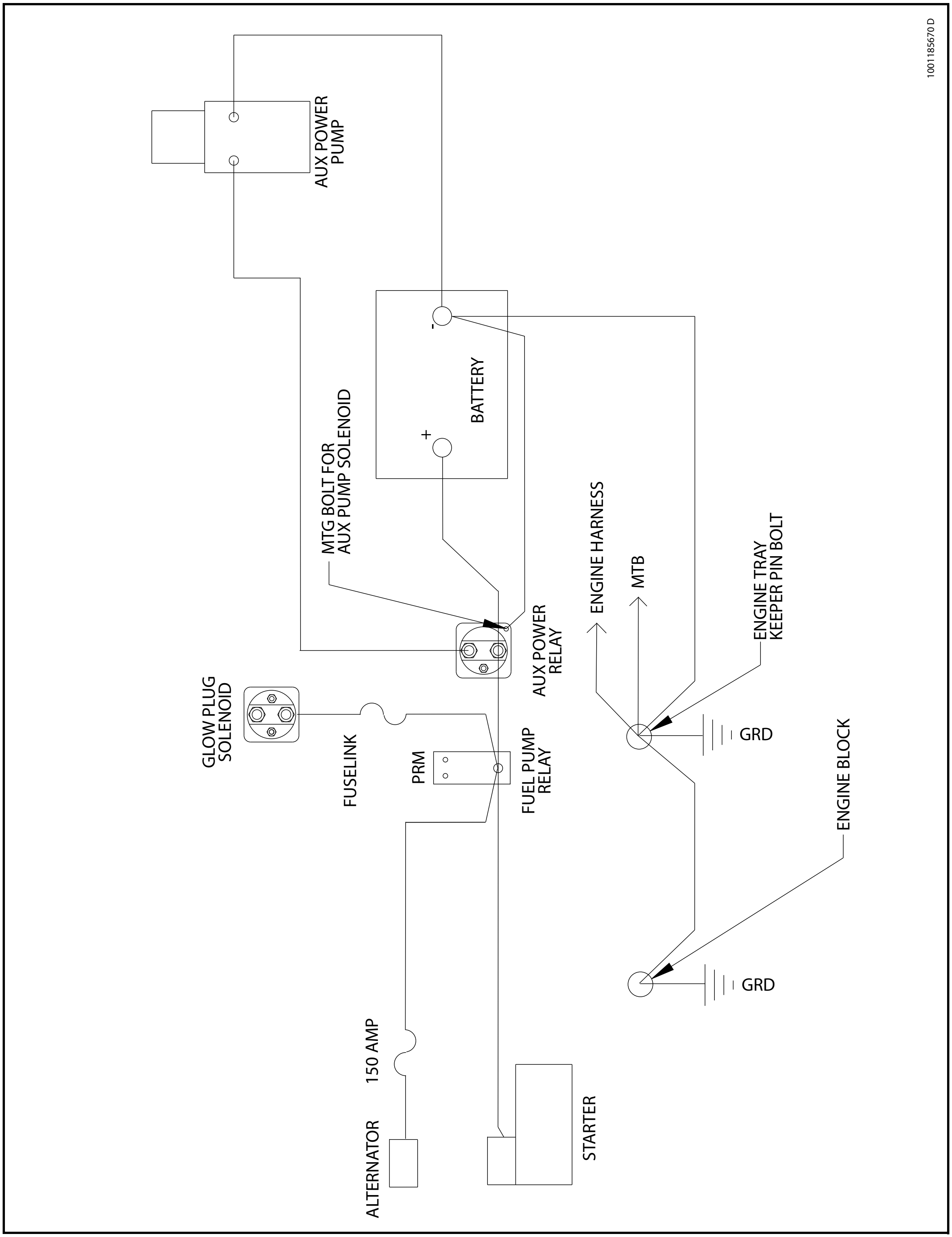


Figure 3-66. Deutz 2.9 L4 Engine Installation - Sheet 5 of 5

3.19 DEUTZ ENGINE - TD2011L04

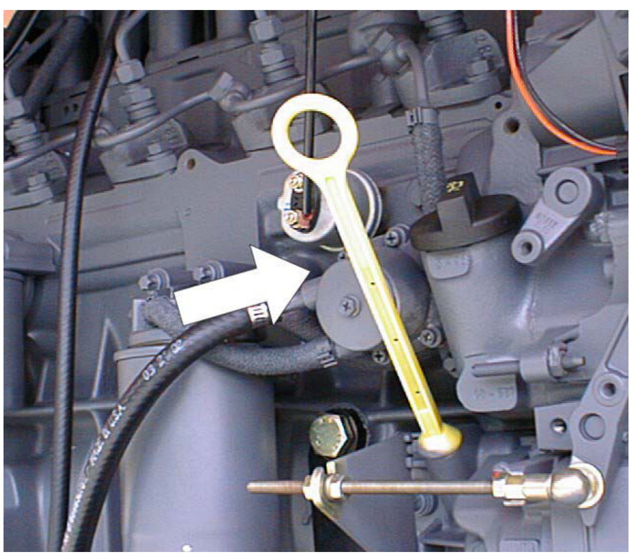
NOTE: *Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for detailed operating and maintenance instructions. Limited engine maintenance items are presented here for convenience but detailed engine maintenance items and schedule are included in the engine manufacturer's manual.*

Glow Plugs

If the glow plug option is enabled in the JLG Control System, the glow plug and indicator lamp will be energized when the Power/Emergency Stop switch is pulled on if the ambient air temperature is less than 50° F (10° C) and the engine coolant temperature is less than 140° F (60° C). This determination will occur one second after the Power/Emergency Stop switch has been pulled on. The lamp and glow plugs will remain energized for the period of time specified by the setting in the JLG Control System. Engine start shall be disabled during this period. On Deutz engines, the glow plugs will continue (post glow) after the engine has started for three times the machine digit setting.

Check Oil Level

1. Switch the engine off before checking oil level.
2. Make sure the machine and engine are level.
3. Remove the oil dipstick.
4. Wipe the dipstick with non-fibrous, clean cloth.
5. Insert the dipstick to the stop and remove again. Check the oil level, and if necessary, top the oil level up to the MAX mark with an approved grade and type of oil as outlined in the engine manufacturer's operator's manual. Refer to Figure 3-67., Deutz Engine Dipstick.



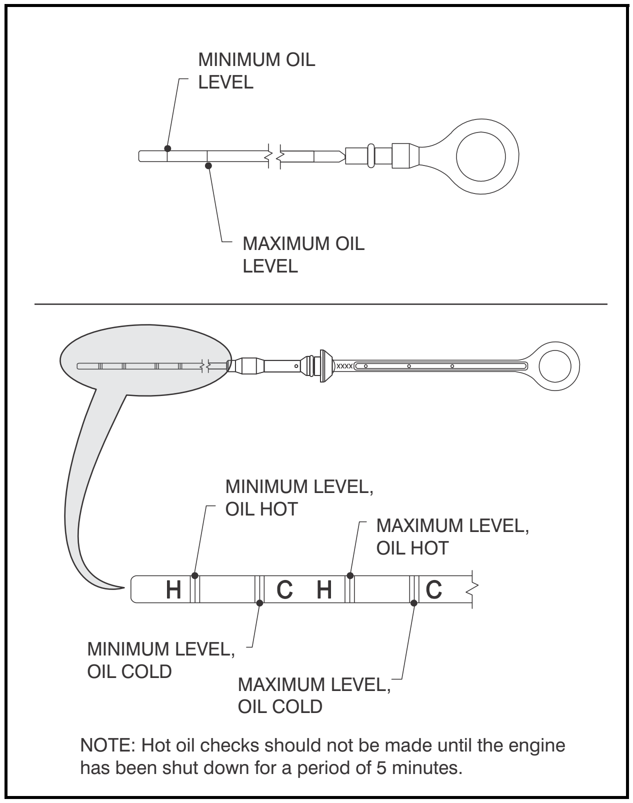


Figure 3-67. Deutz Engine Dipstick

6. Replace the dipstick making sure that it is fully seated in the dipstick tube to seal off the crankcase.

Replacing Engine Oil

1. Allow the engine to warm up. The engine oil should reach approximately 176° F (80° C).
2. Make sure the machine and engine are level.
3. Switch off the engine.
4. Place an oil tray under the engine.

CAUTION

HOT ENGINE OIL CAN CAUSE BURNS, AVOID CONTACT WITH HOT OIL WHEN DRAINING.

NOTICE

COLLECT USED OIL IN A CONTAINER SUITABLE FOR DISPOSAL OR RECYCLING. DISPOSE OF USED ENGINE OIL IN ACCORDANCE WITH ENVIRONMENTAL REGULATIONS.

5. Open the oil drain valve.
6. Drain the oil.
7. Close the oil drain valve.
8. Pour in new engine oil. Refer to Section 1 for capacity and refer to Figure 3-68., Engine Oil Viscosity for the proper grade.

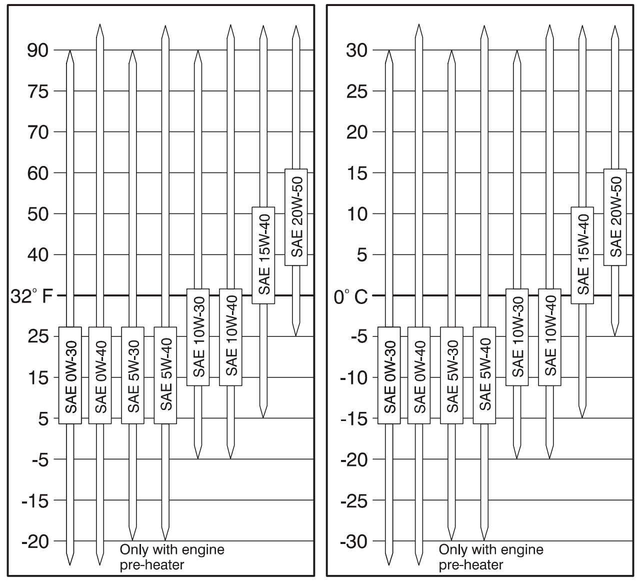
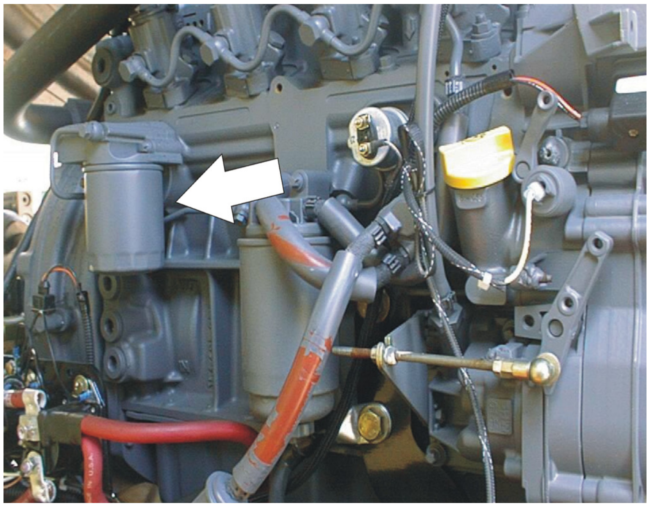
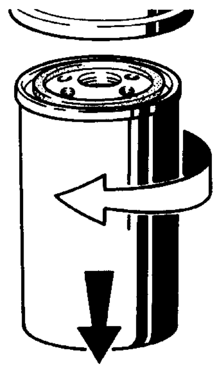


Figure 3-68. Engine Oil Viscosity

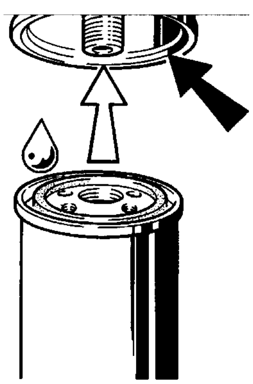
Replacing the Oil Filter



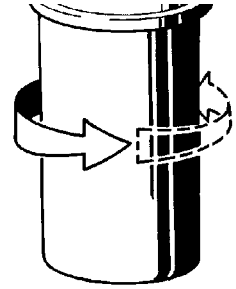
1. Wipe the area around the filter to clean any dirt from the area.
2. Using a suitable oil filter removal tool, loosen lube oil filter element and spin off.



3. Catch any escaping oil.
4. Clean any dirt from filter carrier sealing surface.
5. Lightly coat new oil filter rubber gasket with clean oil.

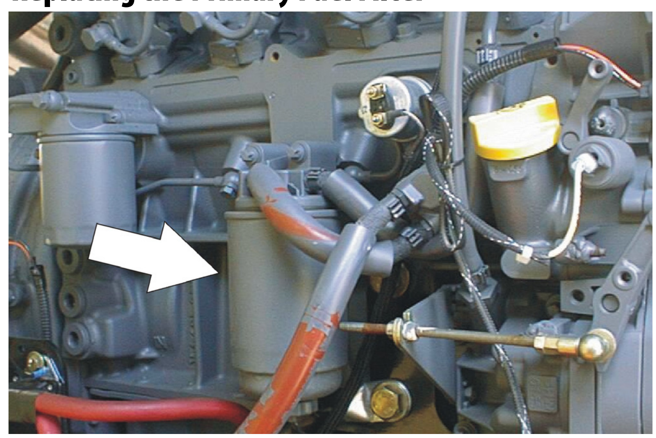


6. Manually screw in the new filter until the gasket is flush.



7. Hand-tighten filter another half-turn.
8. Check oil level.
9. Check oil pressure.
10. Check the oil filter cartridge and make sure there are no leaks.

Replacing the Primary Fuel Filter



⚠ WARNING

FUEL IS FLAMMABLE AND CAN CAUSE DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY. MAKE SURE NO OPEN FLAMES OR SPARKS ARE IN THE AREA WHEN WORKING ON FUEL SYSTEM. DO NOT SMOKE WHEN WORKING ON THE FUEL SYSTEMS.

1. Wipe the area around the filter to clean any dirt from the area.
2. Fuel supply from the fuel tank may need to be blocked to prevent fuel flow from the tank.
3. Undo the fuel filter cartridge and spin off.
4. Catch any escaping fuel.
5. Clean any dirt from the filter carrier sealing surface.
6. Apply a light film of oil or diesel fuel to the rubber gasket of the new filter cartridge.
7. Manually screw in the new filter until the gasket is flush.
8. Tighten the fuel filter cartridge with a final half-turn.
9. Check for leaks.

3.20 DEUTZ ENGINE - TD2.9L4

NOTE: *Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for detailed operating and maintenance instructions. Limited engine maintenance items are presented here for convenience but detailed engine maintenance items and schedule are included in the engine manufacturer's manual.*

Glow Plugs

If the glow plug option is enabled in the JLG Control System, the glow plug and indicator lamp will be energized when the Power/Emergency Stop switch is pulled on if the ambient air temperature is less than 50° F (10° C) and the engine coolant temperature is less than 140° F (60° C). This determination will occur one second after the Power/Emergency Stop switch has been pulled on. The lamp and glow plugs will remain energized for the period of time specified by the setting in the JLG Control System. Engine start shall be disabled during this period. On Deutz engines, the glow plugs will continue (post glow) after the engine has started for three times the machine digit setting.

Check Oil Level

1. Make sure machine and engine are level and switch engine OFF before checking oil level.
2. Remove oil dipstick and wipe with clean cloth.
3. Insert dipstick to the stop and remove again.
4. Check oil level. Top oil level as shown in figure below with an approved grade and type of oil outlined in engine manufacturer's operator's manual.

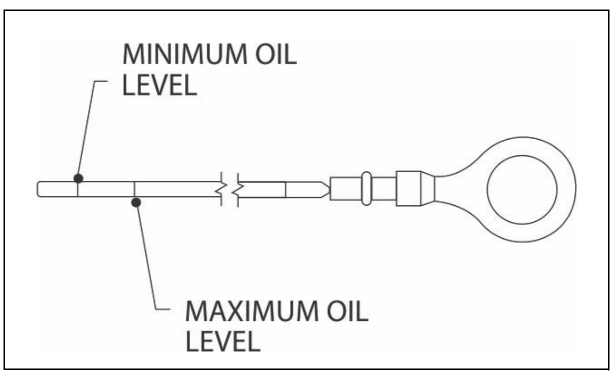


Figure 3-69. Deutz Engine Dipstick

5. Replace dipstick until fully seated.

Replacing Engine Oil

1. Allow engine to warm up. Engine oil should reach approximately 176° F (80° C).
2. Make sure machine and engine are level.
3. Switch off engine.
4. Place oil tray under engine.

CAUTION

HOT ENGINE OIL CAN CAUSE BURNS. AVOID CONTACT WITH HOT OIL WHEN DRAINING.

NOTICE

COLLECT USED OIL IN A CONTAINER SUITABLE FOR DISPOSAL OR RECYCLING. DISPOSE OF USED ENGINE OIL IN ACCORDANCE WITH ENVIRONMENTAL REGULATIONS.

5. Open oil drain valve and drain oil.
6. Close oil drain valve.
7. Pour in new engine oil. Refer to Section 1 for capacity and Figure 3-70., Engine Oil Viscosity.

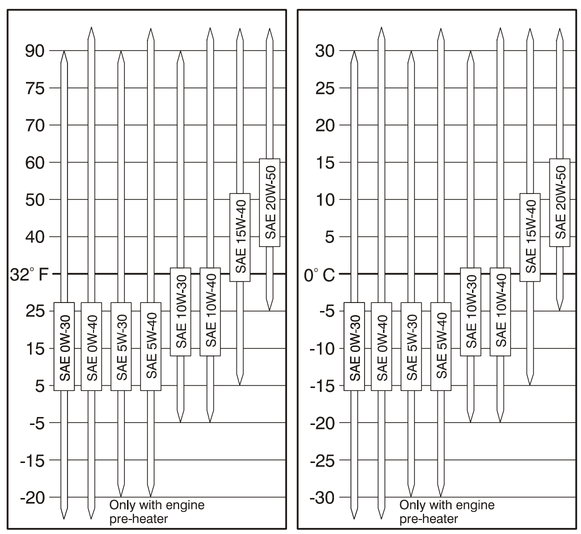
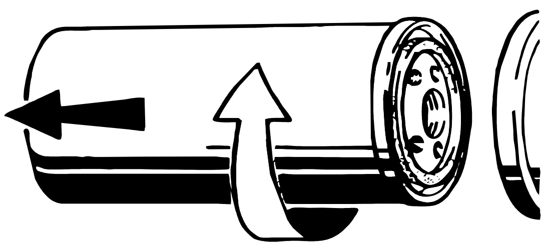


Figure 3-70. Engine Oil Viscosity

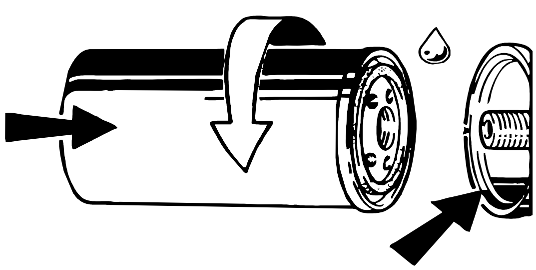
Replacing the Oil Filter

Figure 3-71. Location of the Oil Filter

1. Wipe area around filter to clean any dirt from area.
2. Using a suitable oil filter removal tool, loosen lube oil filter element and spin off.



3. Catch any escaping oil.
4. Clean any dirt from filter carrier sealing surface.
5. Lightly coat new oil filter rubber gasket with clean oil.
6. Screw in new filter by hand until gasket is flush.
7. Hand-tighten filter another half-turn.



8. Check oil level.
9. Check oil pressure.
10. Check oil filter cartridge for leaks.

Replacing the Primary Fuel Filters

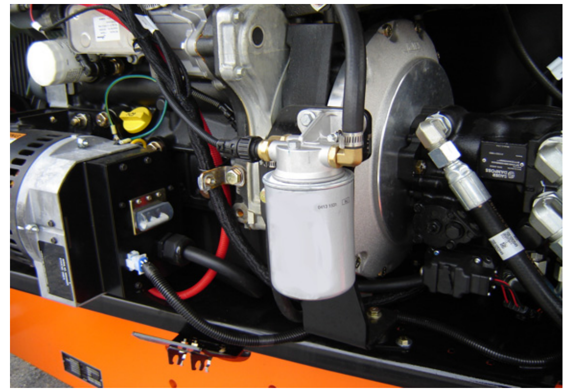
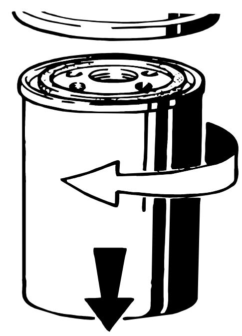


Figure 3-72. Location of the Primary Fuel Filter

⚠ WARNING

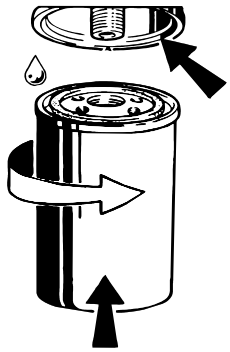
FUEL IS FLAMMABLE AND CAN CAUSE DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY. MAKE SURE NO OPEN FLAMES OR SPARKS ARE IN THE AREA WHEN WORKING ON FUEL SYSTEM. DO NOT SMOKE WHEN WORKING ON THE FUEL SYSTEMS.

1. Wipe area around filter to clean any dirt from area.
2. Fuel supply from the fuel tank may need to be blocked to prevent flow from the fuel tank.
3. Remove fuel filter cartridge.
4. Catch any escaping fuel.



5. Clean dirt from filter carrier sealing surface.
6. Apply light film of oil or diesel fuel to rubber gasket of new filter cartridge.

7. Screw in new filter by hand until gasket is flush. Hand-tighten filter another 3/4 turn.



8. Check for leaks.

3.21 DUAL FUEL SYSTEM

The dual fuel system enables the standard gasoline engine to run on either gasoline or LP gas. The system includes pressurized cylinders mounted on the frame, and the valves and switches needed to switch the fuel supply from gasoline to LP gas or from LP gas to gasoline.

A two position, Fuel Select switch at the platform control station supplies electrical power to open the gasoline shut-off solenoid and close the LP gas shut off solenoid when positioned to the Gasoline position. This switch also allows electrical power to open the LP gas shut-off solenoid and close the gasoline shut-off solenoid when positioned to the LP position.

⚠ CAUTION

IT IS POSSIBLE TO SWITCH FROM ONE FUEL SOURCE TO THE OTHER WITHOUT ALLOWING THE ENGINE TO STOP. EXTREME CARE MUST BE TAKEN AND THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS MUST BE FOLLOWED.

Changing from Gasoline to LP Gas

1. Start the engine from the ground control station.
2. Open the hand valve on the LP gas supply tank by turning counterclockwise.

⚠ CAUTION

BE SURE ALL GASOLINE IS EXHAUSTED BEFORE SWITCHING TO LP GAS.

3. While the engine is operating, place the two position LPG/Gasoline switch at the platform control station to the LP position. Allow the engine to operate without load until the engine regains smoothness.

Changing from LP Gas to Gasoline

1. With engine operating on LP under a no load condition, throw the LPG/Gasoline switch at the platform control station to the “Gasoline” position. Allow the engine to operate with no load until the engine regains smoothness.
2. Close hand valve on LP gas supply tank by turning clockwise.

3.22 DEUTZ EMR 2

The EMR2 consists of the sensors, the control unit and the actuator. Engine-side controls as well as the JLG Control System are connected by means of separate cable harnesses to the EMR control unit.

The sensors attached to the engine provide the electronics in the control unit with all the relevant physical parameters In accordance with the information of the current condition of the engine and the preconditions (throttle position etc.), the EMR2 controls an actuator that operates the control rod of the injection pump and thus doses the fuel quantity in accordance with the performance requirements.

The exact position of the regulating rod is reported back and, if necessary, is corrected, by means of the control rod travel sensor, situated together with the rotation magnets in a housing of the actuator.

The EMR2 is equipped with safety devices and measures in the hardware and software in order to ensure emergency running (Limp home) functions.

In order to switch the engine off, the EMR2 is switched in a de-energized fashion over the ignition switch. A strong spring in the actuator presses the control rod in the de-energized condition into the zero position. As a redundancy measure, an additional solenoid serves for switching off and this, independently of the actuator, also moves the control rod in the de-energized condition into the zero position.

After the programming, that is carried out over the ISO9141 interface, the EMR2 possesses a motor-specific data set and this is then fixedly assigned to the engine. Included in this are the various application cases as well as the customer's wishes regarding a particular scope of function.

Each EMR2 module is matched by serial number to the engine. Modules cannot be swapped between engines.

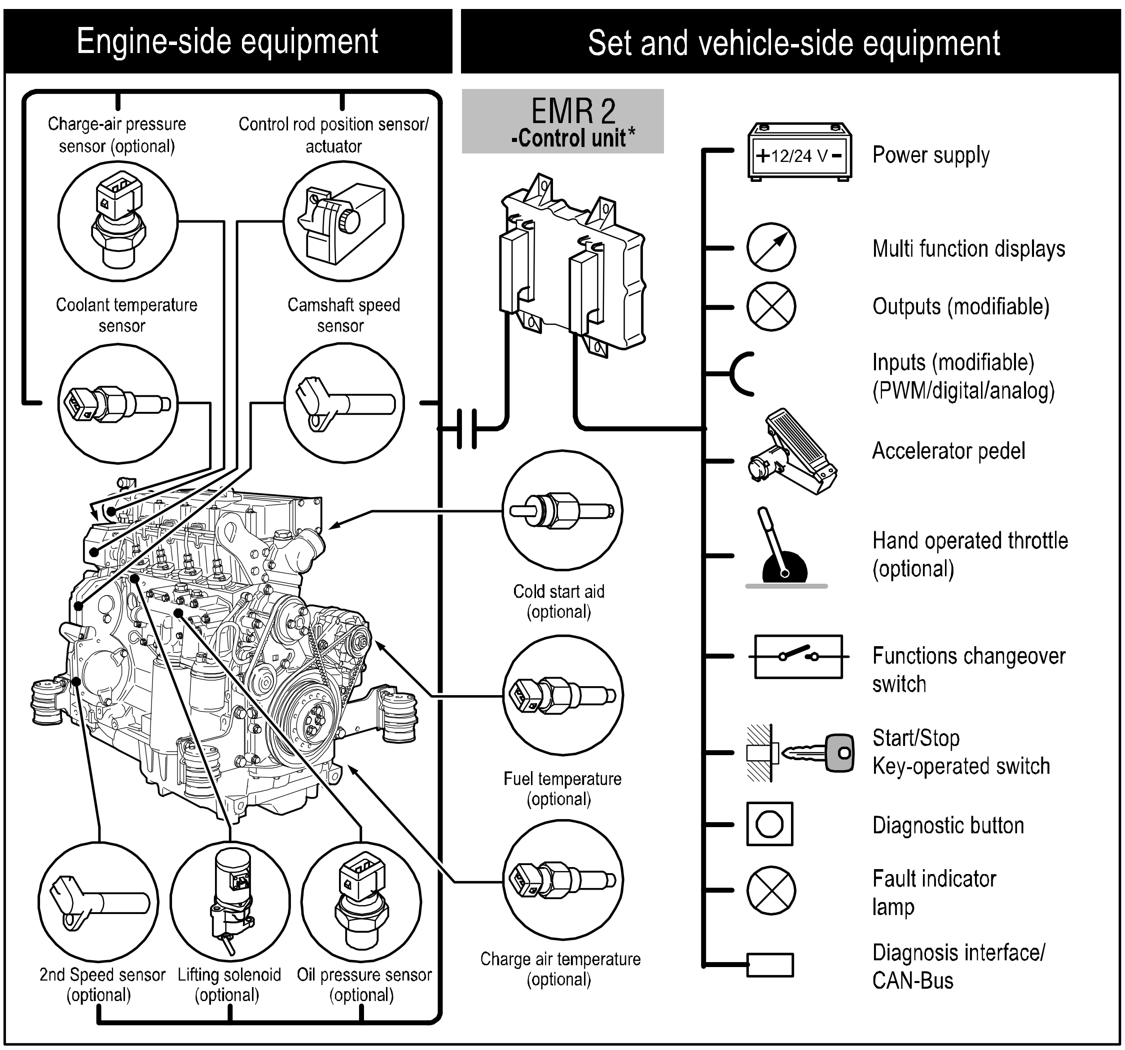


Figure 3-73. EMR 2 Engine Side Equipment

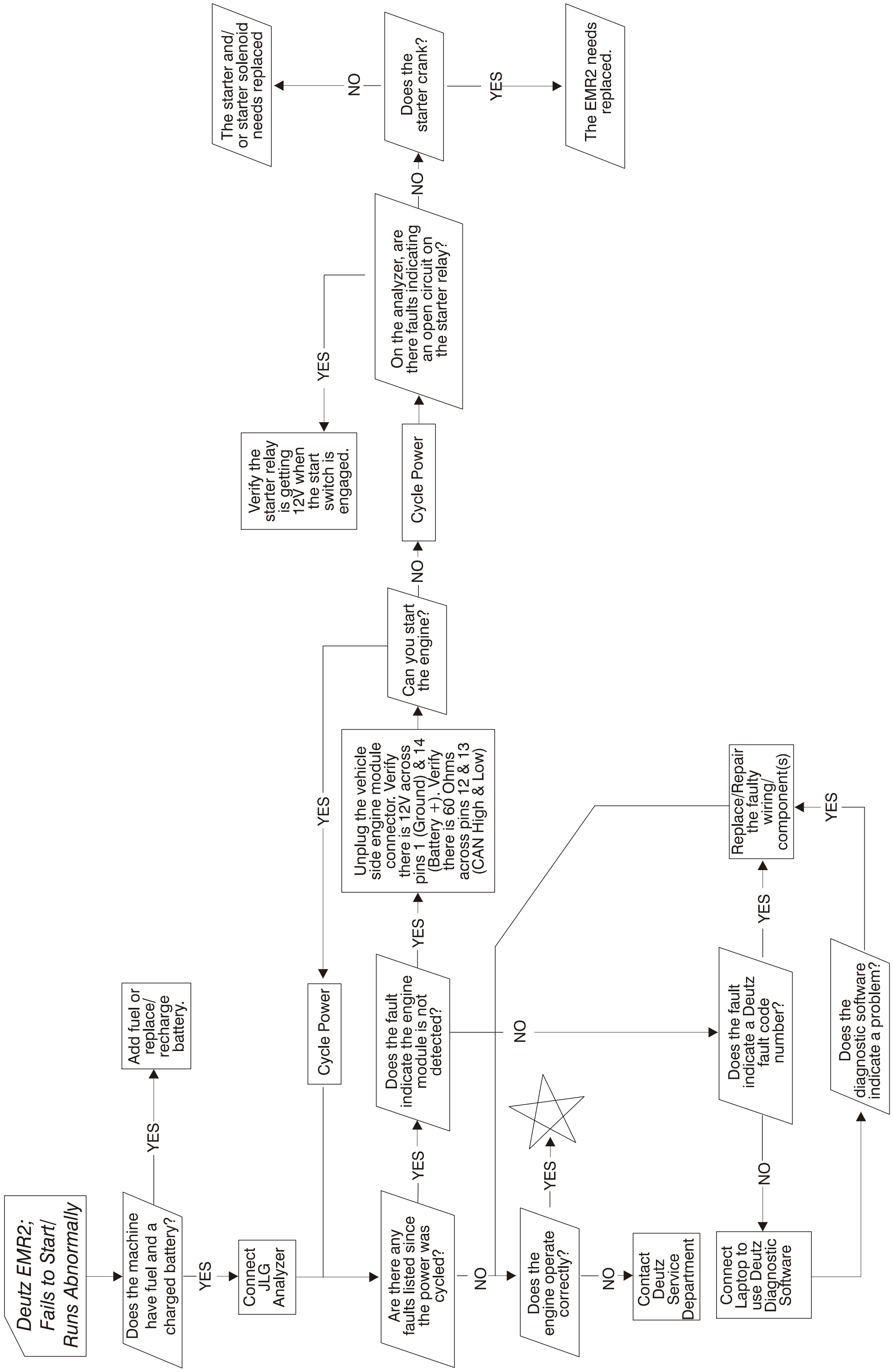


Figure 3-74. Deutz EMR 2 Troubleshooting Flow Chart

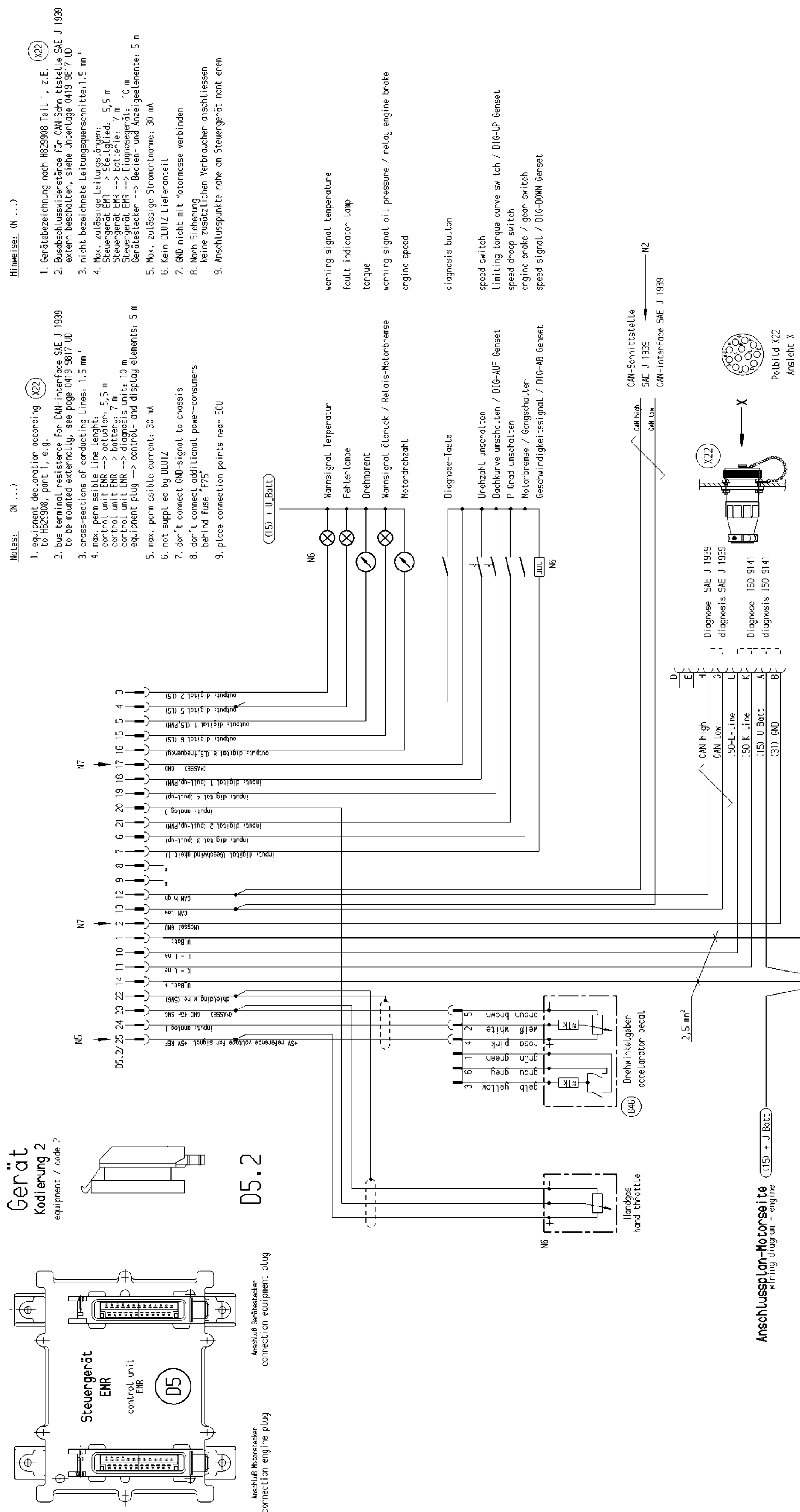


Figure 3-75. Deutz EMR 2 Vehicle Side Connection Diagram

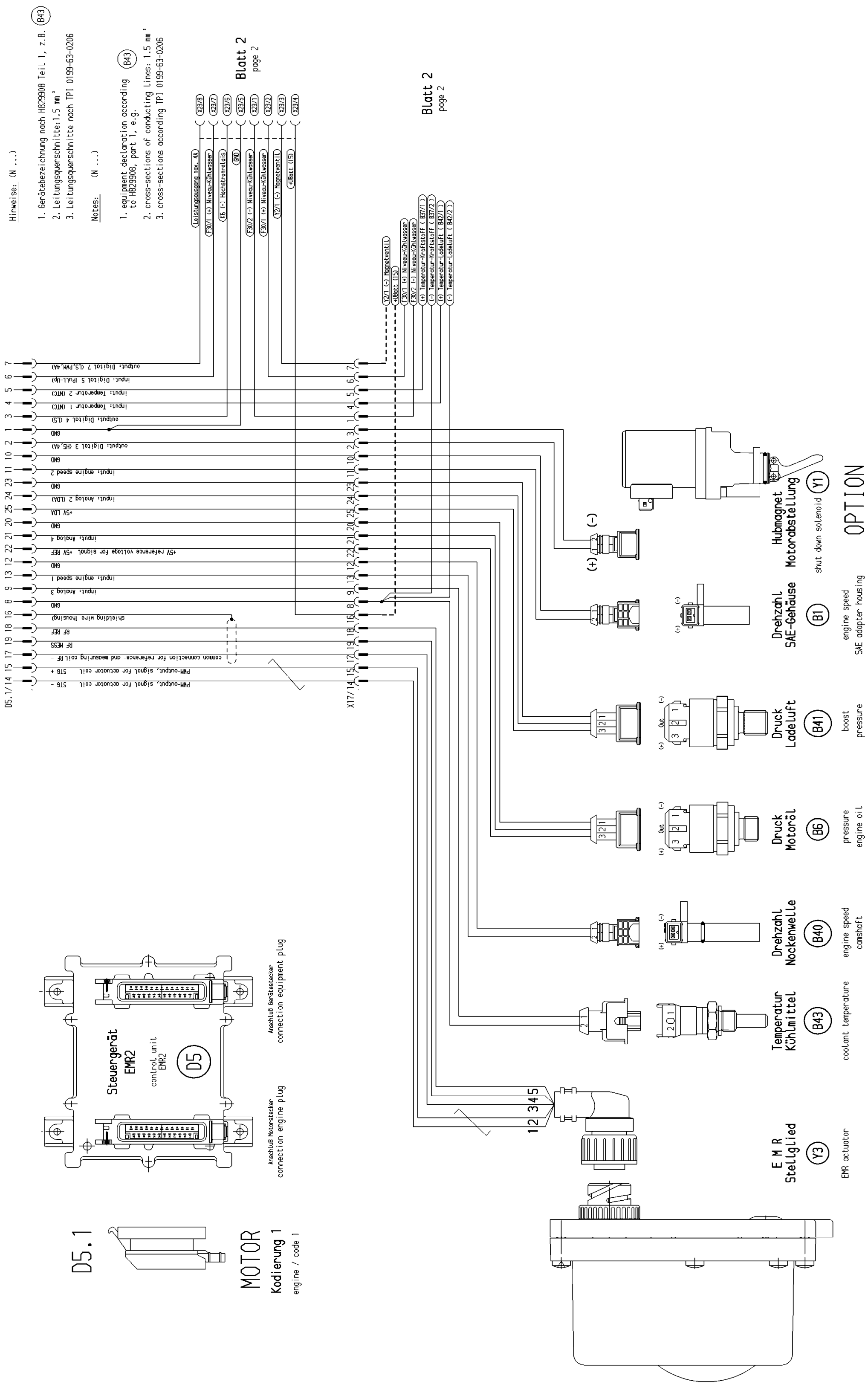


Figure 3-76. Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 1 of 2

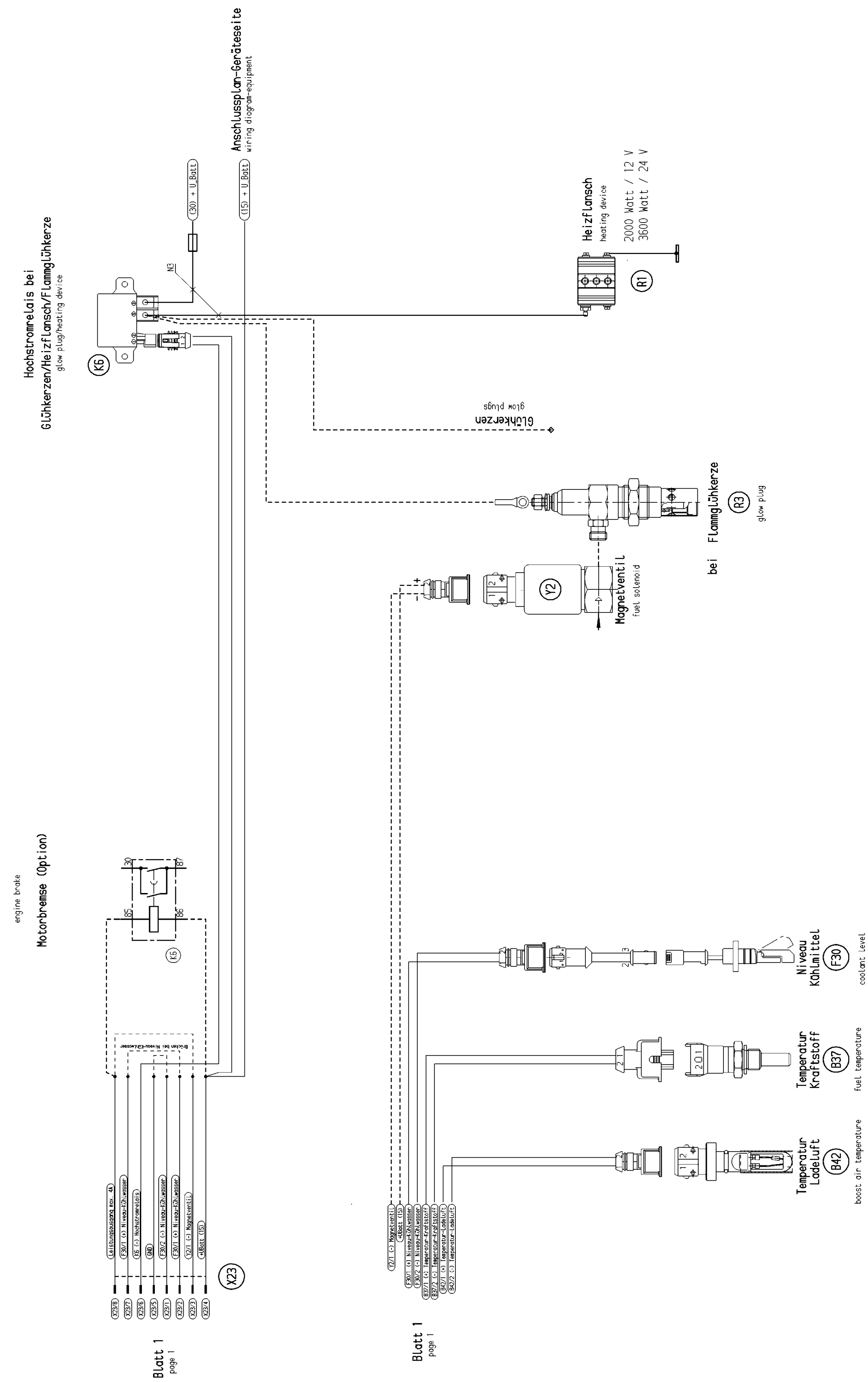
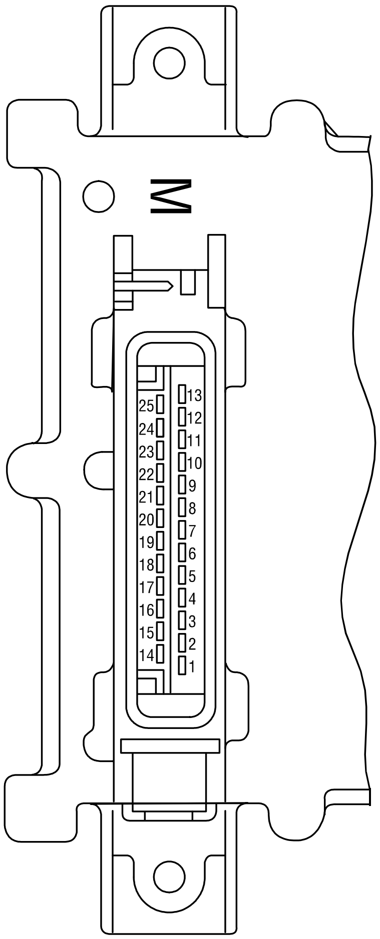


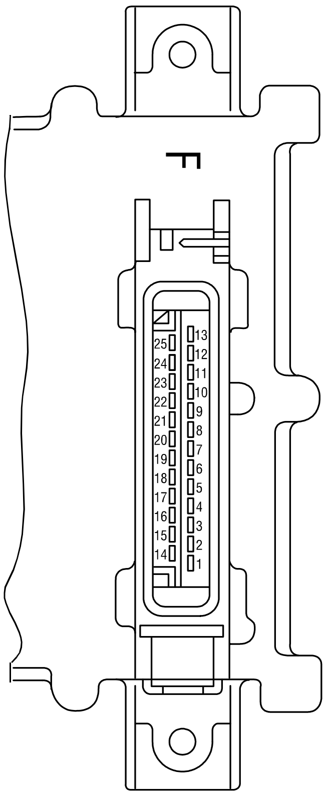
Figure 3-77. Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 2 of 2



Pin No.	Designation	Description
1	Reserve	Reserve
2	Output: digital 3	Digital output for solenoid 1)
3	Output: digital 4	For heating flange (optional)/ glow plug (optional)
4	Input (optional) Temp 1	Fuel temperature 2)
5	Input (optional) Temp 2	Charge air temperature
6	Input (optional) DigIn 5	Coolant level / oil level
7	Output: PWM2/digital 6	
8	GND	Reference potential for analog signal at pin 9
9	Input: analog 7	Analog input for Coolant temperature sensor (NTC)
10	GND	Reference potential for analog signal at pin 11
11	Multi-function input: speed 2/DigIn 2	Digital input second engine speed (crankshaft) (optional) and speed signal (optional)
12	GND	Reference potential for analog signal at pin 13
13	Input: speed 1	Digital input first engine speed (camshaft)
14	STG -	PWM output, signal for actuator coil
15	STG +	PWM output, signal for actuator coil
16	Screen	Screening regulating rod travel sensor (for lines 17, 18, 19)
17	RF -	General connection for reference and measuring coil
18	RF REF	Analog input, reference signal of the reference coil
19	RF MESS	Analog input, measuring signal of the measuring coil
20	GND	Reference potential for signal at pin 21
21	Input: analog 4/digital 9	Analog input 4 (sensor signal oil pressure sensor) or digital input 9
22	+5 V REF	+5 V Reference voltage for signal at pin 21 (max. 15 mA)
23	GND	Reference potential for signal at pin 24
24	Input: analog 2/digital 7	Analog input 2 (sensor signal charge air) or digital input 7
25	+5 V LDA	+5 V Reference potential for signal at pin 24 (max. 15 mA)

1) For continuous power: < 4 A
2) Corresponds to special function"fuel temperature compensation at the EMR (0211 2571)

Figure 3-78. EMR 2 Engine Plug Pin Identification



Pin-No.	Designation	Description
1	U Batt -	Negative pole at battery (clamp 31)
2	GND	Reference potential for signal
3	Output: digital 2	PWM or digital output, various functions
4	Input / output: DigInOut	Fault lamp and diagnostic button
5	Output: PWM 1/Dig 1	PWM or digital output, various functions
6	Multi-function input: DigIn 3	Genset applications/gear shift/motor brake
7	Input: digital 10/velocity	Speed signal (tacho input)
8	NC	Not occupied
9	NC	Not occupied
10	L-line	Serial ISO 9141 interface
11	K-line	Serial ISO 9141 interface
12	CAN high	Interface for CAN-Bus
13	CAN low	Interface for CAN-Bus
14	U Batt +	Positive pole for battery (clamp 15)
15	Output: digital 5	Digital output, various functions
16	Output: digital 7/Frequency	Frequency, PWM or digital output, various functions
17	Ground	Reference potential for signal at pins 18, 19 and 21
18	Input: digital 1 / PWM 1	PWM 1 or digital input 1, various functions
19	Multi-function input: DigIn 4	Performance curve switching/genset applications
20	Multi-function input: digital 8 / analog 3	Hand hand throttle/genset applications, Digital (8) or analog input (3)
21	Input: digital 2 / PWM 2	PWM 2 or digital input 2, various functions
22	Screen	Screening (e.g. for lines hand throttle or PWG)
23	GND	Reference potential for signal at pin 24
24	Input: analog 1 / digital 6	Analog input 1 (pedal value sensor, PWG) or digital input 6
25	+5 V REF	+5 V Reference voltage for signal at pin 24

Figure 3-79. EMR 2 Vehicle Plug Pin Identification

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Zero error display	-	No faults	524287	31	No **active** faults present		
Revolutions / speed acquisition	01	Speed sensor 1	190	8	Sensor failure. Distance from gear too far. Additional fault impulses. Cable joint interrupted.	Governor in emergency operation (if sensor 2 available). Emergency switch-off (if sensor 2 not available or failed). Governor in emergency operation (with sensor 1) Emergency switch-off (if sensor 1 not available or failed).	Check distance. Check cable connection. Check sensor and replace if required.
	03	Speed sensor	84	8	Tacho failed. Additional fault impulses. Cable connection interrupted.	Governor in emergency operation.	Check cable connection and Tacho. Replace if required.
	04	Excess speed switch-off	190	0	Speed was/is in excess of limit.e.	Engine stop.	Check parameter (21). Check speed settings.
					Check PID setting. Check rods. Check actuator and replace if required. Check cable to actuator (impulse on incorrect speed). Check No. of teeth. For vehicles check for possible thrust mode.		
Sensors	07	Charge air pressure	102	2	Fault at corresponding sensor entry (e.g. short circuit or cable break).	With failure of the sensor, the associated monitoring function is de-activated.	Check sensor cable. Check sensor and replace if required. Check fault limits for sensor.
	08	Oil pressure	100	2			
	09	Coolant temperature	110	2			
	10	Charge air temperature	105	2			
	11	Fuel temperature	174	2			

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-80. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 1 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Functional fault warning	30	Oil pressure warning	100	1	Oil pressure below speed-dependent warning line characteristic	Fault message (disappears when oil pressure is again above recovery limit). After a delay time - fill limitation.	Check engine (oil level, oil pump). Check oil pressure sensor and cable. Check oil pressure warning line characteristic.
	31	Coolant temperature warning	110	0	Coolant temperature has exceeded warning level.	Fault message (disappears when coolant temperature again drops below recovery level). After a delay time - fill limitation.	Check coolant. Check coolant temperature sensor and cable.
	32	Charge air temperature warning	105	0	Charge air temperature has exceeded warning level.	Fault message (disappears when charge air temperature gain drops below recovery level). After a delay time - fill limitation.	Check charge air. Check charge air-temperature sensor and cable.
	34	Coolant level warning	111	1	Switch input “Low coolant level” is active.	Fault message.	Check coolant level. Check coolant level sensor and cable.
	35	Speed warning (with thrust mode operation).	SID 190	14	revolutions was/is above (top) revolution speed limit. “Thrust mode” function is active.		Check parameters. Check speed settings.
					Check PID setting. Check rods. Check actuator and replace if required. Check cable to actuator. Check speed sensor (impulses on incorrect speed). Check No. of teeth. For vehicles check for possible thrust mode.		
	36	Fuel temperature warning	174	0	Fuel-temperature has exceeded warning level.	Fault message (disappears when fuel temperature again drops below recovery level).	Check fuel. Check fuel temperature sensor and cable.

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-81. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 2 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Functional fault, switch-off	42	Charge air temperature switch-off	105	0	Charge air temperature has exceeded switch-off limit.	Emergency stop	Check charge air. Check charge air-temperature sensor and cable. Check switch-off limit.
	44	Coolant level switch-off	111	1	Switch input “Low coolant level” is active.	Emergency stop. Start lock.	Check coolant level. Check coolant level sensor and cable.
Actuator	50	Feedback	SID 24	12	Actuator not connected. Fault in actuator confirmation.	Emergency switch-off. Actuator cannot be operated.	Check actuator, replace if required. Check cable, check fault limits for “Confirmation”.
	52	Reference feedback	SID 24	13			Check actuator, replace if required. Check cable, check fault limits for “Rifeness confirmation”.
	53	Control travel difference	SID 23	7	Injection pump/actuator jammed or not connected. Difference between nominal/actual control travel is > 10 % of the overall control path.	Fault message (disappears when difference is < 10 %).	Check actuator/actuator rods / injection pump, replace if required. Check actuator cable.
	59	Auto calibration BOSCH-EDC pumps faulty operation	SID 23	13	No automatic actuator equalization possible. Incorrect input of the actuator reference values.	Engine stop / start lock. Governor cannot be taken into use. EDC actuator calibration required.	Check actuator and replaced if required. Check feedback cable. Check fault limits and reference values of the feedback. Program the fault limits for feedback, save values. Switch ignition off and on again.Check again. If faulty, inform DEUTZ-Service and carry out automatic equalization again. Set fault limits again.

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-82. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 3 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Hardware inputs/ outputs	60	Digital output 3 (Switch-off solenoid, pin M 2)	SID 51	2	Fault (short circuit / cable break) at digital output.	Driver level is switched off.	Check cable of digital output (cable break or short circuit).
	62	Digital output 6, pin M 7	SID 60	2		Fault message.	
	63	Excess voltage switch-off solenoid	SID 51	6			
	67	Error Hand Setp1	91	11			
	68	Error CAN Setp1	898	2			
Communi-cation	70	CAN-Bus controller	SID 231	12	CAN-controller for CAN-bus is faulty. Fault removal despite re-initialising continuously not possible	Application-dependent.	Check CAN connection, terminating resistor (see Chapter 12.4), Check control unit.
	71	CAN interface SAE J 1939	SID 231	9	Overflow in input buffer or a transmission cannot be placed on the bus.		
	74	Cable break, short circuit or bus-error	SID 231	14			Check CAN connection, cable connection. Check sensor and replace if required.
Memory	76	Parameter programming (write EEPROM)	SID 253	12	Fault in parameter programming in the governor fixed value memory.	Emergency switch-off. engine cannot be started.	Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service
	77	Cyclic program test	SID 240	12	Constant monitoring of program memory shows error (so-called “Flash-test”).		
	78	Cyclic RAM test	SID 254	2	Constant monitoring of working memory shows error.		Note values of parameters (3895 and 3896). Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-83. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 4 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Control unit hardware	80	Power supply (Actuator)	SID 254	2	Power supply for actuator not in the permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in the normal range).	Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	83	Reference voltage 1	SID 254	2	Reference voltage for actuator not in the permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in the normal range). Auxiliary value 5 V	Check voltage supply. Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	84	Reference voltage 2	SID 254	2			
	85	Reference voltage 4	SID 254	2			
	86	Internal temperature	171	12	Internal temperature for control unit not in permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in the normal range).	Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	87	Atmospheric pressure	108	12	Atmospheric pressure not in permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in normal range). Atmospheric pressure monitoring function de-activated.	
Program logic	90	Parameter fault (EEPROM retrieval or checksum faulty).	SID 253	2	No data found or checksum of data is faulty (note: fault only occurs during setting of parameter / saving or reset.).	Engine cannot be started.	Check data for correct settings. Save parameters. Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	93	Stack overflow	SID 240	2	Internal calculation fault (so-called “Stack overflow” fault).	Emergency switch-off. Engine cannot be started.	Note parameters (3897 and 3898). Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	94	Internal fault	SID 254	2			

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-84. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 5 of 5

3.23 GM ENGINE GENERAL MAINTENANCE

Maintenance of the Drive Belt

The serpentine drive belt utilizes a spring loaded tensioner which keeps the belt properly adjusted. The drive belt is an integral part of the cooling and charging systems and should be inspected frequently.

When inspecting the belts check for:

- Cracks or breaks
- Chunking of the belt
- Splits
- Material hanging from the belt
- Glazing and hardening
- Damaged or improperly aligned pulleys
- Improperly performing tensioner

Check the belt tensioner by pressing down on the midway point of the longest stretch between pulleys. The belt should not depress beyond 1/2 in. (13 mm). If the depression is more than allowable adjust the tension.

NOTICE

THE ENGINE MANUFACTURER DOES NOT RECOMMEND THE USE OF "BELT DRESSING" OR "ANTI SLIPPING AGENTS" ON THE DRIVE BELT.

Engine Electrical System Maintenance

The engine electrical system incorporates computers and microprocessors to control the engine ignition, fuel control, and emissions. Due to the sensitivity of the computers to good electrical connections periodic inspection of the electrical wiring is necessary. When inspecting the electrical system use the following:

- Check and clean the battery terminal connections and insure the connections are tight.
- Check the battery for any cracks or damage to the case.
- Check the Positive and Negative battery cables for any corrosion build up, rubbing or chafing, check connection on the chassis to insure they are tight.
- Check the entire engine wire harness for rubbing chafing, cuts or damaged connections, repair if necessary.
- Check all wire harness connectors to insure they are fully seated and locked.
- Check ignition coil and spark plug cables for hardening, cracking, chafing, separation, split boot covers and proper fit.
- Replace spark plugs at the proper intervals as prescribed in the engine manufacturer's manual.
- Check to make sure all electrical components are fitted securely.
- Check the ground and platform control stations to insure all warning indicator lights are functioning.

Checking/Filling Engine Oil Level

NOTICE

AN OVERFILLED CRANKCASE (OIL LEVEL OVER THE SPECIFIED FULL MARK) CAN CAUSE AN OIL LEAK, A FLUCTUATION OR DROP IN THE OIL PRESSURE, AND ROCKER ARM "CLATTER" IN THE ENGINE.

NOTICE

CARE MUST BE TAKEN WHEN CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL. OIL LEVEL MUST BE MAINTAINED BETWEEN THE "ADD" MARK AND "FULL" MARK ON THE DIPSTICK.

To ensure that you are not getting a false reading, make sure the following steps are taken to before check the oil level.

1. Stop the engine if in use.
2. Allow sufficient time (approximately 5 minutes) for the oil to drain back into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick. Wipe with a clean cloth or paper towel and reinstall. Push the dipstick all the way into the dipstick tube.
4. Remove the dipstick and note the oil level.
5. Oil level must be between the "FULL" and "ADD" marks.

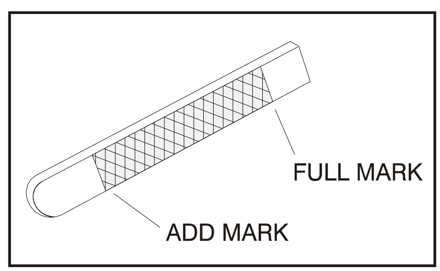


Figure 3-85. Engine Oil Dip Stick

6. If the oil level is below the "ADD" mark, proceed to Step 7 and 8 and reinstall the dipstick into the dipstick tube.
7. Remove the oil filter cap from the valve rocker arm cover.
8. Add the required amount of oil to bring the level up to but not over "FULL" mark on the dipstick.
9. Reinstall the oil fill cap to the valve rocker cover and wipe away any excess oil.

Changing the Engine Oil

NOTICE

WHEN CHANGING THE OIL, ALWAYS CHANGE THE OIL FILTER. CHANGE OIL WHEN THE ENGINE IS WARM FROM OPERATION AS THE OILS WILL FLOW FREELY AND CARRY AWAY MORE IMPURITIES.

To change the oil use the following steps:

1. Start the engine and run until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Remove the drain plug and allow the oil to drain.
4. Remove and discard the oil filter and its sealing ring.
5. Coat the sealing ring on the filter with clean engine oil and wipe the sealing surface on the filter mounting surface to remove any dust, dirt and debris. Tighten the filter securely (follow the filter manufacturers instructions). Do not over tighten.
6. Check the sealing ring on drain plug for any damage, replace if necessary, wipe the plug with a clean rag, and wipe the sealing surface on the pan and reinstall the pan plug. Do not over tighten.
7. Fill the crankcase with oil.
8. Start the engine and check for oil leaks.
9. Stop the engine and check the oil level to insure the oil level is at "FULL".
10. Dispose of the oil and filter in a safe manner.

Coolant Fill Procedure - Dual Fuel Engine

NOTICE

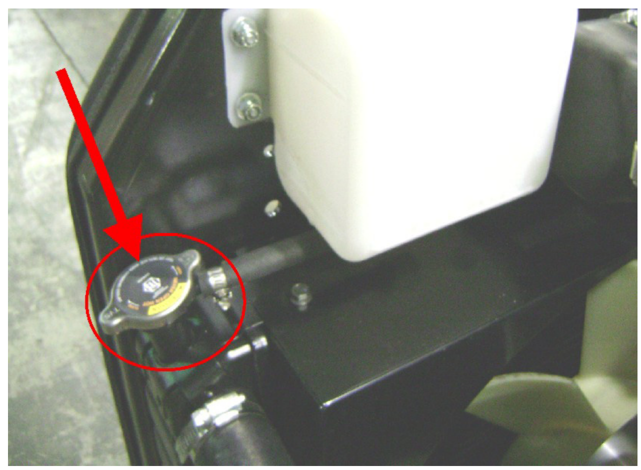
DAMAGE TO THE ENGINE COULD OCCUR IF NOT PROPERLY FILLED WITH COOLANT. LPG FUELED ENGINES ARE MOST PRONE TO CREATING AN AIR LOCK DURING A COOLANT FILL OPERATION DUE TO THE ELECTRONIC PRESSURE REGULATOR (EPR) BEING THE HIGHEST POINT IN THE COOLING SYSTEM. AN EPR THAT APPEARS TO HAVE FROST FORMING ON IT IS A SIGN THAT THE ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM CONTAINS AIR. THE APPEARANCE AND TEMPERATURE OF THE EPR SHOULD BE MONITORED DURING THE COOLANT FILL OPERATION. A WARM EPR IS AN INDICATION THAT THE COOLING SYSTEM IS PROPERLY FILLED AND FUNCTIONING.

CAUTION

MAKE SURE ENGINE IS COOL BEFORE PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE WORK.

1. Loosen the worm gear clamp on the coolant line running into the EPR as shown below and remove the hose from the EPR. Place a rag under the hose to prevent coolant from running onto the engine/machine.

2. Remove the radiator cap. Fill the radiator with coolant until coolant starts to appear from the previously removed hose at the EPR. Reinstall the hose back onto the EPR and continue to fill radiator with coolant.



3. With the radiator cap still removed, start the engine and run until the thermostat opens. The thermostat opens at 170° F (77° C), which can be checked using the JLG handheld analyzer.

NOTICE

WHILE ENGINE IS RUNNING, AIR AND/OR STEAM MAY BE PRESENT COMING FROM THE RADIATOR. THIS IS NORMAL.

4. After running the engine for 5 minutes after it has reached operating temperature, shut the engine off and continue to step 5.

CAUTION

WITH THE ENGINE RUNNING OR WHEN SHUTTING OFF THE ENGINE, SOME HEATED COOLANT MAY SPILL OUT DUE TO AIR "BURPING" OUT OF THE SYSTEM WITH THE RADIATOR CAP OFF.

5. Next, verify that the 2 coolant hoses on the EPR are warm. If they are not warm repeat step 3 and 4, otherwise continue to step 6.

NOTICE

A PROPERLY PURGED COOLING SYSTEM WILL YIELD A WARM UPPER RADIATOR HOSE AND A WARM EPR HOSE. IF THE UPPER RADIATOR HOSE AND/OR EPR HOSE ARE NOT WARM TO THE TOUCH AFTER THE ENGINE HAS RUN FOR 5-8 MINUTES AFTER REACHING OPERATING TEMPERATURE, THE SYSTEM MAY STILL CONTAIN AIR. IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO REPEAT THE ABOVE STEPS.

6. Fill radiator with coolant as needed and install the radiator cap. Next, remove the cap off the coolant recovery bottle and fill just below the HOT FULL line and reinstall the caps.

3.24 GM ENGINE DUAL FUEL SYSTEM

NOTE: *+20° F (-6.6° C) is the low temperature limit for LP gas, for both starting and operation. This applies to all LP gas powered engines.*

The Dual Fuel system allows the operator to operate the vehicle on either gasoline or LPG by positioning a selector switch in the operator's platform. When the operator places the selector switch in the gasoline mode the gasoline fuel pump is energized. While in the gasoline mode the LPG fuel lock-off is isolated and will not energize. In addition the gasoline injector circuit is enabled and injector pulses are provided to each injector and the ECM calibration for gasoline is also enabled. When the operator selects the LPG mode the Low Pressure LPG lock-off is energized and fuel from the LPG tank flows to the Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR). The EPR receives an electronic signal to position the secondary lever for the start or run positions and when the engine begins to crank the mixer air valve will rise and fuel will begin flowing to engine. During this mode the gasoline fuel pump is isolated and will not be activated. The primary components of the gasoline dual fuel system are the gasoline tank, electric fuel pump and filter, fuel supply line, injector rail and injectors and the fuel pressure regulator. The primary components of the LPG dual fuel system are the LPG fuel tank, in-fuel filter, LPG Low Pressure lock-off, Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR) and the fuel mixer module. The LPG fuel system operates at pressures which range from 14.0 in. (355.60 mm) of water column up to 312 psi (21.5 bar).

Components which are shared by both systems include the Electronic Throttle Control and the ECM. The ECM contains a dual calibration; one controls the gasoline fuel system during gasoline operation and one controls the LPG fuel system during LPG operation.

Fuel Filter

Propane fuel like all other motor fuels is subject to contamination from outside sources. Refueling of the equipment's tank and removal of the tank from the equipment can inadvertently introduce dirt and other foreign matter into the fuel system. It is therefore necessary to filter the fuel prior to entering the fuel system components downstream of the tank. An inline fuel filter has been installed in the fuel system to remove the dirt and foreign matter from the fuel. The inline filter is replaceable as a unit only. Maintenance of the filter is critical to proper operation of the fuel system and should be replaced as Section 1. In severe operating condition more frequent replacement of the filter may be necessary.

Electric Lock Off

The Electric Lock Off device is an integrated assembly. When energized the solenoid opens the valve and allows the Propane fuel to flow through the device. The valve opens during cranking and run cycles of the engine. The lock off supply voltage is controlled by the engine control module (ECM).

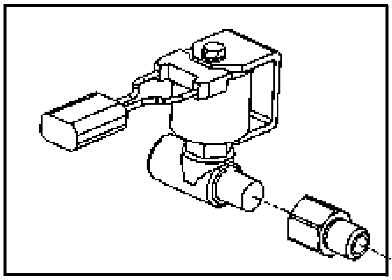
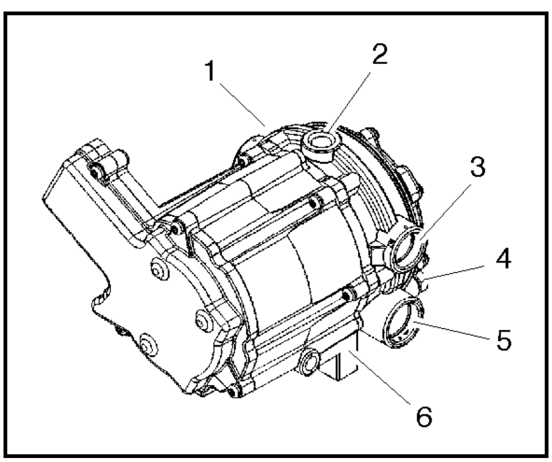


Figure 3-86. Electric Fuel Lock Off

EPR Assembly

The EPR assembly is a combination Low Pressure Regulator and a Voice Coil Assembly. The Voice coil is an electronic actuator which is controlled by an internal microprocessor. The microprocessor provides output data to the ECM and receives input data over a CAN BUS connection. The internal microprocessor receives electrical signals from the Fuel Pressure Sensor FPS and the Fuel Temperature Pressure FTP and communicates the data to the ECM. The ECM uses the FPS and FTP data to calculate the location of the secondary lever in the LPR and sends that data back to the EPR via the CAN BUS. The internal microprocessor in the EPR will then output a signal, which causes the voice coil to move and position the secondary lever to the correct location.



1. Pressure Regulator Section
2. Fuel Inlet
3. Coolant Passage
4. Primary Test Port
5. Secondary Test Port
6. Voice Coil Section

Figure 3-87. EPR Assembly

Low Pressure Regulator (LPR)

The LPR is a combination vaporizer, pressure regulating device. The LPR is a negative pressure, two stage regulator that is normally closed when the engine is not running. When the engine is cranking or running, a partial vacuum is created in the fuel line which connects the regulator to the mixer. This partial vacuum opens the regulator permitting fuel to flow to the mixer.

Propane fuel enters the primary port of the LPR and passes through the primary jet and into the primary/ exchanger chamber. As the propane passes through the heat exchanger the fuel expands and creates pressure inside the chamber. The pressure rises as the fuel expands when the pressure rises above 1.5 psi (10.34 kpa), sufficient pressure is exerted on the primary diaphragm to cause the diaphragm plate to pivot and press against the primary valve pin thus closing off the flow of fuel. This action causes the flow of fuel into the regulator to be regulated.

When the engine is cranking, sufficient vacuum will be introduced into the secondary chamber from the mixer drawing the secondary diaphragm down onto the spring loaded lever and opening the secondary valve allowing vaporized fuel to pass to the mixer. This mechanical action in conjunction with the EPR reactions causes the downward action on the secondary lever causing it to open wider allowing more fuel to flow to the mixer.

⚠ WARNING

THE VOICE COIL SECTION OF THE EPR ASSEMBLY IS AN EMISSIONS CONTROL DEVICE AND CANNOT BE REBUILT. IF THE COIL ASSEMBLY FAILS TO OPERATE PROPERLY, REPLACE IT WITH AN OEM REPLACEMENT PART ONLY.

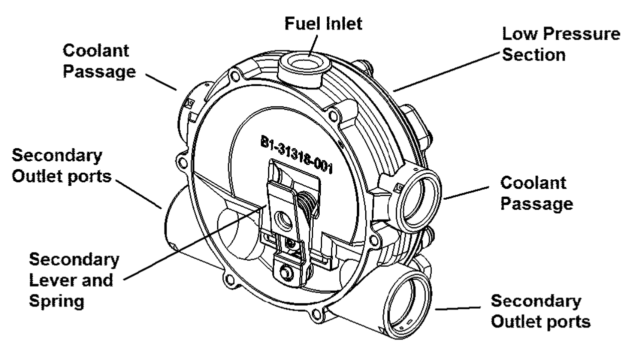


Figure 3-88. Low Pressure Regulators

Air Fuel Mixer

The air valve mixer is an air-fuel metering device and is completely self-contained. The mixer is an air valve design, utilizing a relatively constant pressure drop to draw fuel into the mixer from cranking to full load. The mixer is mounted in the air stream ahead of the throttle control device.

When the engine begins to crank, it draws in air with the air valve covering the inlet, negative pressure begins to build. This negative pressure signal is communicated to the top of the air valve chamber through 4 vacuum ports in the air valve assembly. A pressure/force imbalance begins to build across the air valve diaphragm between the air valve vacuum chamber and the atmospheric pressure below the diaphragm. The air valve vacuum spring is calibrated to generate from 4.0 in. (101.6 mm) of water column at start to as high as 14.0 in. (355.60 mm) of water column at full throttle. The vacuum being created is referred to as Air Valve Vacuum (AVV). As the air valve vacuum reaches 4.0 in. (101.6 mm) of water column, the air valve begins to lift against the air valve spring. The amount of AVV generated is a direct result of the throttle position. At low engine speed the air valve vacuum is low and the air valve position is low thus creating a small venturi for the fuel to flow. As the engine speed increase the AVV increases and the air valve is lifted higher thus creating a much larger venturi. This air valve vacuum is communicated from the mixer venture to the LPR secondary chamber via the low pressure fuel supply hose. As the AVV increases in the secondary chamber the secondary diaphragm is drawn further down forcing the secondary valve lever to open wider.

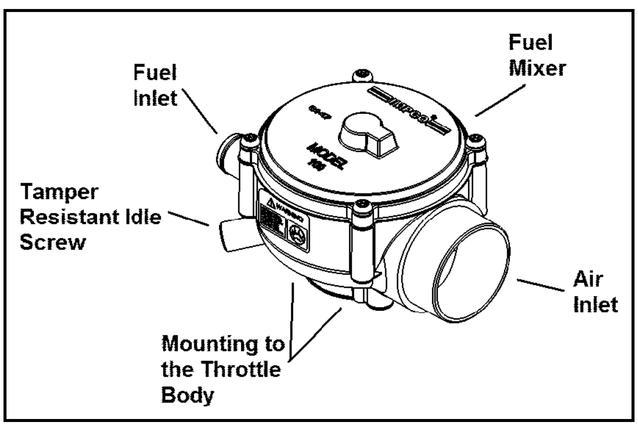


Figure 3-89. Air Fuel Mixer

Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)

Engine speed and load control is maintained by an ETC device. Speed and load control are determined by the ECM. Defaults programmed into the ECM software and throttle position sensors allow the ECM to maintain safe operating control over the engine. The Electronic Throttle Control device or "throttle body assembly" is connected to the intake manifold of the engine. The electronic throttle control device utilizes an electric motor connected to the throttle shaft. When the engine is running electrical signals are sent from the equipment controls to the engine ECM when the operator depresses an equipment function switch. The ECM then sends an electrical signal to the motor on the electronic throttle control to increase or decrease the angle of the throttle blade thus increasing or decreasing the air/fuel flow to the engine.

The electronic throttle control device also incorporates two internal Throttle Position Sensors (TPS) which provide output signals to the ECM as to the location of the throttle shaft and blade. The TPS information is used by the ECM to correct speed and load control as well as emission control.

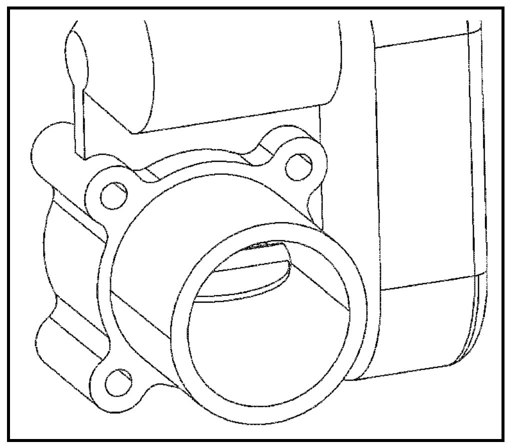


Figure 3-90. ETC throttle control device

Engine Control Module

To obtain maximum effect from the catalyst and accurate control of the air fuel ratio the emission certified engine is equipped with an onboard computer or Engine Control Unit (ECM). The ECM is a 32 bit controller which receives input data from sensors fitted to the engine and fuel system and then outputs various signals to control engine operation.

One specific function of the controller is to maintain "closed loop fuel control". Closed loop fuel control is accomplished when the exhaust gas oxygen sensor (HEGO) mounted in the exhaust system sends a voltage signal to the controller. The controller then calculates any correction that may need to be made to the air fuel ratio. The controller then outputs signals to the EPR to correct the amount of fuel being supplied to the mixer. At the same time the ECM may correct the throttle blade position to correct speed and load of the engine.

The controller also performs diagnostic functions on the fuel system and notifies the operator of malfunctions by turning on a Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) mounted in the Ground Control Station and the Platform Control Station. Malfunctions in the system are identified by a Diagnostic Code number. In addition to notifying the operator of the malfunction in the system the controller also stores the information about the malfunction in its memory.

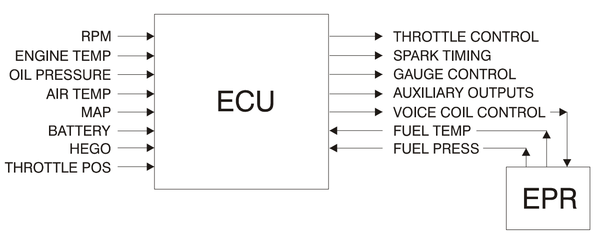


Figure 3-91. LPG Engine Control Unit (ECM)

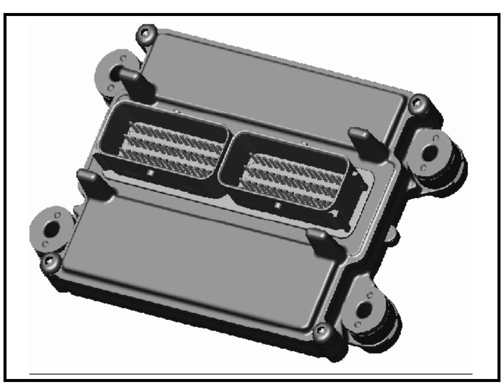


Figure 3-92. ECM Assembly

Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor

There are two Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensors (HEGO). The first HEGO is mounted in the exhaust system downstream of the engine. It is used to measure the amount of oxygen present in the exhaust stream and communicate that to the ECM via an electrical signal. The amount of oxygen present in the exhaust stream indicates whether the fuel/air ratio is too rich or too lean. If the HEGO sensor signal indicates that the exhaust stream is too rich the ECM will decrease or lean the fuel mixture during engine operation, if the mixture is too lean the ECM will richen the mixture. The ECM continuously monitors the HEGO sensor output. If a rich or lean condition is present for an extended period of time, and the ECM cannot correct the condition, the ECM will set a diagnostic code and turn on the MIL light in control box.

The second HEGO is mounted in the exhaust system after the muffler. It measures the amount of oxygen in the exhaust system after the catalyst treatment has been completed in the muffler. If the ECM detects that the catalytic action in the muffler is not sufficient and fuel correction cannot correct the malfunction the MIL light is illuminated in the control box and a DTC code will stored in the computer.

NOTICE

THE HEATED EXHAUST GAS OXYGEN SENSOR IS AN EMISSION CONTROL DEVICE. IF THE HEGO FAILS TO OPERATE, REPLACE IT WITH AN OEM REPLACEMENT PART. THE HEGO SENSOR IS SENSITIVE TO SILICONE OR SILICONE BASED PRODUCTS AND CAN BECOME CONTAMINATED. AVOID USING SILICONE SEALERS OR HOSES TREATED WITH SILICONE LUBRICANTS IN THE AIR STREAM OR FUEL LINES.

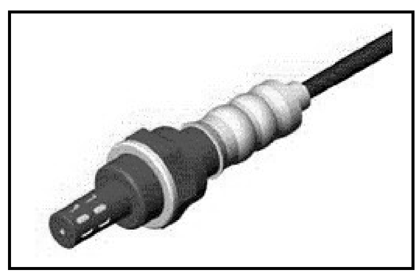


Figure 3-93. Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO)

Gasoline Multi Point Fuel Injection System (MPFI)

The primary components of the Gasoline Multi Point Fuel Injection (MPFI) fuel system are the fuel tank, electric fuel pump, fuel pressure and temperature sensor manifold, fuel filter and fuel rail.

Gasoline Fuel Pump

The Gasoline is stored as a liquid in the fuel tank and in drawn into the fuel system by an electric fuel pump. The fuel pump will receive a signal from the ECM to prime the fuel system for approximately 2 seconds prior to start. Priming of the fuel system provides for a quicker start, when the engine begins to crank.

Gasoline Pressure And Temperature Sensor Manifold

This engine is equipped with a fuel injector rail that does not have a pressure regulator or a return circuit to the fuel tank. Fuel pressure for this engine is regulated by the engine's ECM. The ECM receive fuel pressure and temperature feedback from the gasoline fuel sensor manifold and uses this information to control the ground side of the fuel pump. Fuel pressure is regulated by the ECM pulse width modulating (PWM) the fuel pump. The fuel pressure and temperature sensor manifold has a return or "bleed" circuit that connects back to the fuel tank. This circuit is used to bleed off any vapor that develops in the line and return a small amount of fuel to the tank. The fuel comes from the fuel tank and passes through the fuel pump. Fuel exits the fuel pump, passes through the filter and then enters the fuel pressure and temperature manifold assembly. Fuel flows through the feed circuit and is delivered to the fuel injector rail. Fuel that enters the bleed circuits through they bypass valve in the manifold is returned to the fuel tank.

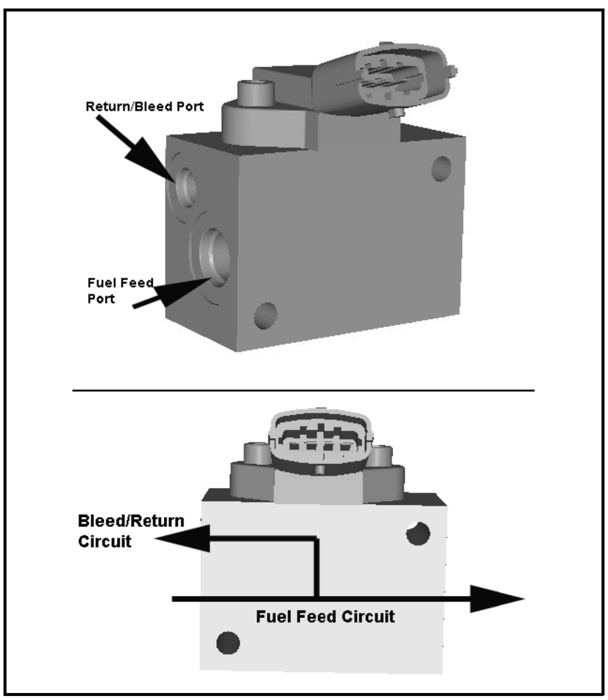


Figure 3-94. Gasoline Fuel Pressure and Temperature Manifold Assembly

Fuel Filter

After the fuel is drawn into the fuel pump, the fuel flows through the gasoline fuel filter. The fuel filter will trap small particles as the fuel passes through the filter to remove debris and prevents the fuel pressure and temperature manifold and fuel injectors from becoming damaged. Maintenance of the fuel filter is required as indicated in Section 1.

Fuel Injector Rail

Fuel flows from the fuel pressure and temperature manifold assembly to the fuel rails where the fuel is delivered to the fuel injectors. The fuel rail also contains a Schrader valve which is utilized to test the regulated pressure of the fuel system.

Fuel Injector

The fuel supply is maintained on the top of the injector from the injector rail. The injector is fed a "pulse" signal through the wire harness which causes the injector to open. During regular operating conditions the ECM controls the opening and duration of opening of the injector. During lower RPM operation the injector signals or "pulses" are less frequent then when the engine is operating at higher RPMs. The engine has been calibrated to deliver the precise amount of fuel for optimum performance and emission control.

3.25 GM ENGINE FUEL SYSTEM REPAIR

Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief

CAUTION

THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM OPERATES AT PRESSURES UP TO 312 PSI (21.5 BAR). TO MINIMIZE THE RISK OF FIRE AND PERSONAL INJURY, RELIEVE THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE (WHERE APPLICABLE) BEFORE SERVICING THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM COMPONENTS.

To relieve propane fuel system pressure:

1. Close the manual shut-off valve on the propane fuel tank.
2. Start and run the vehicle until the engine stalls.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

NOTICE

RESIDUAL VAPOR PRESSURE WILL BE PRESENT IN THE FUEL SYSTEM. ENSURE THE WORK AREA IS WELL VENTILATED BEFORE DISCONNECTING ANY FUEL LINE.

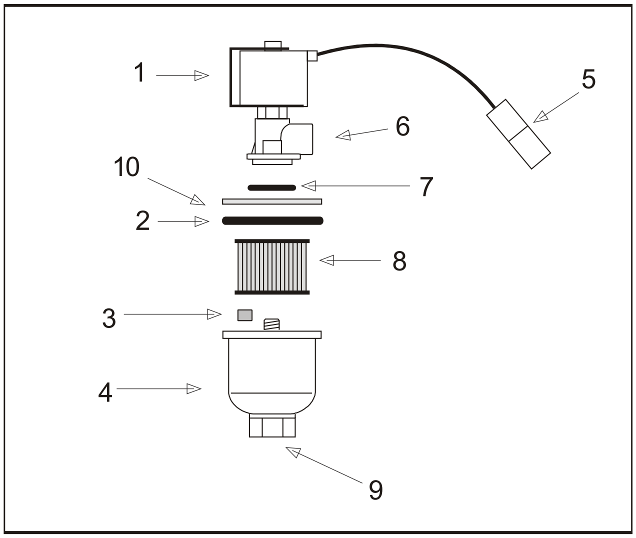
Propane Fuel System Leak Test

CAUTION

NEVER USE AN OPEN FLAME OF ANY TYPE TO CHECK FOR PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM LEAKS.

Always inspect the propane fuel system for leaks after performing service. Check for leaks at the fittings of the serviced or replaced component. Use a commercially available liquid leak detector or an electronic leak detector. When using both methods, use the electronic leak detector first to avoid contamination by the liquid leak detector.

Propane Fuel Filter Replacement



1. Electric Lock Off Solenoid
2. Housing Seal
3. Filter Magnet
4. Filter Housing
5. Electrical Connector
6. Fuel Outlet
7. O-ring
8. Filter
9. Fuel Inlet
10. Ring

Figure 3-95. Filter Lock Assembly

REMOVAL

1. Relieve the propane fuel system pressure. Refer to Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Slowly loosen the Filter housing and remove it.
4. Pull the filter housing from the Electric lock off assembly.
5. Remove the filter from the housing.
6. Locate Filter magnet and remove it.
7. Remove and discard the housing seal.
8. If equipped, remove and discard the retaining bolt seal.
9. Remove and discard mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.

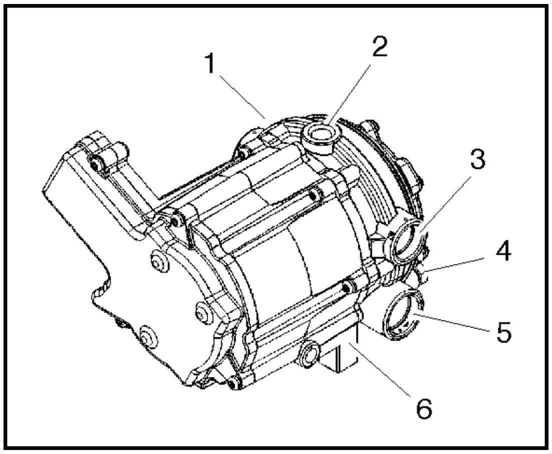
INSTALLATION

NOTICE

BE SURE TO REINSTALL THE FILTER MAGNET INTO THE HOUSING BEFORE INSTALLING NEW SEAL

1. Install the mounting plate to lock off o-ring seal.
2. If equipped, install the retaining bolt seal.
3. Install the housing seal.
4. Drop the magnet into the bottom of the filter housing.
5. Install the filter into the housing.
6. If equipped, install the retaining bolt into the filter housing.
7. Install the filter up to the bottom of the electric lock off.
8. Tighten the filter bowl retainer to 106 in. lbs. (12 Nm).
9. Open manual shut-off valve. Start the vehicle and leak check the propane fuel system at each serviced fitting. Refer to Propane Fuel System Leak Test.

Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR) Assembly Replacement



1. Pressure Regulator Section
2. Fuel Inlet
3. Coolant Passage
4. Primary Test Port
5. Secondary Test Port
6. Voice Coil Section

Figure 3-96. EPR Assembly

The EPR assembly is a made up of two separate components. The Voice Coil Section is not serviceable and can only be replaced as an assembly. The pressure regulator section is serviceable and will be detailed in this section.

REMOVAL

1. Relieve the propane fuel system pressure. Refer to Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Slowly remove the fuel inlet fitting at the Electric Lock Off.

NOTE: *Residual vapor pressure will be present in the fuel system.*

4. Disconnect the electrical connector to the Electric Lock off.
5. Remove the Electric Lock Off from the regulator.
6. Remove the lock pin from the vapor fitting on the regulator housing and remove the fitting and hose and retain the pin.
7. Remove the lock pin from the pressure sensor on the regulator housing and remove the Sensor and retain the pin.
8. Using a clamp pliers pinch off the hoses on the coolant lines to the regulator.
9. Remove the lock pin from both the water fittings on the regulator housing and remove the fittings and hoses and retain the pin.
10. Disconnect the EPR electrical connector.
11. Remove the (3) three nuts from the EPR isolators and the EPR mounting bracket.
12. Remove the EPR from the bracket.
13. Remove the (3) three mounting isolators.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

DO NOT USE TEFLON TAPE ON ANY FUEL FITTING. USE A LIQUID PIPE THREAD SEALANT WHEN INSTALLING FITTINGS.

CHECK ALL THE O-RINGS ON THE VAPOR AND WATER FITTINGS FOR ANY DAMAGE REPLACE IF NECESSARY.

LUBE ALL THE O-RINGS WITH AN O-RING LUBE BEFORE INSTALLING.

1. Install the three (3) rubber isolators to the bottom of the EPR
2. Install the EPR assembly to the bracket and tighten the retaining nuts.

NOTE: *Do not over tighten the isolators and cause a separation of the isolators.*

3. Install the fuel temperature sensor into the regulator opening and lock in place with the locking pin, connect the electrical connector.
4. Insert the fuel vapor line and fitting into the regulator port and lock in place with the locking pin.
5. Install both the water hoses and fittings into the regulator and lock in place with the locking pin remove the clamp pliers from the hoses.
6. Install the electric lock off into the regulator inlet and tighten into proper location, connect the electrical connector.
7. Connect the fuel supply line and tighten until fully seated.
8. Connect the EPR electrical connector.
9. Open the manual valve.
10. Start the vehicle and leak check the propane fuel system at each serviced fitting Refer to Propane Fuel System Leak Test.

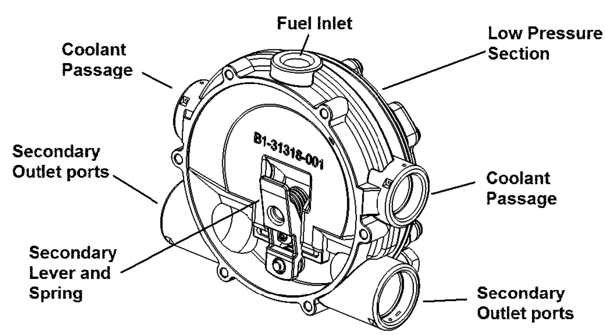


Figure 3-97. Pressure Regulator Section

PRESSURE REGULATOR SECTION REMOVAL

1. Remove the EPR refer to EPR Removal Procedure.
2. Remove the six (6) regulator to voice coil screws using the special tool and separate the regulator from the actuator.

NOTICE

DO NOT REMOVE THE SECONDARY DIAPHRAGM RETAINING PLATE AND DIAPHRAGM THIS WILL VOID THE WARRANTY OF THE ACTUATOR SECTION.

PRESSURE REGULATOR SECTION INSTALLATION

1. Install the regulator to the actuator section using the six (6) retaining screws and tighten 70 in. lbs. (8 Nm).
2. Install the EPR refer to EPR Installation.

Temperature Manifold Absolute Pressure (TMAP) Sensor

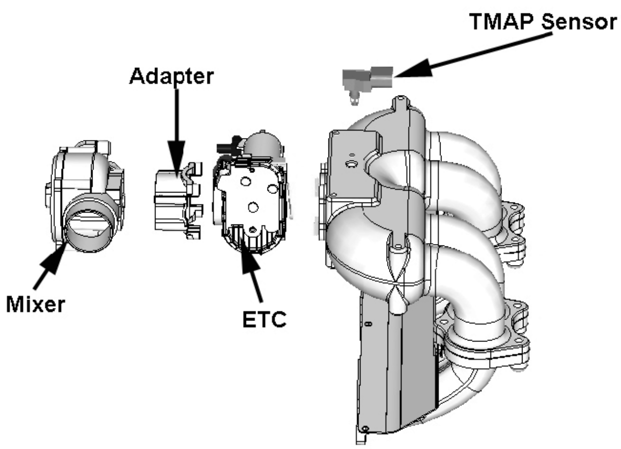


Figure 3-98. (TMAP) Sensor & Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect the TMAP electrical connector.
2. Remove the two retaining bolts.
3. Remove the TMAP.

INSTALLATION

NOTE: *Apply a small amount of O-ring lubricant before installation.*

1. Install in the TMAP.
2. Tighten retaining bolts to 62 in. lbs. (7 Nm).

Start the vehicle and check for proper operation.

Electronic Throttle Control Replacement

See Figure 3-98.

REMOVAL

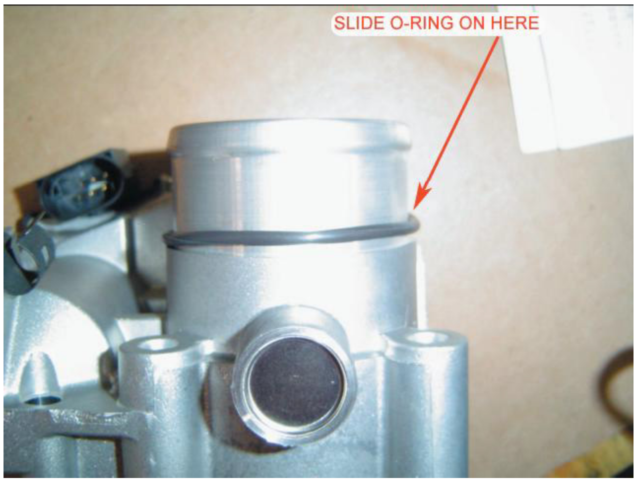
1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the air intake duct.
3. Release the hose clamp on the vapor fuel line and remove the vapor hose.
4. Disconnect the TMAP electrical connector.
5. Disconnect the electronic throttle control connector.
6. Remove the manifold to throttle body adapter bolts and remove the throttle body mixer assembly.
7. Pull the throttle body assembly from the adapter.
8. Remove electronic throttle control device.
9. Remove the o-rings gasket and discard.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

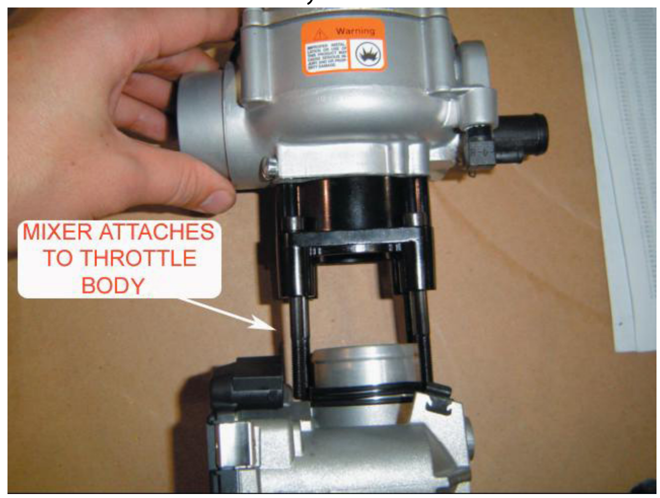
LIGHTLY LUBRICATE BOTH THROTTLE CONTROL DEVICE TO ADAPTER O-RINGS.

1. Install the o-ring on throttle body. Press it down to the bottom of the surface.



2. Install the two quad seals. Install one seal at a time to insure the seal does not roll. The seal must sit flat on the throttle body.

3. Attach mixer and throttle body together. The two parts do not bolt together; they will be secured when you mount it on the intake. Notice the orientation of the air inlet and throttle body cover.



4. Place gasket on intake manifold and attach mixer/throttle assembly to manifold.

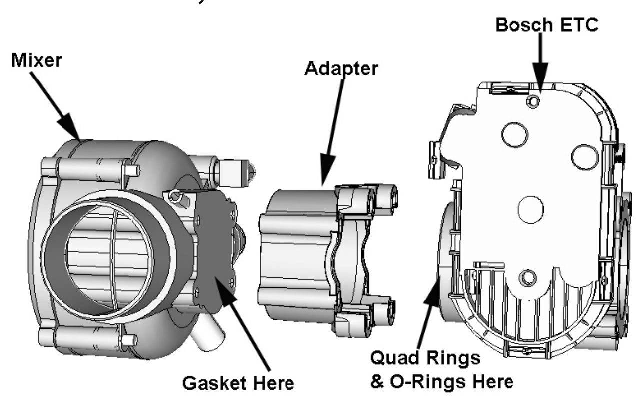


Figure 3-99. Mixer Assembly

Mixer Replacement

See Figure 3-99.

REMOVAL

1. Remove the throttle control device Refer to Electronic Throttle Body Replacement.
2. Remove the four (4) bolts to the throttle control device to mixer adapter bolts.
3. Remove and discard the mixer to adapter gasket.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

COVER THROTTLE BODY ADAPTER OPENING TO PREVENT DEBRIS FROM ENTERING ENGINE UNTIL REASSEMBLY.

1. Install mixer to adapter gasket onto the mixer.
2. Install the mixer to the throttle control device to mixer adapter and secure with the 4 retaining screws. Tighten 80 in. lbs. (9 Nm).
3. Install throttle body. Refer to "Electronic Throttle Control Replacement".
4. Start the engine and leak check all fittings and connections.

Coolant Hose Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Drain the coolant.
2. Using hose clamp pliers, disconnect both hose clamps on each hose.
3. Remove the hose from each of the fittings.

INSTALLATION

NOTE: *Use hose material and lengths specified by JLG.*

1. Install the hose clamps to each hose and set the clamp back on each hose to make installation easier.
2. Fit the hose to the fittings.
3. Secure by positioning each of the clamps.

Vapor Hose Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Using hose clamp pliers disconnect both hose clamps.
2. Remove the vapor hose from each fitting.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

THE VAPOR SUPPLY HOSE IS SPECIFICALLY DESIGNED, DO NOT USE HOSE MATERIAL OR LENGTH OTHER THAN JLG SPECIFIED PARTS.

1. Install hose clamps and set back on each hose.
2. Reinstall the vapor hose to each fitting.
3. Reset clamps.
4. Start engine and check for leaks.

Engine Control Module Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect negative battery cable.
2. Remove controller from mounting bracket.
3. Push connector lock back to unlock connector.
4. Unplug controller and remove.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

THE CONTROLLER IS CALIBRATED FOR EACH ENGINE VERIFY YOU HAVE THE CORRECT CONTROLLER

1. Plug connector into controller.
2. Push lock into place.
3. Mount controller into mounting bracket.
4. Reconnect the battery cable.
5. Start engine.
6. Check for any DTC codes and clear.
7. Verify engine is in closed loop and no warning lights are illuminated.

Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect negative battery cable.
2. Disconnect the O2 sensor electrical connector.
3. Using an O2 sensor socket, remove the O2 sensor and discard.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

BEFORE INSTALL THE O2 SENSOR LUBRICATE THREADS WITH ANTI-SEIZE COMPOUND GM P/N 5613695 OR EQUIVALENT. AVOID GETTING COMPOUND ON THE SENSOR TIP.

1. Install O2 sensor. Tighten to 30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm).
2. Start engine.
3. Check for any DTC codes and clear.
4. Verify engine is in closed loop and no warning lights are illuminated.

3.26 GM ENGINE LPG FUEL SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS

Fuel System Description

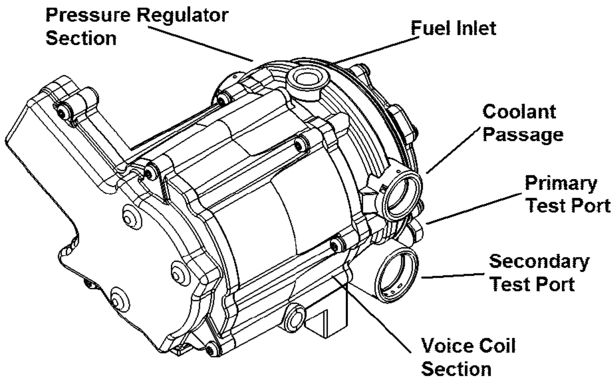


Figure 3-100. EPR Assembly

To maintain fuel and emission control on the LPG fuel system the Engine Control Units (ECM) relies on numerous engine sensor and output data from the Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR). The ECM will then determine the target fuel calibration and command the EPR to reposition the voice coil to the proper position which, subsequently reposition the secondary lever in the pressure regulator to maintain proper control. The EPR and ECM will continue to communicate back and forth during normal operation.

In the event that the EPR fails to communicate or the Communications Area Network (CAN) cable fails to transmit data the regulator will operate in an open loop configuration. As the air valve vacuum in the mixer venturi is communicated to the secondary chamber of the regulator the secondary diaphragm will be drawn in a downwards motion. This downward motion will cause the secondary lever to open thus allowing more fuel to enter the mixer.

In the (LPR) the fuel is vaporized and the pressure reduced in two stages. The first stage reduces the pressure to approximately 1.0 to 3.0 psi (6.8 to 20.6 kPa). The second stage reduces the pressure to approximately negative 1.5 in. of water column.

The fuel is then drawn from the secondary chamber of the LPR by the vacuum generated by air flowing through the mixer. This vacuum signal is also used to generate lift for the mixer air valve. This vacuum signal is most commonly referred to as air valve vacuum. In the mixer, the fuel mixes with the air entering the engine. This air/ fuel mixture is then drawn into the engine for combustion.

Diagnostic Aids

This procedure is intended to diagnose a vehicle operating on LPG. If the vehicle will not continue to run on LPG, refer to Hard Start for preliminary checks. Before proceeding with this procedure, verify that the vehicle has a sufficient quantity of fuel and that liquid fuel is being delivered to the LPR. Also, ensure that the manual shut off valve on the LPG tank is fully opened and that the excess flow valve has not been activated.

Tools Required:

- 7/16 Open end wrench (for test port plugs).
- DVOM (GM J 39200, Fluke 88 or equivalent).
- 12 volt test light.

Diagnostic Scan Tool

- Diagnostic Display tool.

Pressure Gauges

- IMPCO ITK-2 Test kit.
- Water Column Gauge / Manometer (GM 7333-6 or equivalent).
- 0-10 PSI Gauge.

Test Description

The numbers below refer to step numbers on the diagnostic table.

5. This step determines if the LPR requires replacement.

6. This step determines if the problems are in the mechanical side of the Pressure Regulator or the Electronic Voice Coil.

10. This step determines if the Mixer requires replacement.

14. This step determines if the Lock Off requires replacement.

17. This step determines if the Fuel Filter requires replacement.

Table 3-11. LPG Fuel System Diagnosis

STEP	ACTION	VALUE(S)	YES	NO
1	Were you referred to this procedure by a DTC diagnostic chart?	--	Go to Step 3	Go to Step 2
2	Perform the On Board Diagnostic (OBD) System Check. Are any DTCs present in the ECM?	--	Go to the applicable DTC Table	Go to Step 3
3	Verify that the LPG fuel tank has a minimum of 1/4 tank of fuel, that the manual valve is open and the tank quick connect is fully engaged Does the vehicle have fuel?	--	Go to Step 4	--
4	1. Connect a water column gauge or a manometer to the secondary test port of the low pressure regulator (LPR). 2. Start the engine and allow it to reach operating temperature. Does the engine start and run?	--	Go to Step 5	Go to Step 8
5	With the engine idling, observe the pressure reading for the LPR secondary pressure. Does the fuel pressure fluctuate rhythmically OUTSIDE the specified range?	-1.0" to -2.0" w.c	Go to Step 25	Go to Step 6
6	1. Disconnect the EPR electrical connectors. NOTE: This action will cause a DTC to be set by the ECM 2. With the engine idling observe the pressure reading on the secondary test port. Is the fuel pressure WITHIN the specified range?	-1.0" to -2.0" w.c	Go to Fuel Control System Diagnosis	Go to Step 7
7	1. Inspect the air intake stream between the mixer assembly and the throttle body for leaks. 2. Inspect the fuel hose connection between the LPR and mixer assembly for damage or leakage. 3. Inspect any vacuum hoses for leaks Was a problem found and corrected?	--	Go to Step 26	Go to Step 22
8	1. Connect a water column gauge or a manometer to the secondary test port of the low pressure regulator (LPR). 2. Crank the engine and observe the pressure reading for the LPR secondary pressure. Does the fuel pressure indicate a vacuum is present?	--	Go to Step 12	Go to Step 9
9	1. Remove Air induction hose to the mixer 2. Observe the air valve for movement while the engine is cranking. Note: Movement of the air valve will be minimal at cranking speeds. Does the air valve move when the engine is cranked?	--	Go to Step 11	Go to Step 10
10	1. Inspect the air intake stream to the mixer assembly and the throttle body for vacuum leaks. 2. Inspect the vacuum hoses from the mixer for proper connection and condition. Was a problem found and repaired?	--	Go to Step 26	Go to Step 24
11	Inspect the fuel hose connection between the LPR and the mixer assembly for damage or leakage. Was a problem found and repaired?	--	Go to Step 26	Go to Step 12
12	1. Connect a 0-10 psi gauge to the primary test port of the low pressure regulator (LPR). 2. Crank the engine and observe the pressure reading for the LPR primary pressure. Is the fuel pressure ABOVE the specified value?	1-3 PSI	Go to Step 22	Go to Step 13
13	1. Turn OFF the ignition. 2. Disconnect the LPL connector. 3. Install a test light between the pins of the LPL connector. 4. Crank the engine. The test light should illuminate. Does the test light illuminate?	--	Go to Step 14	Go to Step 16
14	Using a DVOM, check the resistance of the low pressure lock-off (LPL). Is the resistance within the specified range?	12W - 16W	Go to Step 15	Go to Step 23

Table 3-11. LPG Fuel System Diagnosis

STEP	ACTION	VALUE(S)	YES	NO
15	1. Turn the ignition OFF. 2. Close the manual shut-off valve on the LPG tank. CAUTION: When disconnecting LPG fuel lines, liquid LPG may be present. Perform this step in a well ventilated area. 3. Loosen the fuel inlet hose fitting at the inlet of the LPL. Was fuel present when the fitting was loosened?	--	Go to Step 23	Go to Step 17
16	1. Turn OFF the ignition. 2. Connect the test light to chassis ground and probe pin A of the LPL connector. 3. Crank the engine. The test light should illuminate. Does the test light illuminate?	--	Go to Step 20	Go to Step 21
17	1. Remove the LPG fuel filter / LPL. 2. Remove the filter from the LPL. 3. Empty the contents of the inlet side of the LPG fuel filter onto a clean surface. 4. Inspect the contents of the LPG fuel filter for an excessive amount of foreign material or water. If necessary, locate and repair the source of contamination. 5. Verify the LPG fuel filter is not restricted or plugged. Was a problem found?	--	Go to Step 19	Go to Step 18
18	The fuel supply system or hoses are plugged or restricted, locate and repair the problem. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
19	Replace the fuel filter. Refer to Fuel Filter Replacement. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
20	Repair the open in the lock-off ground circuit. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
21	Repair the open in the lock-off power circuit. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
22	Replace the low pressure regulator (LPR). Refer to Low Pressure Regulator Replacement. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
23	Replace the lock-off. Refer to Lock-off Replacement. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
24	Replace the mixer assembly. Refer to Fuel Mixer Replacement. Is the action complete?	--	Go to Step 26	--
25	The fuel supply system is operating normally, if a failure of the control solenoids is suspected. Refer to Fuel Control System Diagnosis. 1. Install the test plug in the LPR secondary chamber. 2. If you were sent to this routine by another diagnostic chart, return to the previous diagnostic procedure. Is the action complete?	--	System OK	--
26	1. Disconnect all test equipment 2. Install the primary and secondary test port plugs. 3. Start the engine. 4. Using SNOOP or equivalent, leak check the test port plugs. Is the action complete?	--	System OK	--

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Important Preliminary Checks	
Before Using This Section	Before using this section, you should have performed On Board Diagnostic Check and determined that: 1. The Control Module and MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) are operating correctly. 2. There are no Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs) stored, or a DTC exists but without a MIL. Several of the following symptom procedures call for a careful visual and physical check. The visual and physical checks are very important. The checks can lead to correcting a problem without further checks that may save valuable time.
LPG Fuel System Check	1. Verify the customer complaint. 2. Locate the correct symptom table. 3. Check the items indicated under that symptom. 4. Operate the vehicle under the conditions the symptom occurs. Verify HEGO switching between lean and rich. **IMPORTANT! Normal HEGO switching indicates the LPG fuel system is in closed loop and operating correctly at that time.**
Visual and Physical Checks	[2] Check all ECM system fuses and circuit breakers. [2] Check the ECM ground for being clean, tight and in its proper location. [2] Check the vacuum hoses for splits, kinks and proper connections. [2] Check thoroughly for any type of leak or restriction. [2] Check for air leaks at all the mounting areas of the intake manifold sealing surfaces. [2] Check for proper installation of the mixer module assembly. [2] Check for air leaks at the mixer assembly. [2] Check the ignition wires for the following conditions: - Cracking - Hardness - Proper routing - Carbon tracking [2] Check the wiring for the following items: - Proper connections, pin. or cuts. [2] The following symptom tables contain groups of possible causes for each symptom. The order of these procedures is not important. If the scan tool readings do not indicate the problems, then proceed in a logical order, easiest to check or most likely to cause first.
Intermittent	
DEFINITION: The problem may or may not turn ON the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) or store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC).	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. [2] Do not use the DTC tables. If a fault is an intermittent, the use of the DTC tables may result in the replacement of good parts.
Faulty Electrical Connections or Wiring	[2] Faulty electrical connections or wiring can cause most intermittent problems. [2] Check the suspected circuit for the following conditions: - Faulty fuse or circuit breaker - Connectors poorly mated - Terminals not fully seated in the connector (backed out) - Terminals not properly formed or damaged - Terminal to wires poorly connected - Terminal tension insufficient. [2] Carefully remove all the connector terminals in the problem circuit in order to ensure the proper contact tension. If necessary, replace all the connector terminals in the problem circuit in order to ensure the proper contact tension. [2] Checking for poor terminal to wire connections requires removing the terminal from the connector body.
Operational Test	If a visual and physical check does not locate the cause of the problem, drive the vehicle with a scan tool. When the problem occurs, an abnormal voltage or scan reading indicates the problem may be in that circuit.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Intermittent Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)	The following components can cause intermittent MIL and no DTC(s): [2] A defective relay, Control Module driven solenoid, or a switch that can cause electrical system interference. Normally, the problem will occur when the faulty component is operating. [2] The improper installation of electrical devices, such as lights, 2-way radios, electric motors, etc. [2] The ignition secondary voltage shorted to a ground. [2] The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) circuit or the Diagnostic Test Terminal intermittently shorted to ground. [2] The Control Module grounds.
Loss of DTC Memory	To check for the loss of the DTC Memory: 1. Disconnect the TMAP sensor. 2. Idle the engine until the Malfunction Indicator Lamp illuminates. The ECM should store a TMAP DTC. The TMAP DTC should remain in the memory when the ignition is turned OFF. If the TMAP DTC does not store and remain, the ECM is faulty
Additional Checks	
No Start	
DEFINITION: The engine cranks OK, but does not start.	
Preliminary Checks	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Control Module Checks	If a scan tool is available: [2] Check for proper communication with both the ECM [2] Check the fuse in the ECM battery power circuit. Refer to Engine Controls Schematics. [2] Check battery power, ignition power and ground circuits to the ECM. Refer to Engine Control Schematics. Verify voltage and/or continuity for each circuit.
Sensor Checks	[2] Check the TMAP sensor. [2] Check the Magnetic pickup sensor (RPM).
Fuel System Checks	**Important:** A closed LPG manual fuel shut off valve will create a no start condition. [2] Check for air intake system leakage between the mixer and the throttle body. [2] Verify proper operation of the low pressure lock-off solenoids. [2] Check the fuel system pressures. Refer to the LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check for proper mixer air valve operation.
Ignition System Checks	Note: LPG being a gaseous fuel requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. [2] Check for the proper ignition voltage output with J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits [2] Check for bare or shorted ignition wires. [2] Check for loose ignition coil connections at the coil.
Engine Mechanical Checks	**Important:** The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than the gasoline fuel supply system. [2] Check for the following: - Vacuum leaks - Improper valve timing - Low compression - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Broken or weak valve springs - Worn camshaft lobes.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Exhaust System Checks	[2] Check the exhaust system for a possible restriction: - Inspect the exhaust system for damaged or collapsed pipes - Inspect the muffler for signs of heat distress or for possible internal failure. [2] Check for possible plugged catalytic converter. Refer to Restricted Exhaust System Diagnosis
Hard Start	
DEFINITION: The engine cranks OK, but does not start for a long time. The engine does eventually run, or may start but immediately dies.	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. [2] Make sure the vehicle's operator is using the correct starting procedure.
Sensor Checks	[2]Check the Engine Coolant Temperature sensor with the scan tool. Compare the engine coolant temperature with the ambient air temperature on a cold engine. IF the coolant temperature reading is more than 5 degrees greater or less than the ambient air temperature on a cold engine, check for high resistance in the coolant sensor circuit. Refer to DTC 111 [2] Check the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor. [2]Check the Throttle position (TPS) sensor.
Fuel System Checks	Important: A closed LPG manual fuel shut off valve will create an extended crank OR no start condition. [2] Verify the excess flow valve in the LPG manual shut-off valve is not tripped. [2] Check mixer module assembly for proper installation and leakage. [2] Verify proper operation of the low pressure lock-off solenoids. [2] Verify proper operation of the EPR [2] Check for air intake system leakage between the mixer and the throttle body. [2] Check the fuel system pressures. Refer to the Fuel System Diagnosis.
Ignition System Checks	Note: LPG being a gaseous fuel requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. [2] Check for the proper ignition voltage output with J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits [2] Check for bare or shorted ignition wires. [2] Check for moisture in the distributor cap if applicable. [2] Check for loose ignition coil connections. **Important:** 1. If the engine starts but then immediately stalls, Check the Crankshaft Position (CKP). 2. Check for improper gap, debris or faulty connections.
Engine Mechanical Checks	Important: The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than the gasoline fuel supply system. [2] Check for the following: - Vacuum leaks - Improper valve timing - Low compression - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Broken or weak valve springs - Worn camshaft lobes. [2] Check the intake and exhaust manifolds for casting flash.
Exhaust System Checks	[2] Check the exhaust system for a possible restriction: - Inspect the exhaust system for damaged or collapsed pipes - Inspect the muffler for signs of heat distress or for possible internal failure. [2] Check for possible plugged catalytic converter. Refer to Restricted Exhaust System Diagnosis or Exhaust System in the GM Base Engine Service Manual

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Additional Checks	
Cuts Out, Misses	
DEFINITION: A surging or jerking that follows engine speed, usually more pronounced as the engine load increases which is not normally felt above 1500 RPM. The exhaust has a steady spitting sound at idle, low speed, or hard acceleration for the fuel starvation that can cause the engine to cut-out.	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Ignition System Checks	[2] Start the engine. [2] Wet down the secondary ignition system with water from a spray bottle, and look/listen for arcing or misfiring as you apply water. [2] Check for proper ignition output voltage with spark tester J 26792. [2] Check for a cylinder misfire. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Remove the spark plugs in these cylinders and check for the following conditions: [2] Insulation cracks [2] Wear [2] Improper gap [2] Burned electrodes [2] Heavy deposits [2] Visually/Physically inspect the secondary ignition for the following: [2] Ignition wires for arcing, cross-firing and proper routing [2] Ignition coils for cracks or carbon tracking
Engine Mechanical Checks	[2] Perform a cylinder compression check. [2] Check the engine for the following: - Improper valve timing - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Worn camshaft lobes. - Broken or weak valve springs. [2] Check the intake and exhaust manifold passages for casting flash.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check the fuel system - plugged fuel filter, low fuel pressure, etc. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check the condition of the wiring to the low pressure lock-off solenoid.
Additional Check	Check for Electromagnetic Interference (EMI). [2] EMI on the reference circuit can cause a missing condition. [2] Monitoring the engine RPM with a scan tool can detect an EMI. [2] A sudden increase in the RPM with little change in the actual engine RPM, indicates EMI is present. [2] If the problem exists, check the routing of the secondary wires and the ground circuit.
Hesitation, Sag, Stumble	
DEFINITION: The vehicle has a momentary lack of response when depressing the accelerator. The condition can occur at any vehicle speed. The condition may cause the engine to stall if it's severe enough.	
Preliminary Checks	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check the fuel pressure. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check for low fuel pressure during a moderate or full throttle acceleration. If the fuel pressure drops below specification, there is possibly a faulty low pressure regulator or a restriction in the fuel system. [2] Check the Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor response and accuracy. [2] Check LPL electrical connection [2] Check the mixer air valve for sticking or binding. [2] Check the mixer module assembly for proper installation and leakage. [2] Check the EPR electrical connections.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Ignition System Checks	Note: LPG being a gaseous fuel requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. If a problem is reported on LPG and not gasoline, do not discount the possibility of a LPG only ignition system failure and test the system accordingly. [2] Check for the proper ignition voltage output with J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check for faulty spark plug wires [2] Check for fouled spark plugs.
Additional Check	[2] Check for manifold vacuum or air induction system leaks [2] Check the generator output voltage.
Backfire	
DEFINITION: The fuel ignites in the intake manifold, or in the exhaust system, making a loud popping noise.	
Preliminary Check	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Ignition System Checks	**Important! LPG, being a gaseous fuel, requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. The ignition system must be maintained in peak condition to prevent backfire.** [2] Check for the proper ignition coil output voltage using the spark tester J26792 or the equivalent. [2] Check the spark plug wires by connecting an ohmmeter to the ends of each wire in question. If the meter reads over 30,000 ohms, replace the wires. [2] Check the connection at each ignition coil. [2] Check for deteriorated spark plug wire insulation. [2] Check the spark plugs. The correct spark plugs for LPG are (R42LTS) [2] Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits
Engine Mechanical Check	Important! The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than a gasoline fuel supply system. [2] Check the engine for the following: - Improper valve timing - Engine compression - Manifold vacuum leaks - Intake manifold gaskets - Sticking or leaking valves - Exhaust system leakage [2] Check the intake and exhaust system for casting flash or other restrictions.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Perform a fuel system diagnosis. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis.
Lack of Power, Sluggishness, or Sponginess	
DEFINITION: The engine delivers less than expected power. There is little or no increase in speed when partially applying the accelerator pedal.	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. [2] Refer to the LPG Fuel system OBD System Check [2] Compare the customer's vehicle with a similar unit. Make sure the customer has an actual problem. Do not compare the power output of the vehicle operating on LPG to a vehicle operating on gasoline as the fuels do have different drive feel characteristics [2] Remove the air filter and check for dirt or restriction. [2] Check the vehicle transmission Refer to the OEM transmission diagnostics.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check for a restricted fuel filter, contaminated fuel, or improper fuel pressure. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check for the proper ignition output voltage with the spark tester J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Check for proper installation of the mixer module assembly. [2] Check all air inlet ducts for condition and proper installation. [2] Check for fuel leaks between the LPR and the mixer. [2] Verify that the LPG tank manual shut-off valve is fully open. [2] Verify that liquid fuel (not vapor) is being delivered to the LPR.
Sensor Checks	[2] Check the Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO) for contamination and performance. Check for proper operation of the MAP sensor. [2] Check for proper operation of the TPS sensor.
Exhaust System Checks	[2] Check the exhaust system for a possible restriction: - Inspect the exhaust system for damaged or collapsed pipes - Inspect the muffler for signs of heat distress or for possible internal failure. - Check for possible plugged catalytic converter.
Engine Mechanical Check	Check the engine for the following: [2] Engine compression [2] Valve timing [2] Improper or worn camshaft. Refer to Engine Mechanical in the Service Manual.
Additional Check	[2] Check the ECM grounds for being clean, tight, and in their proper locations. [2] Check the generator output voltage. [2] If all procedures have been completed and no malfunction has been found, review and inspect the following items: [2] Visually and physically, inspect all electrical connections within the suspected circuit and/or systems. [2] Check the scan tool data.
Poor Fuel Economy	
DEFINITION: Fuel economy, as measured by refueling records, is noticeably lower than expected. Also, the economy is noticeably lower than it was on this vehicle at one time, as previously shown by an by refueling records.	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. [2] Check the air cleaner element (filter) for dirt or being plugged. [2] Visually (Physically) check the vacuum hoses for splits, kinks, and proper connections. [2] Check the operators driving habits for the following items: - Is there excessive idling or stop and go driving? - Are the tires at the correct air pressure? - Are excessively heavy loads being carried? - Is their often rapid acceleration? [2] Suggest to the owner to fill the fuel tank and to recheck the fuel economy. [2] Suggest that a different operator use the equipment and record the results.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check the LPR fuel pressure. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check the fuel system for leakage.
Sensor Checks	[2] Check the Temperature Manifold Absolute Pressure (TMAP) sensor.
Ignition System Checks	[2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs. Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits [2] Check the ignition wires for the following items: - Cracking - Hardness - Proper connections
Cooling System Checks	[2] Check the engine thermostat for always being open or for the wrong heat range

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Additional Check	[2] Check the transmission shift pattern. Refer to the OEM Transmission Controls section the Service Manual. [2] Check for dragging brakes.
Rough, Unstable, or Incorrect Idle, Stalling	
DEFINITION: The engine runs unevenly at idle. If severe enough, the engine or vehicle may shake. The engine idle speed may vary in RPM. Either condition may be severe enough to stall the engine.	
Preliminary Check	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Sensor Checks	[2]Check for silicon contamination from fuel or improperly used sealant. The sensor will have a white powdery coating. The sensor will result in a high but false signal voltage (rich exhaust indication). The ECM will reduce the amount of fuel delivered to the engine causing a severe drive-ability problem. [2]Check the Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO) performance: [2]Check the Temperature Manifold Absolute Pressure (TMAP) sensor response and accuracy.
Fuel System Checks	[2]Check for rich or lean symptom that causes the condition. Drive the vehicle at the speed of the complaint. Monitoring the oxygen sensors will help identify the problem. [2]Check for a sticking mixer air valve. [2]Verify proper operation of the EPR. [2]Perform a cylinder compression test. Refer to Engine Mechanical in the Service Manual. [2]Check the LPR fuel pressure. Refer to the LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2]Check mixer module assembly for proper installation and connection.
Ignition System Checks	[2]Check for the proper ignition output voltage using the spark tester J26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2]Check the spark plugs. Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Blistered insulators - Heavy deposits [2]Check the spark plug wires by connecting an ohmmeter to the ends of each wire in question. If the meter reads over 30,000 ohms, replace the wires.
Additional Checks	**Important:** The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than the gasoline fuel supply system. [2]Check for vacuum leaks. Vacuum leaks can cause a higher than normal idle and low throttle angle control command. [2]Check the ECM grounds for being clean, tight, and in their proper locations. [2]Check the battery cables and ground straps. They should be clean and secure. Erratic voltage may cause all sensor readings to be skewed resulting in poor idle quality.
Engine Mechanical Check	[2] Check the engine for the following: - Broken motor mounts - Improper valve timing - Low compression - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Broken or weak valve springs - Worn camshaft lobes
Surges/Chuggles	
DEFINITION: The engine has a power variation under a steady throttle or cruise. The vehicle feels as if it speeds up and slows down with no change in the accelerator pedal.	
Preliminary Checks	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Sensor Checks	[2] Check Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO) performance.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check for Rich or Lean symptom that causes the condition. Drive the vehicle at the speed of the complaint. Monitoring the oxygen sensors will help identify the problem. [2] Check the fuel pressure while the condition exists. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Verify proper fuel control solenoid operation. [2] Verify that the LPG manual shut-off valve is fully open. [2] Check the in-line fuel filter for restrictions.
Ignition System Checks	[2] Check for the proper ignition output voltage using the spark tester J26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs. Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits - Check the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor.
Additional Check	[2] Check the ECM grounds for being clean, tight, and in their proper locations. [2] Check the generator output voltage. [2] Check the vacuum hoses for kinks or leaks. [2] Check Transmission

Table 3-13. DTC to SPN/FMI Cross Reference Chart

DTC	Description	SPN Code	FMI Code
16	Crank Never Synced at Start	636	8
91	Fuel Pump Low Voltage	5294	4
92	Fuel Pump High Voltage	94	3
107	MAP Low Voltage	106	4
108	MAP High Pressure	106	16
111	IAT Higher Than Expected 1	105	15
112	IAT Low Voltage	105	4
113	IAT High Voltage	105	3
116	ECT Higher Than Expected 1	110	15
117	ECT Low Voltage	110	4
118	ECT High Voltage	110	3
121	TPS 1 Lower Than TPS 2	51	1
122	TPS 1 Signal Voltage Low	51	4
123	TPS 1 Signal Voltage High	51	3
127	IAT Higher Than Expected 2	105	0
129	BP Low Pressure	108	1
134	EGO 1 Open/Inactive	724	10
154	EGO 2 Open/Inactive	520208	10
171	Adaptive Learn High Gasoline	520200	0
172	Adaptive Learn Low Gasoline	520200	1
182	Fuel Temp Gasoline Low Voltage	174	4
183	Fuel Temp Gasoline High Voltage	174	3
187	Fuel Temp LPG Low Voltage	520240	4
188	Fuel Temp LPG High Voltage	520240	3
217	ECT Higher Than Expected 2	110	0
219	Max Govern Speed Override	515	15
221	TPS 2 Signal Voltage Low	51	0
222	TPS 2 Signal Low Voltage	520251	4
223	TPS 2 Signal High Voltage	520251	3
261	Injector Driver 1 Open	651	5
262	Injector Driver 1 Shorted	651	6
264	Injector Driver 2 Open	652	5
265	Injector Driver 2 Shorted	652	6
267	Injector Driver 3 Open	653	5
268	Injector Driver 3 Shorted	653	6
270	Injector Driver 4 Open	654	5
271	Injector Driver 4 Shorted	654	6
336	Crank Sync Noise	636	2
337	Crank Loss	636	4
341	Cam Sync Noise	723	2
342	Cam Sensor Loss	723	4
420	Gasoline Cat Monitor	520211	10
524	Oil Pressure Low	100	1

Table 3-13. DTC to SPN/FMI Cross Reference Chart

DTC	Description	SPN Code	FMI Code
562	System Voltage Low	168	17
563	System Voltage High	168	15
601	Flash Checksum Invalid	628	13
604	RAM Failure	630	12
606	COP Failure	629	31
642	External 5V Reference Low	1079	4
643	External 5V Reference High	1079	3
685	Power Relay Open	1485	5
686	Power Relay Shorted	1485	4
687	Power Relay Short to Power	1485	3
1111	Fuel Rev Limit	515	16
1112	Spark Rev Limit	515	0
1151	Closed Loop Multiplier High LPG	520206	0
1152	Closed Loop Multiplier Low LPG	520206	1
1155	Closed Loop Multiplier High Gasoline	520204	0
1156	Closed Loop Multiplier Low Gasoline	520204	1
1161	Adaptive Learn High LPG	520202	0
1162	Adaptive Learn Low LPG	520202	1
1165	LPG Cat Monitor	520213	10
1171	LPG Pressure Higher Than Expected	520260	0
1172	LPG Pressure Lower Than Expected	520260	1
1173	EPR Comm Lost	520260	31
1174	EPR Voltage Supply High	520260	3
1175	EPR Voltage Supply Low	520260	4
1176	EPR Internal Actuator Fault	520260	12
1177	EPR Internal Circuitry Fault	520260	12
1178	EPR Internal Comm Fault	520260	12
1612	RTI 1 loss	629	31
1613	RTI 2 Loss	629	31
1614	RTI 3 Loss	629	31
1615	A/D Loss	629	31
1616	Invalid Interrupt	629	31
1625	Shutdown Request	1384	31
1626	CAN Tx Failure	639	12
1627	CAN Rx Failure	639	12
1628	CAN Address Conflict Failure	639	13
1629	Loss of TSC 1	639	31
2111	Unable to Reach Lower TPS	51	7
2112	Unable to Reach Higher TPS	51	
2135	TPS 1/2 Simultaneous Voltages	51	31
2229	BP Pressure High	108	0

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
38	731	523925	3	Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 2. Components on Pin A88, K57 cannot be activated. Internal ECU power stage switched off.	Suspected Components: 1- Lamps K57: Warn Ash Charge, Diagnostic, Warn Coolant Temp/Level, Warn Oil, Warn Boost Air, Warn Air Filter, Warn Water in Fuel, SCR, Regeneration, Engine Running. 2- Relay Preheat A88 3- Exhaust Flap A88	Check wiring harness and connected loads on pins A88, K57.
40	733	523927	3	Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 2. Components on Pin A04, A05 cannot be activated. Internal ECU power stage switched off.	Suspected Components: 1- Urea Pump A04 2- SCR Heater A05	Check wiring harness and connected loads on pins A04, A05.
42	167	523924	4	Overload at Pins O_V_RH2x: A01, K74, K91. Components on A01, K74, K91 cannot be activated. Internal ECU power stage switched off.	Suspected components: 1- Pin K91: Clutch switch, Brake switch, Engine brake demand, Regeneration activation, Parking brake, Gearbox N, Fan control 1 2- Pin K74: Boost air cooler bypass or electrical fuel pump relay, Fan control 2/fuel valve for flame star	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and connected loads on pins A01, K74, K91 and/or reflash ECU. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
43	731	523925	4	Short circuit to ground actuator release 3 Overload at Pins O_V_RH3x: A88, K57	Suspected components: 1- Pin A88: Preheat relay, Exhaust flap 2- Pin K 57: - control lamps: - OBD, preheat lamp, warning temp., warning oil, maintenance lamp, regeneration indicator, alternator management, engine running, diagnostic	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and connected loads on pinsA88, K57. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
44	732	523926	4	Short circuit to ground actuator release 4. Overload at Pins O_V_PCV: A90	Suspected components: Fan, Wiring harness	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and connected loads on pin A90. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
45	318	168	3	Battery voltage: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range, system reaction is initiated	Battery voltage above warning threshold (~38,9Volt), Short cut to battery possible.	Check wiring harness and connected alternator.
46	318	168	4	Battery voltage: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range, system reaction is initiated	Battery voltage below warning threshold, Short cut to ground	Check wiring harness and connected alternator.
47	318	168	2	Battery voltage: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range, system reaction is initiated	If Battery voltage (Ubatt_U) > 17V or 31V for mor than =0.5sec a warning is generated Battery voltage above warning threshold	Check wiring harness and connected alternator.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
73	7-2-2	523912	4	@engines < 4l: Throttle valve error, Open Load or Short cut to Battery, blocked valve or wrong control signal for valve. @engines with Burner T4i: Pressure Sensor error after valve (DV2), lower limit reached.	The sensed raw voltage value is below the minimum threshold.	The sensed raw voltage value DPM_uRawBrnDVDsP is above the minimum threshold DPM_SRCBrnDVDsP.uMin_C @CRT < 4l: check throttle valve @engines with Burner T4i: check back-pressure valve
84	271	639	14	CAN bus 0: the ECU is not allowed to send messages, because the status "BusOff" is detected.	CAN BusOff error; CAN 0 (Customer CAN)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. BusOff bit for CAN A node is set. Check wiring of CAN bus and if necessary repair it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it, check resistance in CAN lines (120 Ohm).
85	271	1231	14	CAN bus 1: the ECU is not allowed to send messages, because the status "BusOff" is detected Warning, no diagnostic with SERDIA2010 possible.	CAN BusOff error; CAN 1 (Diagnostic CAN)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. BusOff bit for CAN B node is set. Check wiring of CAN bus and if necessary repair it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it, check resistance in CAN lines (120 Ohm).
86	271	1235	14	CAN bus 2: the ECU is not allowed to send messages, because the status "BusOff" is detected. Warning, depends on engine, EAT.	CAN BusOff error; CAN 2 (Engine CAN)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. BusOff bit for CAN C node is set. Check wiring of CAN bus and if necessary repair it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it, check resistance in CAN lines (120 Ohm).
88	223	102	2	Charge air pressure measured by sensor is above the shut off threshold.	Charged air cooler pressure below threshold.	Check waste gate system if necessary replace TC, check CAC if all channels are clean, check charge air piping if necessary.
89	223	102	2	Charge air pressure measured by sensor is above the warning threshold.	Charge air pressure above shut off threshold.	Check waste gate system if necessary replace TC, check CAC if all channels are clean, check charge air piping if necessary.
93	225	110	1	Coolant temperature sensor: the voltage of the sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Suspected components:wiring harness, coolant temperature sensor.	Check wiring harness and connected Coolant Temp Sens.
96	225	110	3	Coolant temperature sensor: the voltage of the sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Short cut to battery or open load.	Check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
97	225	110	4	Coolant temperature sensor: the voltage of the sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Voltage Surveillance has found shortcut to Ground at Coolant Temperature Sensor.	Check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it Measure Voltage at Coolant Temperature Sensor and renew harness if needed.
98	232	110	0	Coolant temperature: the coolant temperature calculated by ECU is above the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction.	Cooling temperature too high. Coolant temperature above warning threshold.	Clean radiator, check fan drive, check coolant level, check cooling system in general, check thermostat function, check water pump.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
99	232	110	0	Coolant temperature: the coolant temperature calculated by ECU is above the target range. The ECU activates a system reaction.	Coolant temperature above shut off threshold.	Clean radiator, check fan drive, check coolant level, check cooling system in general, check thermostat function, check water pump.
101	235	111	1	Coolant level: the coolant level calculated by ECU is underneath the allowed minimum.	Coolant level too low, leakage in cooling system, sensor defective, wiring damaged.	Check coolant level, inspect cooling system for leakage and if necessary repair it, check sensor and wiring
121	341	1109	2	Request of engine shut off: the operator ignores the engine shut off request within an allowed period.	Engine Shut Off demand has been ignored by the user	Depending on error requested a shut off.
122	591	523698	11	Shut off request from supervisory monitoring function.	Engine Shut Off due to supervisory function	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check error memory for additional error code to find root cause. Depending on additional error follow the documented "Take action for repair".
129	596	3224	2	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1Vol NOX Sensor (SCR-system upstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat); length of frame incorrect.	Not Used	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check Nox-Sensor and the wiring from CAN-BUS.
130	597	3224	9	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1Vol; NOX sensor (SCR-system upstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat).	Failure of the CAN Bus message	NOX sensor and sensor connection check
133	766	523938	9	Timeout Error (BAM to packet) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IGCVol1 information; factors & Sensor calibration for NOX Sensor (SCR-system upstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat).	Failure of the CAN Bus message	NOX sensor and sensor connection check
134	766	523939	9	Broadcast Announce Message of the calibration message of the upstream catalytic NOx sensor has failed. Timeout Error (BAM to BAM) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IGCVol1 information. factors & Sensor calibration for NOX Sensor (SCR-system upstream cat, DPF-system downstream cat).	Defective Nox sensor, faulty parameterization	NOX sensor and sensor connection check
135	766	523940	9	Timeout Error (PCK2PCK) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IGCVol1 information; factors & Sensor calibration for NOX Sensor (SCR-system upstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat).	Failure of the CAN Bus message	NOX sensor and sensor connection check
138	114	3234	2	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1O1Vol NOX Sensor (SCR-system downstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat); length of frame incorrect.	Failure of the CAN Bus message	NOX downstream sensor and sensor connection check
139	117	3234	9	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1OG1Vol; NOX sensor (SCR-system downstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat).	Failure of the CAN Bus message	NOX downstream sensor and sensor connection check

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
140	767	523941	9	Timeout Error (BAM to packet) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT10GCVol2 information; factors & Sensor calibration for NOX Sensor (SCR-system downstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat)	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	NOX downstream sensor and sensor connection check
141	767	523942	9	Timeout Error (BAM to BAM) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT10GCVol2 information, Calibration message 1 of the after catalyst NO sensor has failed. Factors & Sensor calibration for NOX Sensor (SCR-system downstream cat, DPF-system downstream cat)	Defective Nox sensor, faulty parameterization.	NOX downstream sensor and sensor connection check.
142	767	523943	9	Timeout Error (PCK2PCK) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT10GCVol2 information; factors & Sensor calibration for NOX Sensor (SCR-system downstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat)	The fault is detected when a timeout error in packet 2 of NOxSenVol2Rx frame occurs.	NOX downstream sensor and sensor connection check
168	763	523935	12	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3VOL1; Engine send messages	Fault is detected if a TimeOut of the EEC3VOL1 frame has occured.	Check wiring harness and customer nodes
169	764	523936	12	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3VOL2; Engine send messages	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check wiring harness and customer nodes
171	3-3-3	523212	9	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Com Eng Prt; Engine Protection	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check wiring harness and customer devices
179	527	523240	9	Timeout CAN-message FunModCtl; Function Mode Control	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus sheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range.
291	119	523776	9	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE - active	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus scheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range.
292	119	523777	9	Message TSC1-TE has been missing (passive)	Passive timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus scheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range, check actuator
305	118	898	9	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE - active	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus scheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range.
360	737	523982	0	Power stage diagnosis disabled; Indicating that battery voltage is not high.	Power stage diagnostic can be deactivated due to too high battery voltage.	Check wiring, check alternator, check cables and repair or replace if necessary.
361	737	523982	1	Power stage diagnosis disabled; Indicating that battery voltage is not low.	Power stage diagnostic can be deactivated due to too low battery voltage.	Check wiring, check alternator, check cables and repair or replace if necessary.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
376	281	630	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU finds an error during the access to its EEPROM memory or works with an alternative value	Section could not be erased	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. There is no healing possible for the error. In the every new initialization phase, the debounce level is set to zero. If not programmed, EEPROM is defect --> ECU is defect, reprogram ECU and if necessary replace it.
377	281	630	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU finds an error during the access to its EEPROM memory or works with an alternative value	Minimum 3 blocks could not be readed, EEPROM has Checksum Error	There is no healing possible for the error. In the every new initialization phase, the debounce level is set to zero. If not programmed, EEPROM is defect -->ECU is defect, reprogram ECU and if necessary replace it
378	281	630	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU finds an error during the access to it's EEPROM memory or works with an alternative value	Block could not be written for minimum 3 times	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If not programmed, EEPROM is defect --> ECU is defect, reprogram ECU and if necessary replace it.
381	693	411	4	Range check cannot be done or interrupted.	EGR or wiring defect	Check wiring harness and connected EGR.
387	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Injector shut off demand for the ICO coordinator System responses: not	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Caution! Sequence error, check error memory for other errors.
389	214	190	0	Engine speed: the engine speed calculated by ECU is above the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction	Overspeed monitoring during 1 level of FOC (Failure overrun condition) if engine speed was over Limit.	check powertrain settings regarding overspeed
390	214	190	11	Engine speed: the engine speed calculated by ECU is above the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction	Overspeed monitoring during 2 level of FOC (Failure overrun condition) if engine speed was over limit.	check powertrain settings regarding overspeed
391	214	190	14	Engine speed: the engine speed calculated by ECU is above the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction	Overspeed monitoring during ORC (Override conditions) if engine speed was over 2900rpm	check powertrain settings regarding overspeed
417	312	171	3	Sensor error SCR-System environment temperature; DPF-System air inlet temperature; signal range check high	open loop to sensor	Check cabling, if environment temperature sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
418	312	171	4	Sensor error SCR-System environment temperature; DPF-System air inlet temperature; signal range check low	short circuit to Ground	Check cabling, if environment temperature sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it
419	212	190	8	Camshaft speed sensor: the ECU receives no signal and uses the signal from crankshaft speed sensor as alternative to calculate the engine speed	When disturbed camshaft signal detected. Error in sensor or wiring.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold, occurs by disturbed camshaft signal. Check increment wheel position, clean and adjust if necessary, check sensor postition. Check Camshaft Sensor or wiring.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
420	212	190	12	Camshaft speed sensor: the ECU receives no signal and uses the signal from camshaft speed sensor as alternative to calculate the engine speed Threshold:	Error in sensor or wiring.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold, occurs by disturbed or no camshaft signal. Check increment wheel position, clean and adjust if necessary, check sensor postition. Check Camshaft Sensor or wiring.
421	213	190	2	ECU measures a deviation between camshaft and crankshaft angle to target.	Offset error between crankshaft and camshaft.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold, occurs by offset between crankshaft and camshaft. Check increment wheel position, clean and adjust if necessary, check sensor position. Check Camshaft and Crankshaft senor or wiring.
422	212	190	8	Sensor crankshaft speed; disturbed signal	Error in sensor or wiring. Crankshaft sensor defect.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold, occurs by disturbed crankshaft signal. Check increment wheel position, clean and adjust if necessary, check sensor postition. Check Crankshaft Sensor or wiring.
423	212	190	12	Crankshaft speed sensor: the ECU receives no signal and uses the signal from camshaft speed sensor as alternative to calculate the engine speed.	Error in sensor or wiring.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold, occurs by disturbed or no Crankshaft signal. Check increment wheel position, clean and adjust if necessary, check Crankshaft sensor position or wiring.
464	228	97	3	Fuel filter water level sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	Sensor not connected or sensor defect.	Check of wiring and water in fuel sensor. Check cabling, if charge Water in Fuel sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
465	228	97	4	Fuel filter water level sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable damaged. Short cut to ground.	Check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
472	216	94	3	Low fuel pressure sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable damaged Short cut to battery or open loop	Check cabling, if sensor not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it
473	216	94	4	Low fuel pressure sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable damaged short cut to ground	Check cabling, if sensor not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it
474	216	94	1	Low fuel pressure: the low fuel pressure calculated by ECU is underneath the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction	Fuel pressure below warning threshold	Check low fuel pressure system (fuel feed pump, relay , fuse, wiring, sensor) and if necessary repair or replace it.
543	263	676	11	Cold start aid relay error.	Relay defect or wire harness problem	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. check wire harness, replace relay
544	263	676	11	Cold start aid relay open load	Relay or wire harness	Threshold for error detection is an internal threshold. check wire harness, replace relay

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
545	263	729	5	The cold start aid relay is according to wiring faulty.	Relay defect or wire harness problem	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Electrical error, check wires
547	263	729	12	The cold start aid relay is overheated, which causes this error	High temperature around the cold start relay.	Check the functionality of relay and replace it if needed. Check the temperature around the cold start relay during worst case operation.
549	263	729	3	wiring to the intake air heater device is faulty.	Intake Air Heater Device: overload, short-circuit	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Electrical error, Check wiring to the intake air heater device.
551	263	729	4	wiring to the air intake heater is faulty	Relay (for cold start aid) cable break or short to ground:	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Electrical error, check wiring to the air intake heater.
559	1-5-8	523895	13	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 1 (in firing order).	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value for cyl. 1.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check correct injector adjustment value (IMA). Use SERDIA UseCase to check it.
560	1-5-8	523896	13	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 2 (in firing order).	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value for cyl. 2	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. check dataset and flash correct injector adjuste-ment value (IMA). Use SERDIA UseCase to check it.
561	1-5-8	523897	13	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 3 (in firing order).	Missing or wrong parametrisation of injector adjustment cyl. 3.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check correct injector adjustment value (IMA).
562	1-5-8	523898	13	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 4 (in firing order).	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value for cyl. 4.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check correct injector adjustment value (IMA).
563	1-5-8	523899	13	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 5 (in firing order).	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value for cyl. 5.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check correct injector adjustment value (IMA).
564	1-5-8	523900	13	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 6 (in firing order).	Missing or wrong injector adjustment value for cyl. 6.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check correct injector adjustment value (IMA).
565	151	523350	4	Injector cylinder bank 1: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Short circuit injection bank 1 (all injectors of this bank can be affected)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
566	152	523352	4	Injector cylinder bank 2: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Short circuit injection bank 2 (all injectors of this bank can be affected)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
567	153	523354	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU detects an error of its injector high current output. Chip of CY33x defect power stage components	Defective powerstage in ECU	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is not removable, change ECU.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
568	154	651	5	Injector cyl. 1: interruption of electrical connection	Interruption of electronic connection Injector cyl. 1	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
569	155	652	5	Injector cyl. 2: interruption of electrical connection	Interruption of electronic connection Injector cyl. 2	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
570	156	653	5	Injector cyl. 3: interruption of electrical connection	Interruption of electronic connection Injector cyl. 3	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
571	161	654	5	Injector cyl. 4: interruption of electrical connection	Interruption of electronic connection Injector cyl. 4	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
572	162	655	5	Injector cyl. 5: interruption of electrical connection	Interruption of electronic connection Injector cyl. 5	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
573	163	656	5	Injector cyl. 6: interruption of electrical connection	Interruption of electronic connection Injector cyl. 6	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it.
580	154	651	3	Injector cyl. 1: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Suspected Components: injector cylinder 1 wiring harness, cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable damaged	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it. Use SerDia Injector test for diagnosis.
581	155	652	3	Injector cyl. 2: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Suspected Components: injector cylinder 2 wiring harness, cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable damaged	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it. Use SerDia Injector test for diagnosis.
582	156	653	3	Injector cyl. 3: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Suspected Components: injector cylinder 3 wiring harness, cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable damaged	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it. Use SerDia Injector test for diagnosis.
583	161	654	3	Injector cyl. 4: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Suspected Components: injector cylinder 4 wiring harness, cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it. Use SerDia Injector test for diagnosis.
584	162	655	3	Injector cyl. 5: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Suspected Components: injector cylinder 5 wiring harness, cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it. Use SerDia Injector test for diagnosis.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
585	163	656	3	Injector cyl. 6: the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Suspected Components: injector cylinder 6 wiring harness, cable break or short circuit, sensor defective, connection cable	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness, injectors and if necessary repair/replace it. Use SerDia Injector test for diagnosis.
592	135	523615	5	Detecting an open load fault in the metering unit	wiring harness defective, cable break	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and metering unit if necessary repair/replace it.
593	135	523615	12	powerstage of metering unit is overheated	over temperature	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check functionality of metering unit and replace it if needed. Check temperature of metering unit and improve the installation in case of overheating.
594	135	523615	3	Fuel metering unit: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	short circuit to battery high side	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and metering unit if necessary repair/replace it.
595	135	523615	4	Fuel metering unit: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	short circuit to ground high side	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and metering unit if necessary repair/replace it.
596	135	523615	3	Fuel metering unit: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	short circuit to battery low side	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and metering unit if necessary repair/replace it.
597	135	523615	4	Fuel metering unit: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	short circuit to ground low side	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring harness and metering unit if necessary repair/replace it.
612	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory.	Plausibility check failed (MoCADC_uNTP_mp is higher than MoCADC_uNTPMax_C).	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
613	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Analysis of test voltage (Value is out of the target -> ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, check connected sensors actuators. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
614	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Analysis of the ratiometric correction (Value is out of the target -> ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, check connected sensors actuators. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
615	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error report due to an error in the plausibility of Function Coordination(FC) and Monitoring Modul(MM)(ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
616	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error report due to an interrupted SPI communication (ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
617	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	multiple error in complete ROM-test during postdrive detected (ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
618	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Too less bytes received by monitoring memory from CPU as response (ECU internal error). Loss of synchronization sending bytes to the monitoring memory from CPU	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
619	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Suspected components: Injector ECU wiring harness/connector	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
620	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error trying to set MM Response time (ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
621	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error detected in the internal ECU communication, Too many SPI errors during MoCSOP execution	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
623	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error in the check of the shut-off path test of the under voltage detection (ECU internal error). Diagnostic fault check to report the error in undervoltage monitoring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
624	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error in the check of the shut-off path of the monitoring module (ECU internal error).	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
625	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Time out error trying to set or cancelling the alarm task (ECU internal error). Failure setting the alarm task period	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
627	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error in time monitoring of the shut-off path test (ECU internal error). Diagnostic fault check to report the timeout in the shut off path test	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
628	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error in the check of the shut-off path test of the over voltage detection (ECU internal error). Diagnostic fault check to report the error in overvoltage monitoring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
629	555	523612	12	The two voltage values (ADC_VAL1, ADC_VAL2), detected by the accelerator pedal, are not plausible to each other.	Defect pedal or wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check Pedal, repair or exchange the Pedal. Check wiring. If error is still present, exchange ECU.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
630	555	523612	12	Impermissible offset between the engine speed of level 2 and level 1	Calculated engine speed in level 1/2 implausible (-> ECU internal error).	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
631	555	523612	12	Diagnostic fault check to report the plausibility error between level 1 energizing time and level 2 information	Implausible injection energizing time for either Pilx or MI1 or Polx.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
632	555	523612	12	Error in the plausibility of the start of energising angles	Implausible start of energising of either Pilx or MI1 or Polx.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
633	555	523612	12	Error in the plausibility of the energising times of the zero fuel quantity calibration	The energising times of the zero fuel quantity calibration ZFC is out of the target. (-> ECU internal error)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
634	555	523612	12	Error in the plausibility of Pol2 efficiency.	Error in the plausibility of Pol2 efficiency.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
635	555	523612	12	Error in the Pol2 shut-off.	Error in the Pol2 shut-off.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
636	555	523612	12	Error in the plausibility of Pol3 efficiency.	Error in the plausibility of Pol3 efficiency.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
637	555	523612	12	Engine speed: the engine speed calculated by ECU is above the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction	Error in the plausibility of current energising time with maximum permitted energising time. Diagnostic fault check to report the error due to Over Run	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
638	555	523612	12	Error in the plausibility of the wave correction parts	Error in the plausibility of the wave correction parts	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
639	555	523612	12	Plausibility error of the Rail pressure sensor	In case the gradient of rail pressure is larger than the max threshold or lesser than the min threshold. Rail metering unit defect. Leakge in the Rail System.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check metering unit or cable. Check Rail pressure. Check the Rail System of leakage.
640	555	523612	12	Error in the torque comparison between permissible engine torque and current actual torque	Error in the torque comparison between the permissible inner engine torque and the current plausible actual torque.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
641	555	523612	12	Diagnosis of curr path limitation forced by ECU monitoring level 2	The torque comparison is not plausible with the torque monitoring.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
642	555	523612	12	Diagnosis of lead path limitation forced by ECU monitoring level 2	The setpoint path of the air system is limited by the limitation torque of the functional control unit monitoring.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
643	555	523612	12	Diagnosis of set path limitation forced by ECU monitoring level 2.	If the quantity setpoint is exceeds the limit of the torque function.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If error is still present, exchange ECU.
644	555	523612	3	supply voltage too high	not used	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
646	555	523612	4	supply voltage too low	not used	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold.
714	555	523612	12	Error report "WDA wire is active" due to a defect query/response communication	Error detection by monitoring module	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Software reset.
715	555	523612	12	Error report "ABE wire is active" due to undervoltage detection	The reason is that a slow dropping of the vehicle electrical system voltage (defective autobattery) should not lead the ECU OCWDA's diagnose to enter an error in the fault memory due to an undervoltage recognition.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Software reset.
716	555	523612	12	Error report "ABE wire is active" due to over-voltage detection	If the ABE/WDA powerstage shut-off is active due to an overvoltage detection.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. software reset.
717	555	523612	12	Error report "ABE/WDA active" due to an unknown reason	The reason is that a slow dropping of the vehicle electrical system voltage (defective autobattery) should not lead the ECU OCWDA's diagnose to enter an error in the fault memory due to an undervoltage recognition.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Software reset.
732	224	100	3	Oil pressure sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	short circuit to battery or cable break	check battery and wiring Check cabling. If sensor not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
733	224	100	4	Oil pressure sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	Short circuit to ground	The sensed raw voltage value Oil_uRawPSwmp is above Oil_SRCPSwmp.uMin_C Check cabling, if sensor not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it No detail informationen!
736	231	100	1	Oil pressure is below the target range (warning threshold)	Oilpressure too low (pressure below warning threshold)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check oil level, check engine for oil leckage, measure oil pressure external to evaluate sensor value
737	231	100	1	Oil pressure is below the target range (shut off threshold)	Oilpressure too low (pressure below shut off threshold).	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check oil level, check engine for oil leckage, measure oil pressure external to evaluate sensor value.
747	145	1237	2	Override switch switch: the ECU receives a permanent signal.	Switch is blocked, taster locked, connection cable damaged plausbility error "override switch > 250ms pressed".	If the Block Button is pressed shorter than the Maximum Plausible pressing Time. Check cabling, if sensor is not working, check switch and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
752	136	107	0	Air filter differential pressure: the pressure difference of the intake air between the filter inlet and outlet calculated by ECU is above the target range and the ECU activates a system reaction	Pressure loss above target range with system reaction, air filter clogged or defective, sensor not working, connection cable damaged Pressure value above warning threshold	Check airfilter and if necessary clean or renew it, check cabling, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it
772	223	102	2	Deviation between sensed intake manifold pressure is not plausible compared to environment pressure. Which sensor is not okay can not be said.	deviation between ambient pressure sensor and charge air pressure sensor at not running engine to high	1) Exchange boost pressure sensor 2) Exchange ECU
774	223	102	1	charge air pressure below lower limit	measured charge air pressure below the threshold.	Check complete air system of engine for massive leakage, especially from compressor to intake air manifold. Check air filter. Exchange charge air presure sensor.
776	223	102	3	Charge air pressure sensor: the measured voltage of sensor by ECU is out of the target range	The Sensor Voltage is above the Threshold.	Check cabling, if charge air pressure/temperature sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
777	223	102	4	Charge air pressure sensor: the measured voltage of sensor by ECU is out of the target range	The Sensor Voltage is below the Threshold.	Check cabling, if charge air pressure/temperature sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it
791	693	411	0	delta pressure across venturi in EGR line above physical high limit	sensed value of venturi difference pressure > high limit	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. EGR-Valve blocked open EGR-Valve actuator defect EGR-cooler defect (check for coolant water) Reed Valve defect Intake throttle blocked in closed position => Check intake throttle Exhaust pressure too high => Check Exhaust pressure Check Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst dp venturi sensor defect
792	693	411	1	delta pressure across venturi in EGR line below physical low limit	sensed value of venturi difference pressure < low limit	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check correct mounting of difference pressure sensor at venturi tube Exchange difference pressure sensor broken

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
793	693	411	11	DFC is stored in EEPROM and status kept until check is allowed to be carried out again DFC can be reset by service routine 216	deviation between desired O2 concentration in intake air manifold and the real O2-concentration within intake air manifold > limit	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. EGR-Valve mechanically blocked open or closed EGR-pipe blocked with metall plate instead sealing downstream EGR-Valve EGR-Valve actuator defect EGR-cooler defect (check for coolant water) Reed Valve defect Intake throttle blocked in closed position => Check intake throttle Exhaust pressure too high => Check Exhaust pressure Check Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst dp venturi sensor defect
795	693	411	3	The sensed raw voltage Air_uRawPEGRDeltaP is above the maximum threshold.	EGR Delta pressure Sensor defect	Check cabling, if charge EGR Delta pressure sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
796	693	411	4	The sensed raw voltage value Air_uRawPEGRDeltaP is above the minimum threshold.	EGR Delta pressure Sensor defect	Check cabling. If charge EGR Delta pressure sensor is not working, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
825	253	523009	9	The pressure relief valve (PRV) has reached the number of allowed activations.	Rail pressure has exceeded the trigger threshold of the pressure limiting valve.	Replace pressure relief valve (PRV) and reset fault with Serdia.
826	146	523470	2	The pressure relief valve (PRV) has been opened due to excessive pressure.	Rail pressure has exceeded the trigger threshold of the pressure limiting valve.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Reset the fault and at reappearance check injection system.
827	146	523470	2	The pressure relief valve (PRV) has been opened due to excessive pressure.	Rail pressure has exceeded the trigger threshold of the pressure limiting valve.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Reset the fault and at reappearance check injection system.
828	146	523470	12	Rail pressure relief valve: is open. Shutoff conditions.	Shut Off after PRV Open	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check PRV opening counter and if necessary replace PRV, check rail-pressure sensor for plausibility and if necessary replace it, check FCU and if necessary replace it.
829	146	523470	12	Rail pressure relief valve is open. Warning conditions.	Warning PRV open	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check PRV opening counter and if necessary replace PRV, check rail-pressure sensor for plausibility and if necessary replace it, check FCU and if necessary replace it.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
830	146	523470	14	Rail pressure relief valve is open. (PRV)	Open PRV	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Only after ECU reset. Check PRV opening counter and if necessary replace it, check rail-pressure sensor for plausibility and if necessary replace it, check FCU and if necessary replace it.
831	146	523470	11	Rail pressure relief valve can not be opened due to the railpressure.	Railpressure out of tolerance range (PRV can not be opened by a pressure peak in this operating point)	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check railpressure, check rail pressure sensor for plausibility, check FCU.
832	146	523470	11	Rail pressure is out of the expected average range. The PRV can not be opened at this operating point with a pressure shock.	Averaged rail pressure is outside the expected tolerance range.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check PRV and replace if necessary.
833	2-5-3	523009	10	The pressure relief valve (PRV) has reached the allowed opening time.	Rail pressure has exceeded the trigger threshold of the pressure limiting valve.	Replace pressure relief valve (PRV) and reset fault with Serdia.
839	1-4-3	523450	4	Diagnostic fault check for min error of COM message.	The sensed raw value is less than the threshold.	Check cabling, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
856	134	523613	0	Rail pressure: the fuel pressure in rail calculated by ECU is below the target range which is dependant on the engine speed.	Pressure governor deviation exceeds the limiting value based on the engine speed.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. (A) Check for leakage (B) Check fuel-primary pressure (C) Change components, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check fuel system and if necessary repair it
857	134	523613	0	Rail pressure: the fuel pressure in rail calculated by ECU is below the target range which is dependant on the engine speed.	maximum positive deviation of rail pressure exceeded concerning set flow of fuel.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. (A) Check for leakage (B) Check fuel-primary pressure (C) Change components, check sensor and if necessary replace it, check fuel system and if necessary repair it
858	134	523613	0	Rail pressure: the fuel pressure in rail calculated by ECU is above the target range which is dependant on the engine speed.	leakage is detected based on fuel quantity balance.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. (A) Check backflow pressure (B) Check Injector function with SerDia (C) Change components (metering unit, injector) if necessary
859	134	523613	0	Rail pressure: the fuel pressure in rail calculated by ECU is above the target range which is dependant on the engine speed.	Maximum negative rail pressure deviation with metering unit on lower limit is exceeded.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. (A) Check backflow pressure (B) Check Injector function with SerDia (C) Change components (metering unit, injector) if necessary

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
861	134	523613	1	Rail pressure: the fuel pressure in rail calculated by ECU is below the target range which is dependant on the engine speed.	Rail pressure falls below the limiting value based on the engine speed.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. (A) Check backflow pressure (B) Check Injector function with SerDia (C) Change components (metering unit, injector) if necessary
862	134	523613	0	Rail pressure: the fuel pressure in rail calculated by ECU is above the target range.	Rail pressure exceeds the limiting value.	(A) Check backflow pressure (B) Check pressure relief valve and metering unit. (C) Change components if necessary
864	134	523613	2	Rail pressure metering unit, Setpoint of metering unit in overrun mode not plausible.	Pressure pump delivery quantity in overrun exceeds the threshold based on the pressure.	Threshold for detection is an internal ECU threshold. (A) Check backflow pressure (B) Check pressure relief valve and metering unit. (C) Change components if necessary
876	146	523470	7	Rail pressure is out of the expected average range.	Rail pressure is out of the expected average range. PRV can not be opened.	(A) Check railpressure relief valve and replace if necessary. (B) Check high pressure pumps, pressure relief valve and metering unit. (C) Change components if necessary
877	147	157	3	Rail pressure sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Short cut to battery. Damaged rail pressure sensor.	Check cabling, check rail pressure sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
878	147	157	4	Rail pressure sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Check cabling, check rail pressure sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.	Check cabling, check rail pressure sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
925	148	523720	8	Supply module heater: Duration of switch on is too long.	uty cycle for temperature readout from supply module heater to the control unit is out of range; Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	When the received supply module heater temperature duty cycle SCR_rSMT is out of the failurerange (SCR_rSMFailMax_C < SCR_rSMHtrT < SCR_rSMFailMin_C) Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check the wiring.
926	148	523720	8	Supply module heater: Dutycycle timing over error threshold.	Duty cycle for temperature readout from supply module heater to the control unit is not valid. Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	When the received supply module heater duty cycle SCR_rSMHtrT is in the valid range (SCR_r- Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check the wiring.
927	689	523721	11	Supply module heater: temperature measurement not available.	Duty cycle for temperature readout from supply module heater to the control unit is not available. Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	Threshold for detection is an internal ECU threshold. No erasing in the current driving cycle. Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check the wiring.
928	928	691	8	Supply module heater: PWM time periode out of valid range.	PWM signal for temperature readout from supply module to the control unit is out of range. Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	The Time period of the received PWM signal SCR_tiSMPerPwm is within the specified range of 150ms to 250ms Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check the wiring.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
929	691	523722	8	Supply module heater: Faulty PWM signal from supply module.	PWM Signal for temperature readout from supply module to the control unit is not valid. Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. When valid Sync followed by temperature information signal is received AND valid sync and temperaturesignal for both information is received one after the other. Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check the wiring.
930	689	523721	8	Supply module heater: Dutycycle timing over error threshold.	Duty cycle for temperature readout from supply module to the control unit is out of range. Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check the wiring.
931	689	523721	8	Supply module heater: Dutycycle timing out of valid range.	Duty cycle for temperature readout from supply module to the control unit is not valid. Supply modul defect, fault in the wiring.	When the received supply module duty cycle SCR_rSMT is in the valid range (SCR_rSMTVld-Min_C <= SCR_rSMT <= SCR_rSMTVldMax_C), OR in the failure range (SCR_rSMFailMin_C <=SCR_rSMT <= SCR_rSMFailMax_C) Supply module check and replace if necessary. Check wiring.
932	1-2-6	29	3	Diagnostic fault check of short circuit to supply voltage (signal range check high) of acceleration pedal signal.	The signal exceeds the applicatable threshold; signal range violation	If the signal is below the applicatable threshold APP_uRawSRCHiHTLIS_C, the signal range violation is reset after the healing debouncing. In case when the CCP is active (CCP_stActive = 1)and the reading from the EEPROM memory is successful, the signal is below the threshold APP_uHTLISCCPHi[1], a signal range violation is reset after debouncing.
935	2-2-6	91	3	Analog accelerator pedal sensor 1 or double accelerator pedal sensor: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range or the calculated pedal position is implausible compared with the position of the second pedal	Sensor defect. Short cut to battery or open loop.	Check cabling, check accelerator pedal sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it. If the signal is below the applicatable threshold APP_uRaw1SRCHigh_C, the signal range violation is reset after the healing debouncing.
937	1-2-6	29	4	Diagnostic fault check of short circuit to ground (signal range check low) of acceleration pedal signal	The signal is below the applicatable threshold; signal range violation	If the signal exceeds the applicatable threshold APP_uRawSRCLoHTLIS_C, the signal range violation is reset after the healing debouncing. In case when the CCP is active (CCP_stActive = 1)and the reading from the EEPROM memory is successful, the signal exceeds the threshold APP_uHTLISCCPLo[1], a signal range violation is reset after debouncing.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
940	2-2-6	91	4	Analog accelerator pedal sensor 1 or double accelerator pedal sensor: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range or the calculated pedal position is implausible compared with the position of the second pedal	Short circuit to ground.	Check cabling, check accelerator pedal sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it If the signal exceeds the applicatable threshold APP_uRaw1SRCLow_C, the signal range violation is reset after the healing
946	282	1079	13	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU detects a deviation of the target range of the power supply voltage of sensor output 1.	Suspected components EDC17cv52 Pin A19: DEF press / Exh.PressBeforeTurb (P3) / Air Pump Press /BrnFuelPressAfterDV2 Pin K19: Fan Speed Sensor Pin A21: LDF6T / OilPress / LowFuelPress Pin A17: Rail Pressure Sensor Suspected components EDC17cv54 Pin A21: CAM speed Pin K44: Delta Press Venturi / Poti EGR or Inlet Throttle Pin A24: LDF6T / OilPress / LowFuelPressPin K43: Reserve 5V Sensor Supply Pin A09: second footpedal Suspected components EDC17cv56 Pin A21: Cam speed Pin K44: DEF press / Air FilterDiffPress Pin A24: LDF6T / OilPress / LowFuelPress Pin K43: second footpedal Pin A09: Delta Press Venturi	Check cabling of external components, check working voltage and if necessary correct it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it, if error is not removable, change ECU.
947	282	1080	13	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU detects a deviation of the target range of the power supply voltage of sensor output 2.	Suspected components EDC17cv52 Pin K16: second footpedal Pin A20: Exh.PressAfterTurb/DPFDiffPress/ BrnDV1Press/HCIPressDV1DV2 Suspected components EDC17cv54 Pin K45: DPF Diff Press / Exh. Press After Turb / Fan Speed Sensor Pin A46: first footpedal Suspected components EDC17cv56 Pin A22: Fan Speed Sensor Pin K45: Position EGR or Intake throttle flap Pin K46: First footpedal	Check cabling of external components, check working voltage and if necessary correct it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it, if error is not removable, change ECU.
948	282	523601	13	Internal hardware monitoring: the ECU detects a deviation of the target range of the power supply voltage of sensor output 3.	Suspected components EDC17cv52 Pin A18: DeltaPressVenturi / Position intake throttle flap Pin K20: First footpedal Pin K21: Air FilterDiffPress Suspected components EDC17cv54 and cv56 Pin A07: Rail pressure	Check cabling of external components, check working voltage and if necessary correct it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it, if error is not removable, change ECU.
956	512	677	3	Start relay (high side power stage): the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range.	Short cut HighSide-output to battery.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling and start relay and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
957	512	677	4	Start relay (high side power stage): the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range.	Shortcut HighSide-output to ground.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling and start relay and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
958	512	677	5	Start relay (low side power stage): the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range	Open circuit/disconnection LowSide-Output.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling and start relay and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
959	512	677	12	Start relay (low side power stage): the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range.	Temperature over limit.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling and start relay and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
960	512	677	3	Start relay (low side power stage): the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range.	Shortcut LowSide-Output to battery.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling and start relay and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
961	512	677	4	Start relay (low side power stage): the current drop measured by ECU is above the target range.	Shortcut LowSide-Output to ground.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling and start relay and if necessary replace it, check connection cable of terminal 50 and if necessary repair or replace it.
973	555	523612	14	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory.	Visibility of Softwareresets in DSM	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold.
974	555	523612	14	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory.	Visibility of Softwareresets in DSM	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold.
975	555	523612	14	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Visibility of SoftwareResets in DSM	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. If possible the software update has to be done. Replace the ECU.
976	2-2-6	91	11	Diagnostic fault check of synchronism of single potentiometer and Low idle switch(LIS).	Measured voltage of accelerator pedal 1 is out of plausible range.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling, check accelerator pedal and pedal sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it. When the PWM period APP_tiPWMPer is in between APP_tiSRCLoPWMPer_C and APP_tiSRCHiPWMPer_C.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
978	1-2-6	29	2	Diagnostic fault check of synchronism of hand throttle and Low idle switch(LIS).	Plausibility error between sensor and idle switch	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. The accelerator pedal must have detected full load and idle plausibility at least once.
980	515	523550	12	Terminal 50 was operated for more than 2 minutes. This may happen due to short to battery or wrong usage of Terminal 50. Starter control is disabled until this error is healed.	Startinformation to Starter (T50-switch) erratic/defect.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check cabling, if sensor not working, check start switch and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
992	128	105	1	Charged Air cooler down stream temperature. Temperature below lower physical threshold.	Sensed temperature within intake air manifold < threshold.	actual temperature below -40°C? exchange sensor
994	128	105	3	Charge air temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Short circuit to battery. sensor voltage > limit	The sensor raw signal Air_uRawTCACDs (voltage) > Air_SRCTCACDs.uMin_C. Check CAC-sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
995	128	105	4	Charge air temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Short circuit to ground or open load. sensor voltage < limit.	The sensor raw signal Air_uRawTCACDs (voltage) is below Air_SRCTCACDs.uMin_C. Check CAC-sensor and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it
996	233	105	0	Charge air temperature downstream calculated by ECU is above the target range. The ECU activates a system reaction.	Charge air temperature (downstream) over warning threshold.	Check CAC system and clean it. Check fan functionality. Check cooling perfomance with temperature measurement.
997	233	105	0	Charge air temperature downstream calculated by ECU is under the shut down threshold. The ECU activates a system reaction.	Charge air temperature (downstream) over the low threshold.	Check CAC system and clean it. Check fan functionality. Check cooling perfomance with temperature measurement.
1007	682	412	3	EGR downstream temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Short circuit to battery. sensor voltage > limit	Check wiring harness to TEGR-sensor. Exchange TEGR-sensor.
1008	682	412	4	EGR downstream temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range.	Short circuit to ground or open load. sensor voltage < limit	Check wiring harness to TEGR-sensor. Exchange TEGR-sensor.
1011	771	523960	0	Physical range check high for EGR cooler downstream temperature.	Sensed temperature downstream EGR-cooler > limit.	EGR-Valve blocked open EGR-Valve actuator defect EGR-cooler defect (check for coolant water) Reed Valve defect Intake throttle blocked in closed position Exhaust pressure too high Check Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst dp venturi sensor defect

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1012	771	523960	1	Physical range check low for EGR cooler downstream temperature.	sensor voltage > lower limit	EGR-Valve blocked open EGR-Valve actuator defect EGR-cooler defect (check for coolant water) Reed Valve defect Intake throttle blocked in closed position Exhaust pressure too high Check Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst dp venturi sensor defect
1014	594	5763	6	Actuator error EGR-Valve. Signal range check high.	Short cut to batterie.	Check wiring and repair or replace if necessary, check actuator with SERDIA test for EGR and if necessary replace it.
1015	594	520521	5	Actuator error EGR-Valve. Signal range check low.	Short cut to ground.	Check wiring and repair or replace if necessary, check actuator with SERDIA test for EGR and if necessary replace it.
1016	594	5763	7	Actuator position for EGR valve is not plausible, internal error, angular misalignement of the flap.	Position error of throttle flap (deviation > 7%).	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Threshold for error detection, deviation from setpoint > 7%. Troubleshooting with SERDIA 2010 Use Case "EGR Diagnostic".
1022	5-9-4	5763	6	Actuator error EGR-Valve; signal range check high, measured current by ECU is over target	Short circuit to battery or open circuit.	Check cabling, actuator defect, check actuator and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
1023	5-9-4	5763	5	Actuator error EGR-Valve; signal range check low, measured current is below target	Short circuit to ground.	Check wiring, check cabels and repair or replace if necessary, check actuator with SERDIA 2010 test for EGR and if necessary replace it.
1024	594	5763	3	Actuator of the external EGR valve: the ECU detects a short circuit to battery or open load.	Short cut to battery or open loop.	Check cabling, actuator defect, check actuator and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.
1025	594	5763	4	Actuator of the external EGR valve: the ECU detects a short circuit to ground.	Short cut to ground	Check cabling, actuator defect, check actuator and if necessary replace it, check connection cable and if necessary repair or replace it.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1036	683	4768	2	Static plausibility check: The exhaust temperature value from the sensor before DOC, the exhaust temperature value from the sensor after DOC, the temperature value from the sensor before SCR-Cat, the environment temperature and the coolant engine temperature their ratios to each other exceed their related thresholds. Dynamic plausibility check with environment temperature sensor value: The exhaust temperature value from the sensor before DOC is lower than an applicable environment temperature threshold	Static plausibility check: The exhaust temperature value from the sensor before DOC, the exhaust temperature value from the sensor after DOC, the temperature value from the sensor before SCR-Cat, the environment temperature and the coolant engine temperature their ratios to each other exceed their related thresholds. (difference between temperature after DOC and temperature before DOC > Threshold 1 difference between temperature befor DOC and before SCR > Threshold 2 difference between temperature after DOC and before SCR < Threshold 3 difference between temperature after DOC and ambinet temperature < Threshold 4 differnece between temperatur ambient temperature and engine temperature < Threshold 5) Dynamic plausibility check with environment temperature sensor value: The exhaust temperature value from the sensor before DOC is lower than an applicable environment temperature threshold (< environmental temperature + Threshold 6)	Check ambient temperature => value plausible? upstream DOC sensor mounted within exhaust line? T upstream DOC sensor physically mounted in correct position upstream DOC? (not upstream SCR or downstream DOC?) Check T upstream DOC sensor Check other T-sensors within EAT-system (Exh_tOxiCatDs & UCatUsT_tFlt_mp show plausible values? No errors on them?
1039	683	4765	0	The exhaust temperature value from the sensor befor DOC is above an applicable upper shutoff threshold TOxiCatUs_tShOffThresHiAds_C = Threshold 1 in Normal and Heatmodes (TOxiCatUs_tShOffThresHiRgn_C = Threshold 2 in stand-still)	sensed temperature upstream DOC > shut-off limit	Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Check Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function Check injectors: is an injector got stuck? Exchange temperature sensor upstream DOC
1040	683	4765	0	The exhaust temperature value from the sensor befor DOC is above an applicable upper warning threshold TOxiCatUs_tWarnThresHi_C = Threshold	Sensed temperature upstream DOC > warning limit	Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function Check injectors: is an injector got stuck? Exchange temperature sensor upstream DOC
1044	683	4768	3	Oxidation catalyst upstream temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	The sensed raw voltage value Exh_uRawTOxiCatUs is above Exh_SRCTOxiCatUs.uMax_C Shortcut to battery	Check wiring harness to temperature sensor upstream DOC Exchange temperature sensor upstream DOC
1045	683	4768	4	Oxidation catalyst upstream temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	The sensed raw voltage value Exh_uRawTOxiCatUs is below Exh_SRCTOxiCatUs.uMin_C Shortcut to ground	Check wiring harness to temperature sensor upstream DOC Exchange temperature sensor upstream DOC

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1069	668	4360	0	The filtered urea cat upstream temperature is greater than an applicable maximum temperature threshold	Sensed temperature upstream SCR > physical high limit	Check temperature difference across DOC (Exh_tOxiCatDs-Exh_TOxiCatUs) at higher engine load => high difference > 100 K? If yes, the engine emitts too many Hydrocarbons => check injectors: is an injector got stuck? => Check EGR Valve If difference normal the exhaust out of the engie itself is too hot: => Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function If that error was set while stand-still operation the error source could be exothermal soot burn off in DPF (which should not happen) => Dismount DPF and check it visually exchange temperature sensor upstream SCR
1070	668	4360	1	The filtered temperature before urea cat is less than an applicable minimum temperature threshold	Sensed temperature upstream SCR catalyst < than physical low limit	Cold start and ambient temperature < Threshold? Missdetection? Check wiring harness to UCatUsT-sensor Exchange UCatUsT-sensor
1072	668	4361	3	Urea catalyst upstream temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	Voltage of temperature sensor upstream SCR catalyst > maximum limit Short circuit to battery	Check sensor Check wiring Replace UCatUsT-sensor
1073	668	4361	4	Urea catalyst upstream temperature sensor: the voltage of sensor measured by ECU is out of the target range	Voltage of temperature sensor upstream SCR catalyst < minimum limit Short circuit to ground	Check sensor Check wiring Replace UCatUsT-sensor
1075	677	3361	6	Urea dosing valve: the current measured value by ECU at the end of the injection is too high	Fault in the wiriing Defect urea dosing injection valve	Check wiring Check the urea dosing injection valve
1077	677	3361	3	Urea dosing valve (low side power stage): the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Fault in the wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold See substitute function Check the wiring
1078	677	3361	3	Urea dosing valve (high side power stage): the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Fault in the wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check the wiring
1079	677	3361	4	Urea dosing valve (low side power stage): the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Fault in the wiring	Check the wiring
1080	677	3361	4	Urea dosing valve (high side power stage): the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Fault in the wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check the wiring
1090	674	4345	5	Urea backflow line heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Open load If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring, broken heating element in backflow line	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check heating element

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1092	674	4345	3	Urea backflow line heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to battery If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Short cut to battery or broken wiring, broken heating element in backflow line	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check heating element
1093	674	4345	4	Urea backflow line heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Short cut to ground or broken wiring, broken heating element in backflow line	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check heating element
1094	673	4343	5	Urea pressure line heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Open load If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring, broken heating element in pressure line	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check heating element
1096	673	4343	3	Urea pressure line heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	shortcut to battery If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 broken heating element in pressure line	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check heating element
1097	673	4343	4	Urea pressure line heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Short cut to ground or broken wiring, broken heating element in pressure line	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check heating element
1098	676	523718	5	Urea heater relay: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Open load If this error detected during the heating phase it is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring broken relay	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Test SCR main relay Check cabling, if necessary replace relay.
1100	676	523718	3	Urea heater relay: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to battery If this error detected during the heating phase it is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring, broken relay	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check SCR main relay
1101	676	523718	4	Urea heater relay: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground If this error detected during the heating phase it is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring, broken relay	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check SCR main relay
1102	675	4341	5	Urea heater supply line: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	electrical error	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wire harness Check supply line
1104	675	4341	3	Urea heater supply line: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	electrical error	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wire harness Check supply line
1105	675	4341	4	Urea heater supply line: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	electrical error	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wire harness Check supply line

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1106	672	523719	5	Urea supply module heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Open load If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Heating element in supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check cabling, if necessary replace supply module
1108	672	5232719	3	Urea supply module heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Short circuit to battery If this error detected during the heating phase it is a result error:KWP 1089 Broken wiring Heating element in supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check cabling, if necessary replace supply module
1109	672	523719	4	Urea supply module heater: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground If this error detected during the heating phase it is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Heating element in supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check cabling, if necessary replace supply module
1110	671	4366	5	Urea tank heating valve: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Open load If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Urea tank heating valve defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check urea tank heating valve
1112	671	4366	3	Urea tank heating valve: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to battery If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Urea tank heating valve defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check urea tank heating valve
1113	671	4366	4	Urea tank heating valve: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Urea tank heating valve defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check urea tank heating valve
1117	666	523632	11	Urea supply module pump: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	When the pump motor does not switch to pump actuation mode after temperature measurement has been carried out.	Threshold for error is an internal ECU threshold
1118	666	4375	5	Urea supply module pump: the ECU can not measure any reaction during pump control	Open load Broken wiring Pump in urea supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold The hardware detects the presence of load on the PWM output power stage for the urea pump module actuator. Check wiring Check pump in the urea supply module
1120	666	4375	3	Urea supply module pump: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to battery If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Pump in urea supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold The hardware detects absence of any short circuit to battery on the PWM output power stage for the urea pump module actuator Check wiring Check pump in the urea supply module

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1121	666	4375	4	Urea supply module pump: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground If this error detected during the heating phase is a result error: KWP 1089 Broken wiring Pump in urea supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold The hardware detects a short circuit to ground error on the PWM output power stage for the UreaPump Module Motor Actuator. The error is updated by setting bit 1 of measuring point UPmp-Mot_stPrevTstRslt_mp Check wiring Check pump in the urea supply module
1122	665	4334	0	The absolute pressure value of the urea pump is greater than an applicable maximal filtered pressure threshold	Suspected Components: Urea pump defect Supply module pressure sensor defect Pump contains dirty parts	Check the urea pump Check the supply module pressur sensor Clean the urea pump (filter)
1123	665	4334	1	Urea supply module pressure sensor: The absolute pressure value of the urea pump is less than an applicable minimal filtered pressure threshold	Check the urea pump Check the supply module pressur sensor Clean the urea pump (filter)	Check the urea pump Check the supply module pressur sensor Clean the urea pump (filter)
1127	665	523632	3	Urea supply module pressure sensor: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to battery Broken wiring Pressure sensor in urea supply module defect	Check wiring Check pressure sensor in urea supply module
1128	665	523632	4	Urea supply module pressure sensor: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range The sensed raw voltage value SCR_uRawUPmpP is above SCR_SRCUPmpP.uMin_C	Shortcut to ground Broken wiring Pressure sensor in urea supply module defect	Check wiring Check pressure sensor in urea supply module
1129	667	4376	5	Urea supply module reversal valve: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Open load Fault in the wiring Reversal valve in the urea supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check urea supply modul
1131	667	4376	3	Urea supply module reversal valve: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to battery Fault in the wiring Reversal valve in the urea supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check urea supply modul
1132	667	4376	4	Urea supply module reversal valve: the current drain measured by ECU is above the target range	Shortcut to ground Fault in the wiring Reversal valve in the urea supply module defect	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold Check wiring Check urea supply modul

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1135	669	3031	0	The urea tank temperature sensor detects a value above the maximum allowed threshold	Sensed urea tank temperature > physical range high limit	Case "CANBUS sensor": Check urea tank temperature: really hot? Check CANBus-message of DEF sensor urea tank temperature Com_dRxSCR2Byt2 Compare it to Com_dRxSCR1Byt1 (urea temperature at quality sensor) identical? Tank heater permantly on? Check wiring of DEF-quality sensor Case "analog DEF T & Level sensor": Check urea tank temperature: really hot? Check urea tank temperature SCR_tSensUTnkT Compare urea tank temperature to EnvT_t or to SCR_tSMT (the urea temperature inside the supply module) identical? Tank heater permantly on? Check wiring of analog DEF T & Level sensor
1136	669	3031	1	The urea tank temperature sensor detects a value lower than the minimum allowed threshold.	sensed urea tank temperature < physical range low limit	Case "CANBUS sensor": Check ambient temperature EnvT_t => About -40 °C? If yes Error could be plausible Check CANBus-message of DEF sensor urea tank temperature Com_dRxSCR2Byt2 Compare it to Com_dRxSCR1Byt1 (urea temperature at quality sensor) identical? Check wiring of DEF-quality sensor Check quality sensor Case "analog DEF T & Level sensor": Check urea tank temperature: really that cold? Check ambient temperature EnvT_t => About -40 °C? If yes Error could be plausible Check urea tank temperature SCR_tSensUTnkT Check wiring of analog DEF T & Level sensor Check analog DEF T & Level sensor
1137	6-6-9	4365	2	Signal error in case of Urea tank temperature trnasmitted via CAN-signal Com_tUTnkT.	CAN message is not send properly.	Check sensor connector Check CANbus
1138	6-6-9	4365	3	Urea tank temperature sensor: he current drain measured by ECU is above the target range.	Shortcut or open load.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. The Sensed raw voltage value SCR_uRawUTnkT is below SCR_SRCUTnkT.uMax_C. Check wiring.
1139	6-6-9	4365	4	Urea tank temperature sensor: he current drain measured by ECU is above the target range.	Shortcut or open load.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. The sensed raw voltage value SCR_uRawUTnkT is above SCR_SRCUTnkT.uMin_C. Check wiring.
1157	228	97	12	Fuel filter water level sensor: the maximum level is exceeded	Water level in fuel pre-filter reservoir over limit (bad fuel quality)	Measure Voltage at Water in Fuel Sensor and renew harness if needed.
1170	555	523612	12	Internal hardware monitoring: the CPU of the ECU is reset and the cause is logged internally; no item will be created in error memory	Error during positive test (ECU internal error). Diagnostic fault check to report that the positive test failed	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Reflash ECU. If error is still activ replace ECU.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1180	318	168	0	Battery voltage: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range	Battery voltage over limit	Check alternator, regulator of alternator and if necessary replace it, check wiring and voltage of alternator
1181	318	168	1	Battery voltage: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range	Battery voltage below limit	Check alternator, cabling, contact resistance, safety fuses, too high load in energy system, check battery and if necessary replace it
1183	226	172	1	sensed air temperature within air intake path of engine below physical low limit	sensed air temperature within air intake path of engine below physical low limit	Cold start and ambient temperature < threshold Check wiring harness to AFST-sensor Exchange AFST-sensor
1222	2-1-2	190	14	Camshaft- and Crankshaft speed sensor signal not available on CAN or defect.	Sensors for engine speed are defect.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, check cabels and repair or replace if necessary.
1223	594	5763	6	Actuator EGR-Valve: Open load on ECU output is detected	Open circuit on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Check repair with SerDia 2010 use case
1224	594	5763	6	Actuator EGR-valve: too high curent is going into the actuator. Output is switched off	Overload on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Check repair with SerDia 2010 use case
1226	594	5763	3	Actuator EGR-valve: short cut to battery is detected	Short-Circuit to battery on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Check repair with SerDia 2010 use case
1227	594	5763	3	Actuator EGR-valve: short cut to battery on ECU pin is detected	Short-Circuit to battery on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Check repair with SerDia 2010 use case
1228	594	5763	4	Actuator EGR-valve: short cut to ground on ECU pin is detected	Short-Circuit to ground on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Check repair with SerDia 2010 use case
1229	594	5763	4	Actuator EGR-valve: short cut to battery on ECU pin is detected	Short-Circuit to ground on component	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Check repair with SerDia 2010 use case
1230	5-9-4	5763	6	Actuator error EGR-valve; Overload by short-circuit	Short Circuit over Load	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component
1231	5-9-4	5763	11	Power stage overtemperature due to high current.	Temperature dependent Over Current	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component
1232	5-9-4	5763	4	Actuator error EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); Voltage below threshold 3.6) Drosselklappe (4.1;6.1;7.8); Voltage below threshold;	Monitoring for CY146 Under Voltage.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1239	788	523984	3	Actuator relay 5: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range	Short-Circuit to battery to component	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU
1241	176	523986	4	Actuator relay 4: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range	Short-Circuit to ground to component	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU
1242	791	523987	4	Actuator relay 5: the voltage measured by ECU is out of the target range	Short-Circuit to ground to component	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU
1337	565	2797	4	Injector diagnosis: Timeout of Injetor detection cylinder bank 0	Short-Circuit to ground on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Note: affected injector has to be evaluated according to firing order
1338	566	2798	4	Injector diagnosis: Timeout of Injetor detection cylinder bank 1	Short-Circuit to ground on component wiring	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check wiring, component, ECU Note: affected injector has to be evaluated according to firing order
1339	565	2797	4	Injector test: Short cut to ground on cylinder bank 0	Short-Circuit to ground on component wiring	Check wiring, component, ECU Note: affected injector has to be evaluated according to firing order
1340	566	2798	4	Injector test: Short cut to ground on cylinder bank 1	Short-Circuit to ground on component wiring	Check wiring, component, ECU Note: affected injector has to be evaluated according to firing order
1381	839	164	2	Rail pressure safety function is not executed correctly	Rail pressure is still above threshold.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Reset the fault and at reappearance check ECU and injection system
1398	681	1136	0	ECU internal temperature; temperature measured by ECU is out of the target range	Short-Circuit in ECU, ECU heated by hot air	Close warm air circuits, replace ECU
1425	226	172	0	sensed intake air temperature at air filter > physical high limit	sensed intake air temperature at air filter > physical high limit	Check outside conditions: Temperature > Threshold within the intake air system of the engine? E.G: engine sucks in air from hot asphalt out of paver bucket Sensor positioned within black air filter housing above engine lid at hot environmental conditions and idling or similar? => if yes check with application team to adapt limits if not check sensor and wiring harness exchange sensor
1434	8-3-6	524050	11	CAN; not used	not used	not used
1435	8-3-7	524051	11	CAN; not used	not used	not used

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1455	711	3711	12	Temperature Phy_tPfWgh, the weighted DPF temperature < Threshold 1 Temperature Phy_tPfWgh, the weighted DPF temperature > Threshold 2 towards the end of the stand-still main phase.	temperature Phy_tPfWgh, the weighted DPF temperature, is below or above the target temperature towards the end of the stand-still main phase.	Check temperature upstream DOC Exh_tSensOxiCatUs within Stand-still: > 450 °C? If not: => Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function Check temperature difference across DOC by Exh_tSensOxiCatDs - Exh_tSensOxiCatUs within Stand-still: < 100°C? If not: Check exhaust pipe downstream turbo charger for oil? check injectors: is an injector got stuck? Too many hydrocarbons in exhaust? White smoke (at hot EAT system, not at cold start)? Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function Check exhaust gas temperature sensors within EAT-system: T upstream DOCC, T downstream DOC & T upstream SCR catalyst all three of them can influence Phy_tPfWgh
1505	8-4-3	524057	2	Low fuel pressure: the low fuel pressure calculated by ECU is underneath the target range; the ECU activates a system reaction	Fuel pressure below warning threshold	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check low fuel pressure system (fuel feed pump, relay , fuse, wiring, sensor) and if necessary repair or replace it.
1533	246	524074	9	Open load sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR	Open load sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check NOx-Sensor downstream SCR catalyst: water inside? Shake out sensor after dismounting. => If water inside, replace sensor. Check mounting position of sensor and judge it regarding condense water formation / agglomeration. Check wiring harness Exchange sensor
1534	247	524075	11	Short circuit sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR	Short circuit sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check NOx-Sensor downstream SCR catalyst: water inside? Shake out sensor after dismounting. => If water inside, replace sensor. Check mounting position of sensor and judge it regarding condense water formation / agglomeration? Rearrange if critical and possible Check wiring harness Exchange sensor

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1535	248	524076	9	Open line sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR NOx Sensors are CAN Sensors --> no HW Pin on the ECU	Open line sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check NOx-Sensor upstream SCR catalyst: water inside? Shake out sensor after dismounting. => If water inside, replace sensor. Check mounting position of sensor and judge it regarding condense water formation / agglomeration. Check wiring harness Exchange sensor
1536	249	524077	11	Short circuit sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR NOx Sensors are CAN Sensors --> no HW Pin on the ECU	Short circuit sensor internally at NOx-sensor downstream SCR	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check NOx-Sensor upstream SCR catalyst: water inside? Shake out sensor after dismounting. => If water inside, replace sensor. Check mounting position of sensor and judge it regarding condense water formation / agglomeration. Check wiring harness Exchange sensor
1537	255	524078	9	Lambda value of NOx-Sensor downstream SCR is out of range. When the filtered Lambda concentration value at the sensor (ComRxSCR_rFltLamDs_mp) is greater than the physical range check max. lambda threshold	sensed lambda value of Nox-sensor downstream SCR catalyst is > physical high limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamDs_mp > threshold	Check whether NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst is physically mounted within the exhaust line Check Lambda values of NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalystat at idle conditions, ComRxSCR_rCanLamDs_mp > threshold? Compare to ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp. Values must be almost identical Check CANBus of NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst Check NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst wiring Check NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst itself Replace NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1538	256	524079	9	sensed lambda value of NOx-sensor down-stream SCR catalyst is < physical low limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamDs_mp < threshold	sensed lambda value of NOx-sensor down-stream SCR catalyst is < physical low limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamDs_mp < threshold	Compare to ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp. ComRxSCR_rCanLamDs_mp must be almost identical! If almost identical, Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function Check injection system of engine. Injector stuck? if sensed lambda upstream SCR higher (ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp) : Diesel in Urea-tank? Check CANBus of NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst Check NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst wiring Check NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst itself Replace NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst
1539	257	524080	9	sensed lambda value of Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst is > physical high limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp > Threshold	sensed lambda value of Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst is > physical high limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp > Threshold	Check whether NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst is physically mounted within the exhaust line Check Lambda values of NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalystat at idle conditions, ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp < Threshold? Compare to ComRxSCR_rCanLamDs_mp. Must be almost identical Check CANBus of NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst wiring Check NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst itself Replace NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst
1540	258	524081	9	sensed lambda value of Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst is < physical low limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp < Threshold	sensed lambda value of Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst is < physical low limit ComRxSCR_rCanLamUs_mp < Threshold	Check air path of engine: EGR-Valve, Intake-Throttle, Turbocharger and Piping each for leakage and correct function Check injection system of engine. Injector stuck? Check CANBus of NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst wiring Check NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst itself Replace NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst
1542	261	524083	9	sensed NOx-value of NOx-sensor down-stream SCR catalyst < Threshold	sensed Nox-value of Nox-sensor downstream SCR catalyst < physical low limit	Check CANBus of NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst Check NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst wiring Check NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst itself Replace NOx-sensor downstream SCR catalyst

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1544	912	524085	9	sensed Nox-value of Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst < Threshold	sensed Nox-value of Nox-sensor upstream SCR catalyst < physical low limit	Check CANBus of NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst wiring Check NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst itself Replace NOx-sensor upstream SCR catalyst
1555	869	524063	5	Urea backflow line heater: broken wiring detected Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	Open Load on wiring to component	Check wiring, component
1556	869	524063	5	Urea main relay: broken wiring detected Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	relay defect relay not connected wiring harness broken problems with supply voltage	Check wiring, component
1557	869	524063	5	Urea pressure line heater: broken wiring detected Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	Open load on wiring to component	Check wiring, component
1558	869	524063	3	SCR heater mainrelay; short circuit to battery Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	Short-Circuit to battery on wiring to component	Check wiring, component
1559	869	524063	4	Connection between heating valve (Y31) on the control unit Pin A:92 and Load side SCR heater main relay (K31) is a short cut to ground. Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	Faulty wiring, faulty heater relay (K27-K31), defective heating valve (Y31), broken element in heating.	Disconnect plug from heating valve (Y31) and reset fault. If fault is still present you have to look in the wiring of Y31 to the control unit Pin A:92. If error is no longer present, you have to check the wiring of Y31 via relay K31 and possibly the heating cables and relay (K27-K30).
1560	869	524063	5	SCR relay for suction line not connected Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	relay defect relay not connected wiring harness broken problems with supply voltage	Check wiring, component
1561	869	524063	5	Open load on wiring to component Threshold 1 < SCRHtr_rUHtrMeasRatio_mp < Threshold 2	Open load on wiring to component	Check wiring, component
1562	869	524063	5	SCR heater tank; open load	Open load on wiring to component	Check wiring, component

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1565	892	524065	0	The relativ pressure value of the exhaust gas from the urea cat upstream sensor is greater than an applicable maximum pressure threshold	sensed presure upstream SCR catalyst > physical high range limit f(exhaust volume flow) UCatUsP_pRelFlt_mp > UCatUsP_pMax_mp	Check for crystallisation in exhaust line upstream SCR and dwnstream of urea injector Check correct connection from exhaust line to pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst: syphons?, water in tube?, water in sensor? Check that exhaust pipe outlet is free (downstream SCR catalyst) Check wiring of pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst: sensor has no connection to vehicle body? => Ensure that sensor is free Does sensor oscillate heavely at engine low idle / high idle? => try to supress the oscillating Exchange pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check calculated exhaust volume flow of engine within EDC: SCR_dvolSCRUs pausible? If not: Check T sensor upstream SCR catalyst, check complete engine air path: EGR-Valve, Intake throttle, turbocharger, piping for leakage and function Check SCR catalyst: Broken? Exchange SCR-Catalyst
1566	892	524065	1	The relativ pressure value of the exhaust gas from the urea cat upstream sensor is less than an applicable minimum pressure threshold	sensed presure upstream SCR catalyst > physical high range limit f(exhaust volume flow) UCatUsP_pRelFlt_mp < UCatUsP_pMin_mp	Check correct connection from exhaust line to pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst: leakage? Check electric connector: 4h pin open / new connector type used? pressure exchange from inside electrical connector with the environemt possible Check exhaust line: any leakages upstream of SCR catalyst? Check wiring of pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Exchange pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check calculated exhaust volume flow of engine within EDC: SCR_dvolSCRUs pausible? If not: Check T sensor upstream SCR catalyst, check complete engine air path: EGR-Valve, Intake throttle, turbocharger, piping for leakage and function Check SCR catalyst: Broken? Exchange SCR-Catalyst
1569	892	524065	3	voltage of pressure sensor upstream SCR > voltage high limit	voltage of pressure sensor upstream SCR > voltage high limit	Check wiring of pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Exchange pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1570	892	524065	4	voltage of pressure sensor upstream SCR < voltage low limit	voltage of pressure sensor upstream SCR < voltage low limit	Check wiring of pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst. Check pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst. Exchange pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst
1581	894	524067	0	Filtered urea supply module heater temperature value is above an applicable maximum heater temperature threshold of the supply module The temperature is read out via the PWM signal of the urea pump. That is only possible in status init of the SCR-system short after ignition was switched on. When that state is left the sensed temperature value is frozen.	sensed temperature of supply module heater > physical high range limit	Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT. Both show the same value? Check urea tank temperature (SCR_tAdapUTnkT). Very hot (> 70°C), urea tank heater permanet on? Does the pump never stop working? Check wiring to supply module Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT. Both show different values or urea tank temperature (SCR_tAdapUTnkT) is cold: exchange urea pump unit Supply module heater temperature sensor defect Supply module heater defect Supply module defect
1582	894	524067	1	Filtered urea supply module heater temperature value is below an applicable minimum heater temperature threshold of the supply module The temperature is read out via the PWM signal of the urea pump. That is only possible in status init of the SCR-system short after ignition was switched on. When that state is left the sensed temperature value is frozen.	sensed temperature of supply module heater < threshold	Check ambient temperature EnvT_t < Threshold? Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT Check wiring with regard to supply modul heater exchange urea pump unit Supply module heater temperature sensor defect Supply module defect
1585	894	524067	0	Filtered urea supply module temperature value (SCR_tSMT) is above an applicable maximum temperature threshold of the supply module The temperature is read out via the PWM signal of the urea pump. That is only possible in status init of the SCR-system short after ignition was switched on. When that state is left the sensed temperature value is frozen.	sensed temperature of urea within supply module > physical high range limit	Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT. Both show the same value? Check urea tank temperature (SCR_tAdapUTnkT). Very hot (> 70°C), ure tank heater permanet on? Does the pump never stop working? Check wiring to supply module Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT. Both show different values or urea tank temperature (SCR_tAdapUTnkT) is cold: exchange urea pump unit Supply module temperature sensor defect Supply module heater defect Supply module defect

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1586	894	524067	1	Filtered urea supply module temperature (SCR_tSMT) value is below an applicable minimum temperature threshold of the supply module The temperature is read out via the PWM signal of the urea pump. That is only possible in status init of the SCR-system short after ignition was switched on. When that state is left the sensed temperature value is frozen.	sensed temperature of urea within supply module < physical low range limit	Check ambient temperature EnvT_t < threshold? Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT Check wiring with regard to supply modul heater exchange urea pump unit Supply module temperature sensor defect Supply module defect
1593	129	1761	0	The urea tank level sensor detects a value higher than the maximum allowed threshold	Suspected components: Urea Quality Sensor defect mechanical defect at the float gauge	Check level sensor and float gauge
1594	129	1761	1	The DEF tank level sensor detects a value lower than the minimum allowed threshold	Suspected components: Urea Quality Sensor defect mechanical defect at the float gauge	Check level sensor and float gauge
1598	892	524065	2	Comparison of urea cat upstream exhaust gas- and environment pressure, the difference should not exceed a certain limit abs(UCatUsP_pDiffEnvCat_mp) > Threshold	absolut value of difference between sensed pressure upstream SCR catalyst and environmental pressure > limit abs(UCatUsP_pDiffEnvCat_mp) > Threshold	Check electric connector: 4h pin open / new connector type used? pressure exchange from inside electrical connector with the environemt possible? water in sensor? sensor frozen? Check wiring of pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Exchange pressure sensor upstream SCR catalyst Check intake manifold pressure sensor (Air_pCACDs) Check ambient pressure sensor (EnvP_p)

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1639	966	524147	13	No proper urea pressure level could be build up within the SCR system state "Fill Lines" => SCRCo_stStatus_mp = 1 within some miuntes	This error shows up, if no proper urea pressure level could be build up within the SCR system state "Fill Lines" => SCRCo_stStatus_mp = 1 within some minutes Once the urea pump pressure has exceeded the threshold the error is declared as okay. Suspected components: Suction line blocked PWM Powerstage has a defect and a default value which leads not to a rising pressure Pump Pressure sensor defect pump filter contains dirty parts reverting valve continously open	Make sure that frozen lines, pump or tank can be excluded! Check whether there is urea in the urea tank Check urea lines: All lines connected? The right lines connected to the correct places? Suction line blocked? No leakage? Not also urea to the outside but also air into the lines, especially in the suction line! Perform service routine "pressure test": Does the urea pump work? => check wiring harness & PWM signal for pump Does the urea pressure rise? DFC already healed? If all unsuccessful so far: Check urea pressure sensor: At ignition on and SCR system state = 0 ("Init check"), SCR_pAbsAdapUPmpP shall be identical to EnvP_p. Fulfilled: Sensor okay! Check reverting valve => see DFC_SCRCoRevVlvBlk Check pump filter: dirt inside? Suspected components: Urea pump broken Reverting valve continously open Urea suction line, backflow line broken or con-nection swapped PWM Powerstage has a defect Pump Pressure sensor broken
1646	869	524063	12	SCR supply module temperature is not reaching a threshold before a calibratable time is exceeded. Corresponding to the environmental Tem-perature a specific defrosting time is given. After starting the defrosting a clock counter is starting. Does the counter reach the given defrosting time limit, an error will be detected. Is the temperature reached in time the clock counter will be reset Example: by using the calibrated tempera-ture/time curve --> environmental temper-ature 0°C --> defrosting time limit 6000s -- > if the clock counter reaches 6000s the error will be detected	Suspected components: Enviroment temperature sensor defect SCR supply module temperature sensor defect SCR supply module electrical heater defect	Check Environment temperature sensor SCR supply module temperature sensor SCR supply module electrical heater

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1655	138	1761	14	The urea tank volume ratio is below the threshold of <5%	actual urea tank level SCRUTnk_rVol_mp [%] is below applicable threshold 5%	Check urea level => if empty, then fill in urea Check DEF level sensor. If there is urea in the tank, then move the floater of the level sensor. The floater must be free. If you lift the sensor body, then SCRUTnk_rVol_mp must change. Exchange DEF level sensor, if no change of value or it's implausible.
1656	138	1761	14	The urea tank volume ratio is below the threshold of <2.5%	actual urea tank level SCRUTnk_rVol_mp [%] is below 2.5%	Check urea level => if empty, then fill in urea Check DEF level sensor. If there is urea in the tank, then move the floater of the level sensor. The floater must be free. If you lift the sensor body, then SCRUTnk_rVol_mp must change. Exchange DEF level sensor, if no change of value or it's implausible.
1666	924	524100	9	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame Com-DPFHisDat.	Open load on CANBUS wiring.	Check wiring, component.
1672	9-4-2	524118	9	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxCM1	If the frame CM1 message is not transmitted successfully	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus sheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range.
1676	928	524104	9	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame Com-RxDPFCtl. CM1 Module Customer Recieve Message.	Time out of Check CANBUS EAT Control Receive Message, PGN65348. The message is not received.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check CANBUS EAT Control Receive Message, PGN65348. CM1 Module Customer Recieve Message.
1683	9-4-5	524121	9	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame Com-RxTrbChActr	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus sheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range.
1687	9-4-9	524125	9	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame Com-TxTrbChActr	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message)	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus sheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range.
1705	972	524156	9	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEBC2 from wheel speed sensor.	Timeout Error (Missing CAN Bus message) Defect on wheel speed sensor.	Check CAN Bus cabling (Bus sheduling, polarity, short circuit, power interrupt), test protocol of receiver, check CAN functional range. Replace the wheel speed sensor.
1752	415	2791	7	EGR actuator is mechanically blocked.	EGR actuator faulty or blocked.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check the EGR actuator and EGR valve to mechanical blockage / clean. Check for free movement of the valve. If it'S blocked, then exchange the EGR valve.
1753	415	2791	2	corrupted CAN communication with actua-tor.	CAN bus error or faulty EGR actuator.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check other CAN bus components. If no mes-sage is sent, fix the wiring. If o.k. exchange EGR actuaror.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1754	415	2791	13	EGR actuator can not learn stop positions. Possibly only second failure if other EGRTV failures occure.	Error detection during the learning process.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Start Serdia Usecase to reset EGR actuator. Check EGR valve and mounting situation. If o.k. change EGR actuator.
1755	415	2791	12	Internal electrical fault of EGR actuator.	Internal damage of EGR actuator due to high temperature or electrical wiring issue.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Exchange EGR actuator.
1756	415	2791	13	EGR actuator can not learn stop positions because procedure was interrupted.	Interruption of learning process due to mechanical damage.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Start Serdia Usecase to reset EGR actuator.
1757	415	2791	6	Overcurrent to EGR actuator.	High voltage from battery. EGR actuator is blocked or moving very hard.	Check battery voltage. Check if EGR is blocked or not running smoothly. If everything is o.k. change EGR actuator.
1758	415	2791	3	Overvoltage at EGR actuator.	High voltage from the battery	Check battery voltage.
1759	415	2791	4	Undervoltage at EGR actuator.	Low voltage from the battery.	Check battery voltage.
1760	415	2791	13	Stop positions of EGR valve not o.k.	Mechanical damage of EGR actuator. EGR valve is blocked or moving very hard.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Start Serdia Usecase to reset EGR actuator.
1761	415	2791	7	EGR actuator spring broken.	mechanical damage of spring due to overstress.	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Exchange EGR actuator.
1762	415	2791	16	Internal actuator temperature above threshold.	overheating of EGR actuator	Let EGR actuator cool down, check heat accumulation during worst case operation.
1763	415	2791	0	Internal actuator temperature is above threshold.	Overheating of EGR actuator during operation.	Let EGR actuator cool down and check heat accumulation during worst case operation.
1827	192	524141	7	DEF dosing valve is blocked with crystalized urea or other deposits.	While SCR system is starting up and fter urea pressure reaches 10000 hPa, the DEF dosing module is tested. Expectation is that urea pressure drops below 1500 hPa if injector works properly. The test is repeated up to 3 times before an error is set. SCRSysPresMon_stPresDropDet_mp=0 while SCRCo_stStatus_mp=16. Suspected component: wiring harness DEF dosing valve The error is stored into the EEPROM of the ECU and status at ECU shut down is regained at ignition on.	Check electrical connection of urea injector: - wiring harness - connector Conduct SERDIA use-case "injection test". If it is faulty: - remove urea injector from exhaust line: - check for crystallisation direct on injector nozzle / plate - rinse it thoroughly in water - remount urea injector and conduct SERDIA use-case "injection test" If the error is still active, then exchange urea injector.
1857	555	523612	12	Fault in the monitoring during the engine start. Start requested in level 1, but not released in level 2 which leads to no fuel injection.	wiring is not according DEUTZ requirements engine start conditions are not observed low battery voltage during start malfunction of starter	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. check other active errors and fix them. check all needed engine start conditions, e.g. neutral switch. check the engine speed during starting of the engine. If it's too low, then check the battery voltage and then check the starter for malfunction.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1858	192	524141	7	DEF dosing valve is blocked with crystalized urea or other deposits.	While SCR system is starting up and fter urea pressure reaches 10000 hPa, the DEF dosing module is tested. Expectation is that urea pressure drops below 1500 hPa if injector works properly. The test is repeated up to 3 times before an error is set. SCRSysPresMon_stPresDropDet_mp = 0 while SCRCo_stStatus_mp = 16. Suspected component: wiring harness DEF dosing valve The error is stored into the EEPROM of the ECU and status at ECU shut down is regained at ignition on.	Check electrical connection of urea injector: - wiring harness - connector Conduct SERDIA use-case "injection test". If it is faulty: - remove urea injector from exhaust line: - check for crystallisation direct on injector nozzle / plate - rinse it thoroughly in water - remount urea injector and conduct SERDIA use-case "injection test" If the error is still active, then exchange urea injector.
1863	995	524177	7	The error shows up, if no proper urea presure could be build up within the SCR system state "Fill Lines" => SCRCo_stStatus_mp = 1.	This error shows up, if no proper urea presure could be build up within the SCR system state "Fill Lines" => SCRCo_stStatus_mp = 1. 3 cases can lead to the error: Case A: increasing pressure is detected within 15s the check has passed => no error Case B: The pressure threshold was not reached within the 60s but case A was not positiv. Case C: The minimum pressure of 3000 hPa was not reached within the 60s.	Make sure that DEF lines, pump and tank are not frozen. Check for DEF level in the tank. Check DEF lines: Are all DEF lines connected? Is the suction line blocked? Is ther any leakage? Not only urea to the outside but also air into the lines, especially in the suction line! Perform SERDIA usecase "pressure test": Does the DEF pump work? => check wiring harness & PWM signal for pump. Does the urea pressure increase? All errors are already healed? If still unsuccessful so far: Check urea pressure sensor: At ignition on and SCR system state = 0 ("Init check"), SCR_pAbsAdapUPmpP shall be identical to EnvP_p. Fulfilled: Sensor okay! Check DEF pump filter: Is any dirt inside? Suspected components: Suction line PWM Powerstage has a defect and a default value which leads not to a rising pressure DEF pump pressure sensor defect DEF pump filter contains dirty parts

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1864	996	524178	7	The urea pump is not able to control the urea pressure between 9bar and 11 bar.	The urea pump controller is not able to control the urea pressure between 9bar and 11 bar due to malfunction in the SCR system. Suspected components: - DEF pump broken - Reverting valve continously open - Urea suction line, backflow line broken or connection swapped - PWM Powerstage has a defect - Pump Pressure sensor broken	Make sure that DEF lines, pump and tank are not frozen. Check for DEF level in the tank Check DEF lines: All lines connected? The right lines connected to the correct places? Suction line blocked? Is there any leakage? Not also urea to the outside but also air into the lines, especially in the suction line! Perform SERDIA usecase "pressure test": Does the DEF pump work properly? => check wiring harness & PWM signal for pump Does the DEF pressure rise? Is the error healed? If still unsuccessful so far: - Check DEF pressure sensor: At ignition on and SCR system state = 0 ("Init check"), SCR_pAbsAdapUPmpP shall be identical to EnvP_p. Fulfilled: Sensor okay! - Check reverting valve - Check DEF pump filter: dirt inside? Suspected components: DEF pump broken Reverting valve continously open DEF suction line, backflow line broken or connection swapped PWM Powerstage has a defect DEF pump pressure sensor broken
1865	668	4360	2	Error at static plausibility check: absolut temperature difference of sensed temperature upstream SCR catalyst and ambient temperature > as static plausibility limit at engine cold start (engine was off for at least 8 h), temperature upstream of SCR catalyst is expected to be identical to ambient temperature => see enable conditions for details. Error at dynamic plausibility check: temperature difference of sensed temperature upstream SCR catalyst and ambient temperature < as dynamic plausibility limit dynamic check is blocked if static plausibility check is already faulty => Temperature upstream SCR catalyst must be by 40°C higher than ambient temperature if engine runs and a certain delay time has expired.	Error at static plausibility check: absolut temperature difference of sensed temperature upstream SCR catalyst and ambient temperature > as static plausibility limit at engine cold start (engine was off for at least 8 h), temperature upstream of SCR catalyst is expected to be identical to ambient temperature => see enable conditions for details. Error at dynamic plausibility check: temperature difference of sensed temperature upstream SCR catalyst and ambient temperature < as dynamic plausibility limit dynamic check is blocked if static plausibility check is already faulty => Temperature upstream SCR catalyst must be by 40°C higher than ambient temperature if engine runs and a certain delay time has expired.	Check whether temperature sensor upstream of SCR catalyst is physically mounted within exhaust pipe If cold start condition can be made sure (engine was off for at least 8 h) compare values of EnvT_t, EngDa_tEng, Exh_TOxiCatUs, Exh_tOxiCatDs and SCR_tSensUCatUsT at ignition on, without starting the engine. All identical? Compare values of Exh_TOxiCatUs, Exh_tOxiCatDs and SCR_tSensUCatUsT after 15 min in constant operation point: show all similar values (30 K tolerance width). Are ambient temperature and (EnvT_t), cooling water temperature (EngDa_tEng) plausible? Sensor coated with urea crystalls? Dismount urea injector and inspect temperature sensor upstream SCR catalyst visually Check wiring of sensor Replace sensor

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1866	665	4334	2	absolute difference of sensed urea pump pressure (SCR_pAbsSensUPmpP) and ambient pressure (EnvP_p) > limit abs(UPmpP_pDiffPmpEnv_mp) > UPmpP_pDiffPmpEnv_C (250 hPa)	absolute difference of sensed urea pump pressure (SCR_pAbsSensUPmpP) and ambient pressure (EnvP_p) > limit abs(UPmpP_pDiffPmpEnv_mp) > UPmpP_pDiffPmpEnv_C	Check environment pressure sensor (EnvP_p) => plausible value? Engine shut-off and immediately re-started? => Shut-off again. Wait until afterun of ECU has finished, re-Start engine Back-flow line free? Does the urea pump pressure show values < 1000 hPa in SCR state emptying (64)? Check revision valve => Does the urea pump pressure show values < 1000 hPa in SCR state emptying (64)? => exchange supply module Supply module pressure sensor defect => exchange supply module
1867	894	524067	2	absolute diference of sensed temperature of supply module heater temperature and ambient temperature UPmpT_tDiffPmpHtrAmb_mp > threshold	absolute diference of sensed temperature of supply module heater temperature and ambient temperature UPmpT_tDiffPmpHtrAmb_mp > threshold	Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT, EnvT_t and CEngTds_t and SCR_tAdapUTnkT => All identical? If not: Has the machine been brought from cold environment into a warm one or vice versa without engine running, e.g. at workshop? Environment temperature sensor defect Coolant temperature sensor defect Supply module temperature sensor defect Problem at Supply module unit (broken?) => exchange supply module
1868	894	524067	2	absolute diference of sensed temperature of supply module temperature and ambient temperature > threshold	absolute diference of sensed temperature of supply module temperature and ambient temperature UPmpT_tDiffPmpAmb_mp > threshold	Compare SCR_tSMT with SCR_tSMHtrT, EnvT_t and CEngTds_t and SCR_tAdapUTnkT => All identical? If not: Has the machine been brought from cold environment into a warm one or vice versa without engine running, e.g. at workshop? Environment temperature sensor defect Coolant temperature sensor defect Supply module temperature sensor defect Problem at Supply module unit (broken?) => exchange supply module
1874	971	524152	2	CAN message is not received fora definite time => error is set. As soon as the message is received the error heals.	CAN message is not received for a definite time => error is set. As soon as the message is received the error heals.	Check eletrical connection oif urea quality sensor Check engine CAN bus Check urea quality sensor itself Exchange urea quality sensor
1875	997	524153	2	CAN message is not reseived for a definite time => error is set. As soon as the message is received the error heals.	CAN message is not reseived for a definite time => error is set. As soon as the message is received the error heals.	Check eletrical connection of suction unit sensor (combined sensor with tank level and tank temperature) Check engine CAN bus Check level sensor itself Exchange suction unit

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1880	138	1761	14	The DEF tank level is below the threshold.	actual DEF tank level SCRUTnk_rVol_mp [%] is below the threshold	Check DEF level => if empty, refill Check DEF level sensor. If there is urea in the tank loose the sensor and move it. The floater must be free and move if you lift the sensor body. SCRUTnk_rVol_mp must change. Compare SCRUTnk_rVol_mp to: 1 = SCR_rawUTnkLvl 2 = SCR_rAdapUtnkLvl 3 = SCRUTnk_rActTnkVol *SCRUTnk_facVolPer_mp In case of malfunction, exchange DEF level sensor.
1881	683	4768	2	At engine cold start conditions the sensed exhaust gas temperature downstream DOC (Exh_tSensTOxiCatDs) has exceeded the sum of ambient temperature (EnvT_t) + offset (40°C) earlier than the sensed exhaust gas temperature upstream of DOC (Exh_tSensTOxiCatUs). The check is only performed once each ignition cycle and only if the start is judged a cold start. Error status is frozen for that ignition cycle. No healing possible.	Difference temperature of exhaust gas temperature downstream DOC and fixed ambient temperature at ignition on exceeds a certain limit earlier than the difference temperature of exhaust gas temperature upstream DOC and fixed ambient temperature at ignition on.	Check whether all exhaust gas temperature sensors within the EAT system are mounted properly: Within the exhaust line and at correct positions. Check the position of the sensor upstream SCR which might be physically mounted in the wrong position. If cold start condition can be made sure (engine was off for at least 8 h) compare values of EnvT_t, EngDa_tEng, Exh_TOxiCatUs, Exh_tOxiCatDs and SCR_tSensUCatUsT at ignition on, without starting the engine. All identical? Then the sensors itself are okay. Check exhaust piping for leakage. Check wiring of sensors Replace sensors Check DOC => physicallly intact?
1891	272	524190	14	Not enough urea in tank or low urea quality or hardware tampering failure is detected or hardware failure is detected	Low DEF tank level Low DEF quality Hardware Tampering is active Hardware Failure is active	Check DEF level in tank. If there is no DEF, refill up to volume above the warning threshold. Check the DEF quality in the tank. If wrong fluid is filled, refill with proper DEF. Check other errors based on hardware malfunctions.
1892	273	524191	14	A low DEF tank level or a low DEF quality is detected or hardware tampering(system components are pinched off) or hardware failures as shortcut to battery, shortcut to ground etc. are detected.	Low DEF tank level Low DEF quality Hardware Tampering is active Hardware Failure is active	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check the DEF level in tank. If there is no DEF, refill up above the warning level. Check DEF quality filled in the tank. Check other errors based on hardware tampering or failure.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1893	275	524193	8	The total time in standstill-regeneration mode exceeds the long-limit threshold within last 500h total engine run time. The error is activated if the engine runs to many times in Standstill regeneartion.	Stand-still mode is very often aborted by the operator. Stand-still mode does not reach required temperature level and regeneration level is therefore reached after a short time again	Read out stand-still statistics => see service manual: Stand-still operation finished or often interrupted by driver / engine shut-off? => Run stand-still and instruct operator Stand-still operation required often by soot load => Check dp DPF pressure sensor Stand-still mode does not reach required temperature level: Check engine air path: Intake Trottle, EGR-Valve and turbocharger okay? Any leakage in engine air intake sytem or exhaust gas system? Check temperature sensors within exhaust system: upstream DOC, downstream DOC If soot load level of DPf allow it: Perform Stand-still and check reached temperature level upstream and downstream DOC: T upstream DOC in the range of 480-550°C? Downstream DOC after 25 min stand-still main phase 590°C are reached? Temerature traces are steady and even? Temperature downstream DOC higher than upstream DOC but difference does not exceed 100 K? Very small difference (< 10 K after 25 min stand-still main phase, 590 °C downstream DOC are not reached) => exchange DOC Very big difference (>100 K after 25 min stand-still main phase, 590 °C downstream DOC exceeded) => check injection system of engine & engine air path

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1894	276	524194	8	The total time in standstill-regeneration mode exceeds the long-limit threshold: 2,5h stand-still operation within 50h total motor run time. The error is activated if the engine runs to much time in short Standstill regeneartion.	Stand-still mode is aborted / interrupted too often by the operator Stand-still is required too often due to miscalculation in the soot model Stand-still mode does not reache temperature level and regeneration level is therefore reached after a short time again.	Read out stand-still statistics => see service manual: Stand-still operation finished or often interrupted by driver / engine shut-off? => Run stand-still and instruct operator Stand-still operation required often by soot load => Check dp DPF pressure sensor Stand-still mode does not reach required temperature level: Check engine air path: Intake Trottle, EGR-Valve and turbocharger okay? Any leakage in engine air intake sytem or exhaust gas system? Check temperature sensors within exhaust system: upstream DOC, downstream DOC If soot load level of DPF allows it: Perform Stand-still and check reached temperature level upstream and downstream DOC: T upstream DOC in the range of 480-550°C? Downstream DOC after 25 min stand-still main phase 590°C are reached? Temerature traces are steady and even? Temperature downstream DOC higher than upstream DOC but difference does not exceed 100 K? Very small difference (< 10 K after 25 min stand-still main phase, 590 °C downstream DOC are not reached) => exchange DOC Very big difference (>100 K after 25 min stand-still main phase, 590 °C downstream DOC exceeded) => check injection system of engine & engine air path
1895	277	3519	12	The integrated temperature sensor of the Urea Quality Sensor measures higher temperature than threshold	Temperature sensor inside the UQS defect. CAN Communication corrupted. Overheating of the DEF tank due to malfunction of the heating valve. Flow direction is of coolant is wrong due to mixed up the hoses routed to the heating valve. Overheating of the DEF tank due to heat transfer from neighbor parts.	Check the temperature sensor signal for plausibility. In case of improper signal, exchange the suction unit in the tank. Check CAN bus communication for proper signal. In case of improper signal, exchange the suction unit in the tank. Check the function of heating valve and routing of the hoses. The coolant flow through the heating valve must be observed according to the shown arrow. In case all actions above are OK, check the real temperature in the DEF tank during worst case condition and improve the installation of the DEF tank.
1896	278	3520	3	The integrated diagnostic of the Urea Quality Sensor recognized a short circuit to battery	wiring harness of UQS corrupted CAN Communication corrupted	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check the wiring harness from the ECU to the suction unit of the DEF tank Check the CAN bus communication. If the signal is corrupt, then exchange the suction unit.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1897	278	3520	4	The integrated diagnostic of the Urea Quality Sensor recognized a short circuit to ground.	wiring harness to the suction unit in the DEF tank is corrupted CAN Communication corrupted	Threshold for error detection is an internal ECU threshold. Check the wiring to the suction unit in the DEF tank. Check the CAN bus communication. In case the communication is corrupt, exchange the suction unit in the DEF tank.
1898	277	3519	3	The integrated diagnostic of the temperature sensor of the Urea Quality Sensor recognized a short circuit to battery. The UQS Sensor is an combined sensor of tank temperature, filling grade and DEF quality and it is also an CAN sensor --> no PIN	Wrong diagnostic of the short circuits logic inside the temperature sensor of the UQS CAN Communication corrupted	Check the wiring to the suction unit in the DEF tank. Check the CAN bus communication of the suction unit. In case the communication is corrupt, exchange the suction unit.
1899	277	3519	4	The integrated diagnostic of the temperature sensor of the Urea Quality Sensor recognized a short circuit to ground	DEF quality sensor in the suction unit of the DEF tank is defect CAN Communication corrupted	Check the wiring to the suction unit of the DEF tank. Check the CAN bus communication from the suction unit. In case the signal is corrupt, exchange the suction unit in the DEF tank.

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1900	279	524195	14	The standstill request of detected crystallization is ignored for more than 5h(>300min) This will be activated if there is a standstill request activated by Crystalisation Monitoring.	Back pressure upstream SCR catalyst has reached a level which indicates crystallisation inside of exhaust line. The error detection depends on the sensed pressure upstream of the SCR catalyst and the calculated exhaust volume flow through the mixer pipe. In case of error is set, but no crystallisation can be found in the mixing pipe, a possible reason can be the defect sensors: - exhaust pressure & temperature upstream of the SCR catalyst, - the ambient pressure - the exhaust mass flow => Check air path system at the engine.	Dismount urea injector from exhaust line and inspect visually the injector and the exhaust line for urea crystallisation upstream of SCR catalyst: If crystallisation can be clearly seen, then standstill must be processed. Has the engine been operated in low load for longer time? If yes, then it could be the reaoson for crystallisation. Does the NOx-Sensors work properly? Compare ComRxSCR_rNOxUs to ComRxSCR_rNOxDs, when ComRxSCR_stNOxRdyUs = 1 & ComRxSCR_stNOxRdyDs = 1 (Warm engine and EAT-system, SCRT_tCatAvrgExhGs_mp > 250°C, SCR_stStatus = "Dosing" = 8): sensed NOx upstream of SCR catalyst must be higher than downstream of SCR catalyst. Go to idle and wait until SCR system enters status "stand-by" (no dosing), SCRT_tCatAvrgExhGs_mp < 225°C: ComRxSCR_rNOxUs = ComRxSCR_rNOxDs Clean urea injector: rinse it thourougly under water Check EGR-Path: difference pressure sensor at venturi tube, EGR cooler, EGR-Valve, Reed-Valve, Intake throttle regarding function and leakage. Does the EGR-cooler leak water in the exhaust? Check air path for leakage Check turbocharger No crystallisation can be seen in the mixing pipe: Check exhaust pressure sensor upstream of SCR catalyst (SCR_pSensUCatUsP): tube, water in sensor? Check environmental pressure sensor (EnvP_p): plausible? Check exhaust temperature sensor upstream of SCR-catalyst (SCR_tSensUCatUsT): plausible compared to Exh_tOxiCatUs & Exh_tOxiCatDs e.g. when engine has idled for 20 minutes? => Run stand-still to remove crystallisation and to reset the DFC

Table 3-14. Engine Fault Codes

Deutz Code	Blink Code	SPN	FMI	Description	Possible Cause	Action
1904	2-7-8	3520	2	Measured DEF Quality from UQS is too low. Quality value received from UQS is < 22 % for a certain time and a certain number or for measuring conditions not observed for a certain time.	Suspected components: Urea quality sensor defect Wrong installation (measuring air) Urea level sensor defect Non urea filled in tank CANBUS problems Evaluation conditions for new quality check not fulfilled after one previous mal detection	Check that there is liquid urea of known quality in the tank first Check urea tank level. Add urea until level is at least 10 cm above sensor. Ensure that urea is not frozen / sufficient urea is liquid Check Sensor: Are urea tank temperature and level displayed? Changes the level if you refill urea? Check electrical connection Check CANBus New quality detection is carried out if urea refill is detected or if an quality evaluation was triggered and was not finished successfully: To provoke a quality measurement: refill urea, at least 10 % of tank volume Wait until quality evaluation was carried out, can take up to 30 minutes => check value. It should be about 33 % Exchange quality sensor
1907	278	3520	13	Urea quality at UQS out of range the specified thresholds; invalid quality of the urea qualiy	Suspected components DEF quality sensor DEF	Check DEF quality and/or DEF quality sensor
1908	277	3519	13	Temperature at UQS out of range the specified thresholds; invalid quality of the temperature	Suspected Components Tank heater DEF sensor	Check temperature system and/or DEF quality sensor
1911	127	3532	3	The urea quality value from the sensor is greater than the maximum physical range threshold Comment: tank temperature is measured by the UQS sensor	Suspected Components: UQS defect	Check DEF quality and/or sensor.
1912	127	3532	4	The urea quality value from the sensor is lower than the minimum physical range threshold.	Suspected Components: UQS defect	Check DEF quality and/or Sensor.
1914	669	4365	3	Internal error of DEF quality sensor.	Suspected componentes: DEF quality sensor Wiring harness	Check wiring harness and DEF qualitysensor
1915	6-6-9	4365	4	Internal error of DEF quality sensor.	Suspected componentes: DEF quality sensor Wiring harness	Check wiring harness and DEF qualitysensor
1917	2-8-6	3936	14	Standstill escalation by time. In case the standstill request will not be released within 50 h by the driver this fault code will be set.	Stand-still request ignored by the operator. Display / stand-still request lamp broken.	Perform Stand-still. If soot load level of DPF has increased too high already call service to perform stand-still. In case the DPF soot load level remove DPF => Exchange DPF.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1	110	11	226	Air flow sensor load correction factor exceeding the maximum drift limit; plausibility error.
8	132	1	226	The air mass flow AFS_dm is greater than or equal to AFS_PhysRng.Min_C. Physical Range Check low for air mass flow sensor No detail informationen!
9	172	2	226	Air inlet filter temperature, plausibility error.
26	523891	14	263	When AirHt_ctDefSRCLoOn_mp is less than AirHt_ctMaxDef_C. DFC to SRC Low error when heater is On No detail informationen!
28	523953	2	728	Healing takes place if the condition for error detection is not present. Air temprature monitoring plausibility check array No detail informationen!
30	523955	2	728	Healing takes place if the condition for error detection is not present. Air temprature monitoring plausibility check array No detail informationen!
36	523923	3	729	UB1; Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 1.
37	523924	3	167	UB2; Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 2.
38	523925	3	731	UB3: Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 3.
40	523927	3	733	UB5; Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 5, SCR-Heater/Rev.Valve.
41	523923	4	729	Short circuit to ground error No detail informationen!
42	523924	4	167	UB2; Short circuit to ground actuator relais 2.
43	523925	4	731	UB3; Short circuit to ground actuator relais 3.
44	523926	4	732	UB4; Short circuit to ground aktuator relais 4.
45	168	3	318	Sensor error battery voltage; signal range check high.
46	168	4	318	Sensor error battery voltage; signal range check low.
47	168	2	318	High battery voltage; warning threshold exceeded.
48	168	2	318	High battery voltage; shot off threshold exceeded.
55	523910	14	695	Air pump doesn´t achieve air mass flow setpoint . Burner Control - burner air pump.
56	524013	7	856	Burner Control; burner Flame;Burner does not start after x trials (burner flame lost detection). Burner flame unintentional deleted.
57	524020	14	863	Burner Control: power reduction due to low lambda. Engine power; Not enough oxygen for regeneration.
58	523911	0	723	Burner dosing valve (DV2); overcurrent at the end of the injection phase.
59	523911	12	723	Burner dosing valve (DV2); powerstage over temperature.
60	523911	3	723	Burner dosing valve (DV2); short circuit to battery.
62	523911	4	723	Burner dosing valve (DV2); short circuit to ground.
63	523911	11	723	Burner dosing valve (DV2); short circuit high side powerstage.
64	523912	2	722	Burner dosing valve (DV2) downstream pressure sensor; plausibility error.
66	523912	0	722	Physical range check high for burner dosing valve (DV2) downstream pressure; shut off regeneration.
69	523912	1	722	Physical range check low for burner dosing valve (DV2) downstream pressure; shut off regeneration. When burner injector is actuated, the measured pressure does not rise above ca. 1250mbar abs (expected: ca. 2400mbar).
72	523912	3	722	Sensor error burner dosing valve (DV2) downstream pressure sensor; signal range check high.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
73	523912	4	722	@engines < 4l:Throttle valve error, Open Load or Short cut to Battery, blocked valve or wrong control signal for valve. @engines with Burner T4i: Pressure Sensor error after valve (DV2), lower limit reached.
74	523913	3	721	Sensor error glow plug control diagnostic line voltage; signal range check high.
75	523913	4	721	Sensor error glow plug control diagnostic line voltage; signal range check low.
76	523914	5	721	Glow plug control; open load water pump control (PWM).
77	523914	12	721	Glow plug control; powerstage over temperature.
78	523914	3	721	Glow plug control; short circuit to battery water pump control (PWM).
79	523914	4	721	Glow plug control; short circuit to ground.
82	1235	14	271	CAN-Bus 2 = CAN_C reports Bus-error (for engines <8L and CV52 it is the engine-CAN@250kbaud) CAN Bus error passive; warning CAN C - engine CAN.
83	16	0	271	No detail informationen!
84	639	14	271	CAN-Bus 0 "BusOff-Status"
85	1231	14	271	CAN-Bus 1 "BusOff-Status"
86	1235	14	271	CAN-Bus 2 = engine bus "BusOff-Status"
87	16	0	271	BusOff error CAN No detail informationen!
88	102	2	223	Charged air pressure above warning threshold.
89	102	2	223	Charged air pressure above shut off threshold.
90	110	2	225	defect fault check for Absolute plausibility test No detail informationen!
92	110	0	225	Physical Range Check high for Coolant temperature.
93	110	1	225	Physical Range Check low for Coolant temperature.
96	110	3	225	Sensor error coolant temperature; signal range check high.
97	110	4	225	Sensor error coolant temperature; signal range check low.
98	110	0	232	High coolant temperature; warning threshold exceeded.
99	110	0	232	Coolant temperature; system reaction initiated.
101	111	1	235	Coolant level too low.
106	598	2	325	Plausibility check for Clutch No detail informationen!
121	1109	2	341	Engine shut off demand ignored.
122	523698	11	591	Shut off request from supervisory monitoring function.
124	523969	11	774	Fault entry for override control mode. No detail informationen!
125	523717	12	595	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame AmbCon; Weather environments.
126	523603	9	338	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AMB; Ambient Temperature Sensor.
127	3224	2	596	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1 NOX Sensor (SCR-system upstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat); length of frame incorrect.
128	3224	9	597	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1; NOX sensor upstream.
129	3224	2	596	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1Vol NOX sensor.
130	3224	9	597	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1Vol; NOX sensor.
133	523938	9	766	Timeout Error (BAM to packet) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IGCVol1.
134	523939	9	766	Broadcast Announce Message of the calibration message of the upstream catalytic NOx sensor has failed.
135	523940	9	766	Timeout Error (PCK2PCK) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IGCVol1
136	3234	2	114	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1O1 No detail informationen!

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
137	3234	9	117	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1OG1; NOX sensor (SCR-system downstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat).
138	3234	2	114	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1O1Vol NOX.
139	3234	9	117	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1OG1Vol.
140	523941	9	767	Timeout Error (BAM to packet) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1OGCVol2.
141	523942	9	767	Calibration message 1 of the after catalyst NOx sensor has failed.
142	523943	9	767	Timeout Error (PCK2PCK) for CAN-Receive-Frame AT1OGCVol2.
153	523992	9	793	
155	0	0	-	
164	523211	9	331	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame EBC1.
167	523704	12	615	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3.
168	523935	12	763	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3VOL1; Engine send messages.
169	523936	12	764	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3VOL2; Engine send messages.
171	523212	9	333	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComEngPrt; Engine Protection.
172	523741	14	618	Engine shut off request through CAN No detail informationen!
174	523213	12	334	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ERC1 No detail informationen!
178	523706	12	623	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame FlEco No detail informationen!
179	523240	9	527	Timeout CAN-message FunModCtl; Function Mode Control.
193	523937	9	765	Timeout DFC for NOxSensGlbReqTx. No detail informationen!
196	3227	2	638	DFC SAE J1939 error No detail informationen!
198	523216	9	337	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame PrHtEnCmd; pre-heat command, engine command.
202	523793	9	678	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame UAA10; AGS sensor service message.
203	523794	9	678	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame UAA11; AGS sensor data.
212	523803	9	678	Timeout error of CAN Receive Message RxEngPres; Status Burner Air Pump.
273	3219	2	649	DFC SAE J1939 error No detail informationen!
281	523766	9	118	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Active TSC1AE.
282	523767	9	118	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Passive TSC1AE.
283	523768	9	119	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Active TSC1AR.
284	523769	9	119	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Passive TSC1AR.
291	523776	9	119	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE - active.
292	523777	9	119	Passive Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE; Setpoint.
293	523778	9	118	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TR.
294	523779	9	118	Passive Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TR.
299	523788	12	655	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame TrbCH; Status Wastegate.
300	523605	9	118	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1AE; Traction Control.
301	523606	9	119	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1AR; Retarder.
305	898	9	118	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE; Setpoint.
306	520	9	119	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TR; control signal.
313	523858	12	679	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame UAA11.
322	523867	12	679	Ansteuerung Brenner Luftpumpe;_Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame UAA1 on CAN A.
360	523982	0	737	Powerstage diagnosis disabled; high battery voltage.
361	523982	1	737	Powerstage diagnosis disabled; low battery voltage.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
362	523090	2	329	Engine Brake Pre-Selection switch; Plausibility Error.
376	630	12	281	Access error EEPROM memory (delete).
377	630	12	281	Access error EEPROM memory (read).
378	630	12	281	Access error EEPROM memory (write).
381	411	4	693	Physical range check low for EGR differential pressure.
384	2791	12	415	Actuator EGR Valve; powerstage over temperature.
387	523612	12	555	Internal software error ECU; injection cut off.
388	190	0	214	Engine speed above warning threshold. Overspeed detection in component engine protection.
389	190	0	214	Engine speed above warning threshold (FOC-Level 1).
390	190	11	214	Engine speed above warning threshold (FOC-Level 2).
391	190	14	214	Engine speed above warning threshold (Overrun Mode).
411	108	11	292	DFC for CAN message.
412	108	3	292	Sensor error ambient air pressure; signal range check high.
413	108	4	292	Sensor error ambient air pressure; signal range check low.
415	171	0	312	Environment temperature sensor, temperature above upper physical threshold.
416	171	1	312	Environment Temperature Physical Range Check low.
417	171	3	312	Sensor error SCR-System environment temperature; DPF-System air inlet temperature; signal range check high.
418	171	4	312	Sensor error SCR-System environment temperature; DPF-System air inlet temperature; signal range check low.
419	190	8	212	Sensor camshaft speed; disturbed signal.
420	190	12	212	Sensor camshaft detection; out of range, signal disrupted; no signal.
421	190	2	213	Offset angle between crank- and camshaft sensor is too large.
422	190	8	212	Sensor crankshaft detection; out of range, signal disrupted; disturbed signal.
423	190	12	212	Speed detection; out of range, signal disrupted Sensor crankshaft speed; no signal.
455	975	5	238	PWM-Signal Fan, Open load or short-circuit ground.
457	975	3	238	PWM-Signal Fan, short-circuit to plus.
458	975	4	238	PWM-Signal Fan, open load or short circuit to ground.
459	1639	12	238	Fan speed sensor; electrical error or signal disturbed or very low fan speed.
460	1639	0	238	Sensor error fan speed; signal range check high or engine speed resp. fan speed too big.
461	1639	1	238	Sensor error fan speed; signal range check low or fan speed too low.
462	523602	0	238	High fan speed; warning threshold exceeded.
463	523602	0	238	High fan speed; shut off threshold exceeded.
464	97	3	228	Sensor error water in fuel; signal range check high.
465	97	4	228	Sensor error water in fuel; signal range check low.
472	94	3	216	Sensor error low fuel pressure; signal range check high.
473	94	4	216	Sensor error low fuel pressure; signal range check low.
474	94	1	216	Low fuel pressure; warning threshold exceeded.
475	94	1	216	Low fuel pressure; shut off threshold exceeded.
483	174	11	227	DFC for fuel temperature plausibility check function No detail informationen!
486	523618	3	133	Gearbox oil temperature; Short circuit to battery or broken harness.
487	523618	4	133	Gearbox oil temperature; Short circuit to ground.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
488	523619	2	133	Physical range check high for exhaust gas temperature upstrem (SCR-CAT).
500	523915	0	165	HCI dosing valve (DV1); overcurrent at the end of the injection phase.
501	523915	12	166	HCI dosing valve (DV1); powerstage overtemperature.
502	523915	3	159	HCI dosing valve (DV1); short circuit to battery.
503	523915	3	164	HCI dosing valve (DV1); short circuit to battery high side.
504	523915	4	159	HCI dosing valve (DV1); short circuit to ground.
505	523915	11	164	HCI dosing valve (DV1); short circuit high side powerstage.
506	523916	2	719	Sensor HCI dosing valve (DV1) downstream pressure; plausibility error.
508	523916	0	719	Physical range check high for HCI dosing valve (DV1) downstream pressure; shut off regeneration.
511	523916	1	719	Physical range check low for HCI dosing valve (DV1) downstream pressure; shut off regeneration.
514	523916	3	719	Sensor error HCI dosing valve (DV1) downstream pressure; signal range check high.
515	523916	4	719	Sensor error HCI dosing valve (DV1) downstream pressure; signal range check low.
524	523917	3	718	Sensor error DV1 & DV2 upstream pressure; signal range check high.
525	523917	4	718	Sensor error DV1 & DV2 upstream pressure; signal range check low.
534	523918	3	717	Sensor error DV1 & DV2 upstream temperature; signal range check high.
535	523918	4	717	Sensor error DV1 & DV2 upstream temperature; signal range check low.
542	1638	2	314	Hydraulic oil temperature check for Shut off condition No detail informationen!
543	676	11	263	Cold start device relay error.
544	676	11	263	Cold start aid relay open load.
545	729	5	263	Cold start aid relay open load.
547	729	12	263	Cold start aid relay; over temperature error.
549	729	3	263	Intake Air Heater Device; Short circuit to battery.
551	729	4	263	Air intake heater; Short circuit to ground error for powerstage on CJ945.
559	523895	13	158	Check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 1 (in firing order).
560	523896	13	158	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 2 (in firing order).
561	523897	13	158	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 3 (in firing order).
562	523898	13	158	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 4 (in firing order).
563	523899	13	158	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 5 (in firing order).
564	523900	13	158	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 6 (in firing order).
565	523350	4	151	Injector cylinder-bank 1; short circuit.
566	523352	4	152	Injector cylinder-bank 2; short circuit.
567	523354	12	153	Injector powerstage output defect.
568	651	5	154	Injector 1 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
569	652	5	155	Injector 2 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
570	653	5	156	Injector 3 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
571	654	5	161	Injector 4 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
572	655	5	162	Injector 5 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
573	656	5	163	Injector 6 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
575	523756	14	155	special pattern for special cases No detail informationen!
576	523757	14	156	special pattern for special cases No detail informationen!
577	523758	14	161	special pattern for special cases No detail informationen!
578	523759	14	162	special pattern for special cases No detail informationen!
579	523760	14	163	special pattern for special cases No detail informationen!
580	651	3	154	Injector 1 (in firing order); short circuit.
581	652	3	155	Injector 2 (in firing order); short circuit.
582	653	3	156	Injector 3 (in firing order); short circuit.
583	654	3	161	Injector 4 (in firing order); short circuit.
584	655	3	162	Injector 5 (in firing order); short circuit.
585	656	3	163	Injector 6 (in firing order); short circuit.
590	655	4	162	High side to low side short circuit in the injector 5 (in firing order).
591	656	4	163	High side to low side short circuit in the injector 6 (in firing order).
592	523615	5	135	Metering unit (Fuel-System); open load.
593	523615	12	135	Metering unit (Fuel-System); powerstage over temperature.
594	523615	3	135	Metering unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to battery highside.
595	523615	4	135	Metering unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to ground high side.
596	523615	3	135	Metering unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to battery low side.
597	523615	4	135	Metering Unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to ground low side.
598	523615	3	135	Metering unit, short circuit to battery.
599	523615	4	135	Metering unit, short circuit to ground.
604	1323	12	241	Too many recognized misfires in cylinder 1 (in firing order).
611	1346	0	241	Misfire detection monitoring No detail informationen!
612	523612	12	555	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error.
613	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error. Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error.
614	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
615	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
616	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
617	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
618	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
619	523612	12	555	Injection system, electrical error injectors.
620	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
621	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
623	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
624	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
625	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
627	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
628	523612	12	555	ECU reported internal software error.
629	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report the accelerator pedal position error.
630	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report the engine speed error.
631	523612	12	555	Error in the plausibility of the injection energizing time.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
632	523612	12	555	Error in the plausibility of the start of energising angles.
633	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report the error due to non plausibility in ZFC.
634	523612	12	555	Diagnosis fault check to report the demand for normal mode due to an error in the PoI2 quantity.
635	523612	12	555	Diagnosis fault check to report the error to demand for an ICO due to an error in the PoI2 shut-off.
636	523612	12	555	Diagnosis fault check to report the error to demand for an ICO due to an error in the PoI3 efficiency factor.
637	523612	12	555	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error.
638	523612	12	555	Monitoring of Fuel Quantity Correction.
639	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report the plausibility error in rail pressure monitoring.
640	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report the error due to torque comparison.
641	523612	12	555	Diagnosis of curr path limitation forced by ECU monitoring level 2.
642	523612	12	555	Diagnosis of lead path limitation forced by ECU monitoring level 2.
643	523612	12	555	Diagnosis of set path limitation forced by ECU monitoring level 2.
644	523612	3	555	Reported Over Voltage of Supply.
646	523612	4	555	Reported UnderVoltage of Supply.
648	523008	1	424	Manipulation control was triggered.
649	523008	2	424	Timeout error in Manipulation control.
654	2634	12	757	Early opening defect of main relay No detail informationen!
656	2634	12	757	DFC for stuck main relay error No detail informationen!
659	3226	2	813	Nox feed back fault detection No detail informationen!
692	523752	0	758	Plausibiliti error during Rich to Lean switch over No detail informationen!
693	523752	0	758	Monitoring of Nox signal readyness No detail informationen!
714	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report WDA active due to errors in query-/response communication.
715	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report ABE active due to undervoltage detection.
716	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report ABE active due to overvoltage detection.
717	523612	12	555	Diagnostic fault check to report WDA/ABE active due to unknown reason.
720	98	2	211	Plausibility Check. No detail informationen!
732	100	3	224	Sensor error oil pressure; signal range check high.
733	100	4	224	Sensor error oil pressure sensor; signal range check low.
734	100	0	231	High oil pressure; warning threshold exceeded.
735	100	0	231	High oil pressure; shut off threshold exceeded.
736	100	1	231	Low oil pressure; warning threshold exceeded.
737	100	1	231	Low oil pressure; shut off threshold exceeded.
743	175	3	144	Sensor error oil temperature; signal range check high.
744	175	4	144	Sensor error oil temperature; signal range check low.
745	175	0	144	High oil temperature; warning threshold exceeded.
746	175	0	144	High oil temperature; shut off threshold exceeded.
747	1237	2	145	Override switch; plausibility error.
750	107	3	136	Sensor error airfilter differential pressure; short circuit to battery.
751	107	0	136	Sensor error airfilter differential pressure; short circuit to ground.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
752	107	0	136	Air filter differential pressure; short circuit to ground.
753	523919	2	694	DPF burner air pump pressure sensor, plausibility error.
755	523919	0	694	DPF burner air pump pressure sensor, pressure above upper shutoff threshold.
758	523919	1	694	DPF burner air pump pressure sensor, pressure below lower shutoff threshold.
761	523919	3	694	DPF burner air pump pressure sensor, short circuit to battery or open load.
762	523919	4	694	DPF burner air pump pressure sensor, short circuit to ground.
763	523920	2	716	Exhaustgaspressure upstream burner, plausibility error.
765	523920	0	716	Exhaustgaspressure upstream burner, pressure above upper shutoff threshold.
770	523920	3	716	Exhaustgaspressure upstream burner, short circuit to battery or open load.
771	523920	4	716	Exhaustgaspressure upstream burner, short circuit to ground.
772	102	2	223	Pressure downstream charge air cooler, plausibility error.
774	102	1	223	Pressure downstream charge air cooler, pressure below lower physical threshold.
776	102	3	223	Pressure downstream charge air cooler, short circuit to battery or open load.
777	102	4	223	Pressure downstream charge air cooler, short circuit to ground.
780	523699	3	113	Boost pressure control; negative governor deviation below limit.
781	523699	4	113	learning valu too high No detail informationen!
785	523889	3	113	over teperature of device driver of pressure control valve No detail informationen!
791	411	0	693	delta pressure across venturi in EGR line above physical high limit.
793	411	11	693	Plausibility Check fault for deviation of desired and actual EGR-mass flow, where the latter is calculated out of EGR Delta Pressure Sensor.
795	411	3	693	Sensor error differential pressure Venturiunit (EGR), signal range check low.
796	411	4	693	Sensor error differential pressure Venturiunit (EGR), signal range check high.
805	524025	14	845	Particulate filter regeneration. Regeneration after time X is not successful (The error occurs when the regeneration times (3x) over the max. has been aborted allowed recovery time).
806	524058	2	844	Particulate filter; regeneration not successful.
807	3253	2	692	Differential pressure DPF, plausibility error.
809	3251	0	692	Differential pressure DPF maximum value is exceeded.
810	3251	0	692	Differential pressure sensor across DPF exceeds warning high limit.
812	3251	1	692	Differential pressure DPF, pressure below lower shutoff threshold.
813	3251	1	692	Differential pressure DPF, pressure below lower warning threshold.
814	3253	3	692	Electrical error differential pressure B58 (DPF). (signal range check high).
815	3253	4	692	Electrical error differential pressure (DPF). signal range check low.
825	523009	9	253	The pressure relief valve (PRV) has reached the number of allowed activations.
826	523470	2	146	Pressure relief valve is forced to open, perform pressure increase.
827	523470	2	146	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) forced to open. Performed by pressure increase.
828	523470	12	146	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) forced to open. Shutoff conditions.
829	523470	12	146	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) forced to open. Warning conditions.
830	523470	14	146	Open Pressure Relief Valve (PRV).
831	523470	11	146	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) error; Rail pressure out of tolerance range.
832	523470	11	146	Rail pressure out of tolerance range. The PRV can not be opened at this operating point with a pressure shock.
833	523009	10	253	Open time of Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) for wear out monitoring had exceeded.
834	523906	5	761	Electrical fuel pre - supply pump; open load.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
835	523906	12	761	Electrical fuel pre - supply pump. ECU powerstage over temperature.
836	523906	3	761	Electrical fuel pre - supply pump; short circuit to battery.
837	523906	4	761	Electrical fuel pre - supply pump. Short circuit to ground.
847	1176	0	139	Pressure sensor upstream turbine, Physical Range Check high.
848	1176	1	139	Pressure sensor upstream turbine, Physical Range Check low.
849	1176	3	141	Pressure sensor upstream turbine, signal range check (SRC) high.
850	1176	4	141	Pressure sensor upstream turbine, signal range check (SRC) low.
856	523613	0	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Positive governor deviation.
857	523613	0	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Rail pressure disrupted. Maximum positive deviation of rail pressure exceeded.
858	523613	0	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Rail pressure disrupted. Maximum positive deviation of rail pressure in metering unit exceeded (RailMeUn1).
859	523613	0	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Rail pressure below the target range. (RailMeUn2) Railsystem leakage detected.(RailMeUn10).
861	523613	1	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Minimum rail pressure exceeded (RailMeUn3). Negative deviation of rail pressure second stage (RailMeUn22).
862	523613	0	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Maximum rail pressure exceeded.
864	523613	2	134	Rail pressure metering unit, Setpoint of metering unit in overrun mode not plausi-ble.
865	523613	0	134	Setpoint of metering unit in overrun mode not plausible.
874	157	0	147	Rail pressure raw value is intermittent No detail informationen!
875	157	1	147	rail pressure raw value is above maximum offset No detail informationen!
876	523470	7	146	Maximum rail pressure exceeded (PRV).
877	157	3	147	Sensor error rail pressure. Sensor voltage above upper limit.
878	157	4	147	Sensor error rail pressure. Sensor voltage below lower limit.
881	523633	11	149	Lonterm adaption factor below threshold.
882	523633	11	149	Nox conversion rate insufficient (SCR-Cat defect, bad DEF quality).
883	523633	11	149	Nox conversion rate insufficient (SCR-Cat defect, bad DEF quality); temperature range 1.
887	3234	11	184	DFC for plausibility error Min for NOx sensor downstream of SCR Cat.
889	3224	1	185	DFC for plausibility error Max for NOx sensor upstream of SCR Cat.
892	4345	11	236	Sensor backflow line pressure (SCR); plausibility error.
893	4343	11	871	SCR Monitoring; Pressure stabilisation error, general pressure check error (SCR).
894	4374	13	872	Pressure stabilisation error dosing valve (SCR).
897	523632	16	875	Pump pressure SCR metering unit too high.
898	523632	18	876	Pump pressure SCR metering unit too low.
899	523632	0	877	Pressure overload of SCR-System.
900	523632	1	878	Pressure build-up error SCR-System.
903	4365	0	881	DEF tank temperature too high.
905	3241	0	883	Sensor SCR catalyst upstream temperature too high; plausibility error.
908	3361	7	886	DEF dosing valve blocked (SCR).
914	523720	2	148	DEF supply module heater temperature; plausibility error (normal condition).
915	523720	2	148	Sensor DEF supply module heater temperature; plausibility error (cold start condi-tion).

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
916	523721	2	689	Sensor DEF supply module temperature; plausibility error (normal condition).
917	523721	2	689	Sensor DEF supply module temperature; plausibility error (cold start condition).
918	523981	11	243	SCR plausibility, OBD and diagnosis; Stuck in range check of DEF tank temperature sensor. DEF-tank without heating function (heating phase).
919	523330	14	131	Immobilizer status; fuel blocked.
920	523330	14	131	DFC to block the fuel by Sia No detail informationen!
921	523330	14	131	DFC to indicate that TEN-code or UC-code received if ECU is learned. No detail informationen!
922	523330	14	131	DFC to indicate that no code is received via CAN. No detail informationen!
923	523330	14	131	DFC to indicate that wrong code is received. No detail informationen!
925	523720	8	148	DEF supply module heater temperature; duty cycle in failure range.
926	523720	8	148	DEF supply module heater temperature; duty cycle in invalid range.
927	523721	11	689	Urea supply module temperature measurement not available.
928	523722	8	691	DEF supply module PWM signal; period outside valid range.
929	523722	8	691	Detect faulty PWM signal from Supply Modul.
930	523721	8	689	DEF supply module temperature; duty cycle in failure range.
931	523721	8	689	Urea supply module temperature; duty cycle in invalid range.
932	29	3	126	Handthrottle idle validation switch; short circuit to battery.
935	91	3	226	Sensor error accelerator pedal. signal range check high.
937	29	4	126	Handthrottle; short circuit to ground.
940	91	4	226	Sensor error accelerator pedal. Signal is below the range.
942	523921	3	714	Sensor error burner temperature; signal range check high.
943	3532	3	127	Sensor error DEF tank level; signal range check high.
944	523921	4	714	Sensor error burner temperature; signal range check low.
945	3532	4	127	Sensor error DEF tank level; signal range check low.
946	1079	13	282	Failure of sensor supply voltage 1.
947	1080	13	282	Failure of sensor supply voltage 2.
948	523601	13	282	Failure of sensor supply voltage 3.
952	523580	2	555	Data set variant with the desired number not found Invalid variant dataset Identifier error. No detail informationen!
953	523580	11	555	An error has occurred in the switch over to the desired data set variant in the code word. Variant dataset switching error No detail informationen!
954	523580	11	555	The code word could not be read correctly from the EEPROM Variant dataset switching error. No detail informationen!
956	677	3	512	Starter relay high side. Short circuit to battery.
957	677	4	512	Starter relay high side short circuit to ground.
958	677	5	512	Starter relay low side no load error.
959	677	12	512	Starter relay powerstage over temperature.
960	677	3	512	Starter relay low side short circuit to battery.
961	677	4	512	Starter relay low side short circuit to ground.
965	523922	3	715	Burner shut of valve; short circuit to battery.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
969	624	5	513	SVS lamp; open load.
970	624	12	513	SVS lamp: powerstage over temperature.
971	624	3	513	SVS lamp; short circuit to battery.
972	624	4	513	SVS lamp; short circuit to ground.
973	523612	14	555	Softwarereset CPU SWReset_0.
974	523612	14	555	Softwarereset CPU SWReset_1.
975	523612	14	555	Softwarereset CPU SWReset_2.
976	91	11	226	Plausibility error between APP1 and APP2 or APP1 and idle switch.
978	29	2	126	Plausibility error between sensor and idle switch, Acceleratio Pedal Detection. In case of Hand Throttle with Low Idle Switch, it is the plausibility check between hand throttle and idle switch.
980	523550	12	515	Terminal 50 was operated too long.
981	172	3	226	Air flow temperature sensor; short circuit to battery or open load.
982	172	4	226	Air flow temperature sensor; short circuit to ground.
986	523921	0	714	Burner temperature, temperature above upper shutoff threshold.
989	523921	1	714	Burner temperature, temperature below lower shutoff threshold.
992	105	1	128	Charged Air cooler down stream temperature. Temperature below lower physical threshold.
994	105	3	128	Electrical error charged air temperature. Signal range check high.(SRC).
995	105	4	128	Electrical error charged air temperature. Signal range check low.
996	105	0	233	Charged air cooler temperature. System reaction initiated. High charged air cooler temperature. Warning threshold exceeded.
997	105	0	233	Low charged air cooler temperature. Shut off threshold exceeded.
998	105	11	128	Diagnostic fault check for charged air cooler downstream temperature sensor. No detail informationen!
1007	412	3	682	Electrical error EGR cooler downstream temperature. Signal range check high.
1008	412	4	682	electrical error EGR cooler downstream temperature. Signal range check low.
1011	523960	0	771	Physical range check high for EGR cooler downstream temperature.
1012	523960	1	771	Physical range check low for EGR cooler downstream temperature.
1014	5763	6	594	Actuator error EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8). Signal range check high.
1015	520521	5	594	Actuator error EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); signal range check low.
1016	5763	7	594	Actuator position for EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8) not plausible.
1022	5763	6	594	Actuator error EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); signal range check high.
1023	5763	5	594	Actuator error EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); signal range check low.
1024	5763	3	594	Position sensor error of actuator EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8). Signal range check high.
1025	5763	4	594	Position sensor error actuator EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8). Signal range check low.
1026	4769	2	684	Temperature downstream DOC, plausibility error.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1029	4766	0	684	Temperature downstream DOC, temperature above upper shutoff threshold.
1030	4766	0	684	Temperature downstream DOC, temperature above upper warning threshold.
1034	4769	3	684	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC); signal range check high.
1035	4769	4	684	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC); signal range check low.
1036	4768	2	683	Temperature upstream DOC, plausibility error.
1039	4765	0	683	Temperature upstream DOC, temperature above upper shutoff threshold.
1040	4765	0	683	Temperature upstream DOC, temperature above upper warning threshold.
1044	4768	3	683	Electrical error exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC); signal range check high.
1045	4768	4	683	Electrical error exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC); signal range check low.
1047	3248	4	685	Sensor error particle filter downstream temperature; signal range check low.
1067	1180	3	556	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine; signal range check high.
1068	1180	4	556	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine; signal range check low.
1069	4360	0	668	Exhaust temperature upstream SCR-Cat, temperature above upper physical threshold.
1070	4360	1	668	Sensed exhaust temperature before SCR-Cat is < physical low limit.
1071	4361	2	668	Signal error for CAN message . No detail informationen!
1072	4361	3	668	Sensor error DEF catalyst exhaust gas temperature upstream; signal range check high.
1073	4361	4	668	Sensor error DEF catalyst exhaust gas temperature upstream; signal range check low.
1074	1761	14	127	DEF tank level; warning threshold exceeded.
1075	3361	6	677	DEF dosing valve; power at the end of injection too high.
1077	3361	3	677	DEF dosing valve; short circuit to battery on low side.
1078	3361	3	677	DEF dosing valve; short circuit to battery or open load on high side.
1079	3361	4	677	Urea dosing valve; short circuit to ground or open load on low side.
1080	3361	4	677	DEF dosing valve; short circuit on high side.
1081	4345	5	674	SCR heater relay DEF returnline sekondary side; open load.
1082	4366	5	762	SCR main relay (secondary side): open load.
1083	4343	5	673	SCR heater relay DEF pressureline secondary side; open load.
1084	4366	5	762	SCR main relay (secondary side); Shortcut to battery.
1085	4366	5	762	SCR main relay (secondary side), heat relay (secondary side), heating elements or heating valve short to ground.
1086	4341	5	675	SCR heater relay DEF supplyline secondary side; open load.
1087	523719	5	672	SCR heater relay DEF supply modul secondary side; open load.
1088	4366	5	671	SCR Tank heating valve secundary side: open load.
1089	4243	11	783	SCR heater; Pressure line heater error and temperature condition to perform an afterrun (Group error diagnosis heater). SCR system heater diagnostic reports error; shut off SCR-system.
1090	4345	5	674	SCR heater relay DEF returnline primary side; open load.
1091	4345	12	674	Over Temperature error . No detail informationen!
1092	4345	3	674	SCR heater DEF returnline; short circuit to battery.
1093	4345	4	674	SCR heater DEF returnline; short circuit to ground.
1094	4343	5	673	SCR heater relay DEF pressureline primary side; open load.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1095	4343	12	673	Over Temperature error No detail informationen!
1096	4343	3	673	SCR heater DEF pressureline; short circuit to battery.
1097	4343	4	673	SCR heater DEF pressureline; short circuit to ground.
1098	523718	5	676	SCR main relay (primary side); open load.
1099	523718	12	676	SCR main relay (primary side); powerstage over temperature.
1100	523718	3	676	SCR main relay (primary side); short circuit to battery.
1101	523718	4	676	SCR main relay (primary side); short circuit to ground.
1102	4341	5	675	SCR heater relay DEF supply line primary side; open load.
1104	4341	3	675	SCR-heater DEF supplyline; short circuit to battery.
1105	4341	4	675	SCR-heater DEF supply line; short circuit to ground.
1106	523719	5	672	SCR heater relay DEF supplymodule primary side; open load.
1107	523719	12	672	Over Temperature error . No detail informationen!
1108	523719	3	672	SCR heater DEF supplymodule; short circuit to battery.
1109	523719	4	672	SCR heater DEF supplymodule; short circuit to ground.
1110	4366	5	671	SCR tank heating valve primary side; open load.
1111	4366	12	671	SCR-heater relay urea tank powerstage output; over temperature.
1112	4366	3	671	SCR Tank heating valve; short circuit to battery.
1113	4366	4	671	SCR Tank heating valve; short circuit to ground.
1117	523632	11	666	Pump motor not available for actuation.
1118	4375	5	666	Urea pump motor; open load.
1120	4375	3	666	Urea pump motor; short circuit to battery.
1121	4375	4	666	Urea pump motor; short circuit to ground.
1122	4334	0	665	Supply module DEF, DEF pressure above upper physical threshold.
1123	4334	1	665	Urea supply module pressure sensor; physical range check low (defect pressure sen-sor).
1124	4334	0	665	Urea pump pressure sensor; high signal not plausible.
1125	4334	1	665	Urea pump pressure sensor; low signal not plausible.
1126	523632	2	665	Signal error for CAN message. No detail informationen!
1127	523632	3	665	Sensor error urea pump pressure; signal range check high.
1128	523632	4	665	Sensor error urea pump pressure; signal range check low.
1129	4376	5	667	SCR reversal valve; open load.
1130	4376	12	667	SCR reversing valve; over temperature.
1131	4376	3	667	SCR reversal valve; short circuit to battery.
1132	4376	4	667	SCR reversing valve; short circuit to ground.
1135	3031	0	669	DEF tank, DEF temperature in DEF tank is to high.
1136	3031	1	669	DEF tank, DEF temperature below lower physical threshold.
1137	4365	2	669	Tank temperature signal error for CAN message.
1138	4365	3	669	Sensor error urea tank temperature: short circuit to battery.
1139	4365	4	669	Sensor error urea tank temperature; short circuit to ground.
1157	97	12	228	Water in fuel level prefilter; maximum value exceeded.
1158	523946	0	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 1 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded.
1159	523947	0	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 2 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1160	523948	0	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 3 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded.
1161	523949	0	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 4 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded.
1162	523950	0	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 5 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded.
1163	523951	0	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 6 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded.
1164	523946	1	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 1 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded.
1165	523947	1	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 2 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded.
1166	523948	1	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 3 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded.
1167	523949	1	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 4 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded.
1168	523950	1	772	Zero fuel calibration injector 5 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded.
1170	523612	12	555	Internal software error ECU.
1171	175	2	144	Customer oil temperature: signal unplausible.
1173	523973	14	779	SCR Tamper detection; derating timer below limit 1.
1174	523974	14	779	SCR Tamper detection; derating timer below limit 2.
1175	523975	14	175	Urea quality; derating timer below limit 1.
1176	523976	14	175	Urea qulaity; derating timer below limit 2.
1177	523977	14	781	Urea tank level; derating timer below limit 1.
1178	523978	14	781	Urea tank level; derating timer below limit 2.
1180	168	0	318	Physical range check high for battery voltage.
1181	168	1	318	Physical range check low for battery voltage.
1183	172	1	226	Air inlet filter sensor out of physical range check.
1193	1180	0	556	Physical range check high for exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine.
1194	1180	1	556	Physical range check low for exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine.
1219	524018	14	786	HMI engine derate service state. DPF wasn´t regenerated, power reduction phase 1 (manuell regeneration request).
1220	524022	14	786	HMI engine derate stop state. DPF wasn´t regenerated, power reduction phase 2 (manuell regeneration request).
1222	190	14	212	Camshaft- and Crankshaft speed sensor signal not available on CAN.
1223	5763	5	594	Actuator EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); open load.
1224	5763	6	594	Actuator EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (6.1,7.8); over current.
1226	5763	3	594	EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); short circuit to battery.
1227	5763	3	594	EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); short circuit to battery.
1228	5763	4	594	EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); short circuit to ground.
1229	5763	4	594	EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); short circuit to ground.
1230	5763	6	594	Actuator error EGR-Valve (2.9;3.6) or Throttle-Valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); Overload by short-circuit.
1231	5763	11	594	Power stage over temperature due to high current.
1232	5763	4	594	actuator AGR valve (2.9;3.6) throttle valve (4.1;6.1;7.8); Voltage below threshold.
1239	523984	3	788	UB7; Short circuit to battery error of actuator relay 6.
1241	523986	4	176	Relais SCR-Heater, Short Circuit to Ground (High side Control side).
1242	523987	4	791	UB6; Short circuit to ground actuator relay 6.
1247	524019	11	862	Burner Control; Air Line - Blocked. Air Pump; air lines blocked.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1248	523910	9	695	Burner Control; Air Pump - CAN Lost. Air Pump; CAN communication lost.
1249	523910	7	695	Air pump; CAN communication interrupted no purge function available.
1250	523910	12	695	Air Pump; internal error.
1252	523910	0	695	Air Pump; operating voltage error.
1254	524014	1	858	Air inlet EPV - pressure too low. Air pressure glow plug flush line; below limit.
1255	524013	7	857	Burner Control; Flame lost max. Burner operation is interrupted too often.
1257	523915	7	853	HCI dosing valve (DV1); blocked open.
1258	524016	11	859	Burner Control; HFM - Electrical Fault. HFM sensor; electrical fault.
1259	524016	2	859	Burner Control; HFM - Plausibilitätsfehler 1. Amount of air is not plausible to pump speed.
1261	523910	6	695	Burner Control Air Pump; over current. Air pump electrically overloaded.
1262	523922	7	854	Burner Control; Shut-off Valve - Blocked closed. Burner Shut Off Valve; blocked closed.
1263	524021	11	864	Burner Control; Fuel line ShutOff downstream - broken. Burner fuel line pipe leak behind Shut Off Valve.
1264	523922	7	855	Burner Shut Off Valve; blocked open.
1282	523993	9	794	
1285	524038	9	824	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComMS_Sys1TO (error memory Slave); Master-Slave internal CAN message.
1286	524039	9	825	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComMS_Sys2TO (error memory Slave); Master-Slave internal CAN message.
1287	524040	9	826	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComMS_Sys3TO (error memory Slave); Master-Slave internal CAN message.
1288	524041	9	827	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComMS_Sys4TO (error memory Slave); Master-Slave internal CAN message.
1289	524042	9	828	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComMS_Sys5TO (error memory Slave); Master-Slave internal CAN message.
1290	524043	9	829	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComMS_Sys6TO (error memory Slave); Master-Slave internal CAN message.
1291	524045	9	831	Master Slave, Error of message counter CAN receive message ComMSMoFOvR; ComMSMoFOvR1CNT.
1292	524046	9	832	Master-Slave CAN; Error Checksum of CAN-Receive Message.
1293	524047	9	833	Master-Slave CAN; Error of message length of CAN receive message ComMSMoFOvR;_ComMSMoFOvR1DLC.
1294	524048	9	834	Timeout error CAN message ComMSMoFOvR1TO error memory Slave.
1299	523788	0	655	Wastegate plauisibility error off CAN transmit message.
1300	523788	0	655	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComTrbChActr; Wastegate.
1302	524024	11	866	Deviation of the exhaust gas temperature setpoint to actual value downstream (DOC) too high.
1324	523995	13	795	Check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 7 (in firing order).

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1325	523996	13	796	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 8 (in firing order).
1326	523997	4	797	Injector cylinder bank 1 slave; short circuit.
1327	523998	4	798	Injector cylinder bank 2 slave; short circuit.
1328	523999	12	799	Injector powerstage output Slave defect.
1329	524000	5	177	Injector 7 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
1330	524001	5	178	Injector 8 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection.
1333	524000	3	177	Injector 7 (in firing order); short circuit.
1334	524001	3	178	Injector 8 (in firing order); short circuit.
1337	2797	4	565	Timeout of Short-Circuit Ground Diagnosis Cyl. Bank 0;_IVDiaShCirGndToutBnk_0.
1338	2798	4	566	Timeout of Short-Circuit Ground Diagnosis Cyl. Bank 1;_IVDiaShCirGndToutBnk_1.
1339	2797	4	565	Injector diagnostic; Short circuit to ground cylinder bank 0.
1340	2798	4	566	Injector diagnostic; Short circuit to ground cylinder bank 1.
1341	524035	12	555	Injector diagnostics; time out error in the SPI communication.
1342	524036	12	555	Injector diagnostics Slave; time out error in the SPI communication.
1345	524069	9	896	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame MSMon_FidFCCTO; Master-Slave CAN communication faulty.
1357	524052	11	836	Error memory Slave reports FID MSMonFC2 (collective error).
1368	524052	11	836	Error memory Slave reports FID MSMonFC3 (collective error).
1378	523919	2	694	Sensor air pump airpressure; plausibility error.
1379	523920	2	716	Sensor exhaust gas back pressure burner; plausibility error.
1380	3253	2	692	Sensor differential pressure (DPF); plausibility error.
1381	164	2	839	Rail pressure safety function is not executed correctly ().
1389	523922	5	715	Burner Shut Off Valve; open load.
1390	523922	12	715	Burner Shut Off Valve; powerstage over temperature.
1392	523922	4	715	Burner Shut Off Valve; short circuit to ground.
1395	523921	2	714	Burner temperature sensor; Plausibility Check for burner temperature sensor. Sensor burner temperature; plausibility error.
1398	1136	0	681	Physical range check high for ECU temperature.
1402	4769	2	684	Sensor exhaust gas temperature OxiCat downstream (normal operation); plausibility error.
1403	4769	2	684	Sensor exhaust gas temperature OxiCat downstream (regeneration); plausibility error.
1411	1188	11	814	Wastegate actuator; internal error.
1412	1188	11	814	Wastegate actuator; EOL calibration not performed correctly.
1413	1188	13	814	Wastegate actuator calibration deviation too large, recalibration required.
1414	1188	2	814	Wastegate; status message from ECU missing.
1415	1188	7	814	Wastegate actuator; blocked.
1417	1188	11	814	Wastegate actuator; over temperature (> 135°C).
1418	1188	11	814	Wastegate actuator; operating voltage error.
1423	5763	0	594	Warning threshold for an internal actuator error exceeded, < 4L EGR.actuator und >4L Air Intake Flap.
1424	5763	1	594	Shut off threshold for an internal actuator error exceeded, < 4L EGR.actuator und >4L Air Intake Flap.
1425	172	0	226	air temperature within air filter box above maximum physical value.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1431	524028	2	815	CAN message PROEGRActr; plausibility error.
1432	524029	2	815	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComEGRActr - exhaust gas recirculation positioner.
1436	524034	5	816	Disc Separator; open load.
1437	524034	12	816	Disc Separator; powerstage over temperature.
1438	524034	3	816	Disc separator; short circuit to battery.
1439	524034	4	816	Disc separator; short circuit to ground.
1440	524030	7	815	EGR actuator; internal error.
1441	524031	13	815	EGR actuator, calibration error.
1442	524032	2	815	EGR actuator; status message "EGRCust" is missing.
1443	524033	7	815	EGR actuator; due to overload in Save Mode.
1455	3711	12	711	Temperature during stand-still main phase too low or too high.
1458	523960	0	771	High exhaust gas temperature EGR cooler downstream; warning threshold exceeded.
1464	0	0	-	
1466	0	0	-	
1467	0	0	-	
1469	0	0	-	
1470	0	0	-	
1471	0	0	-	
1472	0	0	-	
1481	524025	5	845	DPF system; operating voltage error.
1482	524044	9	188	CAN message ComMS_Sys7 not received from slave.
1484	524068	2	895	Master ECU and Slave ECU have been identified as the same types.
1485	524052	11	836	Master ECU and Slave ECU data sets or software are not identical.
1486	523718	5	676	SCR mainrelay; open load (only CV56B).
1488	523718	3	676	SCR mainrelay; short circuit to battery (only CV56B).
1489	523718	4	676	SCR mainrelay; short circuit to ground (only CV56B).
1490	4376	5	667	SCR reverting valve; open load.
1491	4376	12	667	SCR reverting valve; over temperature.
1493	4376	4	667	SCR reverting valve; short circuit to ground.
1505	524057	2	843	Fuel low pressure pump; error pressure build up.
1523	2659	2	822	Exhaust Gas Recirculation AGS Sensor; signal not plausible.
1524	2659	0	822	Exhaust Gas Recirculation AGS Sensor; Sensed exhaust mass value above maximum physical value.
1525	2659	1	822	Exhaust Gas Recirculation AGS Sensor; Sensed exhaust mass value below minimum physical value.
1526	2659	12	822	Exhaust Gas Recirculation AGS Sensor; plausibility error, AGS sensor has not passed the burn off process.
1527	2659	2	822	Exhaust Gas Recirculation AGS Sensor; Temperature of EGR mass not plausible.
1529	524070	2	897	(Upstream NOx-Sensor) Diagnostic Fault Check for invalid upstream NOx value (Sensor self diagnostic DFC set by Deutz-SW). NOx-Sensor before SCR-Cat: Invalid upstream NOx value.
1530	524071	2	898	(Downstream NOx-Sensor) Diagnostic Fault Check for invalid downstream lambda value (Sensor self diagnostic DFC set by Deutz-SW).

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1531	524072	2	899	(Upstream NOx-Sensor) Diagnostic Fault Check for invalid upstream lambda value (Sensor self diagnostic DFC set by Deutz-SW).
1532	524073	2	245	(Downstream NOx-Sensor) Diagnostic Fault Check for invalid downstream NOx value (Sensor self diagnostic DFC set by Deutz-SW).
1533	524074	9	246	NOx sensor downstream SCR-CAT, sensor internally open load.
1534	524075	11	247	NOx sensor downstream SCR-CAT, sensor internally short circuit.
1535	524076	9	248	NOx sensor upstream SCR-CAT, sensor internally open line.
1536	524077	11	249	NOx sensor upstream SCR-CAT, sensor internally short circuit.
1537	524078	9	255	NOx sensor downstream SCR-CAT, lambda value above upper physical threshold.
1538	524079	9	256	NOx sensor downstream SCR-CAT, lambda value below lower physical threshold.
1539	524080	9	257	NOx sensor upstream SCR-CAT, lambda value above upper physical threshold.
1540	524081	9	258	NOx sensor upstream SCR-CAT, lambda value below lower physical threshold.
1541	524082	9	259	(Downstream NOx-Sensor) Diagnostic Fault Check for downstream NOx value over maximum limit (DFC set by Deutz-SW).
1542	524083	9	261	NOx-Sensor downstream SCR-CAT, NOx value below minimum value.
1543	524084	9	911	NOx-Sensor upstream SCR-CAT, NOx value above maximum value.
1544	524085	9	912	NOx sensor upstream SCR-CAT, NOx value below lower physical threshold.
1545	524149	2	968	Plausibility error between pressure downstream turbine (PTrbnDs) and ambient air pressure (EnvP).
1555	524063	5	869	SCR heater return line; open load.
1556	524063	5	869	SCR main relay not connected.
1557	524063	5	869	SCR heater pressure line; open load.
1558	524063	3	869	SCR heater main relay; short circuit to battery.
1559	524063	4	869	SCR heater main relay load side (K31) on heating valve (Y31), Short cut to ground.
1560	524063	5	869	SCR relay for suction line not connected.
1561	524063	5	869	SCR heater supply module; open load.
1562	524063	5	869	SCR heater tank; open load.
1565	524065	0	892	Pressure sensor upstream SCR-CAT, pressure above upper physical threshold.
1566	524065	1	892	Pressure sensor upstream SCR-CAT, pressure below lower physical threshold.
1569	524065	3	892	Pressure sensor upstream SCR-CAT; short circuit battery or open load.
1570	524065	4	892	Pressure sensor upstream SCR-CAT; short circuit ground.
1579	524066	3	893	SCR measurement heater output stage; short circuit battery or open load.
1581	524067	0	894	DEF supply module, heater temperature above upper physical threshold.
1582	524067	1	894	DEF supply module, heater temperature below lower physical threshold.
1585	524067	0	894	DEF supply module, temperature above upper physical threshold.
1586	524067	1	894	DEF supply module, temperature below lower physical threshold.
1593	1761	0	129	DEF tank, DEF level above upper physical threshold.
1594	1761	1	129	DEF tank, DEF level below lower physical threshold.
1597	524149	2	968	Pressure downstream turbine, plausibility error.
1598	524065	2	892	Pressure sensor upstream SCR-CAT, plausibility error.
1616	3699	2	818	Passive regeneration of DPF; plausibility error. DPF differential pressure sensor and a further sensor or actuator CRT system defective.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1617	3699	2	818	Passive regeneration of DPF; DOC error. Temperature sensor us. and ds. DOC simultaneously defect.
1619	524087	5	884	Urea Error Lamp; open load.
1620	524087	12	884	Urea Error Lamp; temperatur over limit.
1621	524087	3	884	Urea Error Lamp; short circuit battery.
1622	524087	4	884	Urea Error Lamp; short circuit ground.
1630	524132	2	955	Fuel low pressure upstream fuel low pressure pump not plausible.
1631	524132	0	955	Fuel low pressure upstream fuel low pressure pump, pressure above maximum warning threshold.
1632	524132	0	955	Fuel low pressure upstream fuel low pressure pump, pressure above maximum shut off threshold.
1633	524132	1	955	Fuel low pressure upstream fuel low pressure pump, pressure below minimum shut off threshold.
1634	524132	1	955	Fuel low pressure upstream fuel low pressure pump, pressure below minimum warning threshold.
1635	3699	0	818	Maximum standstill time reached; oil exchange request ignored.
1639	524147	13	966	SCR System,pressure build up not possible.
1646	524063	12	869	DEF supply modul, time for defrosting too long.
1647	524063	12	869	DEF tank, time for defrosting too long.
1654	1761	14	138	Urea Tank Signal to HMI for indicating the Urea Tank-Level (Urea tank volume ratio low threshold 1).
1655	1761	14	138	DEF tank, DEF level below first warning threshold.
1656	1761	14	138	DEF tank, DEF level below second warning threshold.
1658	524096	14	196	Control of the SCR system; If the start stop counter (EPA-Counter) exceeds the threshold. SCRCtl_ctEngStrtStopThresh_C. This counter will increment only once in each driving cycle in case of an SCR error. If the counter reaches the threshold, the DFC will be set to inhibit the engine start. Engine will not be started, because of EPA-Counter.
1659	524114	9	938	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame A1DOC.
1660	524115	9	939	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame AT1S.
1661	524116	9	194	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame SCR2.
1662	524117	9	941	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame SCR3.
1663	524097	9	921	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame DPFBrnAirPmpCtl.
1664	524098	9	922	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFBrnPT.
1665	524099	9	923	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFC1.
1666	524100	9	924	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFHisDat.
1667	524101	9	925	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFTstMon.
1668	524105	9	929	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComEGRMsFlw.
1669	524108	9	932	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComEGRTVActr.
1670	524110	9	934	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComETVActrTO.
1671	524112	9	936	Timeout ComIntake Throttle Valve Actr.
1672	524118	9	942	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxCM1.
1673	524119	9	943	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxCustSCR3.
1674	524102	9	926	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxDPFBrnAirPmpCtl.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1675	524103	9	927	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxDPFBrnAirPmp.
1676	524104	9	928	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxDPFCtl.
1677	524106	9	195	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEGRMsFlw1.
1678	524107	9	931	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEGRMsFlw2.
1679	524109	9	933	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEGRTVActr.
1680	524111	9	935	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxETVActr.
1681	524113	9	937	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxITVActr.
1682	524120	9	944	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxSCRHtDiag.
1683	524121	9	945	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxTrbChActr.
1684	524122	9	946	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxUQSens.
1685	524123	9	947	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComSCRHtCtl.
1686	524124	9	948	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComTxAT1IMG.
1687	524125	9	949	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComTxTrbChActr
1698	524133	2	956	HMI system; set if restore button blocked.
1699	524134	0	957	DPF, ash load exceeds the shutoff threshold.
1700	524134	0	957	DPF, ash load exceeds the warning threshold.
1701	524135	0	958	DPF, soot load exceeds the shutoff threshold.
1702	524135	14	958	DPF, soot load exceeds the service request threshold.
1703	524135	0	958	DPF, soot load exceeds the warning threshold.
1705	524156	9	972	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEBC2.
1752	2791	7	415	EGR actuator, actuator blocked.
1753	2791	2	415	EGR actuator, CAN error.
1754	2791	13	415	EGR actuator, EOL calibration error.
1755	2791	12	415	EGR Actuator, internal electrical fault.
1756	2791	13	415	EGR actuator, learning process aborted.
1757	2791	6	415	EGR actuator current is above maximum threshold.
1758	2791	3	415	EGR actuator supply voltage is above the maximum threshold.
1759	2791	4	415	EGR actuator supply voltage is below minimum threshold.
1760	2791	13	415	EGR actuator, learning process out of range.
1761	2791	7	415	EGR actuator, broken spring detected.
1762	2791	16	415	EGR actuator, temperature high.
1763	2791	0	415	EGR actuator, temperature critical high.
1788	1188	7	814	Turbocharger wastegate, mechanical blocking detected.
1789	1188	2	814	Turbocharger wastegate, CAN Error.
1790	1188	13	814	Turbocharger wastegate, EOL calibration error.
1791	1188	12	814	Turbocharger wastegate, internal electrical error.
1792	1188	13	814	Turbocharger wastegate, learning process aborted.
1793	1188	6	814	Turbocharger wastegate, current above maximum threshold.
1794	1188	3	814	Turbocharger wastegate, supply voltage above maximum threshold.
1795	1188	4	814	Turbocharger wastegate, supply voltage below minimum threshold.
1796	1188	13	814	Turbocharger wastegate, learning process out of range.
1797	1188	7	814	Turbocharger wastegate, broken spring detected.
1799	1188	0	814	Turbocharger wastegate, temperature critical high.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1827	524141	7	192	DEF dosing valve, dosing valve blocked.
1857	523612	12	555	Engine starter, plausibility error of starter release condition.
1858	524147	7	966	SCR-System, reverting valve blocked
1859	524175	0	993	SCR-CAT, Nox emissions above maximum threshold.
1860	524074	2	246	NOx-Sensor after SCR-Cat: Nox-Sensor dew point problem or plausibility problem.
1861	524076	2	248	NOx-Sensor before SCR-Cat: Nox-Sensor dew point problem or plausibility problem.
1863	524177	7	995	SCR System, DEF suction line blocked.
1864	524178	7	996	SCR System, DEF pressure out of range.
1865	4360	2	668	Exhaust temperature sensor upstream SCR, plausibility error.
1866	4334	2	665	DEF supply module pressure, plausibility error.
1867	524067	2	894	Supply module heater temperature, plausibility error.
1868	524067	2	894	Supply module temperature, plausibility error.
1869	1761	2	129	DEF tank level, plausibility error.
1870	3031	2	669	Urea tank temperature outside of plausible thresholds.
1874	524152	2	971	Urea Quality Sensor; Timeout CAN message.
1875	524153	2	997	Urea tank level & urea tank temperature via CAN bus, timeout of CAN message.
1880	1761	14	138	DEF tank, DEF level below third warning threshold.
1881	4768	2	683	exhaust gas temperature sensors up- and downstream DOC are physically swapped
1882	524025	14	845	The standstill-regeneration mode time exceeds the long-limit. Vehicle was too long or too often in standstill mode. Make oil change and reset counter.
1883	524025	14	845	The standstill-regeneration mode time exceeds the short-limit. Vehicle was too long or too often within a short time in standstill mode. Make oil change and reset counter.
1889	524189	9	269	Master / Slave Can disturbed.
1891	524190	14	272	Inducement level 1 activ.
1892	524191	14	273	Inducement level 2 activ.
1893	524193	8	275	The standstill-regeneration mode time exceeds the long limit threshold. Vehicle was too long or too often in standstill mode. Change oil and reset counter.
1894	524194	8	276	The standstill-regeneration mode time exceeds the short-limit. Vehicle was too long or too often within a short time in standstill mode. Change oil and reset counter.
1895	3519	12	277	DEF tank temperature, temperature too high
1896	3520	3	278	DEF quality sensor, short circuit to battery or open load
1897	3520	4	278	DEF quality sensor, short circuit to ground
1898	3519	3	277	DEF quality sensor, internal temperature sensor short circuit to battery or open load
1899	3519	4	277	DEF quality sensor, internal temperature sensor short circuit to ground.
1900	524195	14	279	Standstill request due to crystalisation ignored too long.
1901	524196	13	283	Variant handling, address error.
1902	524196	2	283	Variant handling, Synchronisation error.
1904	3520	2	278	DEF quality seonsor, bad DEF quality detected or no DEF measuring possible.
1907	3520	13	278	Urea quality at UQS invalid.
1908	3519	13	277	Temperature at UQS invalid.

Table 3-15. Deutz Trouble Codes - EMR4 (TD2.9 Engine)

KWP-Code	SPN	FMI	Blink code	Error Identification
1911	3532	3	127	The DEF Level at UQS out of max. physical range.
1912	3532	4	127	Quality at UQS out of min. physical range.
1914	4365	3	669	DEF qualitysensor, tank temperatur; Short circuit to battery or open load.
1915	4365	4	669	DEF qualitysensor, tank temperatur; Short circuit to ground.
1917	3936	14	286	Standstill request ignored too long.
1918	3936	14	286	Standstill time based escalation requests Inducement step 2.
1921	51	5	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, wiring harness broken at connected actuator.
1922	51	6	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, current above maximum threshold.
1924	51	3	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, short circuit to battery (A02).
1925	51	3	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, short circuit to battery (A67).
1926	51	4	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, short circuit to ground (A02).
1927	51	4	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, short circuit to ground (A67).
1931	51	7	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, position of actuator not plausible (deviation from setpoint more than 7%).
1935	51	3	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, short circuit to battery oder broken wiring harness.
1936	51	4	594	Intake Throttle Flap, H-Bridge, short circuit to ground.
1943	524202	11	313	SCR error code in master ECU active.
1944	524203	11	313	DEF tank level failure is in master ECU active.
1945	524204	11	313	SCR afterrun failure is in master ECU active.
1946	524205	11	313	SCR Co2Off failure is in master ECU active.
1947	524206	11	313	SCR disable DEF dosing failure is in master ECU active.
1971	524230	11	315	Inducement HW Failure Slave.
1972	524231	11	315	Inducement SCR Tamp. Slave.
1973	524232	11	315	Inducement DEF Qualitity in Slave ECU.
1980	524239	11	315	SCR regeneration failure is in slave ECU active.
1989	524248	11	315	NOX sensor downstream error in slave ECU.
1990	524249	11	315	DEF dosing valve error in slave ECU.
1992	524251	11	315	DEF pressure problems in slave ECU.
1993	524252	11	315	Reverting valve error in slave ECU.
1994	524253	11	315	DEF back flow line heater error on slave ECU.
1995	524254	11	315	Error NOx-Tailpipe emissions exceeded on Slave ECU.
1996	524255	11	315	DEF suction line heater error on slave ECU.
1997	524256	11	315	DEF supply module heater error on slave ECU.
1998	524257	11	315	Error Exhaust pressure upstream SCR on Slave ECU.
1999	524258	11	315	Error Exhaust temperature upstream SCR on Slave ECU.
2000	524259	11	315	DEF pressure line heater error on slave ECU.
2001	524260	11	315	Error Urea pump temperature on Slave ECU.
2002	524261	11	315	Error DEF heater relais on Slave ECU.
2007	524266	14	287	Announcement triggers the Inducement Level 2.
2008	524267	14	845	Max. launch time for stand still exceeded (60min).
2011	4171	2	668	Dynamic temperatur check of temp before SCR.
2013	524147	13	996	Set together with DFC_SCRCoBldUpLoPres. DFC_SCRCoBldUpLoPresRst is only used for inducement purposes. It ensures that legal inducement is working correctly.

3.27 AIR COMPRESSOR

Description

The compressor consists of a heavy duty rotary screw air compressor with integral inlet valve assembly, oil separation system, minimum pressure/discharge check valve and oil filter housing. The complete system incorporates compressor oil cooling system, hydraulic drive and valving.

Oil Injection

Lubricant is injected into the compressor air end unit and mixes directly with the air in the compression chamber, internal porting also injects oil into the bearings and seal area. The lubricant has three primary functions:

- Controls the rise of air temperature normally associated with the heat of compression.
- Seals the leakage paths between the rotors and the stator, and also between the rotors themselves.
- Acts as a lubricating film between the rotors allowing one rotor to directly drive the other which is an idler. It also lubricates the bearings and seal.

The screw compressor assembly is mounted inside the main casting and consists of a male and female rotor supported with anti-friction bearings suitably sized for long life.

Inlet Valve and Control Valving

The inlet valve and control solenoid valve assembly are mounted directly on top of the compressor module. On initial start-up the solenoid is energized and the inlet valve opens from pilot air being passed through the solenoid actuated valve. When final pressure is reached a pressure switch de-activates the solenoid and the inlet valve closes**.** At the same time the compressor pressure will relieve down to a low pressure (typically about 40 psig (2.75 bar)). Only the compressed air within the compressor module will reduce down to this lower pressure due to the operation of the discharge minimum pressure/check valve. This reduction in internal air pressure reduces the power requirement considerably during this unloaded state. The pressure switch located in the downstream air line senses air demand and upon reducing pressure in discharge line (ie. air being used) will re-activate the inlet valve and the compressor again starts to load and produce air.

The discharge air pressure switch will typically be set with a 30 psi (2.0 bar) differential pressure.

Air Filter Unit

The air filter is dry type replaceable element and is mounted directly on top of the inlet valve assembly. The element is easily replaced for service changeout - Refer to Maintenance Section.

Oil Reservoir and Primary Oil Separation

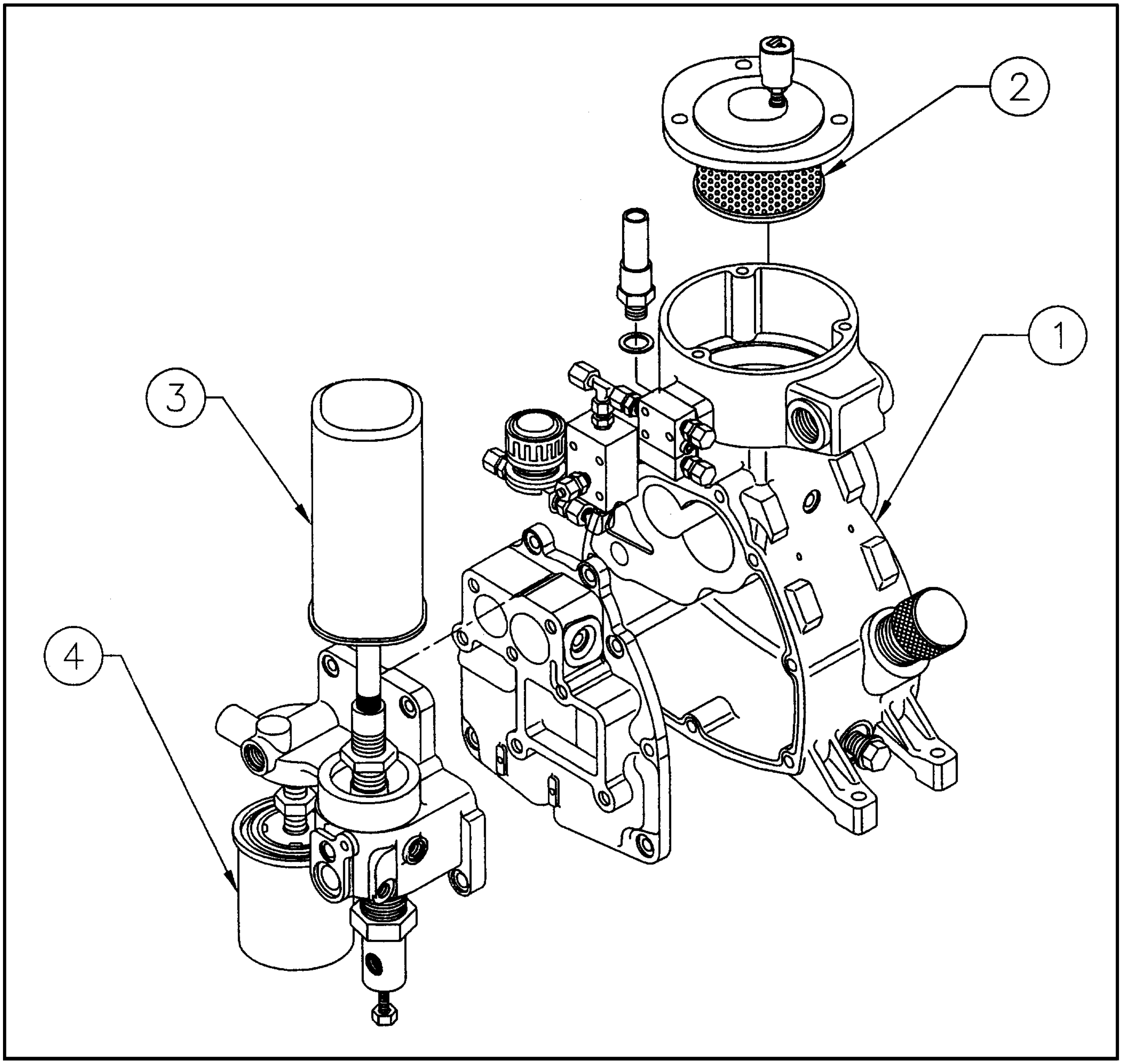
The main casting which contains the screw compressor is also the oil reservoir and primary oil separation unit. The initial (primary) oil separation is caused by both changes in velocity and direction. The main casting also contains the oil level/fill plug and oil drain connection. A separate oil reservoir is not required.

Secondary Spin-On Oil Coalescer/Separator

This spin-on element screws directly onto the filter support housing at the rear of the compressor module. The separator element (coalescer) recovers the finer particles of residual oil after pre-separation oil, which is collected in this element is scavenged back into the compressor unit. The oil return line passes through the Oil Sight Glass which indicates the amount of oil being deposited (scavenged) in the element. At start-up the sight glass most likely will be full for a short period which is due to drainage from the element when it is not in use, this should diminish fairly quickly and a lesser amount should be observed which indicates that the element is separating out oil deposited within the spin-on element.

Spin-On Oil Filter

Located on the filter support housing at the rear of the compressor. The filter incorporates a by-pass valve which will open to by-pass the filter during cold start-up when the oil is very viscous. It will also open if the filter element is plugged. Filter element rating is 10 Micron.



1. Compressor Assembly
2. Air Filter Element
3. Coalescer Spin-On Element
4. Oil Filter Element

Figure 3-101. Air Compressor

Minimum Pressure Valve/Check Valve Assembly

This combined valve located in the filter support housing has two functions.

The Minimum Pressure Valve - will maintain a pressure of approximately 65 psig (4.5 bar) in the compressor unit to ensure oil injection during load conditions and also to maintain effective oil separation. Once this internal pressure is exceeded it will allow air to discharge downstream to the service outlet.

The Discharge Check Valve - prevents air in service lines or downstream receiver from venting down through the compressor during unload (when the compressor automatically will unload to approximately 40 psig [2.75 bar] internally) and also during shutdown.

Hydraulic Drive System

Scope of supply may vary depending upon customer specifications.

Hydraulic pump, oil reservoir, return line oil filter and hoses to and from the completed packaged compressor are not furnished with the compressor. This is customer responsibility.

The packaged compressor unit will normally contain the hydraulic motor, hydraulic pressure relief valve, and on/off solenoid valve.

Input hydraulic oil pressure feed is connected to the bulkhead provided on the compressor package. Within the package the high pressure oil feeds to a manifold containing the pressure relief valve and directional solenoid valve. If a malfunction in the hydraulic motor/compressor assembly causes the hydraulic pressure to rise it will bypass to the return line to safeguard damage or potential injury.

The directional solenoid valve is normally activated by the on/off selector switch mounted in the instrument cluster on the package, this valve is also connected through the compressor safety circuits for over-temperature and over-pressure, if either condition occurs it will shut the unit down, by diverting oil back to tank. It is possible to add remote on/off switch in parallel with the instrument cluster to permit on/off operation from another location on the vehicle.

Hydraulic oil from the manifold is hosed directly to the hydraulic motor and the outlet from the motor passes to the return line connection on the package. Customer to provide both hydraulic feed and return lines.

The hydraulic motor powers the compressor through a belt drive system.

Compressor Cooling System

The package contains a cooler assembly powered by a 12 volt D.C. electric fan. Oil from the compressor sump passes through this cooler before being filtered for re-injection into the compressor. A thermostatic fan temperature switch activates the fan to come on/off to maintain the correct operating temperature for the compressor oil. This switch will activate the fan to come on at approximately 185°F (85°C) and will switch off again at approximately 165°F (74°C). The purpose of maintaining an elevated temperature during operation is to keep intake air moisture in suspension as it passes through the compressor. Thermal switch activation is affected by ambient conditions, load/unload cycles (or low oil level).

Initial Startup

The following procedure should be used to make the initial start-up of your compressor:

1. Position the compressor on a level surface so that the proper amounts of oil can be added if required.
2. Unit should be bolted down, do not rely on hoses to hold the module in position.
3. Check all hose connections are tight and wiring connections correct and tight.
4. Check compressor oil level, top up if necessary.
5. Switch instrument panel to OFF.
6. Ensure hydraulic oil to pump inlet. (Prime if necessary)
7. Engage hydraulic system and allow hydraulic oil to circulate back to tank. Check for leaks.
8. Service valve on compressor closed.
9. Switch the instrument panel switch to ON, this should very quickly pass oil to the hydraulic motor on the compressor and start producing air.
10. Check pressure and temperature gauges. Pressure switch may need adjustment to achieve desired operating pressure.
11. Partly open service valve to load compressor and allow to warm up. Monitor temperature gauge, the ideal operating temperature should be between 165°F and 190°F (74°C and 88°C) although it may be higher in high ambient conditions.
12. Cycle compressor on/off with service valve to ensure operation is OK
13. Close service valve then switch instrument switch to OFF.
14. Disengage hydraulic system.

15. Allow all air to vent to atmosphere, then check compressor oil level - top up if necessary. Check and correct any leaks, tighten any loose fittings, check drive belt tension.

Normal Startup Procedure

1. Check compressor oil level - top up if necessary.
2. Air service valve (beside the compressor) closed.
3. Start the engine.
4. Compressor switch (in the platform) ON - compressor should activate.
5. Allow the compressor to warm up for several minute before operating.

Normal Shutdown Procedure

1. Close service valve and allow compressor to unload and cool down (approx. 5 min.).
2. Position the compressor switch in the platform to OFF.
3. Shut down the engine.

Daily Operation

Before Starting:

1. Check compressor oil level.
2. Check for any leaks or loose bolts.
3. Check drive belt is tight.

After Starting:

1. Check pressure gauge for correct operating pressure.
2. Check for leaks.

General Maintenance

A good maintenance program is the key to long compressor life. Below is a program that when adhered to, should keep the compressor in top operating condition. However, it should be understood that these intervals are for normal operation in a good clean environment. More frequent inspections, oil changes and general maintenance should be carried out in dusty environments, high ambient temperatures or extended light load conditions.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT REMOVE CAPS, PLUGS OR ANY COMPONENTS WHEN THE COMPRESSOR IS RUNNING OR PRESSURIZED. STOP THE COMPRESSOR AND RELIEVE ALL INTERNAL PRESSURE BEFORE DOING SO.

AFTER INITIAL 50 HOURS

1. Change oil filter (Since initial oil filter will have collected any foreign materials which have collected in manufacture).
2. Check belt tension and alignment (majority of belt stretch will occur during early operation hours, also be sure to check alignment).
3. Check compressor oil for water or emulsion.

EVERY 500 HOURS (OR 6 MONTHS)

1. Change compressor oil and filter.
2. Change air filter (shorter intervals may be required if dirty environment).
3. Check belt tension and alignment.
4. Blow out compressor cooler core.
5. Check all fittings and fastenings.
6. Test shutdown system.

EVERY 1000 HOURS (OR 1 YEAR)

1. Check safety circuit switches.
2. Check sump safety valve.
3. Replace spin-on coalescer (sooner if required).

Lubrication Guide

WARNING

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE COMPRESSOR OIL BE OF A RECOMMENDED TYPE AND THAT IT IS INSPECTED AND REPLACED TOGETHER WITH THE OIL AND AIR FILTERS, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THIS MANUAL.

The result of poorly maintained lubricant and/or filters may produce hazardous conditions resulting in ignition, which could cause a fire in the sump. Damage to equipment and serious bodily harm may result.

It is not possible to establish limits on all physical and chemical properties of lubricants which can affect their performance over a broad range of operating and environmental influences. The responsibility for recommending a suitable lubricant must rest with the user's lubricant supplier and their knowledge of the suitability of their lubricants in screw compressors, operating in the particular environment involved.

Table 3-16. Prime Lubricant Characteristics

Viscosity	160 - 210 SUS at 100°F (38°C) 47 SUS or greater at 210°F (99°C)
Flashpoint	400°F (204°C) minimum
Pour point	Must be at least 20°F (-7°C) lower than the lowest expected ambient operating temperature
Contain	Rust and Oxidation Inhibitors
Contain	Foam Suppressors

TYPES OF LUBRICANT TO BE CONSIDERED:

NOTE: *Factory Fill - A.T.F. – Dexron® III or equivalent.*

NOTICE

DO NOT MIX OILS OF DIFFERENT TYPES.

1. **Automatic Transmission Fluids (i.e., Dexron® III):** Are suitable for the majority of applications. They are commonly applied in heavy duty, high temperature conditions and also where temperatures are consistently below freezing (32°F [0°C]), down to approximately 0°F (-18°C).

   In light load and/or high humidity operating conditions A.T.F. can absorb moisture and may result in emulsification of the lubricant. If this occurs change lubricant immediately since the lubricating properties are breaking down. If this condition persists, consider changing to a different type of lubricant (consult supplier).

2. **Industrial Type Oils:** Should be of premium quality non-detergent mineral oil, viscosity grade SAE20 ISO 68). Industrial oils may be better for high humidity and/or low load factor, where condensed moisture and emulsification may occur. Water will separate and must be drained from the oil sump (daily if necessary In addition to the primary oil characteristics, good water separation is required.

   These lubricants should be applied where conditions above 32°F (0°C) prevail.

3. **Synthetic Lubricants:** In so far as know, all the elastomeric components and metals used in the compressor are fully compatible with Synthetic Hydrocarbon (SHC) and Diester Lubricants. However, the synthetic lubricant should not employ Viscosity Index Additives since, they could precipitate out and cause plugging. Viscosity ranges selected should be based on those outlined in Prime Characteristics and in close liaison with the lubricant supplier.

NOTICE

VARIOUS FACTORS CAN AFFECT "EXTENDED LIFE" LUBRICANTS, SUCH AS REACTIVE GASES OR VAPORS WHICH COULD BE INGESTED INTO THE COMPRESSOR AND MAY ADVERSELY AFFECT THESE LUBRICANTS. IT IS RECOMMENDED WITH THESE LUBRICANTS TO MAINTAIN OIL FILTER CHANGES AT RECOMMENDED INTERVALS AND PARTICIPATE IN AN OIL SAMPLING PROGRAM WITH THE LUBRICANT SUPPLIER.

Oil Filter Replacement

The compressor oil filter is a spin on, throw away type. Before attempting to remove the oil filter, ensure all air is relieved from the system.

NOTICE

USE ONLY ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT FILTERS, OTHER FILTERS MAY NOT HAVE CORRECT PRESSURE RATING OR EVEN DIFFERENT THREAD.

REMOVAL:

1. Remove old filter (use strap wrench if required) by turning Anti-Clockwise and discard as appropriate and in accordance with any pertinent regulations
2. Clean filter head with lint free wiper or cloth.

REPLACEMENT:

1. Apply a light film of oil to the seal surface on the new element.
2. Screw new element on, clockwise by hand until seal contacts filter head, then turn an additional 3/4 turn (by hand).
3. Run compressor and test for leaks.

Coalescer (Air/Oil Separator) Replacement

This is a spin-on, throw away type unit. Before attempting to change ensure all pressure is relieved from the system. Change in accordance with Maintenance Guidelines. If oil carryover into the service line occurs and the oil scavenge return line scavenge shows little or no oil return, then change the element. Verify receiver is not over full.

NOTICE

USE ONLY ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT COALESCER ELEMENT TO ENSURE PRESSURE RATING AND PERFORMANCE IS SATISFACTORY.

REMOVAL:

1. Remove old element (use strap wrench if required) by turning anti-clockwise and discard as appropriate and in accordance with any pertinent regulations.

REPLACEMENT:

1. Apply a light film of oil to the seal surface on the new element.
2. Screw element on clockwise until it seats on the head, rotate an additional 3/4 turn (by hand). Take care not to damage element.
3. Start up and check for leaks.

Air Filter Replacement

DO NOT replace with compressor in operation. If environment is dirty or dusty an earlier change out may be required. To ensure correct filtration use only original equipment filters.

REMOVAL:

1. Unscrew the wing nut on top of the air filter and remove filter cover.
2. Discard filter as appropriate and in accordance with any pertinent regulations.

REPLACEMENT:

1. Clean cover and any dirt inside filter housing taking extreme care that no dust/dirt particles reach the air intake of the compressor.
2. Fit new element inside housing.
3. Replace lid and tighten wing nut on top of air filter assembly.
4. Test run and functional test.

Belts - Tightening and Replacement

Correct tensioning and alignment is important for belt life, bearing life and power transmission.

Correct tensioning and alignment was provided at time of shipment from the factory. However, since maximum belt elongation will occur within the first 50 hours of operation (Of new belts), their tension should be checked several times during this period and corrected as required. The belts should thereafter be checked periodically in order to obtain maximum life and performance.

NOTE: *To avoid possible belt damage, never force belts over the sheaves. Oil spilled or splashed onto the belts in any quantity will cause slippage and severely reduce belt life - take care when filling compressor oil.*

REPLACING/TIGHTENING V-BELTS:

1. Loosen slightly the bolt at the base of the hydraulic motor mounting bracket. This will allow the hydraulic motor to be moved in or out to tighten or loosen the belts.
2. Back off adjusting bolt lock nut. Screw the adjusting bolt clockwise to tighten belt or anti clockwise to loosen belts.
3. After adjustments have been made, tighten base bolt to insure no further movement.

TENSION DATA

Deflection at center of belt span 0.25 in. (6.35 mm), with a force of 4 pounds (1.8 kg).

Pulley alignment is set at factory and shouldn't need to be adjusted, if it is found necessary to adjust the pulley alignment, this is done by loosening the four bolts that hold down the base plate to the frame and adjust per following instructions.

Ensure pulleys are aligned by using a long straight edge which will span both pulleys. Position the straight edge on the sides of the pulleys, if they are in-line there should be no gaps between the straight edge and the pulleys (for the full contact distance across each pulley side), adjust as necessary to get correct alignment and tension.

It may be necessary to repeat and check several times before both tension and alignment are satisfied.

Cooler Core Cleaning (Exterior)

Remove leaves, papers, etc. from outside face. Use compressed air and carefully blow through the core from the inside of the canopy (through fan assembly or remove fan assembly).

DO NOT use high pressure air or pressure washer.

NOTE: *Oil cooler core is aluminum, if this does at some point require internal cleaning, this is best done by a suitable equipped radiator shop. Internal cleaning is NOT a normal maintenance item if the oil is maintained in good condition.*

Adding/Changing Compressor Oil

Ensure all pressure is relieved from the system. Check oil level with unit level, otherwise a false oil level indication will occur.

1. Remove oil fill plug located on main compressor base casting.

NOTE: *This can be done without lifting canopy.)*

2. Carefully add lubricant and monitor oil level, allow time for oil to level out. A complete refill is approximately 5 1/4 quarts (5 liters). Correct oil level is minimum to bottom threads on oil fill port up until oil runs out of port. Overfill can only occur if unit is out of level.

3. Refit oil fill cap tightly by hand.

4. Run unit and recheck oil level after shutdown, allowing time for oil to settle.

Oil drain is provided with short drain hose. This can be routed to a more convenient location if required, dependent upon installation. Use only Schedule 80 pipe or suitably rated hose.

NOTE: *Fill cap has a vent release hole as a safety feature and to act as a "tell-tale". If air escapes while unscrewing the fill cap, then the system still has pressure. Re-tighten the cap and wait until all pressure is relieved.*

Pressure Adjustments

Before adjusting the pressure control system it is necessary to determine the rated full load pressure setting. These can be found in the Specification Section.

PRESSURE SWITCH LOCATION:

The pressure switch is located directly behind the cooling fan inside a black plastic box. Removing the one single screw from the bottom of the plastic cover allows the cover to be removed exposing the two adjustment screws at the top and also exposes the electrical terminations.

⚠ DANGER

ADJUSTMENTS SHOULD BE MADE WITH COMPRESSOR SWITCHED OFF SINCE ELECTRICAL TERMINALS INSIDE PRESSURE SWITCH WILL BE EXPOSED AND OPENING THE CANOPY EXPOSES BELT DRIVE SYSTEM.

PROCEDURE FOR SETTING:

1. Start compressor and allow to warm up. NOTE - Pressure reading on gauge with service valve closed. Switch off compressor.

2. Adjustment screws on pressure switch. Steel slotted screw (L.H. side upper) will adjust both cut-out and cut-in pressures together. Screw in clockwise to increase screw out counter clockwise to decrease. Plastic head slotted screw (R.H. side upper) will permit changes to cut-out pressure (higher pressure) without affecting cut-in pressure. (ie. changes differential pressure range) screw in clockwise to increase and counterclockwise to decrease upper pressure setting.

   Nominal differential setting 25 to 30 psi (1.7 to 2.0 Bar). This is to reduce load/unload cycle in cases where minimal air usage or leaks in hoses/connections may occur. The recovery period from unload to load is rapid with the screw compressor and this initial setting will suit most applications.

   It is suggest to make adjustments in**%** turn increments then close canopy, restart and check pressure. Re-adjust as necessary.

   When desired pressure is set, replace switch cover and close canopy for operation.

NOTICE

INCREASING AIR PRESSURE WILL INCREASE THE REQUIRED COMPRESSOR H.P. BE SURE THE HYDRAULIC POWER SUPPLY IS CAPABLE (HYDRAULIC PRESSURE) OTHERWISE THE COMPRESSOR MAY STALL OUT DURING OPERATION DUE TO INCREASED POWER REQUIREMENT.

Intake Control

The intake control consists of two main sub-assemblies:

1. **Inlet Valve Assembly:** The inlet valve opening/closing (load/unload) is controlled by admitting/exhausting pilot air pressure through the solenoid valve to the piston which is part of the inlet valve assembly. The inlet valve is not a routine maintenance item. Maintenance kits are available which include replacement seals, etc.

2. **Solenoid Valve:** Attaches directly to the inlet valve and responds to signals from the pressure switch to admit/vent pilot air pressure to the inlet valve to control load/unload. In the unlikely event of failure this item is to be replaced as a complete item.

Minimum Pressure Valve

Normally factory set to 65 psig (4.5 Bar). Provides two main functions:

1. **Maintains Minimum Pressure:** Prevents downstream air to pass until compressor system is up to minimum pressure valve setting which aids in maintaining good oil supply to the compressor and also is a requirement for good oil separation.

2. **Back Pressure Check Valve:** Allows for compressor to be unloaded to lower pressure than supply air line system and permits compressor air pressure to be totally relieved when stopped.

   This valve is not a routine maintenance item. Seals and replacement parts are available.

Compressor Thermal Valve

Controls compressor oil temperature and permits for rapid compressor oil warm up. Commences to pass oil through cooler at 160°F (71°C) and is fully open at 185°F (85°C).

Safety Shutdown Systems

Protection for over-pressure and/or over-temperature is provided. If either condition should occur the diverter valve should activate to divert hydraulic fluid back to tank and the compressor will stop, the reset on instrument panel will pop out and stay out until reset. Reason for shutdown should be investigated before pressing reset.

Periodically (every 6 months or every 500 hours) the shutdown system should be tested as follows: Compressor operating, close service valve and allow compressor to unload (2 minutes or more) then touch across button on gauge face to Bezel surrounding the respective gauge with coin or screwdriver. Reset button should pop out and compressor stop. Switch off compressor and press reset button to reactive shutdown system.

Troubleshooting

The information contained in the Troubleshooting Chart has been compiled from information gathered. It contains symptoms and usual causes for the most common types or problem. All available data concerning the trouble should be systematically analyzed before undertaking any repairs or component replacement.

A visual inspection is worth performing for almost all problems and may avoid unnecessary additional damage to the machine. The procedures which can be performed in the least amount of time and with the least amount of removal or disassembly of parts should be performed first.

⚠ WARNING

BEFORE WORKING ON ANY MACHINE, ENSURE IT IS SHUT DOWN AND ISOLATED, AIR PRESSURE RELIEVED, AND UNIT HAS COOLED DOWN.

Table 3-17. Air Compressor Troubleshooting

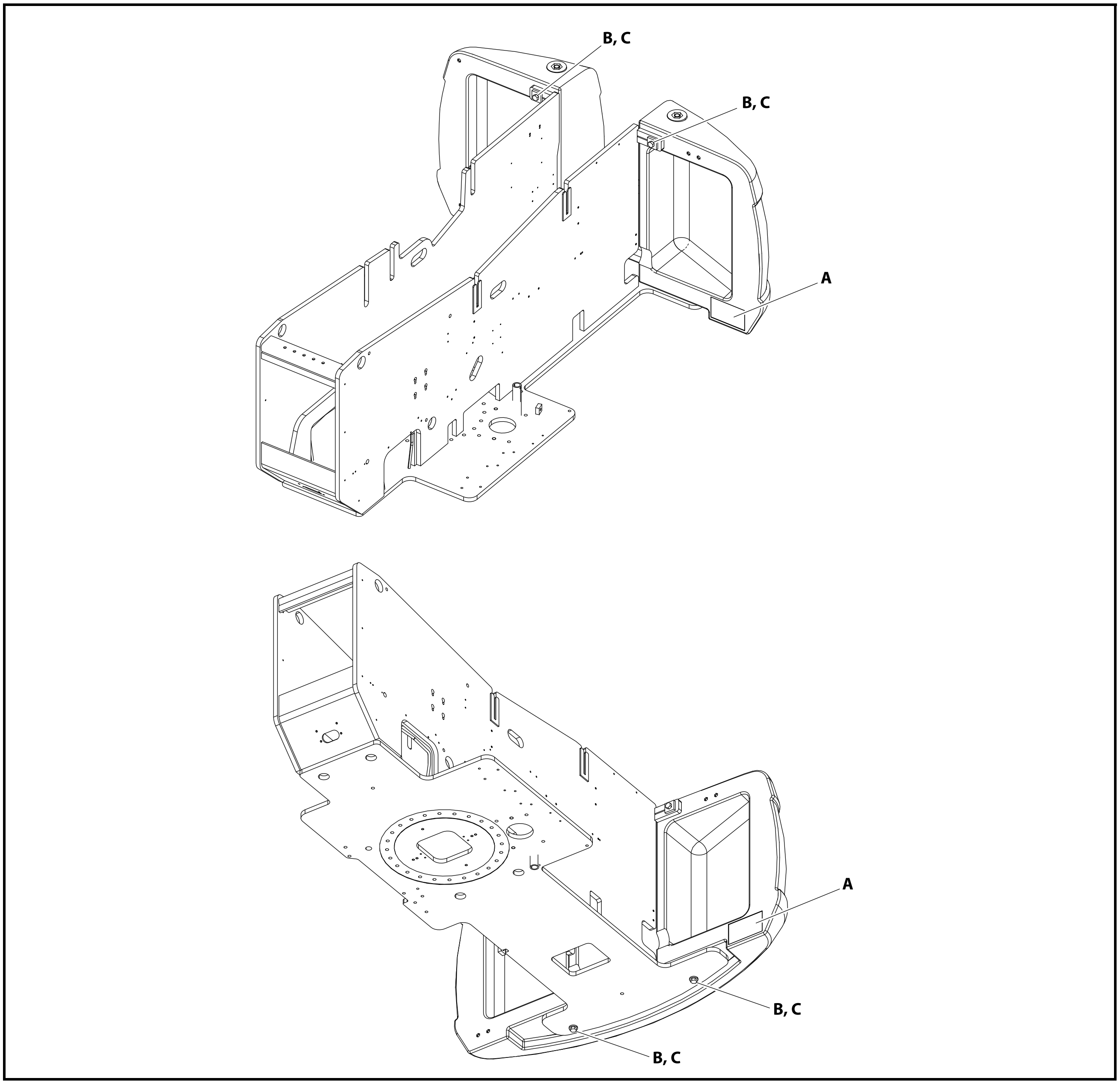
SYMPTOM	PROBABLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
1. Compressor shuts down with air demand	a. Compressor temperature; switch opening.	a. Low oil level-top up. Restricted cooling air intake- clean-reposition machine. Fan not operating-check ground-check fan switch.
	b. Plugged oil filter	b. Replace
	c. Dirty cooler core	c. Clean
	d. Contaminated cooler core	d. Remove and clean
	e. Hydraulic pressure & Flow incorrect	e. Adjust and reset
2. Compressor will not build up pressure	a. Air demand too great	a. Check for leaks and correct Too much air demand
	b. Air filter plugged	b. Check and replace
	c. Press. switch out of adjustment	c. Reset
	d. Defective pressure switch	d. Replace
	e. Motor does not speed up	e. Pressure switch Check hydraulic flow & pressure
	f. Belts slipping	f. Readjust/tighten
	g. Service valve wide open	g. Close
	h. Sol. valve stuck	h. Replace
	i. Leak in air pilot line	i. Check for leaks & correct
3. Compressor over pressures	a. Press. Regul. out of adjustment	a. Reset
	b. Defective press. switch	b. Replace
	c. Leak in air control line	c. Check and correct
	d. Inlet valve stuck	d. Free or replace
	e. Restriction in control line	e. Dirt or ice, clean/free up
	f. Sol. valve not energized/faulty	f. Check for power/replace
	g. Faulty gauge	g. Check with shop air/replace
	h. Defective safety valve	h. Replace
	i. Plugged coalescer	i. Replace
4. Insufficient air delivery	a. Plugged air filter	a. Replace
	b. Plugged coalescer	b. Replace
	c. Motor speed too low	c. Check hydraulic flow & pressure
	d. Inlet valve stuck	d. Free or replace
	f. Belts slipping	f. Readjust

Table 3-17. Air Compressor Troubleshooting

SYMPTOM	PROBABLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
5. Oil carryover	a. Oil level overfull	a. Drain to correct level
	b. Plugged oil scavenge line	b. Remove and clean
	c. Discharge pressure too low	c. Check minimum pressure valve
	d. Defective coalescer	d. Replace
6. Compressor overheating	a. Insufficient oil	a. Check level and top up
	b. Restricted cooling air flow	b. Reposition machine
	c. Fan not operating	c. Check ground connection; Check fan switch; Check air pressure switch; Check circuit breaker; Check for shorted wires; Check fan motor
	d. Plugged oil filter	d. Replace
	e. Cooler core plugged	e. Clean
	f. Pressure set too high	f. Readjust
	g. Contaminated cooler core	g. Remove and clean
	h. Running too fast	h. Check hydraulic flow & pressure
	i. Thermal Valve – element faulty	i. Replace
7. System retains pressure after shutdown	a. Solenoid valve stuck	a. Should be no power to solenoid valve Valve stuck. Replace Pressure switch faulty/replace
	b. Leak back from airline	b. Check minimum pressure valve for leak
8. Compressor stalls	a. Belts slipping	a. Readjust/tighten
	b. Insufficient hydraulic system pressure/flow. This can occur if another hydraulically activated component is used off same pump system. Activating the secondary component may drop hydraulic supply system pressure/flow and leave insufficient for compressor. NOTE - even a momentary drop in supply hydraulic supply pressure/ flow may initiate compressor blowdown to commence.	b. Check setting on supply pressure system relief valve. Check to ensure adequate pressure/ flow. Check if other systems activated off same supply.
	c. Pressure relief valve set too low	c. Check & reset
	d. Leak in seals on pressure relief valve	d. Remove & check seals or fit new valve cartridge
	e. Air pressure set too high for hydraulic system	e. Adjust pressure switch to reduce air pressure.
	f. Leak in solenoid valve cartridge (directional flow control valve) on manifold	f. Remove & check seals or fit new valve cartridge.
	g. Check over-pressure or over-temperature	

3.28 COUNTERWEIGHT

If the counterweight has been removed, ensure the retaining bolts are torqued to the proper value as shown in Figure 3-102., Counterweight.



A. Actual Weight Stamping.

B. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100019 to Bolt Threads and to Threads in Counterweight.

C. Torque to 285 ft. lbs. (388 Nm). Typical Four Places.

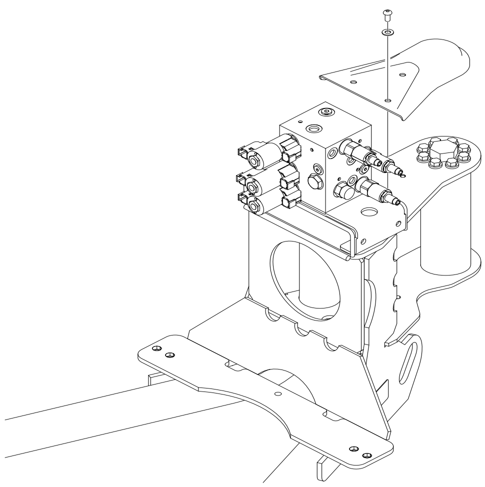
Figure 3-102. Counterweight

SECTION 4. BOOM & PLATFORM

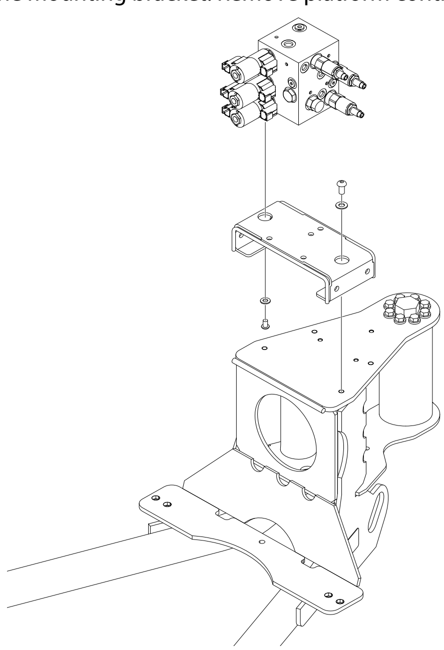
4.1 PLATFORM

Platform Valve Removal

1. Tag and disconnect the hydraulic lines from the platform control valve. Use suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.
2. Remove hardware securing cover from the platform support. Remove cover.

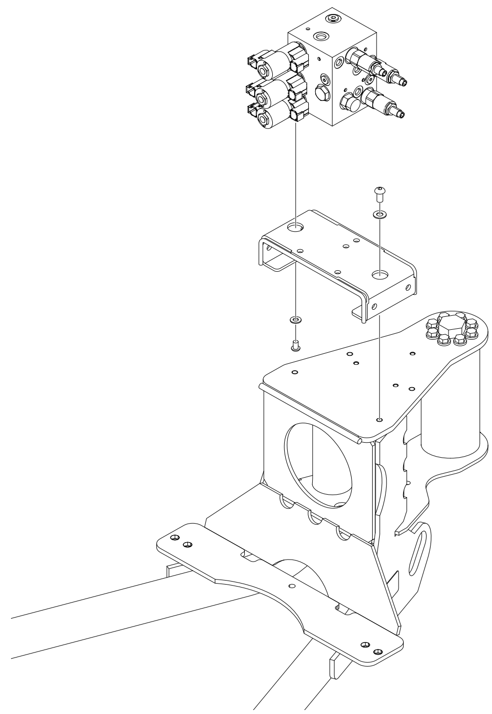


3. Remove hardware securing the mounting bracket to the platform support. Remove the mounting bracket along with platform control valve.
4. Remove hardware securing the platform control valve to the mounting bracket. Remove platform control valve.

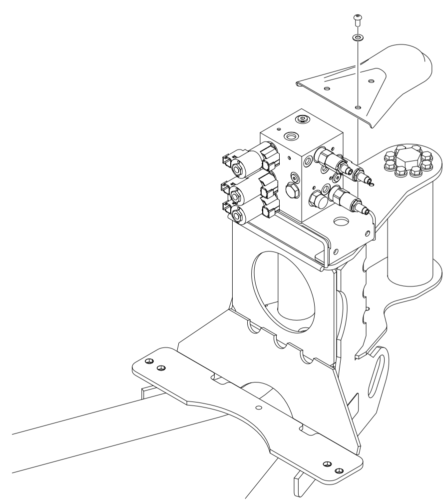


Platform Valve Installation

1. Install platform control valve onto the mounting bracket and secure using hardware.
2. Install the mounting bracket onto the platform support and secure using hardware.



3. Install cover onto the platform support securing the hardware.



4. Remove tag and reconnect the hydraulic lines to the platform control valve.

Support Removal

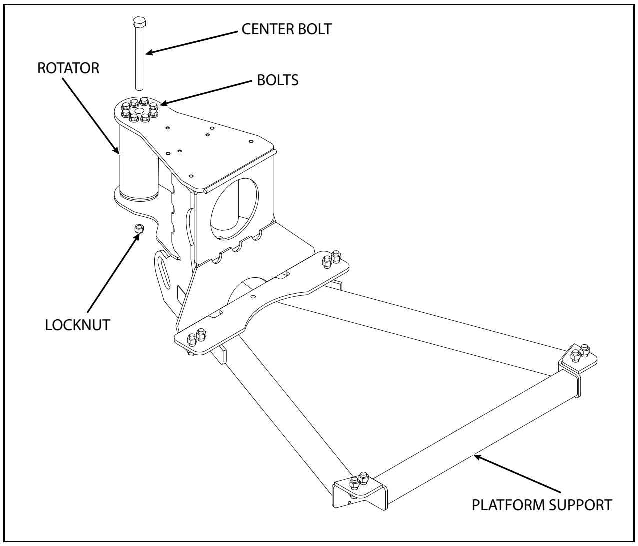
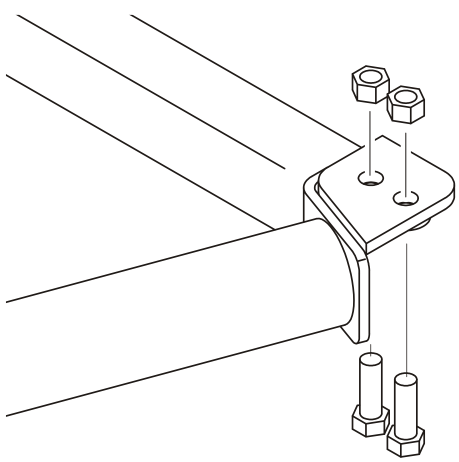


Figure 4-1. Location of Components Platform Support

1. Disconnect electrical cables from control console.
2. Remove the bolts securing the platform to the platform support, then remove the platform.

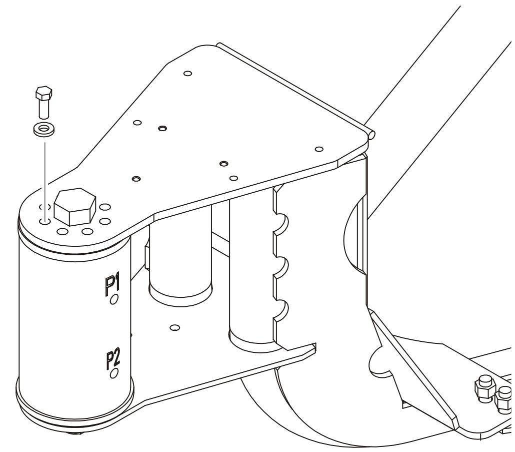
NOTE: *The platform weighs approximately 220 lbs. (100 kg).*



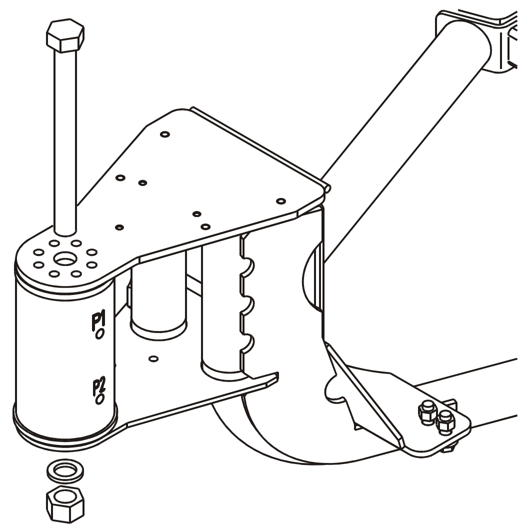
3. Using a suitable device, support the platform support.

NOTE: *The platform support weighs approximately 77 lbs. (35 kg).*

4. Remove the bolts and locknuts securing the support to the rotator.



5. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the rotator center bolt, then remove the support from the rotator.

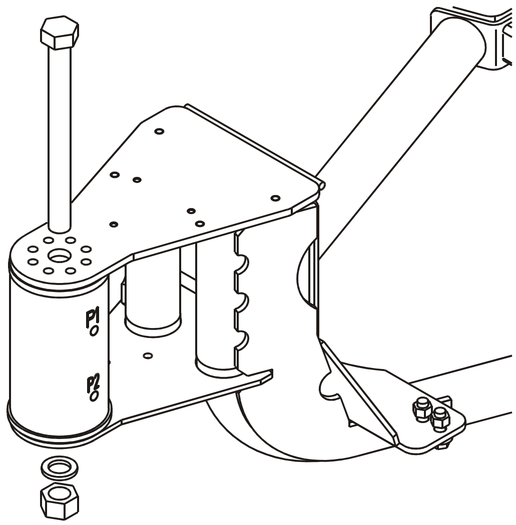


Support Installation

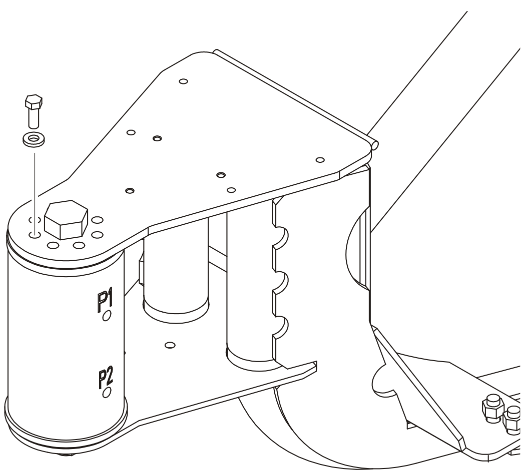
1. Using a suitable device, support the platform support and position it on the rotator.

NOTE: *The platform support weighs approximately 77 lbs. (35 kg).*

2. Install the rotator center bolt.

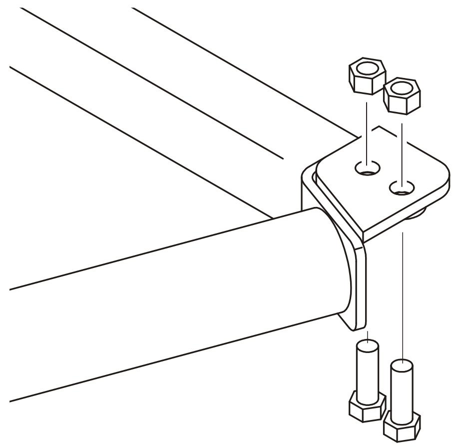


3. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the eight bolts and locknuts securing the support to the rotator and install the bolts and locknuts.

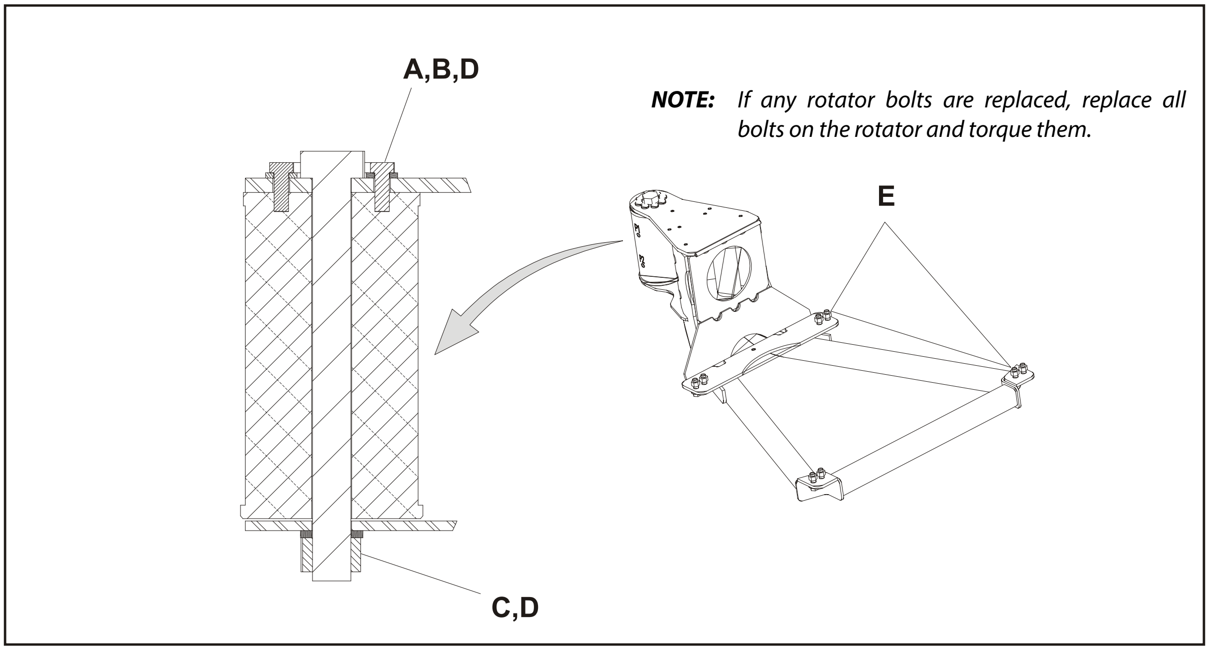


4. Torque the nut on the rotator center bolt to 586 ft. lbs. (795 Nm). Torque the retaining bolts to 40 ft. lbs. (55 Nm).

5. Position the platform on the platform support and install the bolts securing the platform to the platform support. Torque the bolts to 75 ft. lbs. (102 Nm).



6. Connect the electrical cables to the platform control console.



A Torque to 40 ft.lbs. (55 Nm)
B JLG Thread locker (#0100011)
C Torque to 586 ft. lbs. (795 Nm)
D Check torque every 150 hours of operation
E Torque to 75 ft. lbs. (102 Nm)

Figure 4-2. Platform Support Torque Values

4.2 ROTATOR AND SLAVE CYLINDER

Removal

1. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from the rotator. Use suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

2. Supporting the rotator, remove hardware from pin #1. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer remove pin #1 from the jib assembly.

NOTE: *The rotator and slave cylinder assembly weighs approximately 141 lbs. (64 kg).*

3. Remove the hardware from pin #2. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove pin #2 from the jib assembly and remove the rotator.

4. Telescope the fly section out to gain access to the slave cylinder.

5. Remove the hardware from pin #3. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer remove pin #3 from the jib assembly.

6. Supporting the slave cylinder, remove the hardware from pin #4. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer remove pin #4 from the fly boom.

7. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from the slave leveling cylinder. Use a suitable container to collect any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports. Remove the slave cylinder.

Installation

1. Keep the fly section out to gain access to the slave cylinder mounting holes.

2. Support the slave cylinder. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, install pin #4 to the fly boom. Install hardware securing pin #4.

3. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, install pin #3 to the jib assembly. Install hardware securing pin #3.

4. Support the rotator. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, install pin #2 to the fly boom and install the rotator. Install hardware securing pin #2.

5. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, install pin #1 to the rotator and jib assembly. Install hardware securing pin #1.

6. Remove tag and reconnect the hydraulic lines to the rotator and the slave cylinder.

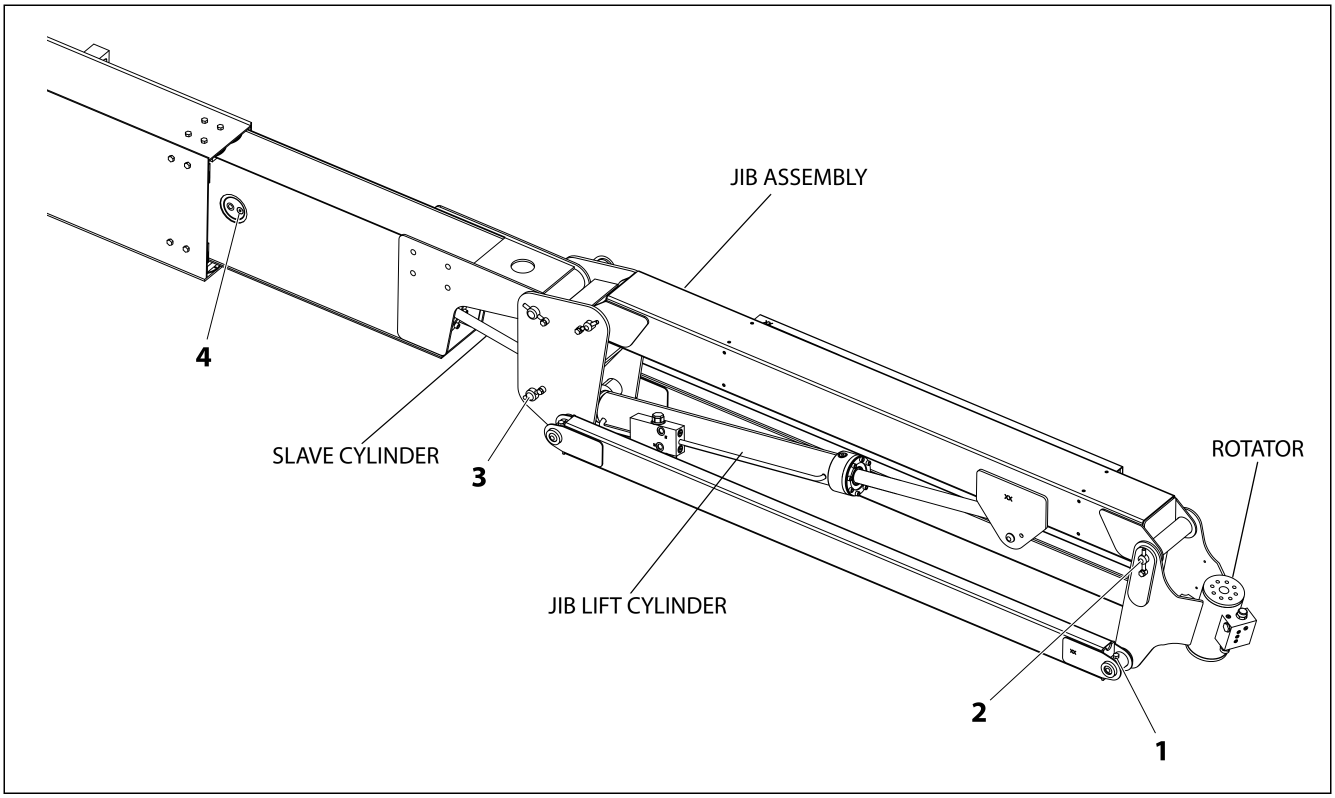


Figure 4-3. Location of Components-Rotator and Slave Cylinder

4.3 BOOM SYSTEM

Switch Systems

The Capacity Indicator, Transport Position Interlock, and Above Elevation Systems use normally closed electrical switches with "positive opening" contacts.

Above Elevation (Above Horizontal) Cutout System

The above elevation cutout system uses a main boom angle switch and a tower boom angle switch to sense when the boom is raised substantially above horizontal. The articulated jib may be in any position. When "above elevation", the engine RPM will attain high engine speed and the drive motors are automatically restricted to their maximum displacement position (slow speed). Additionally when used in conjunction with the "tilt indicator system", the elevation switches will cause an alarm to sound and automatically put the machine in the creep speed mode. With the exception of the speed cutback, this is a warning system only. The machine will continue to function. The operator is responsible to prevent the machine from attaining an unstable position. As described in the Positive Opening Switch System, the "safe" condition of the machine is when high engine and high speed is allowed (at low boom angles).

Transport Position Interlock System (CE only)

The transport position interlock system uses the “above elevation cutout system” switches with the addition of a main boom telescope switch to sense when the boom is out of the transport (nearly stowed) position. The articulated jib may be in any position All controls are simultaneously functional when the booms are within the transport position as on the standard machine. When the booms are outside of the transport position, the control functions are interlocked to prevent simultaneous operation of any boom function with drive/steer. The first function set to be operated in this mode, becomes the master function set. In other words, while operating drive/steer functions the boom functions are inoperable. Likewise, while operating boom functions drive/steer functions are inoperable. In addition to being an interlock, this system also disallows high speed operation while the booms are beyond the transport position. While in this position, the machine will respond in the same way as described in the Above Elevation Cutout System. As described in the Positive Opening Switch System, the “safe” condition of the machine is when the use of multiple function operation is allowed (at low boom angles and short boom lengths).

Platform Control Enable System

The platform controls make use of a time dependent enable circuit to limit the time availability of "live" or enabled controls. When the footswitch is depressed, the controls are enabled and the operator has 7 seconds to operate any control. The controls will remain enabled as long as the operator continues to use any function and will remain enabled 7 seconds after the last function has been used. While the controls are "live" the enabled light will be illuminated in the platform display panel. When the time limit has been reached, the enabled light will turn off and the controls will be "dead" or disabled. To continue use of the machine the controls must be re-enabled to start the timer system over again. This is done be cycling the footswitch by releasing and redepressed the footswitch.

Function Speed Control System

The platform controls for the rotate, tower lift, tower telescope, jib lift, and main telescope functions are controlled through a common infinitely variable speed control knob. This knob feeds a common valve driver control circuit allowing a smooth ramp up and controlled maximum output speed. No ramp down is provided. These functions are controlled through common settings in which compromises must be made from function to function due to differences in flow and pressure. Not all functions will respond the same to the changes in the function speed knob position.

Platform

The standard platform utilizes a hinged swing gate for ease of entry and 3/4 in. expanded metal floor mesh. The optional drop bar gate platform utilizes 1/2 in. expanded metal floor mesh.

Main Lift End Stroke Dampening System

The main boom lift cylinder is constructed in a way that causes the lift cylinder oil flow to be restricted by an orifice while raising the boom within 5 degrees of maximum elevation. This restriction slows the boom lift speed while raising the boom. The oil flow is not restricted while lowering the boom and therefor the speed is not altered.

QuikStick Lift System

The main boom lift cylinder is pinned between the main boom and the nose of the tower fly boom. This causes an interdependency between the tower and main boom. The main boom changes angle when the tower is raised or lowered. In addition, the maximum angle achieved by the main boom is dependent on the position of the tower boom. When the tower boom is stowed, the main boom's maximum angle is 25 degrees. When the tower boom is fully raised, the main boom's maximum angle is 70 degrees. The main boom can be also be raised or lowered independent of the tower boom within the limits of the boom rests and main boom lift cylinder stroke to a minimum angle of -35 degrees. This allows the platform to reach the ground at any position of the tower boom.

Tower Boom Sequence Valve System

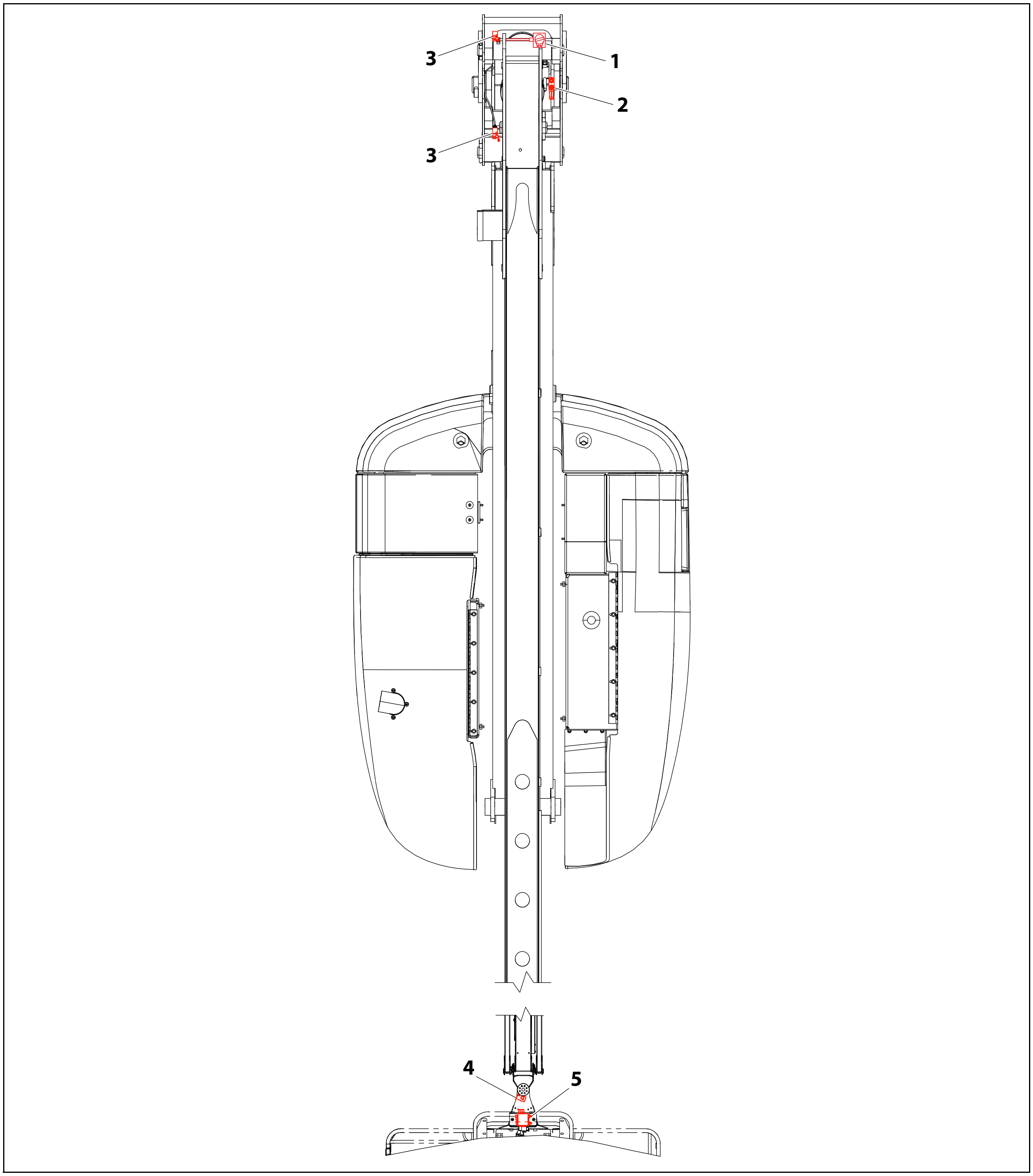
The two section tower boom uses two hydraulic lockout valves to prevent the boom from being telescoped until the boom is fully raised and to prevent the tower boom from being lowered until it is fully retracted. Until the valve mounted in the turntable is actuated by the cam on the tower lift cylinder barrel (at max tower angle), the tower telescope oil flow is blocked preventing the tower from telescoping out. Similarly, until the valve mounted on the tower fly boom is actuated by the tower base boom, the tower lift cylinder oil flow is blocked preventing the tower from lifting down. This is an automatic system. This is an automatic system, however, if either of these lockout valves are defeated, the machine may be positioned in an unstable position.

Upright Level Override System

As the tower boom is raised the upright is leveled by a master-slave cylinder arrangement between the tower lift cylinder and the upright level cylinder. The upright can become out of level in two directions, towards the platform or away from the platform. If the upright is out of level towards the platform, it will automatically correct itself when the tower is lowered by dumping oil from the upright level cylinder over a relief valve mounted in the upright until the tower lift cylinder reaches the end of its stroke. If the upright is out of level away from the platform, the tower lift cylinder is fully retracted with stroke remaining in the upright level cylinder. To correct this condition a re-leveling valve (with a red pull knob) allows the tower to be raised (from ground control) without extending the upright level cylinder. The upright will then correct itself when the tower is lowered to the stowed position.

Ground Control Keyswitch System

The ground control keyswitch is used for selecting the active control of the machine between the platform or ground control stations and as another shut off switch for machine power. On the standard keyswitch, the key is removable only in the off position. This allows the ground control station to have ultimate priority over the platform control.



1. UMS Sensor
2. Relief Valve
3. Limit Switch
4. Rotator Valve
5. Platform Control Valve

Figure 4-4. Boom Components Location

4.4 MAIN BOOM POWERTRACK

Removal

1. Disconnect wiring harness connectors located in tower upright.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

2. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from connectors at boom assembly. Use suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.
3. Remove hydraulic lines and electrical cables from Powertrack.

NOTE: *The powertrack weighs approximately 27 lbs. (12.3 kg).*

4. Using suitable lifting device, adequately support Powertrack weight along entire length.
5. Remove bolt #1 securing the push tube on the fly boom section.
6. Remove bolt #2 securing the push tube on the mid boom section.
7. With powertrack supported and using all applicable safety precautions, remove bolts #3 and #4 securing rail to the base boom section. Remove powertrack from boom section.

Installation

1. Using suitable lifting device, adequately support the powertrack weight along entire length.

NOTE: *The powertrack weighs approximately 27 lbs. (12.3 kg).*

2. With powertrack supported and using all applicable safety precautions, install bolts #3 securing rail to the base boom.
3. Install bolts #2 securing the push tube on the base boom section.
4. Install bolts #1 securing the push tube on the fly boom section.
5. Install bolts #4 securing rail to push tube.
6. Remove tag and reconnect all hydraulic lines and electrical cable from powertrack.
7. Reconnect dual capacity indicator limit switch from side of boom section.
8. Remove tag and reconnect hydraulic lines from connectors at boom assembly.

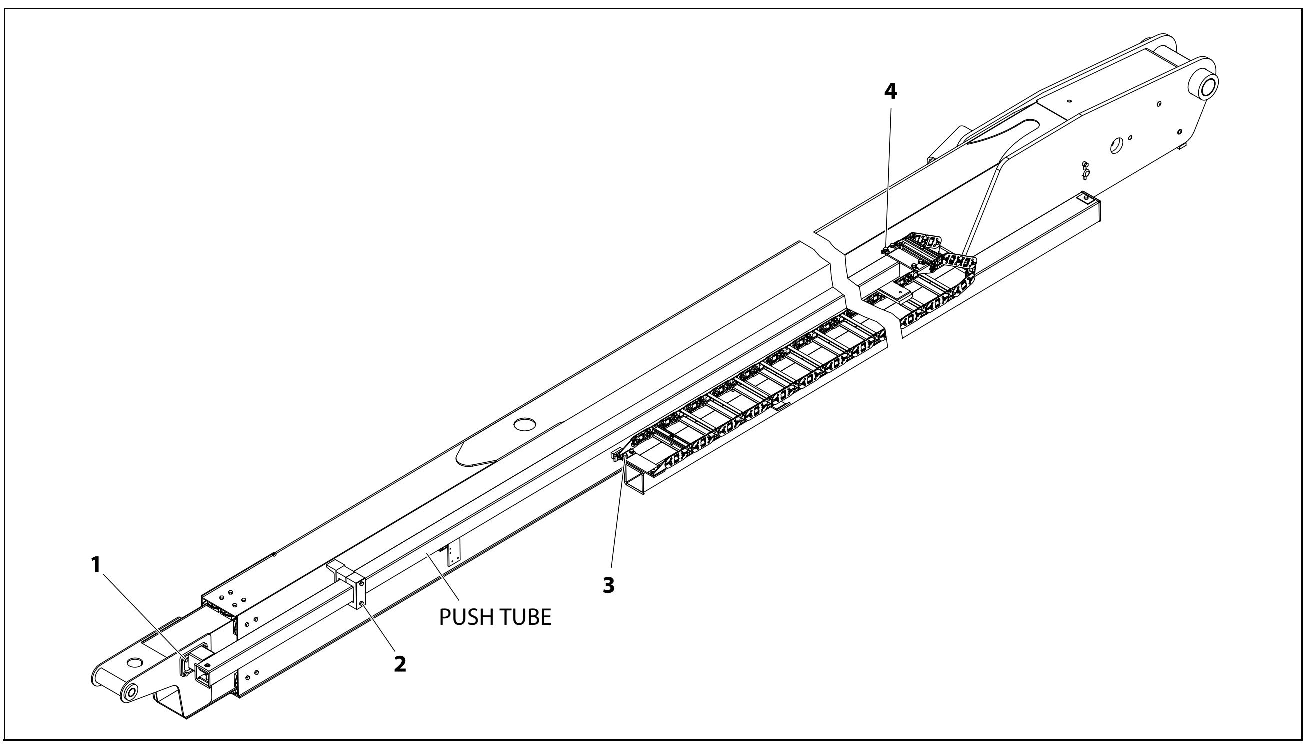


Figure 4-5. Location of Components - Powertrack

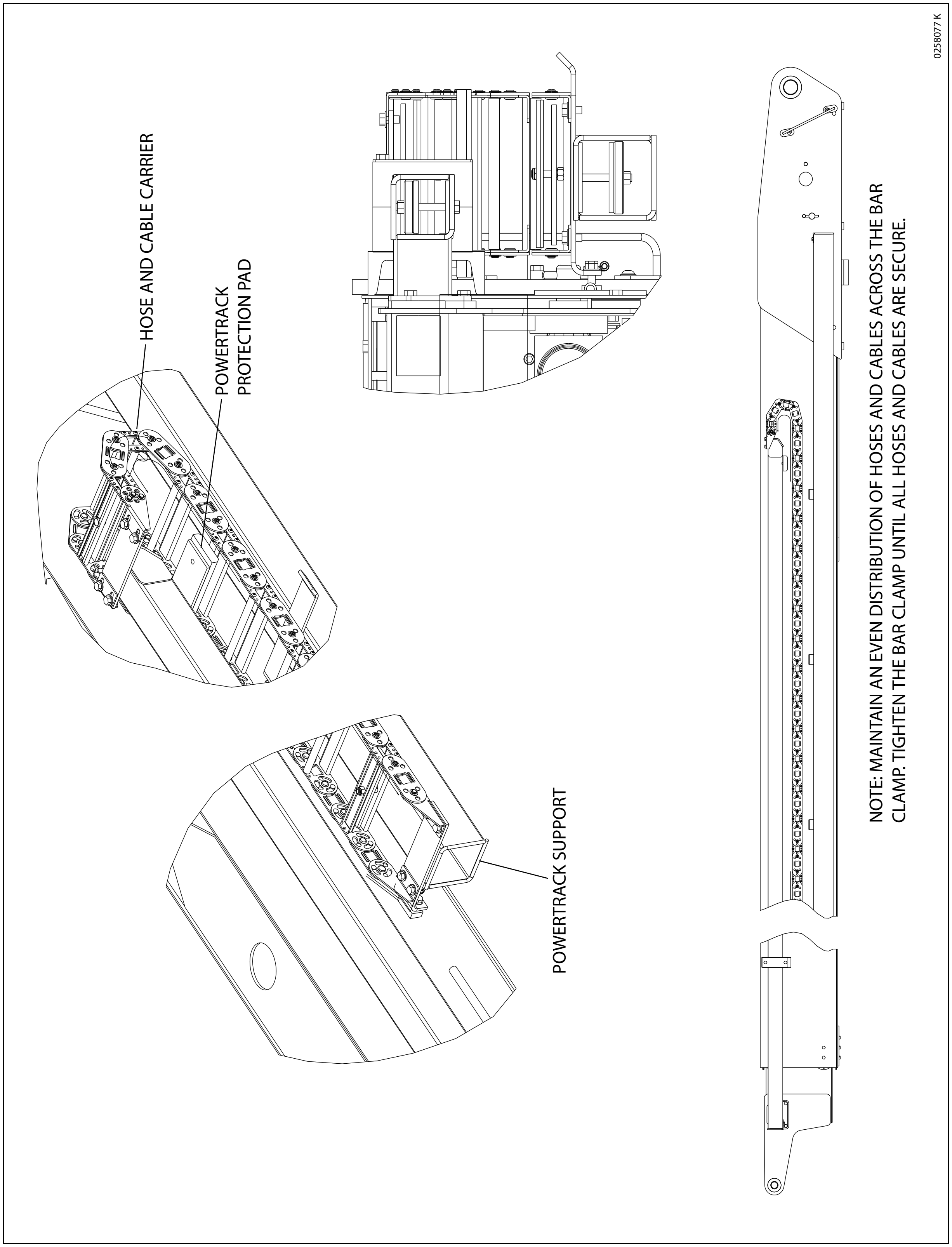


Figure 4-6. Powertrack Installation Main Boom (Sheet 1 of 2)

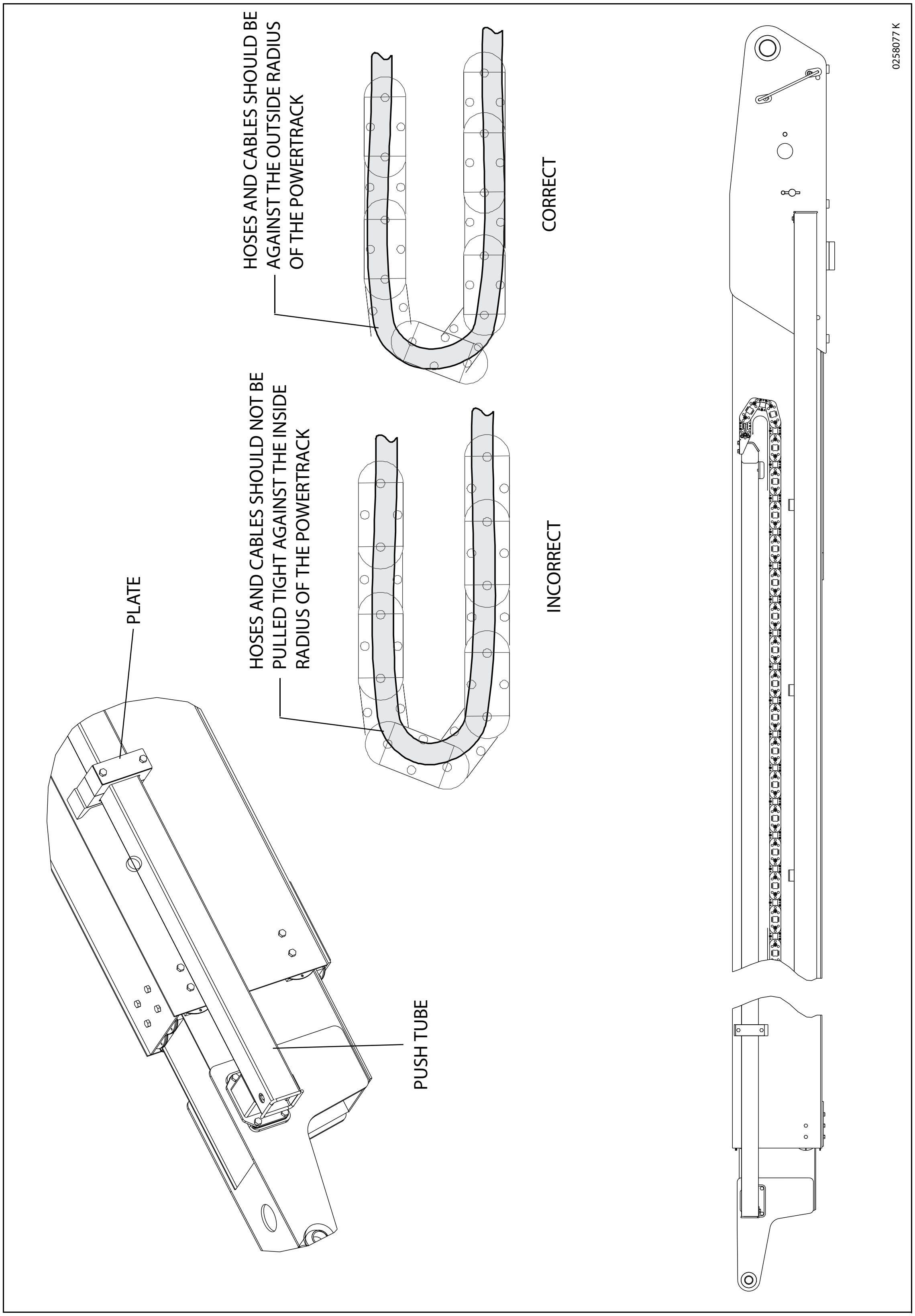


Figure 4-7. Powertrack Installation Main Boom (Sheet 2 of 2)

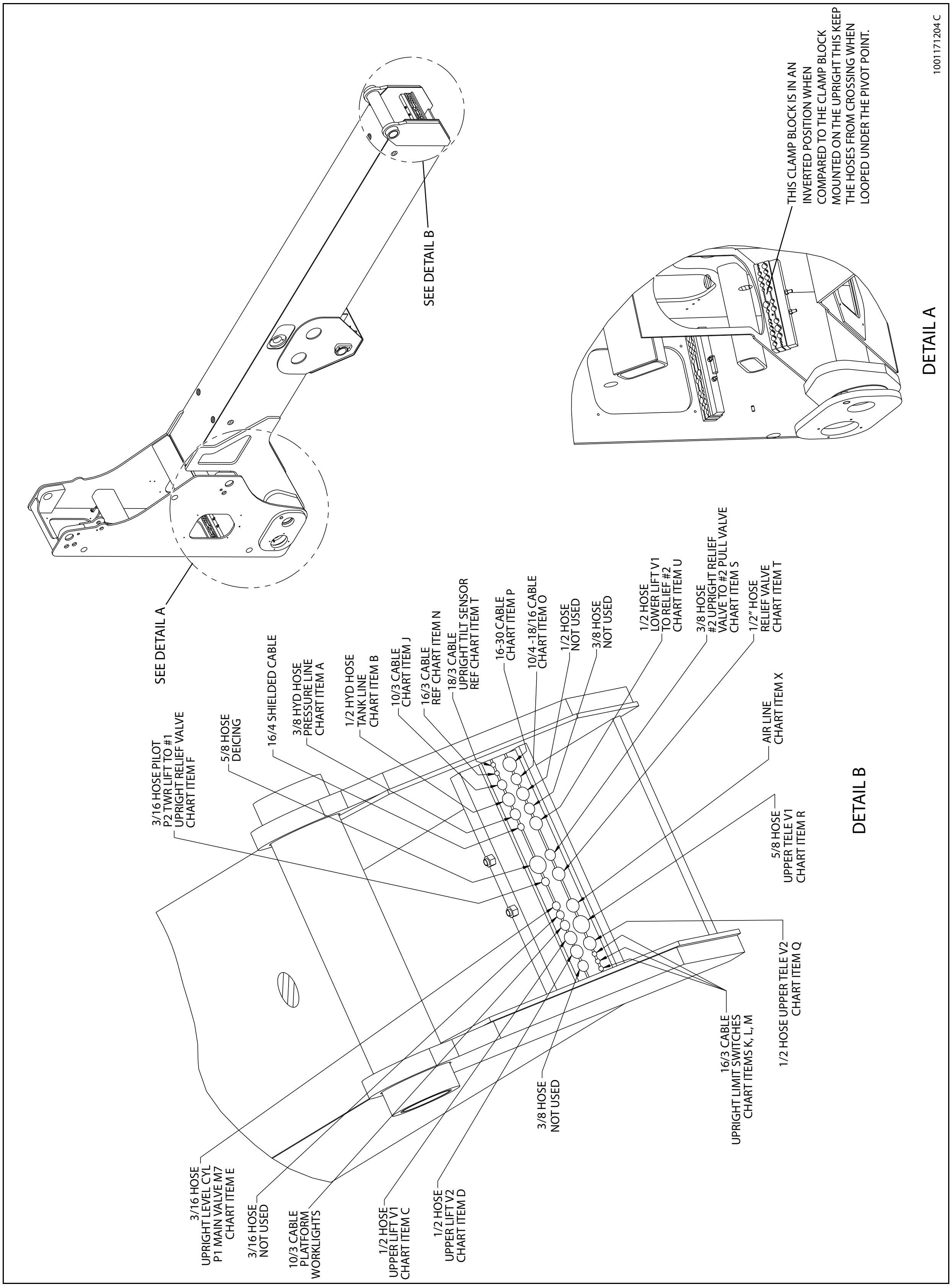
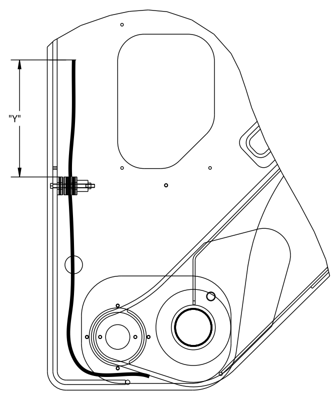
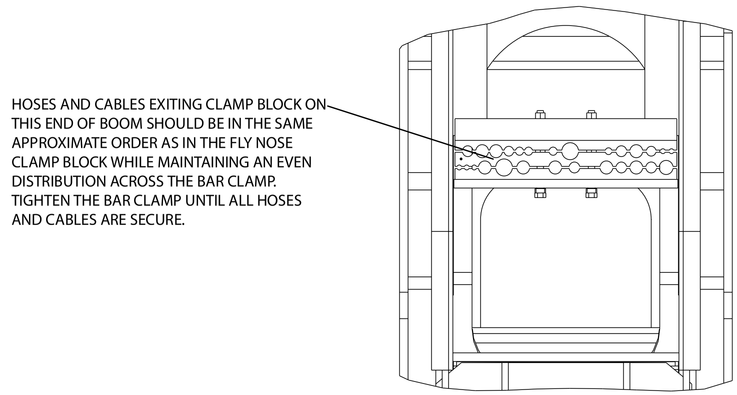


Figure 4-8. Hose and Cables Installation Tower Boom (Sheet 1 of 2)





ITEM	PART# / DESCRIPTION (REF.)	DIM "X"	DIM "Y"
A	PRESSURE LINE	42.00"	7.00"
B	TANK LINE	42.00"	7.00"
C	UPPER LIFT V1	60.00"	29.00"
D	UPPER LIFT V2	60.00"	29.00"
E	UPRIGHT LEVEL CYL P1 MAIN VALVE M7	85.00"	50.00"
F	PILOT P2 TWR LIFT TO #1 UPRIGHT RELIEF	64.00"	29.00"
G	10/3 CABLE	52.00"	20.00"
H	UPRIGHT LIMIT SWITCHES, 16/3 CABLE	97.00"	60.00"
I	UPRIGHT LIMIT SWITCHES, 16/3 CABLE	97.00"	60.00"
J	UPRIGHT LIMIT SWITCHES, 16/3 CABLE	97.00"	60.00"
K	16/3 CABLE	52.00"	20.00"
L	10/4-18/16 COMPOSITE CABLE	52.00"	20.00"
M	16/30 CABLE	52.00"	20.00"
N	UPPER TELE V2	46.00"	11.00"
O	UPPER TELE V1	46.00"	11.00"
P	#2 UPRIGHT RELIEF VALVE TO #2 PULL VALVE	82.00"	50.00"
Q	RELIEF VALVE	76.00"	44.00"
R	LOWER LIFT V1 TO RELIEF #2	65.00"	30.00"
S	AIRLINE	46.00"	11.00"
T	UPRIGHT TILT SENSOR	37.00"	12.00"

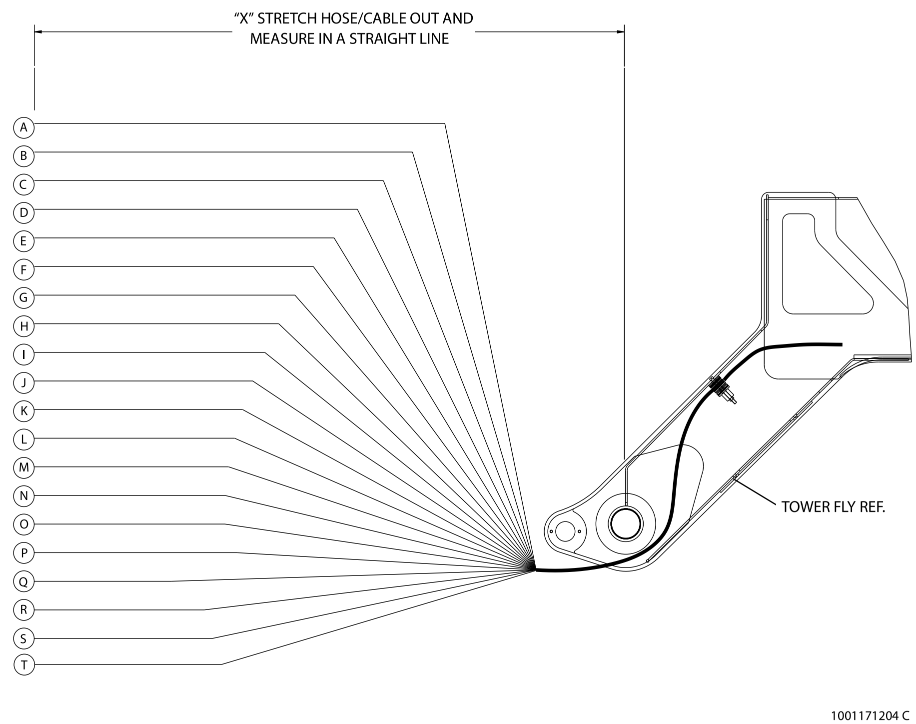
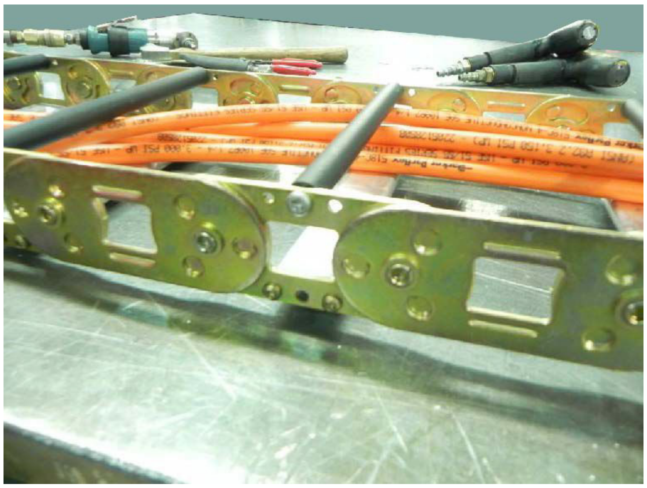


Figure 4-9. Hose and Cables Installation Tower Boom (Sheet 2 of 2)

4.5 POWERTRACK MAINTENANCE

Flat Bar Removal

NOTE: *Hoses shown in the powertrack are for example only. Actual hose and cable arrangements will be different.*



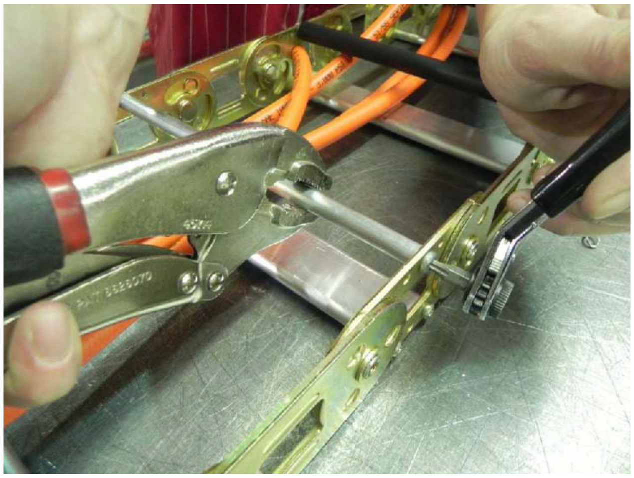
1. Use a small 1/4 in. ratchet and a T-20 Torx bit. Remove the 8-32 x 0.500 screws from both sides. (If the track also has a flat bar on the inside of the track instead of round bar/poly, perform the same step to remove it.)

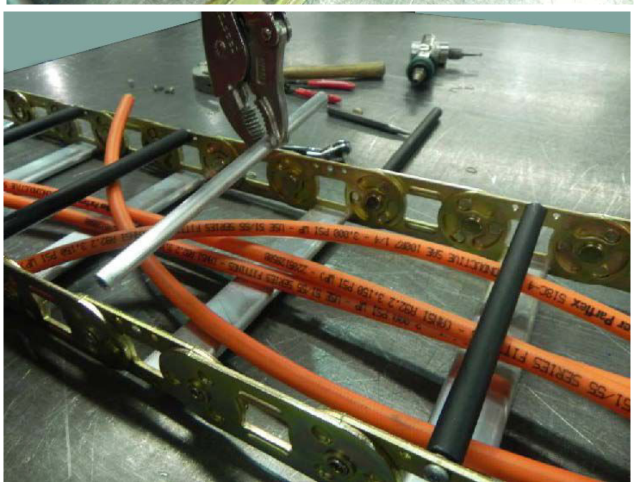
Round Bar/Poly Bar Removal

1. Use a small 1/4 in. ratchet with a T-25 Torx bit. Remove the 10-24 x 0.812 screw. (If the bar spins then grip the bar and poly tightly with a vise-grip).

2. Lift up one end of the bar and slide the poly roller off.

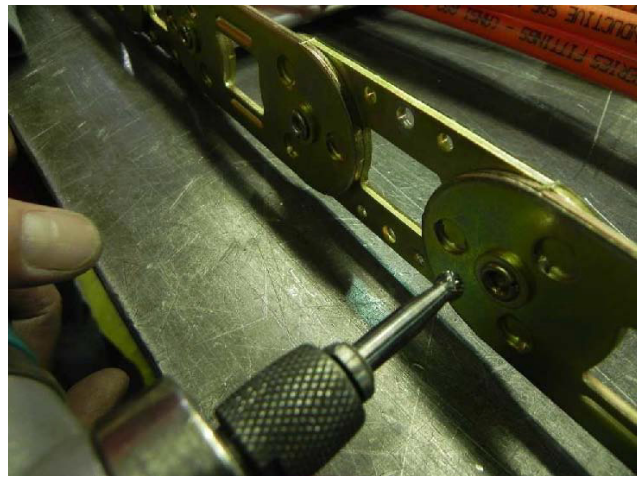
3. While gripping the bar tightly, remove the other 10-24 x 0.812 screw.



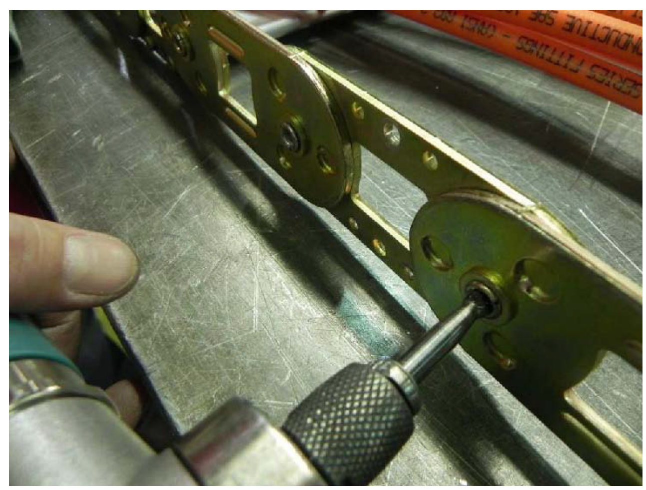


Removing and Installing Links

1. To remove the links, the rivets holding the links together must be removed. The following will show one way this can be done. Use a right angle die grinder with a ¼” ball double cut bur.

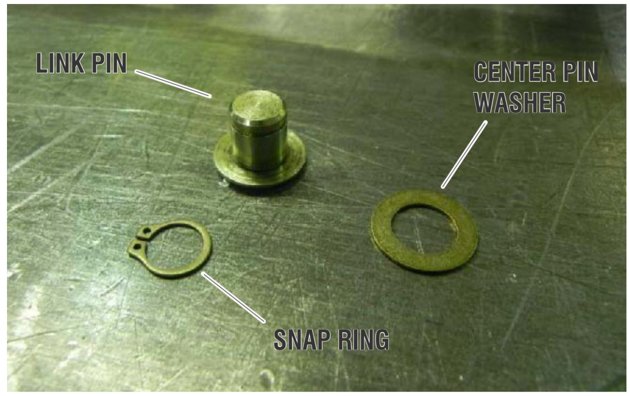


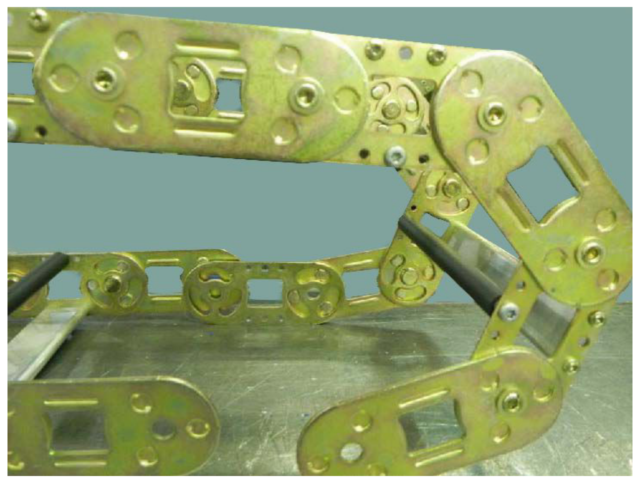
2. Insert the tool into the rolled over end of the rivet as shown. Grind out the middle of the rivet until the rolled over part of the rivet falls off. Repeat this step for all rivets that must be removed.



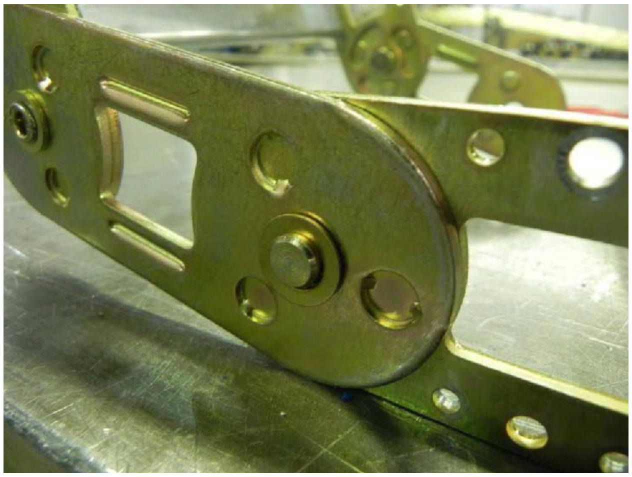
3. After grinding, it is sometimes necessary to use a center punch to punch out the rivet from the link.

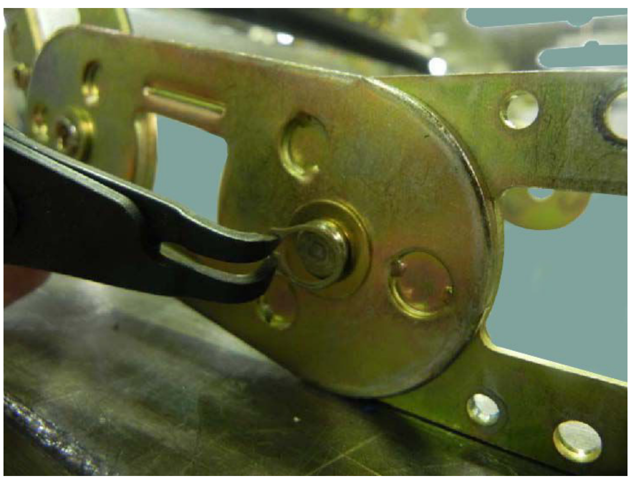
4. To install new links, extend the main moving end over the lower part of the track so the new connection point is in the curved part of the track. This will allow the round half-shears to be rotated in a way they will fit into the peanut-shaped cut-outs.



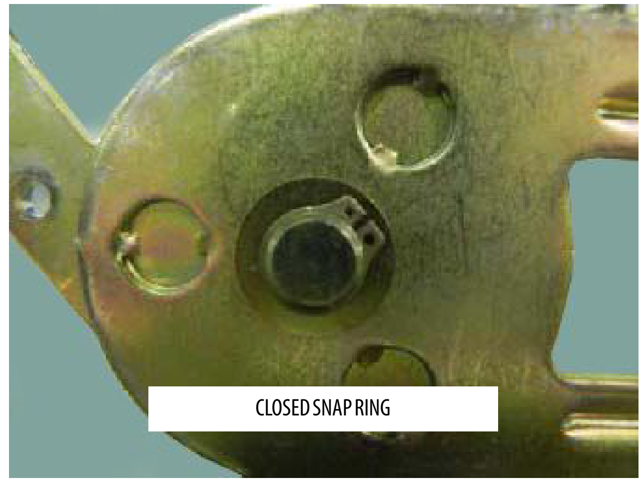


5. Install the pin into the center hole, then slide the washer over the pin. Install the snap ring into the groove in the pin.

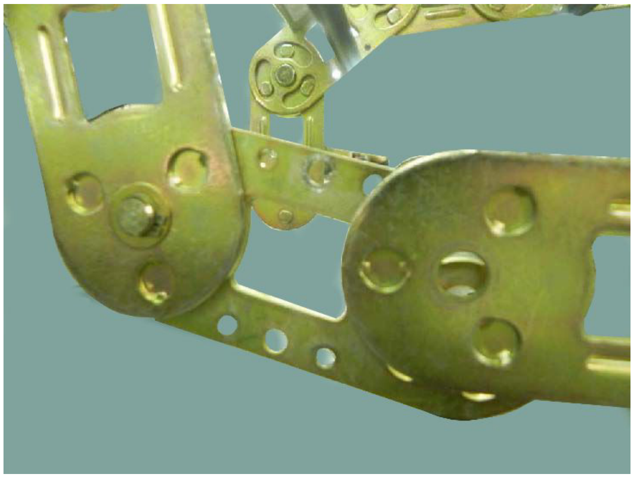


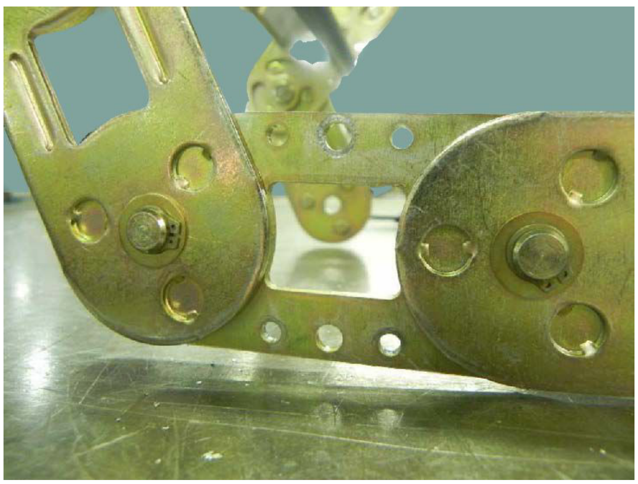


NOTE: *When installing snap rings make sure they are seated in the pin groove and closed properly.*



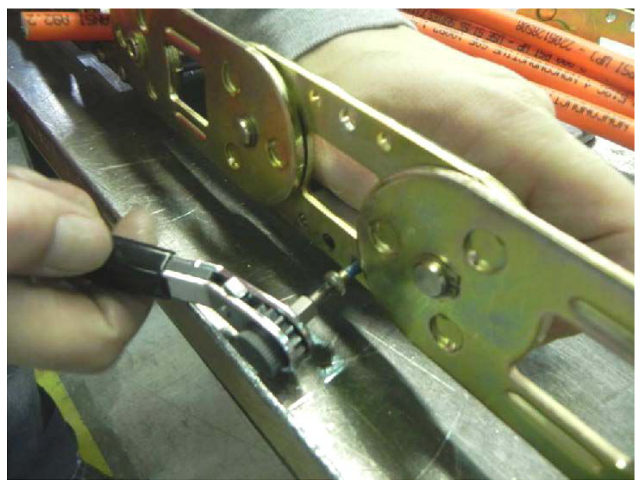
6. Install more pins, washers, and snap rings into all the links where a rivet was removed.





Installing a New Flat Bar

1. While holding the flat bar, install new 8-32 x 0.500 self threading torx screws into both holes on each side of track.



NOTE: *Maximum tightening torque for the 8-32 screw is 18-20 in. lbs. (2-2.2 Nm).*

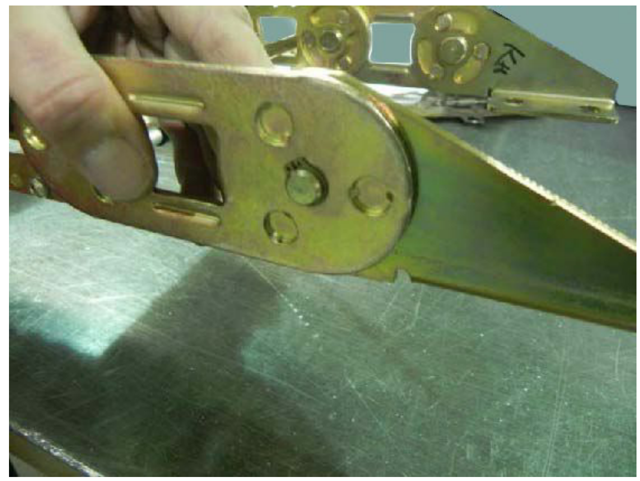
Installing a New Round Bar/Poly Roller

1. While tightly holding the round bar, install the new 10-24 x 0.812 self threading torx screw. Next lift up the other end and slide a new poly roller on. Install another 10-24 x 0.812 screw on the other side.

NOTE: *Maximum tightening torque for the 10-24 screw is 45-50 in. lbs. (5-5.6 Nm).*

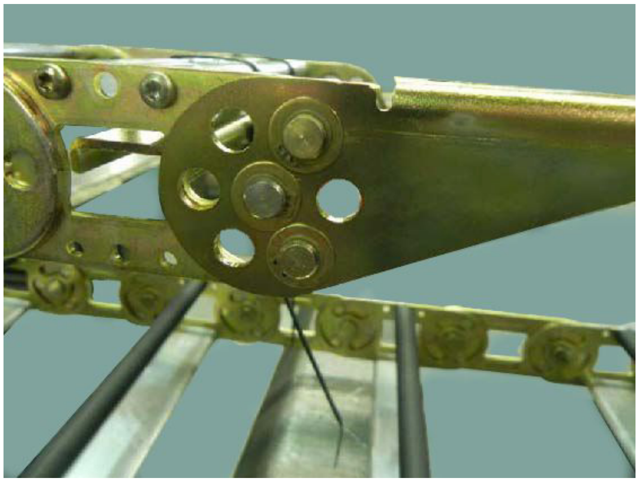
Replacing a Fixed End Bracket

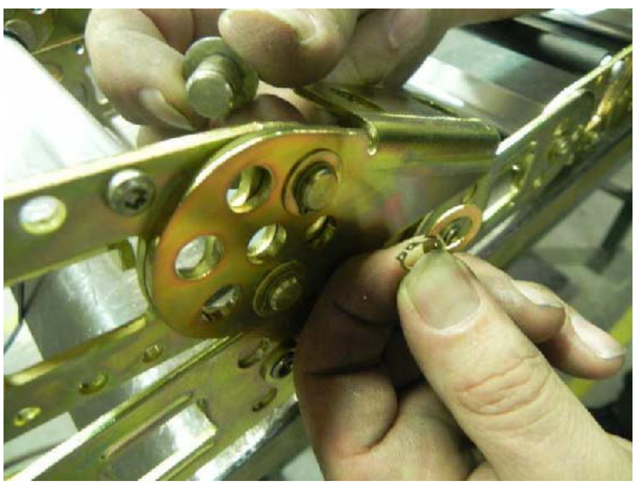
1. Remove the bracket by removing the center pin, washer, and snap ring. Install a new bracket then reinstall the pin, washer, and new snap ring. After installing the new bracket make sure that it rotates correctly.



Replacing a Moving End Bracket

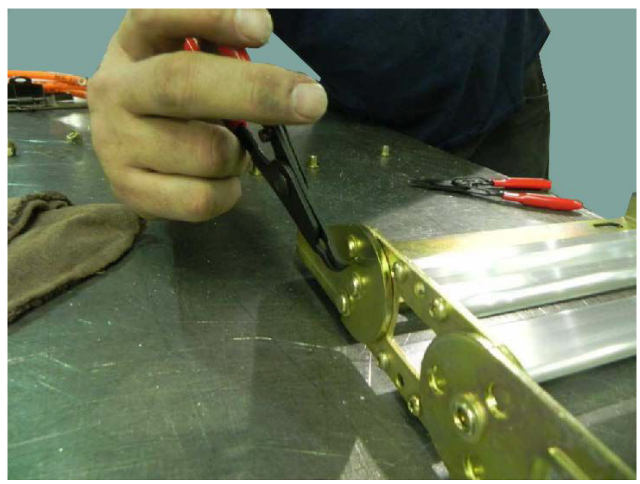
1. Remove bracket by removing all pins, washers, and snap rings. Replace with a new bracket and reinstall the pins, washers, and new snap rings. After installing a new bracket make sure that it rotates correctly.

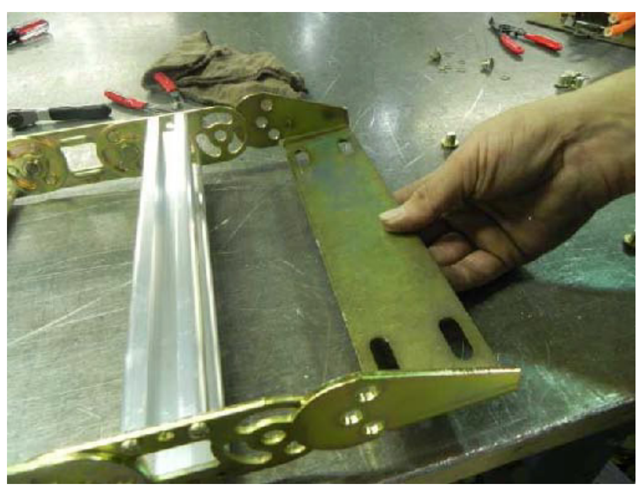




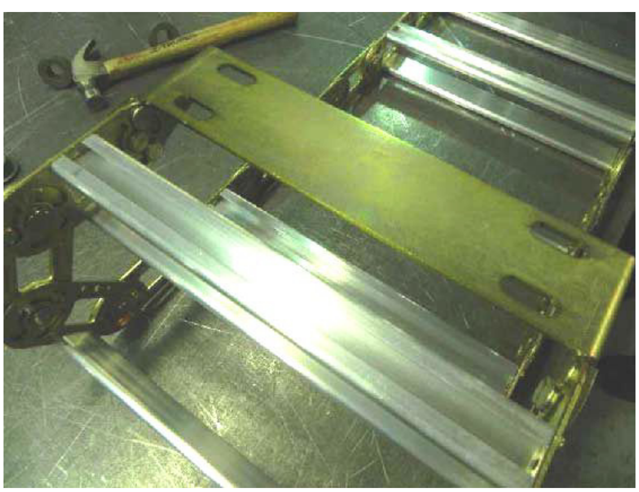
Replacing a One Piece Bracket

1. Remove all pins, washers, and snap rings and slide the bracket off of the links.





2. To install a new bracket, slide the bracket over the links and reinstall the pins, washers, and new snap rings. After installing the new bracket make sure that it rotates correctly.



4.6 BOOM CLEANLINESS GUIDELINES

The following are guidelines for internal boom cleanliness for machines that are used in excessively dirty environments.

1. JLG recommends the use of the JLG Hostile Environment Package if available to keep the internal portions of a boom cleaner and to help prevent dirt and debris from entering the boom. This package reduces the amount of contamination which can enter the boom but does not eliminate the need for more frequent inspections and maintenance when used in these types of environments.

2. JLG recommends that you follow all guidelines for servicing your equipment in accordance with the instructions outlined in the JLG Service & Maintenance Manual for your machine. Periodic maintenance and inspection is vital to the proper operation of the machine. The frequency of service and maintenance must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

3. Debris and foreign matter inside of the boom can cause premature failure of components and should be removed. Methods to remove debris should always be done using all applicable safety precautions outlined in the JLG Service & Maintenance Manuals.

4. The first attempt to remove debris from inside the boom must be to utilize pressurized air to blow the debris toward the nearest exiting point from the boom. Make sure that all debris is removed before operating the machine.

5. If pressurized air cannot dislodge the debris, then water with mild solvents applied via a pressure washer can be used. Again the method is to wash the debris toward the nearest exiting point from the boom. Make sure that all debris is removed, that no “puddling” of water has occurred, and that the boom internal components are dry prior to operating the machine. Make sure you comply with all federal and local laws for disposing of the wash water and debris.

6. If neither pressurized air nor washing of the boom dislodges and removes the debris, then disassemble the boom in accordance to the instructions outlined in the JLG Service & Maintenance Manual to remove the debris.

4.7 MAIN BOOM ASSEMBLY

Removal

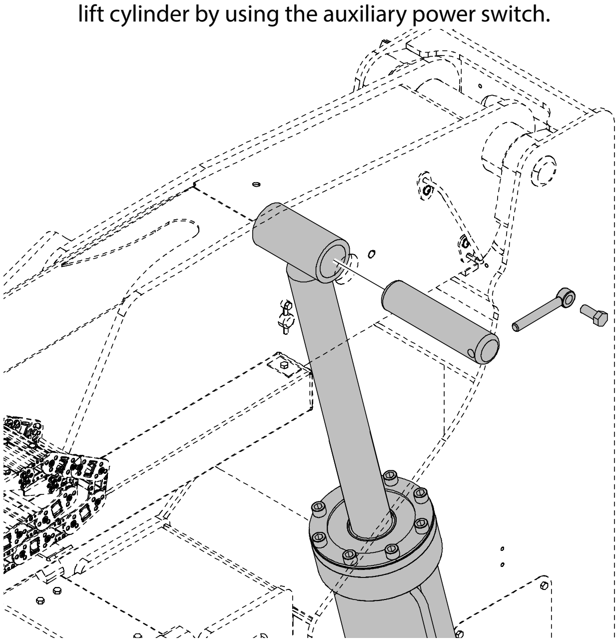
1. Using a suitable lifting equipment, adequately support boom assembly weight along entire length.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

2. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from telescope cylinder. Use suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

3. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove hardware securing the main boom lift cylinder rod end pin to the base boom section. Remove the main boom lift cylinder pin from base boom. Retract the main boom lift cylinder by using the auxiliary power switch.



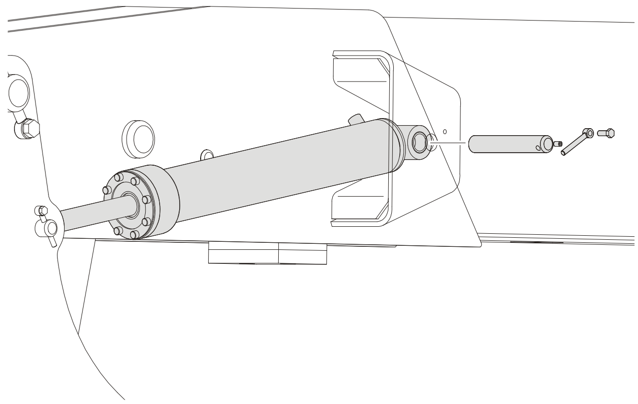
4. Remove the Master Cylinder as follows:

   a. Using an adequate supporting device, support the master cylinder so it doesn't fall when the retaining pins are removed.

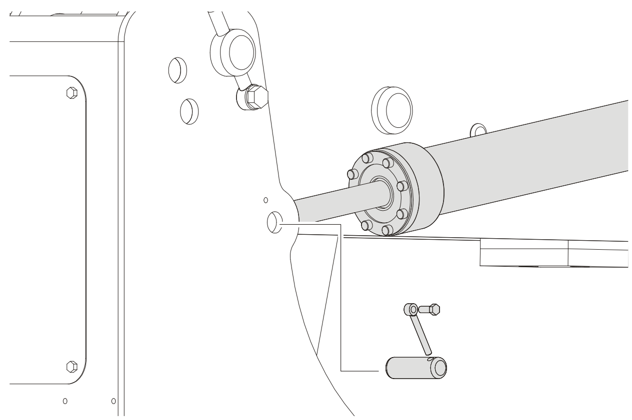
NOTE: *The master cylinder weighs approximately 58.4 lbs. (26.5 kg).*

   b. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from master cylinder. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

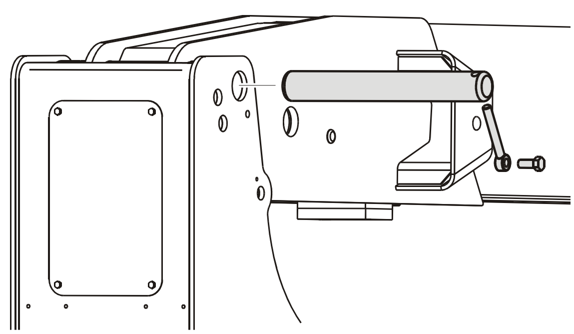
   c. Remove the bolt and keeper pin securing the master cylinder barrel end pin to the base boom section. Next, install a 3/8-16 UNC threaded lifting eye into the threaded hole of the pin and pull pin out.



   d. Remove the bolt and keeper pin securing the master cylinder rod end pin to the upright. Remove the pin.



5. Remove the bolt and keeper pin securing the boom pivot pin to the upright. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pivot pin from upright.



6. Using all applicable safety precautions, carefully lift boom assembly clear of upright and lower to ground or suitably supported work surface.

NOTE: *The main boom alone weighs approximately 2226 lbs. (1010 kg). Including the slave cylinder, rotator, and platform support the assembly weighs approximately 3185 lbs. (1445 kg).*

Disassembly

1. Remove hardware securing telescope cylinder to back end of the base boom section.
2. Remove hardware which secures the wear pads to the base boom section; remove the wear pads from the top, sides and bottom of the base boom section.
3. Using overhead crane or suitable lifting device, remove fly boom assembly from base section.
4. Remove hardware from the telescope cylinder pin. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer remove the cylinder pin from fly boom section.
5. Pull the telescope cylinder partially from aft end of the fly boom section; secure the cylinder with a suitable sling and lifting device at approximately the center of gravity.
6. Carefully remove the telescope cylinder and place telescope cylinder on a suitable trestle.

NOTE: *The Main Boom Telescope Cylinder can be removed without disassembling the main boom by disconnecting hydraulic lines, top attaching pin of main boom lift cylinder and telescope cylinders as directed above, and pulling out the telescope cylinder from the rear, through the access plate opening of the upright.*

7. Remove hardware which secures the wear pads to the aft end of fly boom section; remove the wear pads from the top, sides and bottom of the fly boom section.

Inspection

NOTE: *When inspecting pins and bearings, refer to Section 2, Pins and Composite Bearing Repair Guidelines.*

1. Inspect main boom pivot pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.
2. Inspect telescope cylinder attach point for scoring, tapering and ovality. Replace pins as necessary.
3. Inspect main boom lift cylinder attach pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Ensure pin surfaces are protected prior to installation. Replace pins as necessary.
4. Inspect inner diameter of boom pivot bearing for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage. Replace bearing as necessary.
5. Inspect all wear pads for excessive wear, or other damage.
6. Inspect all threaded components for damage such as stretching, thread deformation, or twisting. Replace as necessary.
7. Inspect structural units of boom assembly for bending, cracking, separation of welds, or other damage. Replace boom sections as necessary.

Assembly

NOTE: *When installing fly section wear pads, install same number and thickness of shims as were removed during disassembly.*

1. Measure inside dimensions of the base section to determine the number of shims required for proper fit.
2. Install side, top and bottom wear pads to the aft end of fly section; shim evenly to the measurements of the inside of base boom section.

NOTICE

WHEN ASSEMBLING BOOM SECTIONS, ENSURE THAT THE BOOM SLIDING TRAJECTORIES HAVE BEEN CLEARED OF CHAINS, TOOLS, AND OTHER OBSTRUCTIONS.

3. Secure the sling and lifting device at the telescope cylinder's approximate center of gravity, and lift the cylinder to the aft end of the fly boom section.
4. Slide telescope cylinder into the aft end of fly boom section. Align attachment holes in fly boom section with hole in rod end of telescope cylinder.
5. Install telescope cylinder pin and secure with mounting hardware.
6. Secure the sling and lifting device at the fly boom assembly approximate center of gravity.

7. Slide fly boom assembly into the base boom section. Shim boom, if necessary, for a total of 1/32 in. (0.08 cm) clearance.

8. Install wear pads into the forward position of the base boom section. Shim boom, if necessary, for a total of 1/32 in. (0.08 cm) clearance.

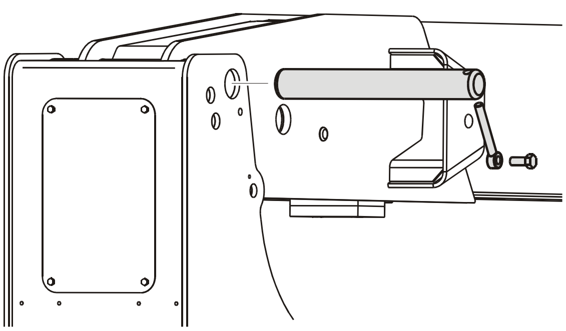
9. Align the cylinder with the slots at aft end of base boom section, then secure cylinder with mounting hardware.

Installation

1. Using all applicable safety precautions, carefully lift boom assembly to align the pivot holes in the boom with those of the upright.

NOTE: *The main boom alone weighs approximately 2226 lbs. (1010 kg). Including the slave cylinder, rotator, and platform support the assembly weighs approximately 3185 lbs. (1445 kg).*

2. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, install the pivot pin into the upright. Install the bolt and keeper pin securing the boom pivot pin to the upright.

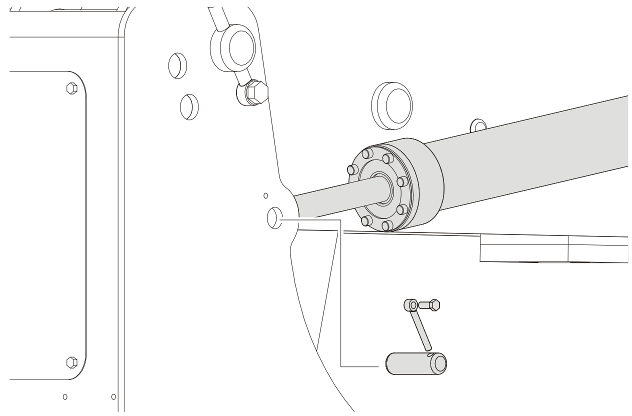


3. Install the Master Cylinder as follows:

   a. Using an adequate supporting device, align the master cylinder with the mounting holes on the boom and upright.

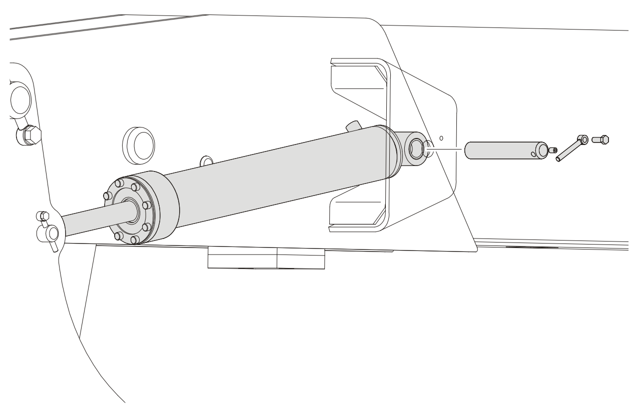
NOTE: *The master cylinder weighs approximately 58.4 lbs. (26.5 kg).*

   b. Install the master cylinder rod end pin. Install the bolt and keeper pin securing the master cylinder rod end pin to the upright.



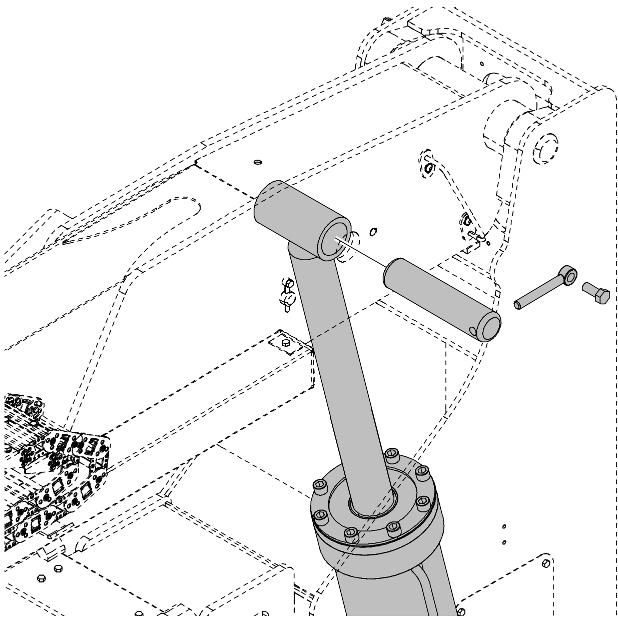
NOTE: *When installing the master cylinder rod end pin, insert the keeper hardware pin to prevent the pin from inserting too far.*

   c. Install the barrel end retaining pin. Install the bolt and keeper pin securing the master cylinder barrel end pin to the base boom section.



   d. Connect hydraulic lines to the master cylinder as tagged during removal.

4. Extend the main boom lift cylinder using auxiliary power switch and align the rod end with the main boom assembly.
5. Carefully insert the main lift cylinder rod end pin through the base boom and install the mounting hardware.



6. Connect the hydraulic lines to the telescope cylinder as tagged during removal.

4.8 UPRIGHT

Removal

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

1. Remove the main boom assembly. Refer to Section 4.7, Main Boom Assembly.
2. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines to the main boom lift cylinder. Use a suitable container to collect any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.
3. Remove mounting hardware from main boom lift cylinder barrel end. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove pin #1 from upright and remove main boom lift cylinder.

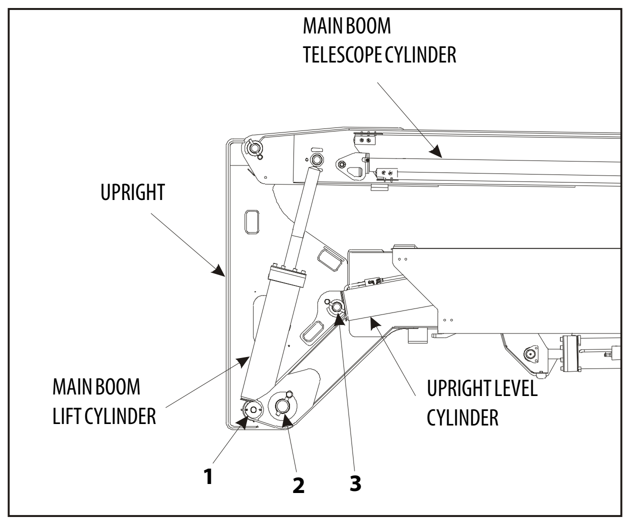


Figure 4-10. Location of Components - Upright

4. Disconnect wiring harness to horizontal limit switch.
5. Disconnect the upright level cylinder as follows:
   a. Using a suitable lifting device, support the upright.
   b. Remove mounting hardware securing hose bracket in upright, and remove the hose bracket.
   c. Remove mounting hardware securing the upright level cylinder to the upright. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove pin #3 from upright and disconnect the upright level cylinder from the upright.
6. Remove mounting hardware from the upright pivot pin using a suitable brass drift and hammer. Remove pin #4 from tower boom assembly and remove the upright from the machine.

NOTE: *Steps 7 through 10 are only necessary if the upright level cylinder is to be removed.*

7. With upright removed, raise the tower boom to gain access to the upright level cylinder rod end attach pin.
8. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines to the upright lift cylinder. Use a suitable container to collect any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.
9. Using an overhead crane or suitable lifting device, support the upright lift cylinder, remove mounting hardware from the barrel end of the upright lift cylinder and remove the pin.
10. Carefully remove the upright lift cylinder and place on a suitable work surface.

Installation

NOTE: *Steps 1 through 4 are only necessary if the upright level cylinder is to be removed.*

1. Using a suitable lifting device, carefully install the upright lift cylinder into place in the tower boom.
2. Install the pin and mounting hardware at the barrel end of the upright lift cylinder.
3. Connect the hydraulic lines to the upright lift cylinder as tagged during removal.
4. Lower the tower boom.
5. Using an adequate lifting device, install the upright into position. Install pin #4 into the tower boom assembly and secure it in place with the mounting hardware.
6. Connect the upright level cylinder as follows:
   a. Align the holes in the cylinder and upright for pin #3, and install the pin into the upright and connect the upright level cylinder to the upright. Install the mounting hardware securing the pin.
   b. Install the hose bracket and secure in place with the mounting hardware.
7. Connect the wiring harness to horizontal limit switch.
8. Align the holes in the main boom lift cylinder and upright for pin #1 and install the pin. Secure the pin in place with the mounting hardware.
9. Connect the hydraulic lines to the main boom lift cylinder as tagged during removal.
10. Install the main boom. Refer to Section 4.7, Main Boom Assembly.

4.9 TOWER BOOM ASSEMBLY

Removal

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

1. Remove the main boom assembly. Refer to Section 4.7, Main Boom Assembly.
2. Remove the upright. Refer to Section 4.8, Upright.
3. Using an overhead crane or suitable lifting device, support the entire tower boom assembly and separately support the tower lift cylinder.
4. Remove mounting hardware from tower lift cylinder rod end. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the tower boom lift cylinder pin #1, disconnecting the tower lift cylinder.
5. Remove mounting hardware from the tower boom pivot pin. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove pin #2 from turntable assembly.
6. Using all applicable safety precautions, carefully lift the tower boom assembly clear of turntable and lower to ground or a suitable supported work surface.
7. Remove mounting hardware from the upright leveling cylinder rod end. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the upright cylinder pin #3, disconnecting the upright cylinder from the tower boom.
8. Using suitable lifting device, remove tower boom assembly from turntable. keep in clean workspace.

Inspection

NOTE: *Refer to Section 2, Pins and Composite Bearing Repair Guidelines.*

1. Inspect tower boom pivot pin for wear scoring, tapering, and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.
2. Inspect tower boom pivot attach points for scoring, tapering, and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.
3. Inspect inner diameter of tower boom pivot bearings for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage.
4. Inspect lift cylinder attach pin for wear, scoring, tapering, and ovality, or other damage. Ensure pin surfaces are protected prior to installation. Replace pins as necessary.
5. Inspect inner diameter of upright attach point bearings for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage. Replace bearing as necessary.
6. Inspect upright leveling cylinder attach pins for wear, scoring, tapering, and ovality, or other damage. Ensure pin surfaces are protected prior to installation. Replace pins as necessary.
7. Inspect all threaded components for damage such as stretching, thread deformation, or twisting. Replace as necessary.

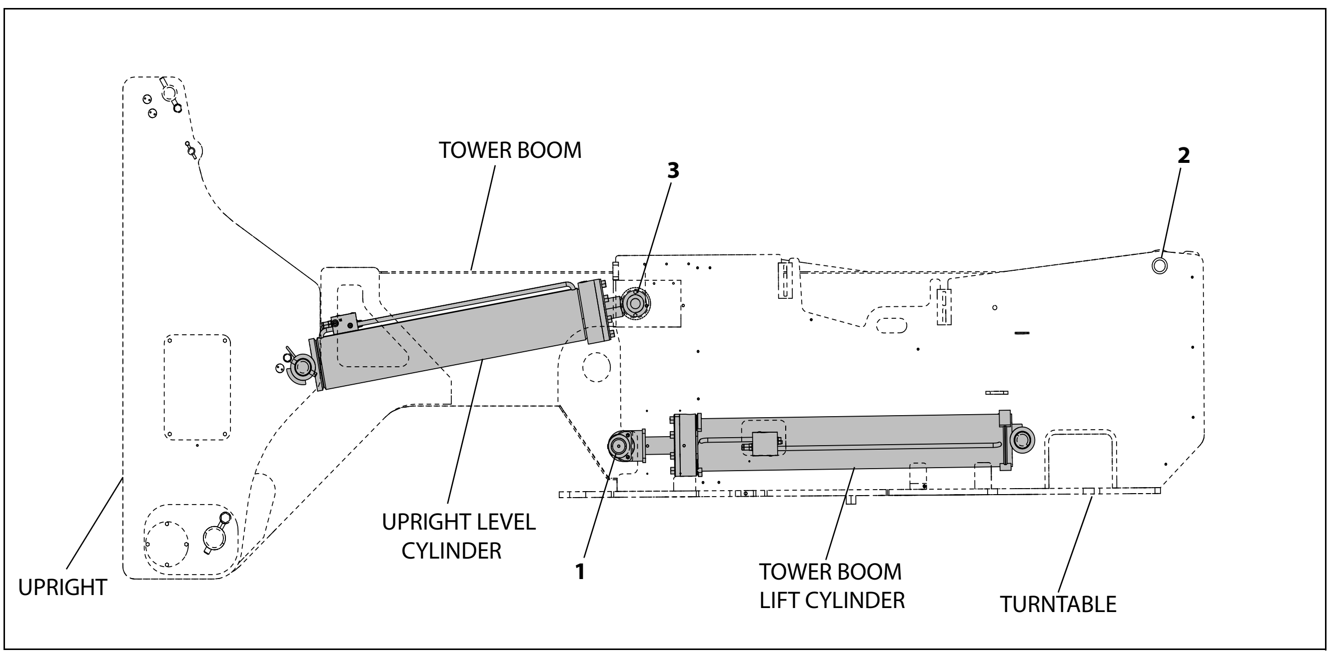


Figure 4-11. Location of Components - Tower Boom

8. Inspect structural units of tower boom assembly for bending, cracking, separation of welds, or other damage. Replace boom sections as necessary.

Installation

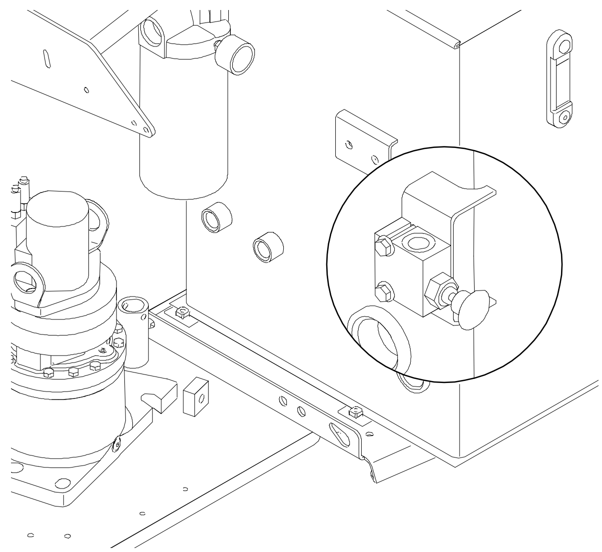
1. Using a suitable lifting device, position the tower boom such as to align upright leveling cylinder with attach holes in tower boom. Using a soft head mallet, install the cylinder pin #3 into tower boom and secure with mounting hardware.
2. Using a suitable lifting device, position boom assembly on turntable so that the pivot holes in both boom and turntable are aligned.
3. Install boom pivot pin #2, ensuring that location of hole in pin is aligned with attach point on turntable.
4. If necessary, gently tap pin into position with soft headed mallet. Secure pin mounting hardware.
5. Connect all wiring connectors to the correct connectors.
6. Connect all hydraulic lines of boom assembly.
7. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate lifting device in order to position tower boom lift cylinder so that holes in the cylinder rod end and boom structure are aligned. Insert the lift cylinder pin #1, ensuring that location of hole in pin is aligned with attach point on boom.
8. Install the upright. Refer to Section 4.8, Upright.
9. Install the main boom assembly. Refer to Section 4.7, Main Boom Assembly.
10. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate from the lower controls and raise boom fully, noting the performance. Lower the boom, noting the performance.

Tower Out of Sync

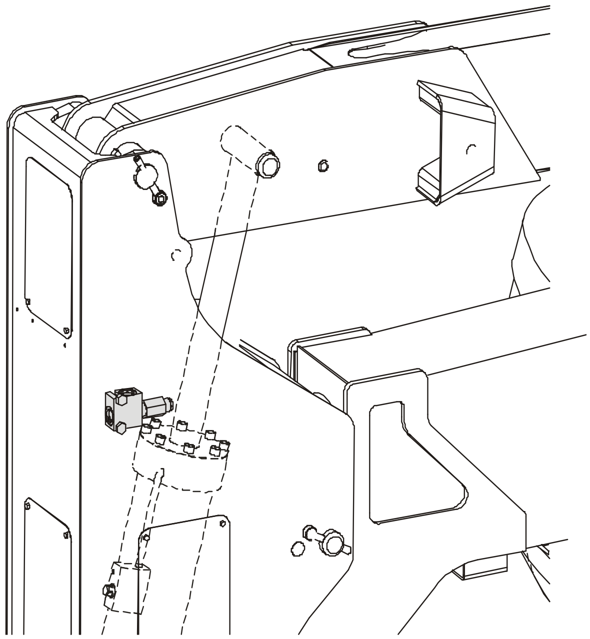
Tower is out of sync backwards, upright leaning toward the platform.

When towering down the upright cylinder bottoms out before the lower lift. Problems that could cause this are:

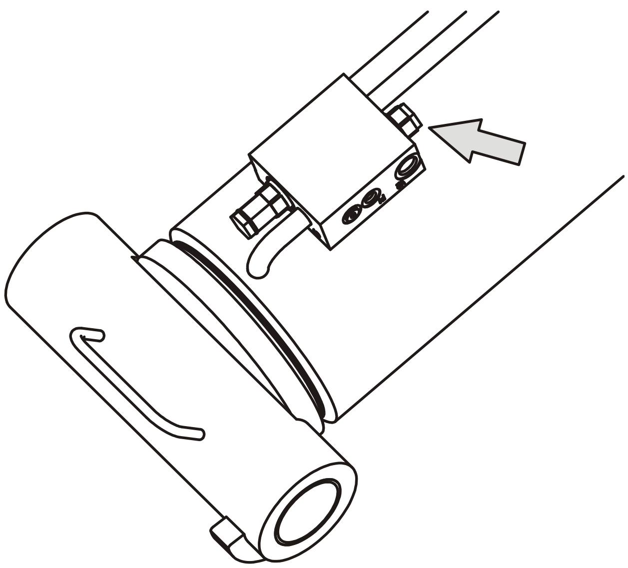
1. The releveling valve (red knob on the oil tank P/N: 4640866), this is a poppet valve that could be leaking fluid out of the closed loop. Manually opening the valve and flushing it can eliminate any contaminate on the seat. The seat could also be damaged, so replacing the cartridge might be necessary.



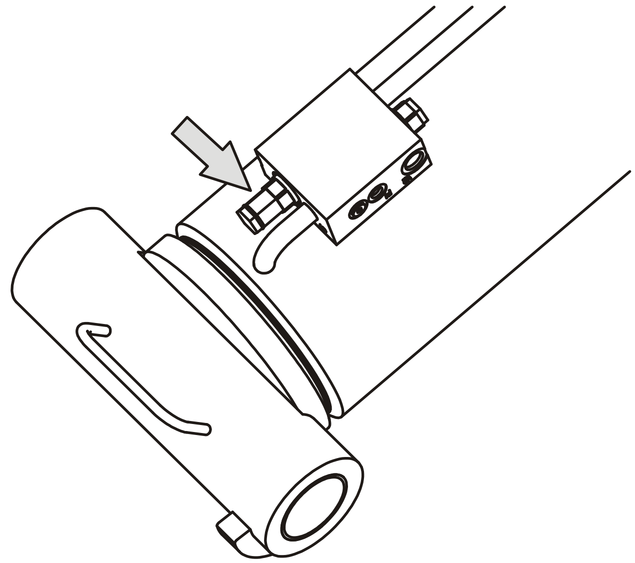
2. A relief valve is located in the upright. This relief valve could be leaking backwards out of the loop. Replace the cartridge. They are pre-set.



3. The counterbalance valve in the piston end of the upright level cylinder. There could be a leak path from the valve port to the pilot port. Replace the counterbalance valve.



4. The counterbalance valve in the rod end of the lower lift cylinder. There could be a leak path from the valve port to the pilot port. Replace the counterbalance valve.

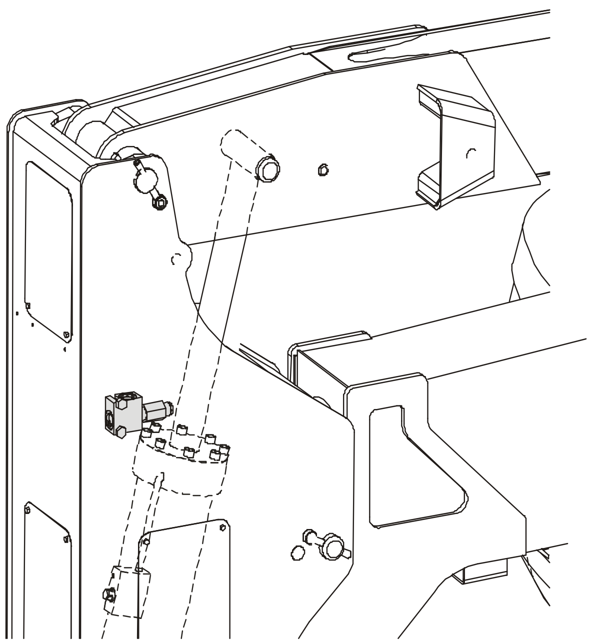


5. The packing on either the upright or lower cylinder can cause this. Do cylinder tests to determine if either cylinder needs new packing.

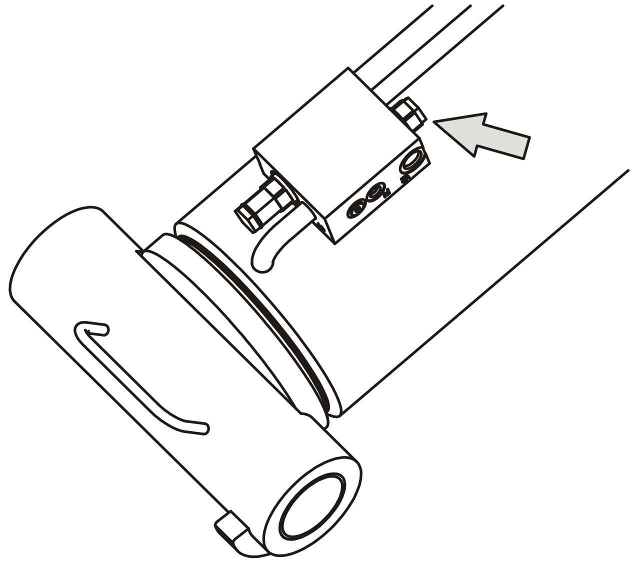
Tower is out of sync forwards, upright leaning toward the steer axle.

When towering down, the lower lift cylinder bottoms out before the upright level cylinder. This is caused by too much oil between the two cylinders. Problems that could cause this are:

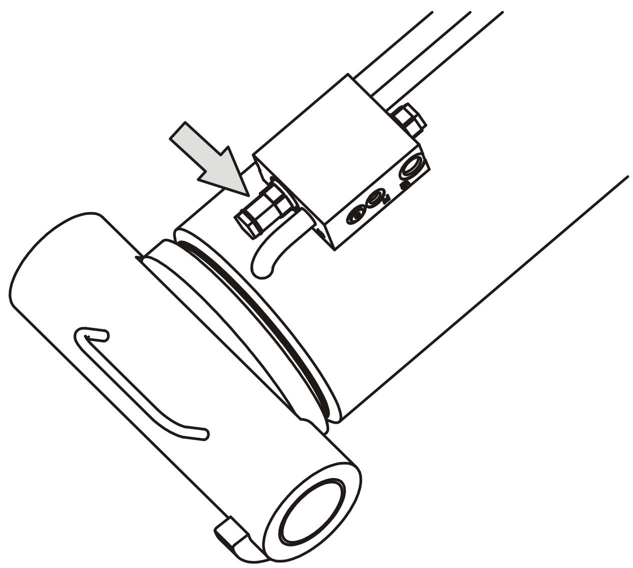
1. The relief valve located in the upright (P/N: 4640929). If this valve is set too low or has contaminate in it causing it to leak prematurely, when lifting down oil can pass through it causing the volume to grow between the cylinders. Flush the valve out and reinstall it, or replace the cartridge. The cartridge pressure is pre-set so no adjustment can be made.



2. The counterbalance valve in the piston end of the upright level cylinder. There could be a leak path from the pilot port to the valve port. Replace the counterbalance valve.



3. The counterbalance valve in the rod end of the lower lift cylinder. There could be a leak path from the pilot port to the valve port. Replace the counterbalance valve.



4. The packing on the lower lift cylinder can cause this. Do a cylinder test to check this out. Refer to Section 2.4, Cylinder Drift Test.

4.10 ARTICULATING JIB

NOTE: *Pin numbers listed in the following procedures are referenced in Figure 4-12., Location of Components - Articulating Jib.*

NOTE: *Using a suitable lifting device, support the jib assembly, jib lift cylinder, slave cylinder, and rotator.*

NOTE: *The approximate weight of slave cylinder is 77.16 lbs. (35 kg), jib lift cylinder is 63 lbs. (28.6 kg), and rotator is 64 lbs. (29 kg).*

Removal

1. For platform/support removal see platform/support removal diagram. See Section 4.1, Platform.
2. Position the articulating jib boom level with the ground.
3. Remove mounting hardware from slave cylinder pin #1. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the cylinder pin from articulating jib boom.
4. Remove mounting hardware from articulating jib boom pivot pin #2. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pivot pin from boom assembly.

Disassembly

1. Remove mounting hardware from articulating jib boom pivot pins #3 and #4. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pins from articulating jib boom pivot weldment.
2. Remove mounting hardware from rotator support pins #5 and #6. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pins from rotator support.
3. Remove mounting hardware from lift cylinder pin #7. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the jib lift cylinder pin from articulating jib boom.

Inspection

NOTE: *When inspecting pins and bearings Refer to Section 2.5, Pins and Composite Bearing Repair Guidelines.*

1. Inspect articulating fly boom pivot pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.
2. Inspect articulating fly boom pivot attach points for scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.
3. Inspect inner diameter of articulating fly boom pivot bearings for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage. Replace bearings as necessary.
4. Inspect lift cylinder attach pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Ensure pin surfaces are protected prior to installation. Replace pins as necessary.

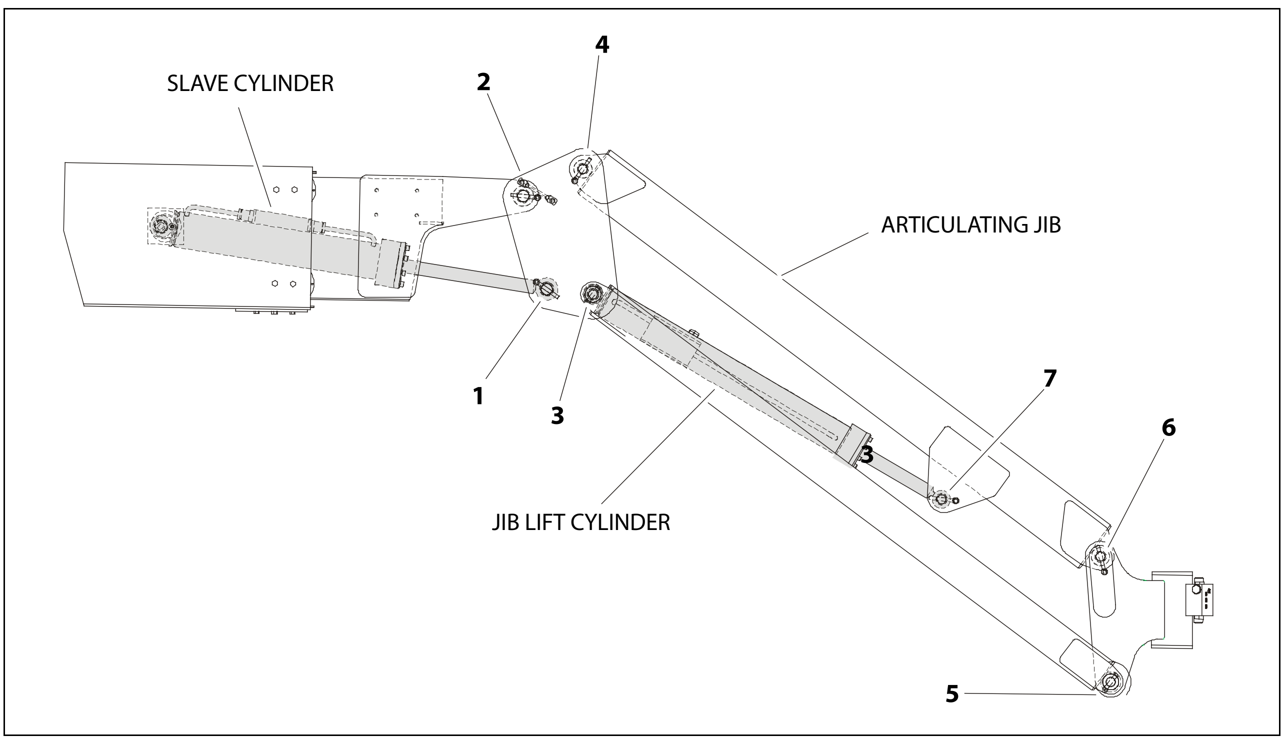


Figure 4-12. Location of Components - Articulating Jib

5. Inspect inner diameter of rotator attach point bearings for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage.
6. Inspect all threaded components for damage such as stretching, thread deformation, or twisting. Replace as necessary.
7. Inspect structural units of articulating jib boom assembly for bending, cracking, separation of welds, or other damage. Replace boom sections as necessary.

Assembly

1. Align lift cylinder with attach holes in articulating jib boom. Using a soft head mallet, install cylinder pin #7 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
2. Align rotator support with attach hole in articulating jib boom. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #6 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
3. Align bottom tubes with attach holes in rotator support. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #5 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
4. Align articulating jib boom with attach hole in articulating jib boom pivot weldment. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #4 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
5. Align bottom tubes with attach holes in articulating jib boom pivot weldment. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #3 into articulating jib boom pivot weldment and secure with mounting hardware.

Installation

1. Align articulating jib boom pivot weldment with attach holes in fly boom assembly. Using a soft head mallet, install pivot pin #2 into fly boom assembly and secure with mounting hardware.
2. Align the slave cylinder with attach holes in articulating jib boom pivot weldment. Using a soft head mallet, install slave leveling cylinder pin #1 into articulating jib boom pivot weldment and secure with mounting hardware.

4.11 UPRIGHT MONITORING SYSTEM

The UMS provides a visual and audible warning to the operator when the limits of the upright assembly alignment have been reached. In addition, the UMS will not allow the tower boom to be lowered when the upright assembly is misaligned in a direction oriented away from the work platform.

Re-Synchronizing Upright

A pull type control valve allows the operator to adjust the upright level cylinder if the upright is not 90° (vertical) relative to the chassis. (Refer to Figure 4-13.) This valve is located in the tank compartment area.

Perform the following steps with the aid of an assistant:

1. Turn the key switch to the ground control position.
2. Start the engine.
3. Pull and hold the red relevel knob located next to the main control valve. Refer to Figure 4-13.
4. Raise the tower boom 6 feet (1.8 m).
5. Release the red relevel knob.
6. Lower the tower boom fully and continue to hold down the switch to Tower Down for an additional 20 seconds.
7. Repeat steps 3 through 6 as necessary until the upright is 90° (vertical) relative to the chassis.

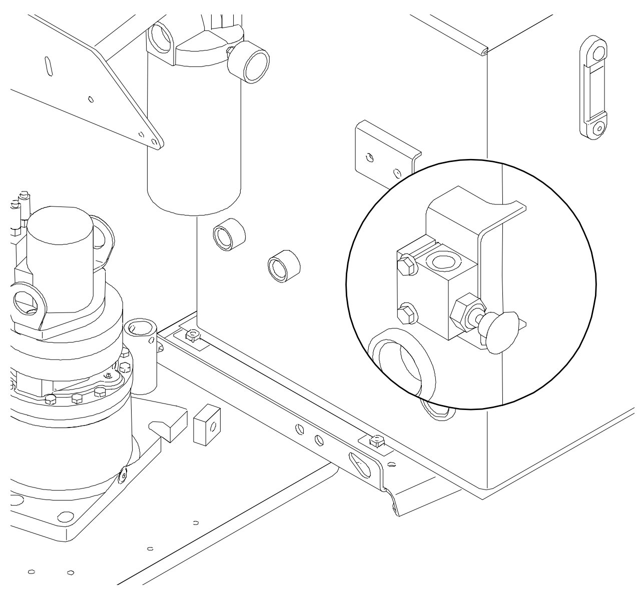


Figure 4-13. Releveling Valve

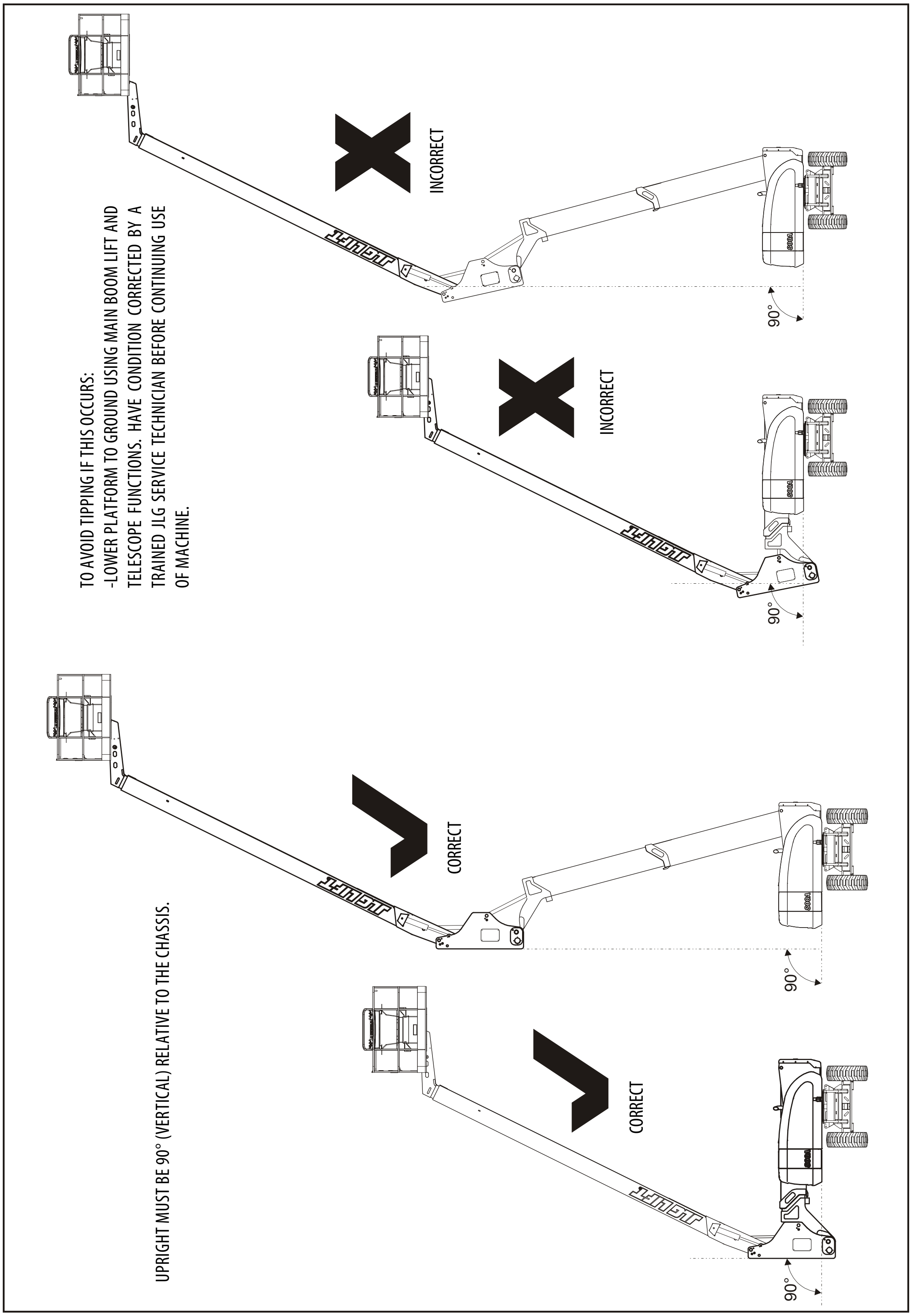


Figure 4-14. Boom Upright Positioning

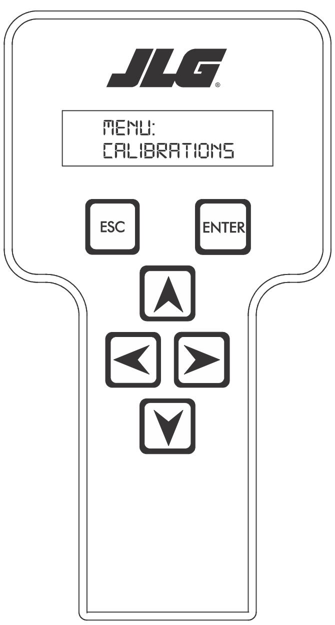
Calibration

1. Connect the JLG Hand-held analyzer to the original analyzer connection in the ground box.

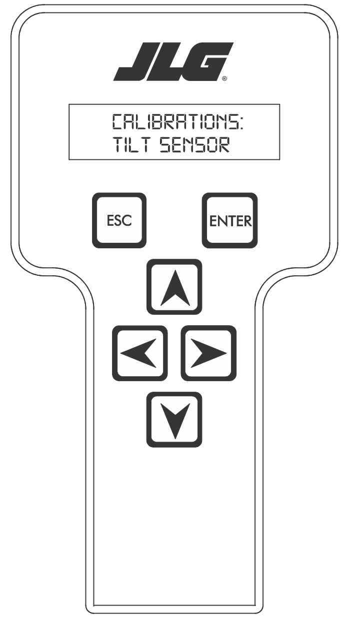
NOTICE

DO NOT CONNECT TO THE ANALYZER CONNECTION PORT INSTALLED WITH THE UPRIGHT MONITORING SYSTEM MODULE.

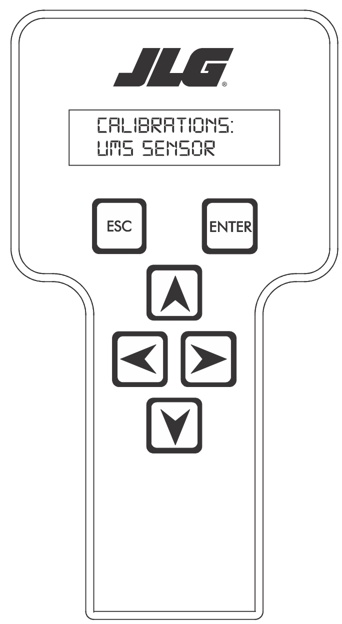
2. Pull out the emergency stop button at the ground control station and start the engine from the ground controls.
3. To calibrate the Upright Monitoring System through the hand-held analyzer, you must be in access level 1. To advance to access level 1, scroll to the ACCESS LEVEL menu and press "ENTER" ENTER. Using the arrows on the keypad, enter the password "33271" and press "ENTER" ENTER.
4. Calibrate the upright monitoring system sensor by the following procedure:
   a. In access level 1, scroll through the menu items until "CALIBRATIONS" is displayed on the second line of the analyzer screen. The screen will display the following:



   b. After pressing 'ENTER" one of the following screens will be displayed:



Or

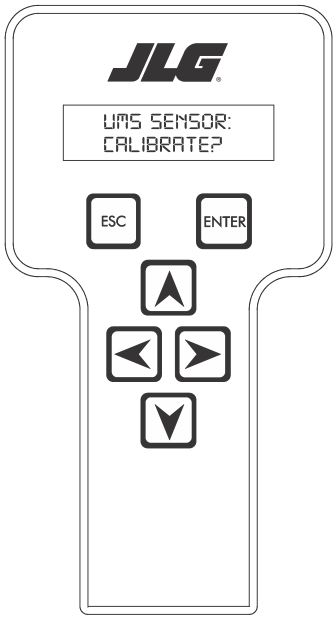


   c. Scroll left to right through the above menu items until "UMS SENSOR" sub menu appears on the bottom line of the analyzer display. Press the "ENTER" ENTER key.

NOTICE

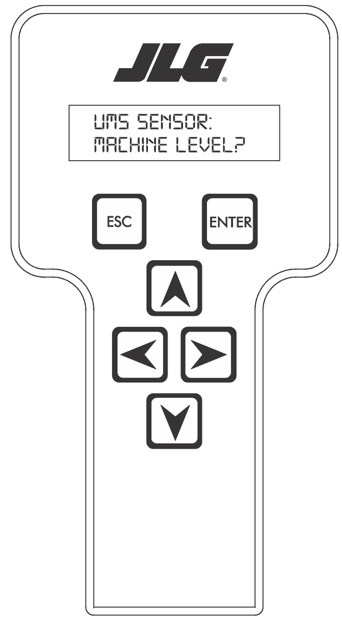
IT IS NOT NECESSARY TO CALIBRATE THE TILT SENSOR IN THE GROUND CONTROL MODULE AT THIS TIME. HOWEVER, WHEN THE TILT SENSOR IN THE GROUND CONTROL MODULE IS RECALIBRATED, THE UPRIGHT MONITORING SYSTEM TILT SENSOR MUST BE RECALIBRATED AS WELL.

d. After selecting "UMS SENSOR", the following screen will appear:



NOTE: *By pressing the left or right arrow keys in this screen, you may view the output of the sensor.*

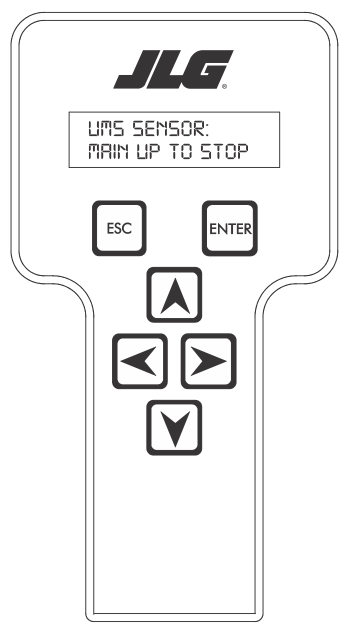
e. Press "ENTER" and the next screen will display the following, asking if the machine is on a level surface:



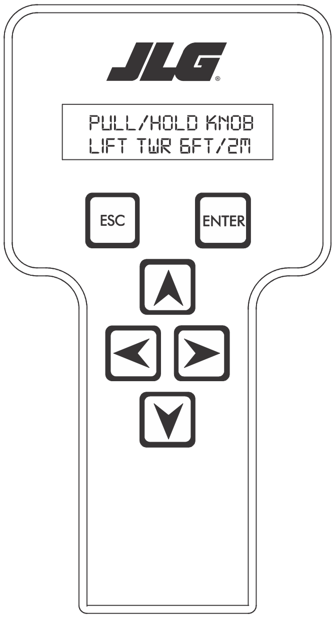
NOTICE

THE MACHINE MUST BE LEVEL FOR PROPER CALIBRATION.

f. Verify the machine is level and press "ENTER". The screen will display the following, asking you to fully elevate the main boom:



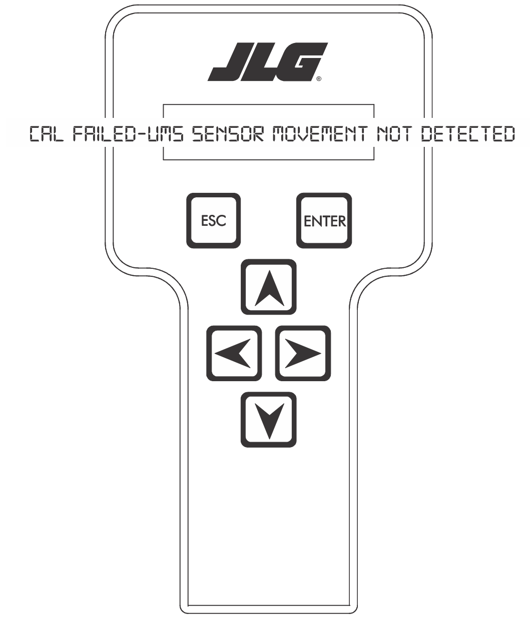
g. After the main boom has been fully elevated, press "ENTER". The analyzer will display the following:



NOTE: *By pressing the left or right arrows in this screen, you may view the output of each sensor.*

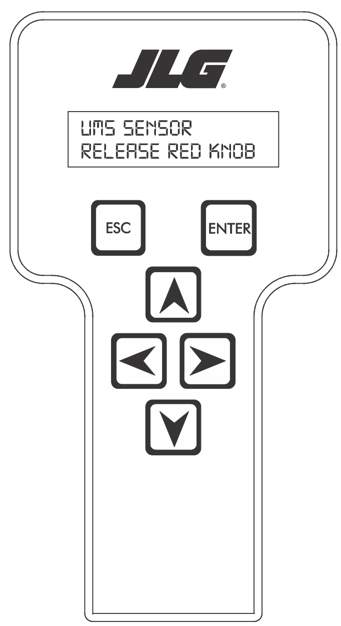
h. With the aid of an assistant, pull and hold the red releveling knob on the hydraulic tank while lifting the tower boom. Raise the tower boom six (6) feet or two (2) meters. After elevating the tower the required distance, press "ENTER".

If the upright monitoring system did not detect adequate sensor activity, the screen will display:



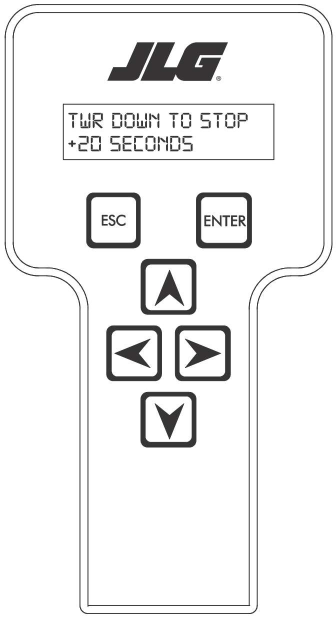
Should you get the above message, verify that the sensor is installed correctly and verify the sensor connection to the sensor harness is secure. Also, ensure the red knob is held fully open for the required time.

If the calibration is executing properly, you shall see the following display:



i. When viewing the above display, press "ENTER" 

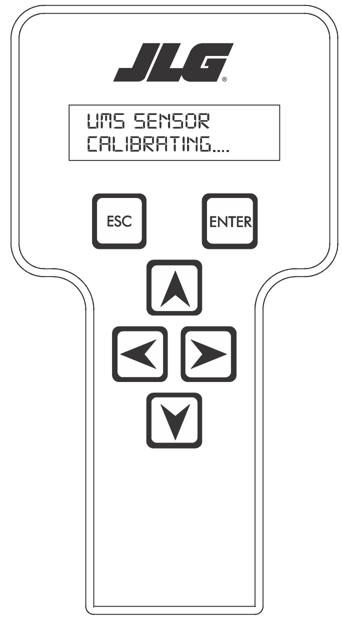
. The screen will display the following:



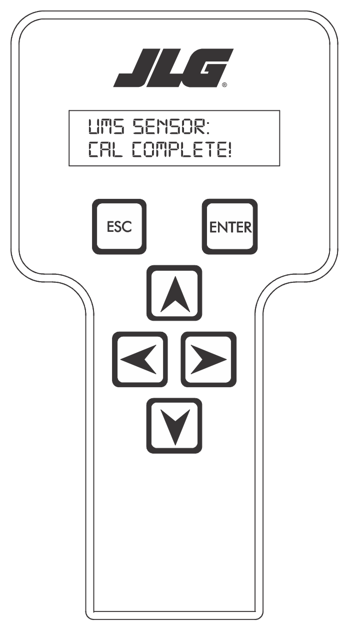
j. Lower the tower boom onto the boom stop. Continue to hold the tower boom down function for at least twenty (20) seconds **WITHOUT RELEASING THE FUNCTION SWITCH**. The calibration must recognize continuous activation of the tower down function switch for the required time.

After the required activation time has passed, release the function switch and press "ENTER" 

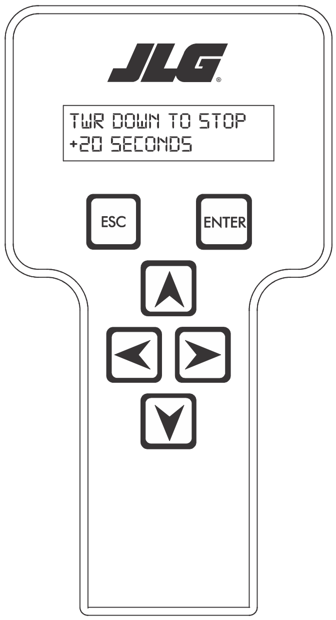
. The analyzer will display the following message:



If the calibration has been completed successfully, the screen will automatically change to:



If the calibration has not been completed successfully, the display will automatically change to:



Repeat step j until the calibration time requirement has been satisfied.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT RAISE THE TOWER BOOM AGAIN DURING CALIBRATION.

k. To correctly complete the calibration process, fully retract and fully lower the main boom. Once the machine is in the stowed position, turn off the machine and disconnect the analyzer.

Calibration Faults

CAL Failed-Chassis Not Level

In the event the turntable tilt switch input is logic low indicating that the machine is not level the UMS calibration screens shall display this fault.

CAL Failed-UMS Sensor Raw Output Out Of Range

The control system shall display a fault in the event the raw sensor output is greater then ±5° for the UMS sensor.

CAL Failed-Turntable Sensor Raw Output Out Of Range

The control system shall display a fault in the event the raw sensor output is greater then ±5° for the turntable sensor.

CAL Failed-Calibration Disrupted

If calibration is disrupted, the control system shall display this fault.

CAL Failed- UMS Sensor Movement Not Detected

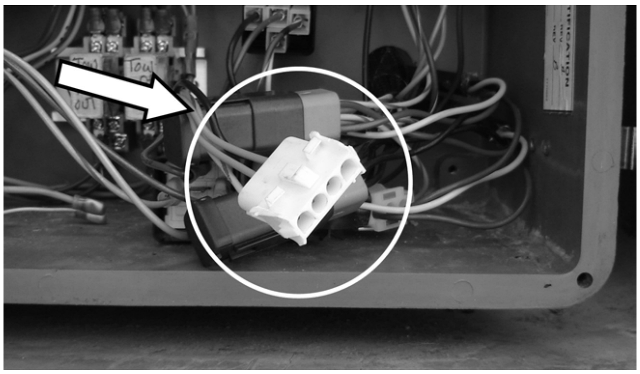
The UMS angle has not detected the required amount of movement during calibration.

Function Check

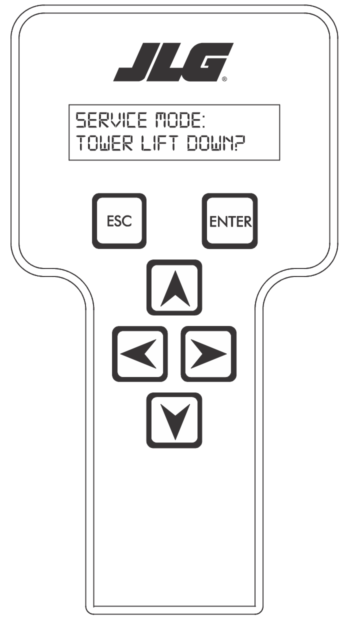
NOTICE

ON ADE EQUIPPED MACHINES, DO NOT CONNECT TO THE ANALYZER CONNECTION PORT INSTALLED WITH THE UPRIGHT MONITORING SYSTEM MODULE.

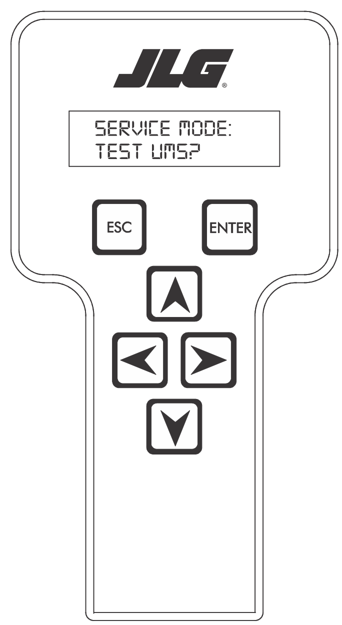
1. Connect the hand-held analyzer at the ground control station using the four-pin connector.



2. Pull out the emergency stop button at the ground control station and turn the key switch to ground controls. Start the engine.
3. Advance to access level 1 by scrolling to the ACCESS LEVEL menu and press "ENTER" ENTER. Using the arrows on the keypad, enter the password "33271" and press "ENTER" ENTER.
4. Scroll through the top level menu until SERVICE MODE appears. Press "ENTER" ENTER to select this menu item. After pressing "ENTER" one of the following screens will be displayed:

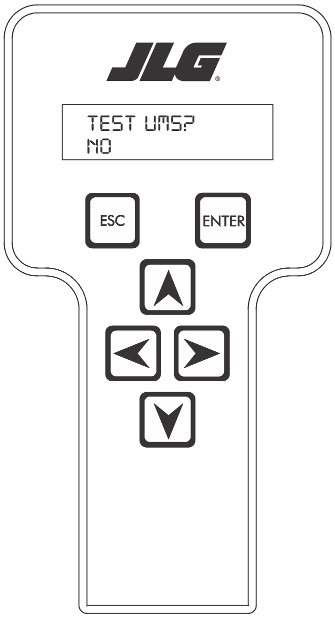


Or

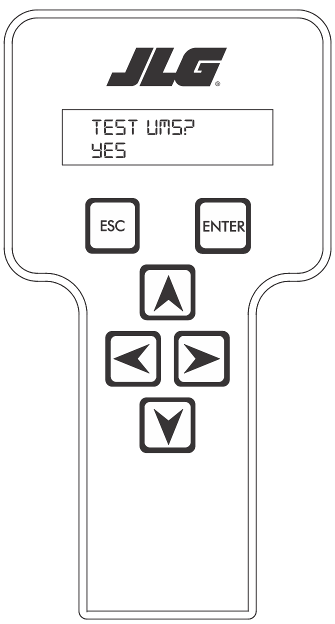


5. Scroll left to right through the above menu items until "TEST UMS?" sub menu appears on the bottom line of the analyzer display. Press the "ENTER" ENTER key.

6. The controller will now display the following:



or, by pressing the up and down arrow keys:



7. When the "YES" message is displayed, press the "ENTER"  key to automatically perform a function test. Upon the function test, the system will activate the Upright Monitoring System, warning lights, and alarm. Verify that the alarm sounds, the boom malfunction indicator lights (platform and ground) are illuminated.

8. From the ground controls, raise the tower boom several feet. Verify that the tower boom will not lower.

9. To end the system test, press the Emergency Stop Switch (EMS) at the ground controls. Upon loss of power (pressing the EMS) to the system, the upright monitoring system will reset and all functionality will be restored to the machine.

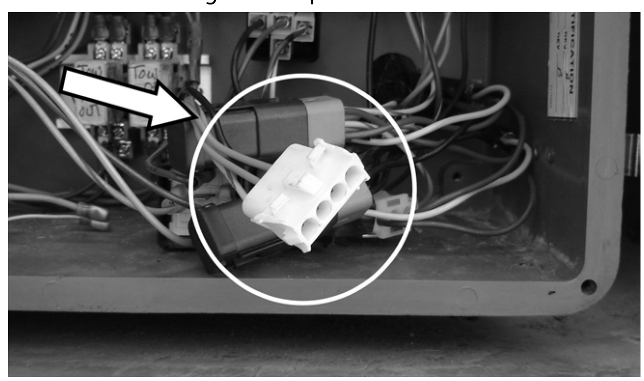
Service Mode/Tower Boom Retrieval

The UMS software incorporates a service mode to temporarily disengage the UMS and allow a tower lift down operation when the UMS has detected a backward stability concern.

NOTICE

ON ADE EQUIPPED MACHINES, DO NOT CONNECT TO THE ANALYZER CONNECTION PORT INSTALLED WITH THE UPRIGHT MONITORING SYSTEM MODULE.

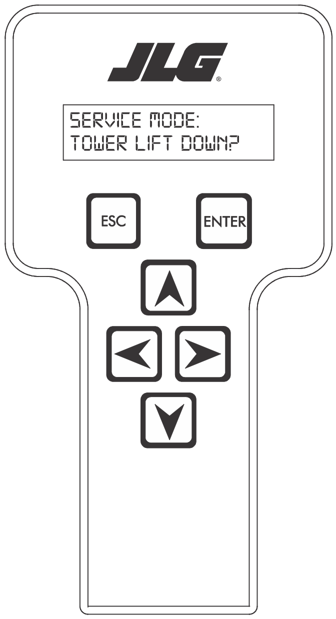
1. Connect the hand-held analyzer at the ground control station using the four-pin connector.



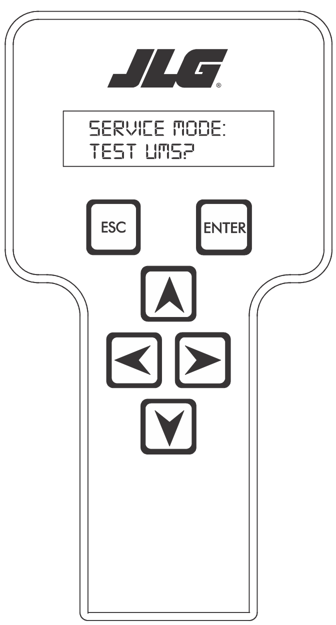
2. Pull out the emergency stop button at the ground control station and turn the key switch to ground controls. Start the engine.

3. Advance to access level 1 by scrolling to the ACCESS LEVEL menu and press "ENTER" . Using the arrows on the keypad, enter the password "33271" and press "ENTER" .

4. Scroll through the top level menu until SERVICE MODE appears. Press "ENTER" ENTER to select this menu item. After pressing "ENTER" one of the following screens will be displayed:

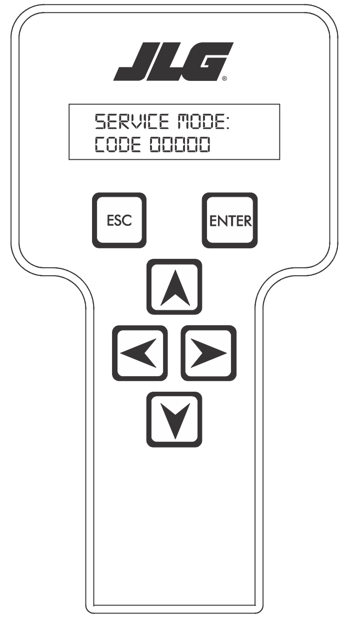


Or



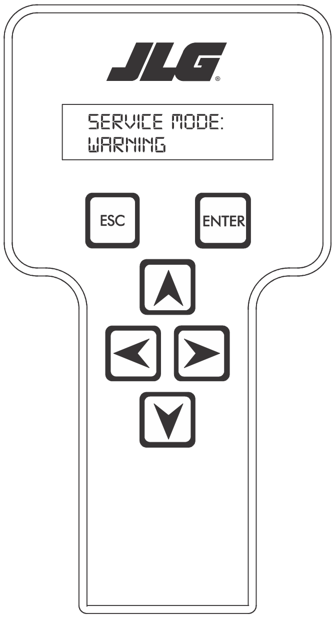
5. Scroll left to right through the above menu items until "TOWER LIFT DOWN?" sub menu appears on the bottom line of the analyzer display. Press the "ENTER" ENTER key.

6. The controller will now display the following:

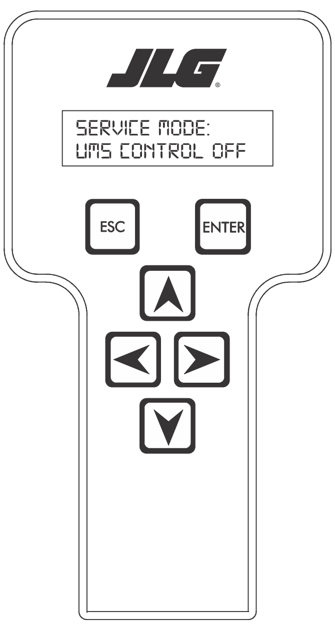


7. Enter the service code "**81075**" and press the "ENTER" 

key. The controller display will now display the following,



followed by:

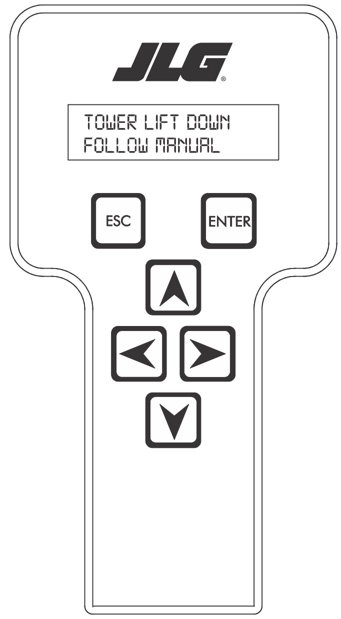


The flashing and scrolling messages will repeat until the "ENTER" 

key is pressed.

8. When the "ENTER" 

key is pressed, the UMS will be disabled and the display will read:



9. Before using tower lift down adhere to the following:

- Make sure the main boom is fully retracted.
- Make sure the tower boom is fully retracted.
- Slowly lower the tower boom.

10. When the platform has been safely lowered to the ground, exit the service mode by pressing the Emergency Stop Switch (EMS) at the ground controls. Upon loss of power (pressing the EMS) to the system, the upright monitoring system will reset and all functionality will be restored to the machine.

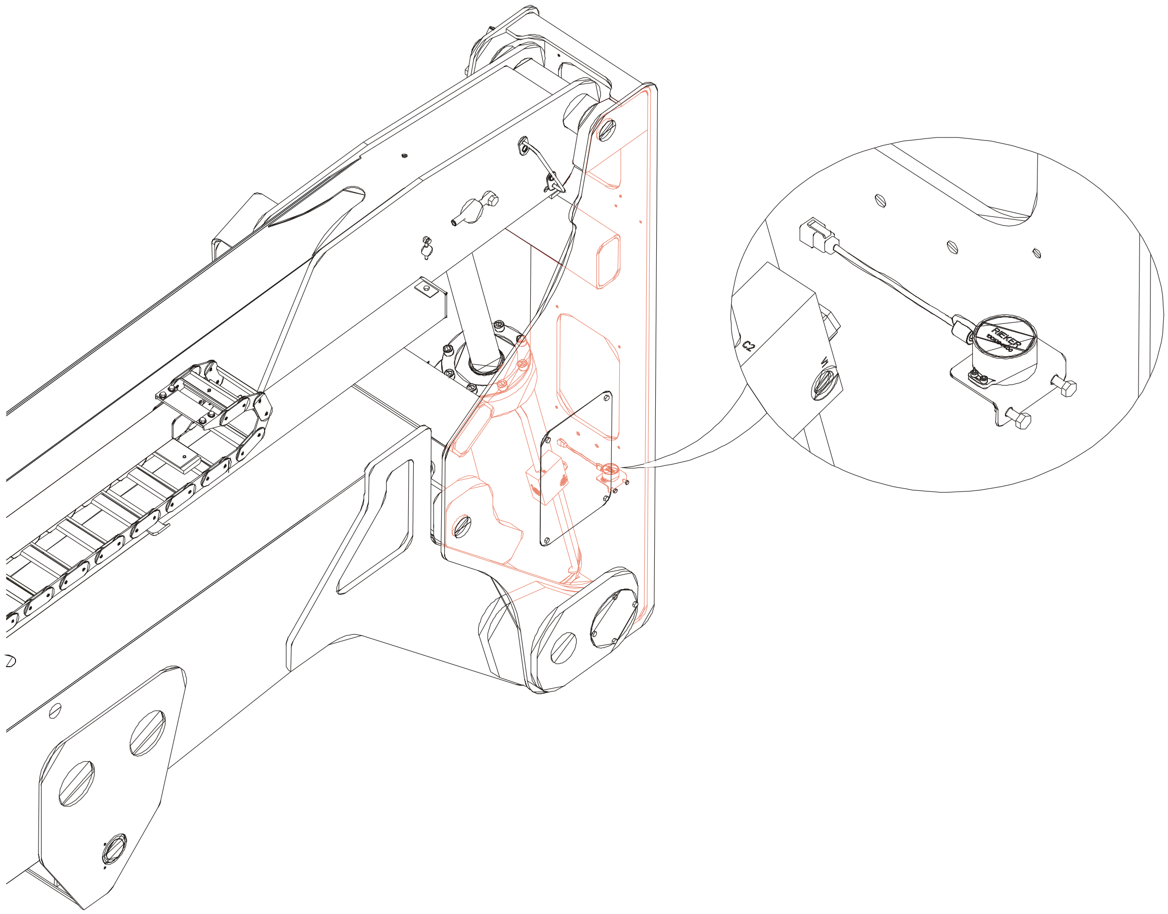


Figure 4-15. UMS Sensor Location

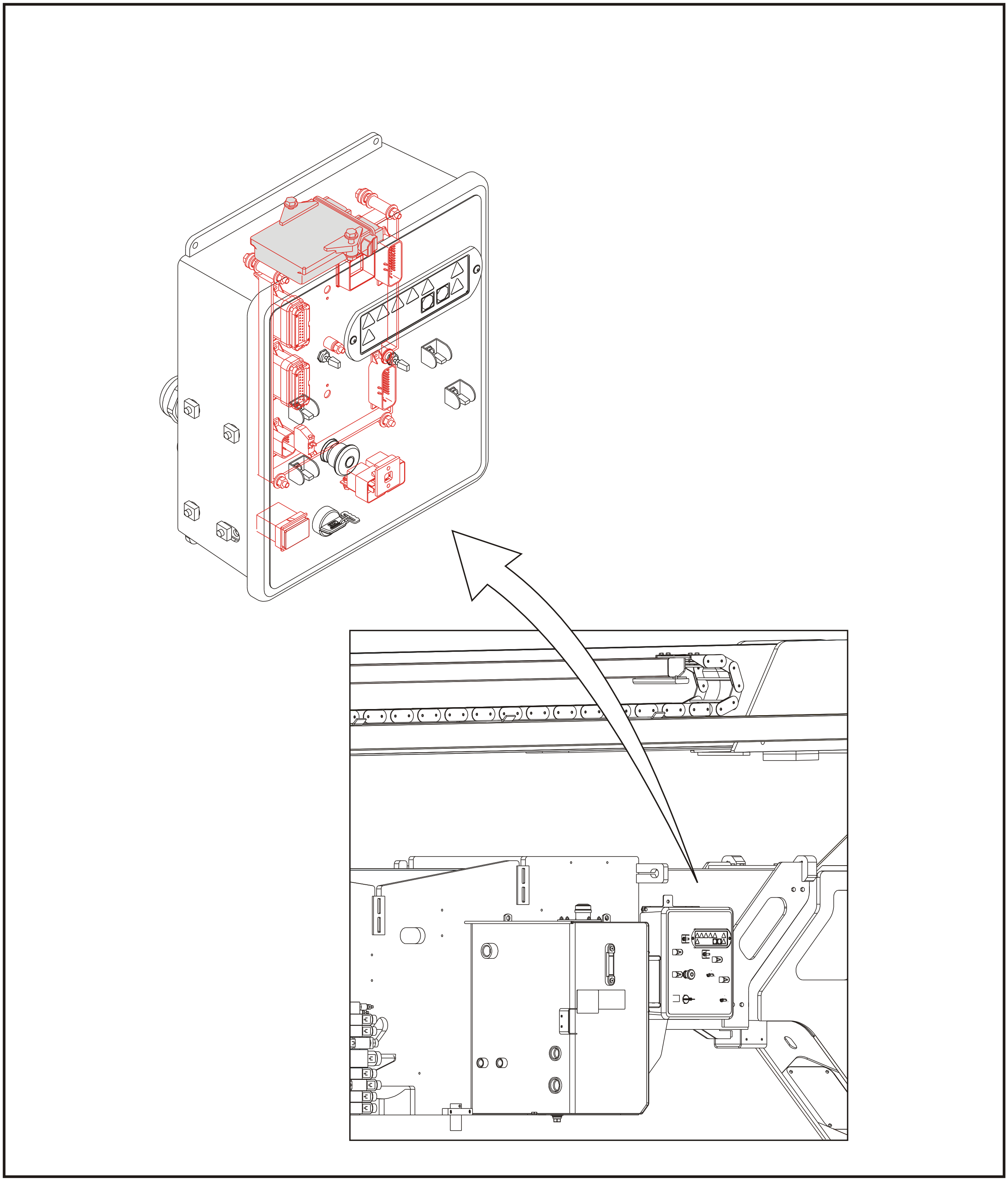


Figure 4-16. UMS Module Location

J1		J2	
1	IGN POWER (7-33V)	1	+5V ANALOG EXCITATION
2	GROUND	2	ANALOG INPUT 0
3	DIGITAL INPUT 0	3	ANALOG GROUND
4	DIGITAL INPUT 1	4	+5V ANALOG EXCITATION
5	DIGITAL INPUT 2	5	ANALOG INPUT 1
6	DIGITAL INPUT 3	6	ANALOG GROUND
7	DIGITAL OUTPUT 0 (PWM, IF)	7	ANALOG INPUT 2
8	DIGITAL OUTPUT 1 (PWM, IF)	8	ANALOG INPUT 3 (NOT POPULATED)
9	DIGITAL OUTPUT 2 (PWM, IF)	9	CANBUS HIGH
10	DIGITAL OUTPUT 3 (PWM, IF)	10	CANBUS LOW
11	DIGITAL OUTPUT 4 (PWM)	11	ANALYZER TRANSMIT
12	DIGITAL OUTPUT 5 (PWM)	12	ANALYZER RECEIVE

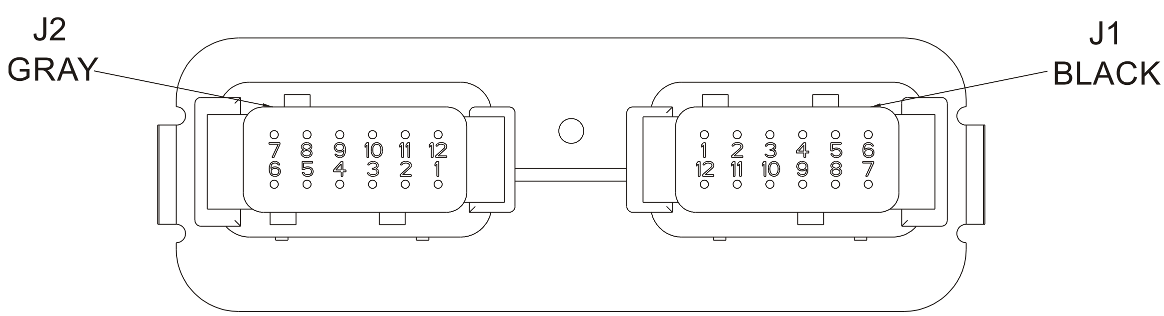


Figure 4-17. UMS Module Pin Identification

4.12 UMS TROUBLESHOOTING AND FAULT MESSAGES

Backward Stability Concern Message

2/5 UMS SENSOR BACKWARD LIMIT REACHED

When the upright angle relative to the turntable is higher than +2.5° (away from the work platform), tower lift down will be disallowed immediately. Tower Lift Down will be re-allowed when the upright angle relative to the turntable is less than 2.0°. If Tower Lift Down is disabled for more than 1.5 seconds, the ground boom malfunction indicator lamp, upright tilted lamp and platform alarm will light/sound continually and a fault shall be raised. These conditions will be latched along with Tower Lift Down until the upright angle is less than 2.0° for 2 seconds and the Tower Lift Down command is returned to neutral.

Solution:

- Inspect sensor mounting.
- Verify sensor calibration on level pad.
- Follow the corrective action listed on decal 1702265 located near the red knob of the machine.
- Inspect machine hydraulics. Refer to Holding Valve Checks in Section 5 - Hydraulics.

Forward Stability Concern Message

2/5 UMS SENSOR FORWARD LIMIT REACHED

When the upright angle relative to the turntable is less than –4.0° for longer than 1.5 seconds, the ground control boom malfunction indicator lamp, the platform malfunction indicator lamp, and platform alarm will light/sound continually and a fault will be raised. The light/alarm signal will stop only when the upright angle reaches values greater than –3.0° for 2 seconds.

Solution:

- Inspect sensor mounting.
- Verify sensor calibration on level pad.
- Tower lift down.
- Inspect machine hydraulics. Refer to Holding Valve Checks in Section 5 - Hydraulics.

Auto Detection Input Low Message

2/5 AUTO DETECTION INPUT LOW

If the UMS detects a valid ground module software version but digital input 2 is not tied high the UMS module shall report a fault.

Solution:

- Inspect wire harness, there should be 12 volts going into pin J1-5 (black connector) of UMS module.

UMS Sensor Communications Lost

6/6 UMS SENSOR COMMUNICATIONS LOST

If the UMS detects a valid ground module software version but digital input 2 is not tied high the UMS module shall report a fault.

Solution:

- Inspect wire harness; CANbus communications are on pins J2-9 & J2-10 (gray connector) of the UMS module.
- Using access level 1 of the UMS module, under “DIAGNOSTICS” CAN, EX/SEC and TX/SEC should be values greater than 0. Also “BUS OFF:” and “BUS ERR:” should be 0 and “PASSIVE:” should be a low value.

Out of Usable Range Message

8/1 UMS SENSOR OUT OF USABLE RANGE

When both the Chassis tilt sensor and the UMS sensor read greater than 10° in the same direction the UMS will be disengaged until the condition no longer exists and a fault shall be raised.

Solution:

- Verify the message clears when operating the machine on grade less than 10°.
- Inspect sensor mounting.
- Verify sensor calibration on level pad.

UMS Sensor Not Calibrated Message

8/1 UMS SENSOR NOT CALIBRATED

If the control system detects a sensor out of range condition or a not calibrated fault with the UMS angle sensor, the control system shall report a fault and disable Tower Lift Down and activate the ground boom malfunction indicator lamp, upright tilted lamp and platform alarm continually

If the control system detects that the UMS angle sensor has not been calibrated, the ground boom malfunction lamp will flash at a 3 Hz rate until the system is calibrated or disabled.

Solution:

- Calibrate sensor.

UMS Sensor Faulted Message

8/1 UMS SENSOR FAULTED

If the system detects that the UMS sensor frequency outside the 100Hz +/- 5Hz range or the duty cycle is outside 50% +/- 21% range the control system shall report a fault.

Solution:

- Inspect wire harness going to the sensor and UMS module.
- Inspect sensor mounting.
- Replace sensor.

Incompatible Software Detected Message

9/9 INCOMPATIBLE SOFTWARE DETECTED

If the control system detects that the ground module software is incompatible with the UMS module, the UMS module shall report a fault and disable the footswitch signal to the ground module.

Solution:

- Update ground module software.

Calibration Faults

CAL FAILED-CHASSIS NOT LEVEL

The control system shall display a fault in the event the raw sensor output is greater than ±5° for the chassis sensor.

CAL FAILED-UMS SENSOR RAW OUTPUT OUT OF RANGE

The control system shall display a fault in the event the raw sensor output is greater then ±5° for the UMS sensor.

CAL FAILED-CALIBRATION DISRUPTED

If calibration is disrupted, the control system shall display this fault.

CAL FAILED- UMS SENSOR MOVEMENT NOT DETECTED

The UMS angle has not detected the required amount of movement during calibration.

4.13 SEQUENCE FOR HOSE REPLACEMENT IN THE TOWER BOOM

1. Remove the tower boom front cover bolts, exposing the Powertrack.
2. Remove bolts to disconnect the top bar of the Powertrack
3. Pull the Powertrack out of base boom. (as far as hoses will allow)
4. At left side rear of upright, remove access cover plate (4) bolts. (others if necessary)
5. Remove access cover plate, (4) bolts, from bottom front of fly boom.
6. Cut cable ties that attach hose to be replaced.
7. Disconnect hose that is to be replaced, and cap the male fitting.
8. Attach the new hose to the end of the hose to be replaced.
9. Pull these lines thru the upright and out the bottom, then feed back into the fly boom.
10. At the Powertrack, in front of the tower boom, open the Powertrack links to expose the hose to be replaced.
11. Pull hose to be replaced, attached to the new hose, thru the fly boom and thru the Powertrack links.
12. Disconnect new hose from the replaced hose and connect to fitting where the damaged hose was connected.
13. Roll Powertrack back into base, and attach the top bar of the Powertrack (2) bolts to the inside top of the fly boom section.
14. Check for leaks and hardware tightened securely.
15. Replace access cover plates and front cover.

4.14 LIMIT SWITCHES ADJUSTMENT

Main Boom Horizontal Limit Switch

1. Place machine on level surface.
2. Raise main boom 5 to 10 degrees above horizontal. Limit switch should activate before this point.
3. Lower main boom until limit switch resets. This should be 1 degree above to 4 degrees below horizontal. See Figure 4-18. for adjustments.

NOTE: *Angle indicator should be placed approx. 2 ft. from the main boom pivot pin and the attach point on the main boom. Tower angle switch must be reset before main boom angle switch can be activated.*

Tower Boom Horizontal Limit Switch

1. Place machine on level surface.
2. Raise tower boom 8 to 13 degrees above horizontal. The tower angle limit switch should activate at this point.
3. Lower the tower boom until the limit switch resets. This should be 2 to 7 degrees below where the switch was activated. See Figure 4-18. and Figure 4-19. for adjustments.

4.15 BOOM VALVE ADJUSTMENT

1. Adjust the screws so the plunger on the valves has 0.250 in. (6.35 mm) travel remaining when the lower boom is fully raised and retracted.
2. After the valves are adjusted, adjust the proximity switches to within 0.20 in. (5 mm) of their target. The LED's on the proximity switches will light when the power is on and the switch is within 0.20 in. (5 mm) of the target. There is a proximity switch to back up both valves.

NOTE: *The cam valve under the boom requires the tower boom to be completely lowered and the cam valve mounted on T/T requires the tower boom to be fully elevated prior to adjustment.*

Main Boom

1. Shim up wear pads to within 1/32 in. (0.8 mm) clearance between wear pad and adjacent surface.
2. Adjusting wear pads, removing or adding shims, bolt length must also be changed.
   a. When adding shims, longer bolts must be used to ensure proper thread engagement in insert.
   b. When shims are removed, shorter bolts must be used so bolt does not protrude from insert and Sheaves and wire rope must be replaced as sets.

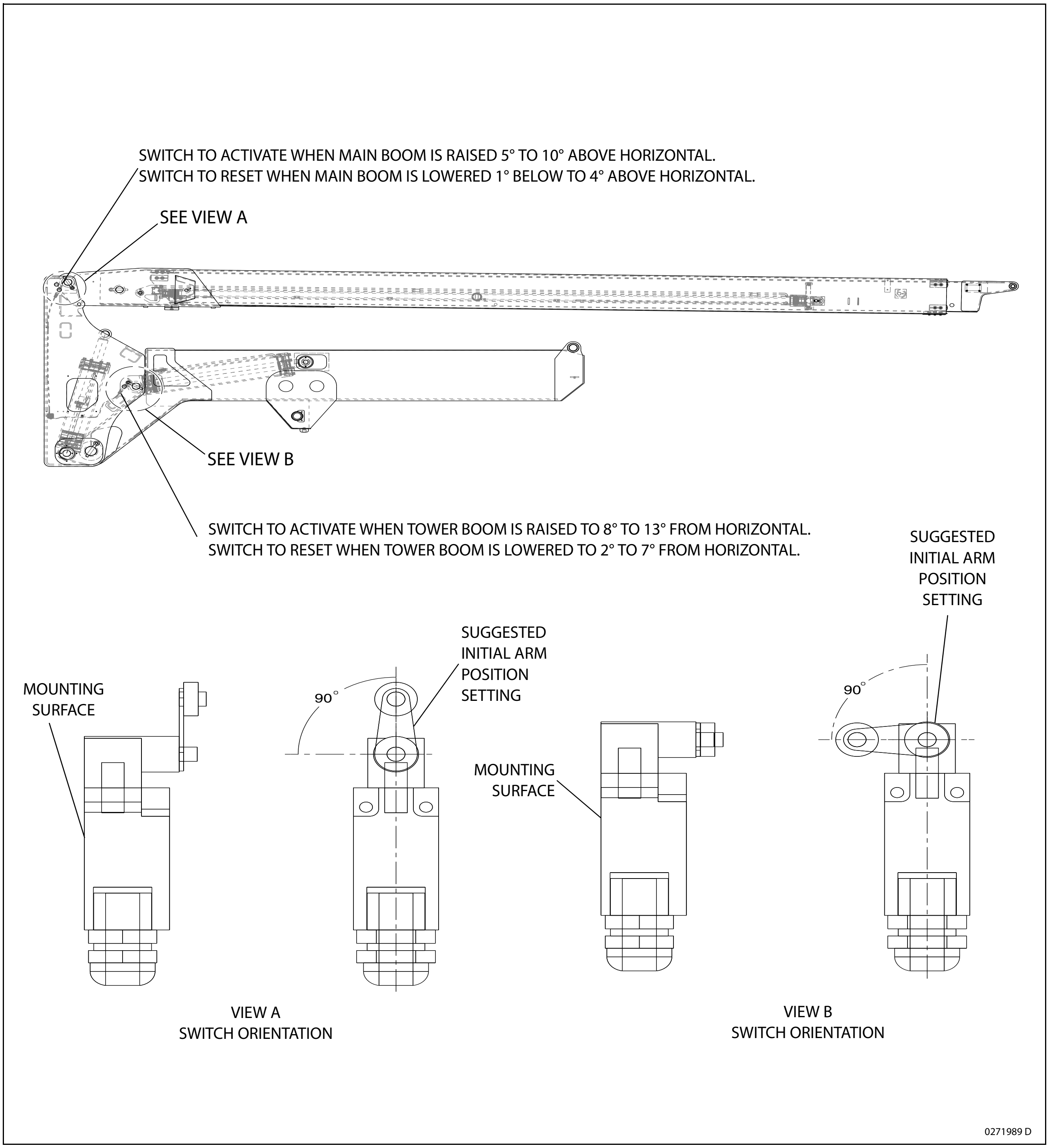


Figure 4-18. Boom Valve and Limit Switches Location (Sheet 1 of 2)

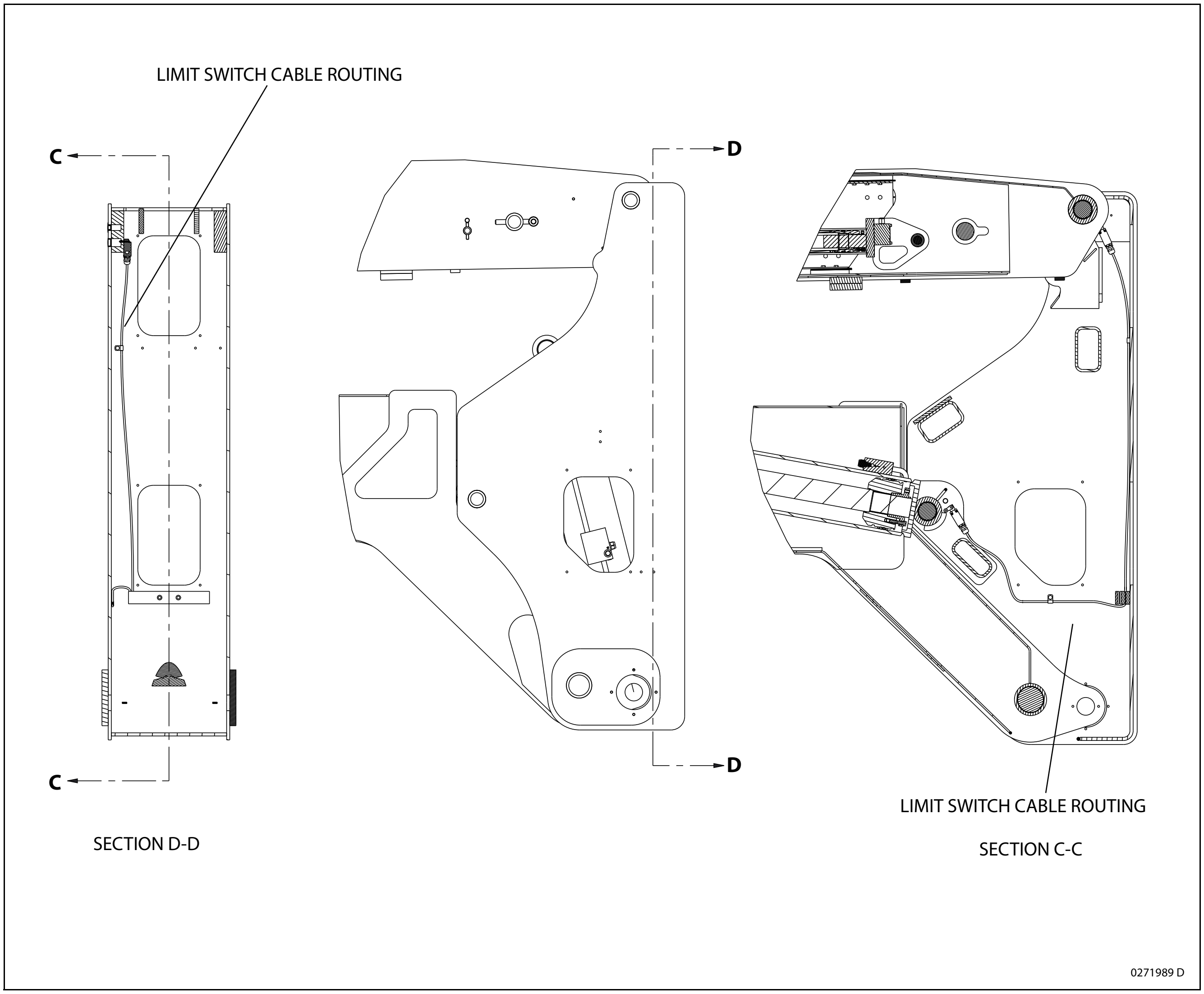


Figure 4-19. Boom Valve and Limit Switches Location (Sheet 2 of 2)

4.16 ROTATOR ASSEMBLY

Theory of Operation

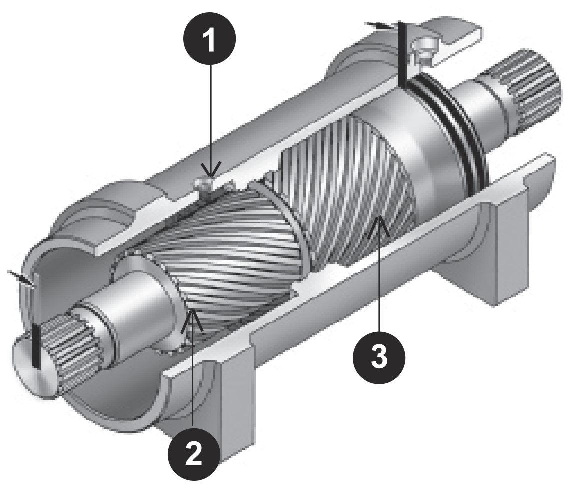
The rotary actuator is a simple mechanism that uses the sliding spline operating concept to convert axial piston motion into powerful shaft rotation. Each actuator is composed of a housing with integrated gear ring (1) and only two moving parts: the central shaft with integrated bearing tube and mounting flange (2), and the annular piston sleeve (3). Helical spline teeth machined on the shaft engage matching splines on the inside diameter of the piston. The outside diameter of the piston carries a second set of splines, of opposite hand, which engage with matching splines in the housing. As hydraulic pressure is applied, the piston is displaced axially within the housing similar to the operation of a hydraulic cylinder while the splines cause the shaft to rotate. When the control valve is closed, oil is trapped inside the housing, preventing piston movement and locking the shaft in position.

The shaft is supported radially by the large main radial bearing and the lower radial bearing. Axially, the shaft is separated from the housing by the main and lower thrust washers. The end cap is adjusted for axial clearance and locked in position by set screws or pins.

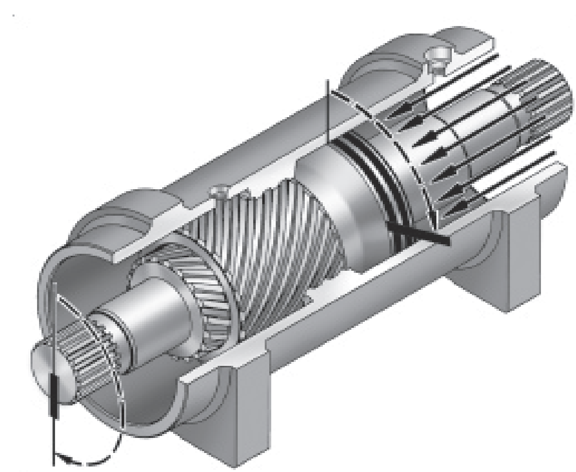
The actuators are equipped with factory installed counterbalance valves, which performs four major functions.

- Protects the actuator in the event of overload.
- Enables the actuator to hold position without drifting when external loads are applied.
- Reduces hydraulic backlash by pressuring the hydraulic fluid.

Provides a constant controlled rate of rotation in over-center load conditions.



Bars indicate starting positions of piston and shaft. Arrows indicate direction they will rotate. The housing with integral ring gear remains stationary.



Applying fluid pressure will displace the piston axially while the helical gearing causes the piston and shaft to rotate simultaneously.

The double helix design compounds rotation: shaft rotation is about twice that of the piston. Applying pressure to the opposite port will return the piston and shaft

Required Tools

Upon assembly and disassembly of the actuator there are basic tools required. The tools and their intended functions are as follows:

1. PIPE VISE
2. HEX WRENCH - Removal and replacement of port plugs and setscrews.
3. ASSORTED SCREWS
4. SAFETY GLASSES
5. END CAP REMOVAL TOOLS (provided with Helac seal kit).
6. DRILL
7. FLASHLIGHT - Helps to locate and examine timing marks, component failure and overall condition.
8. RUBBER MALLET - Removal and installation of shaft and piston sleeve assembly.
9. PLASTIC MANDREL
10. PRY BAR - Removal of end cap and manual rotation of shaft.
11. FELT MARKER - Highlights the timing marks and outline troubled areas.
12. T-HANDLE SCREW EXTRACTOR
13. HEX WRENCH SET - Removal and replacement of port plugs and setscrews (106 &110).
14. SEAL TOOLS - Removal and installation of seals and wear guides. Directions to make a seal tool are provided below making a Seal Tool.
15. PUNCH
16. DOWEL PINS - Removal and installation of end cap.

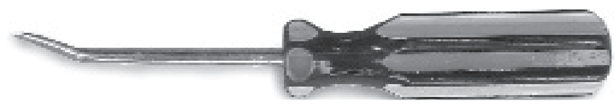
Making a Seal Tool

The seal tool is merely a customized standard flat head screwdriver.

CAUTION

TO AVOID INJURY BE CAREFUL WHILE HANDLING THE HOT SCREWDRIVER.

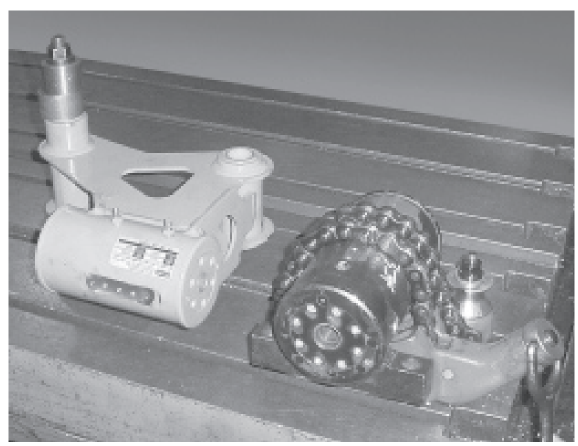
1. Heat the flat end with a torch until it glows.
2. Secure the heated end of the screwdriver in a vise and bend the heated end to a slight radius.
3. Round off all sharp edges of the heated to a polished finish. The tool may be modified slightly to your own personal preference. To avoid injury be careful while handling the hot screwdriver.

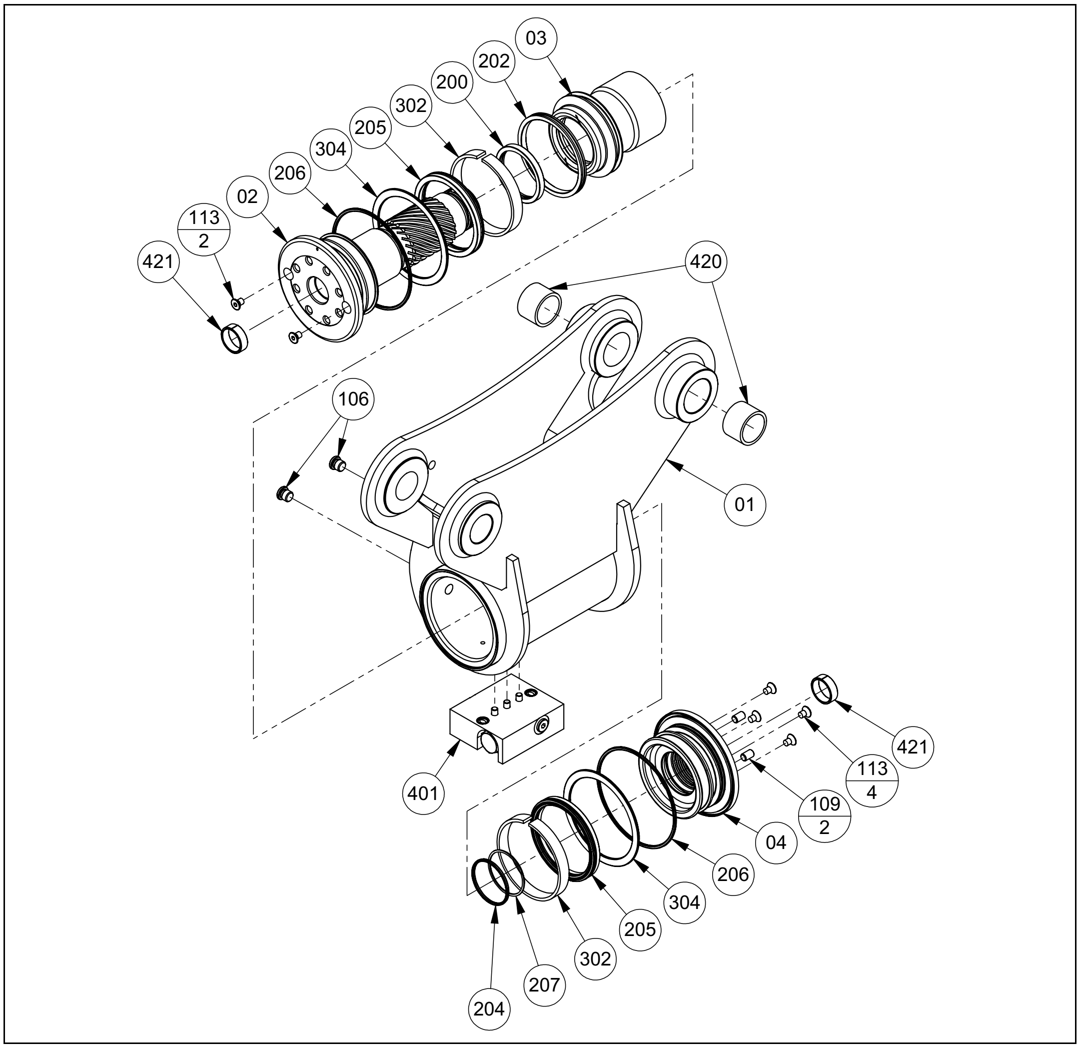


Before Disassembly

Inspect the actuator for corrosion prior to disassembly. Severe corrosion can make it difficult to remove the lock pins (109) and unthread the end cap (04). If corrosion is evident, soak the lock pins and end cap with penetrating oil for several hours before disassembly.

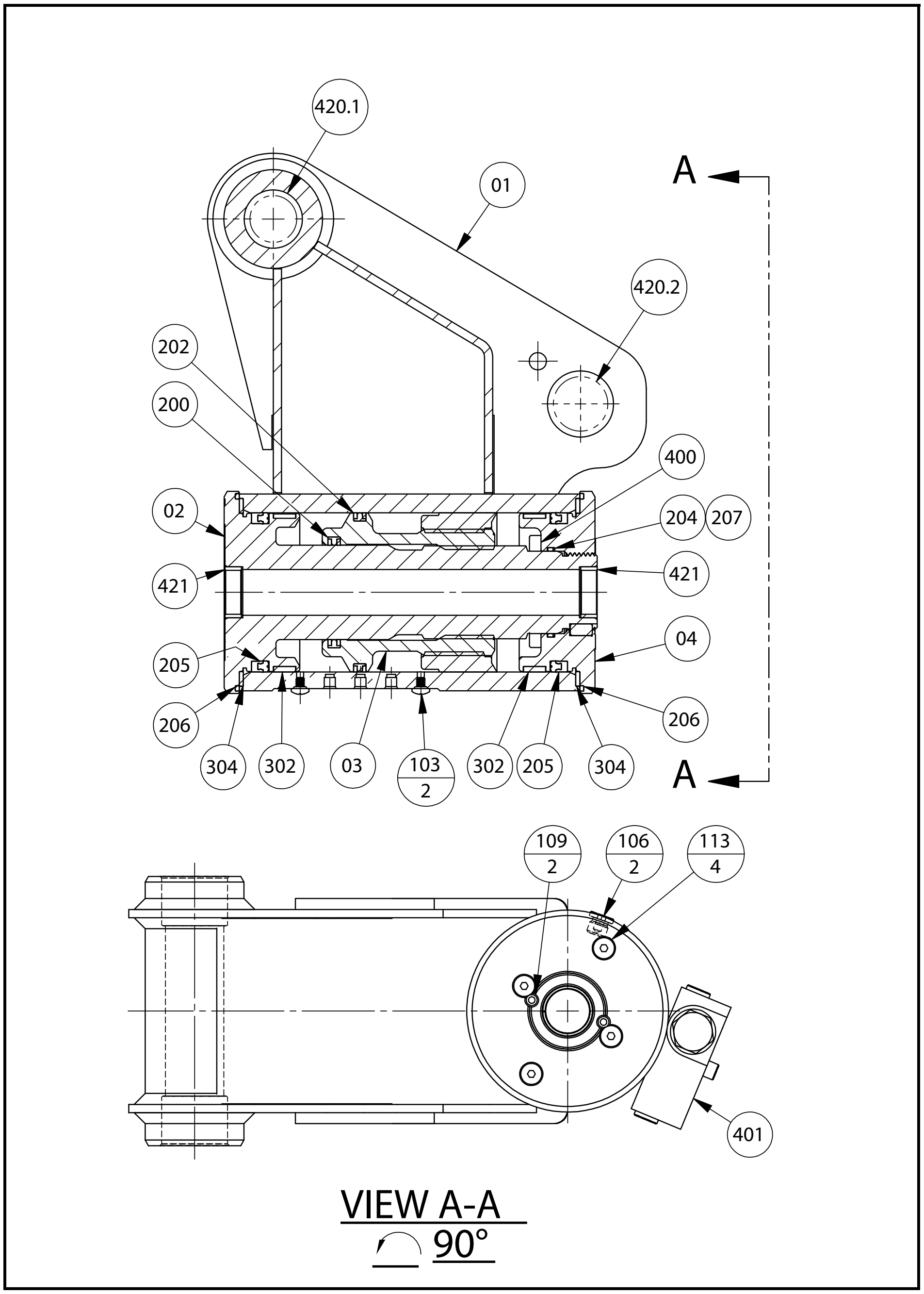
Disassembly is considerably easier if the actuator is firmly secured to the work bench. A pipe vise or mounting fixture work well.





PARTS	HARDWARE	SEALS	BEARINGS	ACCESSORIES
1. Housing	103. Screw	200. T-Seal	302. Wear Guide	400. Stop Tube
2. Shaft	106. Port Plug	202. T-Seal	304. Thrust Washer	401. Counterbalance Valve
3. Piston Sleeve	109. Lock Pin	204. O-ring		403. Motion Control Valve
4. End Cap	113. Capscrew	205. Cup Seal		420. Bushing
		206. Exclusion Seal		421 Bushing
		207. Backup Ring		

Figure 4-20. Rotator - Exploded View



PARTS	HARDWARE	SEALS	BEARINGS	ACCESSORIES
1. Housing	103. Screw	200. T-Seal	302. Wear Guide	400. Stop Tube
2. Shaft	106. Port Plug	202. T-Seal	304. Thrust Washer	401. Counterbalance Valve
3. Piston Sleeve	109. Lock Pin	204. O-ring		403. Motion Control Valve
4. End Cap	113. Capscrew	205. Cup Seal		420.1 Bushing
		206. Exclusion Seal		420.2 Bushing
		207. Backup Ring		421 Bushing

Figure 4-21. Rotator - Assembly Drawing

Disassembly

⚠ CAUTION

SECURE PRODUCT TO SLOTTED TABLE OR VISE.

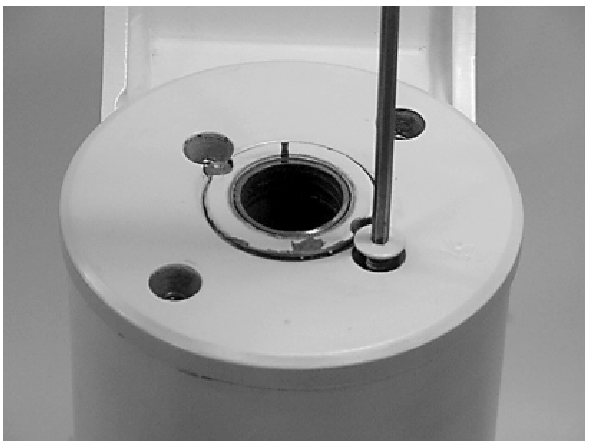
⚠ CAUTION

CONTENTS UNDER PRESSURE. WEAR APPROVED EYE PROTECTION. USE CAUTION WHEN REMOVING PORT PLUGS AND FITTINGS.

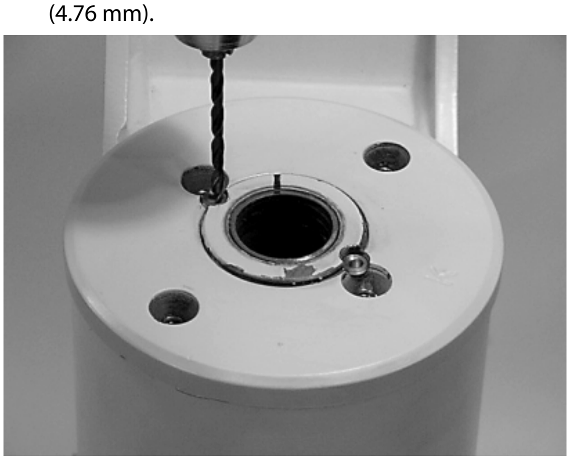
NOTICE

MAKE SURE WORK AREA IS CLEAN.

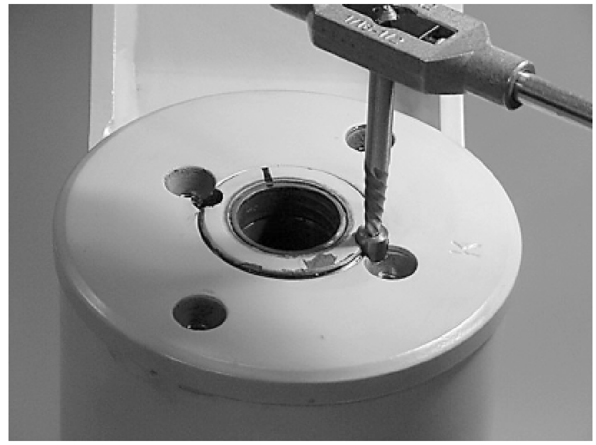
1. Remove the cap screws (113) over end cap lock pins (109).



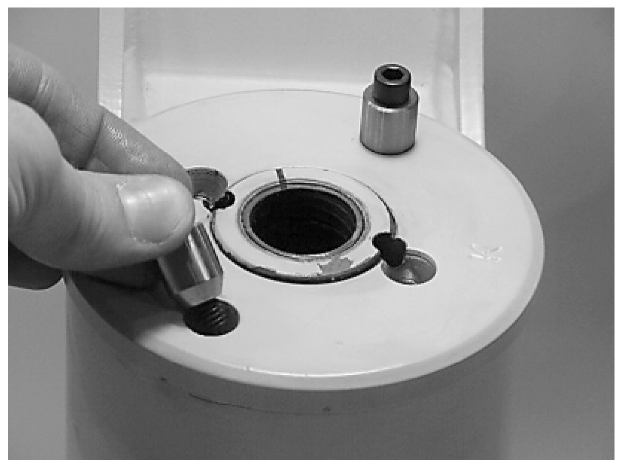
2. Using a 1/8 in. (3.18 mm) drill bit, drill a hole in the center of each lock pin to a depth of approximately 3/16 in. (4.76 mm).



3. Remove the lock pins using an ″Easy Out″ (a size #2 is shown). If the pin will not come out with the ″Easy Out″, use 5/16 in. drill bit to a depth of 1/2 in. (12.7 mm) to drill out the entire pin.



4. Install the end cap (4) removal tools provided with the Helac seal kit.

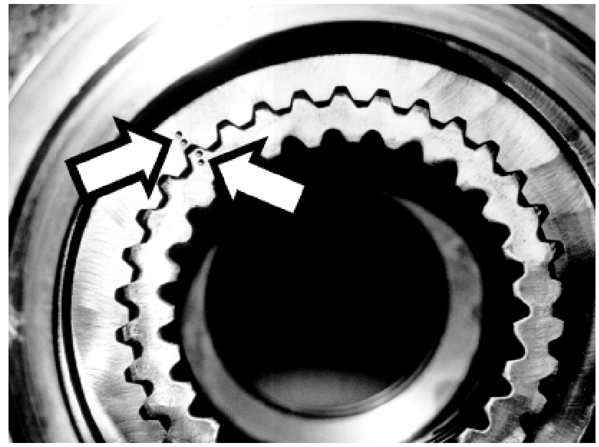


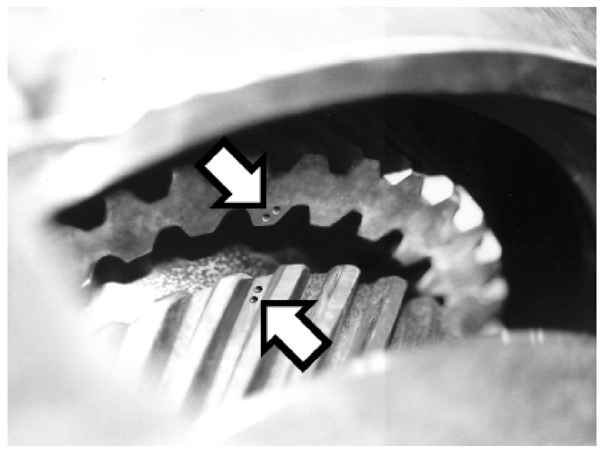
5. Using a metal bar, or similar tool, unscrew the end cap (4) by turning it counter clockwise.

6. Remove the end cap (4) and set aside for later inspection.

7. Remove the stop tube if equipped. The stop tube is an available option to limit the rotation of the actuator.

8. Every actuator has timing marks for proper engagement.





9. Prior to removing the shaft, (2), use a felt marker to clearly indicate the timing marks between shaft and piston. This will greatly simplify timing during assembly.

10. Remove the shaft (2). It may be necessary to strike the threaded end of the shaft with a rubber mallet.

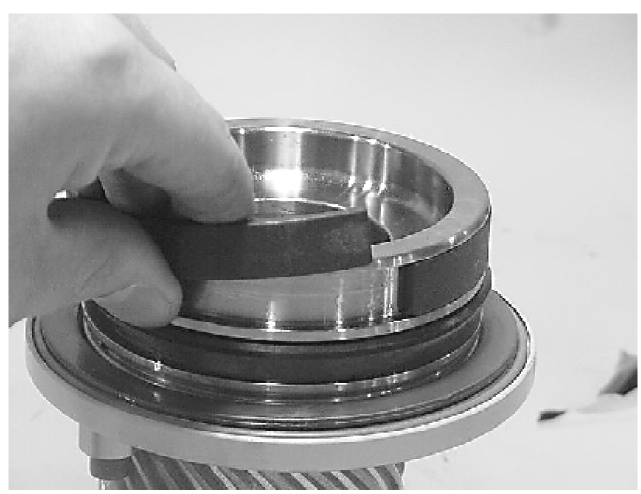
11. Before removing the piston (3), mark the housing (1) ring gear in relation to the piston O.D. gear. There should now be timing marks on the housing (1) ring gear, the piston (3) and the shaft (2).

12. To remove the piston (3) use a rubber mallet and a plastic mandrel so the piston is not damaged.

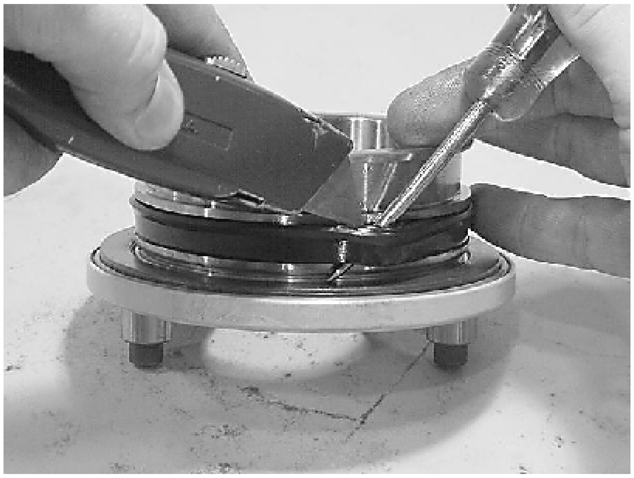
13. At the point when the piston gear teeth come out of engagement with the housing gear teeth, mark the piston and housing with a marker as shown.

14. Remove the o-ring (204) and backup ring (207) from end cap (4) and set aside for inspection.

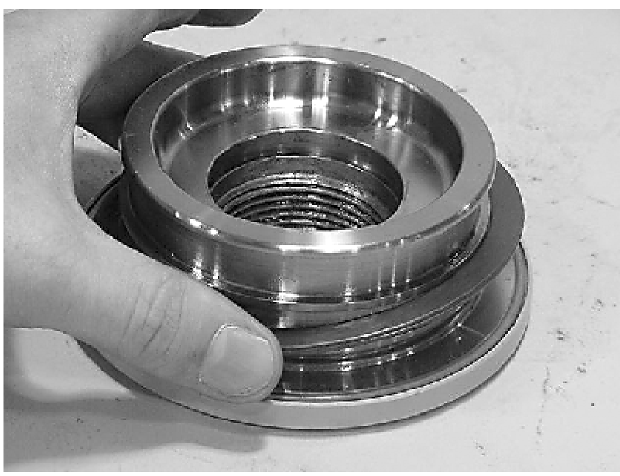
15. Remove the wear guides (302) from the end cap (4) and shaft (2).



16. To remove the main pressure seals (205), it is easiest to cut them using a sharp razor blade being careful not to damage the seal groove.



17. Remove the thrust washers (304), from the end cap (4) and shaft (2).



18. Remove the wiper seal (304.1) from its groove in the end cap (4) and shaft (2).

19. Remove the piston O.D. seal (202) from the piston.

20. Remove the piston I.D. seal (200). You may now proceed to the inspection process.

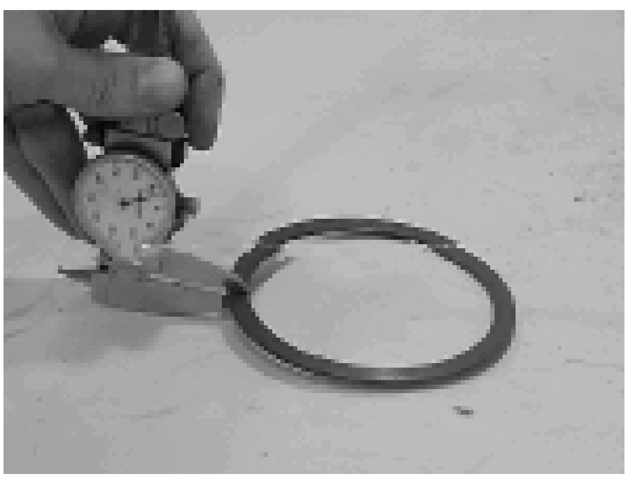
Inspection

NOTICE

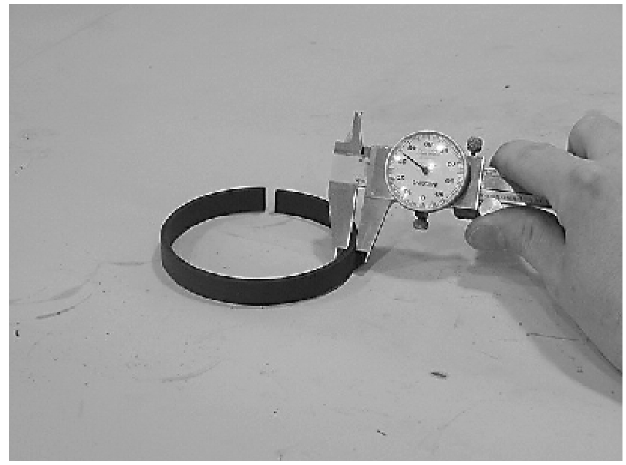
SMALL OR MINOR SURFACE SCRATCHES CAN BE CAREFULLY POLISHED.

1. Clean all parts in a solvent tank and dry with compressed air prior to inspecting. Carefully inspect all critical areas for any surface finish abnormalities: Seal grooves, bearing grooves, thrust surfaces, rod surface, housing bore and gear teeth.

2. Inspect the thrust washers (304) for rough or worn edges and surfaces. Measure it's thickness to make sure it is within specifications (Not less than 0.092 in. or 2.34 mm).

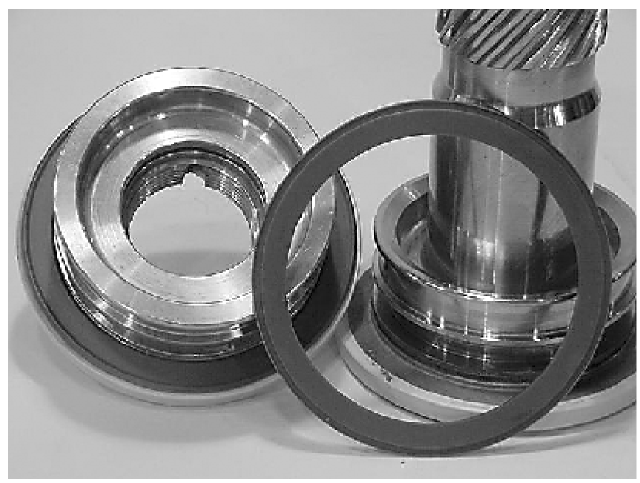


3. Inspect the wear guide condition and measure thickness (not less than 0.123 in. or 3.12 mm).

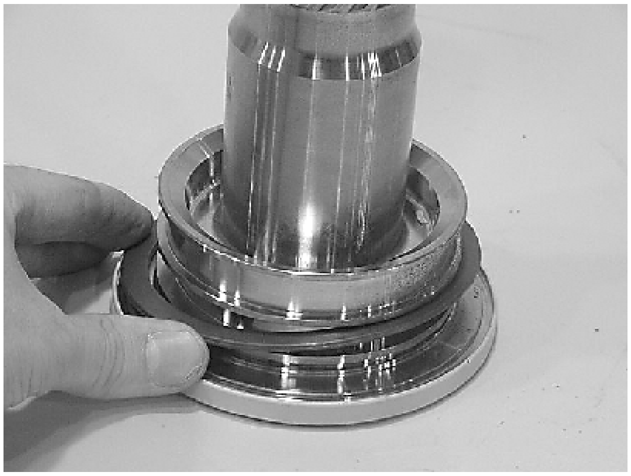


Assembly

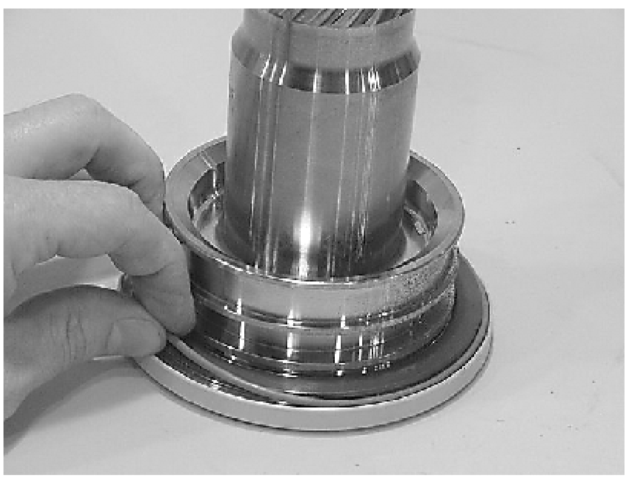
1. Gather all the components and tools into one location prior to re-assembly. Use the cut away drawing to reference the seal orientations.



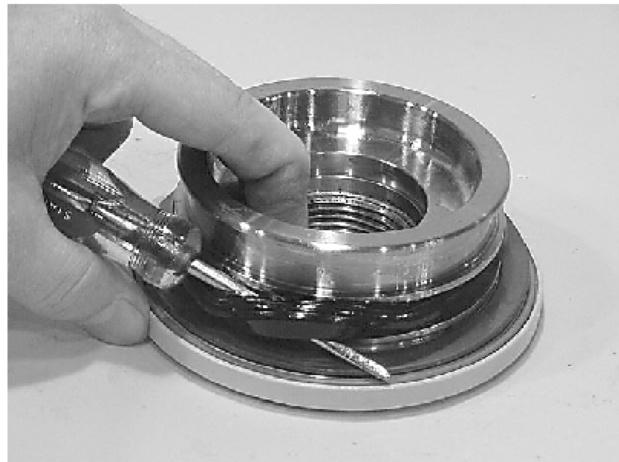
2. Install the thrust washer (304) onto shaft (2) and end cap (4).



3. Install the wiper seal (304.1/green o-ring) into the groove on the shaft (2) and end cap (4) around the outside edge of the thrust washer (304).



4. Using a seal tool install the main pressure seal (205) onto shaft (2) and end cap (4). Use the seal tool in a circular motion.



5. Install the wear guide (302) on the end cap (4) and shaft (2).

6. Install the O-ring (204) and back-up ring (207) into the inner seal groove on the end cap (4).

7. Install the inner T-seal (200) into the piston (3) using a circular motion.

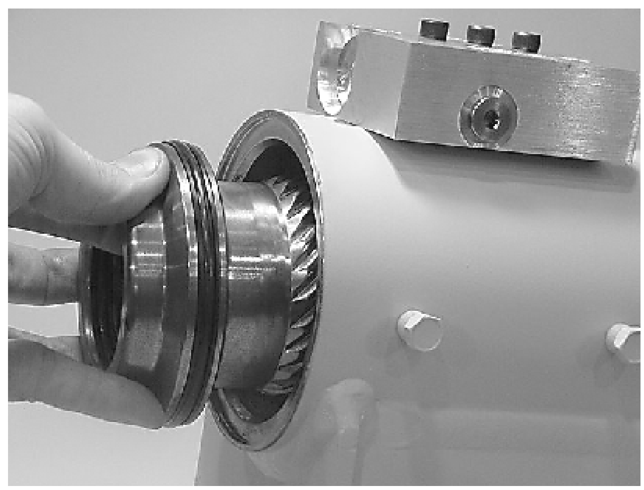
   Install the outer T-seal (202) by stretching it around the groove in a circular motion.

   Each T-seal has 2 back-up rings (see drawing for orientation).

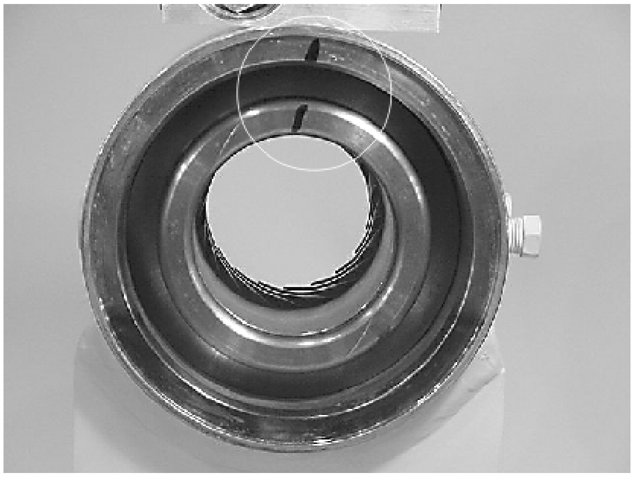
   Beginning with the inner seal (200) insert one end of b/u ring in the lower groove and feed the rest in using a circular motion. Make sure the wedged ends overlap correctly.

   Repeat this step for the outer seal (202).

8. Insert the piston (3) into the housing (1) as shown, until the outer piston seal (202) is touching inside the housing bore.

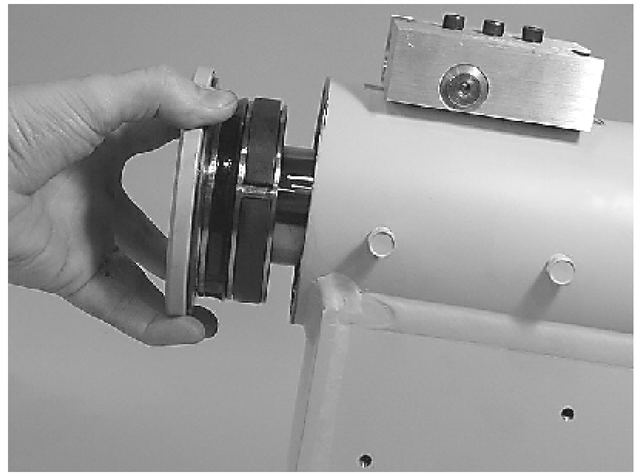


9. Looking from the angle shown, rotate the piston (3) until the marks you put on the piston and the housing (1) during disassembly line up as shown. Using a rubber mallet, tap the piston into the housing up to the point where the gear teeth meet.

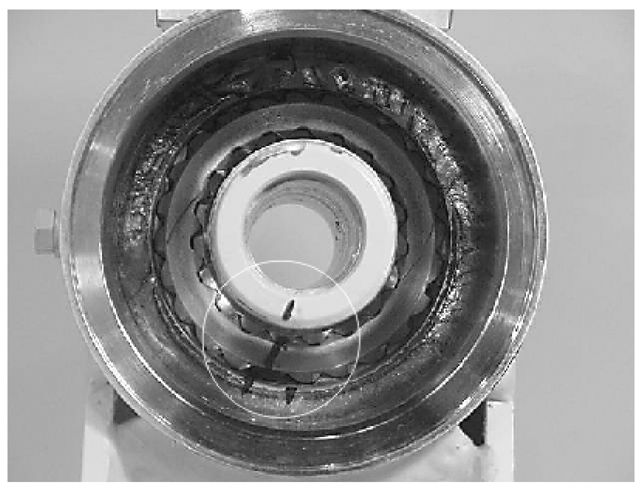


10. Looking from the opposite end of the housing (1) you can see if your timing marks are lining up. When they do, tap the piston (3) in until the gear teeth mesh together. Tap the piston into the housing the rest of the way until it bottoms out.

11. Install the shaft (2) into the piston (3). Be careful not to damage the seals. Do not engage the piston gear teeth yet.



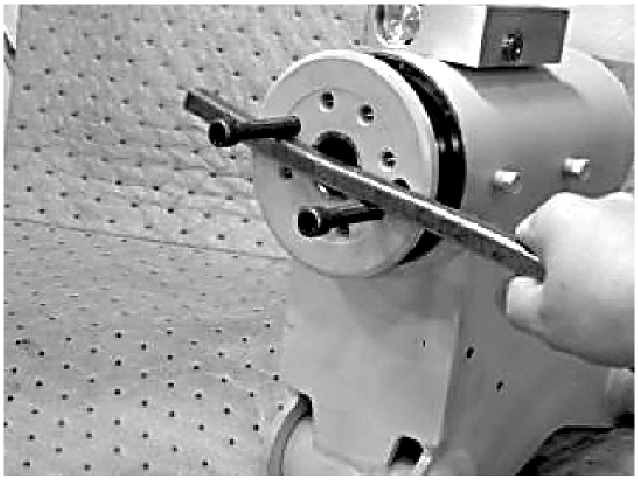
12. Looking from the view shown, use the existing timing marks to line up the gear teeth on the shaft (2) with the gear teeth on the inside of the piston (3). Now tap the flange end of the shaft with a rubber mallet until the gear teeth engage.



13. Install 2 bolts in the threaded holes in the flange. Using a bar, rotate the shaft in a clockwise direction until the wear guides are seated inside the housing bore.

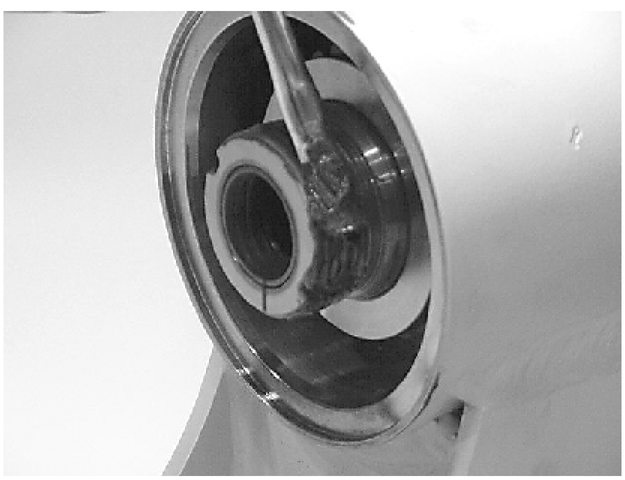
NOTICE

AS THE SHAFT IS ROTATED, BE CAREFUL NOT TO DISENGAGE THE PISTON AND HOUSE GEARING.



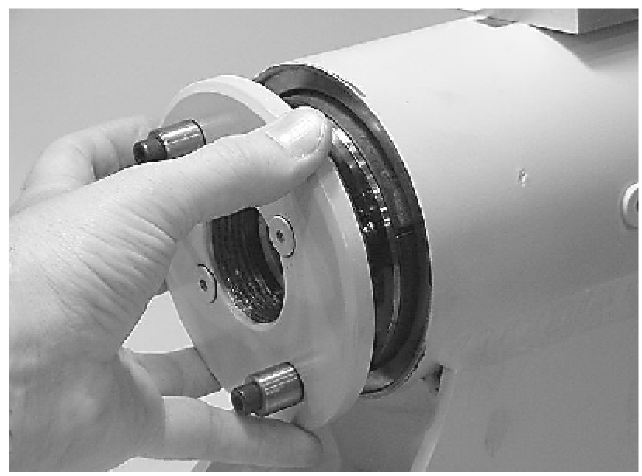
14. Install the stop tube onto the shaft end, if equipped. Stop tube is an available option to limit the rotation of an actuator.

15. Coat the threads on the end of the shaft with anti-seize grease to prevent galling.

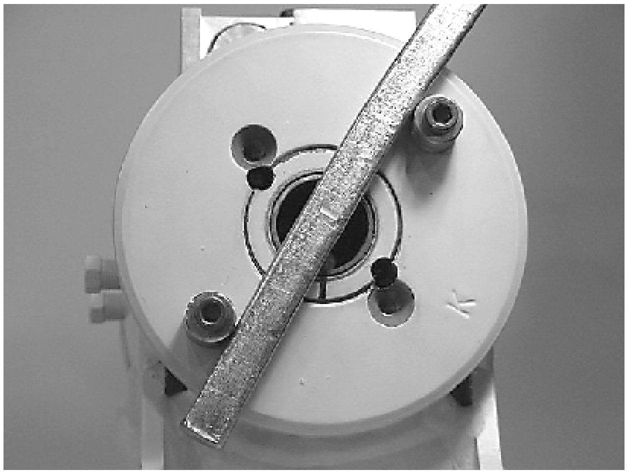


16. Install the 0-ring (204) and back-up ring (207) into the inner seal groove on the end cap (4).

17. Thread the end cap (4) onto the shaft (2) end. Make sure the wear guide remains in place on the end cap as it is threaded into the housing (1).

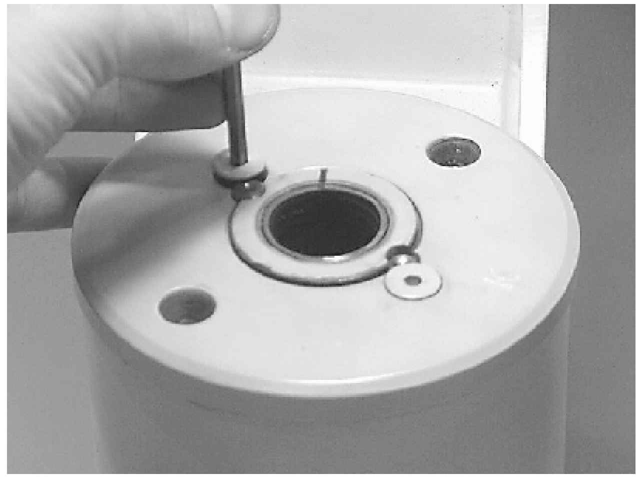


18. Tighten the end cap (4). In most cases the original holes for the lock pins will line up.



19. Place the lock pins (109) provided in the Helac seal kit in the holes with the dimple side up. Then, using a punch, tap the lock pins to the bottom of the hole.

20. Insert the set screws (113) over the lock pins. Tighten them to 25 in. lbs. (2.825 Nm).



Installing Counterbalance Valve

Refer to Figure 4-22., Rotator Counterbalance Valve.

1. Make sure the surface of the actuator is clean, free of any contamination and foreign debris including old JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011.
2. Make sure the new valve has the o-rings in the counterbores of the valve to seal it to the actuator housing.
3. The bolts that come with the valve are grade 8 bolts. New bolts should be installed with a new valve. JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 should be applied to the shank of the three bolts at the time of installation.
4. Torque the 1/4 in. bolts 110 to 120 in. lbs. (12.4 to 13.5 Nm). Do not torque over 125 in. lbs. (14.1 Nm). Torque the 5/16 in. bolts 140 in. lbs. (15.8 Nm). Do not torque over 145 in. lbs. (16.3 Nm).
5. Make sure the valve is seated against the housing valve flat. If it is raised up on any side or corner, remove the valve to determine what the obstruction is. If possible, test this using a hydraulic hand pump or electric test.

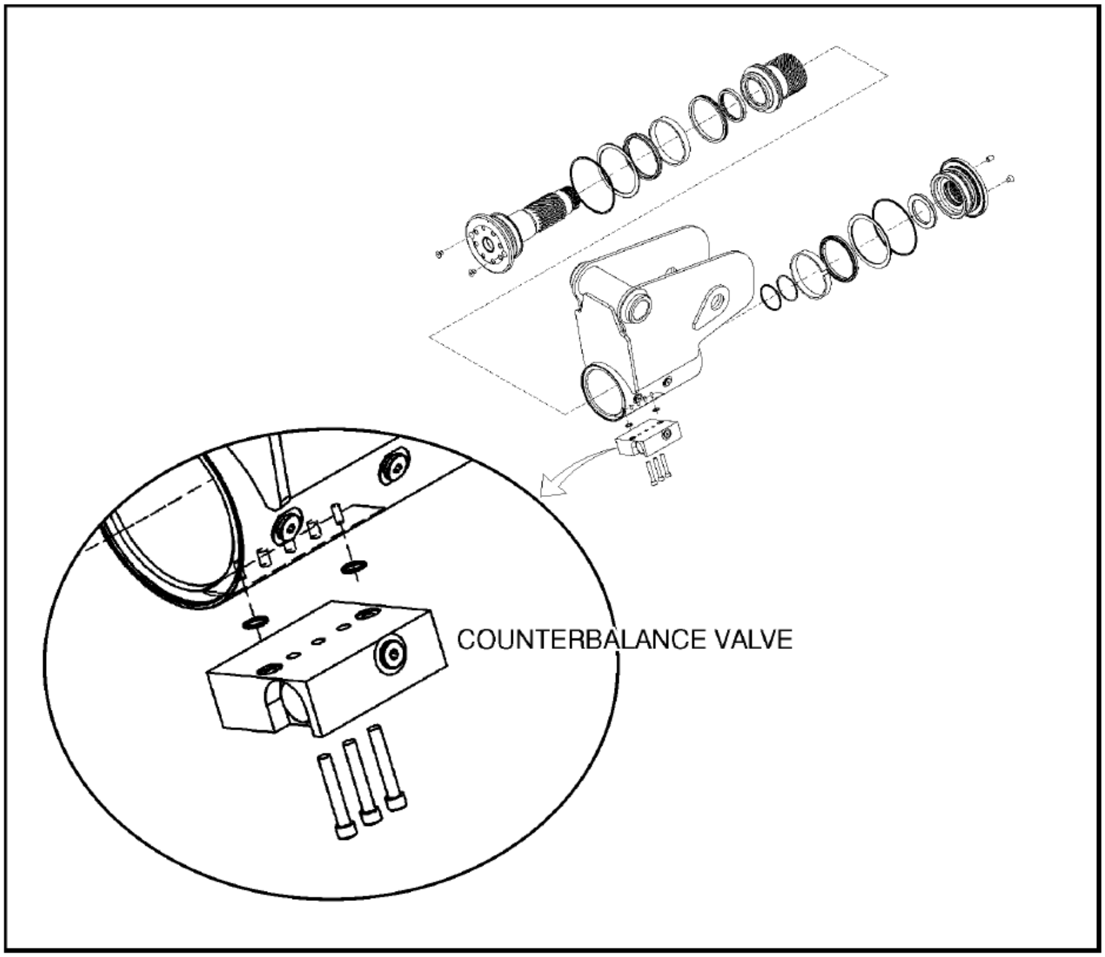


Figure 4-22. Rotator Counterbalance Valve

Greasing Thrust Washers

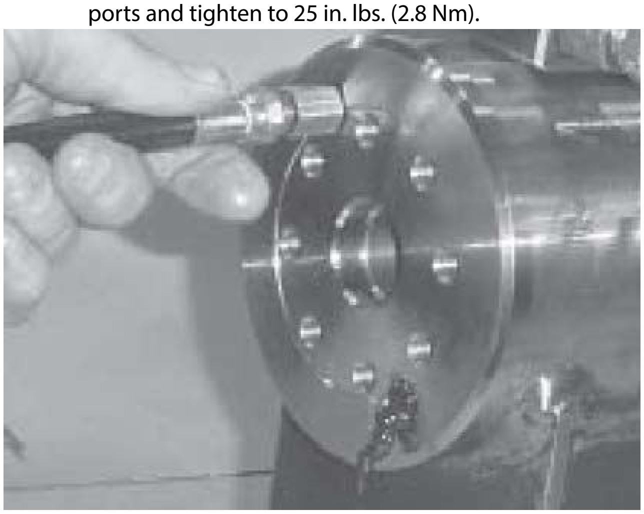
1. After the actuator is assembled but before it is put into service, the thrust washer area must be packed with Lithium grease.

2. There are two grease ports located on both the shaft flange and the end cap. They are plugged with cap screws (113) or set screws. Remove the grease port screws from the shaft flange and end cap. (See exploded view)

NOTICE

IF A HYDRAULIC TEST BENCH IS NOT AVAILABLE, THE ACTUATOR CAN BE ROTATED BY HAND, OPEN THE PRESSURE PORTS AND USE A PRY BAR WITH CAP SCREWS INSERTED INTO THE SHAFT FLANGE TO TURN THE SHAFT IN THE DESIRED DIRECTION.

3. Insert the tip of a grease gun into one port and apply grease to the shaft flange. Continue applying until grease flows from the opposite port. Cycle the actuator five times and apply grease again. Repeat this process on the end cap. Insert the cap screws into the grease ports and tighten to 25 in. lbs. (2.8 Nm).



Testing the Actuator

If the equipment is available, the actuator should be tested on a hydraulic test bench. The breakaway pressure — the pressure at which the shaft begins to rotate — should be approximately 400 psi (28 bar). Cycle the actuator at least 25 times at 3000 psi (210 bar) pressure. After the 25 rotations, increase the pressure to 4500 psi (315 bar) to check for leaks and cracks. Perform the test again at the end of the rotation in the opposite direction.

TESTING THE ACTUATOR FOR INTERNAL LEAKAGE

If the actuator is equipped with a counterbalance valve, plug the valve ports. Connect the hydraulic lines to the housing ports. Bleed all air from the actuator (see Installation and Bleeding) Rotate the shaft to the end of rotation at 3000 psi (210 bar) and maintain pressure. Remove the hydraulic line from the non-pressurized side.

Continuous oil flow from the open housing port indicates internal leakage across the piston. Replace the line and rotate the shaft to the end of rotation in the opposite direction. Repeat the test procedure outlined above for the other port. If there is an internal leak, disassemble, inspect and repair.

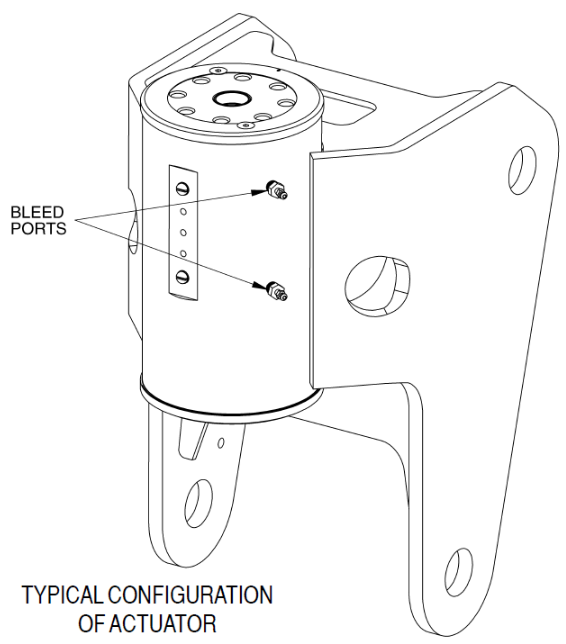
Installation and Bleeding

After installation of the actuator on the equipment, it is important that all safety devices such as tie rods or safety cables are properly reattached.

To purge air from the hydraulic lines, connect them together to create a closed loop and pump hydraulic fluid through them. Review the hydraulic schematic to determine which hydraulic lines to connect. The linear feet and inside diameter of the hydraulic supply lines together with pump capacity will determine the amount of pumping time required to fully purge the hydraulic system.

Bleeding may be necessary if excessive backlash is exhibited after the actuator is connected to the hydraulic system. The following steps are recommended when a minimum of two gallons (8 liters) is purged.

1. Connect a 3/16 in. inside diameter x 5/16 in. outside diameter x 5 foot clear, vinyl drain tube to each of the two bleed nipples. Secure them with hose clamps. Place the vinyl tubes in a clean 5-gallon container to collect the purged oil. The oil can be returned to the reservoir after this procedure is completed.



TYPICAL CONFIGURATION
OF ACTUATOR

2. With an operator in the platform, open both bleed nipples 1/4 turn. Hydraulically rotate the platform to the end of rotation (either clockwise or counterclockwise), and maintain hydraulic pressure. Oil with small air bubbles will be seen flowing through the tubes. Allow a 1/2 gallon of fluid to be purged from the actuator.
3. Keep the fittings open and rotate the platform in the opposite direction to the end position. Maintain hydraulic pressure until an additional 1/4 gallon of fluid is pumped into the container.
4. Repeat steps 2 & 3. After the last 1/2 gallon is purged, close both bleed nipples before rotating away from the end position.

4.17 FOOT SWITCH ADJUSTMENT

Adjust so that functions will operate when pedal is at center of travel. If switch operates within last 1/4 in. (6.35 mm) of travel, top or bottom, it should be adjusted.

Troubleshooting

Table 4-1. Troubleshooting

Problem	Cause	Solution
1. Shaft rotates slowly or not at all	a. Insufficient torque output	a. Verify correct operating pressure. Do not exceed OEM's pressure specifications. Load may be above maximum capacity of the actuator.
	b. Low rate of fluid flow	b. Inspect ports for obstructions and hydraulic lines for restrictions and leaks.
	c. Control or counterbalance valve has internal leak	c. Disconnect hydraulic lines and bypass valve. Leave valve ports open and operate the actuator through housing ports (do not exceed OEM's operating pressure). The valve must be replaced if a steady flow of fluid is seen coming from the valve ports.
	d. Piston and/or shaft seal leak	d. Remove the plug and the housing's valve ports. Operate the actuator through the housing ports. Conduct the internal leakage test.
	e. Corrosion build-up on the thrust surfaces	e. Re-build the actuator. Remove all rust then polish. Replacement parts may be needed.
	f. Swollen seals and composite bearings caused by incompatible hydraulic fluid	f. Re-build the actuator. Use fluid that is compatible with seals and bearings.
2. Operation is erratic or not responsive	a. Air in actuator	a. Purge air from actuator. See bleeding procedures.
3. Shaft will not fully rotate	a. Twisted or chipped gear teeth	a. Check for gear binding. Actuator may not be able to be re-built and may need to be replaced. Damage could be a result of overload or shock.
	b. Port fittings are obstructing the piston	b. Check thread length of port fittings. Fittings should during stroke not reach inside the housing bore.
4. Selected position cannot be maintained	a. Control or counterbalance valve has internal leak	a. Disconnect hydraulic lines and bypass valve. Leave valve ports open and operate the actuator through housing ports (do not exceed OEM's operating pressure). The valve must be replaced if a steady flow of fluid is seen coming from the valve ports.
	b. Piston and/or shaft seal leak	b. Remove the plug and the housing's valve ports. Operate the actuator through the housing ports. Conduct the internal leakage test.
	c. Air in actuator	c. Purge air from actuator. See bleeding procedures.

4.18 BOLT-ON EXTERNAL FALL ARREST SYSTEM

The Bolt-On External Fall Arrest system is designed to provide a lanyard attach point while allowing the operator to access areas outside the platform. Exit/Enter the platform through the gate area only. The system is designed for use by one person.

The Operator must use fall protection at all times. A full body harness with lanyard not to exceed 6 ft. (1.8 m) in length, that limits the maximum arrest force to 900 lbs. (408 kg) for the transfastener type and 1350 lbs. (612 kg) for the shuttle type Bolt-On External Fall Arrest system.

The Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System capacity is 310 lb (140 kg) / one (1) person maximum.

Do not move the platform during use of the Bolt-On External Fall Arrest system.

WARNING

DO NOT OPERATE ANY MACHINE FUNCTIONS WHILE OUTSIDE OF THE PLATFORM. BE CAREFUL WHEN ENTERING/EXITING THE PLATFORM AT ELEVATION.

NOTICE

IF THE BOLT-ON EXTERNAL FALL ARREST SYSTEM IS USED TO ARREST A FALL OR IS OTHERWISE DAMAGED, THE ENTIRE SYSTEM MUST BE REPLACED AND PLATFORM FULLY INSPECTED BEFORE RETURNING TO SERVICE.

Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Types

NOTE: *There are two types of Bolt-On External Fall Arrest Systems - Transfastener Type and Shuttle Type. Both operate identically with minor component differences.*

Refer to the figure below and Figure 4-27., Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Components - Transfastener Type and Figure 4-28., Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Components - Shuttle Type.

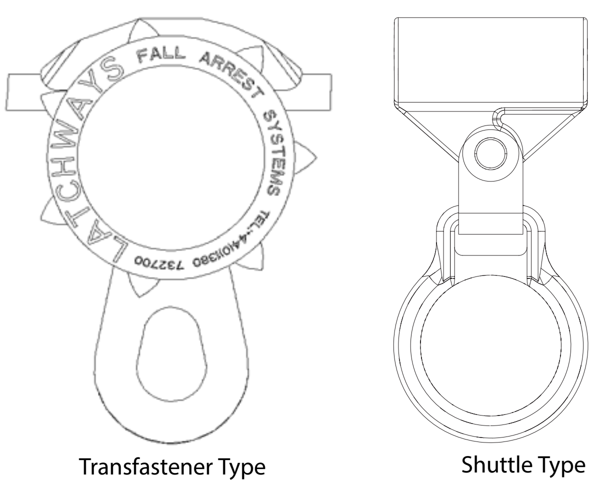


Figure 4-23. Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Types

Inspection Before Use

The Bolt-On External Fall Arrest system must be inspected before each use of the aerial work platform. Replace components if there are any signs of wear or damage.

Before each use, perform a visual inspection of the following components:

- Cable: Inspect cable for proper tension, broken strands, or any signs of corrosion.
- Fittings & Brackets: Ensure all fittings are tight and there are no signs of fractures. Inspect brackets for any damage.
- Transfastener or Shuttle: Inspect for signs of damage. Ensure transfastener or shuttle is free and slides properly through all intermediate supports.
- Attaching Hardware: Inspect all attaching hardware to ensure there are no missing components and hardware is properly tightened. Transfastener type only - Ensure star wheels rotate freely.

Inspecting Line Tenser

Cable tension is adjusted using the Line Tenser. The Line Tenser is the disc at the end of the cable (shown below). When proper tension is achieved, the disc will spin by hand. When less than proper tension is present the disc will not turn by hand. The cable will stretch normally over time. To tension the cable, rotate the turnbuckle until proper tension is achieved.

NOTE: *Rotate open or closed body turnbuckles using an appropriately sized Phillips screwdriver or rod as a lever.*

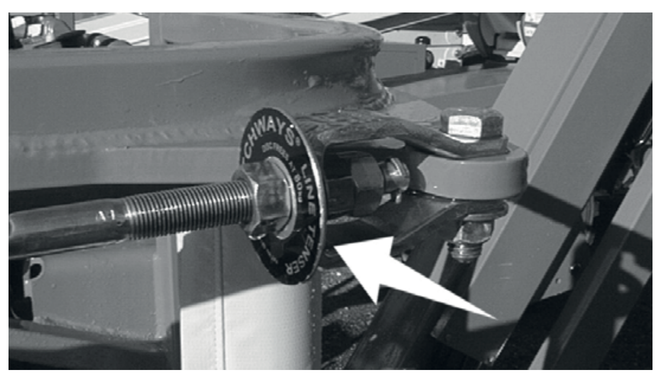


Figure 4-24. Line Tenser - Transfastener Type

Figure 4-25. Line Tenser - Shuttle Type

Inspecting Slip Indicator

The slip indicator is the short tube crimped beside the end connection of the cable.

NOTICE

IF THE CABLE SLIPS FROM THE END CONNECTION A GAP WILL BE PRESENT BETWEEN THE SLIP INDICATOR AND THE END CONNECTION. NO GAP IS ACCEPTABLE. A CABLE THAT IS SLIPPED SHOULD BE TAKEN OUT OF SERVICE AND THE SYSTEM REPLACED.

Shown below is the slip indicator as it should appear.

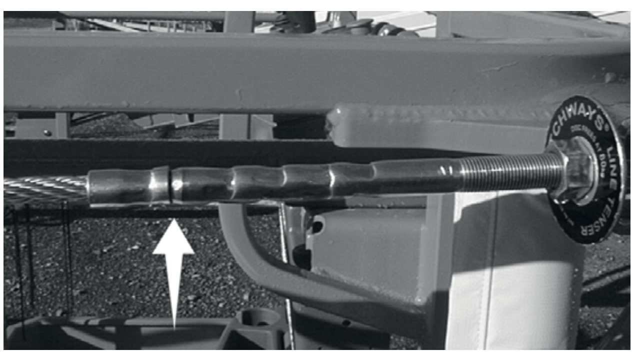
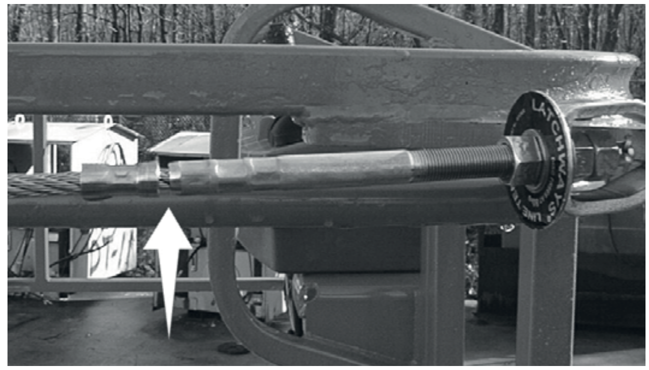


Figure 4-26. Slip Indicator - System OK

Shown below is the slip indicator with a gap, signifying that the Bolt-On External Fall Arrest system should be replaced immediately.



Annual Inspection and Certification

NOTICE

THE BOLT-ON EXTERNAL FALL ARREST SYSTEM REQUIRES AN ANNUAL INSPECTION AND CERTIFICATION. THE ANNUAL INSPECTION AND CERTIFICATION MUST BE PERFORMED BY A COMPETENT PERSON.

If inspection services are required, contact:

Flexible Lifeline Systems
14325 West Hardy Rd.
Houston, TX 77060
Phone: 281-448-8821

Installation

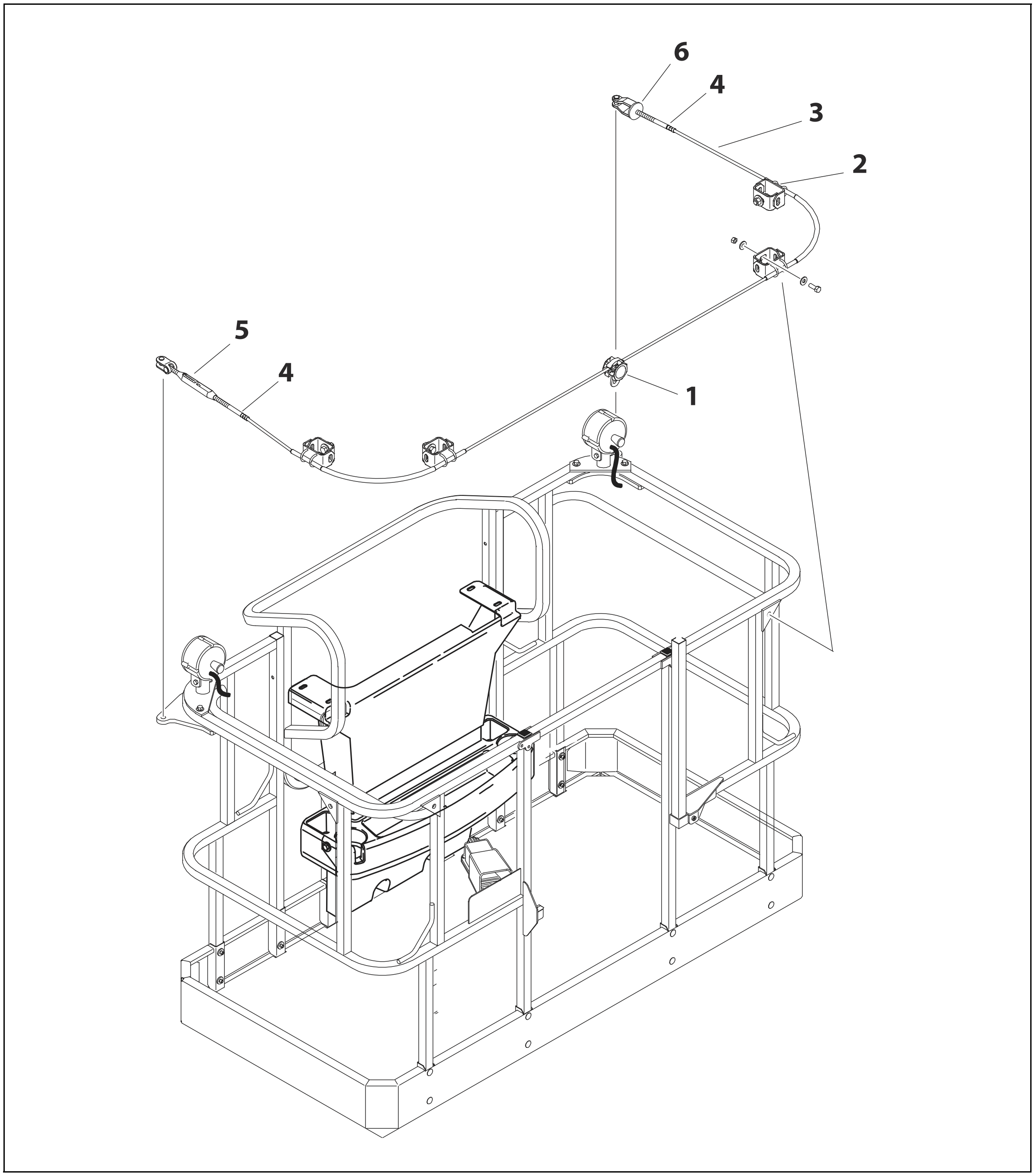
Installation requires bolting the ends of the cable to the platform with the supplied drilled bolt, castle nut, and split pin. The drilled bolts only need to be tightened enough to fully engage all of the threads of the castle nut and then further just enough to install the split pin.

Intermediate supports are bolted to the platform using 1/2"- 13NC Grade 8 bolts, flat washers, and locknuts.

- Intermediate supports used with the transfastener type system are adjusted to an angle slightly below horizontal to improve movement of the transfastener.
- Intermediate supports used with the shuttle type system are not adjustable.

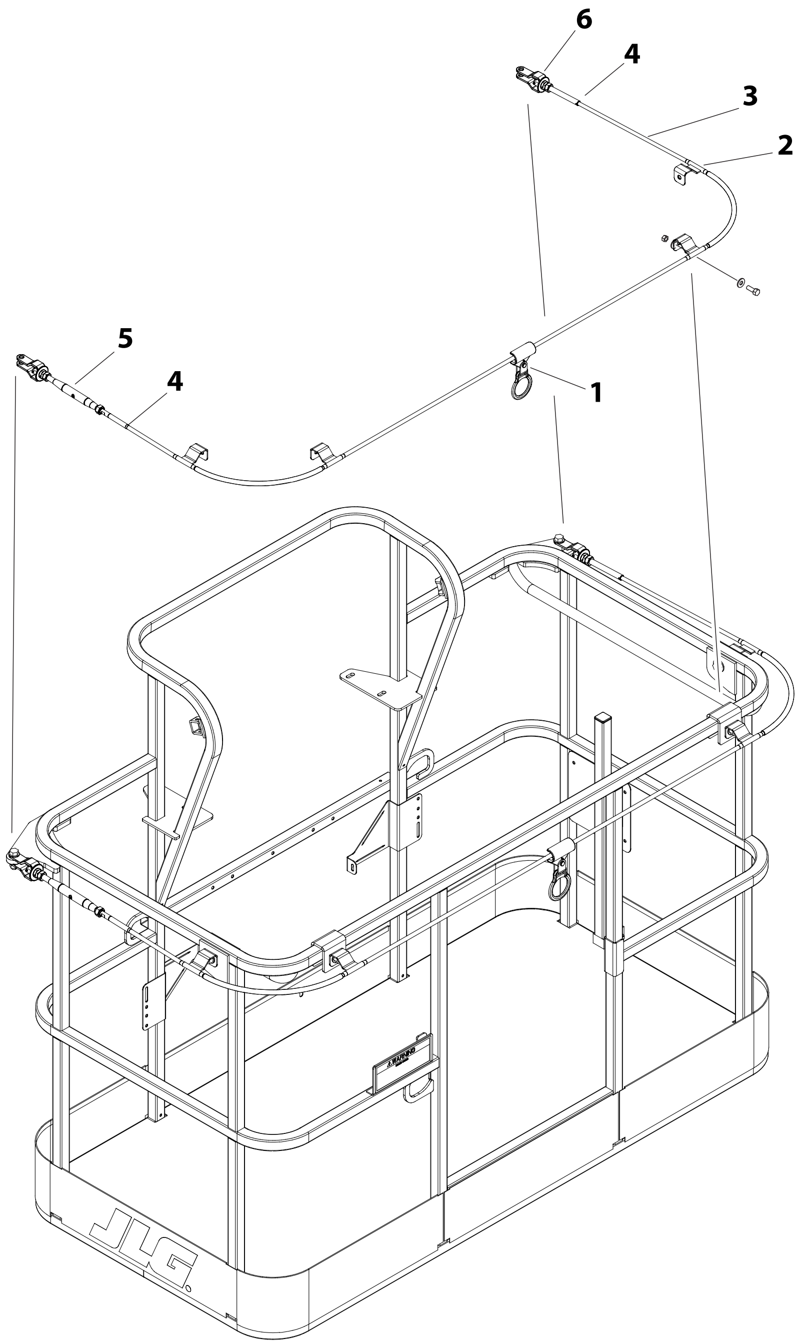
Ensure all bolts and locknuts are tightened properly. Tension the cable with the turnbuckle until the line tenser spins. Tighten jam nuts against the turnbuckle to hold it in place.

NOTE: *Rotate open or closed body turnbuckles using an appropriately sized Phillips screwdriver or rod as a lever.*



1. Transfastener
2. Bracket
3. Cable
4. Swage/Slip Indicator
5. Turnbuckle
6. Line Tenser

Figure 4-27. Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Components - Transfastener



1. Shuttle
2. Bracket
3. Cable
4. Swage/Slip Indicator
5. Turnbuckle
6. Line Tenser

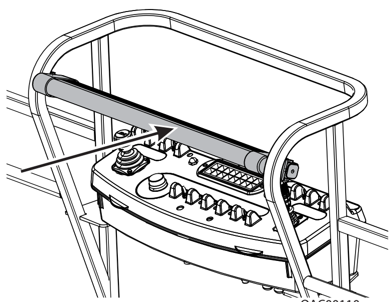
Figure 4-28. Bolt-On External Fall Arrest System Components - Shuttle Type

4.19 SKYGUARD

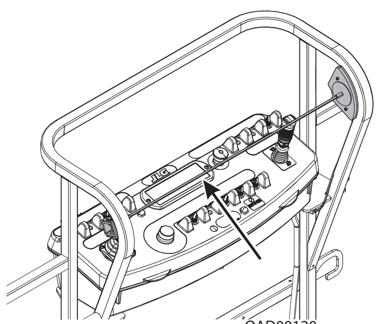
Operation

SkyGuard provides enhanced control panel protection. When the SkyGuard sensor is activated, functions in use at the time of actuation will reverse or cutout. The SkyGuard Function Table provides more details on these functions.

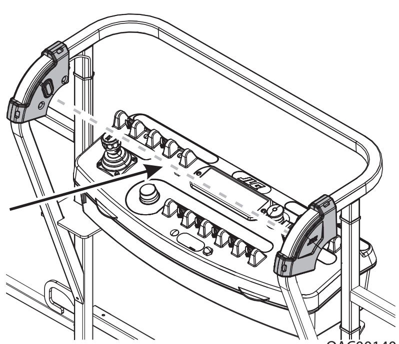
Consult the following illustrations to determine which type of SkyGuard the machine is equipped with. Regardless of the type, SkyGuard function according to the SkyGuard Function Table does not change.



SkyGuard



SkyGuard SkyLine™



SkyGuard SkyEye™

⚠ WARNING

THE MACHINE OPERATOR IS REQUIRED TO PERFORM A DAILY FUNCTION TEST TO ENSURE PROPER OPERATION OF THE SKYGUARD SYSTEM.

Function Test

SKYGUARD ONLY

Perform this function test if **SkyGuard only** is selected in machine setup (refer to Table 6-2).

From the Platform Control Console in an area free from obstructions:

1. Operate the telescope out function, then activate SkyGuard sensor.
2. Once sensor has been activated, ensure telescope out function stops then telescope in function operates for a short duration. Additionally, verify Soft Touch/SkyGuard indicator light flashes and horn sounds. If machine is equipped with SkyGuard beacon, ensure it flashes when sensor activates.
3. With SkyGuard sensor still engaged, press and hold yellow Soft Touch/SkyGuard override button. Operate a function to verify operation can be resumed.
4. Disengage SkyGuard sensor, release controls, and recycle footswitch. Ensure normal operation available.

In Ground Mode:

1. Operation is allowed regardless of SkyGuard activation.

BOTH SKYGUARD AND SOFT TOUCH

*Perform this procedure if **both SkyGuard and Soft Touch** are selected in machine setup* (refer to Table 6-2).

From the Platform Control Console in an area free from obstructions:

1. Operate the telescope out function, then activate SkyGuard sensor.
2. Once sensor has been activated, ensure telescope out function stops. Additionally, verify Soft Touch/SkyGuard indicator light flashes and horn sounds. If machine is equipped with SkyGuard beacon, ensure it flashes when sensor activates.
3. With SkyGuard sensor still engaged, press and hold yellow Soft Touch/SkyGuard override button. Operate a function to verify operation can be resumed.
4. Disengage SkyGuard sensor, release controls, and recycle footswitch. Ensure sure normal operation is available.

In Ground Mode:

1. Operation is allowed regardless of SkyGuard activation.

SOFT TOUCH ONLY

If **Soft Touch only** is selected in machine setup (refer to Table 6-2), machine will treat the Soft Touch/SkyGuard override switch as if it is a Soft Touch switch.

SKYGUARD NOT SELECTED IN MACHINE SETUP

If the SkyGuard system is installed on the machine, but no option is selected in the machine setup (refer to Table 6-2), SkyGuard sensor status will be ignored. No function cutout or reversal will be implemented.

Diagnostics & Troubleshooting

If SkyGuard does not function when the sensor is engaged, first verify the configuration under the MACHINE SETUP: SKYGUARD OPTION menu using the handheld Analyzer. Ensure the selected configuration matches the actual system installed on the machine. If not, select the correct configuration, then verify operation.

Additionally, use the handheld analyzer to navigate to the DIAGNOSTICS: FEATURES → SKYGUARD INPUTS menu to determine additional SkyGuard fault information.

Engage the SkyGuard sensor and observe the Analyzer to determine if the switch/relay closes.

If the status of the switch/relay remains OPEN while the SkyGuard sensor is actively engaged, it is possible the sensor has failed and should be replaced immediately.

If the status of the switch/relay remains CLOSED while the SkyGuard sensor is actively engaged, a power or ground wire may not be making good contact or may be loose or broken. Additionally, there is a low probability that both relays may have failed.

If the switch/relay status is in disagreement, then one may have failed or is not installed correctly. In this case, the machine will be inoperable.

FAULT CODES

Refer to Table 6-12 for more fault code information

- **0039 -** SkyGuard switch activation fault
- **2563 -** switch disagreement fault

Table 4-2. SkyGuard Function Table

Drive Forward	Drive Reverse	Steer	Swing	Tower Lift Up	Tower Lift Down	Boom Lift Up	Boom Lift Down	Boom Tele Out	Boom Tele In	Jib Lift	Basket Level	Basket Rotate
R*/C**	R	C	R	R	C	R	R	R	C	C	C	C
R = Indicates Reversal is Activated												
C = Indicates Cutout is Activated												
* DOS Enabled												
** DOS Not Enabled, machine is driving straight without steering, and any other hydraulic function is active												
Note: If SkyGuard is enabled with the Soft Touch system, functions will cut out instead of reversing.												

SECTION 5. BASIC HYDRAULICS INFORMATION & SCHEMATICS

5.1 LUBRICATING O-RINGS IN THE HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

When assembling connectors in the hydraulic that use o-ring fittings, it is necessary to lubricate all fittings with hydraulic oil prior to assembly. To lubricate the fittings, use one of the following procedures.

NOTE: *All O-ring fittings must be pre-lubricated with hydraulic oil prior to assembly.*

Cup and Brush

The following is needed to correctly oil the o-ring in this manner:

- A small container for hydraulic oil.
- Small paint brush.

1. Hold the fitting in one hand while using the brush with the other hand to dip into the container. Remove excess hydraulic oil from the brush so an even film of oil is applied on the o-ring.

2. Holding the fitting over the hydraulic oil container, brush an even film of oil around the entire o-ring in the fitting, making sure the entire o-ring is completely saturated.

3. Turn the o-ring on the other side of the fitting and repeat the previous step, ensuring the entire o-ring is coated with hydraulic oil.

Dip Method

NOTE: *This method works best with Face Seal o-rings, but will work for all o-ring fitting types.*

The following is needed to correctly oil the o-ring in this manner:

- A small leak proof container.
- Sponge cut to fit inside the container.
- A small amount of hydraulic oil to saturate the sponge.

1. Place the sponge inside the container and add hydraulic oil to the sponge until it is fully saturated.
2. Dip the fitting into the sponge using firm pressure. Upon lifting the fitting, a small droplet will form and drip from the bottom of the fitting. This should signify an even coating of oil on the fitting.

3. O-ring Boss type fittings will require more pressure in able to immerse more of the fitting into the saturated sponge. This will also cause more oil to be dispersed from the sponge.

Spray Method

This method requires a pump or trigger spray bottle.

1. Fill the spray bottle with hydraulic oil.
2. Hold the fitting over a suitable catch can.
3. Spray the entire o-ring surface with a medium coat of oil.

Brush-on Method

This method requires a sealed bottle brush.

1. Fill the bottle with hydraulic oil.
2. Using slight pressure to the body of the spray bottle, invert the bottle so the brush end is in the downward position.
3. Brush hydraulic oil on the entire o-ring, applying an even coat of oil.

5.2 HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS

Slave Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Remove counterbalance valve and fittings from the cylinder port block. Discard o-rings.
4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

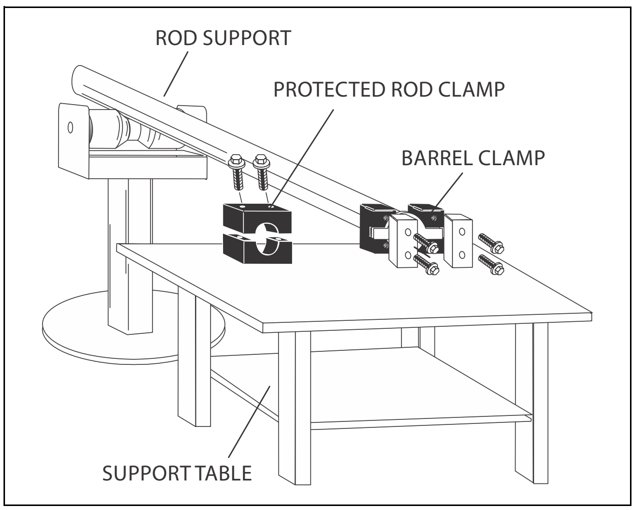


Figure 5-1. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

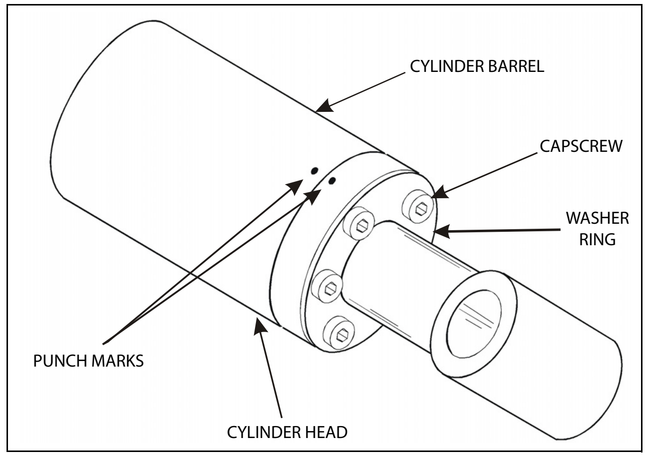


Figure 5-2. Capscrew Removal

6. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

7. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

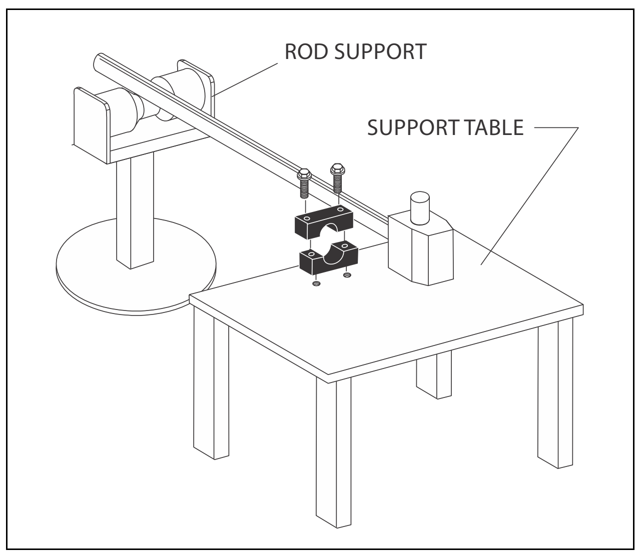
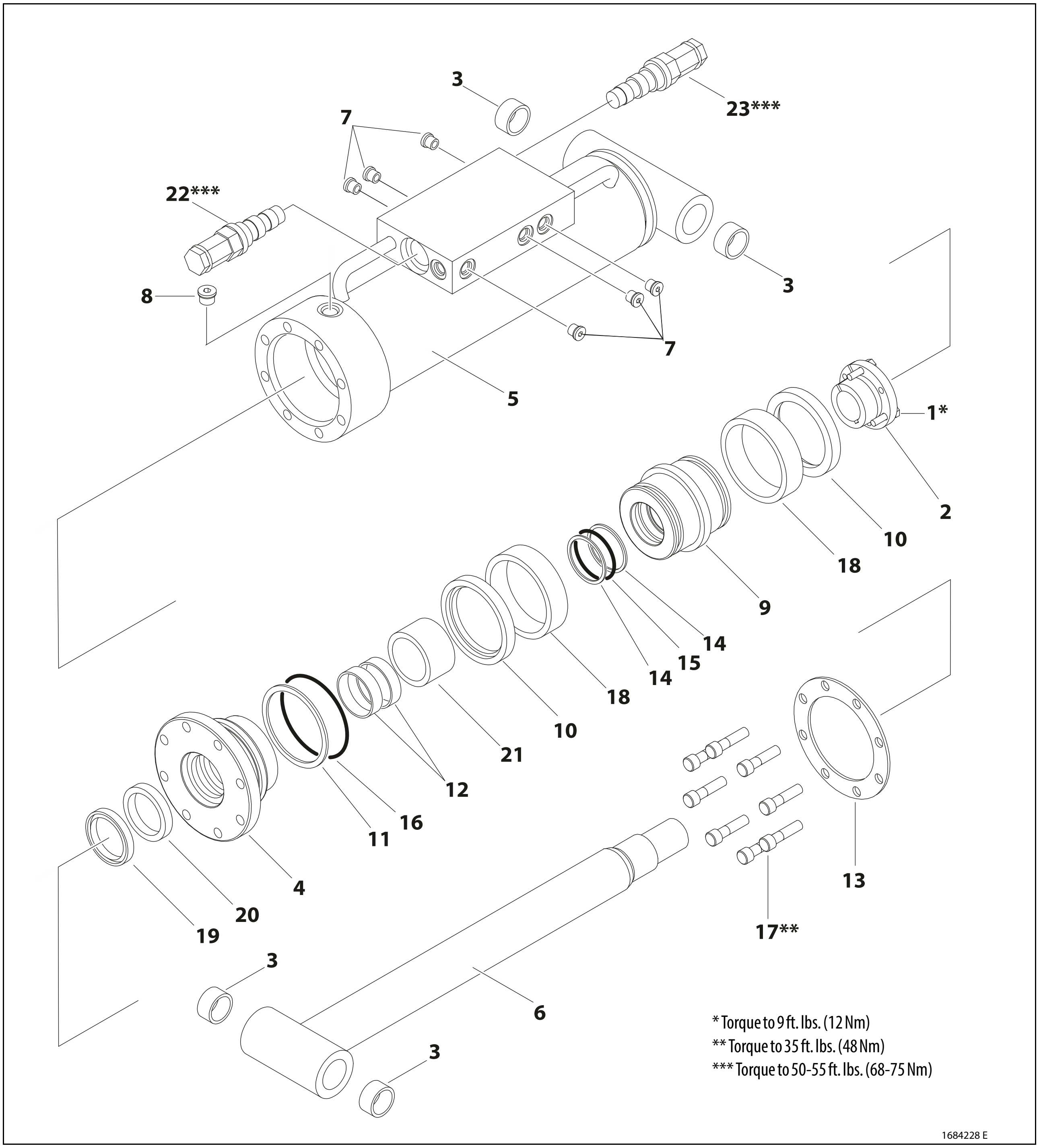


Figure 5-3. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Capscrew	6. Rod	11. Backup Ring	16. O-ring	21. Tube Spacer
2. Tapered Bushing	7. Plug	12. Wear Ring	17. Capscrew	22. Counterbalance Valve
3. Bushing	8. Plug	13. Washer Ring	18. Hydrolock Seal	23. Counterbalance Valve
4. Head	9. Piston	14. Backup Ring	19. Wiper Seal	
5. Barrel	10. Guidelock Ring	15. O-ring	20. Rod Seal	

Figure 5-4. Slave Cylinder

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
9. Remove capscrew from drilled holes.
10. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
11. Remove the bushing from the piston.

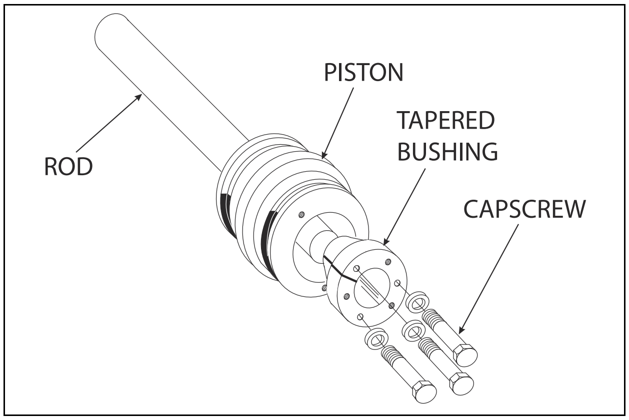


Figure 5-5. Tapered Bushing Removal

12. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
13. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, guidelock rings, hydrolock seals, and backup rings.
14. Remove piston spacer from the rod.
15. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

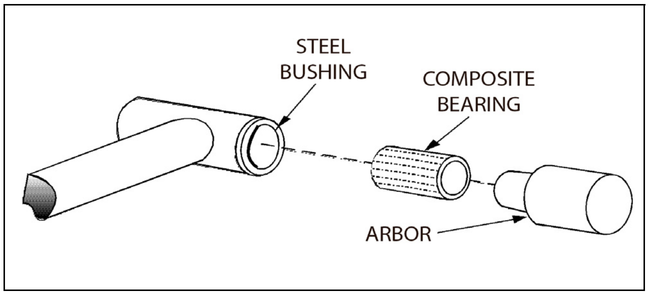


Figure 5-6. Composite Bearing Installation

12. Inspect spacer for burrs and sharp edges. If necessary, dress inside diameter surface with Scotch Brite or equivalent.
13. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.
14. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.
15. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

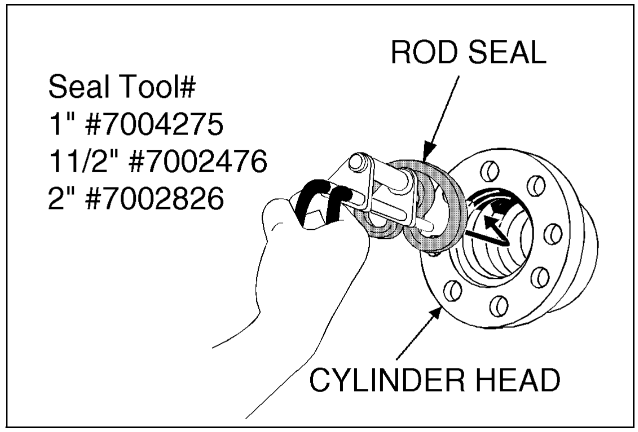


Figure 5-7. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

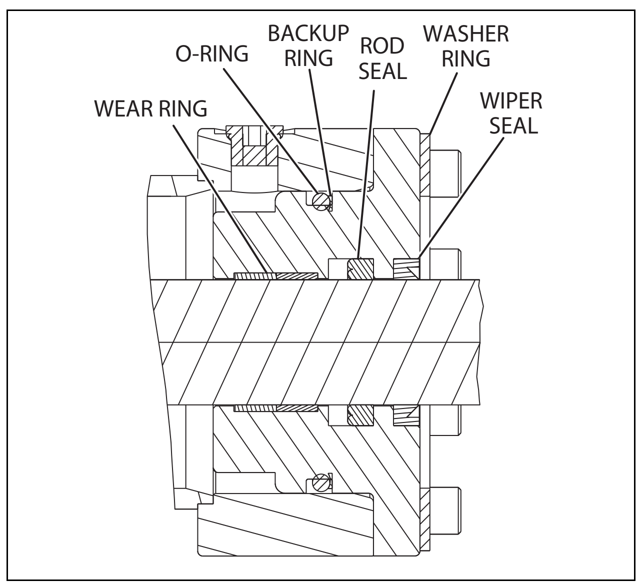
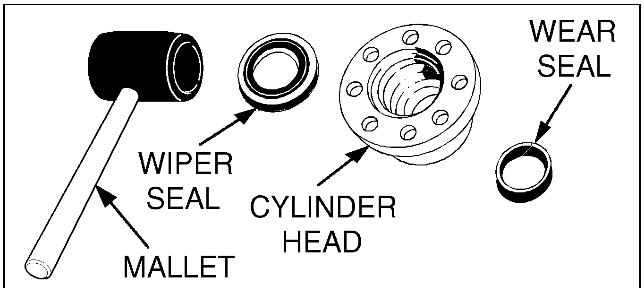


Figure 5-8. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.



Note: When installing wiper seal ensure seal is installed properly. Install seal so that the flat part of seal is facing into head.

Figure 5-9. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

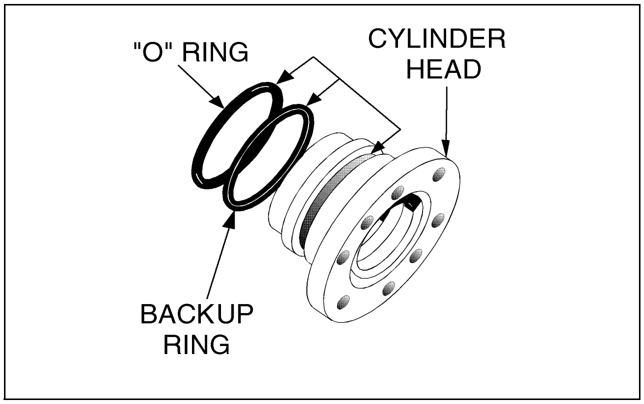


Figure 5-10. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install washer ring onto rod, carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.

5. Install spacer onto rod.

6. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.

7. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.

8. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod and hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.

9. Thread piston onto rod until it abuts the spacer end and install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

10. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

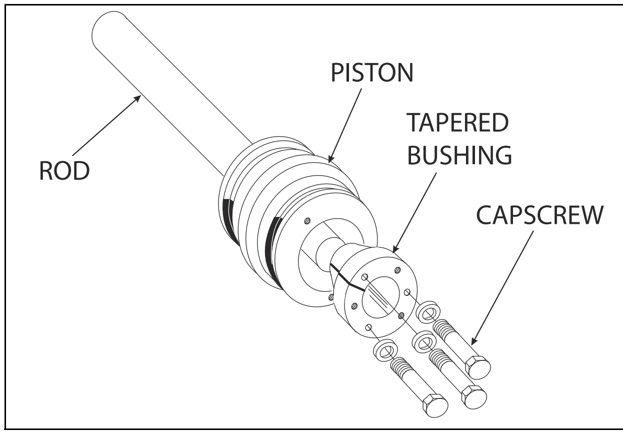


Figure 5-11. Tapered Bushing Installation

11. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).

12. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:

    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.

    b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

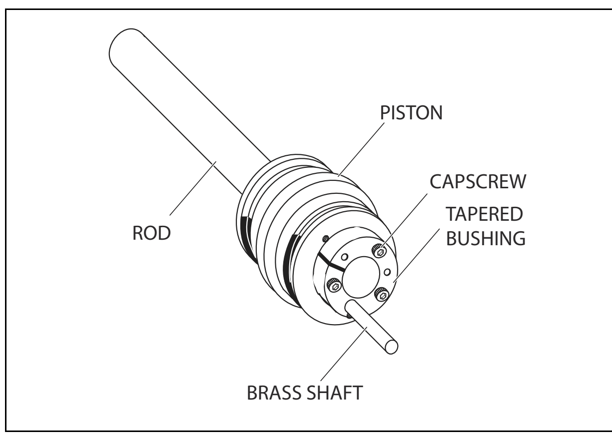


Figure 5-12. Seating the Tapered Bearing

13. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).

14. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING HYDROLOCK PISTON SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. REFER TO HYDROLOCK PISTON SEAL INSTALLATION FOR CORRECT SEAL ORIENTATION. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

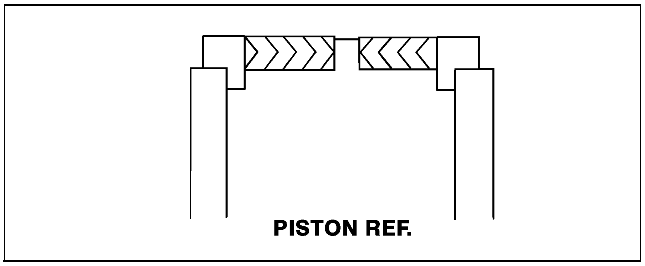


Figure 5-13. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation

15. Place new hydrolock seal and guidelock rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

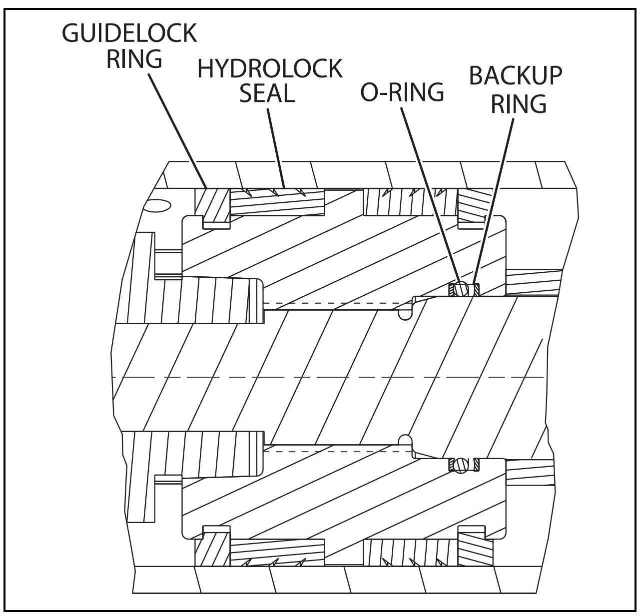


Figure 5-14. Piston Seal Kit Installation

16. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

17. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading hydrolock seals and guidelock rings are not damaged or dislodged.

18. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

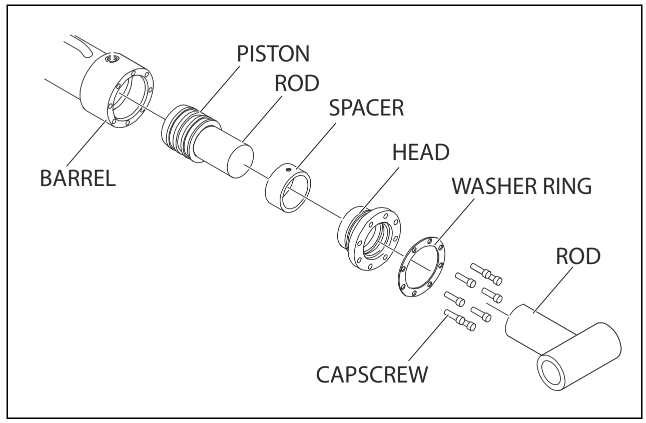


Figure 5-15. Rod Assembly Installation

19. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head capscrew and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and capscrews. Torque capscrews to 35 ft. lbs. (50 Nm).

20. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves.

21. Install the counterbalance valves and fittings in the rod port block, using new o-rings as applicable. Torque valve to 50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm).

Upright Level Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Remove the counterbalance valve and fittings from the cylinder port block. Discard o-rings.
4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

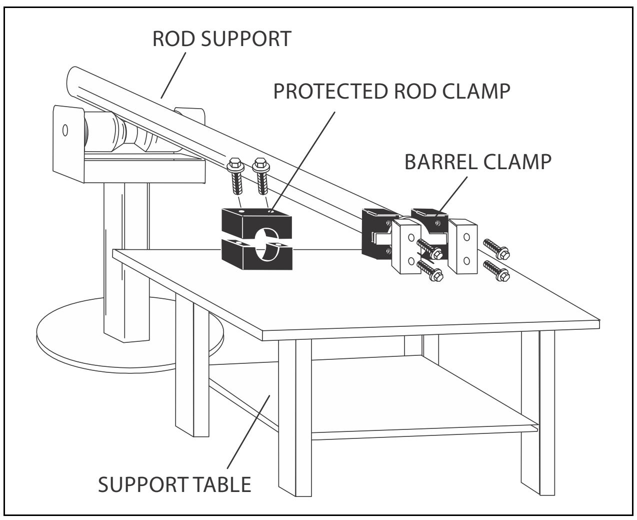


Figure 5-16. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

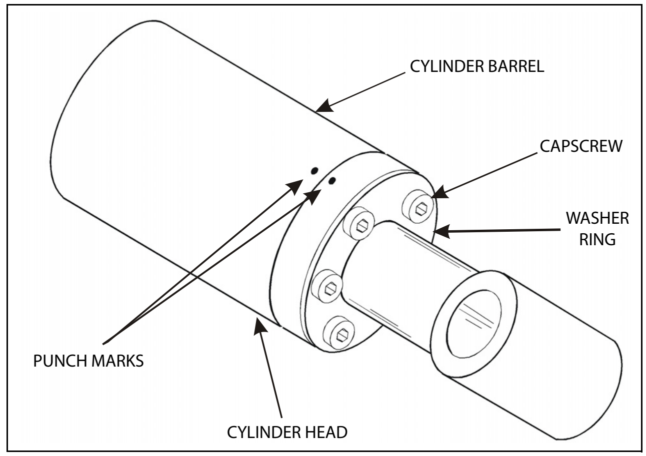


Figure 5-17. Capscrew Removal

6. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

7. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

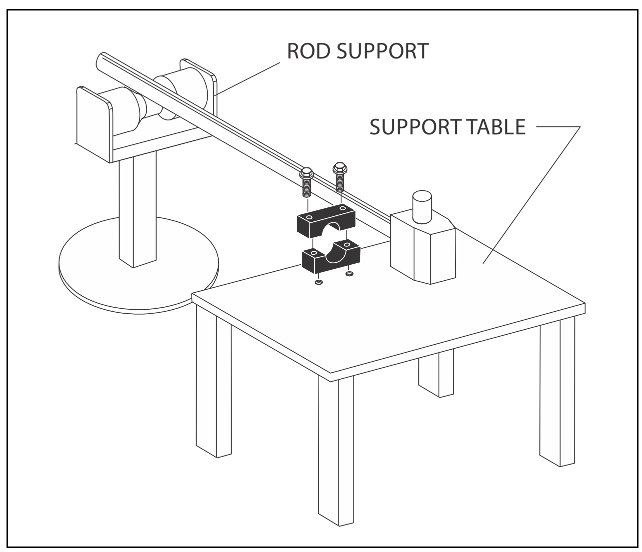
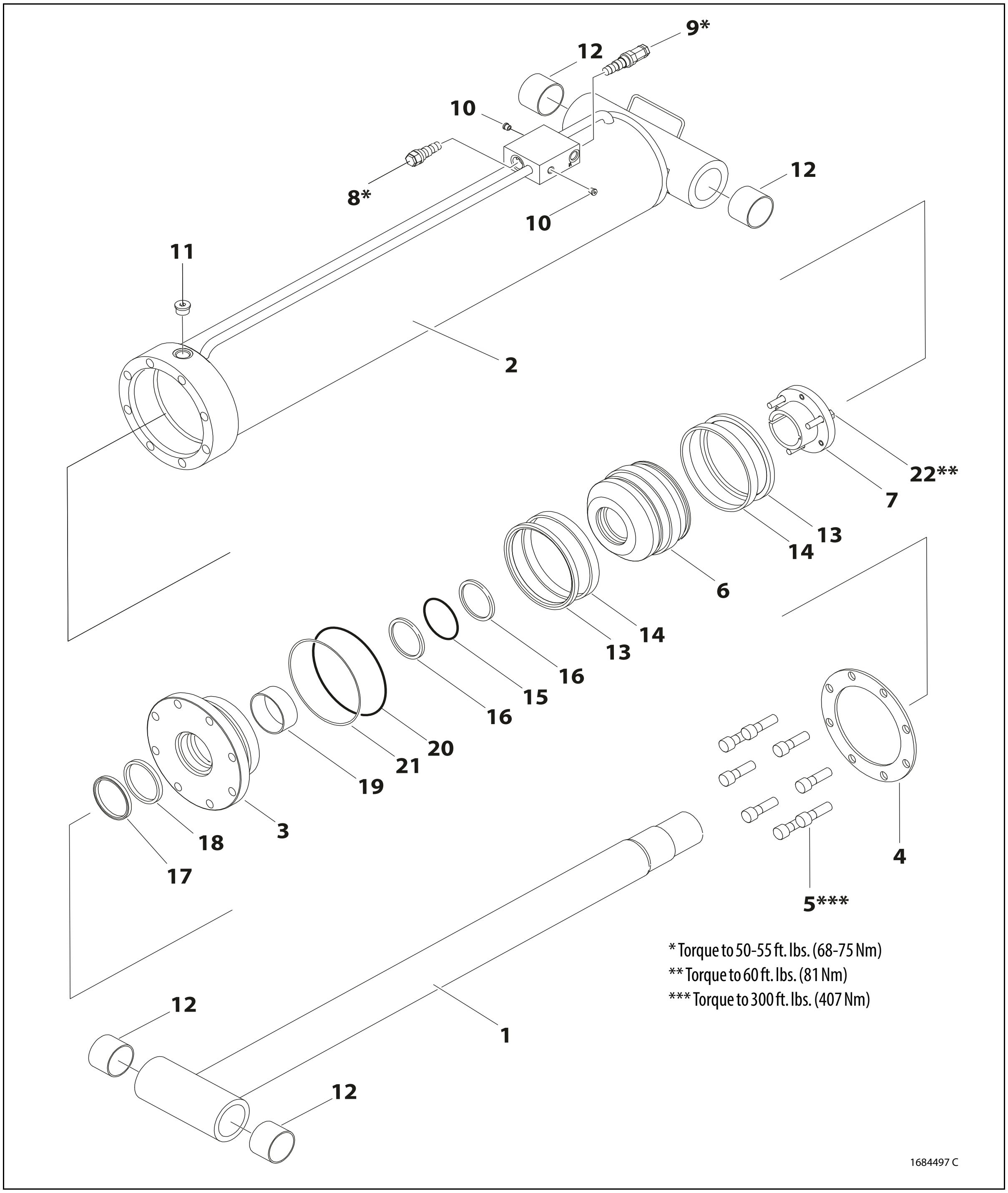


Figure 5-18. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Rod
2. Barrel
3. Head
4. Washer Ring
5. Capscrew
6. Piston
7. Tapered Bushing
8. Counterbalance Valve
9. Counterbalance Valve
10. Plug
11. Plug
12. Bushing
13. Guidelock Ring
14. Hydrolock Seal
15. Washer Ring
16. Backup Ring
17. Wiper
18. Rod Seal
19. Wear Ring
20. O-ring
21. Backup Ring
22. Capscrew

Figure 5-19. Upright Level Cylinder

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
9. Remove capscrew from drilled holes.
10. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
11. Remove the bushing from the piston.

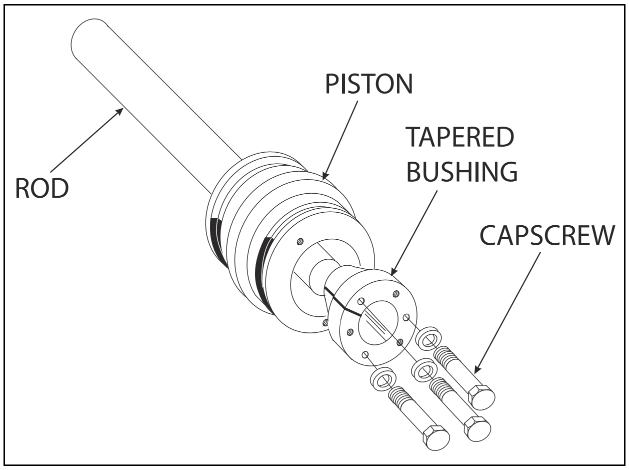


Figure 5-20. Tapered Bushing Removal

12. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
13. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, guidelock rings, hydrolock seals, and backup rings.
14. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

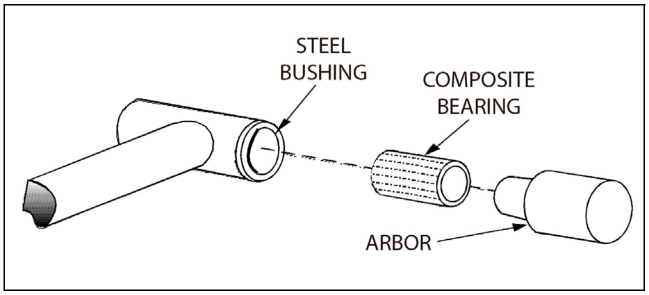


Figure 5-21. Composite Bearing Installation

12. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.

13. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.

14. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

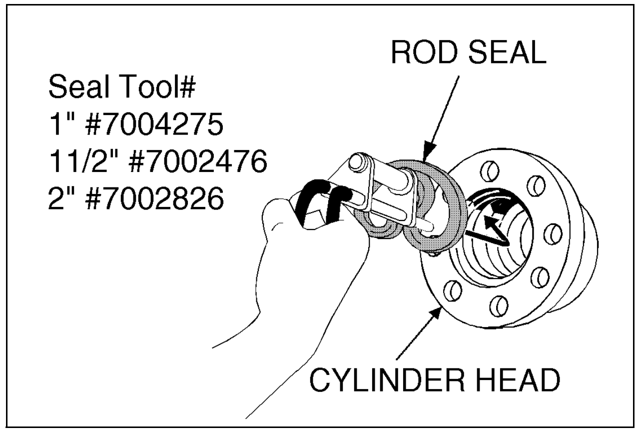


Figure 5-22. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

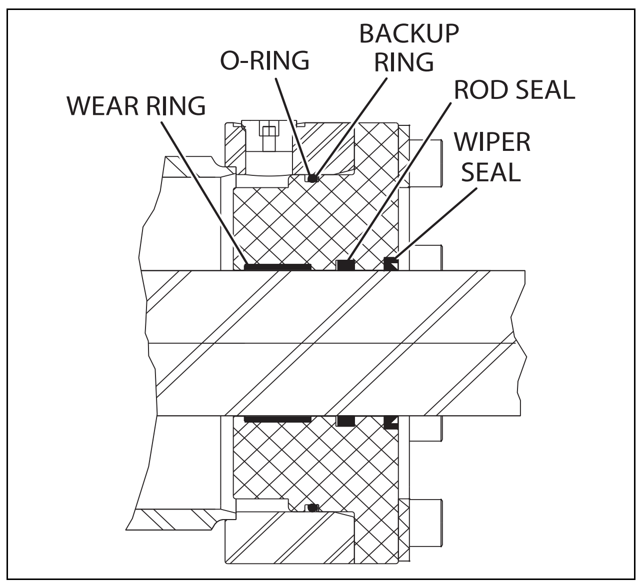


Figure 5-23. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

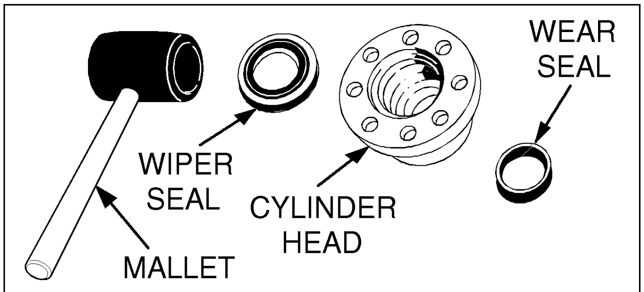


Figure 5-24. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

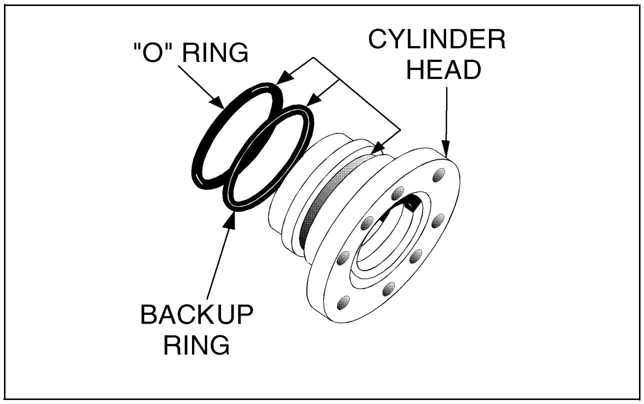


Figure 5-25. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install washer ring onto rod, carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.
5. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.
6. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.
7. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod and hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.
8. Install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

9. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

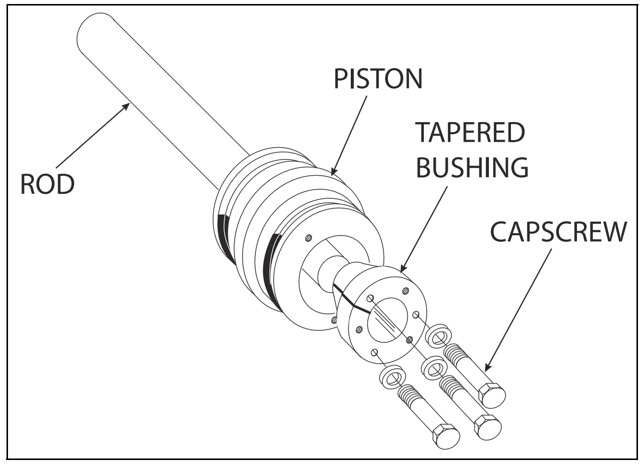


Figure 5-26. Tapered Bushing Installation

10. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 60 ft. lbs. (81 Nm).
11. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:
    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.
    b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

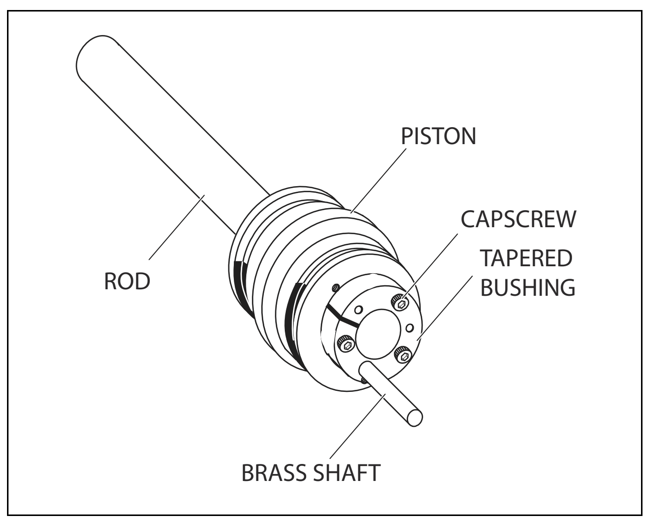


Figure 5-27. Seating the Tapered Bearing

12. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 60 ft. lbs. (81 Nm).

13. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING HYDROLOCK PISTON SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. REFER TO HYDROLOCK PISTON SEAL INSTALLATION FOR CORRECT SEAL ORIENTATION. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

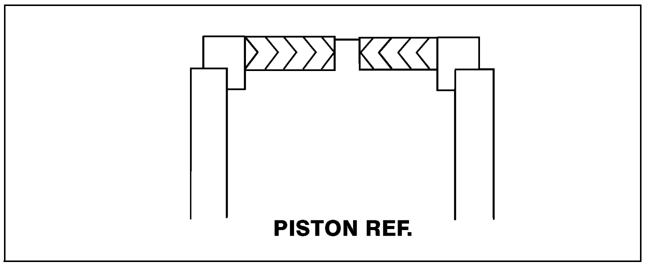


Figure 5-28. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation

14. Place new hydrolock seal and guidelock rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

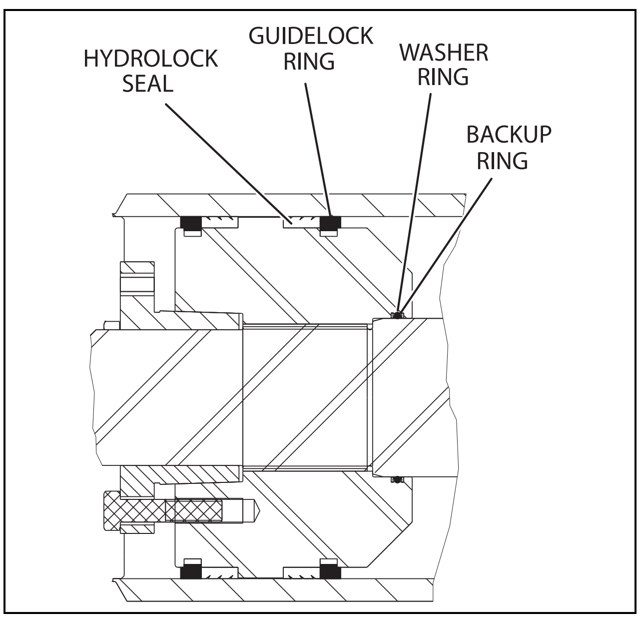


Figure 5-29. Piston Seal Kit Installation

15. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

16. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading hydrolock seals and guidelock rings are not damaged or dislodged.

17. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

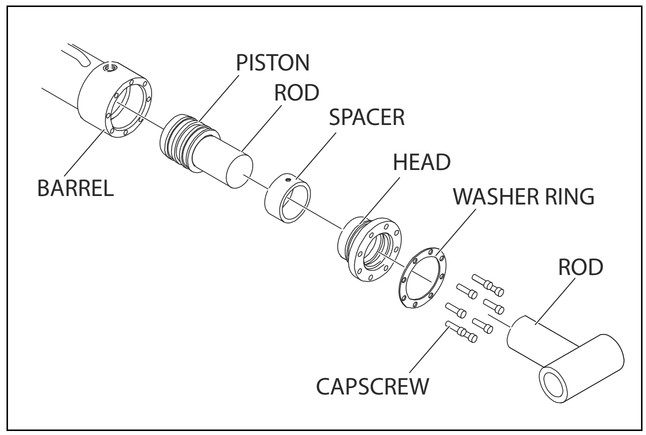


Figure 5-30. Rod Assembly Installation

18. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head bolts and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and capscrews. Torque capscrews to 300 ft. lbs. (407 Nm).

19. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves.

20. Install the counterbalance valves and fittings in the rod port block, using new o-rings as applicable. Torque valves to 50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm).

Jib Lift Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Remove the counterbalance holding valves and fittings from the cylinder port block. Discard o-rings.
4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

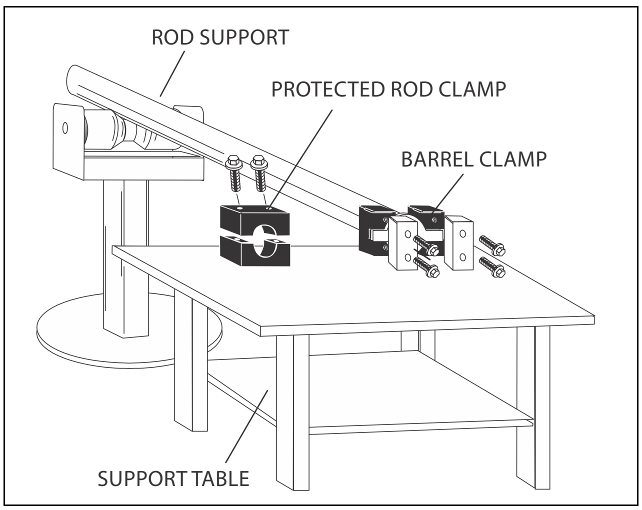


Figure 5-31. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

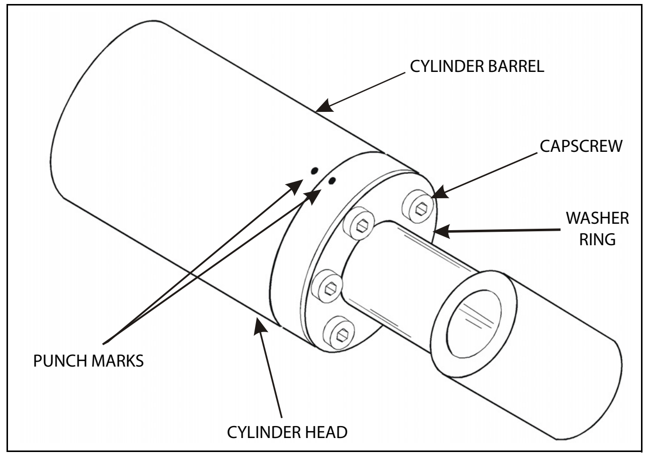


Figure 5-32. Capscrew Removal

6. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

7. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

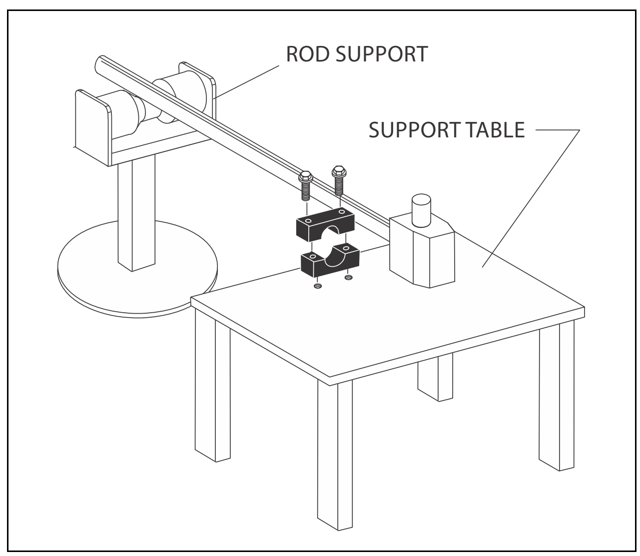
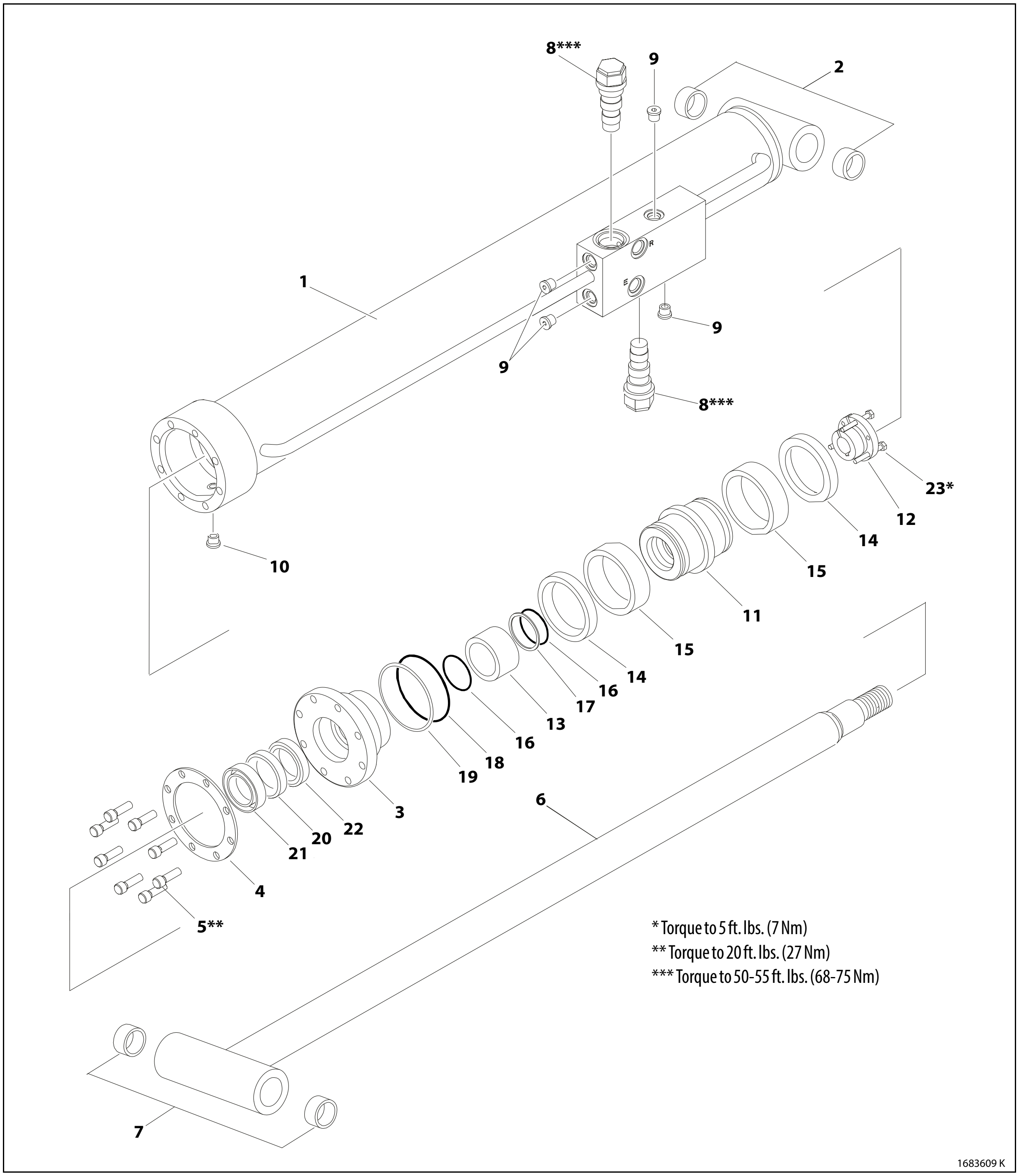


Figure 5-33. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Barrel
2. Bushing
3. Head
4. Washer Ring
5. Capscrew
6. Rod
7. Bushing
8. Counterbalance Valve
9. Plug
10. Plug
11. Piston
12. Tapered Bushing
13. Tube Spacer
14. Guidelock Ring
15. Hydrolock Seal
16. O-ring
17. Backup Ring
18. O-ring
19. Backup Ring
20. Rod Seal
21. Wiper Seal
22. Wear Ring
23. Capscrew

Figure 5-34. Jib Lift Cylinder

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
9. Remove capscrew from drilled holes.
10. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
11. Remove the bushing from the piston.

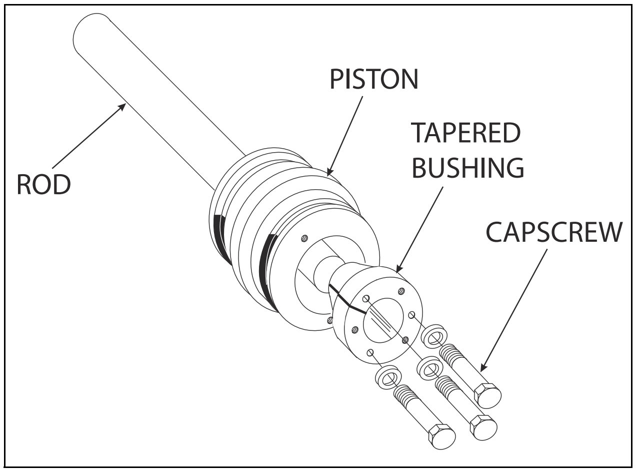


Figure 5-35. Tapered Bushing Removal

12. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
13. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, guidelock rings, hydrolock seals, and backup rings.
14. Remove piston spacer from the rod and discard the o-ring.
15. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

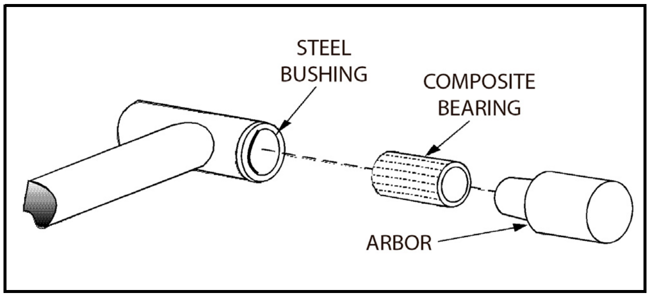


Figure 5-36. Composite Bearing Installation

12. Inspect spacer for burrs and sharp edges. If necessary, dress inside diameter surface with Scotch Brite or equivalent.
13. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.
14. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.
15. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

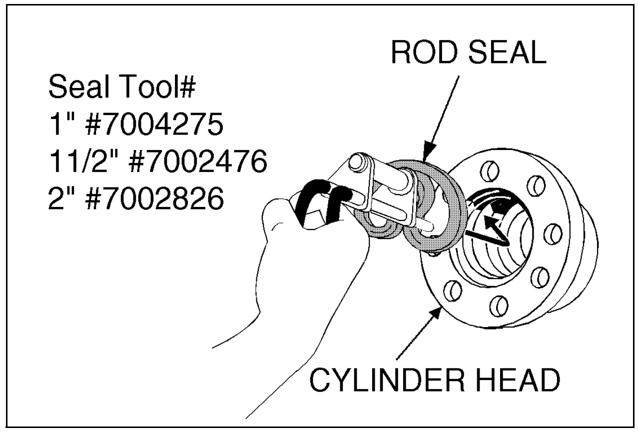


Figure 5-37. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

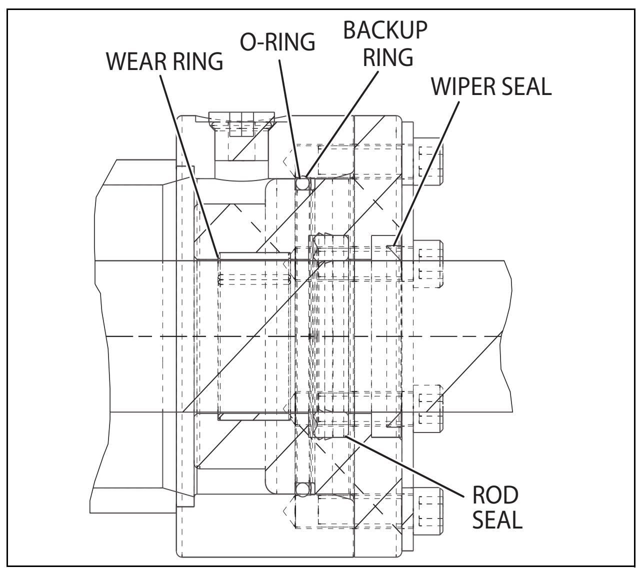
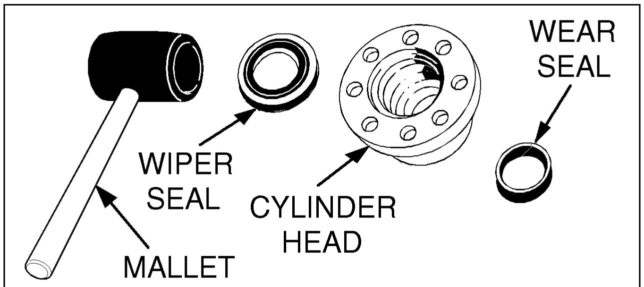


Figure 5-38. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.



Note: When installing wiper seal ensure seal is installed properly. Install seal so that the flat part of seal is facing into head.

Figure 5-39. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

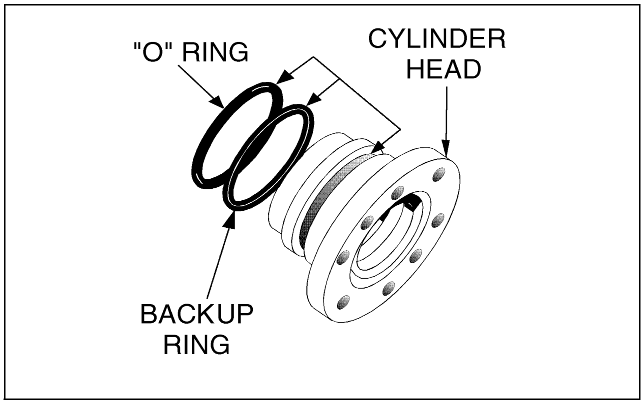


Figure 5-40. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install washer ring onto rod, carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.

5. Carefully insert o-ring into piston spacer. Slide the piston spacer onto the rod, ensure that the o-ring is not damaged or dislodged.

6. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.

7. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.

8. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod and hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.

9. Thread piston onto rod until it abuts the spacer end and install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

10. Install the bolts in tapered bushing.

11. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

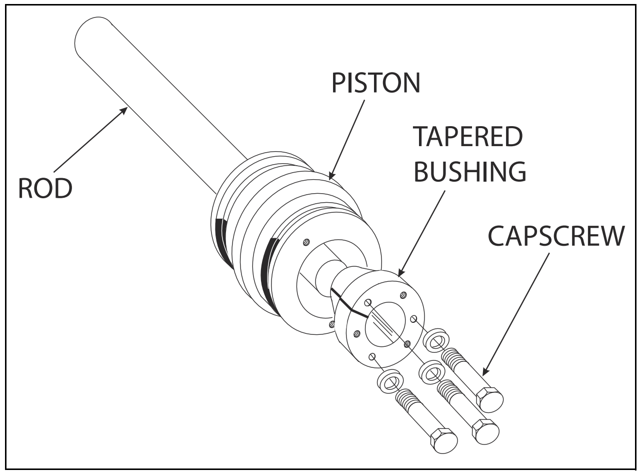


Figure 5-41. Tapered Bushing Installation

12. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 5 ft. lbs. (7 Nm).

13. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:

   a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.

   b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

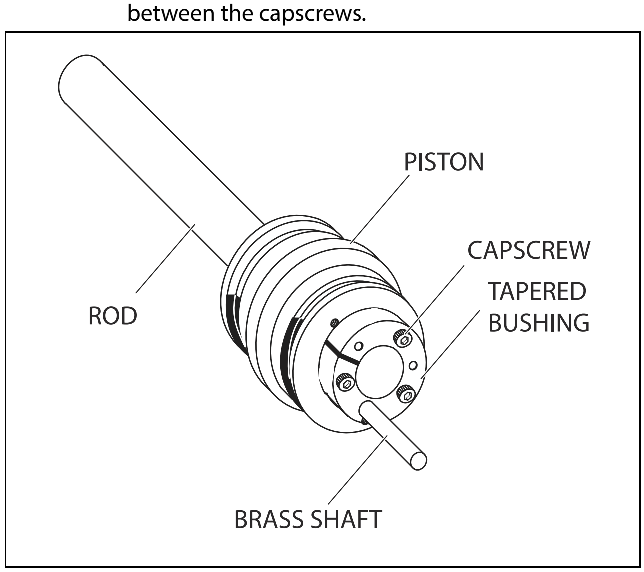


Figure 5-42. Seating the Tapered Bearing

14. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 5 ft. lbs. (7 Nm).

15. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING HYDROLOCK PISTON SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. REFER TO HYDROLOCK PISTON SEAL INSTALLATION FOR CORRECT SEAL ORIENTATION. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

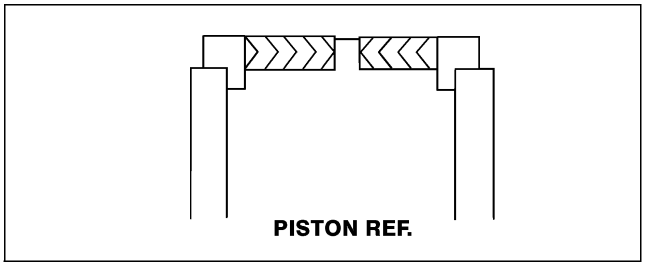


Figure 5-43. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation

16. Place new hydrolock seal and guidelock rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

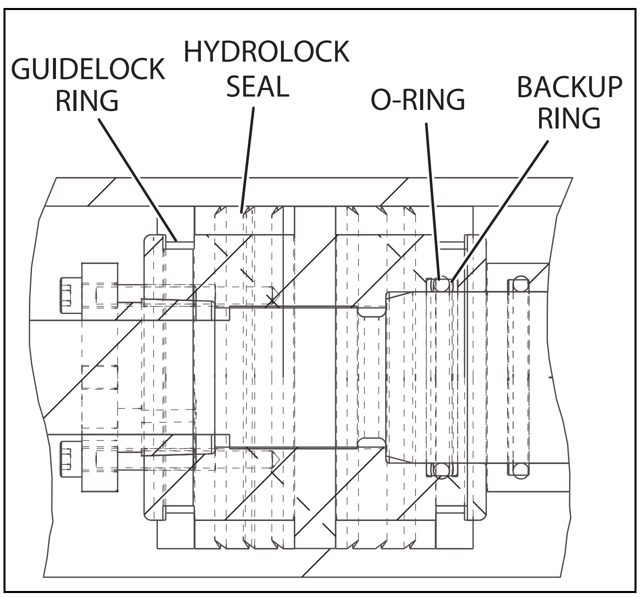


Figure 5-44. Piston Seal Kit Installation

17. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

18. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading hydrolock seals and guidelock rings are not damaged or dislodged.

19. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

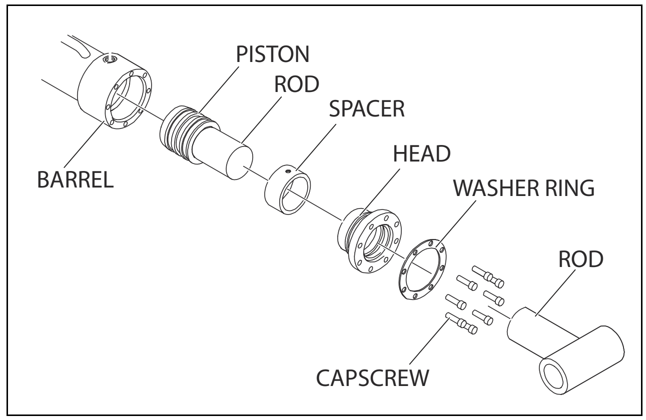


Figure 5-45. Rod Assembly Installation

20. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head bolts and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and bolts. Torque bolts to 20 ft. lbs. (27 Nm).

21. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves.

22. Install the counterbalance holding valve and fittings in the rod port block, using new o-rings as applicable. Torque valves to 50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm).

Main Boom Lift Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Remove the counterbalance valve and fittings from the cylinder port block. Discard o-rings.
4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

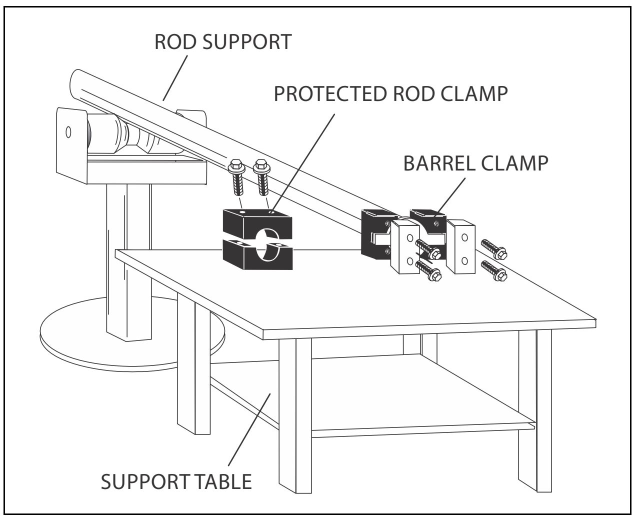


Figure 5-46. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

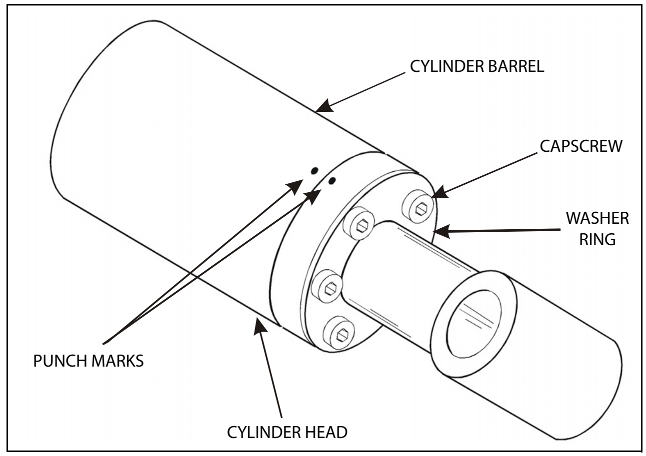


Figure 5-47. Capscrew Removal

6. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

7. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

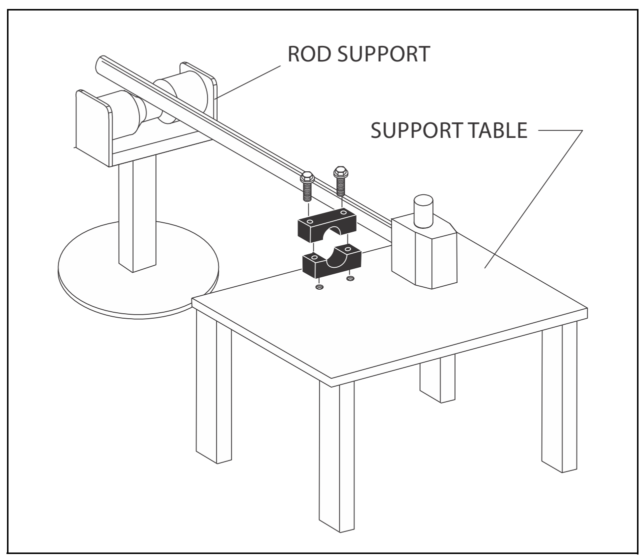
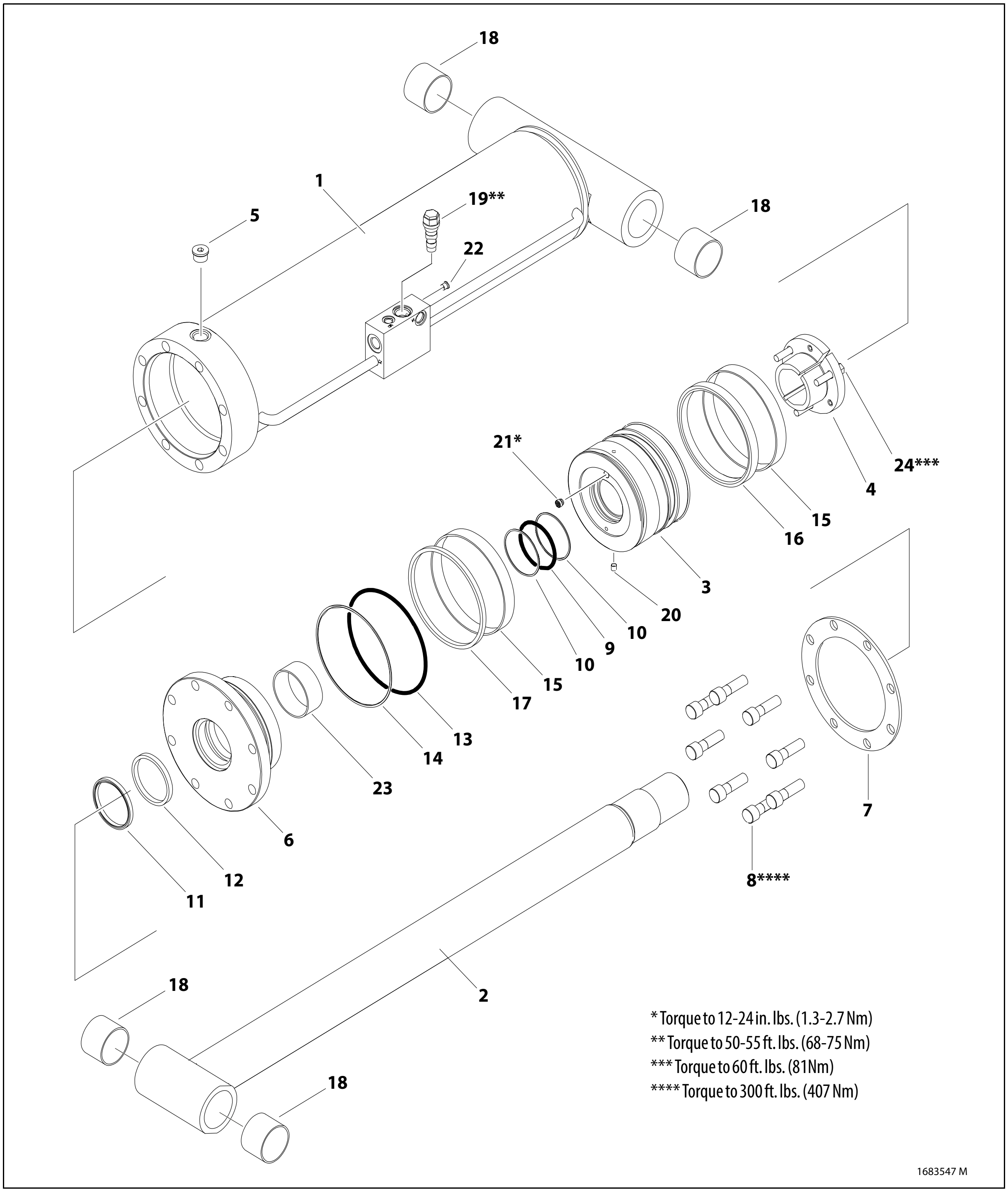


Figure 5-48. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Barrel
2. Rod
3. Piston
4. Tapered Bushing
5. Plug
6. Head
7. Washer Ring
8. Capscrew
9. O-ring
10. Backup Ring
11. Wiper
12. Rod Seal
13. O-ring
14. Backup Ring
15. Wear Ring
16. T-Seal
17. Seal
18. Bushing
19. Counterbalance Valve
20. Orifice
21. Check Valve
22. Plug
23. Wear Ring
24. Capscrew

Figure 5-49. Main Boom Lift Cylinder

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
9. Remove capscrew from drilled holes.
10. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
11. Remove the bushing from the piston.

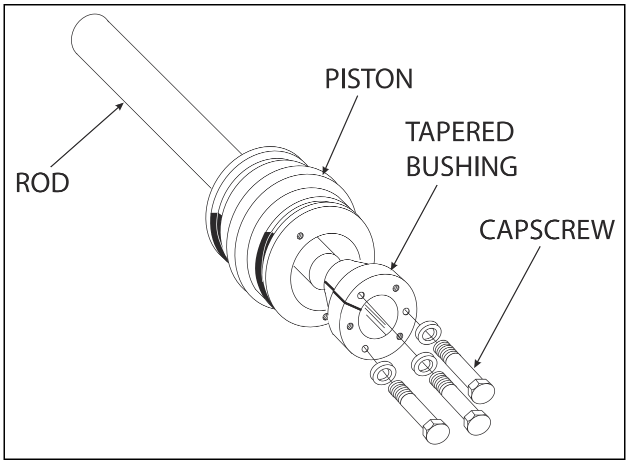


Figure 5-50. Tapered Bushing Removal

12. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
13. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, T-seal, seal, and backup rings.
14. Remove check valve from the piston.
15. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

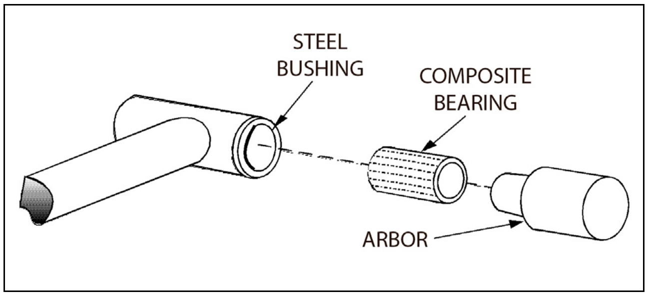


Figure 5-51. Composite Bearing Installation

12. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.

13. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.

14. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

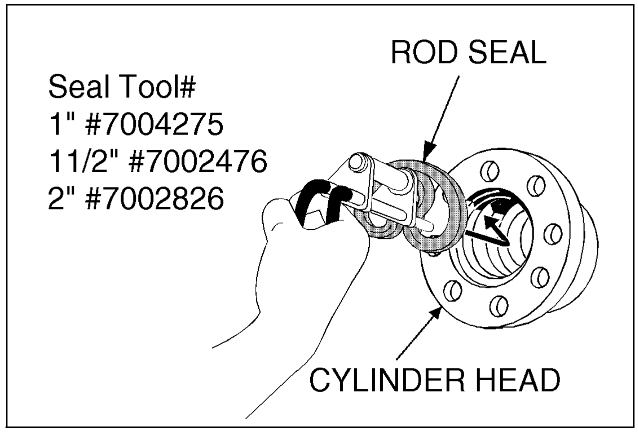


Figure 5-52. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

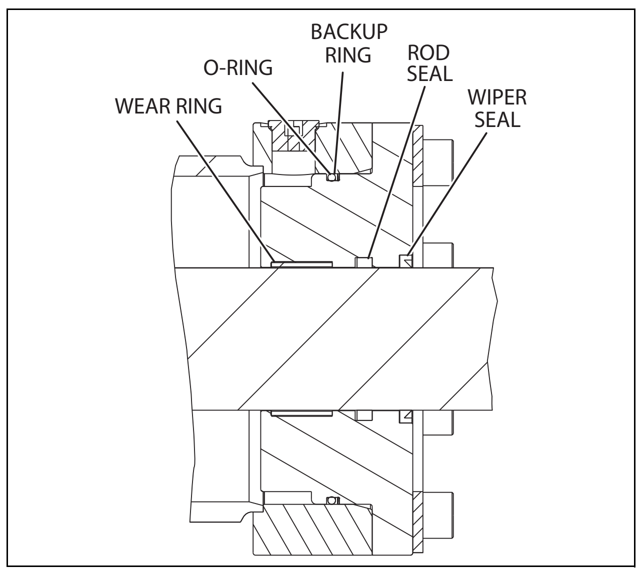


Figure 5-53. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

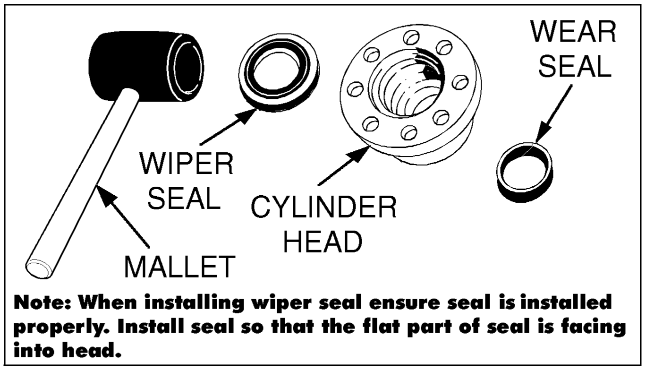


Figure 5-54. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

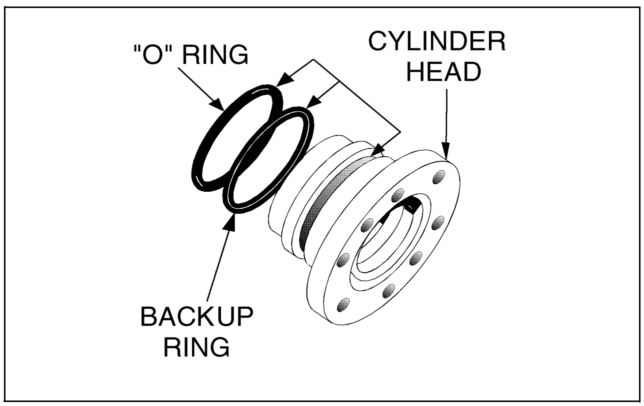


Figure 5-55. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install washer ring onto rod, carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.
5. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.
6. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.
7. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod and hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.
8. Install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

9. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

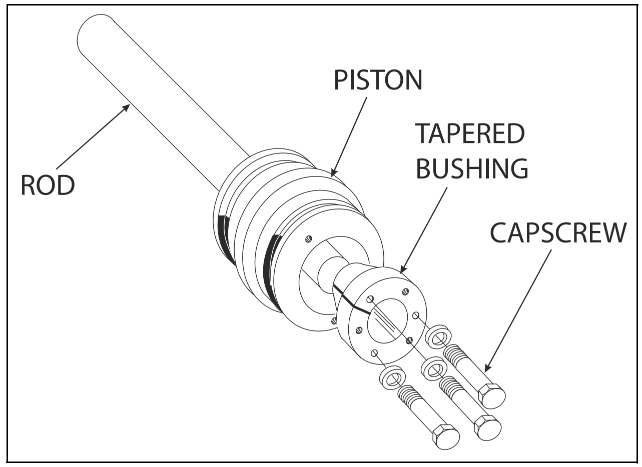


Figure 5-56. Tapered Bushing Installation

10. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 60 ft. lbs. (81 Nm).
11. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:
    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.
    b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

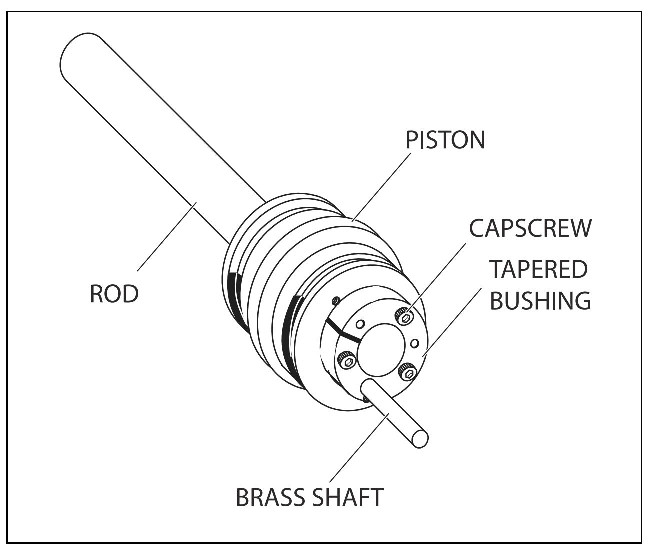


Figure 5-57. Seating the Tapered Bearing

12. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 60 ft. lbs. (81 Nm).

NOTE: *Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on treads of check valve.*

13. Install check valve into piston and torque to 12-24 in. lbs. (1.3-2.7 Nm).

14. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

15. Place new T-seal and wear rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

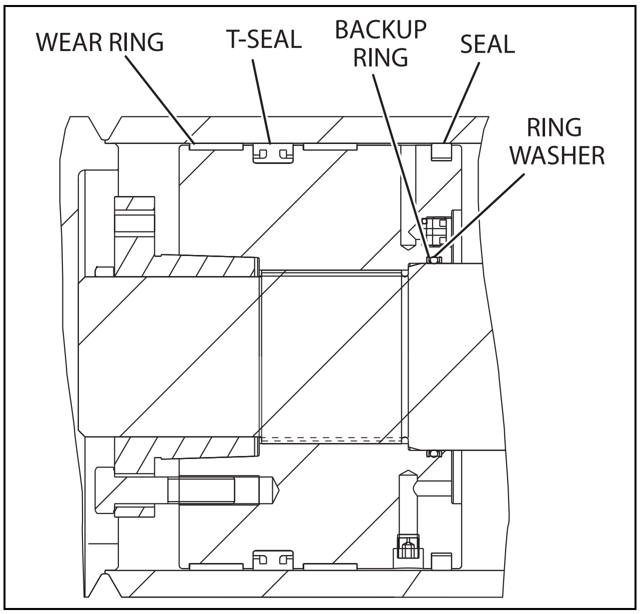


Figure 5-58. Piston Seal Kit Installation

16. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

17. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading wear ring, T-seal, and seal are not damaged or dislodged.

18. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

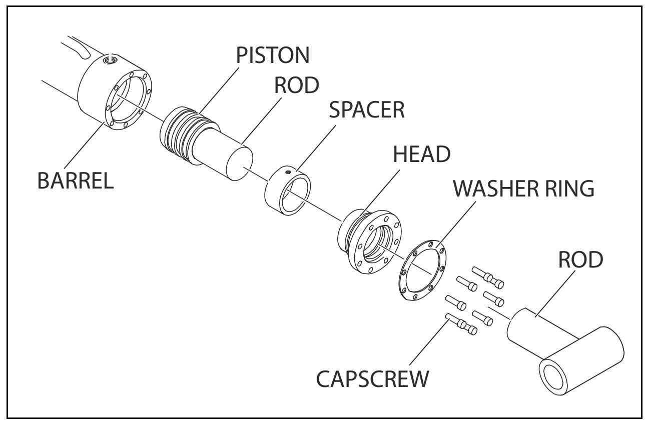


Figure 5-59. Rod Assembly Installation

19. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head bolts and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and bolts. Torque bolts to 300 ft. lbs. (407 Nm).

20. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves.

21. Install the counterbalance holding valve and fittings in the rod port block, using new o-rings as applicable. Torque valves to 50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm).

Tower Boom Lift Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Remove the counterbalance valve and fittings from the cylinder port block. Discard o-rings.
4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

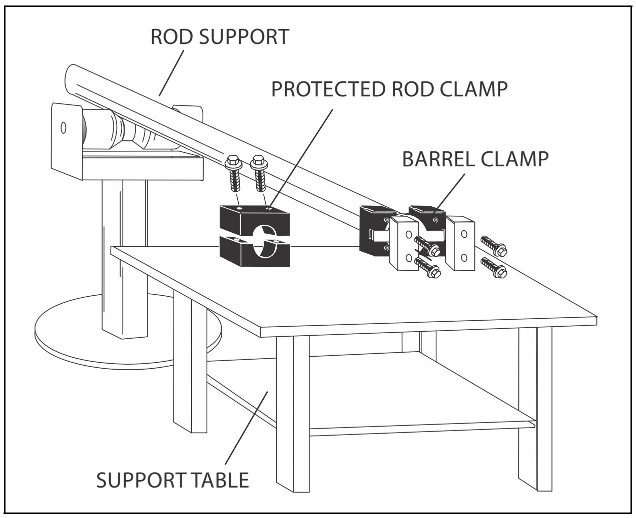


Figure 5-60. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

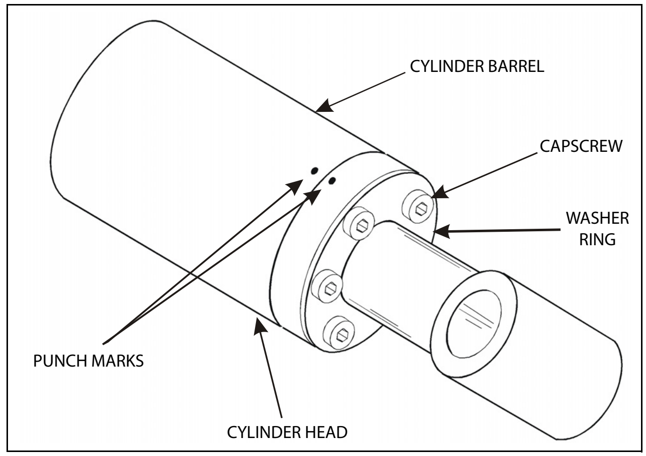


Figure 5-61. Capscrew Removal

6. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

7. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

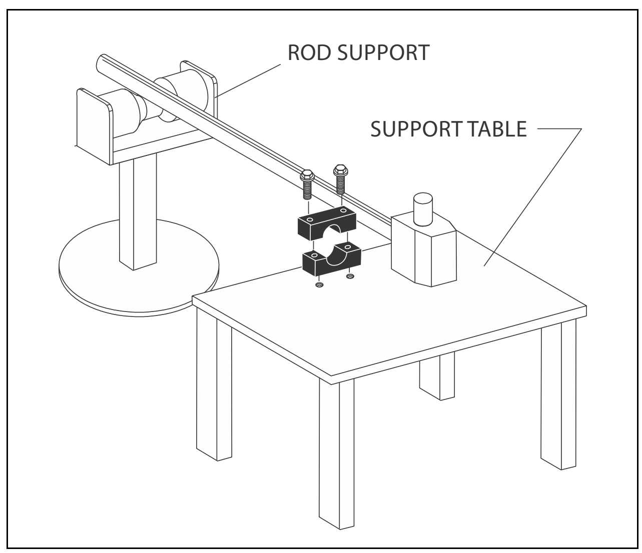
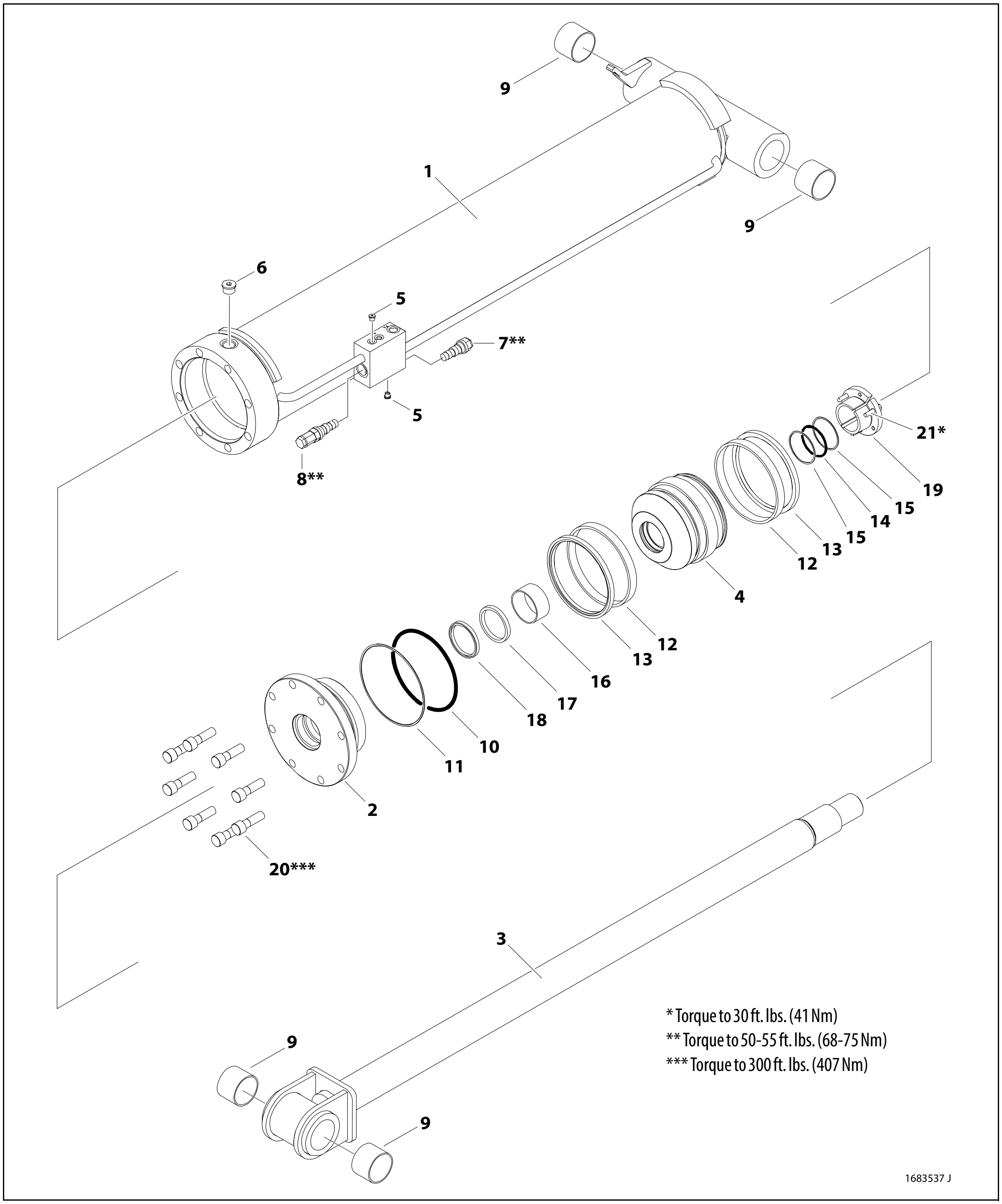


Figure 5-62. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Barrel
2. Head
3. Rod
4. Piston
5. Plug
6. Plug
7. Counterbalance Valve
8. Counterbalance Valve
9. Bushing
10. O-ring
11. Lock Ring
12. Hydrolock Seal
13. Guidelock Ring
14. O-ring
15. Backup Ring
16. Wear Ring
17. Seal
18. Wiper
19. Tapered Bushing
20. Capscrew
21. Capscrew

Figure 5-63. Tower Boom Lift Cylinder

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
9. Remove capscrew from drilled holes.
10. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
11. Remove the bushing from the piston.

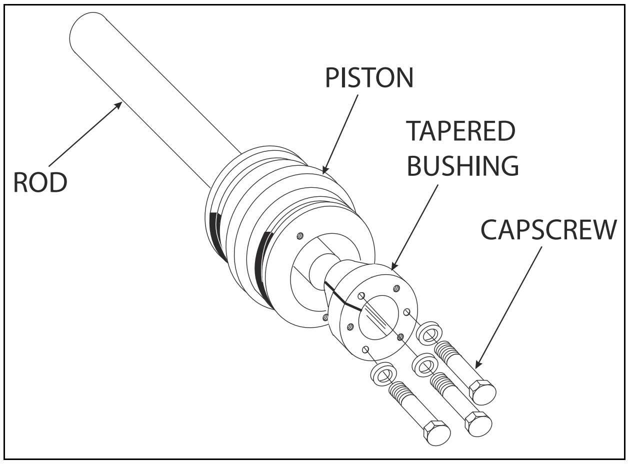


Figure 5-64. Tapered Bushing Removal

12. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
13. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, guidelock rings, hydrolock seals, and backup rings.
14. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

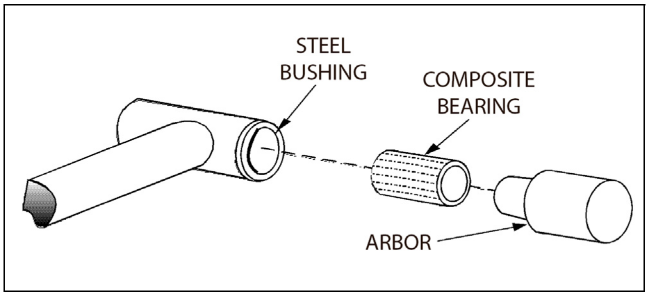


Figure 5-65. Composite Bearing Installation

12. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.

13. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.

14. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

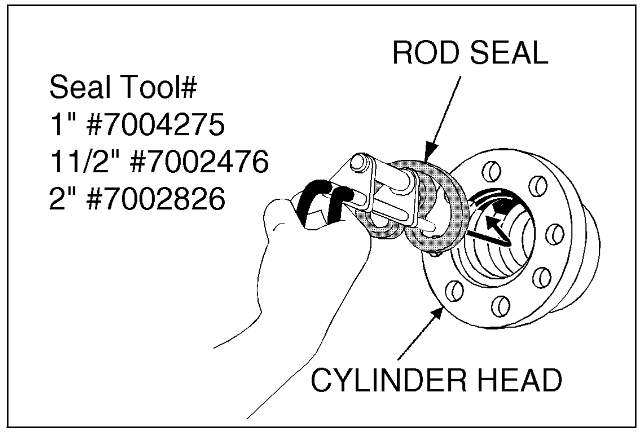


Figure 5-66. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

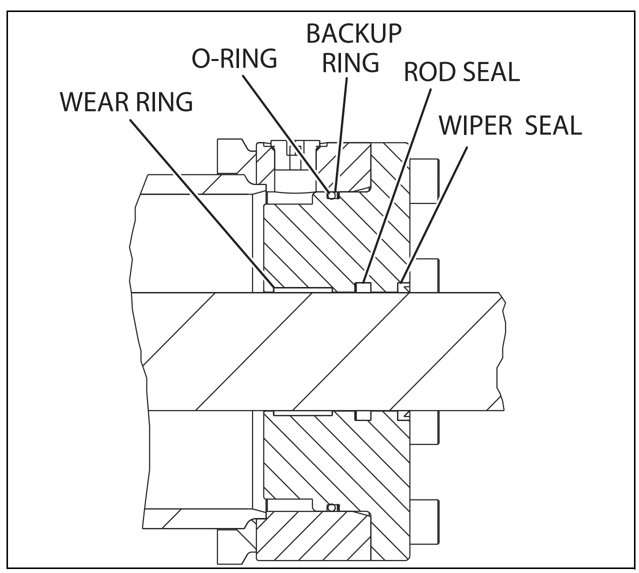
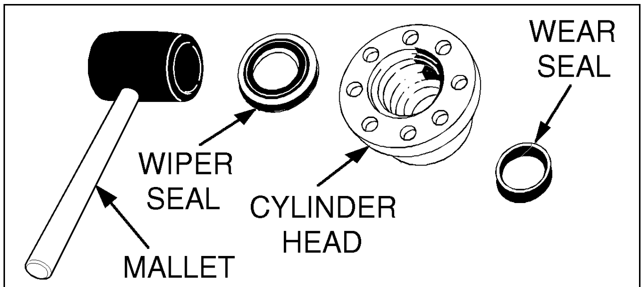


Figure 5-67. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.



Note: When installing wiper seal ensure seal is installed properly. Install seal so that the flat part of seal is facing into head.

Figure 5-68. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

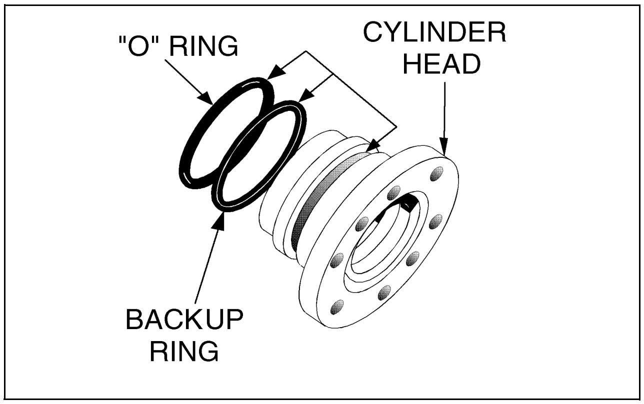


Figure 5-69. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.

5. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.

6. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.

7. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.

8. Thread piston onto rod hand tight and install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

9. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

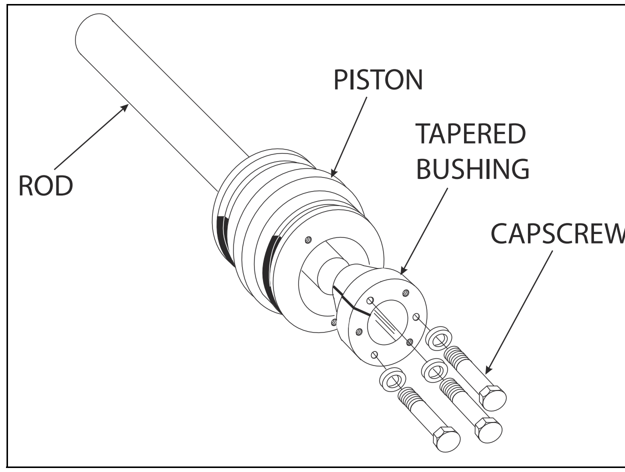


Figure 5-70. Tapered Bushing Installation

10. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm).

11. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:

    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.

    b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

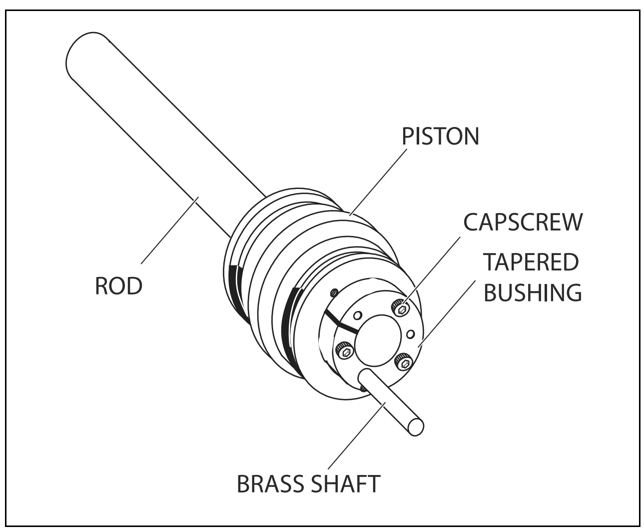


Figure 5-71. Seating the Tapered Bearing

12. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm).

13. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING HYDROLOCK PISTON SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. REFER TO HYDROLOCK PISTON SEAL INSTALLATION FOR CORRECT SEAL ORIENTATION. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

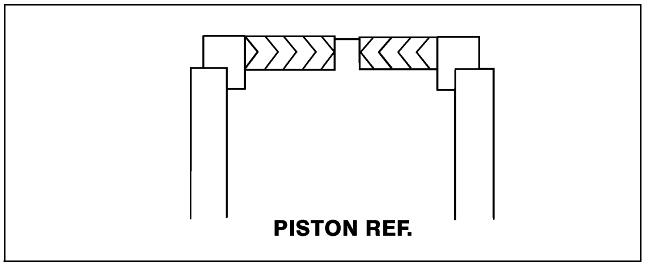


Figure 5-72. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation

14. Place new hydrolock seal and guidelock rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

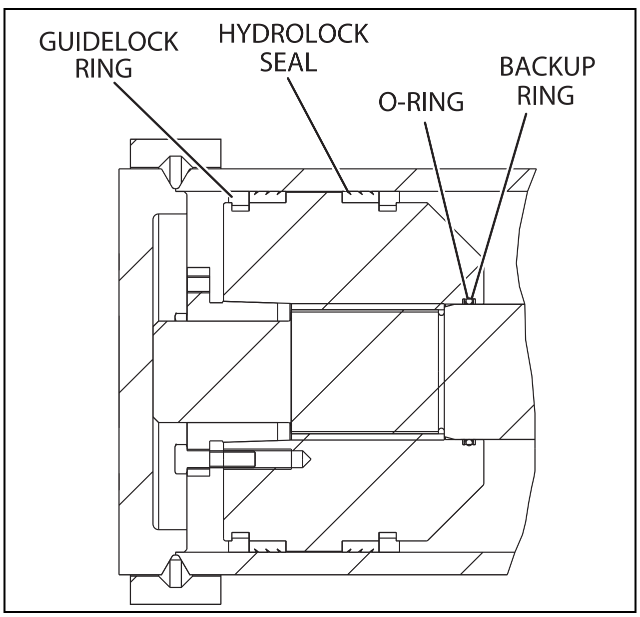


Figure 5-73. Piston Seal Kit Installation

15. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

16. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston hydrolock seals and guidelock rings are not damaged or dislodged.

17. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

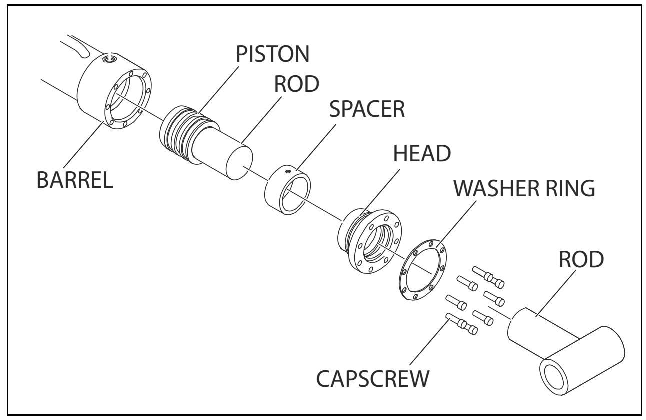


Figure 5-74. Rod Assembly Installation

18. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head bolts and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and bolts. Torque bolts to 300 ft. lbs. (407 Nm).

19. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves.

20. Install the counterbalance holding valve and fittings in the rod port block, using new o-rings as applicable. Torque valves to 50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm).

Master Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

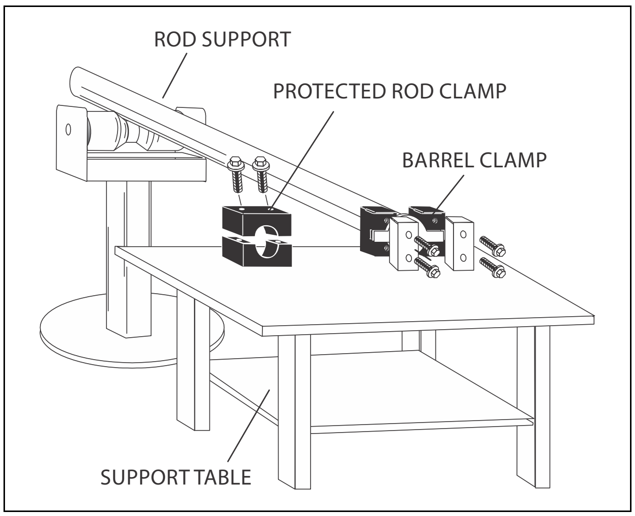


Figure 5-75. Cylinder Barrel Support

4. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

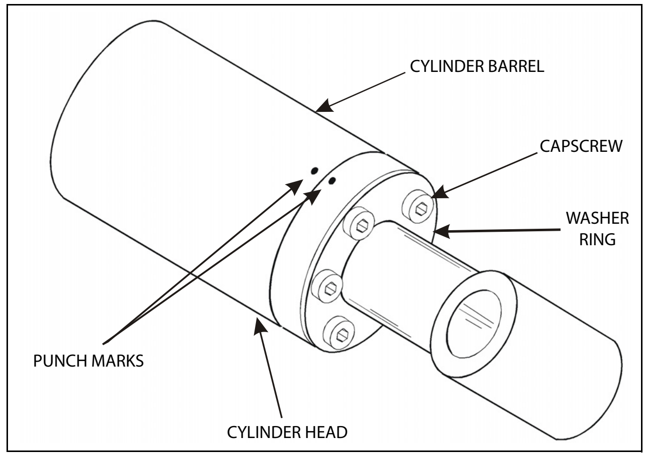


Figure 5-76. Capscrew Removal

5. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

6. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

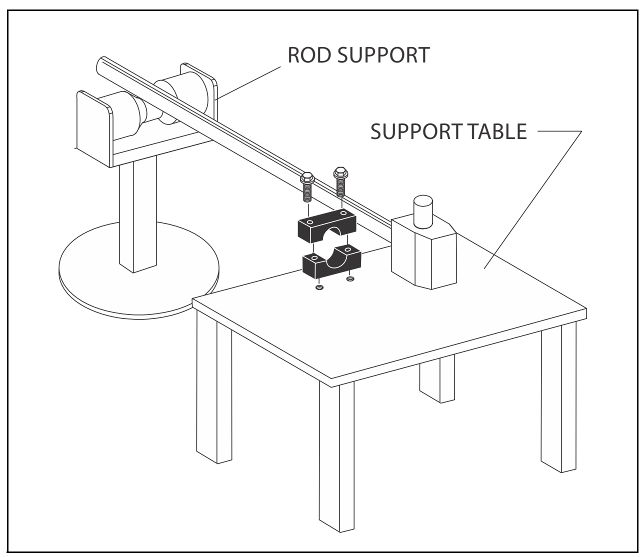
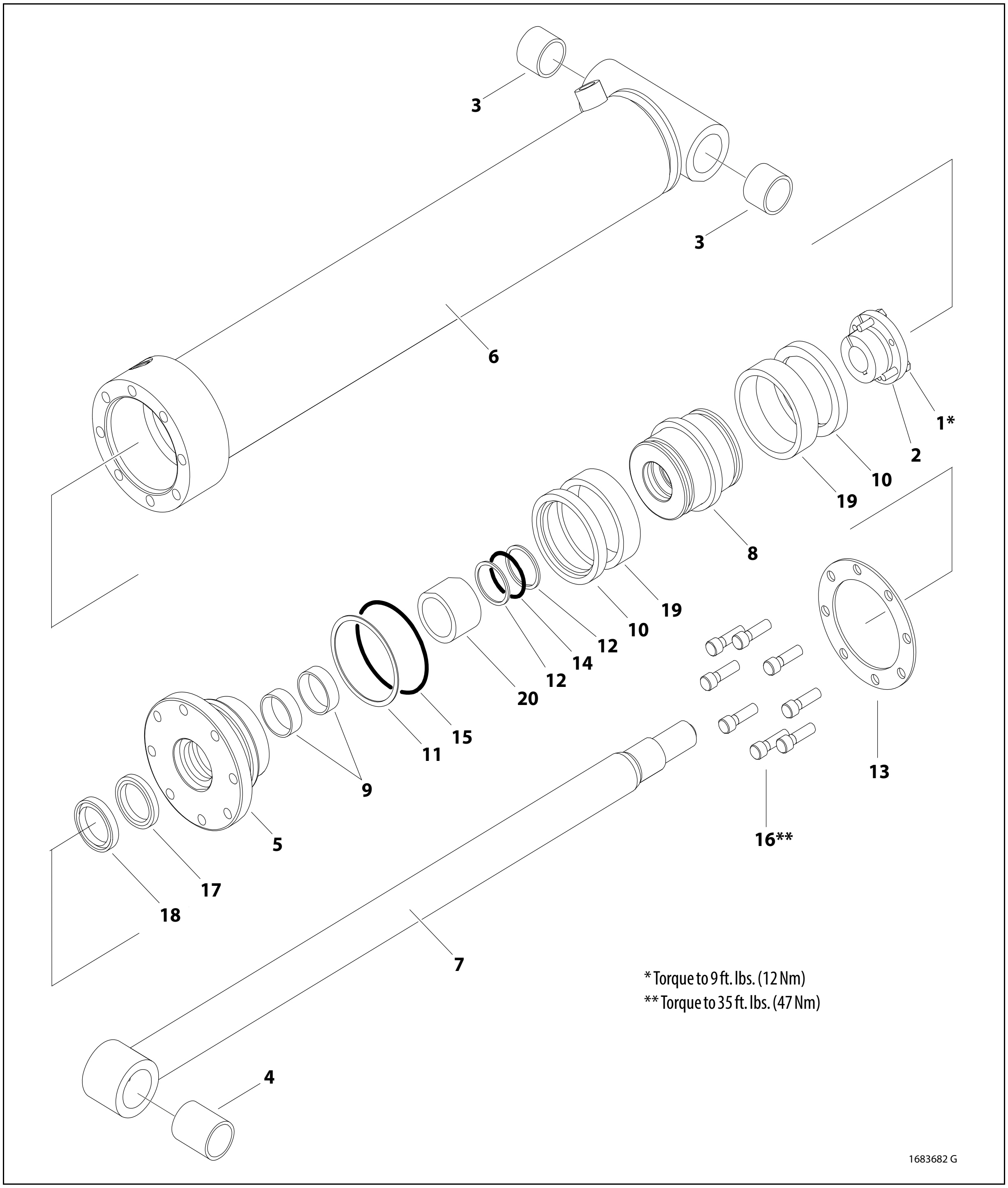


Figure 5-77. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Capscrew	5. Head	9. Wear Ring	13. Washer Ring	17. Rod Seal
2. Tapered Bushing	6. Barrel	10. Guidelock Ring	14. O-ring	18. Wiper
3. Bushing	7. Rod	11. Backup Ring	15. O-ring	19. Hydrolock Seal
4. Bushing	8. Piston	12. Backup Ring	16. Capscrew	20. Tube Spacer

Figure 5-78. Master Cylinder

7. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
8. Remove capscrew from drilled holes.
9. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
10. Remove the bushing from the piston.

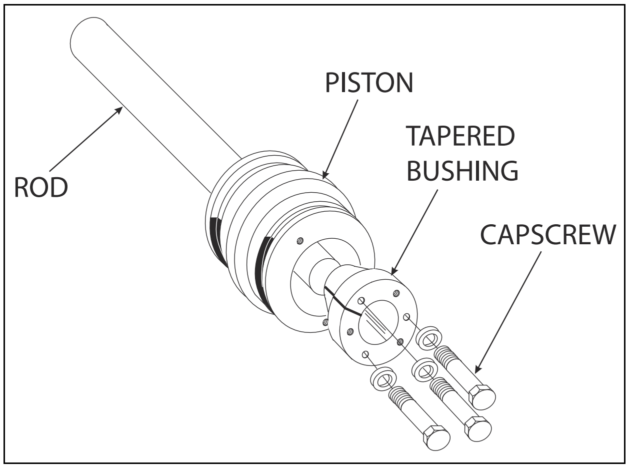


Figure 5-79. Tapered Bushing Removal

11. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
12. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, guidelock rings, hydrolock seals, and backup rings.
13. Remove piston spacer from the rod.
14. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

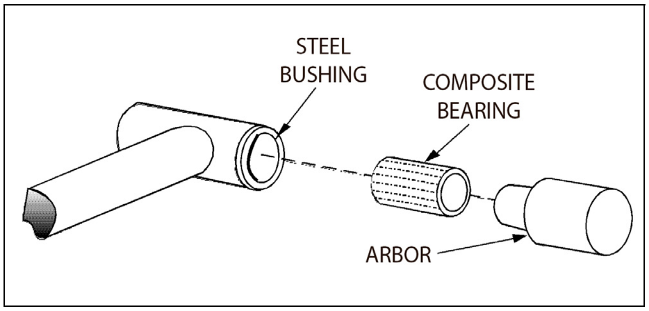


Figure 5-80. Composite Bearing Installation

12. Inspect spacer for burrs and sharp edges. If necessary, dress inside diameter surface with Scotch Brite or equivalent.

13. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.

14. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.

15. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

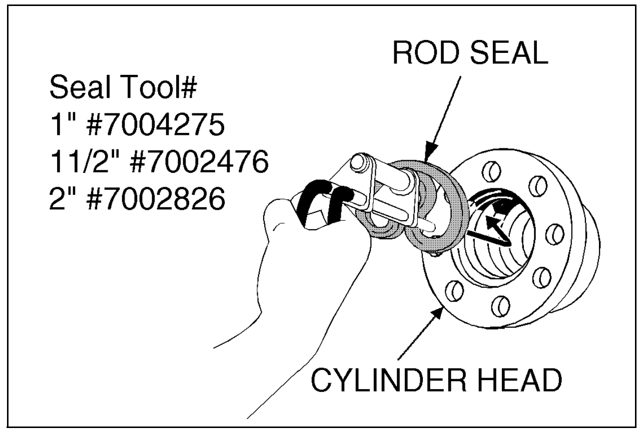


Figure 5-81. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

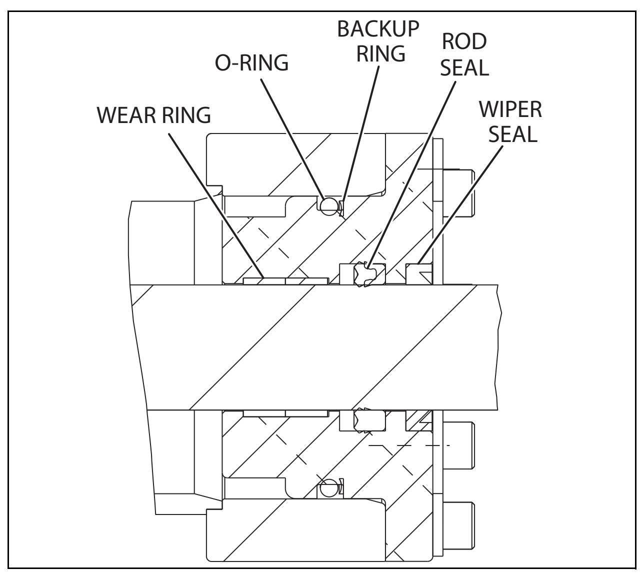


Figure 5-82. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

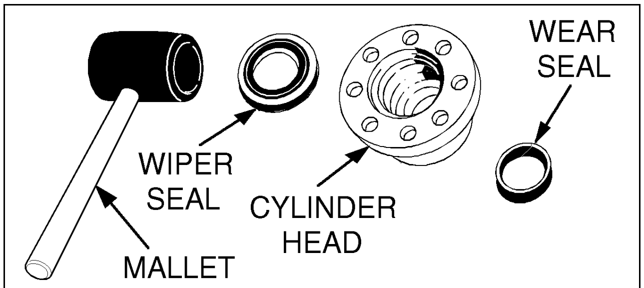


Figure 5-83. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

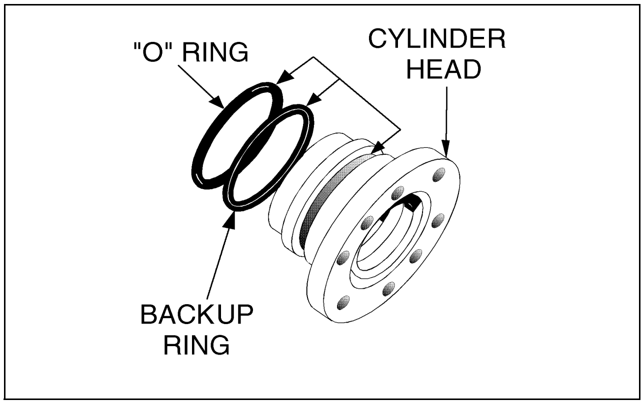


Figure 5-84. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install washer ring onto rod, carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.

5. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.

6. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.

7. Install piston spacer onto the cylinder rod.

8. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod and hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.

9. Thread piston onto rod until it abuts the spacer end and install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

10. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

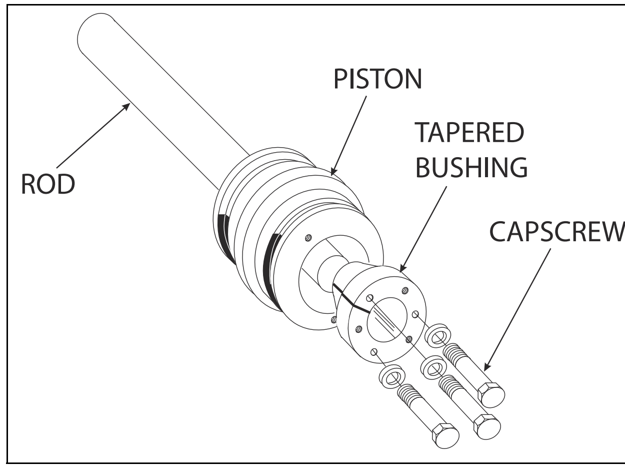


Figure 5-85. Tapered Bushing Installation

11. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).

12. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:

    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.

    b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

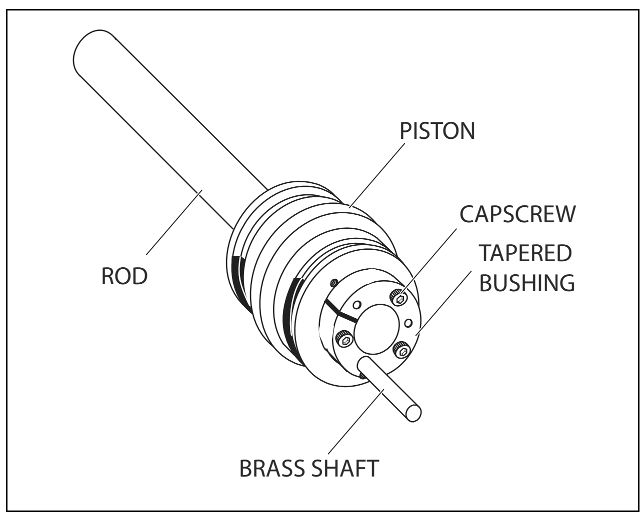


Figure 5-86. Seating the Tapered Bearing

13. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).

14. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING HYDROLOCK PISTON SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. REFER TO HYDROLOCK PISTON SEAL INSTALLATION FOR CORRECT SEAL ORIENTATION. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

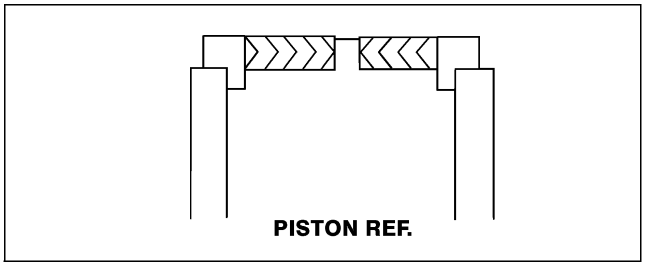


Figure 5-87. Hydrolock Piston Seal Installation

15. Place new hydrolock seal and guidelock rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

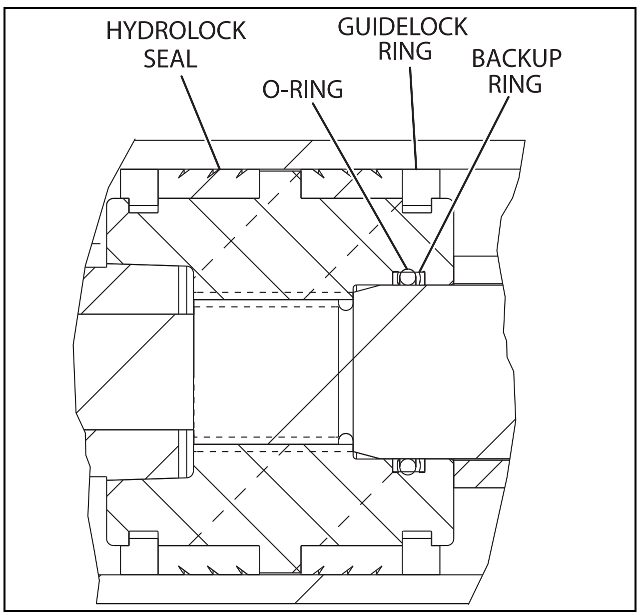


Figure 5-88. Piston Seal Kit Installation

16. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

17. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading hydrolock seals and guidelock rings are not damaged or dislodged.

18. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

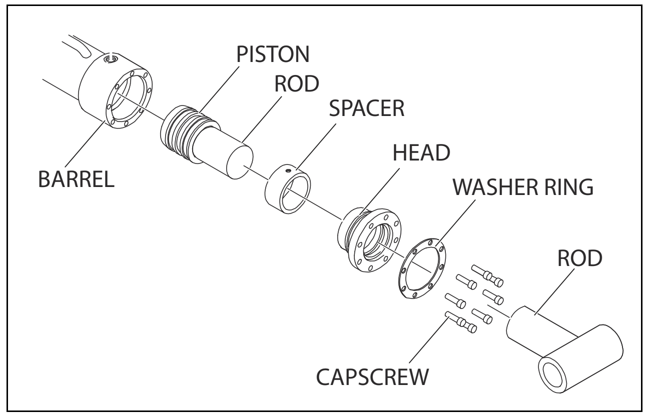


Figure 5-89. Rod Assembly Installation

19. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head bolts and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and bolts. Torque bolts to 35 ft. lbs. (50 Nm).

Steer Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

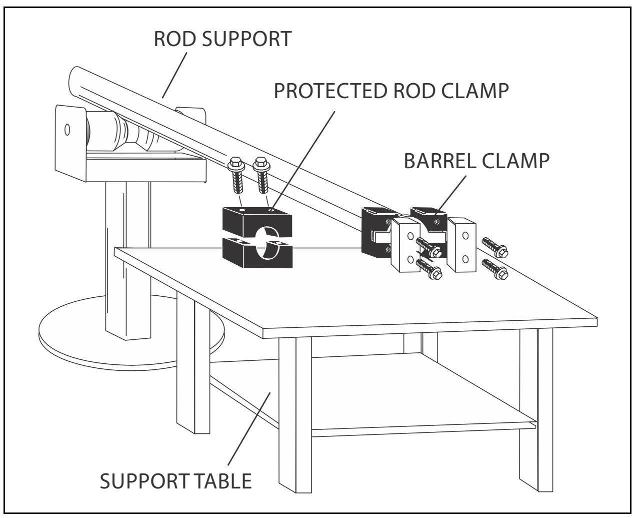


Figure 5-90. Cylinder Barrel Support

4. Using a hook spanner, loosen the spanner nut retainer and remove spanner nut from cylinder barrel.

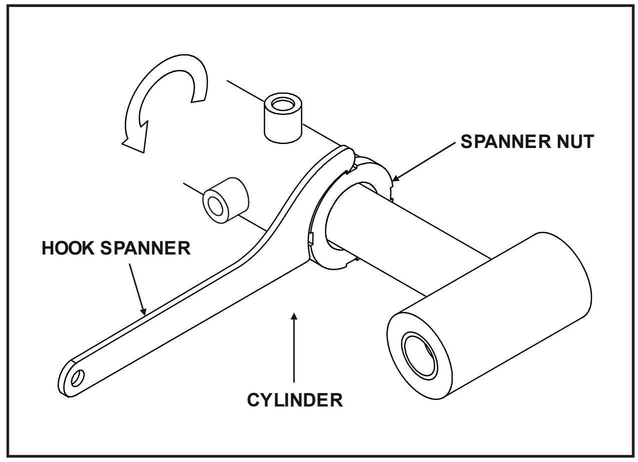


Figure 5-91. Spanner Nut Removal

5. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

6. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

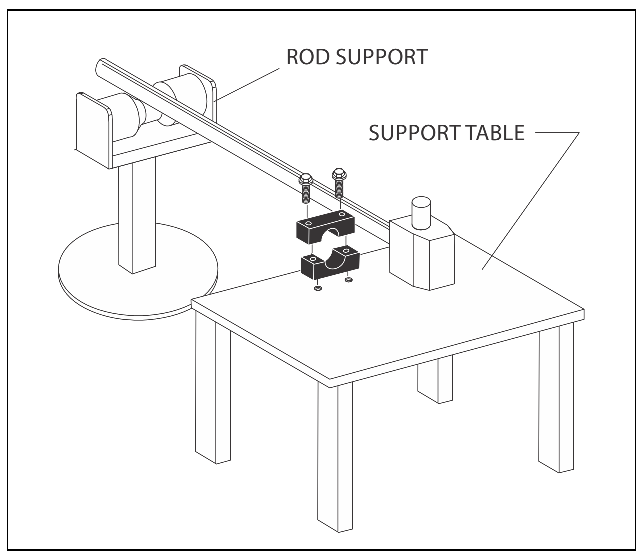
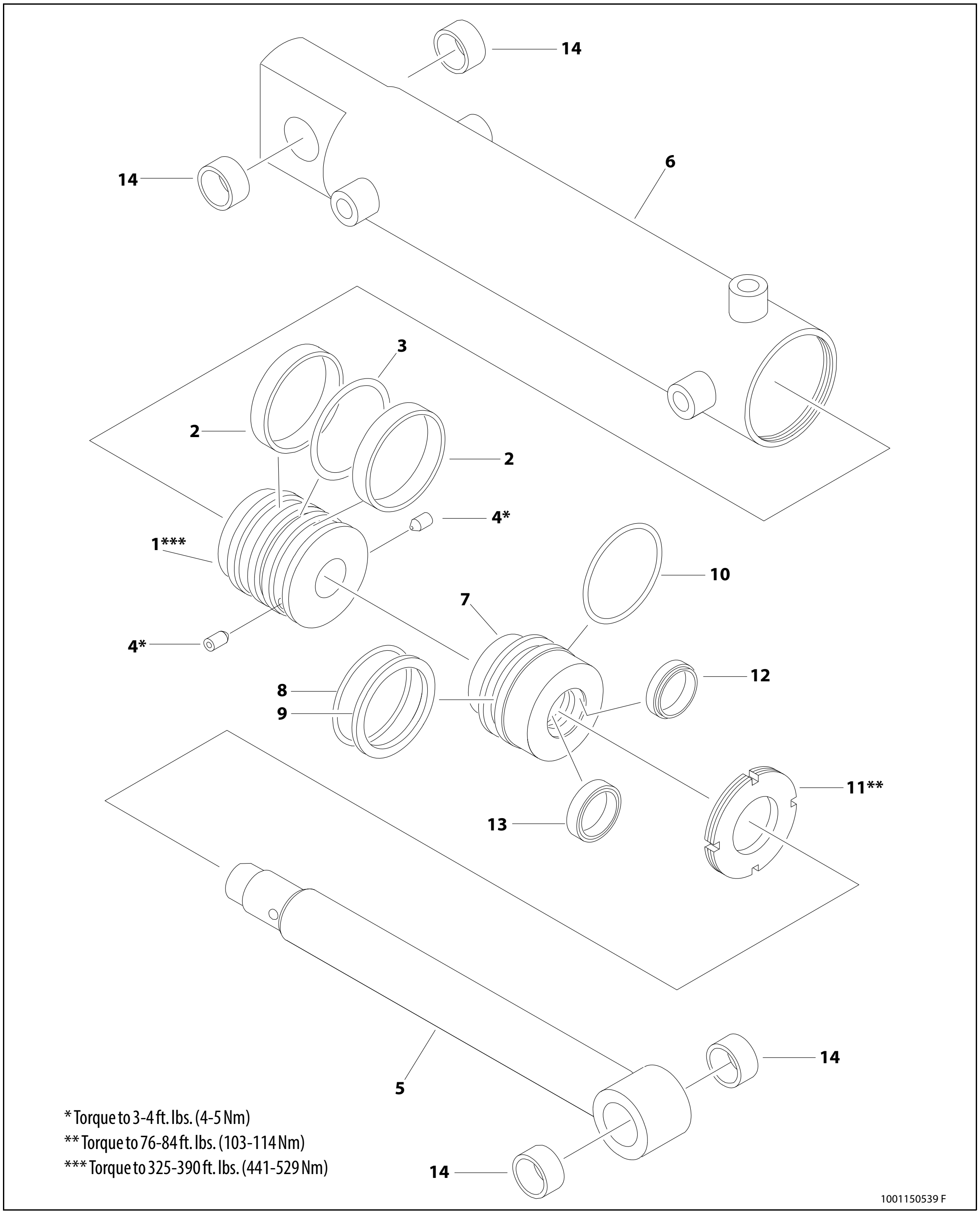


Figure 5-92. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Piston	6. Barrel	11. Spanner Nut
2. Wear Ring	7. Head	12. Wiper Seal
3. Seal	8. O-ring	13. Rod Seal
4. Setscrew	9. Backup Ring	14. Bushing
5. Rod	10. C- Ring	

Figure 5-93. Steer Cylinder

7. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
8. Remove the setscrews from the piston.
9. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
10. Remove and discard the piston seal and wear rings.
11. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-ring, backup ring, c-ring, rod seal, and wiper seal.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
6. Inspect threaded portion of barrel for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
7. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
8. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
9. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
10. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
11. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

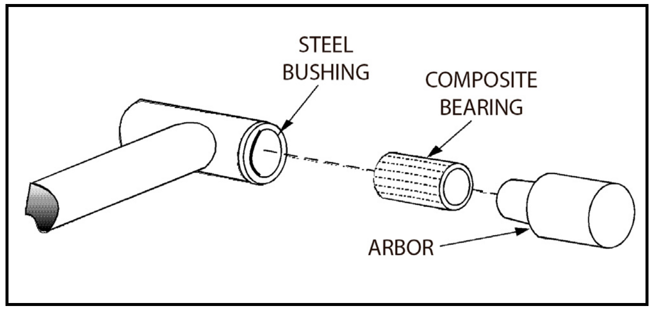


Figure 5-94. Composite Bearing Installation

12. Inspect spacer for burrs and sharp edges. If necessary, dress inside diameter surface with Scotch Brite or equivalent.
13. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.
14. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.
15. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

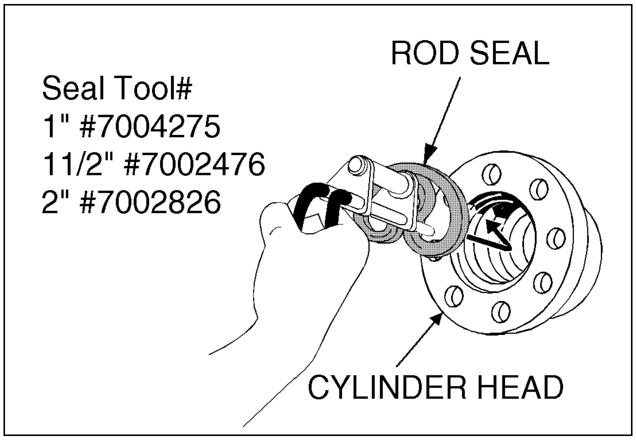


Figure 5-95. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

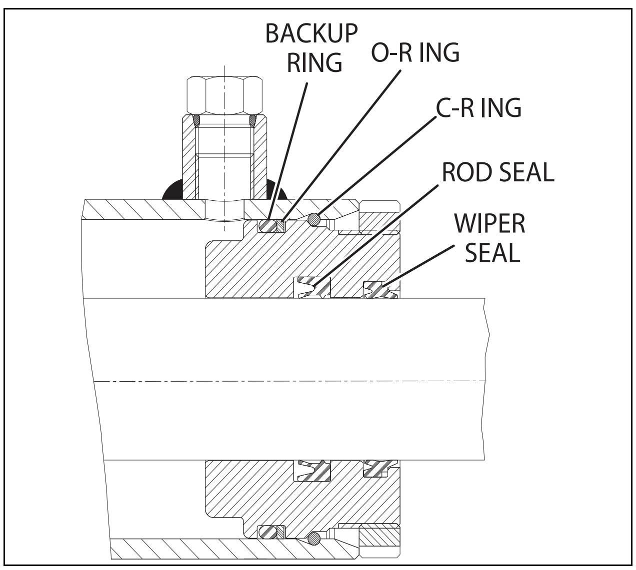
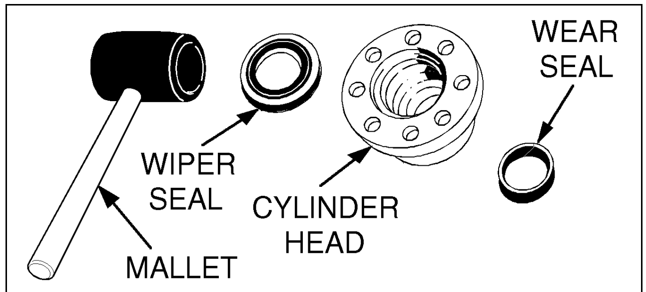


Figure 5-96. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.



Note: When installing wiper seal ensure seal is installed properly. Install seal so that the flat part of seal is facing into head.

Figure 5-97. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring, backup ring and c-ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

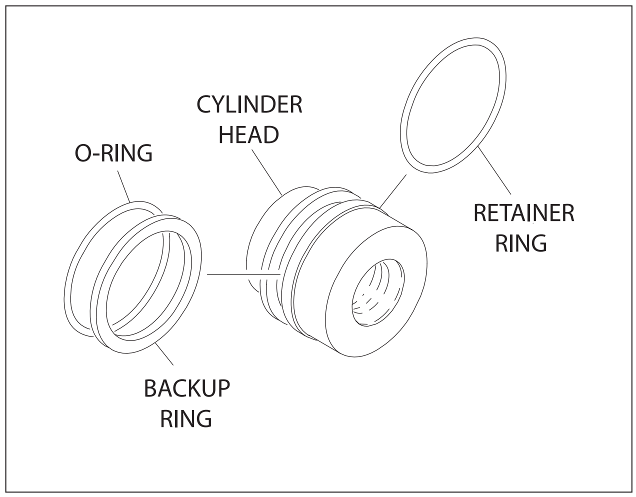


Figure 5-98. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install spanner nut onto rod. Carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.
5. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.

NOTE: *Apply Loctite #243 on piston threads and setscrews.*

6. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged. Torque to 325-390 ft. lbs. (441-529 Nm).
7. Install the setscrews on the piston. Torque to 3-4 ft. lbs. (4-5 Nm).
8. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.
9. Place new seal and wear ring in the outer piston diameter grooves. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

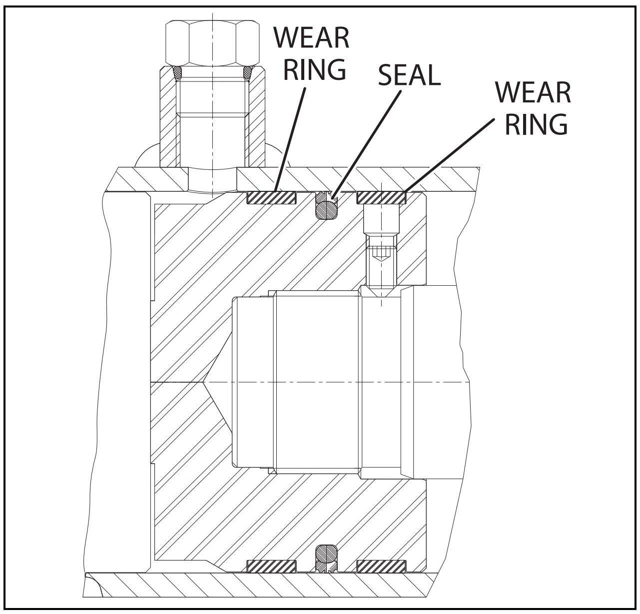


Figure 5-99. Piston Seal Kit Installation

10. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

11. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading wear rings and seal are not damaged or dislodged.
12. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

NOTE: *Apply Loctite #243 on spanner nut threads.*

13. Secure spanner nut into the cylinder barrel. Torque nut to 76-84 ft. lbs. (103-114 Nm).
14. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves, if applicable.

Main Boom Telescope Cylinder

DISASSEMBLY

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. Remove capscrews and valve assembly from the barrel end. Discard o-rings.
4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

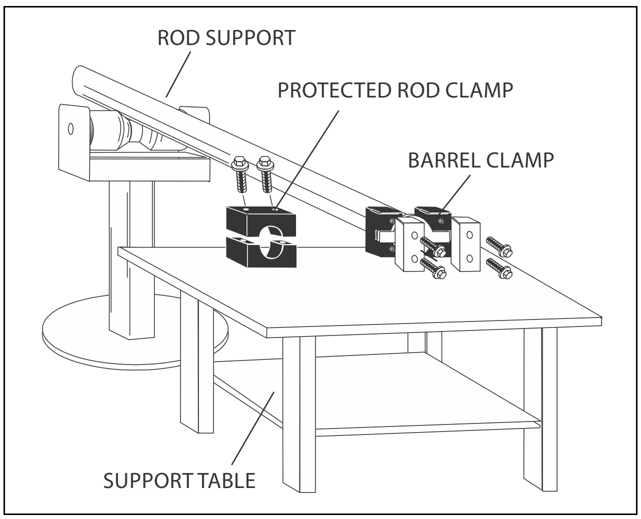


Figure 5-100. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the cylinder head retainer capscrews, and remove capscrews from cylinder barrel.

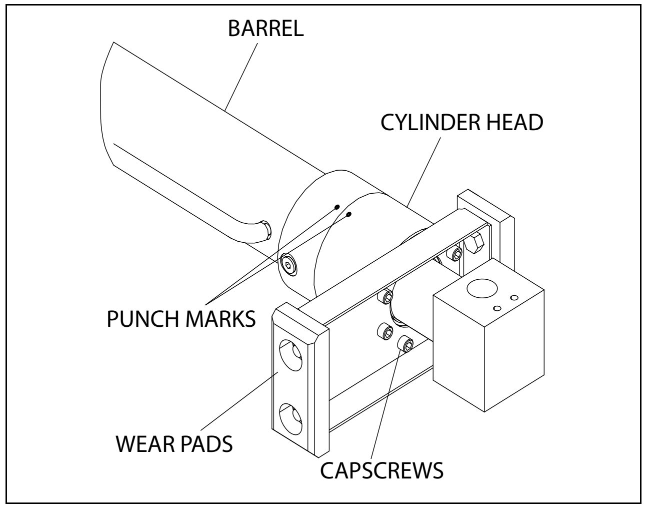


Figure 5-101. Capscrew Removal

6. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

7. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

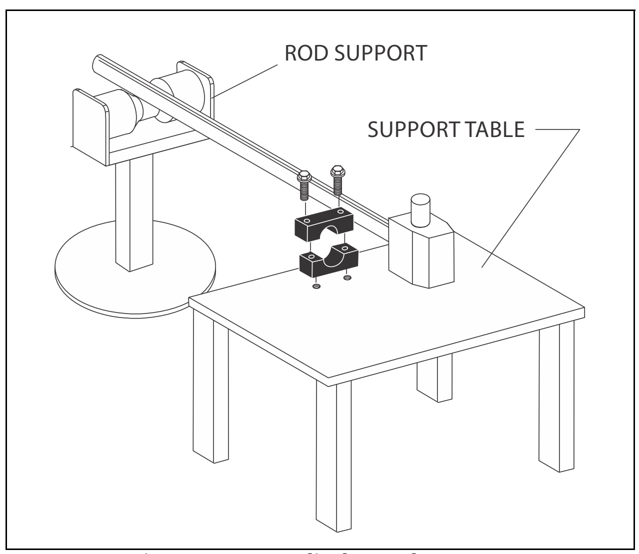
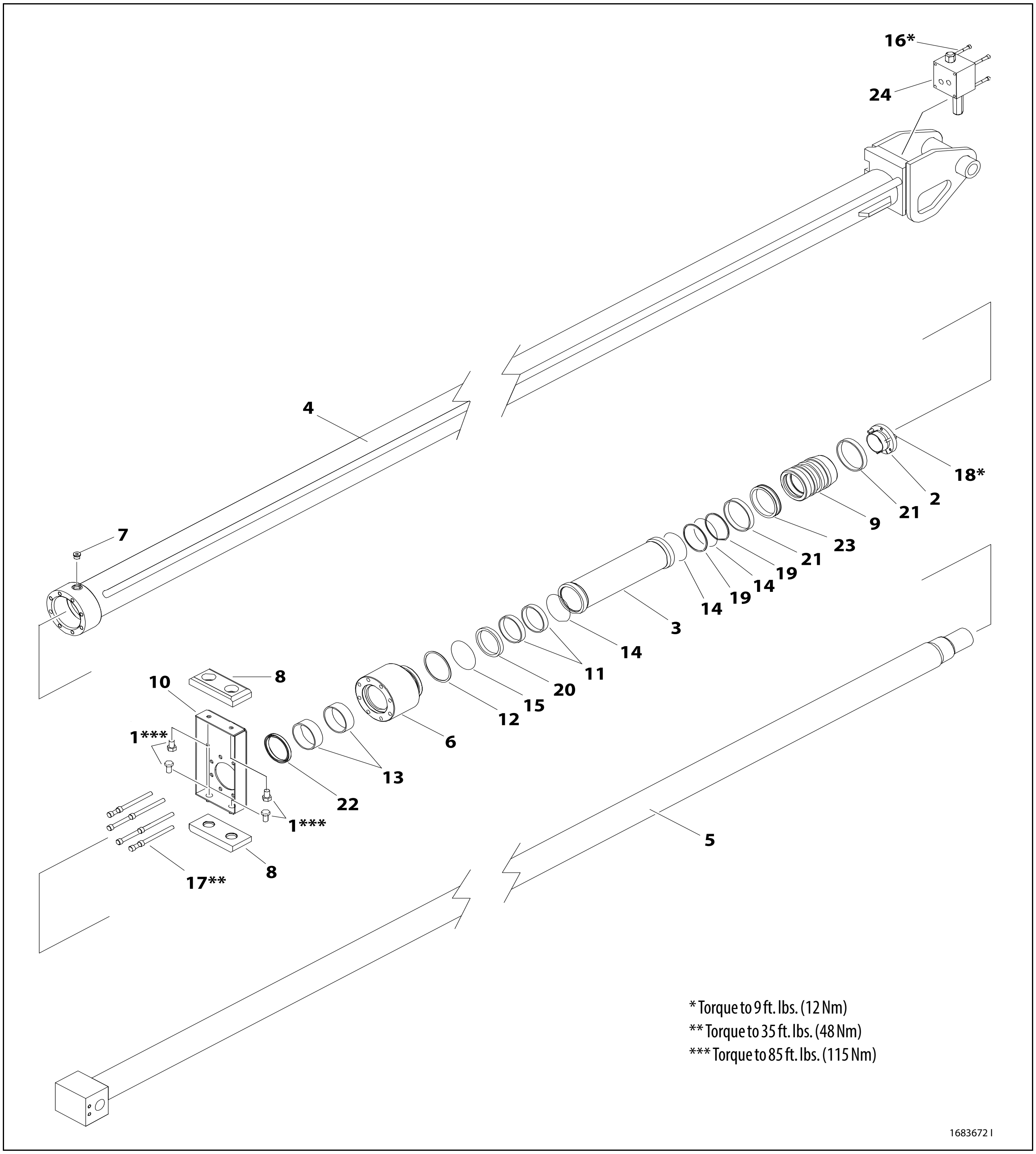


Figure 5-102. Cylinder Rod Support



1. Bolt	6. Head	11. Wear Ring	16. Capscrew	21. Wear Ring
2. Tapered Bushing	7. Plug	12. Backup Ring	17. Capscrew	22. Wiper
3. Tube Spacer	8. Wear Pad	13. Wear Ring	18. Capscrew	23. T-Seal
4. Barrel	9. Piston	14. O-ring	19. Backup Ring	24. Valve Assembly
5. Rod	10. Plate	15. O-ring	20. Rod Seal	

Figure 5-103. Main Boom Telescopic Cylinder

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.
9. Remove capscrews from drilled holes.
10. Insert the capscrews in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the capscrews until the bushing is loosen on the piston.
11. Remove the bushing from the piston.

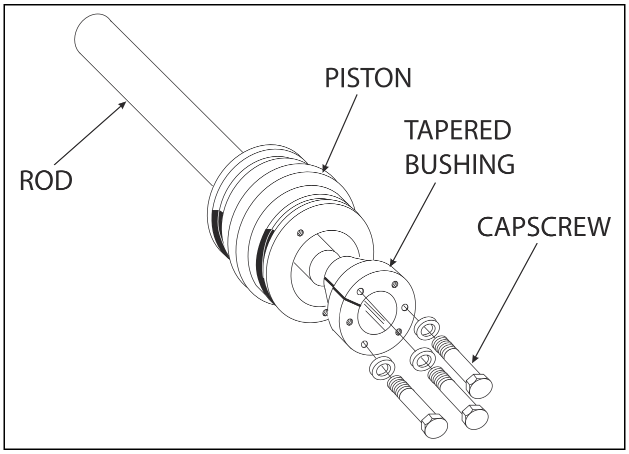


Figure 5-104. Tapered Bushing Removal

12. Screw the piston counterclockwise, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
13. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, T-seal, wear ring, and backup rings.
14. Remove piston spacer from the rod. Remove and discard the o-ring.
15. Remove capscrews to remove plate and wear pads.
16. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland. Discard the o-rings, backup rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect threaded portion of barrel for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
6. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
7. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
8. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
9. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
10. Inspect threaded portion of head for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
11. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
12. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
13. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inner side of steel bushing prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

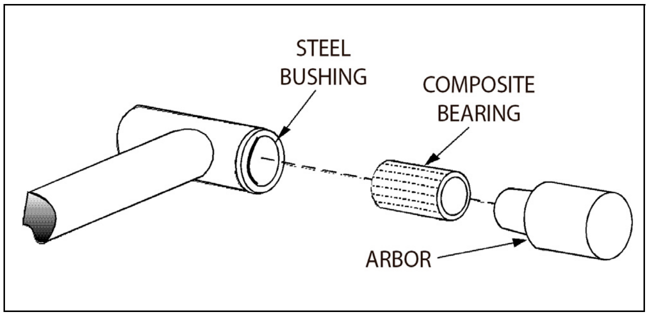


Figure 5-105. Composite Bearing Installation

14. Inspect spacer for burrs and sharp edges. If necessary, dress inside diameter surface with Scotch Brite or equivalent.
15. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.
16. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.
17. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

ASSEMBLY

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

NOTE: *Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.*

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

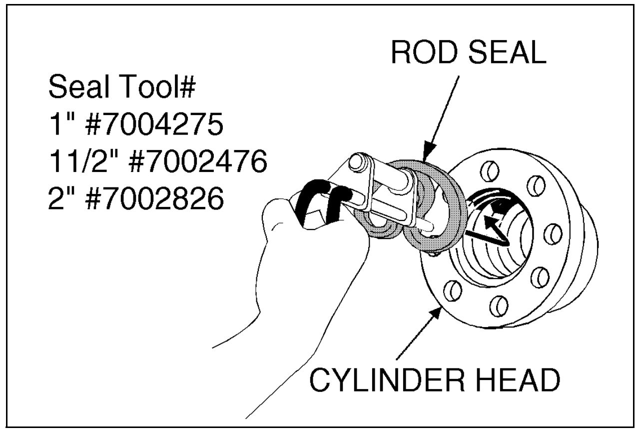


Figure 5-106. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING NEW SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

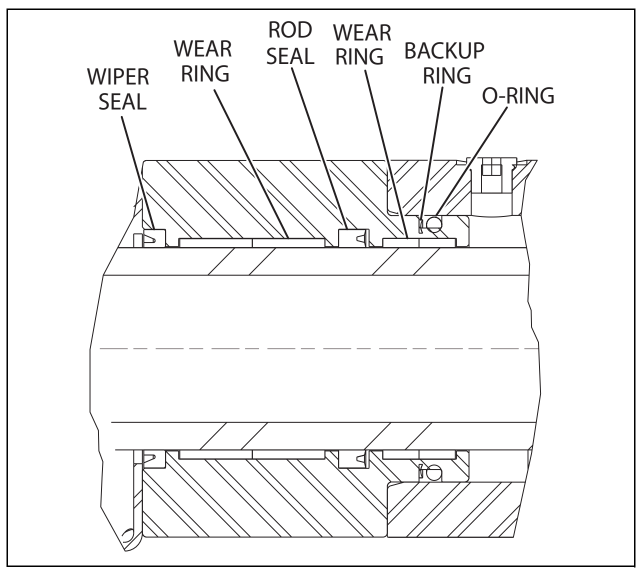


Figure 5-107. Cylinder Head Seal Installation

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

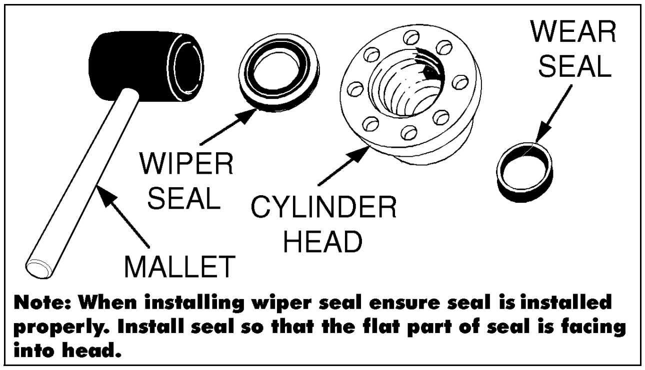


Figure 5-108. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new o-ring and backup ring in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

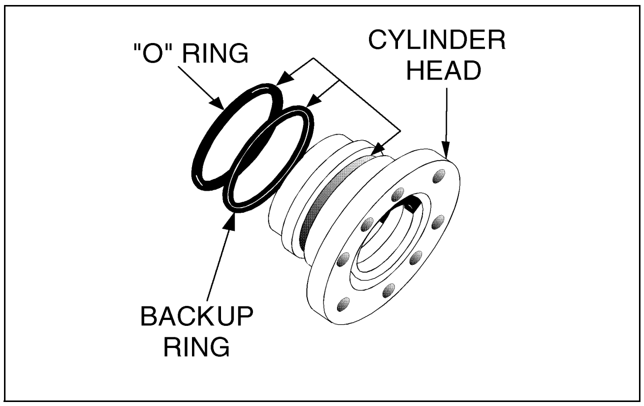


Figure 5-109. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install plate on to the rod. Use capscrews to attach wear pads on the plate.
5. Carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.
6. Install o-rings inside grooves of the piston spacer. Carefully slide the spacer on the rod.
7. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.
8. Place a new o-ring and backup rings in the inner piston diameter groove.
9. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod and hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and backup rings are not damaged or dislodged.
10. Thread piston onto rod until it abuts the spacer end and install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

11. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert capscrews through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

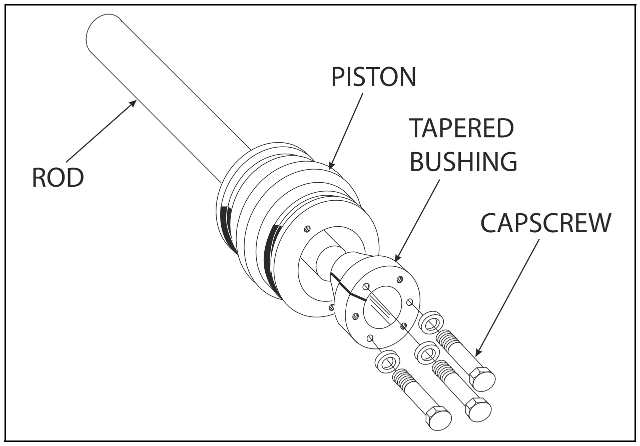


Figure 5-110. Tapered Bushing Installation

12. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).
13. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4 in. in diameter) as follows:
    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.
    b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

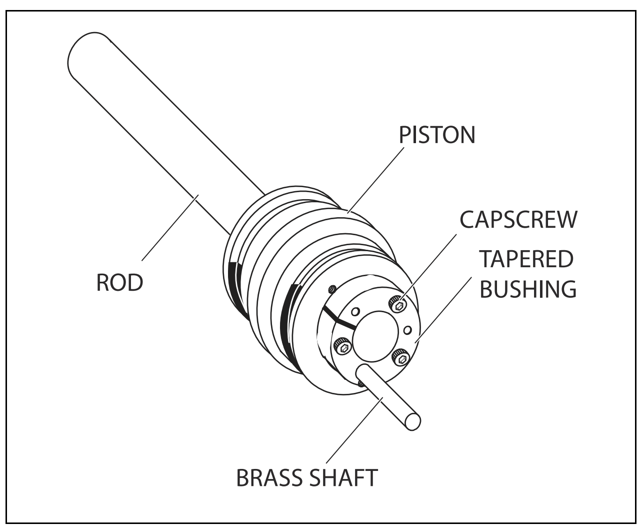


Figure 5-111. Seating the Tapered Bearing

14. Rotate the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).

15. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

16. Place T-seal and wear rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D. of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal).

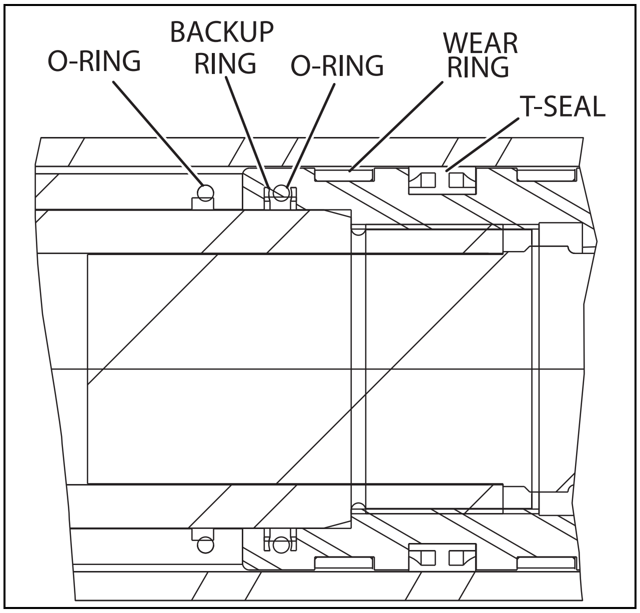


Figure 5-112. Piston Seal Kit Installation

17. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

18. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading wear ring and T-seal are not damaged or dislodged.

19. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

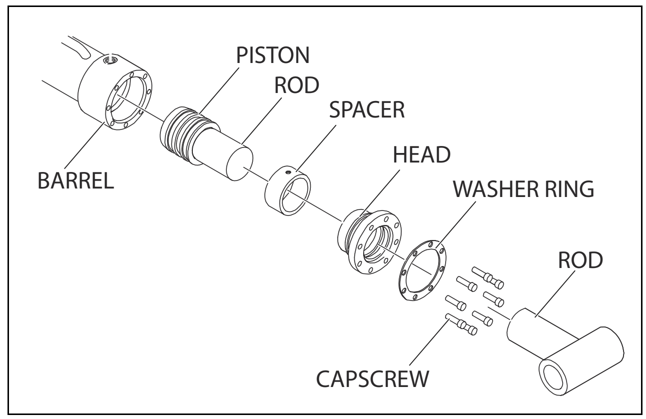


Figure 5-113. Rod Assembly Installation

20. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the socket head bolts and secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and bolts. Torque bolts to 35 ft. lbs. (50 Nm).

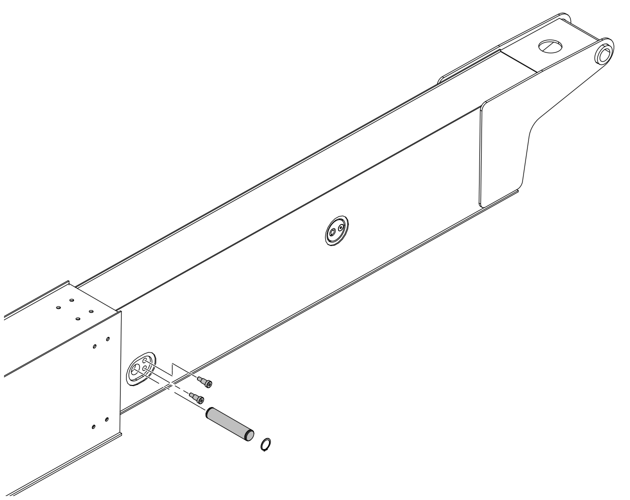
21. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the re-installation of any holding valve or valves.

22. Install the valve assembly. Torque capscrews to 9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm).

5.3 CYLINDER REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

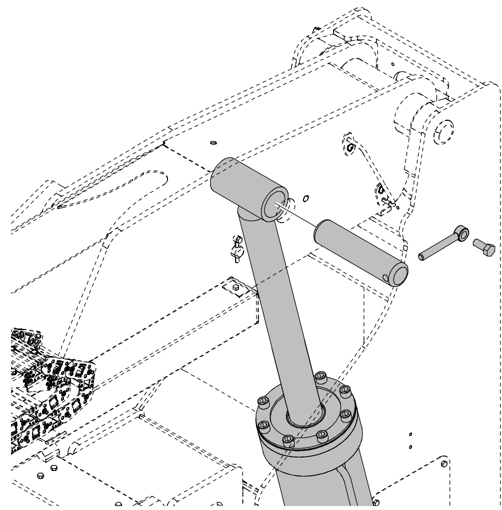
Main Boom Telescope Cylinder Removal

1. Place machine on a flat and level surface, with main boom in the horizontal position.
2. Extend the boom to gain access to main fly boom telescope cylinder rod end pin.
3. Remove the hardware securing the telescope cylinder rod attach pin to the boom. Using a suitable brass drift, drive out the cylinder rod attach pin.



NOTE: *The Main Boom weighs approximately 2226 lbs. (1010 kg).*

4. Using a suitable sling and lifting device, secure the platform end of the boom.
5. Place blocking under the main lift cylinder to prevent it from falling when the attaching hardware is removed.
6. Remove the hardware securing the main lift cylinder rod attach pin to the boom. Using a suitable brass drift, drive out the cylinder rod attach pin.



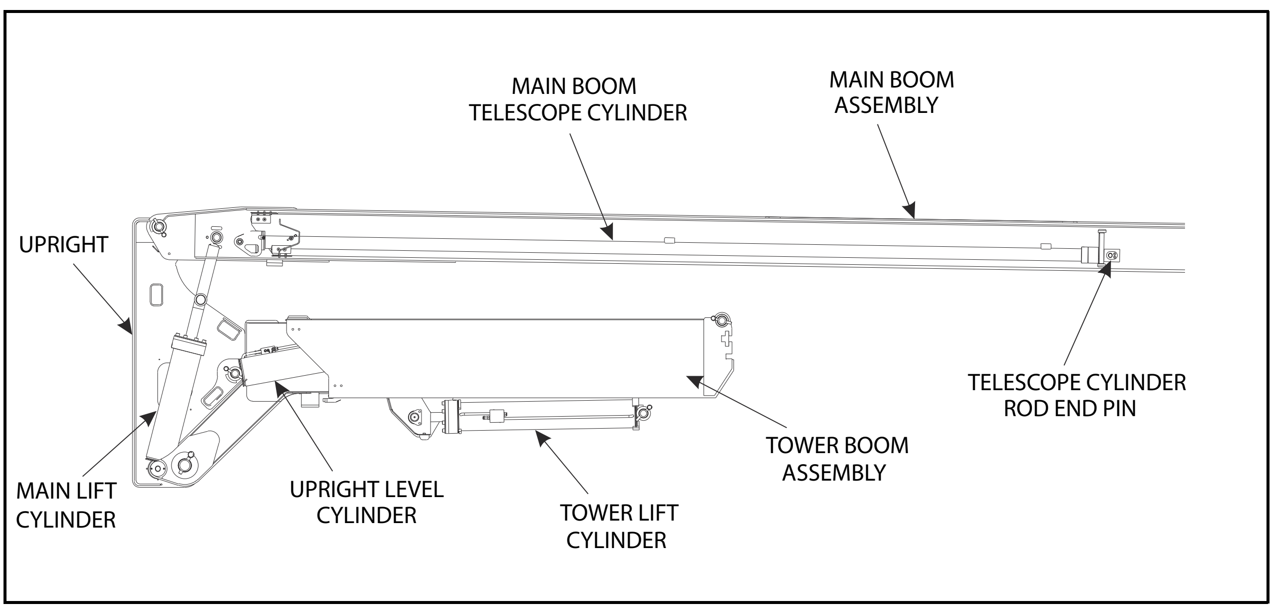
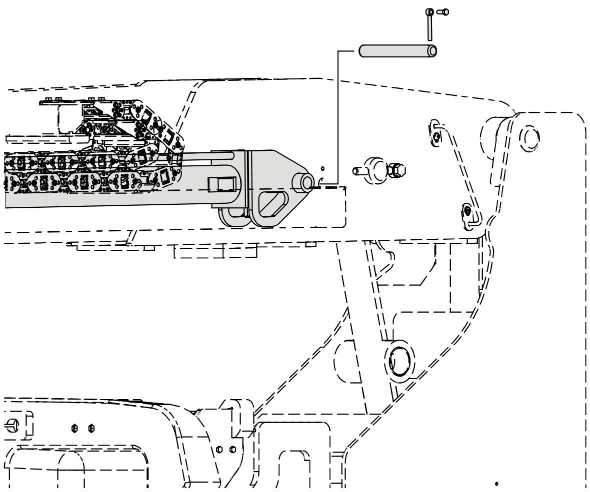


Figure 5-114. Components Main Boom and Tower Boom

7. Using auxiliary power from ground controls, retract the lift cylinder rod completely.

8. Remove hardware securing cover plate on the rear of the main boom. Remove cover plate.

9. Remove mounting hardware securing the telescope cylinder barrel to the main base boom.



10. Using an external pump, extend the cylinder as far as the hydraulic lines will allow to enable a lifting device to be attached to the telescope cylinder.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID THE ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO THE SYSTEM.

11. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from telescope cylinder. Use suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

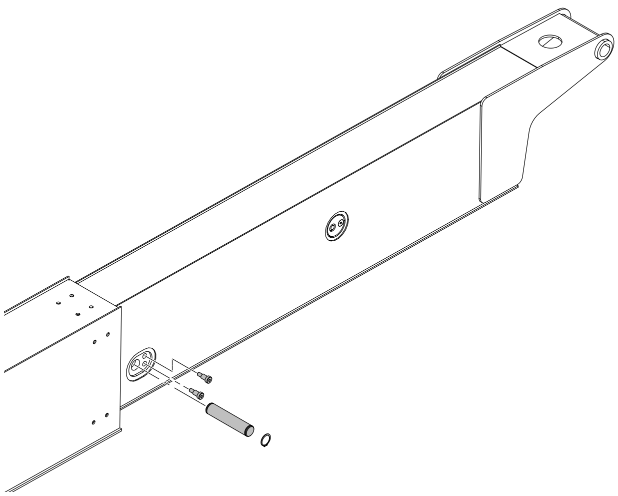
NOTE: *The Telescope Cylinder weighs approximately 459 lbs. (208 kg).*

12. Secure the telescope cylinder with a suitable sling and lifting device.

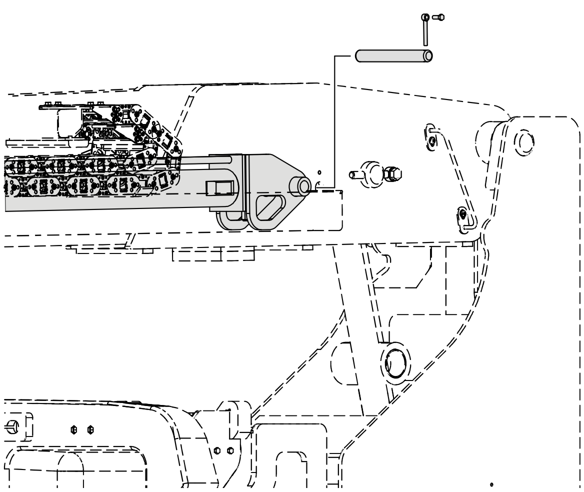
13. Carefully remove the telescope cylinder from the main boom assembly and place in a suitable work area.

Main Boom Telescope Cylinder Installation

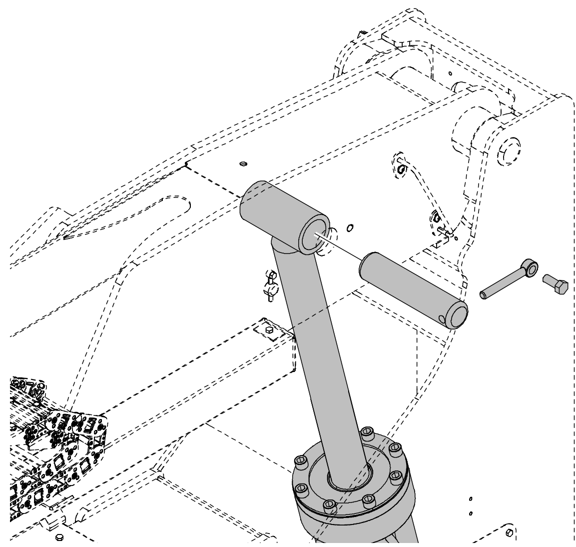
1. Using suitable lifting equipment, carefully insert the cylinder into the boom assembly.
2. Carefully install main telescope cylinder rod pin through the fly boom and secure it with the retaining rings.



3. Remove applicable hydraulic line and port caps and properly connect the hydraulic lines to the telescope cylinder. Ensure all hoses are correctly routed.
4. Carefully install the telescope cylinder barrel end support into mounting block in base boom and secure with blocks and torque the bolts to 35 ft. lbs. (48 Nm). Use JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts. Shim as necessary.



5. Remove the lifting device from the main telescope cylinder and retract the main telescope cylinder.
6. Extend the main lift cylinder using the auxiliary control from the ground controls to align with rod end hole in main base boom.
7. Carefully insert the main lift cylinder rod end pin through the base boom and install the mounting hardware.

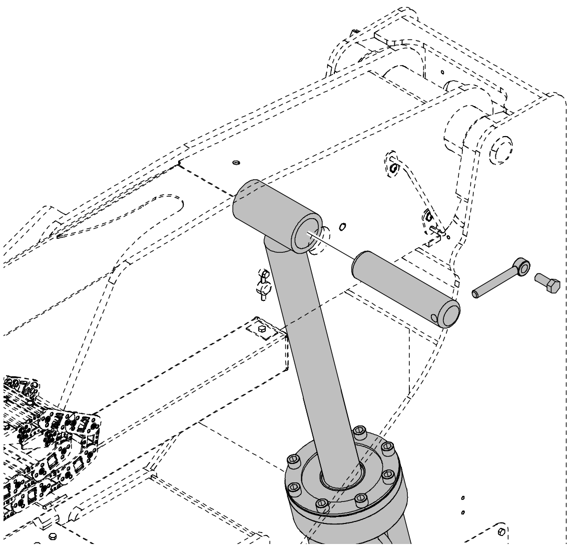


8. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate the boom functions. Check for proper operation and hydraulic leaks. Secure as necessary.
9. Check fluid level of hydraulic tank and adjust as necessary.

Main Lift Cylinder Removal

NOTE: *The Main Boom weighs approximately 2226 lbs. (1010 kg).*

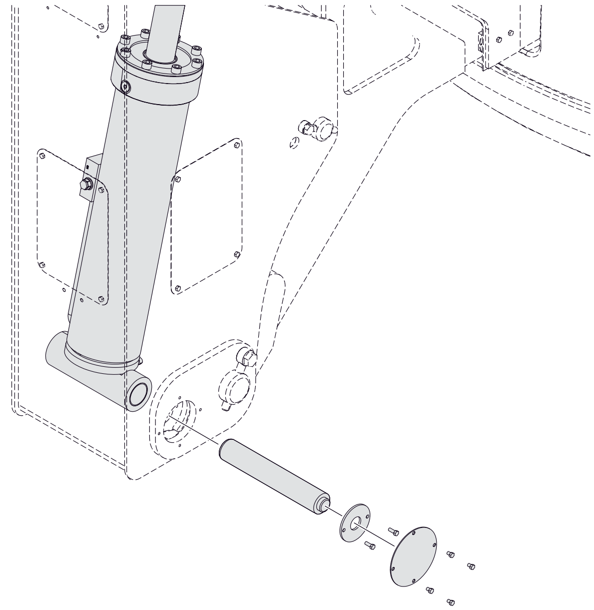
1. Place the machine on a flat and level surface. Attach a suitable lifting device and sling, sufficient to lift the main boom assembly, to the approximate center of the main boom assembly.
2. Place blocking under the cylinder to prevent it from falling when the attaching hardware is removed.
3. Remove the hardware securing the main lift cylinder rod attach pin to the boom. Using a suitable brass drift, drive out the cylinder rod attach pin.



4. Using auxiliary power from ground controls, retract the lift cylinder rod completely.
5. Disconnect, cap, and tag the main boom lift cylinder hydraulic lines and ports.
6. Attach a suitable lifting device and sling to the main lift cylinder.
7. Remove hardware securing cover plate on the bottom of the upright. Remove cover plate.

NOTE: *The Main Lift Cylinder weighs approximately 445 lbs. (202 kg).*

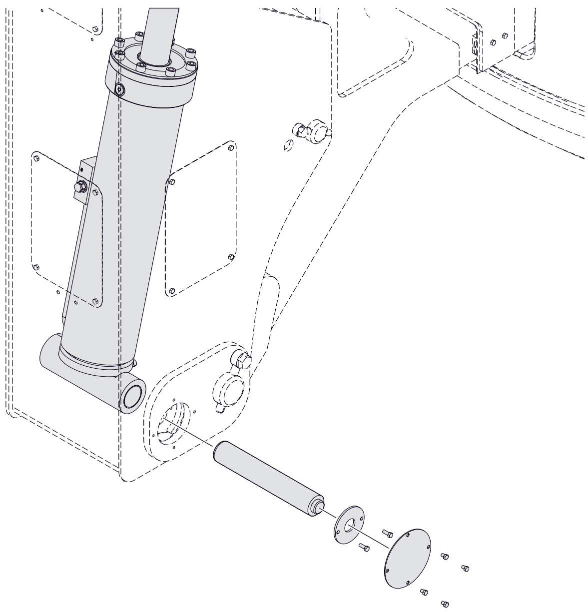
8. Use a suitable brass drift and hammer to remove main lift cylinder barrel end pin from Upright.



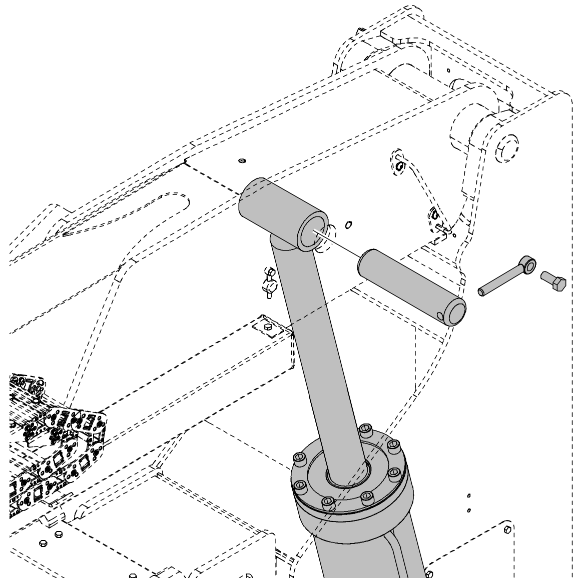
9. Using a suitable brass drift drive out the barrel end attach pin from the tower upright. Raise the main boom assembly with the lifting device and sling to allow enough space to remove the main lift cylinder from the upright top.
10. Carefully lift the cylinder clear of the boom assembly and lower to the ground or suitably supported work area.
11. Lower the boom assembly to the stowed position.

Main Lift Cylinder Installation

1. Lift the main boom to allow enough space to lower the main boom lift cylinder to align with pin mounting holes of the tower fly boom and barrel end of main lift cylinder.
2. Using a suitable brass drift, drive barrel end attach pin through the mounting holes in the lift cylinder and the tower fly boom. Secure in place with the pin and torque the bolts to 35 ft. lbs. (48 Nm). Use Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts.



3. Remove cylinder port plugs and hydraulic line caps and attach lines to cylinder ports as tagged during removal.
4. Using auxiliary power extend the cylinder rod until the attach pin hole aligns with those in the main boom.
5. Using a suitable drift drive cylinder rod attach pin through the aligned holes, taking care to align the grooved pin holes. Secure the pin in place and torque the bolt to 285 ft. lbs. (388 Nm). Use JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts.



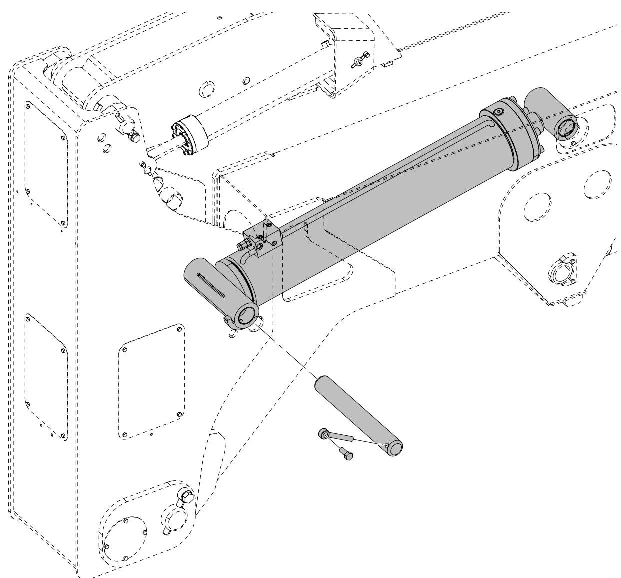
6. Remove lifting device and sling. Activate hydraulic system.
7. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate the boom functions. Check for proper operation and hydraulic leaks. Secure as necessary.
8. Check fluid level of hydraulic tank and adjust as necessary.

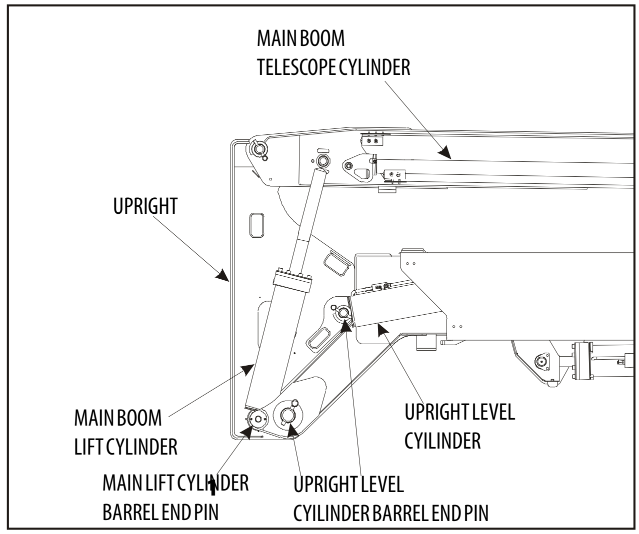
Upright Level Cylinder Removal

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

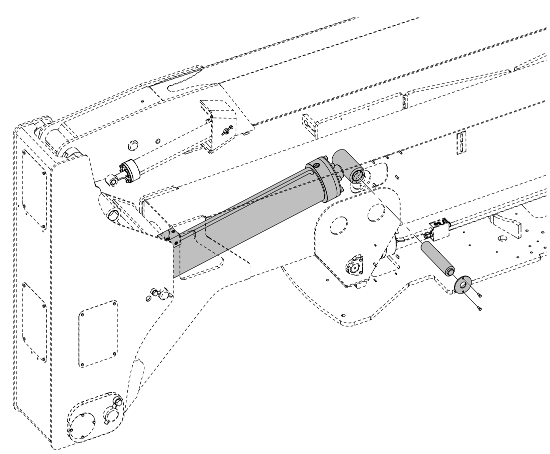
1. Remove the Main Boom. Refer to Main Boom removal.
2. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines to the main lift cylinder. Use suitable container to collect any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.
3. Remove mounting hardware from the main boom lift cylinder barrel end. Use a suitable brass drift and hammer to remove main lift cylinder barrel end pin from Upright and remove main lift cylinder.
4. Disconnect the Upright Level Cylinder as follows:
   a. Use a suitable lifting device to support the Upright.
   b. Remove mounting hardware securing the Upright Level Cylinder to the upright. Use a suitable brass drift and hammer to remove upright level cylinder barrel end pin from upright and disconnect the upright level cylinder from the Upright.





NOTE: *The Upright weighs approximately 529.5 lbs. (240 kg).*

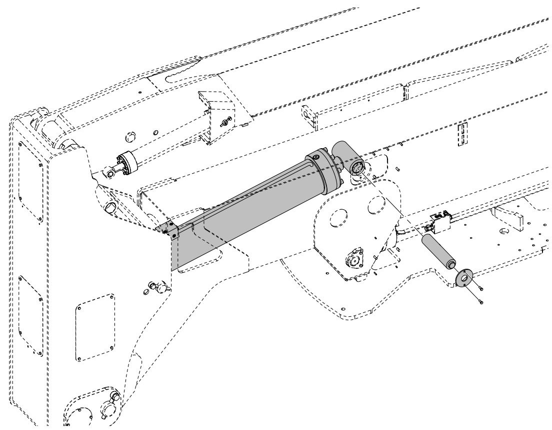
5. Before extending the tower boom, support the tower boom from the bottom.
6. Extend the Tower Boom to get access to the Upright level cylinder rod end pin by using an external auxiliary pump.
7. Tag, disconnect and cap the hydraulic lines of the Upright level Cylinder barrel.
8. Attach a suitable lifting device to support the Upright Level Cylinder.
9. Remove mounting hardware from the upright level cylinder rod end and remove the pin.



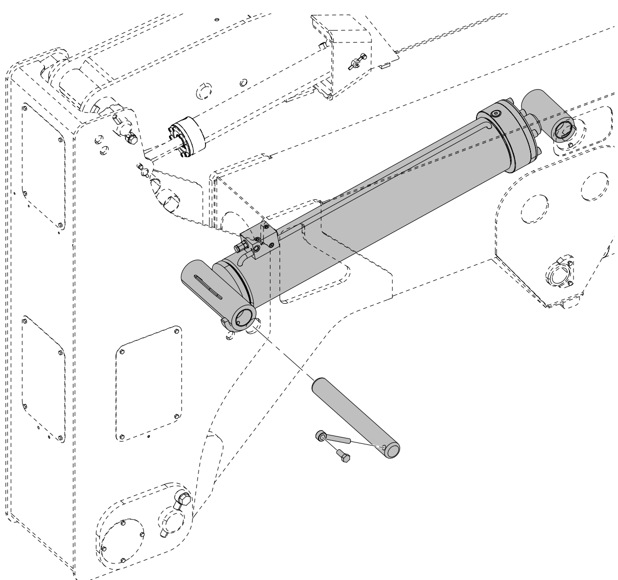
10. Remove the Upright Level Cylinder from the Tower Fly Boom. Place the Upright level Cylinder in a suitable work area.

Upright Level Cylinder Installation

1. Put the leveling cylinder in position in the tower boom, align holes in the tower boom and leveling cylinder rod end.
2. Secure the leveling cylinder rod end pin to tower boom and torque the bolts to 35 ft. lbs. (48 Nm). Use JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts.



3. Remove Cylinder Port plugs and hydraulic line caps. Properly attach lines to Cylinder ports as tagged during removal.
4. Use all applicable safety precautions, operate the lifting device to move upright assembly into proper position.
5. Align holes in upright and barrel end of level cylinder. Use a suitable rubber mallet to install level barrel end pin. Secure pin and torque the bolt 285 ft. lbs. (388 Nm). Use JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts.



6. Install Main Lift Cylinder.
7. Install Main Boom. Refer to Main Boom installation.
8. Remove hydraulic line caps and attach all the hydraulic and electrical lines as tagged during removal.
9. Use all applicable safety precautions, operate the boom functions. Check for proper operation and hydraulic leaks.
10. Check fluid level of hydraulic tank and add fluid, if required.

Tower Boom Lift Cylinder Removal

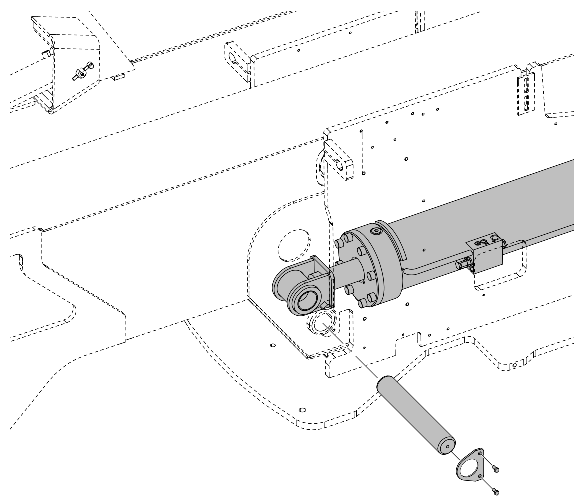
1. Place machine on a flat and level surface. Place the main boom in a horizontal position with the telescope cylinder fully retracted. Place the tower boom in a fully elevated and fully retracted position.

NOTE: *The Main Boom weighs approximately 2226 lbs. (1010 kg), Upright weighs approximately 529.5 lbs. (240 kg) & Tower Boom weighs approximately 2034 lbs. (923 kg).*

2. Support the main boom, upright and tower boom with adequate overhead crane.

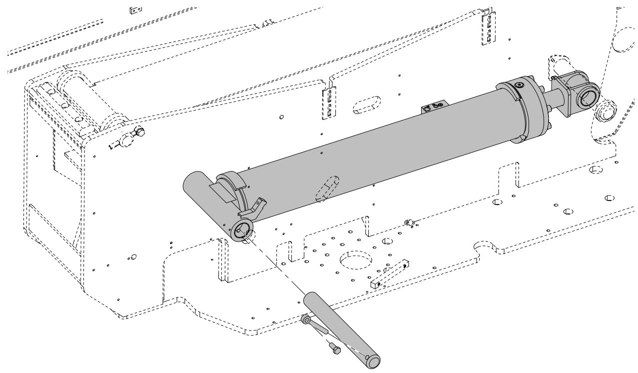
NOTE: *The Tower lift cylinder weighs approximately 544 lbs. (247 kg).*

3. Adequately support the tower lift cylinder.
4. Remove mounting hardware securing the lift cylinder rod pin to the tower boom. Using a suitable brass drift, drive out the tower lift cylinder rod attach pin.



5. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate auxiliary power, activate tower lift down and fully retract lift cylinder.
6. Tag, disconnect, and cap the tower lift cylinder hydraulic lines and ports.

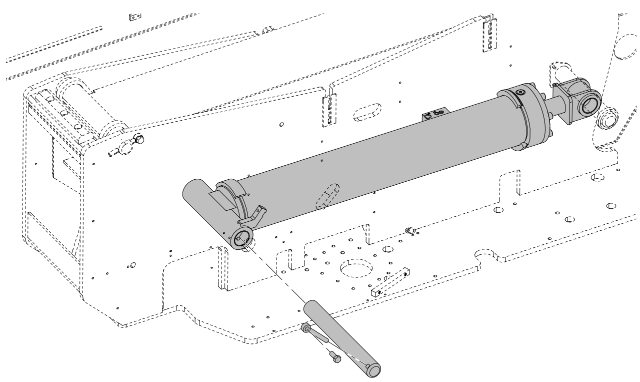
7. Remove mounting hardware securing the tower lift cylinder barrel pin to the turntable. Using a suitable brass drift, drive out the tower lift cylinder barrel pin.



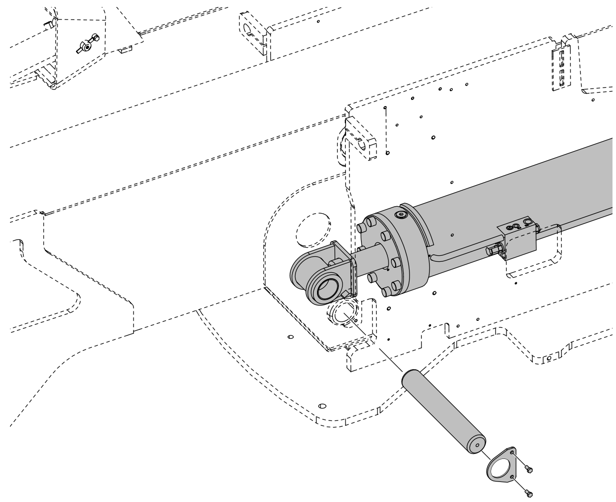
8. Carefully remove the tower lift cylinder from turntable. Place in a suitable work area.

Tower Boom Lift Cylinder Installation

1. Support the main boom and tower boom, place the tower lift cylinder on the turntable and align the holes. Install the cylinder barrel pin and torque the bolt to 285 ft. lbs. (388 Nm). Use JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts.



2. Remove caps from cylinder hydraulic lines properly and install lines to cylinder as previously tagged.
3. Using auxiliary power, activate tower lift function and extend cylinder rod until the cylinder rod bushing aligns with bushings on boom.
4. Using an appropriate brass drift, drive the tower lift cylinder rod end attach pin through the aligned bushings. Secure pin and torque the bolt 35 ft. lbs. (48 Nm). Use JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 on bolts.

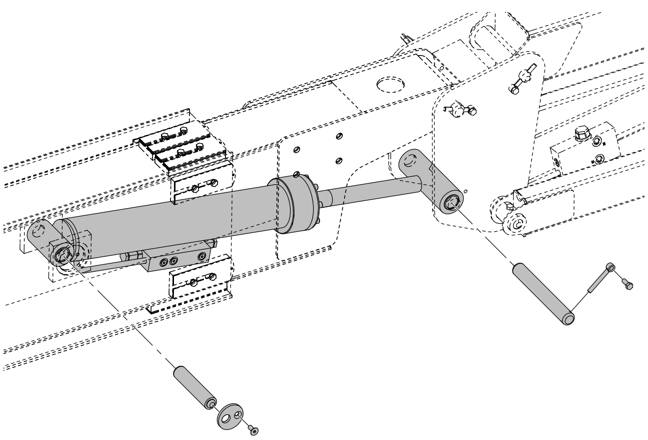


5. Remove main boom support and lifting device supporting the upright.
6. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate the boom functions. Check for proper operation and hydraulic leaks. Secure as necessary.
7. Check fluid level of hydraulic tank and add fluid, if required.

Slave Cylinder Removal

NOTE: *The Slave Cylinder weighs approximately 77 lbs. (35 kg).*

1. Place the machine on a flat surface and lower the main boom and tower boom to the lowest position.
2. Using auxiliary power, retract the slave cylinder rod completely.
3. Raise the jib to gain access to the Slave Cylinder piston end Pin.
4. Using a suitable lifting device, properly secure the platform to prevent the platform from tilting backward or forward during removal of the slave cylinder.
5. Tag and disconnect the slave cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap hoses to prevent the hydraulic system from being contaminated.
6. Properly secure the slave cylinder by using a suitable sling or support.
7. Remove the slave cylinder pin retaining hardware. Using a suitable brass drift, remove the slave cylinder pins from the rod and barrel ends.



8. Carefully remove the slave cylinder.
9. Clean and inspect the cylinder pins and retaining hardware for reuse. Replace if necessary.

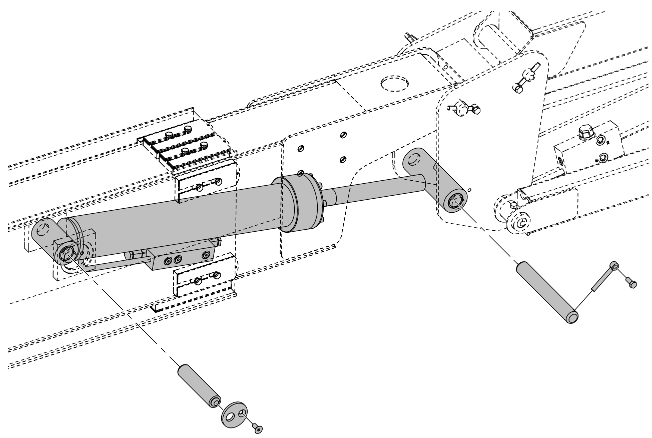
Slave Cylinder Installation

NOTE: *The Slave Cylinder weighs approximately 77 lbs. (35 kg).*

1. Remove caps from the hydraulic hoses and attach hoses to the proper cylinder ports.

NOTE: *The Slave cylinder weighs approximately 77 lbs. (35 kg).*

2. Use suitable slings or support to position the Slave cylinder in place. Align barrel end mounting holes with the holes in main fly boom.
3. Use suitable mallet to install the barrel end attach pin and torque the bolts to 35 ft. lbs. (48 Nm).
4. Extend the slave cylinder rod until the rod attach pin hole aligns with holes in the jib pivot. Use suitable mallet and keeper to install the rod end pin.



5. Remove lifting device from the slave cylinder and support from the platform.
6. Use all applicable safety precautions, start the machine from the ground control. Fully raise and lower the main boom through several cycles to bleed the platform level hydraulic circuit.
7. Check for proper operation and hydraulic leaks.
8. Check the fluid level of hydraulic tank. Fill the tank, if required.

5.4 HYDRAULIC PUMP W/HAYES PUMP DRIVE COUPLING LUBRICATION

Any time pump or pump drive coupling is removed coat, pump and drive coupling splines with Lithium Soap Base Grease (TEXACO CODE 1912 OR EQUIVALENT) coupling is greased prior to assembly.

5.5 PRESSURE SETTING PROCEDURES

Cold temperatures have a significant impact on pressure readings. JLG Industries Inc. recommends operating the machine until the hydraulic system has warmed to normal operating temperatures prior to checking pressures. JLG Industries Inc. also recommends the use of a calibrated gauge. Pressure readings are acceptable if they are within ± 5% of specified pressures.

To ensure all pressures are set correctly, the following procedures must be followed in order.

1. All applicable steps must be followed.
2. Set up of the function pump.
3. Adjustments Made at the Main Valve Block.
4. Adjustments Made at the Platform Valve Block

Set Up the Function Pump

BOSCH/REXROTH PUMP

1. **Stand by pressure or load sense pressure.**

   Install a low pressure gauge at port “MP” of the main valve block. A gauge capable of reading 400 psi (27.5 bar). Remove the wires from the main lift, valve coils on the main valve block. Start the engine and activate main lift up or down. Hold the function for 10-15 seconds. This bleeds the air out of the sense line. The gauge should be reading 400 psi. (+40-0 psi) (27.5 bar (+2.7 -0 bar)). To make an adjustment to this pressure, go to the engine compartment, locate the variable pump. There are (2) adjustments at the top of the pump. The stand by adjustment is at the top. Using a 17 mm wrench, remove the cover nut. Be careful not to lose the o-ring washer inside the cover nut. Loosen the jam nut at the set screw with the 17 mm wrench. Using a 3 mm allen wrench adjust clockwise to increase, or counterclockwise to decrease. After adjusting the pressure, tighten the jam nut and replace the cover nut. Reconnect the wires on the main lift coils.

2. **High pressure relief.**

   Install a high pressure gauge at the “MP” port of the main valve block. Activate main telescope in. The gauge should read 2600 psi (179 bar). To make an adjustment to this pressure, go back to the engine compartment to the variable pump. The high pressure relief adjustment is on the lower one of the (2). Repeat the same procedure as setting the stand by pressure. This is the maximum relief pressure for all functions governed by this pump.

SAUER/DANFOSS PUMP

1. **Stand by pressure or load sense pressure**

   Install a low pressure gauge at port “MP” of the main valve block. A gauge capable of reading 400 psi (27.5 bar). Remove the wires from the main lift, valve coils on the main valve block. Start the engine and activate main lift up or down. Hold the function for 10-15 seconds. This bleeds the air out of the sense line. The gauge should be reading 400 psi. (+40-0 psi) (27.5 bar (+2.7 -0 bar)). To make an adjustment to this pressure, go to the engine compartment, locate the function pump. There are (2) adjustments at the top of the pump. They are located on the pump compensator which has (4) bolts mounting it to the pump. The stand by adjustment is at the top. To adjust this, a 4 mm and 6 mm Allen wrench will be needed. The adjustment screw is facing the front of the pump, or towards the engine. First, using 4 m wrench, loosen the setscrew on the side of compensator (facing you) which is in line with the adjustment screw. This is the jam nut screw which holds the main adjustment from turning. Loosen it 1 turn. Then using the 6 mm wrench adjust the main adjustment clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease. The pressure should read between 400-440 psi.

2. **High pressure relief**

   Install a high pressure gauge at the “MP” port of the main valve block. Activate main telescope in. The gauge should read 2600 psi (179 bar). To make an adjustment to this pressure, go back to the engine compartment to the function pump. The high pressure relief adjustment is the lower one of the (2) on the compensator. To adjust this, a 4 mm and 6 mm Allen wrench will be needed. The adjustment screw is facing the front of the pump, or towards the engine. First, using 4 mm wrench, loosen the setscrew on the side of compensator (facing you) which is in line with the adjustment screw. This is the jam nut screw which holds the main adjustment from turning. Loosen it 1 turn. Then using the 6 mm wrench adjust the main adjustment clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease. This is the maximum relief pressure for all functions governed by this pump.

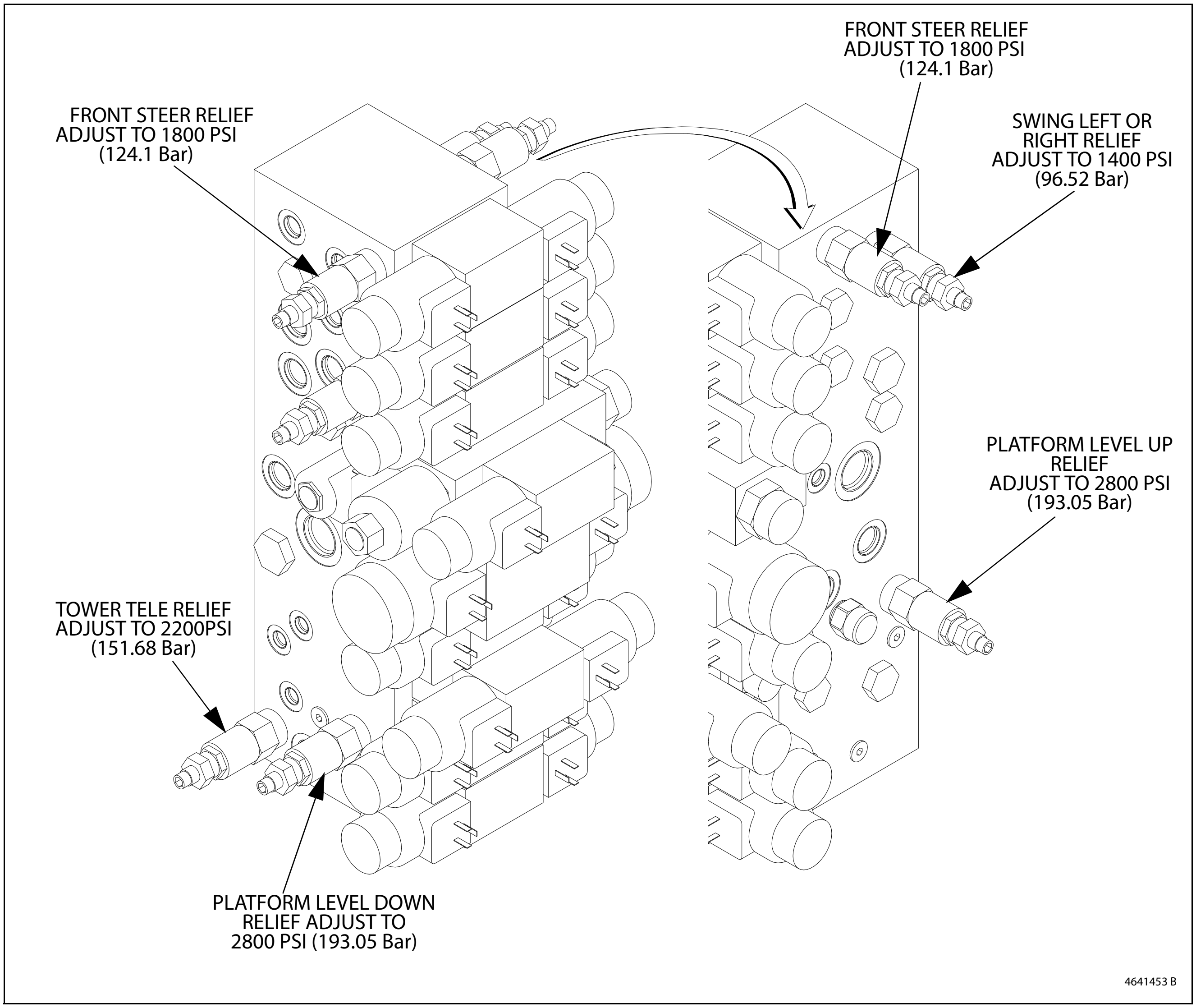
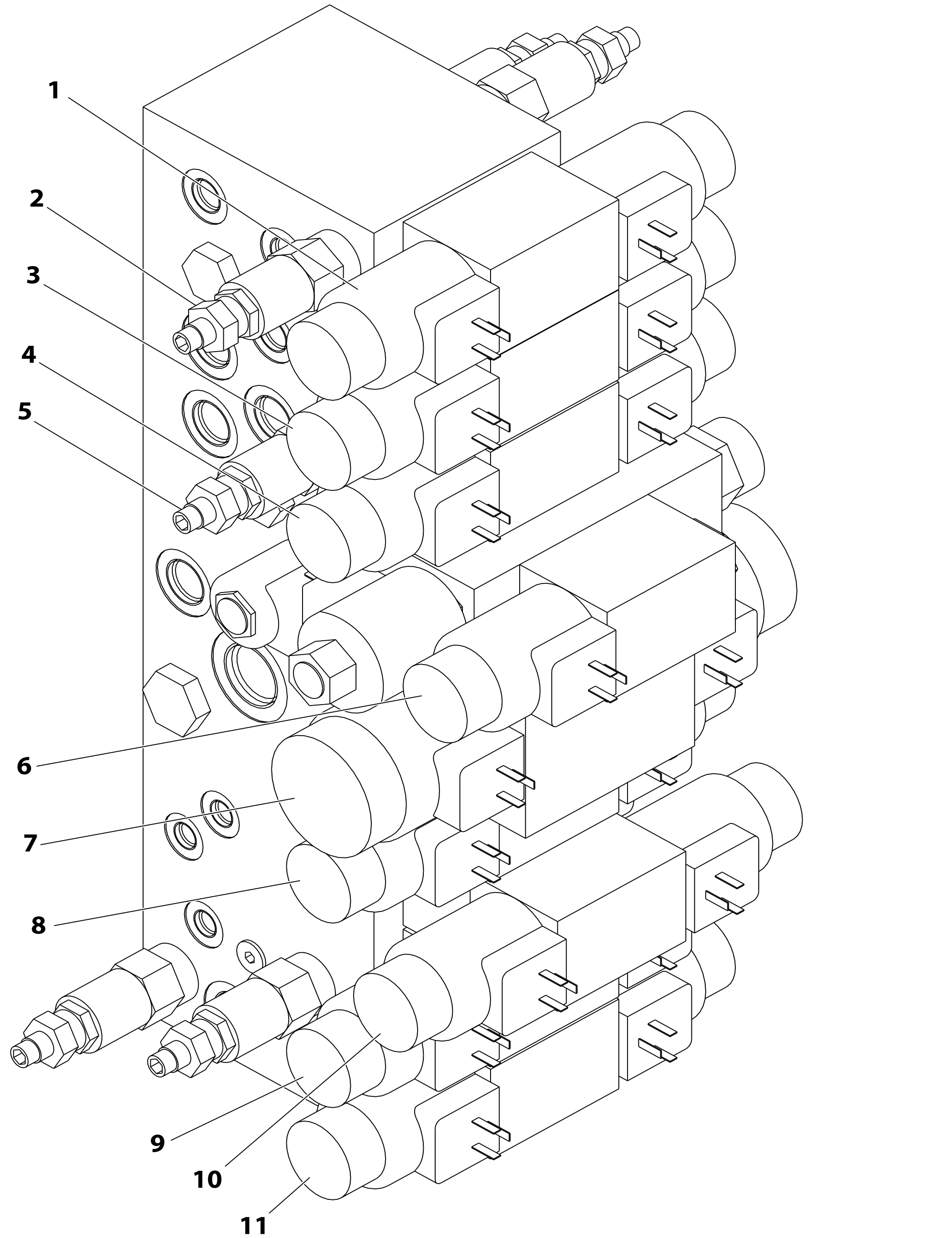
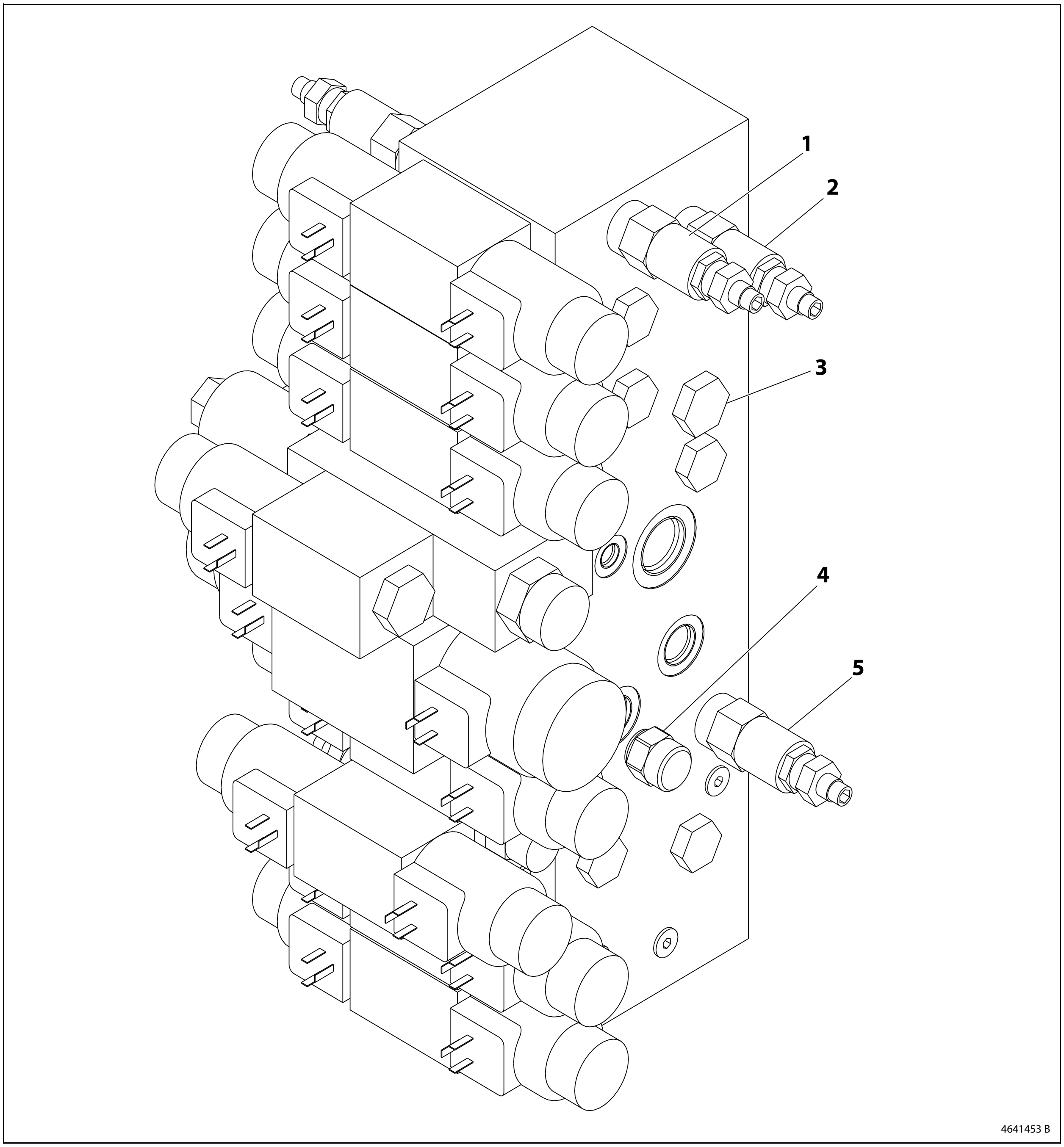


Figure 5-115. Main Control Valve Pressure Adjustments (SN 0300185828 through 0300194175)



1. Front Steer Solenoid
2. Front Steer Relief
3. Swing Solenoid
4. Main Lift Solenoid
5. Main Lift Relief
6. Main Lift Solenoid
7. Main Tele Solenoid
8. Tower Lift Solenoid
9. Platform Level Solenoid
10. Platform Rotate Solenoid
11. Tower Tele Solenoid

Figure 5-116. Main Valve Components (SN 0300185828 through 0300194175) - Sheet 1 of 2



1. Front Steer Relief
2. Swing Relief
3. Main Pressure Check Valve
4. Platform Rotate Flow Regulator
5. Platform Level Up Relief

Figure 5-117. Main Valve Components (SN 0300185828 through 0300194175) - Sheet 2 of 2

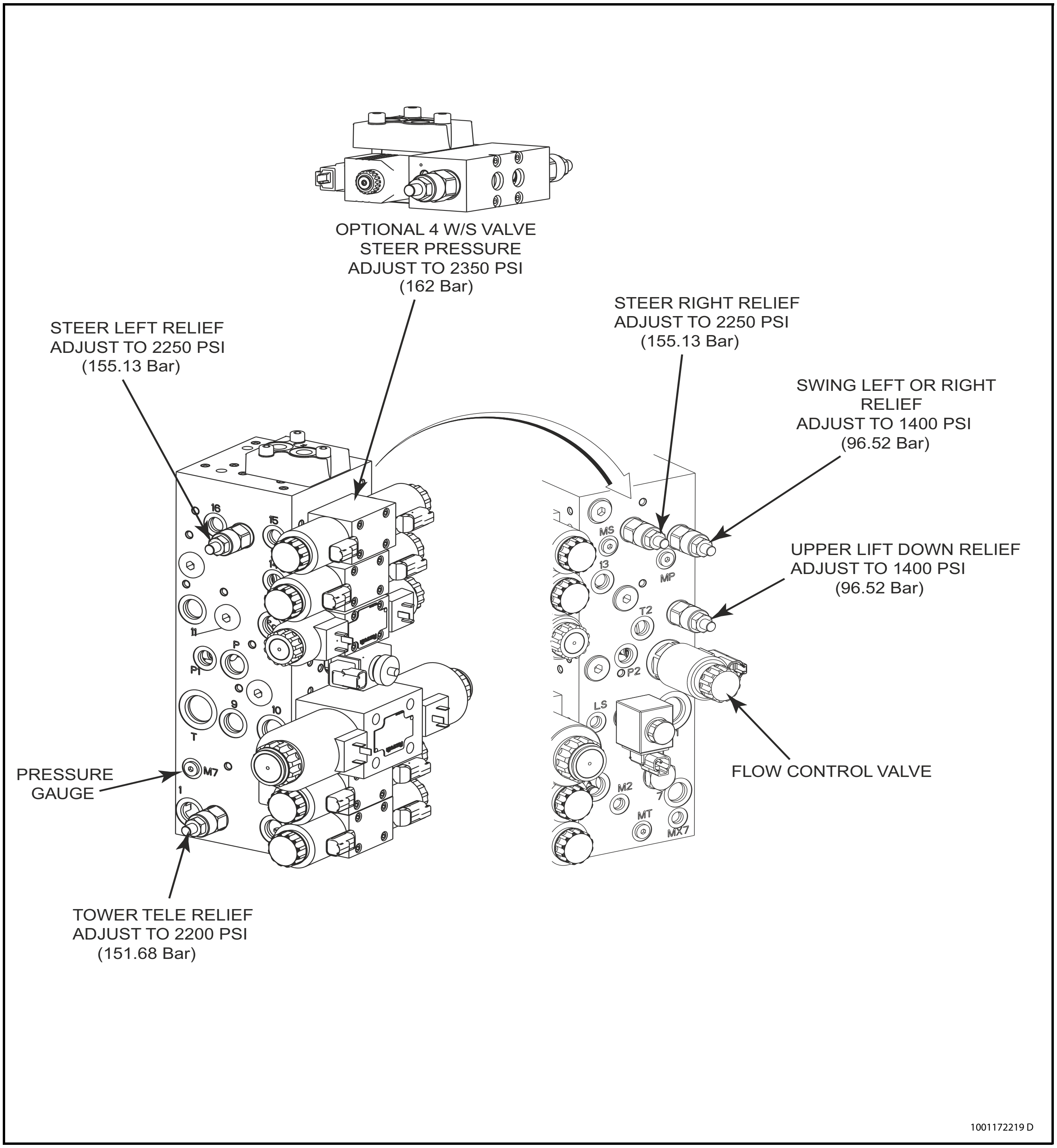
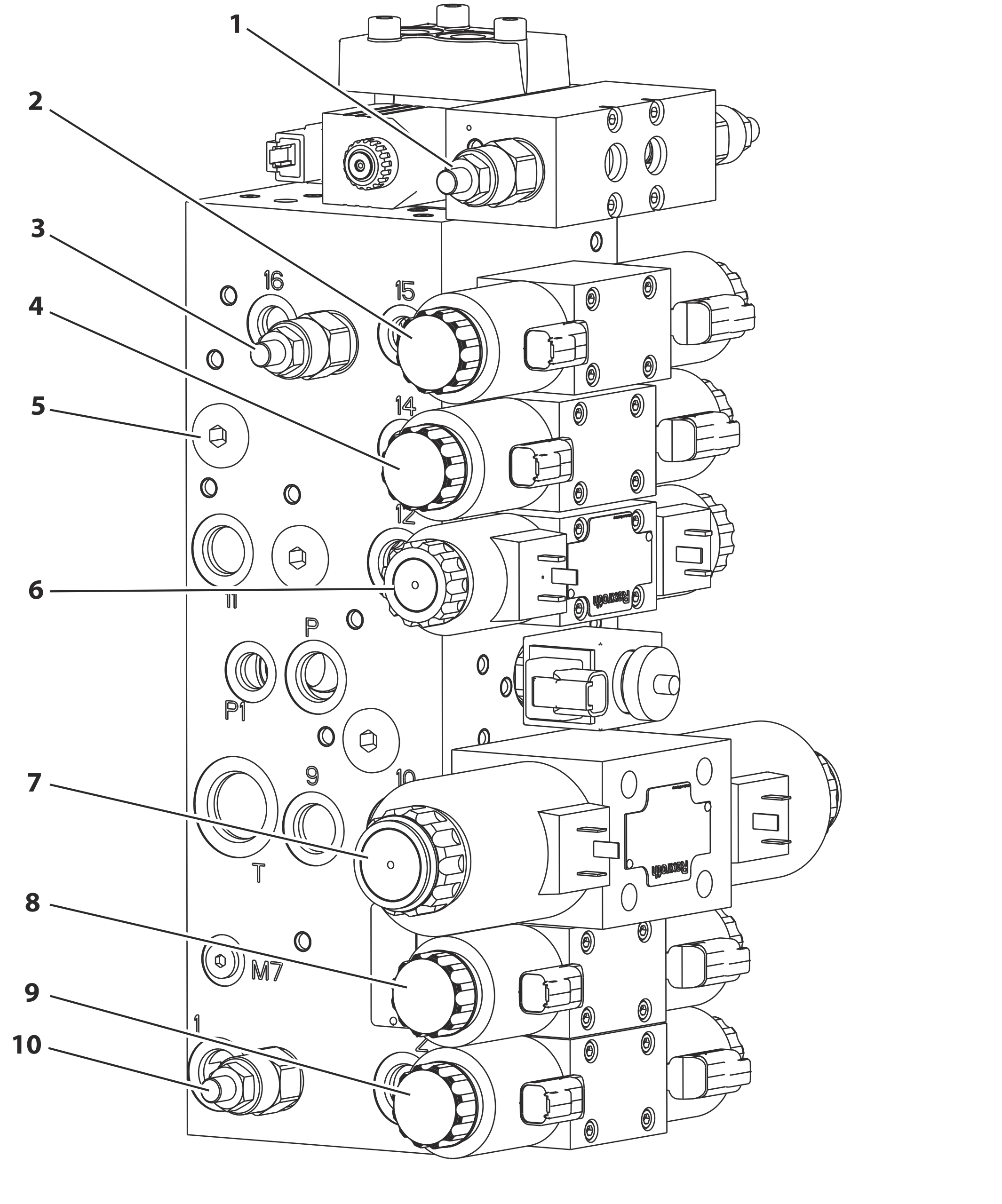
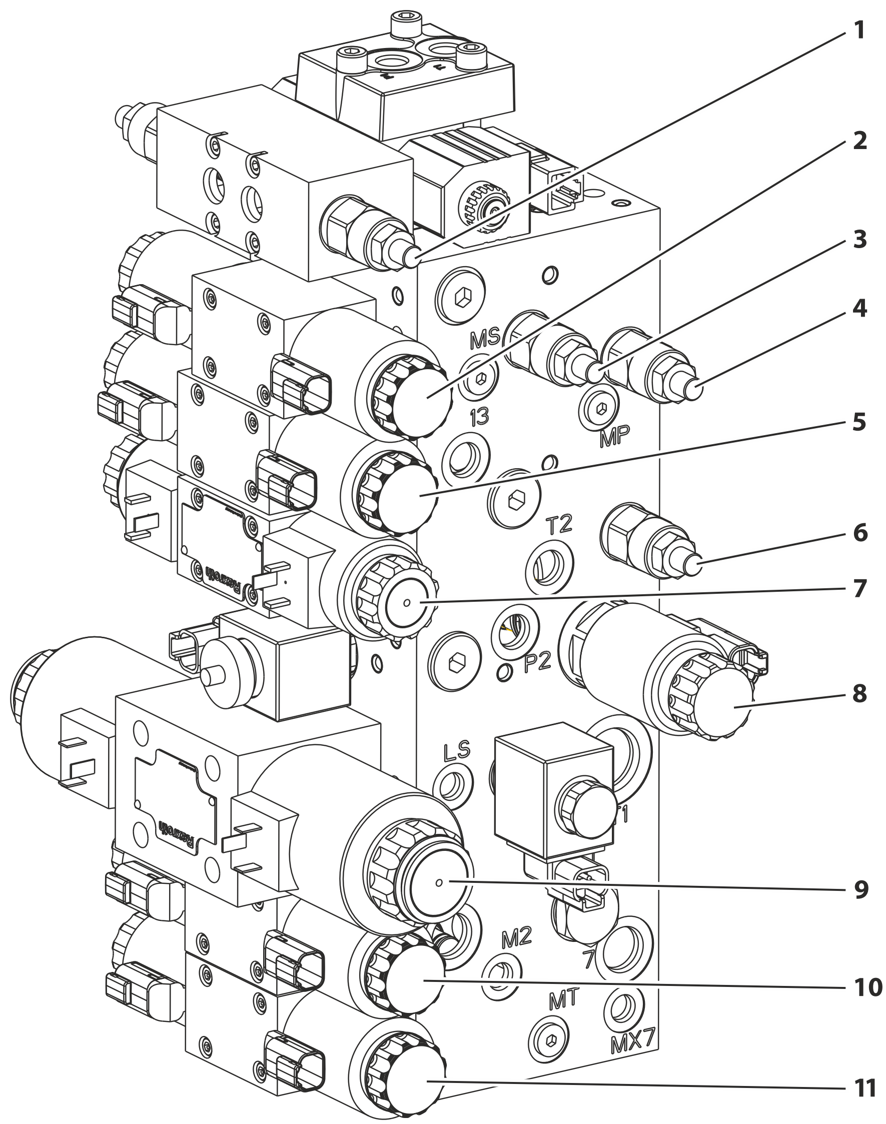


Figure 5-118. Main Control Valve Pressure Adjustments (SN 0300194176 to Present)



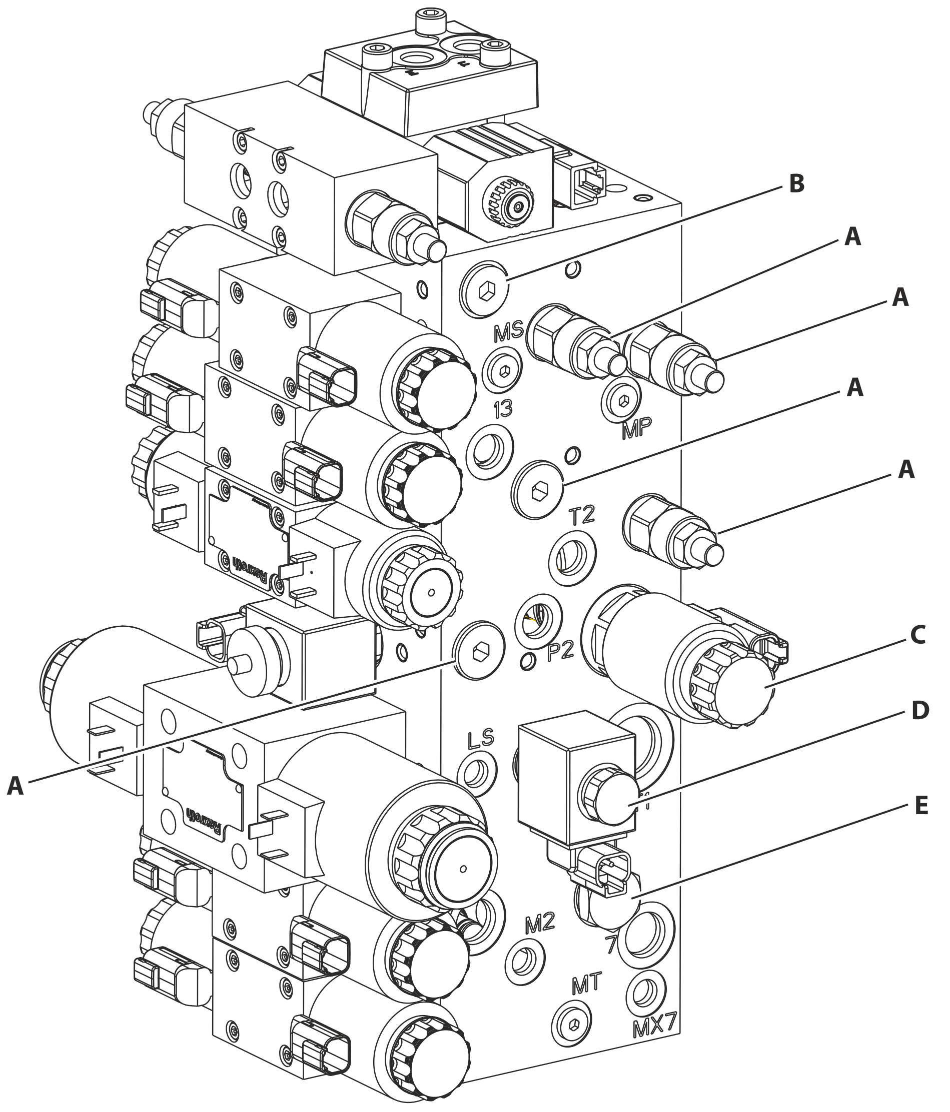
1. Rear Steer Right Solenoid
2. Front Steer Right Solenoid
3. Front Steer left Solenoid
4. Shuttle Valve
5. Swing Left Solenoid
6. Main Lift Down Solenoid
7. Main Tele In Solenoid
8. Tower Lift Up Solenoid
9. Tower Tele In Solenoid
10. Tower Tele Relief

Figure 5-119. Main Valve Components (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 1 of 2



1. Rear Steer Left Solenoid
2. Front Steer Left Solenoid
3. Front Steer Right Relief
4. Main Boom Lift Down Solenoid
5. Swing Left or Right Relief
6. Swing Right Solenoid
7. Main Lift Down Solenoid
8. Flow Control Valve
9. Main Tele Out Solenoid
10. Tower Lift Down Solenoid
11. Tower Tele Out Solenoid

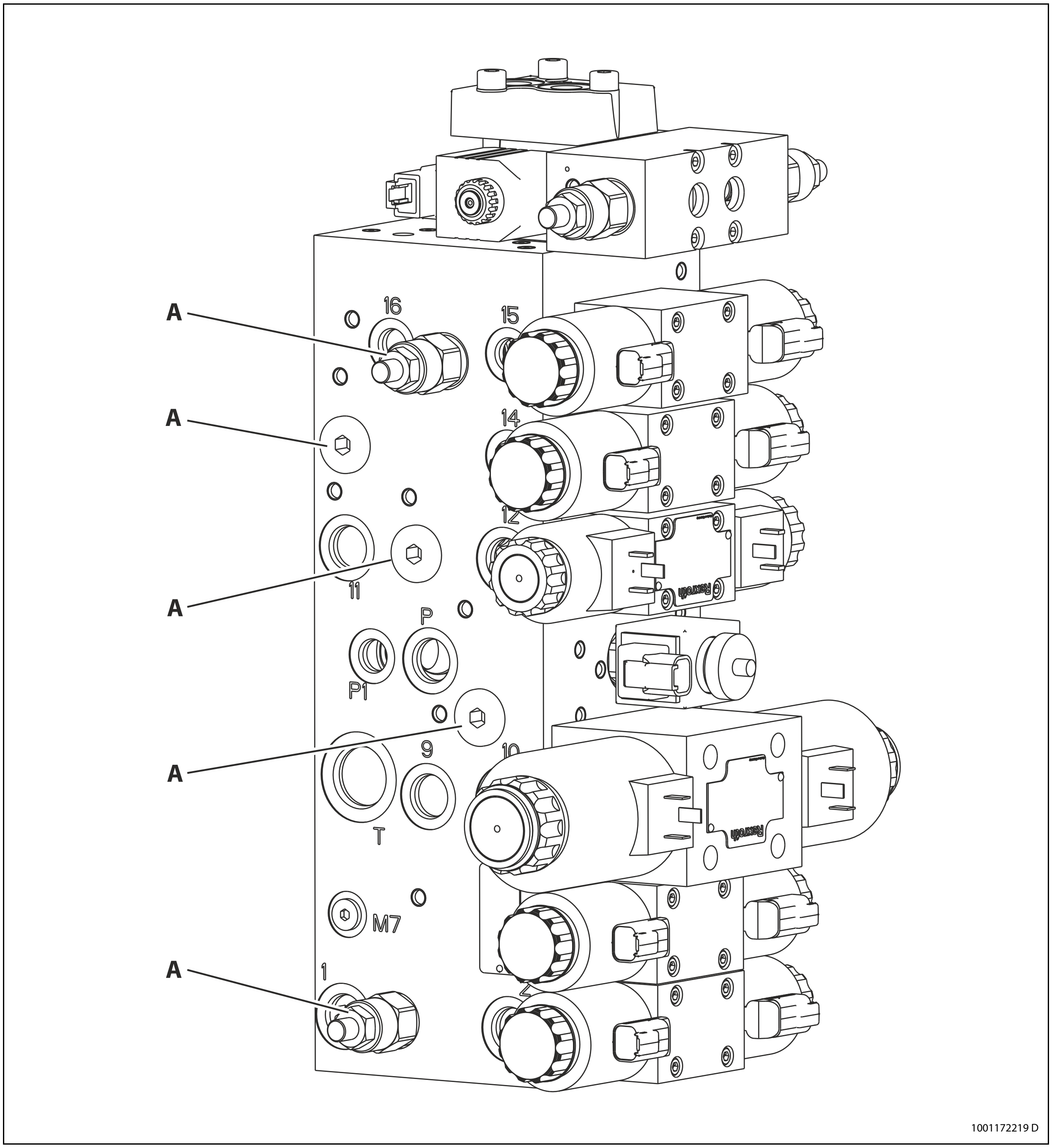
Figure 5-120. Main Valve Components (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 2 of 2



	Ft. Lbs.	Nm
A	25-30	33.8-40.6
B	25.1-30.2	34-41
C	121.7-132.8	164.2-180
D	28.8-37.6	39-51
E	30-35	40.6-47.5

NOTE: *When removing control valves from the manifold, it is important to observe the tag on the face of the valve, as the new valve must be installed with the tag facing the same way as the tag on the valve that was removed. The bolt pattern on the control valves is not symmetrical, so if the bolts seem difficult to turn when installing, it would indicate the valve is upside down and forcing the bolts will result in cross-threading. Check the tag, and if necessary, rotate the valve 180 degrees.*

Figure 5-121. Valve Component Torque (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 1 of 2



	Ft. Lbs.	Nm
A	25-30	33.8-40.6

NOTE: *When removing control valves from the manifold, it is important to observe the tag on the face of the valve, as the new valve must be installed with the tag facing the same way as the tag on the valve that was removed. The bolt pattern on the control valves is not symmetrical, so if the bolts seem difficult to turn when installing, it would indicate the valve is upside down and forcing the bolts will result in cross-threading. Check the tag, and if necessary, rotate the valve 180 degrees.*

Figure 5-122. Valve Component Torque (SN 0300194176 to Present) - Sheet 2 of 2

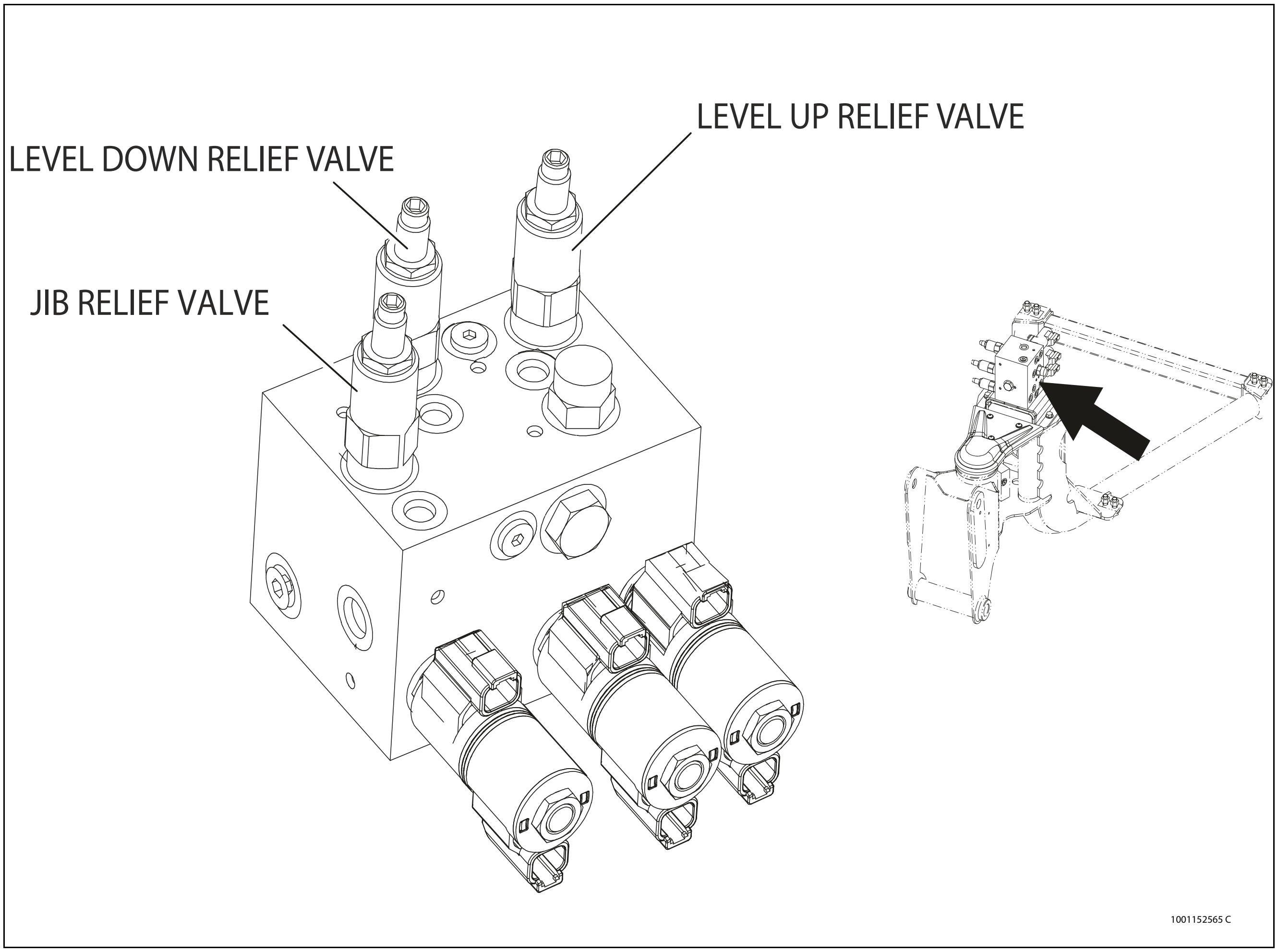


Figure 5-123. Platform Control Valve Identification

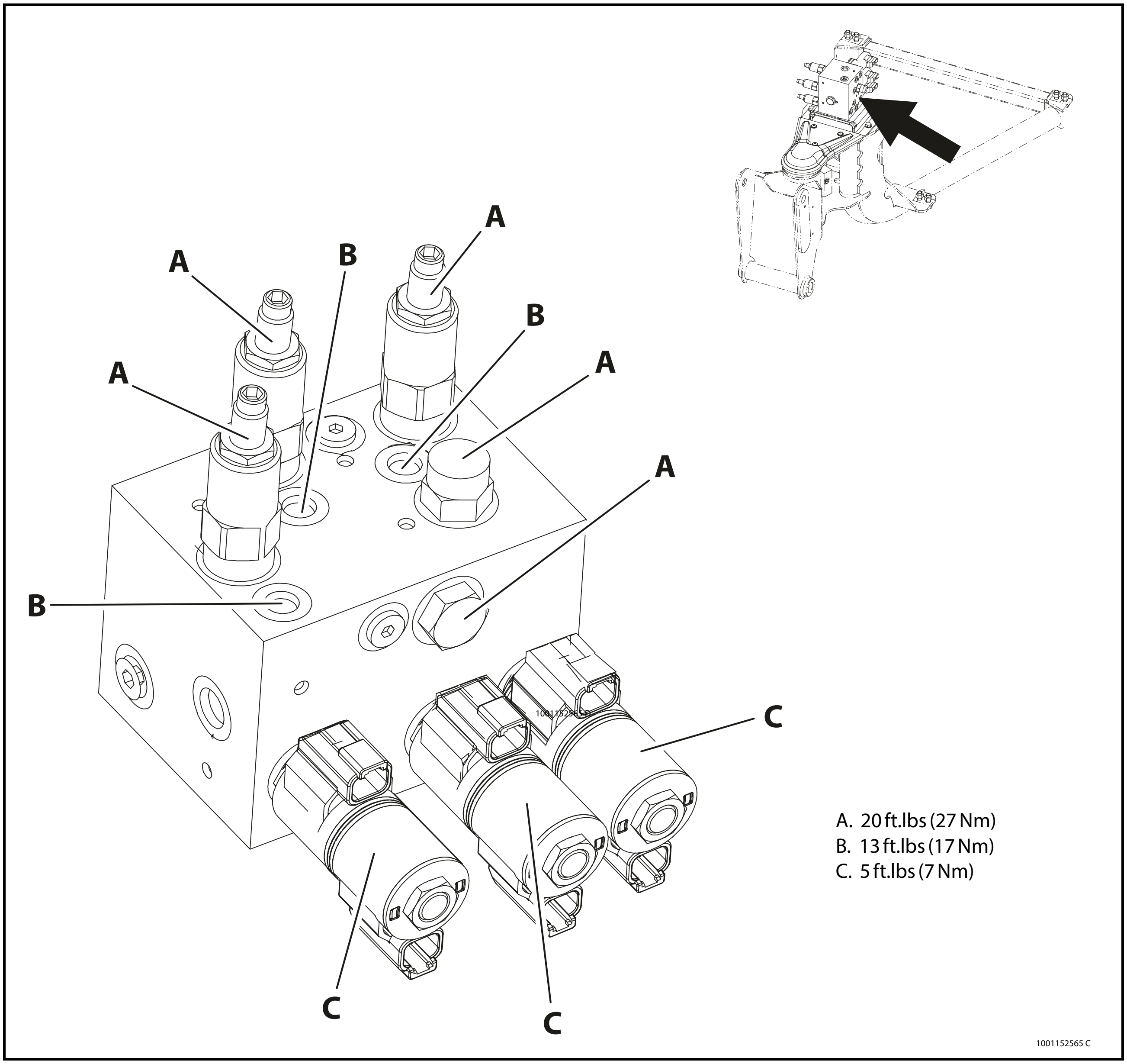


Figure 5-124. Platform Control Valve Component Torque

Adjustments Made at the Main Valve Block

MAIN LIFT DOWN

3. Install a high pressure gauge at the "**MP**" port of the main valve block.
4. Activate main lift down. The gauge should read **1400 psi (97 bar)**.
5. The adjustment cartridge is located to the right of port #T2. Turn clockwise to increase, counterclockwise to decrease.

SWING

NOTE: *Left and right are done with one adjustment.*

1. Install a high pressure gauge at the "**MP**" port of the main valve block. Lock the turntable lock pin.
2. Activate swing, the gauge should read **1400 psi (97 bar)**. The adjustment cartridge is located on the right side of the block, right above port "**MP**".
3. Turn clockwise to increase, and counterclockwise to decrease.

2 WHEEL STEER

1. Install a high pressure gauge at the "**MS**" port of the main valve block. Activate steer left or right. The gauge should read **1800 psi (124 bar)** (2-wheel steer) both directions.
2. One relief cartridge is located on the right side of the block, above port "**MS**". The other one is located on the left side next to port #15.
3. Turn clockwise to increase, and counterclockwise to decrease.

4 WHEEL STEER

1. Install a high pressure gauge at the "**MS**" port of the main valve block.
2. Activate front wheel steer left or right. One relief cartridge is located on the right side of the block, above port "**MS**". The other one is located on the left side next to port #15.Turn clockwise to increase, counterclockwise to decrease.
3. Adjust **2350 psi (162 bar)** front steer. Remove the coil from the front wheel steer directional valve.
4. Activate 4 wheel steer. Adjust the rear wheel steer reliefs to **2250 psi (155 bar)**. Those reliefs are located on the both sides of the 4-wheel steer block bolted on the top of the main control valve.|

Adjustments Made at the Platform Valve Block

PLATFORM LEVEL UP

1. Install a high pressure gauge at the gauge port **"M1"** of the platform valve. There is pressure trapped at this test port.
2. To release this Pressure, activate level down to the end of stroke (the pressure in the up side goes to 0). This will allow you to snap a gauge on at this port.
3. Activate level up to the end of stroke, the gauge should read **2600 psi (179 bar)**. The level up relief valve is located next to the port **"M1"**.
4. Turn clockwise to increase, and counterclockwise to decrease.

PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN

1. Install a high pressure gauge at the gauge port **"M2"** of the Platform Valve.
2. To get a gauge on this point activate level up to the end of stroke (the pressure in the down side will go to 0, allowing you to snap a gauge on). Activate level down to the end of stroke, reading **1800 psi (124 bar)**.
3. The level down relief valve is located next to Port **"M2"**. Turn clockwise to increase, counterclockwise to decrease.

ARTICULATING JIB DOWN

1. Install a high pressure gauge on port **"M3"** of the Platform valve. Activate jib down, you should read **1500 psi (103 bar)**.
2. The down relief valve is located next to port **"M3"**. Turn clockwise to increase, counterclockwise to decrease.

4 WHEEL STEER (IF EQUIPPED)

1. At the platform console using the steer select switch activate “4 wheel steer”.
2. Install a pressure gauge in port **"G"** on the control valve.
3. With the aid of an assistant, activate steer left and right, adjust front steer relief valve to **2500 psi (172.4 bar)**. This pressure only affects the front axle.
4. At the platform console using the steer select switch activate “crab” or “coordinated” steer.
5. At the main control valve block disconnect the wire din connectors on the front steer valve. When steer is activated only the rear steer will work.
6. Install a pressure gauge in port **"G"** on the control valve.
7. With the aid of an assistant, activate steer left and right, adjust rear steer relief valve to **2500 psi (172 bar)** Reading at the valve bank. **2500 psi (172 bar)** will give you **2000 psi (138 bar)** at the cylinders.
8. Re-connect the front steer din connectors at the valve bank.

5.6 HYDRAULIC COMPONENT START-UP PROCEDURES AND RECOMMENDATIONS

From a hydrostatic component standpoint, the goal at system start up is to put into functional operation, the hydrostatic system in such a way as to preserve the designed life span of the system. The following start-up procedure should be adhered to whenever a new pump or motor is initially installed into a machine, or a system is restarted after either a pump or motor has been removed and/or replaced.

⚠ WARNING

THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE MAY REQUIRE THE MACHINE TO BE DISABLED (WHEELS RAISED OFF THE GROUND, WORK FUNCTIONS DISCONNECTED, ETC.). WHILE PERFORMING THE PROCEDURE IN ORDER TO PREVENT INJURY. TAKE NECESSARY SAFETY PRECAUTIONS BEFORE MOVING THE VEHICLE/MACHINE.

Prior to installing the pump and/or motor, inspect the unit(s) for damage that may have been incurred during shipping and handling. Make certain that all system components (reservoir, hoses, valves, fittings, heat exchanger, etc.) are clean prior to filling with fluid.

Fill the reservoir with recommended hydraulic fluid. This fluid should be passed through a 10 micron (nominal, no bypass) filter prior to entering the reservoir. The use of contaminated fluid will cause damage to the components, which may result in unexpected vehicle/machine movement.

NOTE: *If a pump or motor is being replaced due to internal damage, the remaining units (pump or motors) need to be inspected for damage and contamination, and the entire hydraulic system will need to be flushed and the fluid replaced. Failure to do so may cause considerable damage to the entire system.*

The inlet line leading from the reservoir to the pump must be filled prior to start-up. Check the inlet line for property tightened fittings and make sure it is free of restrictions and air leaks.

NOTE: *In most cases, the reservoir is above the pump inlet so that the pressure head created by the higher oil level helps to keep the inlet pressures within an acceptable range and prevent high vacuum levels. However, due to hose routing or low reservoir locations, there may be air trapped within this line. It is important to assure that the air is bled from this line. This can be accomplished by loosening the hose at the fitting closest the pump. When oil begins to flow, the line is full, the air has been purged, and the fitting can be retightened to its specified torque. If the tank needs to be pressurized in order to start the flow of oil, a vacuum reading should be taken at the inlet of the pump during operation in order to verify that the pump is not being asked to draw an inlet vacuum higher than it is capable of.*

Be certain to fill the pump and/or motor housing with clean hydraulic fluid prior to start up. Fill the housing by pouring filtered oil into the main case drain port.

NOTE: *It is highly recommended to use the highest possible case drain port, this ensures that the housing contains as much oil as possible and offers the greatest amount of lubrication to the internal components.*

NOTE: *In initial start-up conditions, it may be convenient to fill the housing, just prior to installing the case drain line. Component, (especially motor), location may be such that access to the case drain port after installation is not realistic.*

NOTE: *Make certain that the oil being used to fill the component housing is as clean as possible, and store the fill container in such a way as to prevent it from becoming contaminated.*

Install a 60 bar (or 1000 psi) pressure gauge in the charge pressure gauge port in order to monitor the charge pressure during start-up.

It is recommended that the external control input signal, (electrical connections for EDC), be disconnected at the pump control until after initial start-up. This will ensure that the pump remains in its neutral position.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT START THE ENGINE UNLESS PUMP IS IN THE NEUTRAL POSITION (0 DEGREES SWASHPLATE ANGLE). TAKE PRECAUTIONS TO PREVENT MACHINE MOVEMENT IN CASE PUMP IS ACTUATED DURING INITIAL START-UP.

"Jog" or slowly rotate the engine until charge pressure starts to rise. Start the engine and run at the lowest possible RPM until charge pressure has been established. Excess air should be bled from the system lines as close to the motors as possible.

NOTE: *With the engine on low idle, "crack", (loosen-don't remove), the system lines at the motor(s). Continue to run the engine at low idle and tighten the system lines as soon as oil is observed to leak from them. When oil is observed to "leak" at the motor the line is full, the air has been purged, and the system hoses should be retightened to their specified torque.*

Once charge pressure has been established, increase speed to normal operating RPM. Charge pressure should be as indicated in the pump model code. If charge pressure is inadequate, shut down and determine the cause for improper pressure.

⚠ WARNING

INADEQUATE CHARGE PRESSURE WILL AFFECT THE OPERATOR'S ABILITY TO CONTROL THE MACHINE.

Shut down the engine and connect the external control input signal. Also reconnect the machine function(s), if disconnected earlier. Start the engine, checking to be certain the pump remains in neutral. With the engine at normal operating RPM, slowly check for forward and reverse machine operation.

Charge pressure may slightly decrease during forward or reverse operation. Continue to cycle slowly between forward and reverse for at least five minutes.

Shut down engine, remove gauges, and plug ports. Check reservoir level and add filtered fluid if needed.

The machine is now ready for operation.

5.7 HYDRAULIC DRIVE PUMP PRE-FILL PROCEDURE

CAUTION

HYDRAULIC DRIVE PUMP MUST BE PRE-FILLED BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE. FAILURE TO DO SO CAN CAUSE PREMATURE FAILURE OF THE PUMP.

1. Fill the hydraulic reservoir.
2. Determine if the hydraulic oil tank sight level gauge is higher than other hydraulic components.
   a. Determine if the hydraulic oil tank sight level gauge is higher than the hydraulic drive pump assembly.
   b. Determine if the hydraulic oil tank sight level gauge is higher than all hydraulic hope loops and the routing between the hydraulic tanks and the hydraulic drive pump assembly.
   c. If sight level gauge is the highest hydraulic oil level point, proceed to step 3.
   d. If sight level gauge is NOT the highest oil level point, low pressure air may need to applied to the hydraulic oil tank (fill cap via air regulator) in conjunction with step 4 to get hydraulic oil to move over the air locks created by these high spots.
3. If the machine is to be equipped with a hydraulic oil cooler option.
   a. Determine if there is hydraulic "tee" fittings installed at the hydraulic drive pump that has a "cap" fittings attached to it. (this will generally be at or near the top of the hydraulic drive pump body). This "cap" fitting is to be used to manually fill the hydraulic drive pump case.
   b. Remove "cap" fitting.
   c. Fill hydraulic drive pump case with hydraulic oil.
   d. Attach and torque "cap" fitting.
   e. Pre-filling of hydraulic drive pump w/oil cooler option is complete. (Step #4 can be omitted at this point).
4. If machine is NOT equipped with a hydraulic oil cooler option.
   a. Locate a case access port on the hydraulic drive pump. Preferably one located on at or near the top or under sides of the pump.
   b. Using the proper wrench, Remove the O-ring plug to allow air to escape from the hydraulic drive pump case.
   c. Hydraulic oil will flow by gravity from the hydraulic tank to the drive pump.
   d. The pump is full, when hydraulic oil starts to flow out of this port.
   e. Install the O-ring plug and torque.
5. Pre-filled of the hydraulic drive pump is complete.

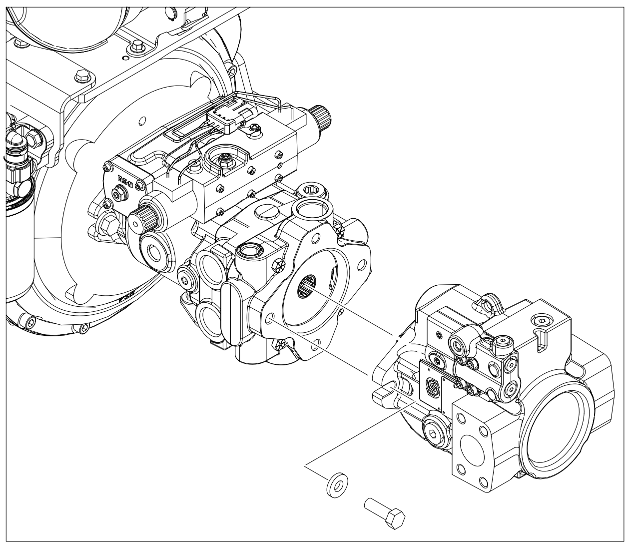
5.8 FUNCTION PUMP

Removal

1. Place machine on level surface and allow the engine and system fluids to cool.
2. Properly relieve any pressure in hydraulic system.
3. Tag and disconnect the hydraulic lines and fittings from the function pump. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Immediately cap lines and ports.

NOTE: *The function pump weighs approximately 35 lbs. (16 kg).*

4. Use a suitable device to support the function pump.
5. Remove two bolts and washers attaching the function pump to the drive pump. Remove function pump from the machine as shown.



6. Remove and discard o-ring, if applicable.
7. Place function pump in the clean work area.

Installation

NOTE: *The function pump weighs approximately 35 lbs. (16 kg).*

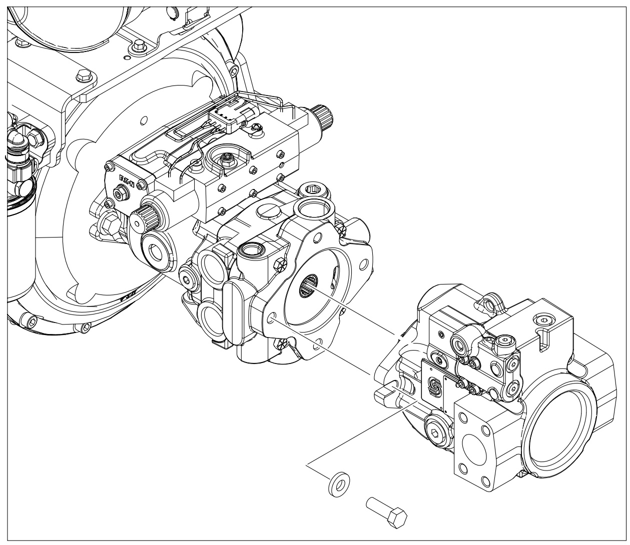
1. Use a suitable device to support the function pump.
2. If applicable, install the o-ring on to the function pump.
3. Align and install the function pump to the drive pump.

NOTE: *Make sure that the pump shaft is properly aligned.*

CAUTION

INCORRECT SHAFT ALIGNMENT MAY RESULT IN DAMAGE TO DRIVE SHAFT, BEARINGS, OR SEAL WHICH CAN CAUSE EXTERNAL OIL LEAKAGE.

4. Secure function pump with two bolts and washers as shown. Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the bolts before installation. Torque bolts to 85 ft. lbs. (116 Nm).



5. Remove tag and reconnect the hydraulic lines to the function pump.
6. Reconnect the battery power and make sure for proper working of the function pump.

Table 5-1. Symbols Used

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	Non-reusable part, use a new part		Inspect for wear or damage
	Option - either part may exist		Note correct orientation
	Internal hex head		Torque specification
ORB	O-ring boss port		Pull out with tool - press fit
	Lubricate with hydraulic fluid		Cover splines with installation sleeve
	Apply grease /petroleum jelly		Pressure measurement / gauge location or specification
The symbols above can be found in the pump illustrations. The legend above is provided to define each symbol and explain its purpose.			

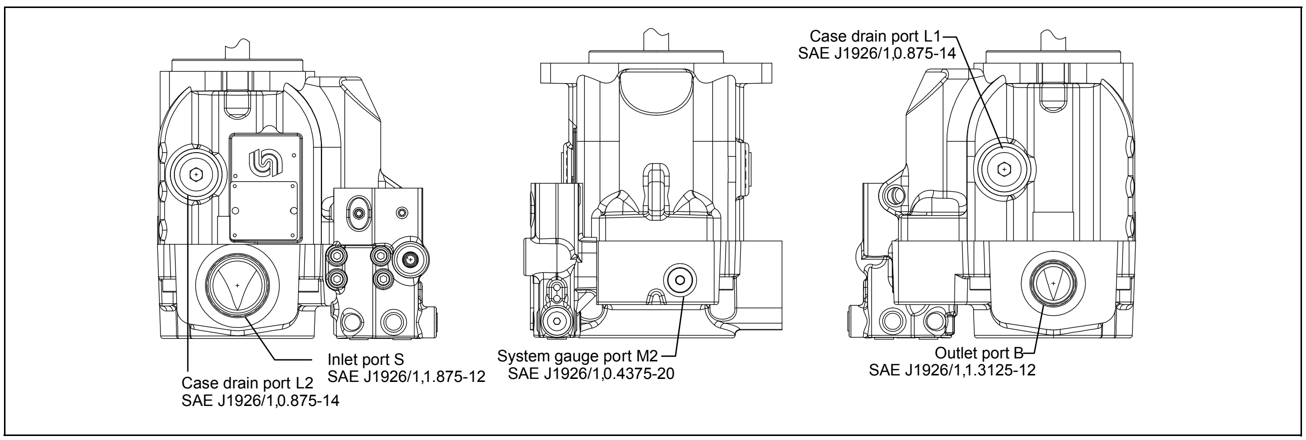


Figure 5-125. Gauge Port Locations

Table 5-2. Gauge and Port information

Port	Purpose	Range of Pump	Fitting
M2	System pressure	0-5000 psi (0-300 bar)	7/16 - 20 o-ring fitting
M4	Servo pressure	0-5000 psi (0-300 bar)	7/16 - 20 o-ring fitting
L1,L2	Case pressure	0-100 psi (0-10 bar)	7/8 - 14 o-ring fitting
X1	Load Sense signal	0-5000 psi (0-300 bar)	7/16 - 20 o-ring fitting (tee into Load Sense signal line)

Initial Start-up Procedures

Follow this procedure when starting-up a new pump or when the pump has been removed.

⚠ WARNING

UNINTENDED MOVEMENT OF THE MACHINE OR MECHANISM MAY CAUSE INJURY TO THE TECHNICIAN OR BYSTANDERS. TO PROTECT AGAINST UNINTENDED MOVEMENT, SECURE THE MACHINE OR DISABLE /DISCONNECT THE MECHANISM WHILE SERVICING.

Prior to installing the pump, inspect for damage incurred during shipping. Make certain all system components (reservoir, hoses, valves, fittings, heat exchanger, etc.) are clean prior to filling with fluid.

1. Install the pump on the engine. Ensure the pump shaft is properly aligned.

⚠ CAUTION

INCORRECT SHAFT ALIGNMENT MAY RESULT IN DAMAGE TO DRIVE SHAFT, BEARINGS, OR SEAL WHICH CAN CAUSE EXTERNAL OIL LEAKAGE.

2. Fill the reservoir with recommended hydraulic fluid. Always filter fluid through a 10 micron filter pouring into the reservoir. Never reuse hydraulic fluid.
3. Fill the main pump housing with clean hydraulic fluid. Pour filtered oil directly into the main most case drain port.
4. Fill the inlet line leading from the pump to the reservoir. Check the inlet line for properly tightened fittings and be certain it is free of restrictions and air leaks.
5. To ensure the pump stays filled with oil, install the case drain line in the main most case drain port.
6. Install a gauge at port M2 to monitor system pressure during start up.
7. While watching the pressure gauge installed at M2, jog the engine or run at the lowest possible speed until system pressure builds to normal levels (minimum 160 psi (11 bar)). Once system pressure is established, increase to full operating speed. If system pressure is not maintained, shutdown the engine, determine cause, and take corrective action. Refer to Troubleshooting.
8. Operate the hydraulic system for at least fifteen minutes under light load conditions.
9. Check and adjust control settings as necessary after installation. Refer to Adjustments.
10. Shut down the engine and remove the pressure gauge. Replace plug at port M2.
11. Check the fluid level in the reservoir; add clean filtered fluid if necessary. The pump is now ready for operation.

Fluid and Filter Maintenance

To ensure optimum life of products, perform regular maintenance of the fluid and filter. Contaminated fluid is the main cause of unit failure. Take care to maintain fluid cleanliness while servicing.

Check the reservoir daily for proper fluid level, the presence of water, and rancid fluid odor. Water in the fluid may be noted by a cloudy or milky appearance or free water in the bottom of the reservoir. Rancid odor indicated the fluid has been exposed to excessive heat. Change the fluid immediately if these conditions occur.

Change the fluid and filter as per the vehicle/machine manufacturer’s recommendations or at these intervals:

Table 5-3. Fluid and Filter Change Interval

Reservoir Type	Maximum Change Interval
Sealed	2000 Hours
Breather	500 Hours

Change the fluid more frequently if it becomes contaminated with foreign matter (dirt, water, grease, etc.) or if the fluid is subjected to temperature levels greater than the recommended maximum.

NOTE: *Dispose off used hydraulic fluid properly. Never reuse hydraulic fluid.*

Change filters whenever the fluid is changed or when the filter indicator shows that it is necessary to change the filter. Replace all fluid lost during filter change.

Troubleshooting

Table 5-4. Excessive Noise and/ or Vibration

Item	Description	Action
Check fluid level in reservoir.	Insufficient hydraulic fluid will cause cavitation.	Fill the reservoir to proper level.
Check for air in system.	Air in system will cause noisy, erratic control.	Purge air and tighten fittings. Check inlet for leaks.
Check pump inlet pressure / vacuum.	Improper inlet conditions will cause erratic behavior and low output flow.	Correct pump inlet pressure / vacuum conditions. Refer to Hydraulic parameters.
Inspect shaft couplings.	A loose or incorrect shaft coupling will cause excessive noise and/or vibration.	Repair or replace coupling and ensure that correct coupling is being used.
Check shaft alignment.	Misaligned shafts will create excessive noise and/or vibration.	Correct shaft misalignment.
Hydraulic fluid viscosity above acceptable limits.	Hydraulic fluid viscosity above acceptable limits or low fluid temperature will not allow the pump to fill or control to operate properly.	Allow system to warm up before operation or use fluid with the appropriate viscosity grade for expected operating temperatures.

Table 5-5. Actuator Response is Sluggish

Item	Description	Action
Check external system relief valve setting.	Low external relief valve setting will slow down system.	Adjust external relief valve setting per manufacturer's recommendations. External relief setting must be above Pressure Compensator setting for proper operation.
Check Pressure Compensator and LS control setting.	Low Pressure Compensator setting will prevent the pump from achieving full stroke. Low Load Sense setting will limit output flow.	Adjust Pressure Compensator and Load Sense setting. Refer to Adjustments.
Check Load Sense control signal pressures.	Incorrect Load Sense signal will not allow pump to operate correctly.	Inspect system, ensure that proper Load Sense signal is transmitted to the pump.
Internal system leaks.	Worn internal parts will not allow the pump to operate properly.	Refer to Authorized Service Center for repairs as required.
Hydraulic fluid viscosity above acceptable limits.	Hydraulic fluid viscosity above acceptable limits or low fluid temperature will not allow the pump to fill or control to operate properly.	Allow system to warm up before operation or use fluid with the appropriate viscosity grade for expected operating temperatures.
Check external system valving.	Malfunctioning valving may not allow system to respond properly.	Repair or replace system valving as required.
Check pump case pressure.	High case pressure will cause the system to be sluggish.	Correct case drain line restrictions.
Check pump inlet pressure / vacuum.	High inlet vacuum will cause low output flow.	Correct inlet pressure conditions.

Table 5-6. System Operating Hot

Item	Description	Action
Check fluid level in reservoir.	Insufficient volume of hydraulic fluid will not meet cooling demands of system.	Fill reservoir to proper level. Verify proper size of reservoir.
Inspect heat exchanger. Check air flow and input air temperature for the heat exchanger.	Insufficient air flow, high input air temperature, or undersized heat exchanger will not meet cooling demands of the system.	Clean, repair, or replace heat exchanger as required. Verify proper size of heat exchanger.
Check external system relief valve setting.	Fluid passing through relief valve adds heat to system.	Adjust external system relief valve setting per manufacturer's recommendations. External relief valve setting must be above Pressure Compensator setting for proper operation.
Check pump inlet pressure / vacuum.	High inlet vacuum adds heat to system.	Correct inlet pressure / vacuum conditions.

Table 5-7. Low Pump Output Flow

Item	Description	Action
Check fluid level in reservoir.	Insufficient hydraulic fluid will limit output flow and cause internal damage to pump.	Fill the reservoir to proper level.
Hydraulic fluid viscosity above acceptable limits.	Fluid viscosity above acceptable limits or low fluid temperature will not allow the pump to fill or control to operate properly.	Allow system to warm up before operation or use fluid with the appropriate viscosity grade for expected operating temperatures.
Check external system relief valve setting.	External relief valve set below Pressure Compensator setting will cause low output flow.	Adjust external relief valve per manufacturer's recommendation. External relief valve setting must be above Pressure Compensator setting for proper operation.
Check Pressure Compensator and Load Sense control setting.	Low Pressure Compensator setting will prevent the pump from achieving full stroke. Low Load Sense setting will limit output flow.	Adjust Pressure Compensator and Load Sense setting. Refer to Adjustments.
Check pump inlet pressure / vacuum.	High inlet vacuum will cause low output flow.	Correct inlet pressure conditions.
Check input speed.	Low input speeds decrease flow.	Adjust input speed.
Check pump rotation.	Incorrect rotational configuration will cause low flow.	Use pump with appropriate rotational configuration.

Table 5-8. Pressure or Flow Instability

Item	Description	Action
Check for air in system.	Air in system will cause erratic operation.	Activate Pressure Compensator, allowing system to bleed air. Check inlet line for leaks and eliminate source of air ingression.
Check control spools.	Sticking control spools will cause erratic operation.	Inspect spools for free movement in bore. Clean or replace as needed.
Check Load Sense setting.	Low Load Sense setting may cause instability.	Adjust Load Sense setting to proper level. See Adjustments.
Check Load Sense signal line.	Blocked Load Sense signal line will interfere with proper Load Sense operation.	Remove blockage.
Check external relief valve and Pressure Compensator setting.	Insufficient pressure differential between Pressure Compensator Pressure Compensator setting and external relief valve.	Adjust external relief valve or Pressure Compensator control settings to appropriate level. Relief valve setting must be above Pressure Compensator setting for proper operation.
Check external relief valve.	Chattering external relief valve may cause unstable feedback to pump control.	Adjust or replace relief valve.

Table 5-9. System Pressure Not Reaching Pressure Compensator Setting

Item	Description	Action
Check Pressure Compensator control setting.	System pressure will not rise above Pressure Compensator setting.	Adjust Pressure Compensator to appropriate setting.
Check external relief valve.	External relief valve setting below Pressure Compensator setting will prevent pressure compensation.	Adjust external relief valve per manufacturer's recommendations. External relief valve must be set above Pressure Compensator setting for proper operation.
Inspect Pressure Compensator control spring.	Broken, damaged, or missing spring will cause erratic operation.	Replace spring as required.
Inspect Pressure Compensator spool for wear.	Wear of the Pressure Compensator spool will cause internal leakage in the control.	Replace the spool as required.
Inspect Pressure Compensator spool for proper orientation.	Improper orientation will result in poor operation.	Correct orientation of spool.
Check Pressure Compensator control for contamination.	Contamination may interfere with movement of the Pressure Compensator Spool.	Clean Pressure Compensator control components, take appropriate action to eliminate contamination.

Table 5-10. High Inlet Vacuum

Item	Description	Action
CAUTION HIGH INLET VACUUM CAUSES CAVITATION WHICH CAN DAMAGE INTERNAL PUMP COMPONENTS.		
Check fluid temperature.	Low temperature increases viscosity. High fluid viscosity causes high inlet vacuum.	Allow system to warm up before operation.
Inspect inlet screen.	Blocked or restricted inlet screen will cause high inlet vacuum.	Clean screen / remove blockage.
Check inlet piping.	Too many fittings, bends, or long piping will cause high inlet vacuum.	Eliminate fittings to make path more direct.
Hydraulic fluid viscosity above acceptable limits.	High fluid viscosity causes high inlet vacuum.	Select fluid with appropriate viscosity for expected operating temperature.

Set Up the Function Pump

(The pump that is mounted on the back of the drive pump).

1. **Set Stand by pressure or load sense pressure**

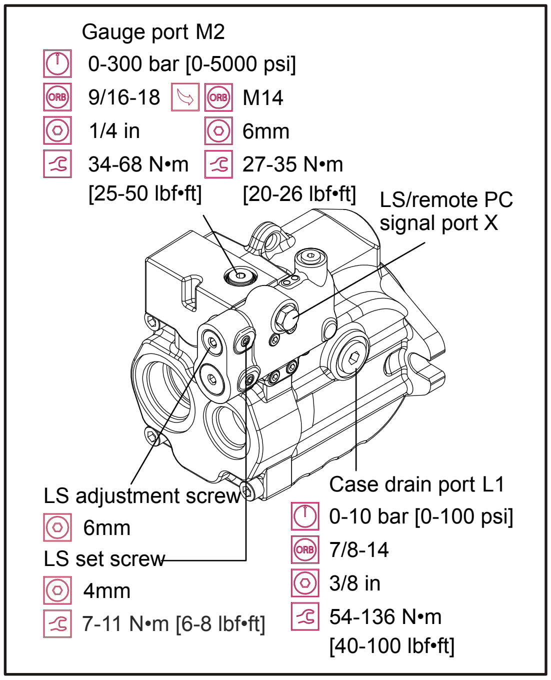


Figure 5-126. Load Sensing Control Adjustment

a. Install a low pressure gauge at port **"MP"** of the main valve block. A gauge capable of reading **400 psi (27.58 bar)**.

b. Remove the wires from the main boom lift, valve coils on the main boom main valve block. Start the engine and activate main lift up or down. Hold the function for 10-15 seconds. This bleeds the air out of the sense line. The gauge should be reading between **400-440 psi (28-30 bar)**.

c. To make an adjustment to this pressure, go to the engine compartment, locate the function pump. There are (2) adjustments at the top of the pump. They are located on the pump compensator which has (4) bolts mounting it to the pump. The stand by adjustment is at the top.

d. To adjust this, a 4 mm and 6 mm Allen wrench will be needed. The adjustment screw is facing the front of the pump, or toward the engine. First, using the 4 mm wrench, loosen the setscrew on the side of the compensator (facing you) which is in line with the adjustment screw. This is a jam nut screw which holds the main adjustment from turning. Loosen it 1 turn.

e. Then using the 6 mm wrench adjust the main adjustment clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease. The pressure should read between **400-440 psi (27.58-30.34 bar)**.

2. **Set High pressure relief**

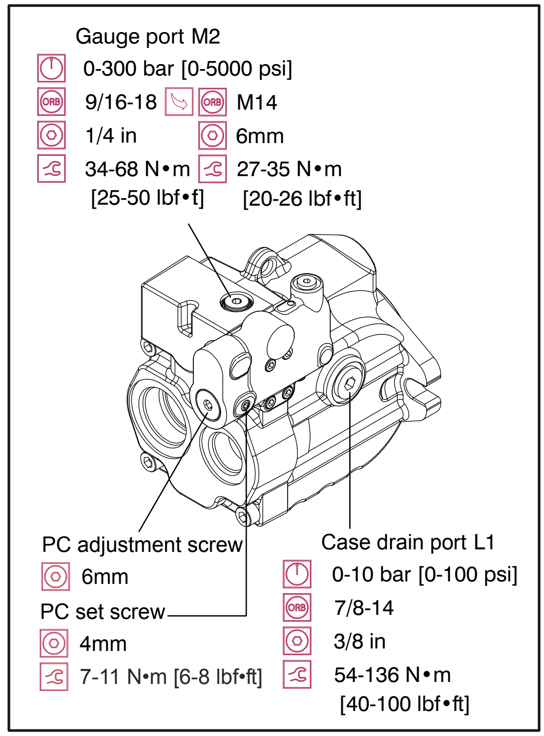


Figure 5-127. Pressure Compensation Control Adjustment

a. Install a high pressure gauge at the **"MP"** port of the main valve block.

b. Activate main boom telescope in. The gauge should read **2600 psi (179 bar)**.

c. To make an adjustment to this pressure, go back to the engine compartment to the function pump. The high pressure relief adjustment is the lower one of the (2) on the compensator. To adjust this, a 4 mm and 6 mm Allen wrench will be needed. The adjustment screw is facing the front of the pump, or toward the engine.

d. First, using the 4 mm wrench, loosen the setscrew on the side of the compensator (facing you) which is in line with the adjustment screw. This is a jam nut screw which holds the main adjustment from turning. Loosen it 1 turn.

Then using the 6 mm wrench adjust the main adjustment clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease. This is the **maximum** relief pressure for all functions governed by this pump.

Shaft Seal Replacement

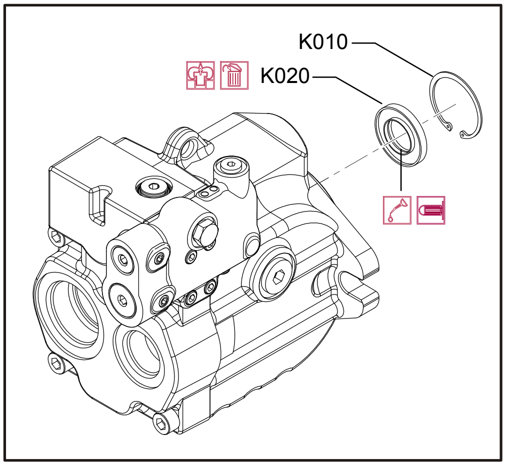


Figure 5-128. Shaft Seal and Retaining Ring

A lip type shaft seal is used in the pump and can be replaced without major disassembly of the unit. Replacement of the shaft seal requires removal of the pump from the machine.

REMOVAL

1. Using the appropriate snap-ring pliers, remove the retaining ring (K010) from the housing.
2. Remove the shaft seal (K020) from the bore in the pump housing and discard. Avoid damaging the pump housing or shaft. Puncture the face of the seal with a packing hook, or use a slide-hammer type puller to remove the seal.

INSTALLATION

1. Inspect the pump housing and new seal for damage. Inspect the sealing area on the shaft for rust, wear, or contamination. Polish the sealing area on the shaft if necessary.
2. Lubricate the lip of the new shaft seal with clean hydraulic fluid. Place a protective sleeve over the shaft end to prevent damage to the seal during installation.

CAUTION

PREMATURE BEARING FAILURE CAN RESULT IF THE SHAFT SEAL CONTACTS THE SHAFT BEARING. PRESS THE SEAL INTO THE HOUSING ONLY FAR ENOUGH TO CLEAR THE RETAINING RING GROOVE.

3. Keeping the seal perpendicular to the shaft, press the new seal into the housing just far enough to clear the retaining ring groove. Install seal with the cupped side toward the shaft bearing. Do not damage the seal during installation.
4. Using the appropriate snap ring pliers, install the seal retaining ring.
5. Remove the installation sleeve.

Control Assembly

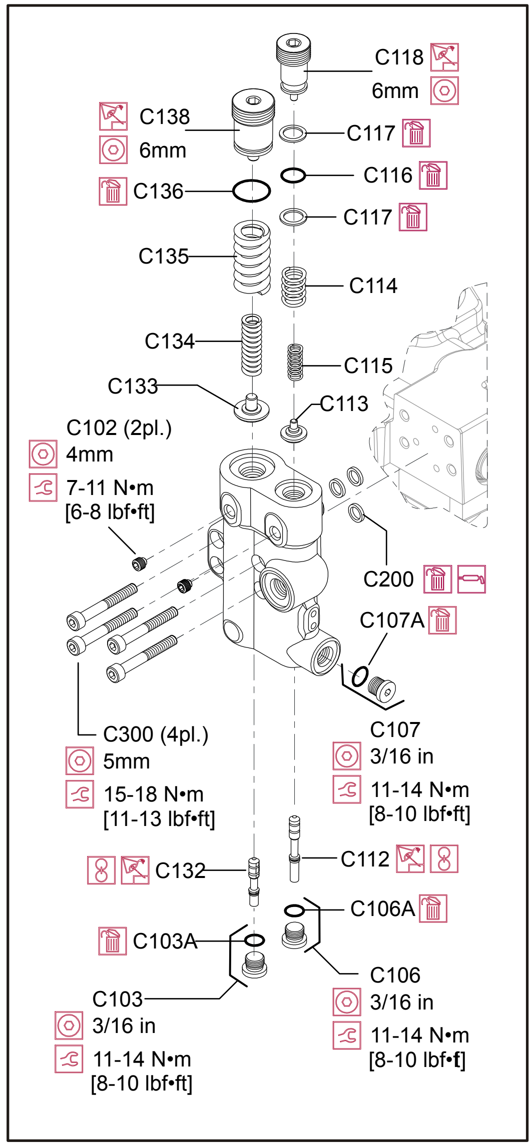


Figure 5-129. Control Assembly

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove the four screws (C300) holding the control housing onto the end cap.
2. Remove the control and discard the three interface o-rings (C200).
3. Remove the Pressure Compensator set screw (C102), Pressure Compensator adjustment screw (C138), o-ring (C136), springs (C135, C134), and seat (C133). Discard the o-ring.
4. Remove the plug (C103), o-ring (C103A),and Pressure Compensator spool (C132) from the control housing; discard the o-ring. Note orientation of the spool for reassembly.
5. Remove the plug (C107) and o-ring (C107A); discard the o-ring.

NOTE: *For Pressure Compensator only controls, skip steps 6 and 7.*

6. Remove the Load Sense set screw (C102), Load Sense adjustment screw (C118), o-ring (C116), backup rings (C117), springs (C114, C115), and seat (C113); discard the o-ring.
7. Remove the plug (C106), o-ring (C106A), and Load Sense spool (C112) from the control housing; discard the o-ring. Note orientation of the spool for reassembly.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect the adjustment screws for wear at the tips and where they contact the springs; replace as necessary.
2. Inspect the springs and spring guides for wear or damage; replace as necessary.
3. Carefully inspect the spools. Ensure the sealing lands are free of nicks and scratches. Check the ends that contact the spring guides for wear. Replace spools as necessary.
4. Inspect the control housing for damage. Check the spool bores for excessive wear.
5. Clean all parts and lubricate spools, springs, guides and new o-rings with clean hydraulic fluid.

REASSEMBLY

1. Install the Pressure Compensator spool, spherical end first, into the Pressure Compensator bore. The Pressure Compensator spool is the shorter of the two. Using a new o-ring, install the plug (C103). Torque to 8-10 ft. lbs. (11-14 Nm).
2. Place the two Pressure Compensator springs onto the spring guide and install into the Pressure Compensator bore. Place a new o-ring onto the Pressure Compensator adjustment screw and thread it into the Pressure Compensator bore until flush, then make another full turn. Install and torque the set screw to 6-8 ft. lbs. (7-11 Nm).

NOTE: *For Pressure Compensator only controls, skip steps 3 and 4.*

3. Install the Load Sense spool, spherical end first, into the Load Sense bore. The Load Sense spool is the longer of the two. Using a new o-ring, install the plug (C106). Torque to 8-10 ft. lbs. (11-14 Nm).
4. Place the two Load Sense springs onto the spring guide and install into the Load Sense bore. Place a new o-ring and backup rings onto the Load Sense adjustment screw and thread it into the Load Sense bore until flush, then make another full turn. Install and torque the set screw to 6-8 ft. lbs. (7-11 Nm).
5. Using a new o-ring, install the plug (C107). Torque to 8-10 ft. lbs. (11-14 Nm).
6. Using petroleum jelly to retain them, install the three interface o-rings (C200) in the recesses on the control housing.
7. Install the control assembly onto the endcap using the four screws (C300). Torque to 11-13 ft. lbs. (15-18 Nm). Torque screws in a criss-cross pattern and re-torque the first screw to ensure proper torque retention.

Plug and Fitting Sizes and Torques

If any plugs or fittings are removed from the unit during service, install and torque as indicated here. This drawing is a composite. Your configuration may differ but the appropriate wrench size and torque can be found here.

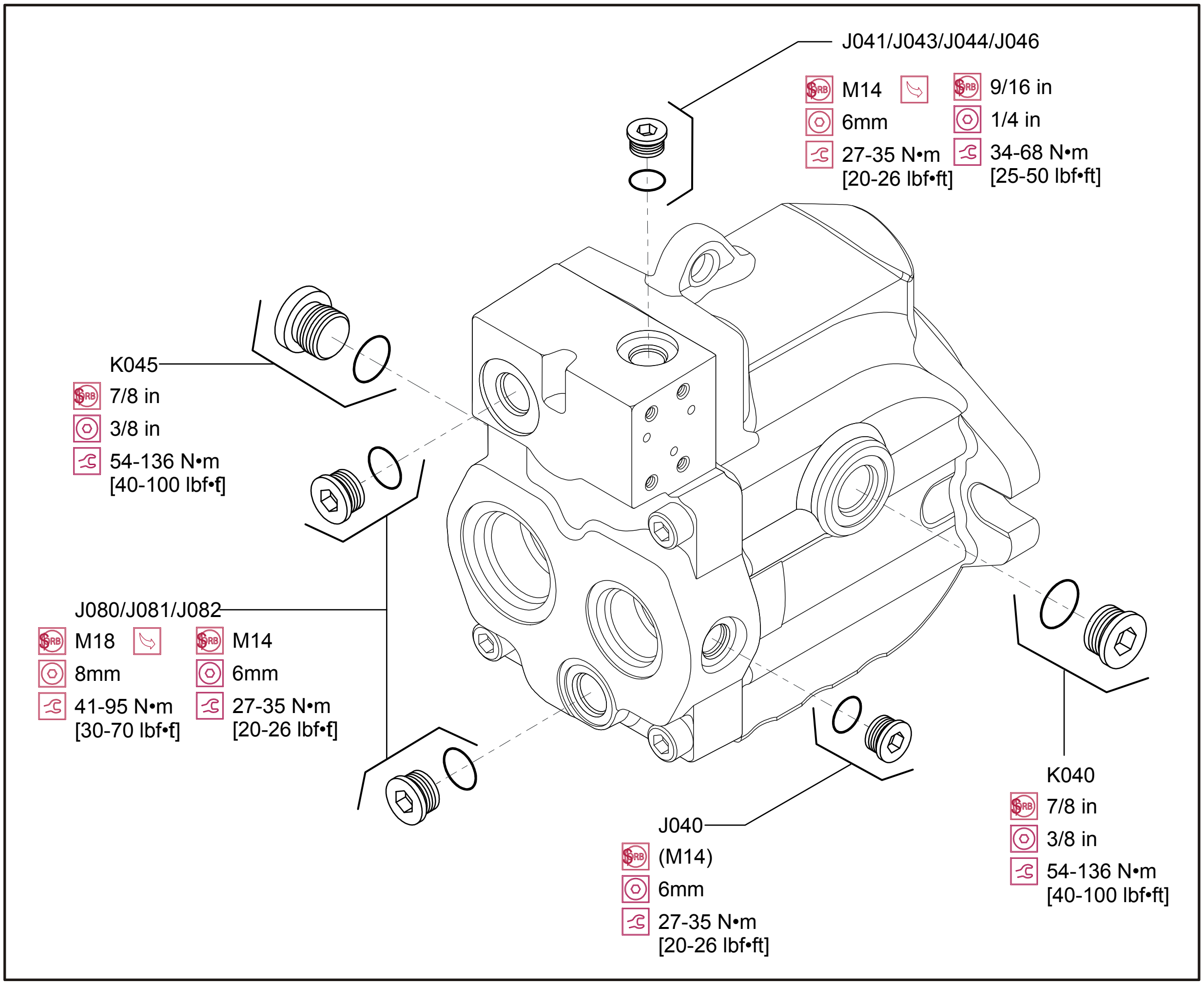


Figure 5-130. Plug Locations, Sizes, and Torques

5.9 HYDROSTATIC PUMP

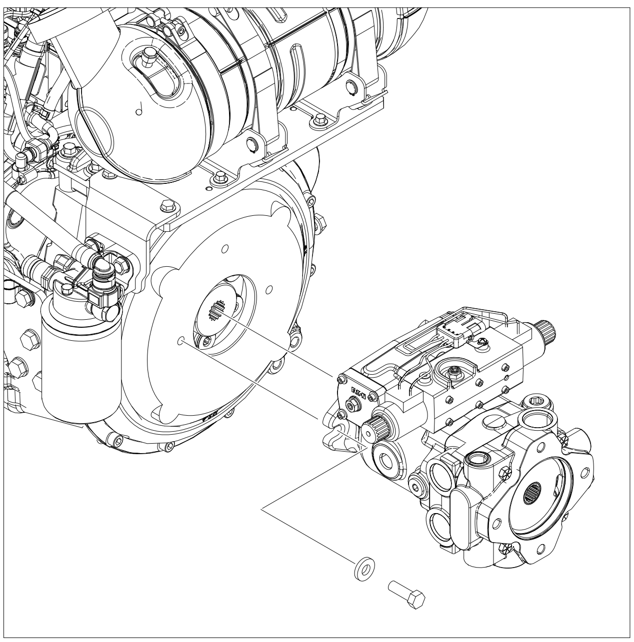
Removal

NOTE: *Remove the function pump from the machine first, refer Section 5.8, Function Pump.*

1. Tag and disconnect the hydraulic lines and fittings from the drive pump. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Immediately cap lines and ports.

NOTE: *The drive pump weighs approximately 62 lbs. (28 kg).*

2. Use a suitable device to support the drive pump.
3. Remove two bolts and washers attaching the drive pump to the engine assembly. Remove drive pump from the machine as shown.



4. Remove and discard o-ring from the drive pump groove.
5. Place drive pump in the clean work area.

Installation

NOTE: *The drive pump weighs approximately 62 lbs. (28 kg).*

1. Use a suitable device to support the drive pump.
2. Install the new o-ring in to the drive pump groove.
3. Align and install the drive pump to the engine assembly.

NOTE: *Make sure that the pump shaft is properly aligned.*

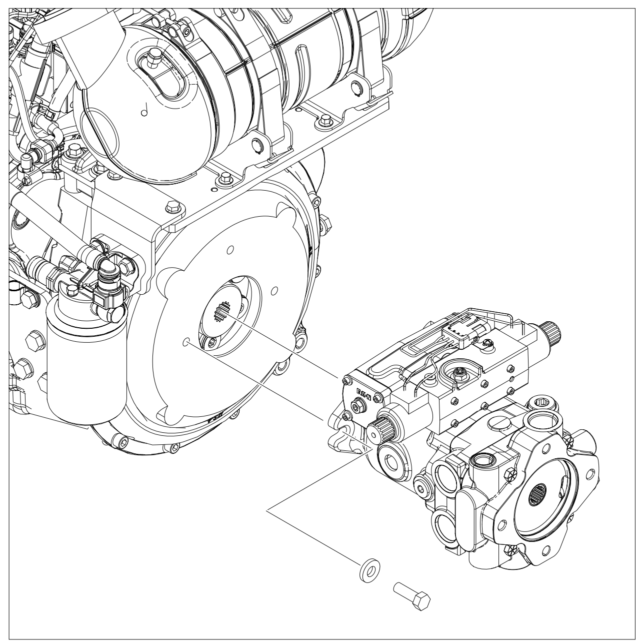
CAUTION

INCORRECT SHAFT ALIGNMENT MAY RESULT IN DAMAGE TO DRIVE SHAFT, BEARINGS, OR SEAL WHICH CAN CAUSE EXTERNAL OIL LEAKAGE.

4. Secure drive pump with two bolts and washers as shown.

NOTE: *Apply JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 to the bolts before installation.*

5. Torque bolt to 85 ft. lbs. (116 Nm).



6. Remove tag and reconnect the hydraulic lines and fittings to the drive pump.

Servo Controlled Piston Pump

DISASSEMBLY

The following instructions apply to a single servo controlled piston pump with or without a gerotor charge pump. A tandem pump assembly should be separated into individual pumps before disassembly.

1. Position the pump into a protected jaw vise, clamping onto the outer portion of the flange, with the capscrews up. Mark the relationship of the working ports (for assembly identification) to the servo control assembly with a scribe. Remove the four capscrews retaining endcover.
2. Lift the charge pump adapter assembly straight up off endcover, shaft and gerotor. Gerotor may stay in adapter or on endcover.
3. Remove o-ring from charge pump adapter.
4. Remove outer gerotor ring from either the charge pump adapter or the inner gerotor ring.

NOTE: *Refer to “Charge Pump Adapter Assembly” for disassembly and inspection of charge pump adapter assembly.*

5. Remove the inner gerotor ring and key from drive shaft or inner gerotor ring and coupler assembly from shaft.
6. Lift endcover straight up off shaft and housing. Remove valve plate from endcover or from rotating kit assembly, still in housing.
7. From endcover, remove bypass valve or plug, and relief valve assemblies. Note: Mark the relief valve in relationship to the cavity it was removed, for reassembly purposes.

Endcover Inspection

- Check the bearing (press fit) in endcover. If needles remain in cage, move freely, and setting is at the dimension shown in Figure 5-131., removal not required.
- Check roll pin in endcover. If tight and set to the dimension shown in Figure 5-131., removal not required.

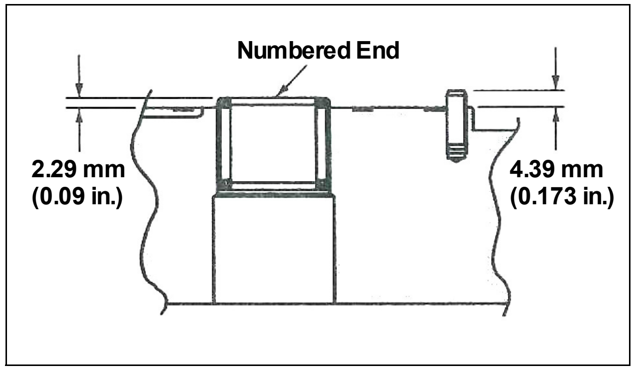


Figure 5-131. Endcover Inspection

1. Remove housing gasket from housing or endcover.
2. With pump still in vise, remove the six capscrews retaining the manual servo control assembly. Remove the control assembly and control housing gasket from the housing. Remove orifice plates, noting location for reassembly. Remove nut and lock washer from control arm, remove arm. Note position of control arm for reassembly.

NOTE: *Refer to “Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly” for disassembly and Inspection of control assembly.*

3. To remove rotating kit assembly from housing, first remove pump from vise holding the rotating kit assembly in position. Lower pump so that the shaft end (flange end) is up. Set the rear of housing onto table with housing flat and rotating kit assembly at rest on table. (Hole in table, for protruding shaft, is required.) Lift and remove the housing and shaft from rotating kit assembly, and swashplate.
4. Remove swash plate from rotating kit assembly and servo piston follower from swashplate.

NOTE: *Refer to “Rotating Kit Assembly” for disassembly and Inspection of rotating kit.*

Swashplate Inspection

- The finish on the piston shoe surfaces of the swash plate should show no signs of scoring.
- Inspect swashplate bushing surface for wear and surface for coating transfer from bushing.

1. To remove servo piston assembly from housing, start with the four each capscrews and washers retaining each cover plate.
2. In removing the cover plate from the servo piston bolt, remove jam nut, washer, and seal washer. Hold the servo piston bolt with hex key and unscrew cover plate off of bolt.
3. Remove servo piston assembly and seal sub-assemblies (two sets) from housing.

NOTE: *Disassembly of servo piston assembly is not required.*

4. Remove retaining ring from the front of housing. Press the shaft, shaft seal or spacer, and washer from housing. Remove retaining ring, thrust washer, thrust bearing, second thrust washer, and second retaining ring from shaft.

Housing Inspection

- Check the bearing (press fit) in housing. If needles remain in cage, move freely, and setting at the dimension shown in Figure 5-132., removal not required.

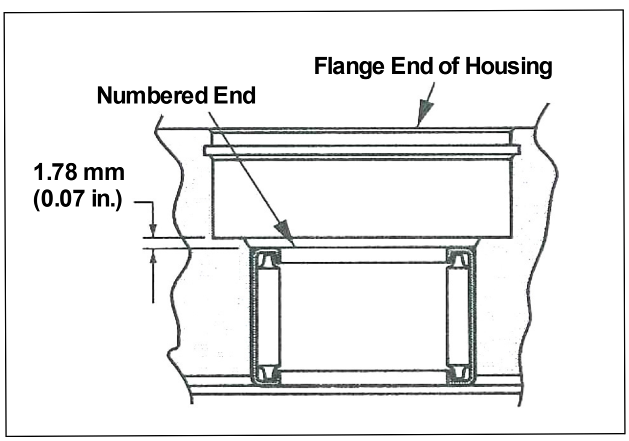


Figure 5-132. Housing Inspection

1. To remove cradle sub-assembly, remove the two capscrews retaining cradle inside housing. Removing cradle subassembly from housing.
2. Remove button head capscrews (2 Qty.) to remove bushing from cradle.

Bushing Inspection

- Inspect bushing for contamination embedment within coating of bushing surface coming in contact with swashplate.

1. Remove all plugs from housing.
2. Discard the shaft seal, gaskets, and o-rings from all assemblies. Replace with new seals upon reassembly.

ASSEMBLY

1. All parts should be cleaned and critical moving parts lubricated before reassembly.
2. If necessary, press new bearing in housing to dimension shown in Figure 5-132., with the numbered end of bearing outward.
3. Install the two new seal sub-assemblies into the servo piston cavity of housing.
4. Screw the cover plate onto the servo piston assembly. Install new cover plate gasket in place on housing. Install servo piston assembly and cover plate into servo piston bore in right side of housing (as shown in Figure 5-133. Retain cover plate with four each washers and capscrews. Torque capscrews 40 to 48 in.lbs (4.5 to 5.4 Nm). To obtain neutral, centering the servo piston assembly is required. Measure in from the left side and set servo piston 0.5 in. (12.7 mm) from surface of housing servo bore as shown in Figure 5-133.

NOTE: *Re-adjustment may be required for neutral at unit start-up.*

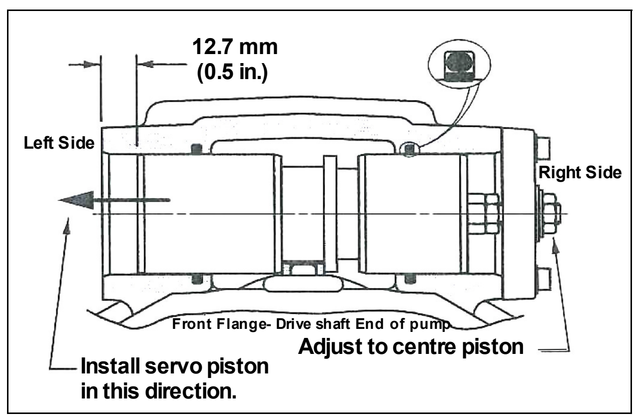


Figure 5-133. Servo Piston Installation

5. Install new seal washer, washer, and jam nut to servo piston bolt. Holding servo piston bolt with hex key wrench Torque jam nut (150 to 160 in.lbs) 17 to 18 Nm. Check the centering of servo piston assembly. Install new cover plate gasket and cover plate to left side of servo piston and retain with four each washers and #10-24 capscrews. Torque capscrews 40 to 48 in.lbs (4.5 to 5.4 Nm).

6. To assemble cradle sub-assembly, install bushing onto cradle retaining with button head capscrews. Torque button head capscrew 14 to 16 in. lbs (1.6 to 1.8 Nm).

7. Place cradle sub-assembly into housing making sure cradle is completely seated into housing. Retain cradle sub-assembly with two capscrews. Torque capscrews 20 to 24 ft. lbs (27 to 33 Nm).

8. To install shaft, place exterior retaining ring, thrust race, thrust bearing, second thrust race, and second retaining ring onto shaft. Position washer and shaft seal or spacer onto shaft.

9. Install shaft assembly into front of housing for units with spacer, retain with interior retaining ring and go on to step 10. For units with shaft seal. seat seal into position with seal driver and retain with interior retaining ring.

10. Install servo piston follower onto swashplate dowel pin. Install swashplate carefully onto bushing (coat bushing surface with hydraulic oil), aligning servo piston follower with slot in servo piston assembly.

NOTE: *Refer to "Rotating Kit Assembly" for reassembly of rotating kit assembly.*

11. To install rotating kit assembly, leave housing and shaft in the horizontal position. Holding swashplate into position with screw driver thru controller linkage passageway at the top of housing. place rotating kit assembly over shaft and into housing until pistons are in against swashplate. Make sure all parts are in housing completely and properly positioned. Return the pump to the vise with open end of housing up. clamping housing on the outer portion of the flange.

12. Install gasket on to housing.

13. If necessary, press new bearing and roll pin in endcover to dimension shown in figure 1-3. Bearing installed with the numbered end outward. Roll pin installed with split oriented away from bearing.

14. Install new o-ring on relief valves. Install relief valve in its original cavity in endcover that it was removed. Torque 100 to 110 ft. lbs (136 to 149 Nm).

15. Install new o-ring on bypass valve or plug. Install bypass valve or plug into endcover. Note: Make sure paddle of bypass valve is perpendicular to relief valve axis prior to installing or damage could result.

16. Apply a small amount of petroleum jelly to the steel side of valve plate to hold in place for installation. Aligning the index pin, place the valve plate in position onto the endcover, with steel side against endcover.

17. Install endcover assembly onto housing assembly. Make sure ports are positioned correctly, valve plate and gasket stay in place.

18. Install key and inner ring gerotor onto shaft or coupler assembly. Lubricate inner ring gerotor.

NOTE: *Refer to "Charge Pump Adapter Assembly" for assembly of charge relief valve in adapter plate.*

19. Insta ll o-ring and outer ring gerotor onto adapter plate. Lubricate both a-ring and outer ring to hold in position during assembly of adapter plate. Install adapter plate onto endcover. Make sure o-ring and gerotor ring stay in place.

20. Retain endcover and adapter plate (when used) with four capscrews, Torque 27 to 31 ft. lbs (37 to 42 Nm).

NOTE: *Refer to "Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly" for reassembly of manual servo control assembly.*

21. Install control housing gasket onto housing. Install orifices into control assembly and retain in position with petroleum jelly. Position the feedback link at 90 degrees from control housing. Install manual servo control assembly onto housing making sure feedback link entered small groove in servo piston assembly.

22. Retain control assembly with six capscrews, torque 40 to 48 in. lbs (4.5 to 5.4 Nm).

23. Install control arm onto control assembly input arm. Retain with lock washer and nut, torque 4 to 6 ft. lbs (5 to 8 Nm).

24. Install new o-rings on all plugs. Install plugs into housing. Torque 3/4 in. plug 21 to 24 ft. lbs (28 to 32 Nm). Torque 1-1/4 in. plug 40 to 45 ft. lbs (54 to 61 Nm).

25. Refer to "Start-up Procedure".

Charge Pump Adapter Assembly

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove plug, shims, spring, and poppet from adapter assembly as shown in Figure 5-135.

Inspection

- Inspect the charge pump relief valve seat inside the charge pump adapter. Check to insure that seat is smooth and free of burrs or other defects.
- Inspect the charge pump relief valve spring.
- Inspect the bearing or bushing inside the charge pump adapter. The bearing needles must remain in the bearing cage and bearing at dimension shown in Figure 5-134. The bushing must have no excessive scoring.
- Inspect the gerotor pocket inside the charge pump adapter assembly. It should not be scored excessively.

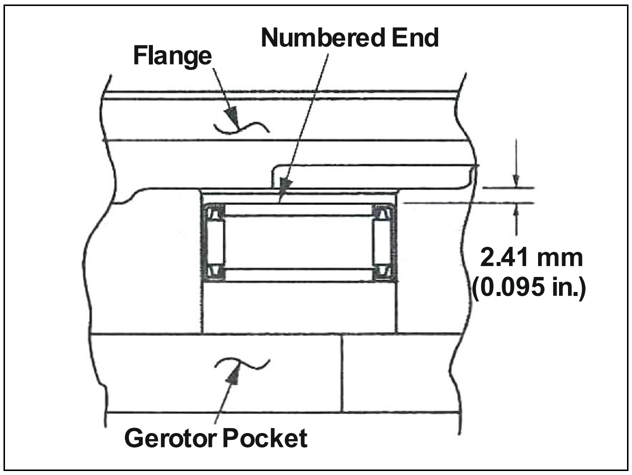
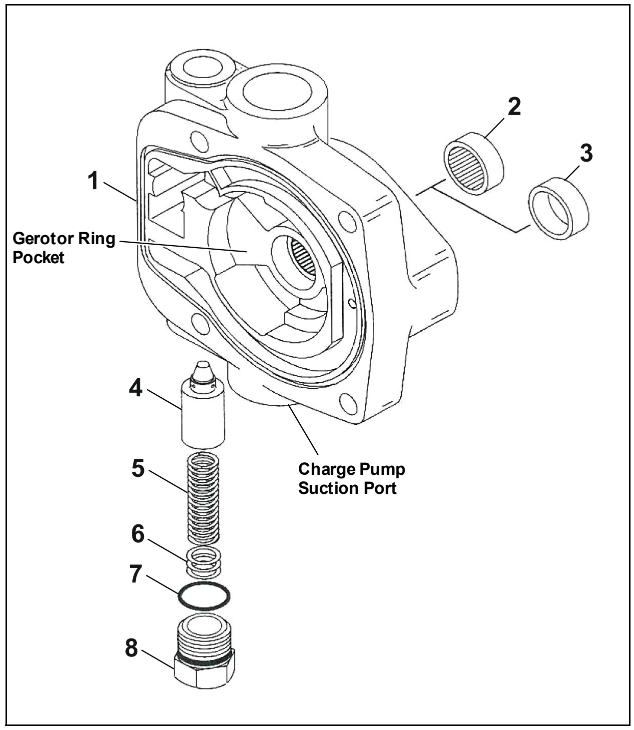


Figure 5-134. Bearing or Bushing Inspection

ASSEMBLY

1. If necessary, press new bearing or bushing in adapter assembly. The bearing to dimension shown in Figure 5-134. with the numbered end of bearing outward and closest to mounting flange. The bushing is to be pressed flush to 0.254 mm (0.010 in.) recessed.
2. Install poppet. spring, shims, new o-ring on plug, and plug into adapter assembly. Torque plug 30 to 27 ft. lbs. (40.7 to 36.6 Nm).



1. Charge Pump Adapter
2. Bearing
3. Bushing
4. Poppet
5. Spring
6. Shims
7. O-ring
8. Plug

Figure 5-135. Charge Pump Adapter Assembly

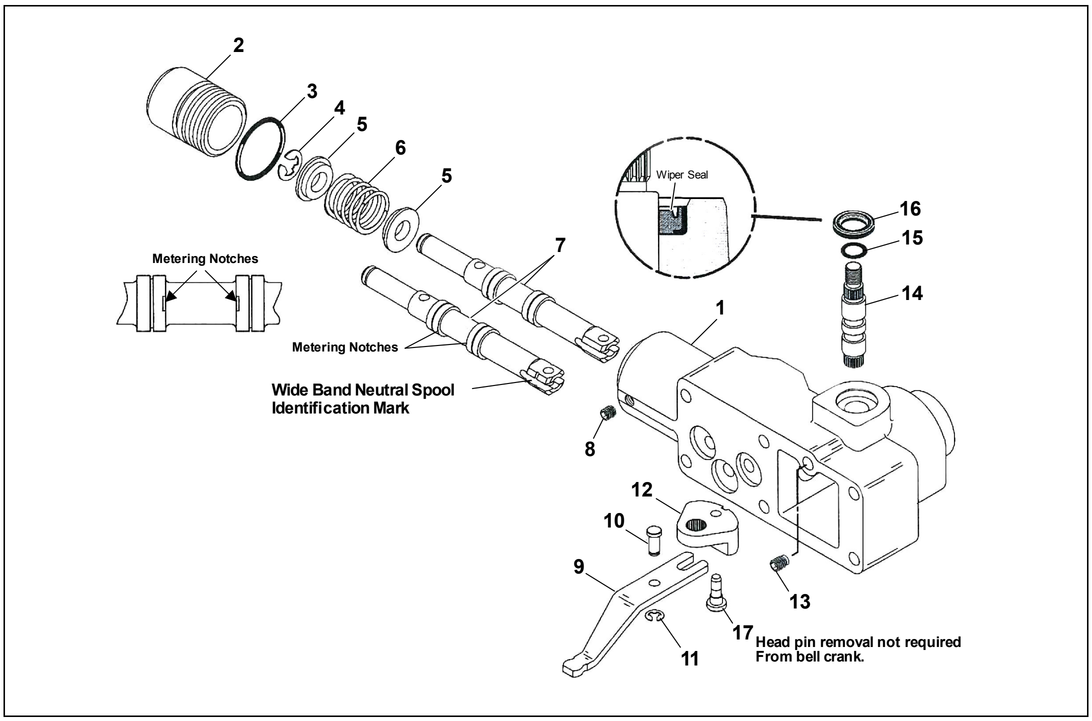
Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove wiper seal with screw driver. Remove set screw retaining input shaft and remove input shaft from control housing.
2. Remove set screw from plug retaining valve spool and remove plug.
3. Remove E-ring from pin retaining feedback link and valve spool. Remove pin. feedback link. valve spool, and bell crank from control housing.
4. Compress spring and remove E-ring. spring retainer. spring. and second spring retainer from valve spool.
5. Remove o-rings from plug and input shaft. Clean all parts and lubricate in prep for reassembly.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install spring retainer, spring. and second spring retainer onto spool. Compress spring with retainer and retain with E-ring onto valve spool.
2. Install valve spool into control housing making sure that metering notches on valve spool can be seen in the metering ports. Notches shown in Figure 5-136.
3. Position bell crank in housing. Slide feedback link into position between clevis on valve spool. aligning holes, and install dowel pin retaining with E-ring.
4. Install new o-ring onto input shaft. Hold bell crank in position with feedback link slot and align splined hole of bell crank with input shaft cavity. Install input shaft into control housing and bell crank.
5. JLG Threadlocker P/N 0100011 or equivalent to set screw and install, retaining input shaft. Adjust set screw until it bottoms out on input shaft and back out one-quarter turn.
6. Install wiper seal on input shaft as shown in Figure 5-136. Install new o-ring onto plug. retaining valve spool, and install plug. Adjust plug until there is no play in the valve spool with input shaft held stationary. Lock in place with set screw. Torque set screw 17 to 25 in. lbs (2 to 3 Nm).



1. Control Housing
2. Plug
3. O-ring
4. Retaining Ring
5. Spring Retainer
6. Spool Centering Spring
7. Valve Spool
8. Set Screw
9. Feedback Link
10. Dowel Pin
11. Retaining Ring
12. Bell Crank
13. Set Screw
14. Input Shaft
15. O-ring
16. Wiper Seal
17. Head Pin

Figure 5-136. Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly

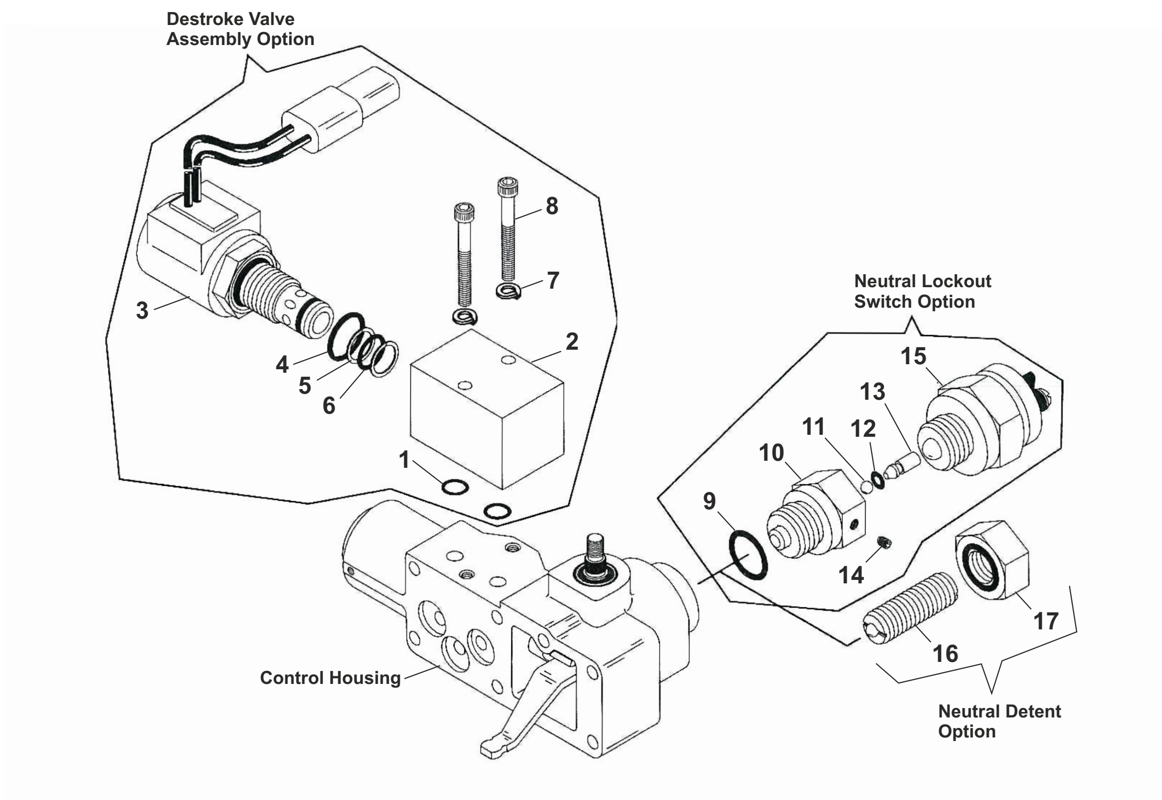
Manual Servo Control Assembly Options

DISASSEMBLY - DESTROKE VALVE ASSEMBLY OPTION

1. Remove the two capscrews and lock washers from manifold. Removing destroke valve assembly and two a-rings.
2. Remove destroke valve from manifold in order to remove o-rings and backup washers. Note: in order to remove destroke valve the solenoid may need to be removed from core first (not shown).

ASSEMBLY - DESTROKE VALVE ASSEMBLY OPTION

1. Install new o-rings and backup washers onto destroke valve.
2. Install destroke valve into manifold by hand until top o-ring is met by manifold. Then wrench tighten to 25 ft. lbs. (34 Nm) max. Loosen Nut retaining coil to reposition if necessary and re-torque 4 to 5 ft. lbs. (5.4 to 7 Nm).
3. Lubricate the two o-rings and install onto manifold. Install destroke valve assembly onto control assembly. Retain with lock washers and capscrews. Torque 2.2 to 2.6 ft. lbs. (3 to 3.5 Nm).



1. O-ring	6. O-ring	10. Neutral Lockout Adapter	14. Set Screw
2. manifold	7. Lock Washer	11. Ball	15. Neutral Lockout Switch
3. Destroke Valve	8. Capscrew	12. O-ring	16. Ball Plunger
4. O-ring	9. O-ring	13. Pin	17. Nut Seal
5. Backup Washer			

Figure 5-137. Manual Servo Control Basic Assembly Option

DISASSEMBLY - NEUTRAL LOCKOUT SWITCH ASSEMBLY OPTION

1. Loosen set screw in adapter and remove neutral lockout switch from adapter.
2. Remove neutral lockout adapter from control assembly.
3. Remove pin, ball. and a-rings from adapter.

ASSEMBLY - NEUTRAL LOCKOUT SWITCH ASSEMBLY OPTION

1. Install new a-ring onto adapter and new o-ring onto pin.
2. Install ball and pin into adapter. Lubricate with petroleum jelly to hold in place during installation.
3. Install adapter into control assembly. Torque 44 to 53 ft. lbs. (60 to 70 Nm).
4. Apply Loctite #222 or equivalent to threads of switch and install neutral lockout switch into adapter. The adjustment procedures for the switch are as follows.
   a. Install switch, while moving control arm back and forth, until “detent” action is detected. Back out the switch until the “detent” action is very slight.
   b. Obtain a test light or use a multimeter. Attach the leads from the test light to the switch or the wiring connector.
   c. Move the control arm out of the detent position. The test light will go on. Screw in the switch until the light goes off. Mark this as position “A”. See Figure 5-138. Move the control arm to the detent position and the test light should come back on.
   d. Leaving the control arm in the detent position, the light will remain on. Screw in the switch until the light goes off. Mark this position"B".
   e. Unscrew the switch one third of the distance between "B" and "A". Install and tighten the hex socket head set screw in one of the main quadrants of the hex of the switch adapter. See Figure 5-138. Torque set screw 2.3 to 2.8 in. lbs (3.2 to 3.8 Nm).
5. Test the switch by moving the control arm to the detent position, the light should be on. Move the control arm out of detent, the light should go off.
6. Remove test light and put servo control assembly into operation.

DISASSEMBLY - NEUTRAL DETENT OPTION

1. Loosen seal nut and remove ball plunger from control housing.

ASSEMBLY- NEUTRAL DETENT OPTION

1. Install ball plunger into control housing until contact with bell crank detent is detected. After contact screw in 1/2 turn and retain with seal nut. Torque nut 10 to 22 ft. lbs. (14 to 30 Nm).

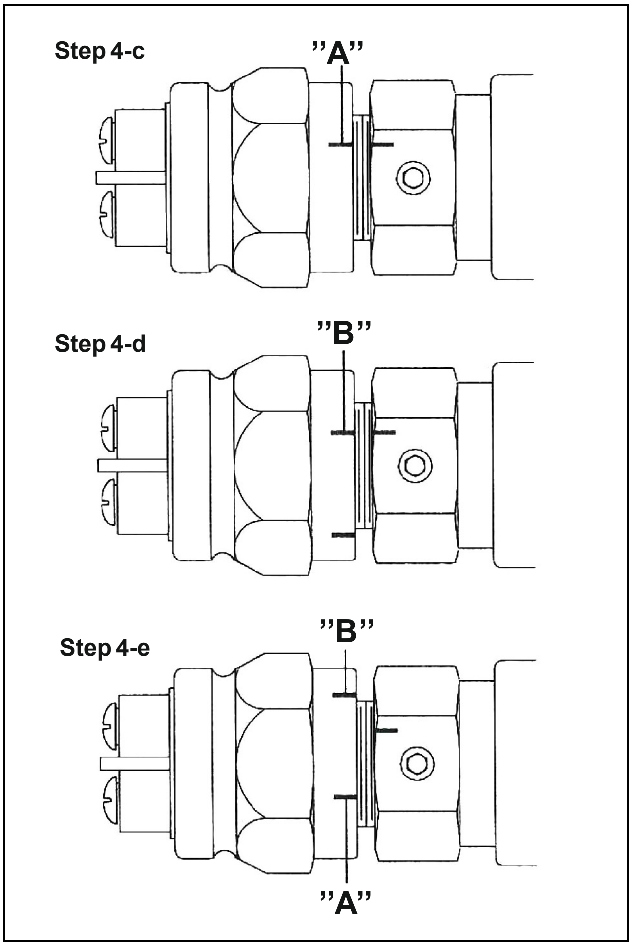


Figure 5-138. Neutral Lockout Switch Assembly

Rotating Kit Assembly

DISASSEMBLY

Disassembly of rotating assembly is required for inspection only.

1. Remove the nine piston assemblies, shoe retainer, and shoe retainer pivot from cylinder barrel.

Inspection

- Examine the O.D. of the pistons for finish condition. They should not show wear or deep scratches. Inspect the shoes for a snug fit on the ball end of the pistons and a flat smooth surface that comes in contact with the swashplate. **Do not lap piston shoes.**
- Examine the shoe retainer for wear in the pivot area.
- Examine the pivot to insure smoothness and no signs of wear.
- Inspect the cylinder barrel surface that makes contact with valve plate. This surface should be smooth and free of deep scratches. Do not lap piston block.
- The pistons should move freely in the cylinder barrel bore. If they are sticky in the bore, examine the bore for scoring or contamination.

2. To inspect pins and spring caution should be taken in removing spring. The spring is highly compressed and the retaining ring should not be removed without compressing the spring safely.

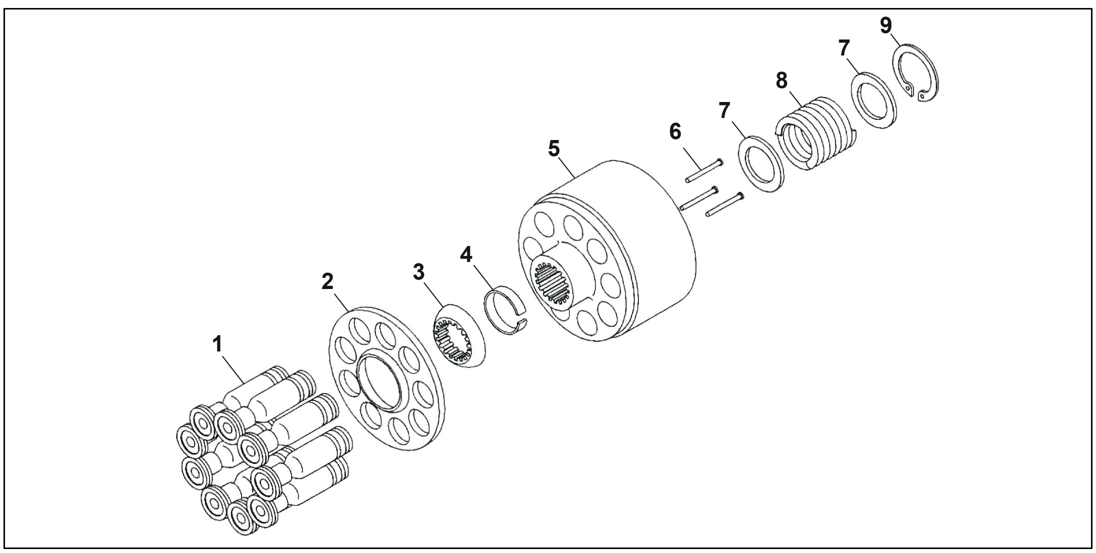
The following parts are required to disassemble the cylinder barrel:

2 ea.	3/8 in. I.D. x 1-1/8 in. O.D. flat washers
1 ea.	3/8 in. x 3-1/4 in. N.C. capscrew, and
1 ea.	3/8 in. N.C. nut

To remove spring, place one of the flat washers over the 3/8 in. x 3-1/4 in. capscrew. Put capscrew through the center of the cylinder barrel and apply the second washer. Let washer rest on the three pins and retain with nut. Turning nut and compressing spring inside the barrel. Use a pair of retaining ring pliers and remove the internal retaining ring. Remove nut, bolt, and the two washers from barrel. Remove the washer, spring, second washer, three pins, and pin keeper at the same time.

ASSEMBLY

1. To reassemble the rotating kit assembly complete the following: Compress the pin keeper and install in the spline of the cylinder barrel. Insta ll the three pins with head end to the inside of the barrel and position in the special grooves of the cylinder barrel spline.
2. Install the washer, spring, and second washer into the cylinder barrel. Use the two 3/8 in. I. D. washers, nut, and 3/8 in. x 3-1/4 in. capscrew to compress the spring and retain with retaining ring. Remove the nut. capscrew, and the two washers.
3. Install the pivot onto the three pins, shoe retainer on the pivot, and piston assemblies thru the shoe retainer and into cylinder barrel. resting on shoe retainer.



1. Piston assemblies
2. Shoe Retainer
3. Shoe Retainer Pivot
4. Retainer
5. Cylinder Barrel
6. Pins
7. Washer
8. Spring
9. Retaining Ring

Figure 5-139. Rotating Kit Assembly

Fault-logic Trouble Shooting

Match the transmission symptoms with the problem statements and follow the action steps shown in the box diagrams. This will give expedient aid in correcting minor problems eliminating unnecessary machine down time.

Following the fault - logic diagrams are diagram action comments of the action steps shown in the diagrams. Where applicable, the comment number of the statement appears in the action block of the diagrams.

RECOMMENDED GAUGE LOCATIONS

Gauges Recommended

Inlet vacuum gauge: 30 PSI to 14.8 PSI (2 bar to 1 bar)

System pressure gauge: 10,000 PSI (700 bar)

Charge pressure gauge: 0 to 600 PSI (0 to 50 bar)

Case pressure gauge: 0 to 300 PSI (0 to 25 bar)

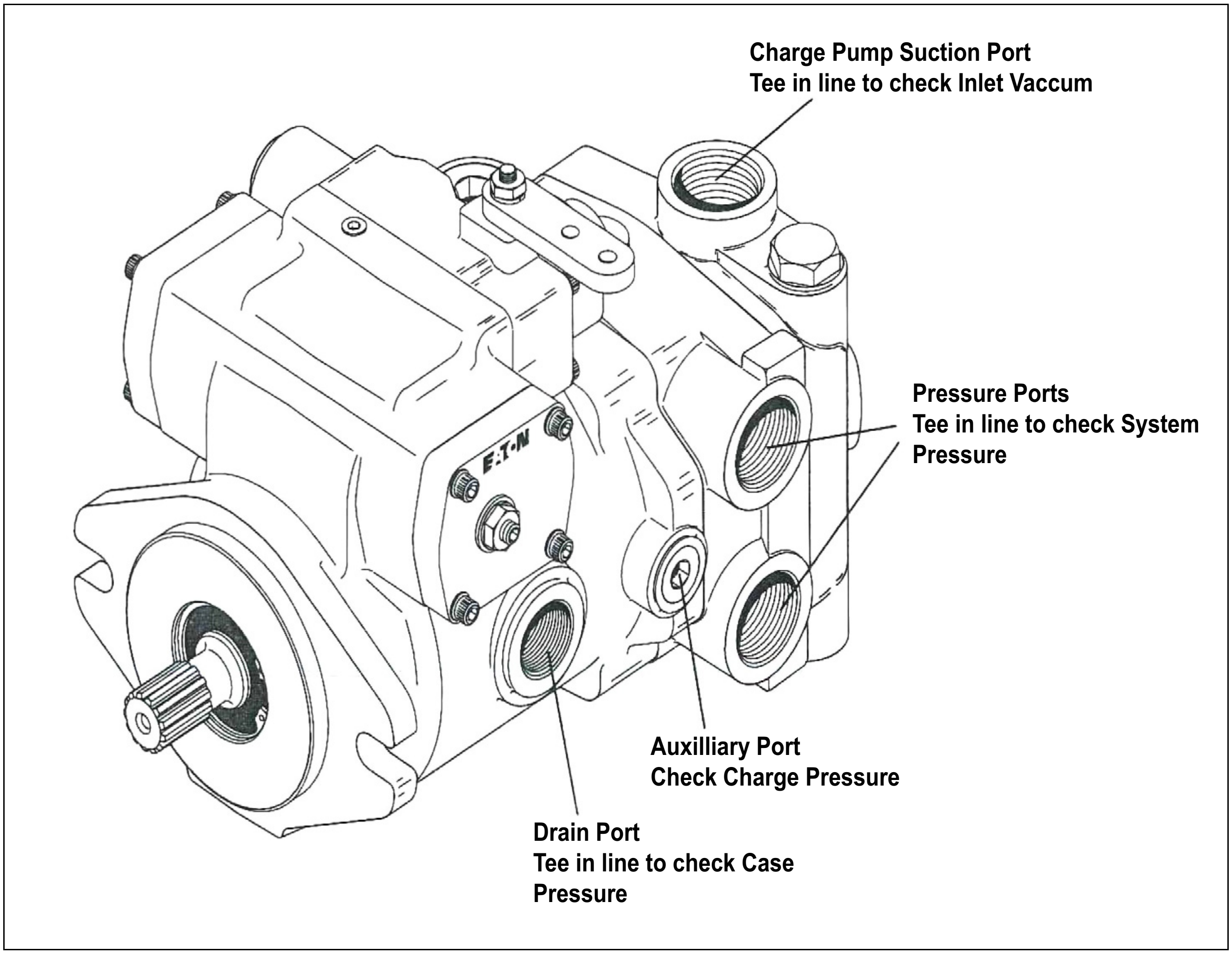


Figure 5-140. Gauge Locations

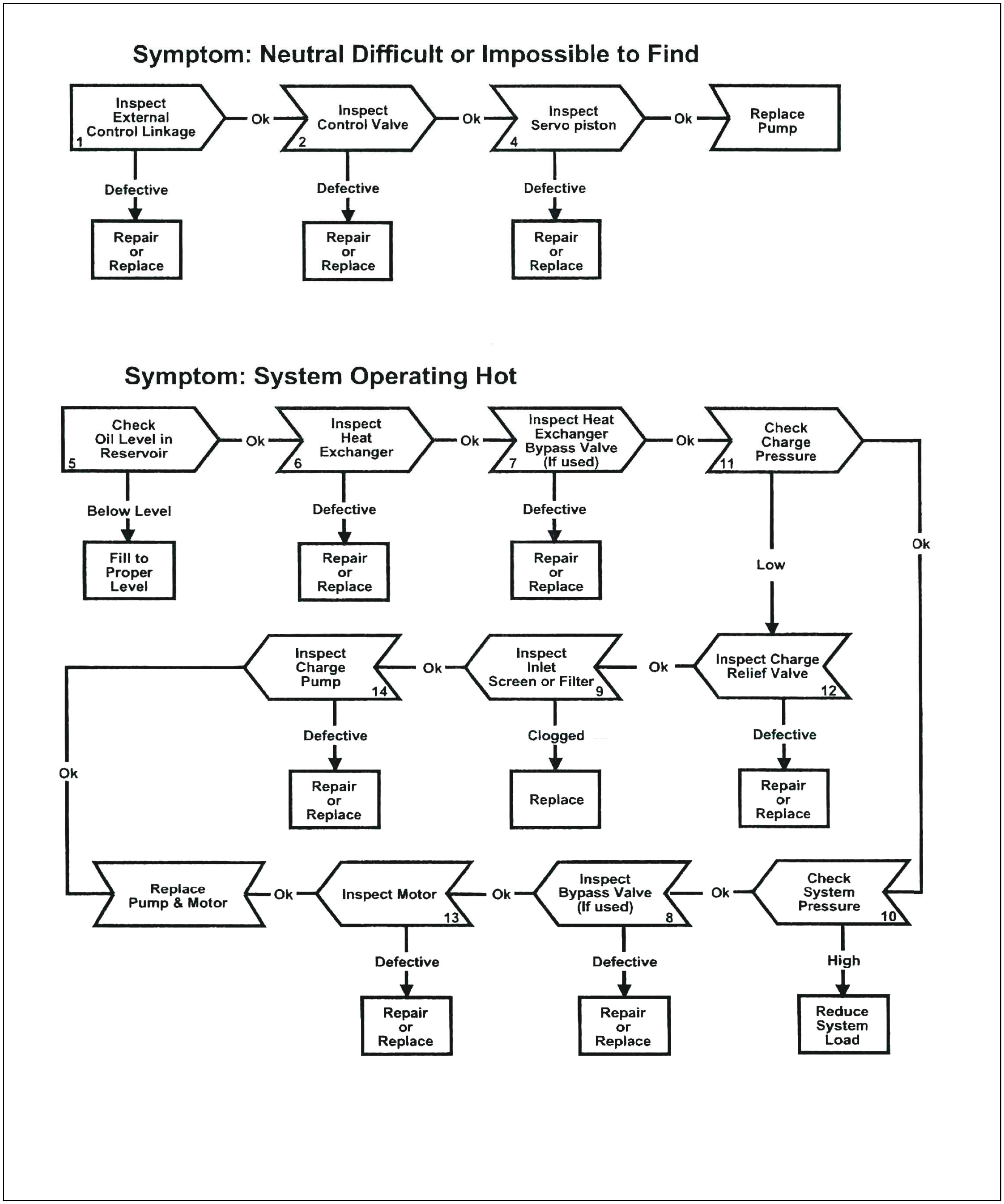


Figure 5-141. Fault- logic Troubleshooting

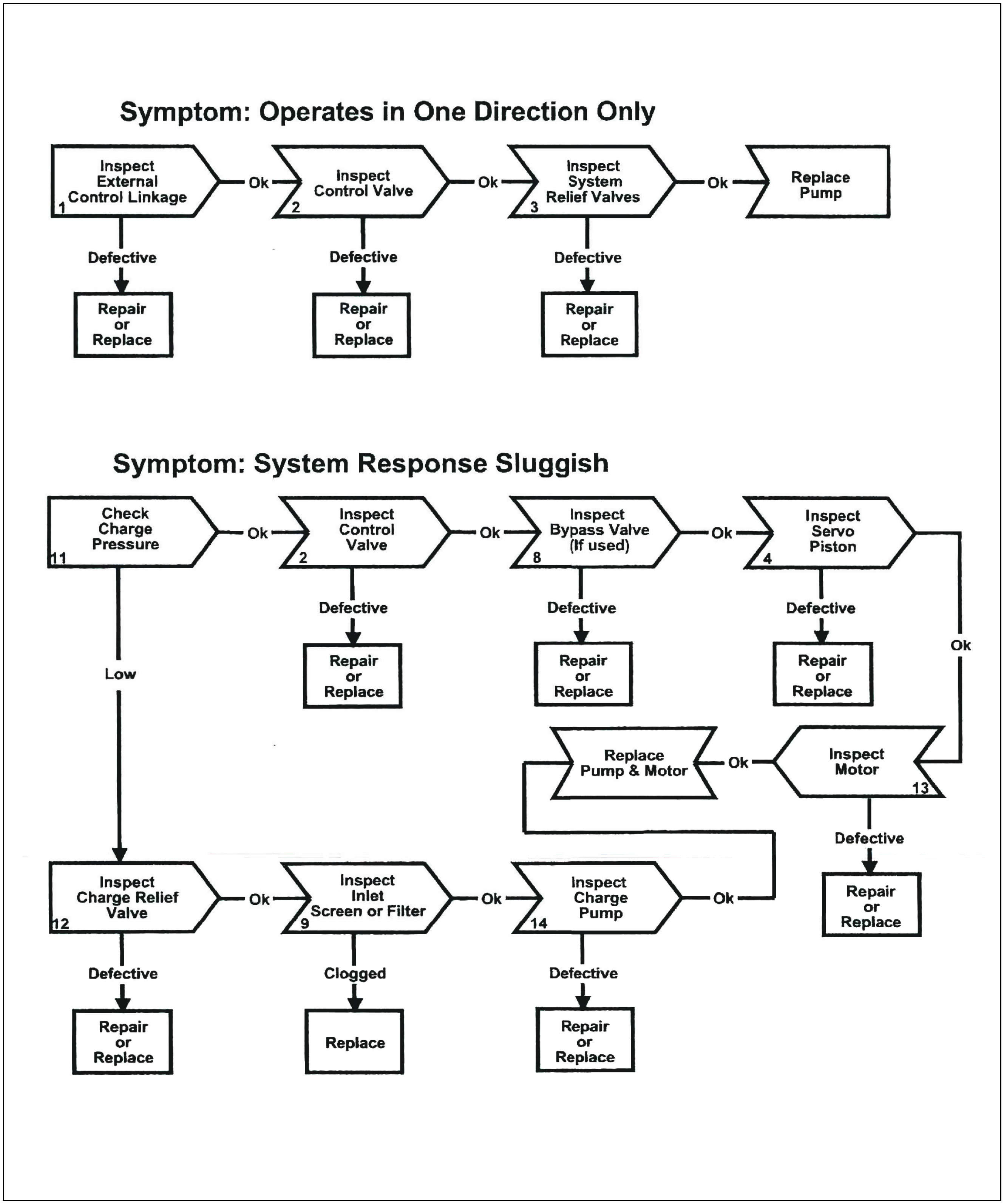


Figure 5-142. Fault- logic Troubleshooting

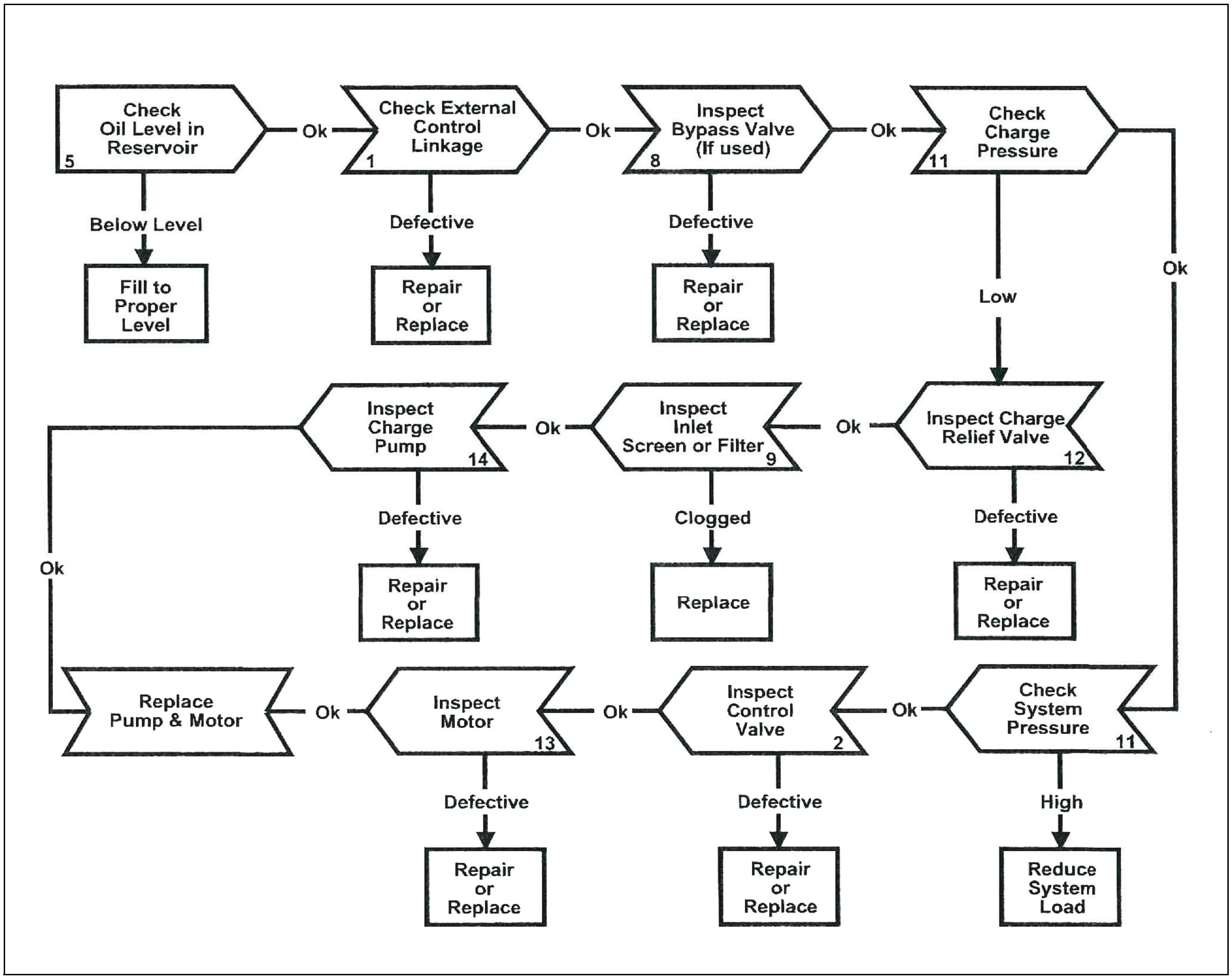


Figure 5-143. Fault- logic Troubleshooting

DIAGRAM ACTION STEP COMMENTS

1. **Inspect External Control Linkage for:**
   a. Misadjusted or disconnected
   b. Binding, bent or broken
2. **Inspect Control Valve for:**
   a. Plugged control orifice(s)
   b. Damaged mounting gasket
   c. Misadjusted, damaged or broken neutral return spring
   d. Broken control connector pin
   e. Faulty destroke valve (if used)
   f. Galled or stuck control spool
   g. Neutral detent or lockout switch misadjusted (if used)
3. **Inspect System Relief Valves for:**
   a. Improper pressure relief setting
   b. Damaged or broken spring
   c. Valve held off seat
   d. Damaged valve seat
4. **Inspect Servo Piston for:**
   a. Misadjusted, damaged or broken neutral return spring assembly
   b. Galled or stuck servo piston
   c. Damaged or missing o-ring and/or backup ring
5. **Check Oil Level in Reservoir:**
   a. Consult owner/operators manual for the proper type fluid and level
6. **Inspect Heat Exchanger for:**
   a. Obstructed air flow (air cooled)
   b. Obstructed water flow (water cooled)
   c. Improper plumbing (inlet to outlet)
   d. Obstructed fluid flow
7. **Inspect Heat Exchanger Bypass Valve for:**
   a. Improper pressure adjustment
   b. Stuck or broken valve
8. **Inspect Bypass Valve for: {if used)**
   a. Held in a partial or full open position
9. **Inspect Inlet Screen or Filter for:**
   a. Plugged or clogged screen or filter element
   b. Obstructed inlet or outlet
   c. Open inlet to charge pump
10. **Check System Pressure:**
    a. See Figure 5-140. for location of pressure gauge installation
    b. Consult owner/operators manual for maximum system relief valve settings
11. **Check Charge Pressure:**
    a. See Figure 5-140. for location of charge pressure gauge installation
    b. Consult owner/operators manual for maximum charge relief valve settings
12. **Inspect Charge Relief Valve for:**
    a. Improper charge relief pressure setting
    b. Damaged or broken spring
    c. Poppet valve held off seat
13. **Inspect Motor for:**
    a. Consult owner/operator manual for motor operation and trouble shooting
14. **Inspect Charge Pump for:**
    a. Broken or missing drive key
    b. Damaged or missing o-ring
    c. Excessive gerotor clearance
    d. Galled or broken gerotor set

System/Charge Relief Valve Pressure Settings

Inlet Vacuum	2.94 PSI (0.203 bar) max.
Case Pressure	25 PSI (1.7 bar) maximum
Charge Pressure	250 to 300 PSI (17.24 to 20.68 bar)
System Pressure	5000 PSI (345 bar) maximum
	3000 PSI (207 bar) continuous

The high pressure relief valves are all factory preset and cannot be readjusted.

The pressure setting is stamped on each valve with a three digit number. To identify, multiply the noted number by 10 to get the valves pressure setting.

Example: 10 x 500 = 5000 PSI (345 bar)

Start-up Procedure

When initially starting a new or a rebuilt transmission system. it is extremely important that the start-up procedure be followed. It prevents the chance of damaging the unit which might occur if the system was not properly purged of air before start-up.

1. After the transmission components have been properly installed, fill the servo pump housing at least half full with filtered system oil. Connect all hydraulic lines and check to be sure they are tight.
2. Install and adjust all control linkage.
3. Fill the reservoir with an approved oil that has been filtered through a 10 micron filter. Refer to Eaton Hydraulics Technical Data sheet number 3-401 titled Hydraulic Fluid Recommendations.
4. Gasoline or L.P. engines: remove the coil wire and turn the engine over for 15 seconds. Diesel engines: shut off the fuel flow to the injectors and turn the engine over for 15 seconds.
5. Replace the coil wire or return the fuel flow to the injectors. Place the transmission unit in the neutral position, start the engine and run it at a low idle. The charge pump should immediately pick up oil and fill the system. If there is no indication of fill in 30 seconds, stop engine and determine the cause.
6. After the system starts to show signs of fill, slowly move pump swashplate to a slight cam angle. Continue to operate system slowly with no load on motors until system responds fully.
7. Check fluid level in the reservoir and refill if necessary to the proper level with an approved filtered oil.
8. Check all line connections for leaks and tighten if necessary.
9. The machine is now ready to be put into operation.
10. Frequent filter changes are recommended for the first two changes after placing the machine back into operation. Change the first filter in 3-5 hours and the second at approximately 50 hours. Routinely scheduled filter changes are recommended for maximum life of the hydraulic system.

5.10 HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS

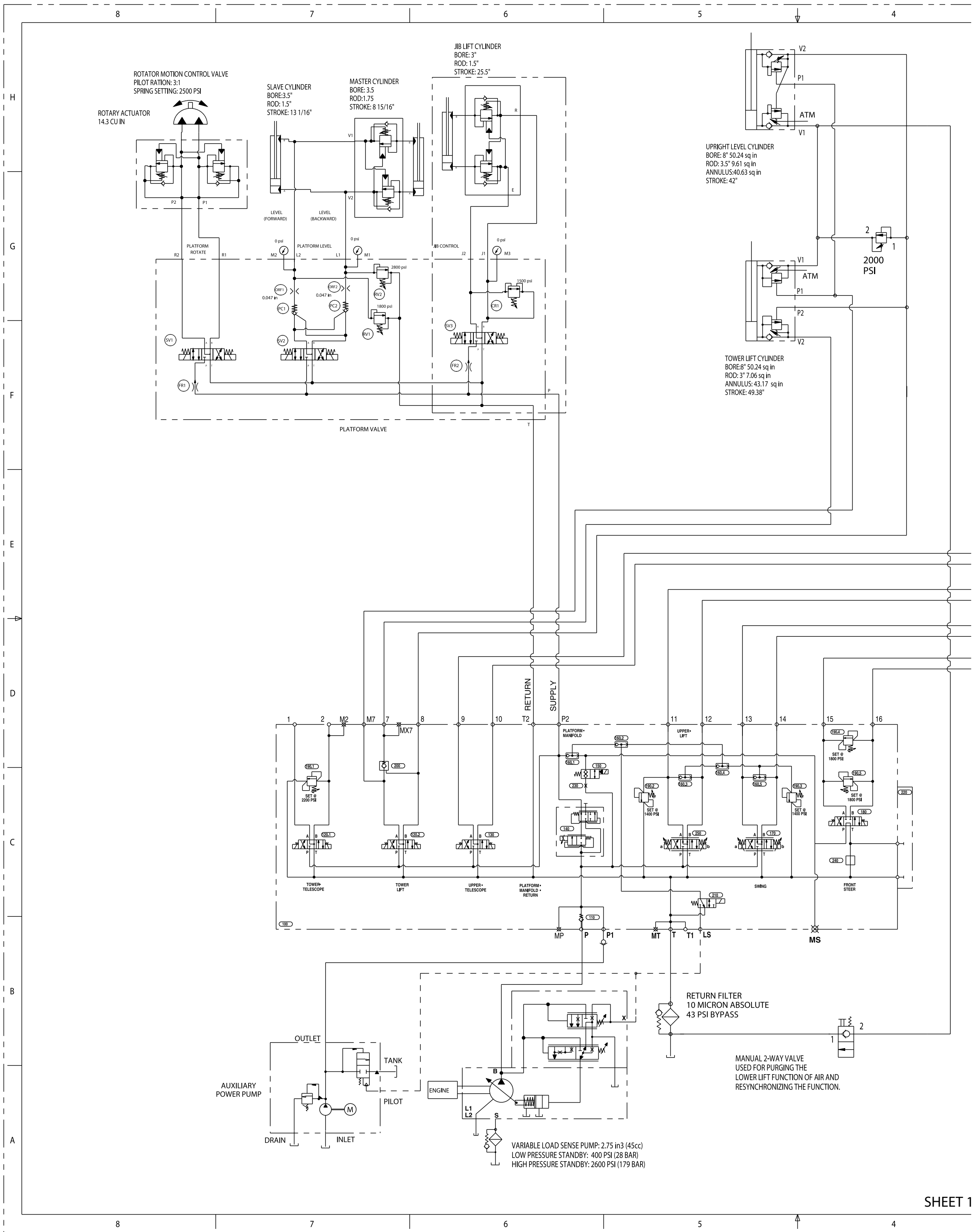


Figure 5-144. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 1 of 6

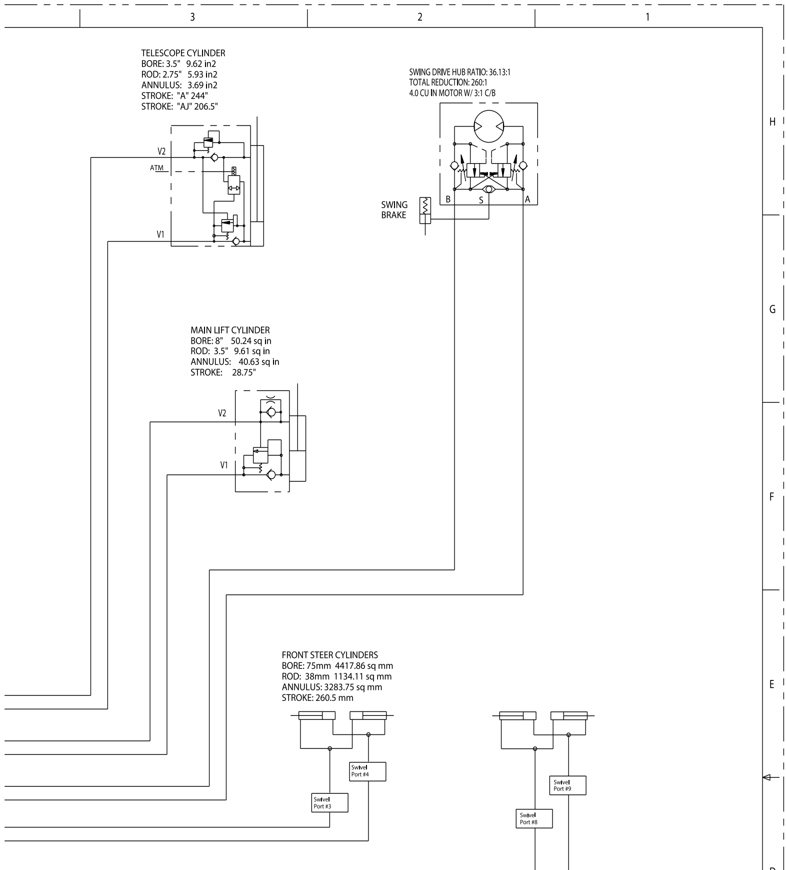


Figure 5-145. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 2 of 6

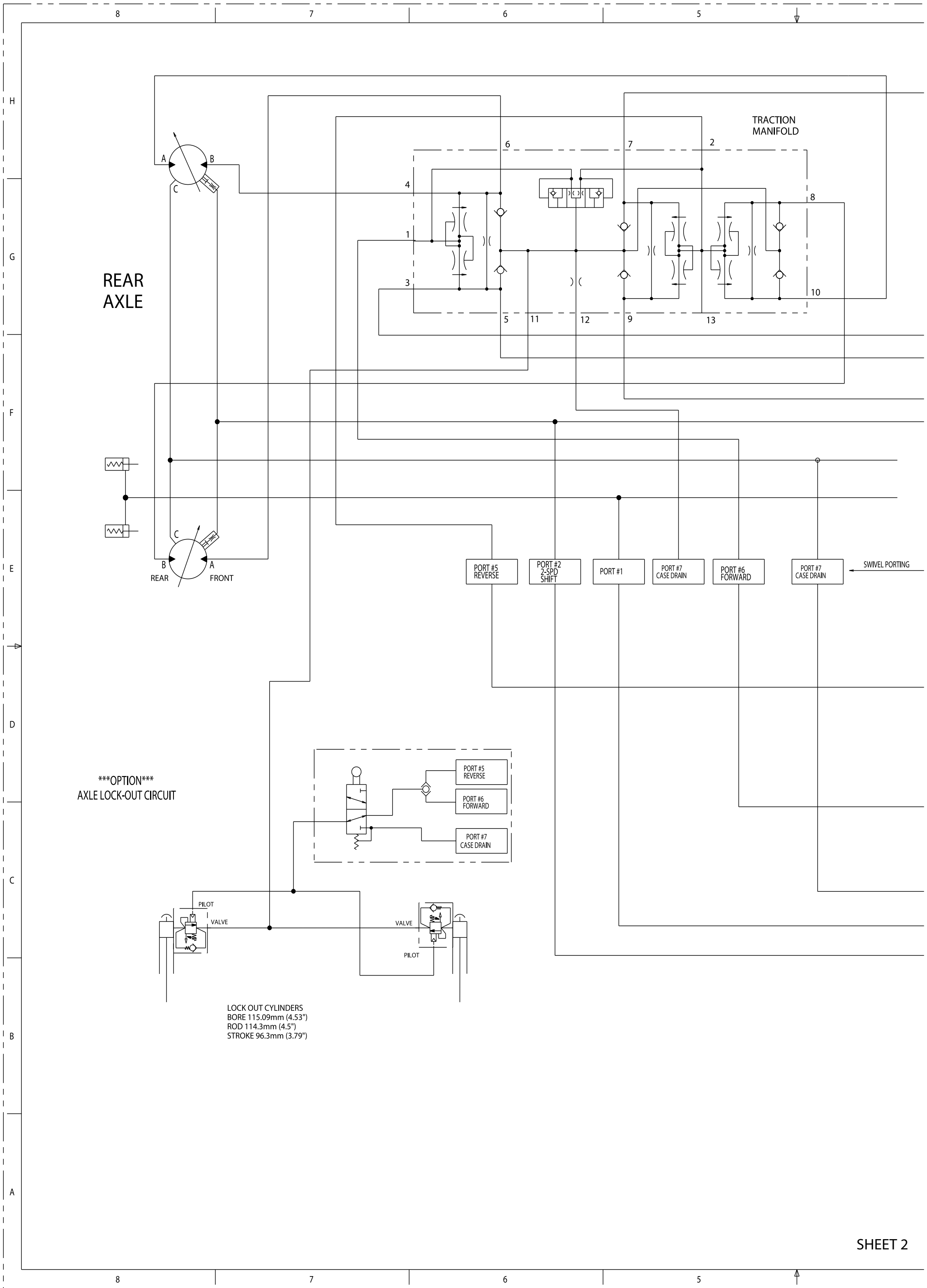


Figure 5-146. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 3 of 6

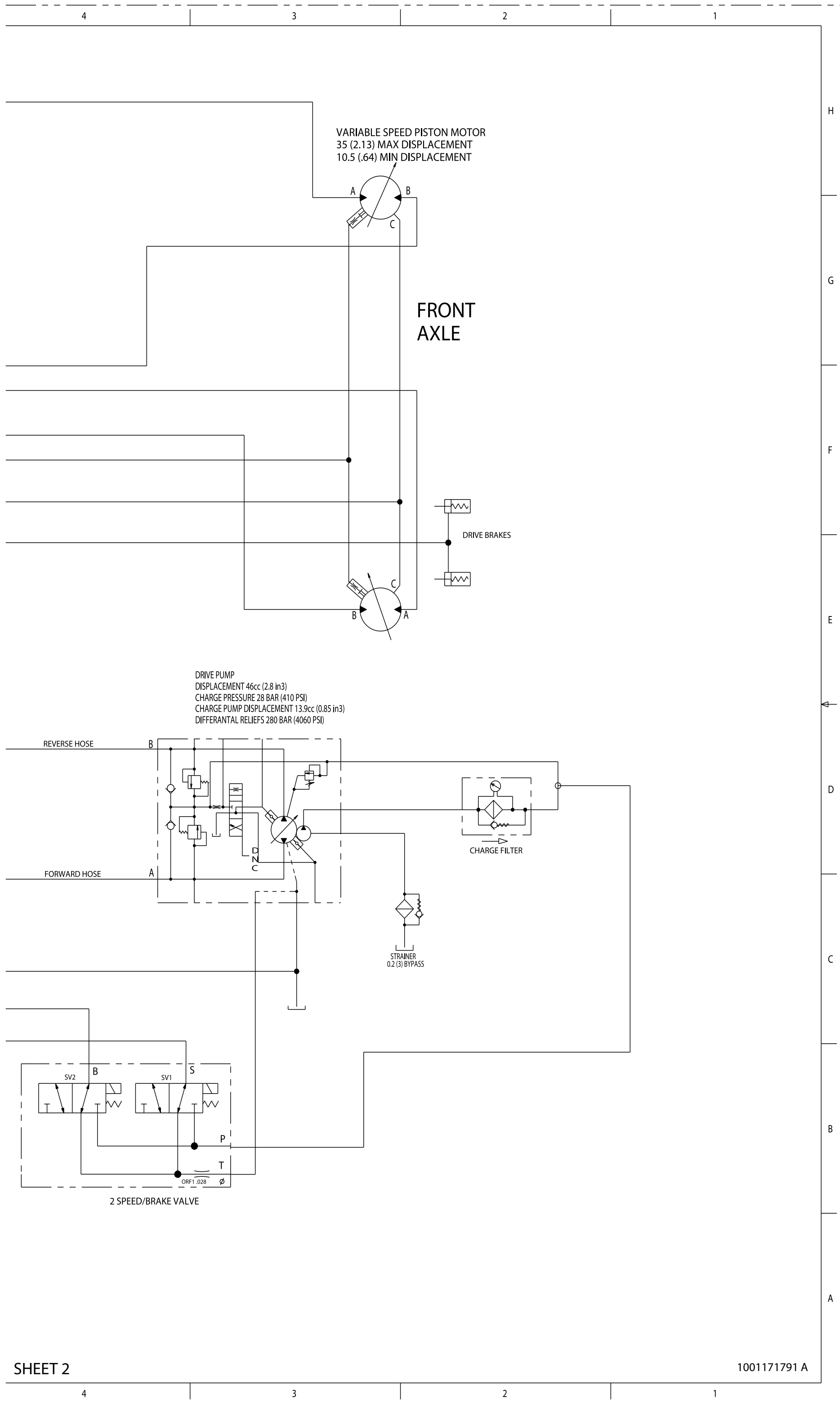


Figure 5-147. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 4 of 6

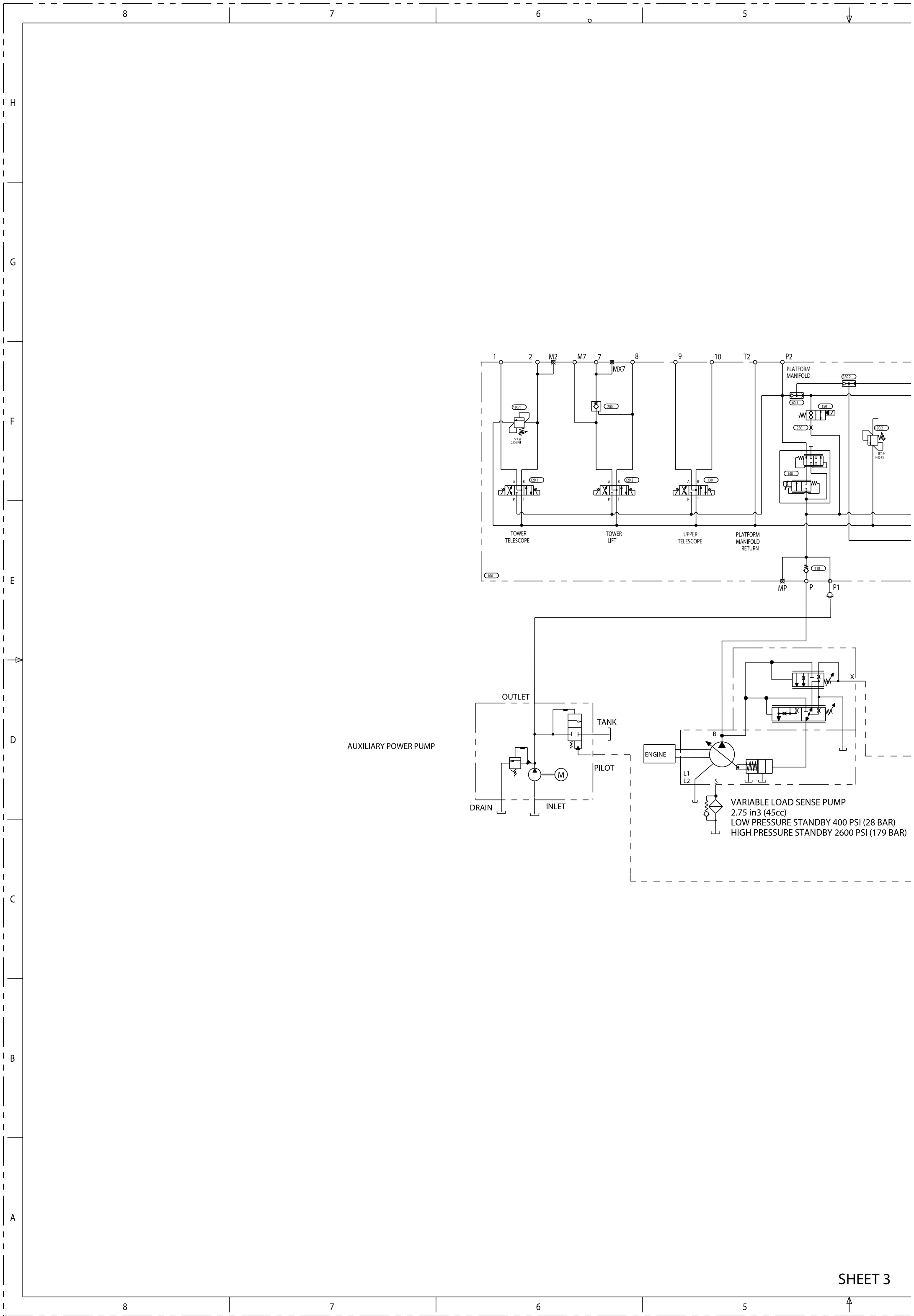


Figure 5-148. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 5 of 6

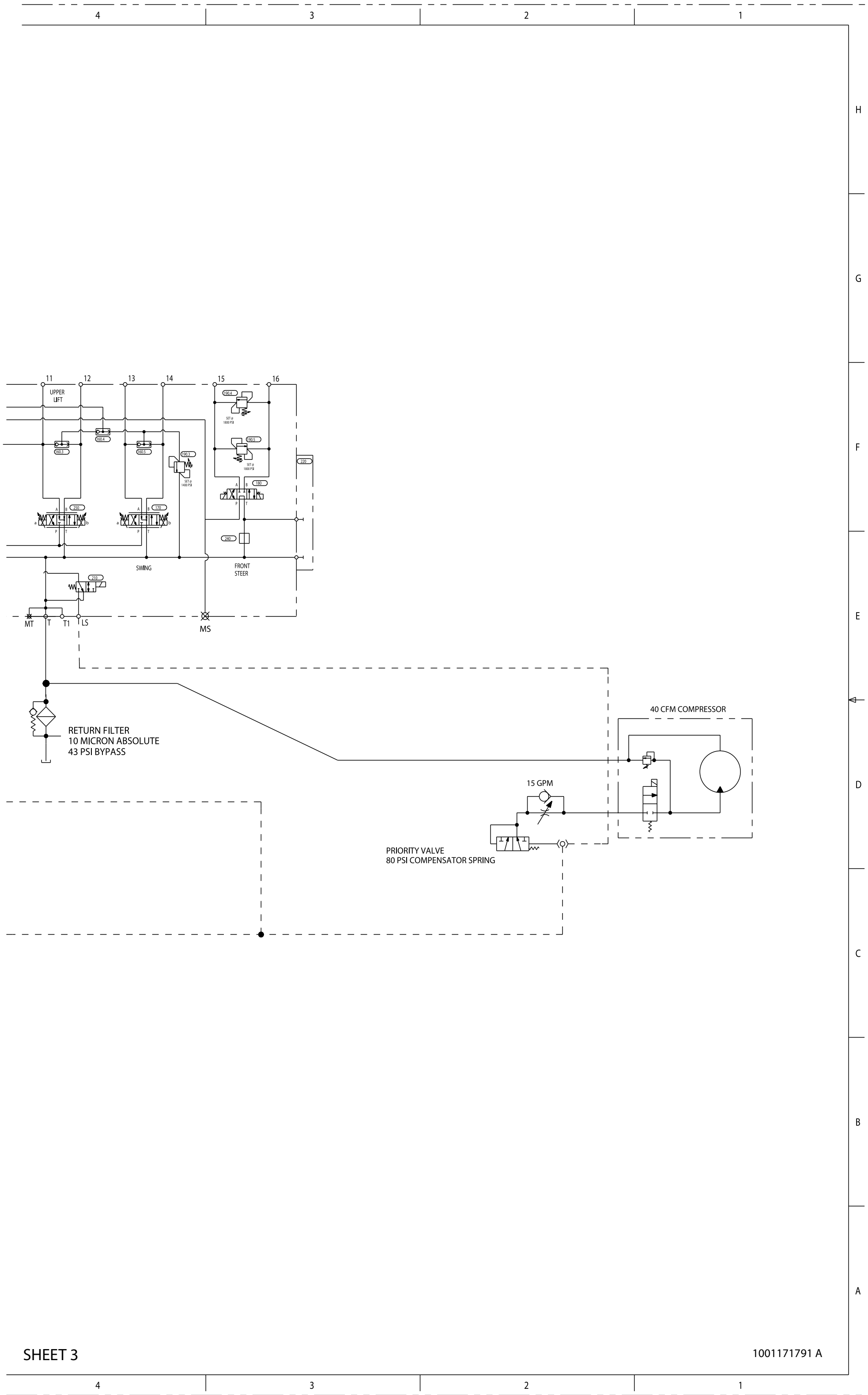


Figure 5-149. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 6 of 6

NOTES:

SECTION 6. JLG CONTROL SYSTEM

6.1 JLG CONTROL SYSTEM ANALYZER KIT INSTRUCTIONS

Introduction

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING A NEW POWER MODULE CONTROLLER ON THE MACHINE, IT WILL BE NECESSARY TO PROGRAM THE CONTROLLER FOR THE PROPER MACHINE CONFIGURATION, INCLUDING OPTIONS.

NOTICE

IT IS A GOOD PRACTICE TO AVOID PRESSURE-WASHING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS. SHOULD PRESSURE-WASHING BE UTILIZED TO WASH AREAS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS, JLG INDUSTRIES, INC. RECOMMENDS A MAXIMUM PRESSURE OF 750 PSI (52 BAR) AT A MINIMUM DISTANCE OF 12 INCHES (30.5 CM) AWAY FROM THESE COMPONENTS. IF ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS ARE SPRAYED, SPRAYING MUST NOT BE DIRECT AND BE FOR BRIEF TIME PERIODS TO AVOID HEAVY SATURATION.

The JLG designed Control System is a 12 volt based control unit installed on the boom lift.

The JLG Control System has reduced the need for exposed terminal strips, diodes and trimpots and provides simplicity in viewing and adjusting the various personality settings for smooth control of: acceleration, deceleration, creep, min.speed, and max.speed for all boom, drive, and steering functions.

The main lift, swing, and drive are controlled by individual joysticks, with steering being controlled by a rocker switch built into the top the drive joystick. To activate Drive, Lift, and Swing simply pull up on the slide lock location on the joystick and move the handle into the direction desired.

The control system will control the voltage output to the valves and pump, as programmed for smooth operation and maximum cycle time. Ground control speeds for all boom functions can also be programmed into the control system.

The JLG Control System controller has a built in LED to indicate any faults. The system stores recent faults which may be accessed for troubleshooting. Optional equipment includes a soft touch system, head and tail lights, and ground alarm. These options may be added later but must be programmed into the control system when installed.

The Control System may be accessed utilizing a custom designed, hand held analyzer (Analyzer Kit, JLG part no. 2901443) which will display two lines of information at a time, by scrolling through the program.

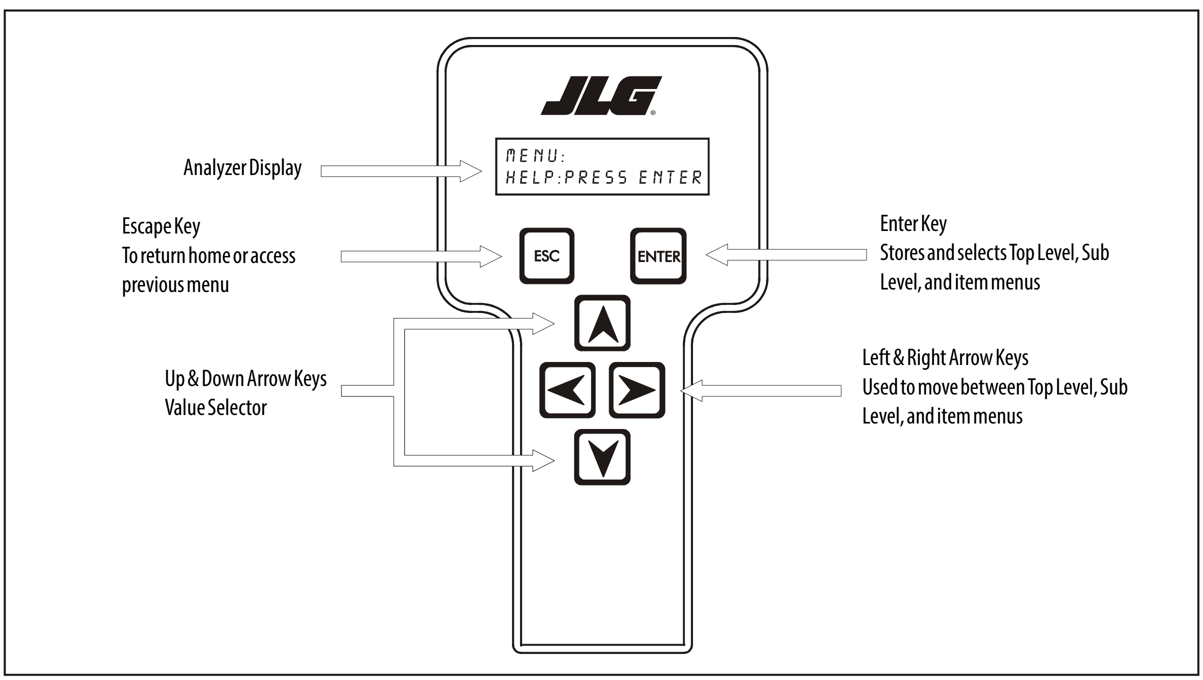


Figure 6-1. Hand Held Analyzer

To Connect the JLG Control System Analyzer

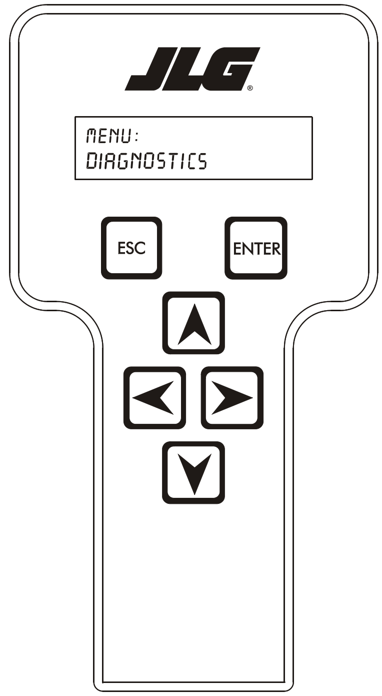
1. Connect one end of the cable, supplied with the analyzer, to the correct four pin connector on the motor control unit; there will be only one connector which correctly fits the cable.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to the analyzer.

NOTE: *The ends of the cable are identical and can be reversed; the cable end can only be inserted one way into the matching connector.*

3. Power up the vehicle by turning the key to the platform or ground position and pulling the emergency stop buttons on; this will power the SMART System and the analyzer.

Using the Analyzer

The analyzer will display the current top level menu item, for example:



MENU:
DIAGNOSTICS

Press LEFT & RIGHT to move between menu items; press ENTER to select the displayed menu item.

When a top level menu item is selected, a new set of menu items may be offered; press **LEFT** & **RIGHT** arrows then **ENTER** again to select the required item.

To cancel a selected menu item, press **ESCAPE**; then a different menu item can be chosen.

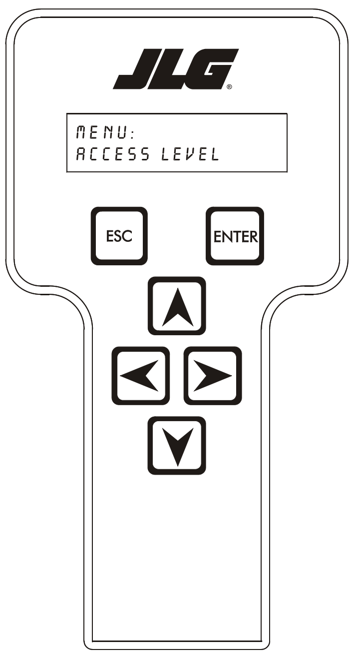
The available menu items will vary depending on the vehicle; check the vehicle manual for more information.

Changing the Access Level of the Hand Held Analyzer

When the analyzer is first connected, its access level ensures that most configurations cannot be changed; this ensures that a setting cannot be accidentally altered.

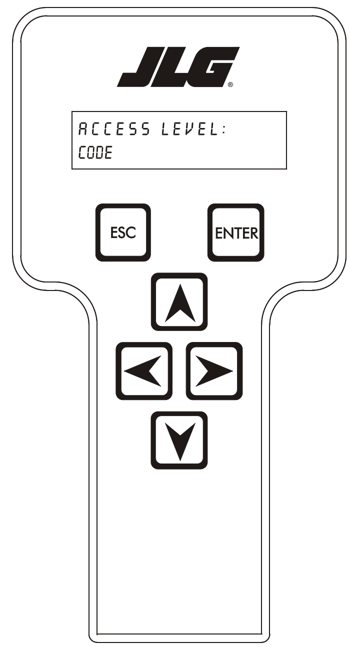
To change the access level, a PASSWORD must be entered; the password must be known.

To enter a password, first find the appropriate top level menu item:



MENU:
ACCESS LEVEL 2

Press **ENTER** to select the ACCESS LEVEL item; then press **UP** & **DOWN** arrows and **LEFT** & **RIGHT** arrows to enter the correct five digit password:



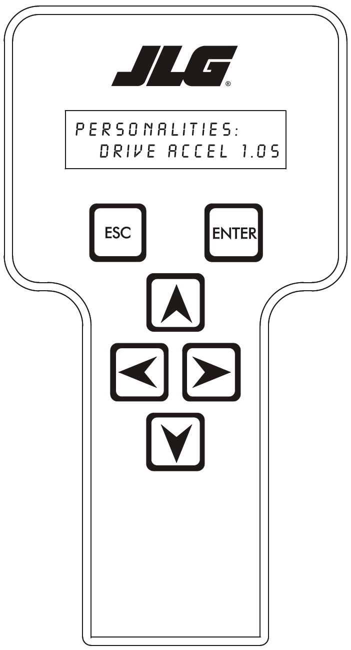
ACCESS LEVEL:
CODE 33271

When the correct password is displayed, press **ENTER** to confirm it; the access level will change to match the password (if not, press **ENTER** to check and correct the password).

The correct passwords will vary depending on the vehicle; check the vehicle manual for more information.

Adjusting Configuration Using the Hand Held Analyzer

When a personality item is selected, press **UP** & **DOWN** arrows to adjust its value, for example:



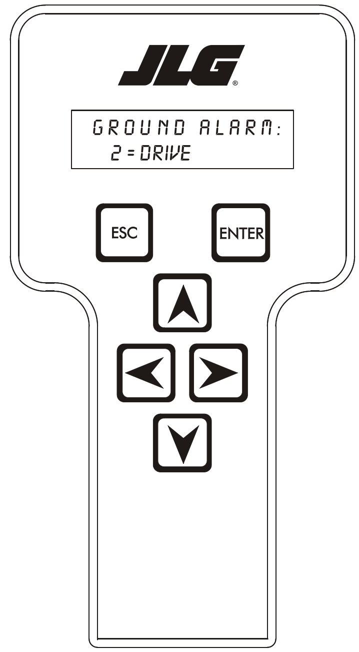
PERSONALITIES:
DRIVE ACCEL 1.0s

There will be a maximum and minimum for the value to ensure safe, operation; the value will not increase if **UP** is pressed when at the maximum, or if **DOWN** is pressed when at the minimum.

If the value does not change when **UP** or **DOWN** is pressed, check the access level.

Machine Setup

When a machine digit item is selected, press **UP** & **DOWN** (e, e) to adjust its value, for example:



GROUND ALARM:
2 = DRIVE

The effect of the machine digit value is displayed along with its value; there will only be certain settings allowed to ensure safe operation.

If the value does not change when **UP** or **DOWN** is pressed, check the access level.

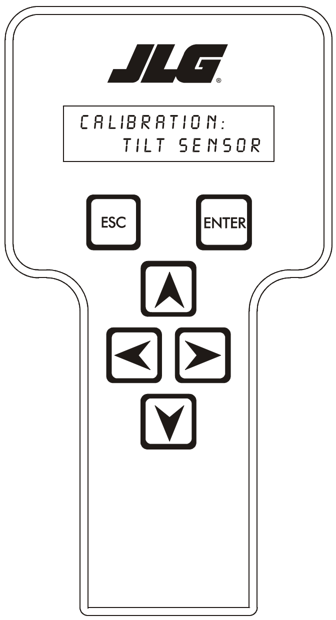
The available personality and machine digit items will vary depending on the vehicle; check the vehicle manual for more information.

Level Vehicle Description

A NEW TILT MODULE WILL ACT AS IF IT IS TILTED ALL OF THE TIME UNTIL THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE IS PERFORMED.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT CALIBRATE THE LEVEL SENSOR EXCEPT ON A LEVEL SURFACE.



Place machine in stowed position with the boom between the rear wheels.

To level machine chose:

CALIBRATION:
TILT SENSOR

Press ENTER 

.

When prompted, swing machine 180°

Press ENTER 

.

Table 6-1. Analyzer Abbreviations

ABBREVIATION	MEANING
ACCEL	ACCELERATE
ACT	ACTIVE
A/D	ANALOG DIGITAL CONVERTER COUNT
AMB.	AMBIENT
ANG	ANGLE
AUX	AUXILIARY
BCS	BOOM CONTROL SYSTEM
BM	BOOM LENGTH ANGLE MODULE
BLAM	BOOM LENGTH ANGLE MODULE
BR	BROKEN
BSK	BASKET
CAL	CALIBRATION
CL	CLOSED
CM	CHASSIS MODULE
CNTL	CONTROL
CNTRL	CONTROL
C/O	CUT OUT
CONT(S)	CONTRACTOR(S)
COOR	COORDINATED
CRK PT	CRACK POINT
CRP	CREEP
CUT	CUTOUT
CYL	CYLINDER
DECEL	DECELERATE
D	DOWN
DN	DOWN
DWN	DOWN
DEG.	DEGREE
DOS	DRIVE ORIENTATION SYSTEM
DRV	DRIVE
E	ERROR
E&T	ELEVATED & TILTED
ELEV	ELEVATION
ENG	ENGINE
EXT	EXTEND
F	FRONT
FL	FLOW
FNT	FRONT
FOR	FORWARD
FWD	FORWARD
FSW	FOOT SWITCH
FUNC	FUNCTION

Table 6-1. Analyzer Abbreviations

ABBREVIATION	MEANING
G	GROUND
GND	GROUND
GRN	GREEN
GM	GROUND MODULE
H	HOURS
HW	HARDWARE
HWFS	HARDWARE FAILSAFE
I	IN or CURRENT
JOY	JOYSTICK
L	LEFT
LB	POUND
LEN	LENGTH
LIM	LIMIT
LT	LEFT
LVL	LEVEL
M	MINUTES
MIN	MINIMUM
MAX	MAXIMUM
M	MAIN
MN	MAIN
NO	NORMALLY OPEN or NO
NC	NORMALLY CLOSED
O	OUT
O/C	OPEN CIRCUIT
OP	OPEN
O/R	OVERRIDE or OUTRIGGER
O//R	OVERRIDE
OSC	OSCILLATING
OVRD	OVERRIDE
P	PLATFORM
P	PRESSURE
PCV	PROPORTIONAL CONTROL VALVE
PLAT	PLATFORM
PLT	PLATFORM
PM	PLATFORM MODULE
POT	POTENTIOMETER
PRES	PRESSURE
PRS	PRESSURE
PT	POINT
R	REAR or RIGHT
REV	REVERSE or REVISION
RET	RETRACT
ROT.	ROTATE

Table 6-1. Analyzer Abbreviations

ABBREVIATION	MEANING
RT	RIGHT
S/C	SHORT CIRCUIT
SEL	SELECTOR
SN	SERIAL NUMBER
SPD	SPEED
STOW	STOWED
STOWD	STOWED
SW	SWITCH or SOFTWARE
TELE	TELESCOPE
TEMP	TEMPERATURE
TORQ.	TORQUE
TRN	TRANSPORT
T/T	TURNTABLE
T	TOWER
TURNTBL	TURNTABLE
TWR	TOWER
U	main or UP
V	VOLT
VER	VERSION
VLV	VALVE
WIT	WITNESS
YEL	YELLOW

Figure 6-2. ADE Block Diagram

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
NOTE: *For version **6.X software**, some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.* ***NOTE:*** *The machine configuration must be completed before any personality settings can be changed. Changing the personality settings first and then changing the model number of the machine configuration will cause the personality settings to return to default values.*			
MODEL NUMBER: 1	**1**	**400S**	**1**
	2	450A	
	3	510A	
	4	600S	
	5	600A	
	6	600SC	
	7	601S	
	8	740A	
	9	800A	
	10	800S	
MARKET: 2	**0**	**ANSI USA**	**0**
	1	ANSI EXPORT	
	2	CSA	
	3	CE	
	4	AUSTRALIA	
	5	JAPAN	
	6	GB	

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
ENGINE: 3* * Engine selections vary depending on model selection.	1	FORD EFI GAS: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 1)	**14**
	2	FORD EFI D/F: Ford LRG425 EFI dual fuel (Tier 1)	
	3	DEUTZ F4 TIER1: Deutz F4M1011F Diesel (Tier 1)	
	4	DEUTZ F3 TIER1: Deutz F3M1011F Diesel (Tier 1)	
	5	CAT. 3024C: CAT 3024C Diesel (Tier 2)	
	6	CAT. 3044C: CAT 3044C Diesel (Tier 2)	
	7	PERKINS 404C (Tier 2)	
	8	DEUTZ F4 TIER2: Deutz F4M2011 Diesel (Tier 2)	
	9	DEUTZ F3 TIER2: Deutz F3M2011 Diesel (Tier 2)	
	10	FORD GAS TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 2)	
	11	FORD D/F TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Dual Fuel (Tier 2)	
	12	DEUTZ ECM: Engine Control Module - ECM (Tier 2 and Tier 3)	
	13	DUAL FUEL ECM: GM/PSI 3.0L Dual Fuel (Tier 2)	
	14	**PERKINS ECM**	
	15	CAT ECM	
	16	DEUTZ EMR4: Deutz Engine Control Module (Tier 4 Final)	
	17	FORD DUAL FUEL	
FLYWHEEL TEETH: 4* *This menu item is only visible if Deutz engine selections 3 or 4 are selected.	0	133 TEETH: 133 flywheel teeth.	**1**
	1	**110 TEETH: 110 flywheel teeth.**	

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
GLOW PLUG: 5	0 1 **2**	NO GLOW PLUGS: No glow plugs installed. AIR INTAKE: Glow plugs installed in the air intake on the manifold. **IN-CYLINDER: Glow plugs installed in each cylinder.**	**2**
STARTER LOCKOUT: 6	**0** 1	**DISABLED: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start can be attempted at any time during pre-glow.** ENABLED: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start is NOT permitted until pre-glow is finished.	**0**
FUEL CUTOUT 7 * This menu item is only visible if non dual fuel engines are selected.	**0** 1 2	**RESTART: Engine allowed to be restarted multiple times when very low fuel level is reached.** ONE RESTART: Engine allowed to be restarted once for 2 minutes when very low fuel level is reached. ENGINE STOP: Engine not able to restart when very low fuel level is reached.	**0**
ENGINE SHUTDOWN: 8	0 **1**	DISABLED: No engine shutdown. **ENABLED: Shutdown engine when coolant temperature is greater than 110 deg. C or the oil pressure is less than 8 PSI (0.55 bar).**	**1**

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
TILT: 9* *Certain market selections will limit tilt options and alter default setting. *Note: Any of the selections above will light the tilt lamp when a tilted condition occurs and will sound the platform alarm when the machine is also above elevation.*	**1**	**5 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 5 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep.**	**1**
	2	4 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep.	
	3	3 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep.	
	4	4 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up.	
	5	3 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up.	
	6	5 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 5 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up.	
	7	5 DEG + DRV CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 5 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep when drive reversal is allowed, drive is disallowed otherwise.	
	8	4 DEG + DRV CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep when drive reversal is allowed, drive is disallowed otherwise.	
	9	3 DEG + DRV CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep when drive reversal is allowed, drive is disallowed otherwise.	
JIB: 10* *Only visible under certain model selections.	**0**	**NO: No jib installed.**	**0**
	1	YES: Jib installed which has up and down movements only.	
4 WHEEL STEER: 11* *Only visible under certain model selections.	**0**	**NO: No four-wheel steer installed.**	**0**
	1	YES: Four-wheel steer installed.	

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
STOUCH / SKYGUARD: 12	**0** 1 2 3	**NONE: No soft touch or skyguard system installed.** SOFT TOUCH - Soft touch only installed. SKYGUARD - Skyguard only installed. BOTH (CUTOUT) - Soft touch and Skyguard installed.	**0**
GEN SET/WELDER: 13	**0** 1	**NO: No generator installed.** BELT DRIVE: Belt driven setup.	**0**
GEN SET CUTOUT: 14* * Only visible if Gen Set / Welder Menu selection is not 0.	**0** 1	**MOTION ENABLED: Motion enabled when generator is ON.** MOTION CUTOUT: Motion cutout in platform mode only.	**0**
H & T LIGHTS: 15	**0** 1	**NO: No head and tail lights installed.** YES: Head and tail lights installed.	**0**
CABLE SWITCH: 16* * Only visible under certain model selections. * Certain market and model selections will alter the default setting.	**0** 1	**NO: No broken cable switch installed.** YES: Broken cable switch installed.	**0**

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
LOAD SYSTEM: 17* *Only visible under certain market selections. *Certain market selections will limit load system options or alter default setting. *LOAD SYSTEM will not be visible in CE and defaulted to CUTOUT ALL for machines equipped with MSSO.	**0** 1 2 3 4	**NO: No load sensor installed.** WARN ONLY: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT PLATFORM: All functions cutout, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT ALL: All functions cutout, flash overload light (500mS on, 500mS off), platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). SPECIAL 1: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, disables main telescope out & main lift up, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF).	**0**
LOAD SENSOR: 18* *Only visible if Load Sensor Menu selection is not 0 and under certain market selections. *Certain market selections will limit load sensor options.	0 **1** 2	1 ON ROTATOR: Use the on-board load sensor for all models except those which use the Leveling Platform Module. **4 UNDER PLATFORM: Use the EIM for load sensing.** SINGLE CELL: Single Cell, CANbus based sensor.	**1**
FUNCTION CUTOUT: 19* *Only visible under certain market selections. *Certain market selections will limit function cutout options or alter default setting.	**0** 1 2 3	**NO: No drive cutout.** BOOM CUTOUT: Boom function cutout while driving above elevation. DRIVE CUTOUT: Drive & steer cutout above elevation. DRIVE CUT E&T: Drive & steer cutout above elevation and tilted.	**0**
GROUND ALARM: 20* *Certain market selections will alter default setting.	0 1 2 **3**	NO: No ground alarm installed. DRIVE: Travel alarm sounds when the drive function is active (Option). DESCENT: Descent alarm sounds when lift down is active (Option). **MOTION: Motion alarm sounds when any function is active (Option).**	**3**
DRIVE: 21* *Only visible under certain model selections.	**0** 1 2	**4WD: Four wheel drive.** 2WD: Two wheel drive. 2WD W/ 2-SPEED: Two wheel drive with 2-speed valve.	**0**

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
DISPLAY UNITS: 22* *Certain market selections will alter default setting.	**0** 1	**IMPERIAL: DEG F, PSI, LBS.** METRIC: DEG C, KPA, KGS	**0**
LEVELING MODE: 23* *Only visible on 800S models.	**0** 1	**ALL FUNCTIONS: Platform level with all functions.** LEVEL LIFT/TELESCOPE: Platform level on lift and telescope only.	**0**
DRIVE CONTROL: 24	0 1 **2**	NORMAL: Drive coils are energized from the Ground Module. PROPULSION: Drive coils are energized from the Propulsion Module. **ENHANCED: Drive coils are energized from the Ground Module and the ground side of the drive coils are brought back to current feedback returns.**	**2**
DRIVE PUMP 25* *Only visible on 600A, 600S, and 800S models.	**0** 1 2 3	**SAUER DANFOSS: Machine equipped with Sauer Danfoss drive pump** EATON: Machine equipped with Eaton drive pump. M46 - XXXX: Machine equipped with M46 - XXXX drive pump. 830XXXXX: Machine equipped with 830XXXXX: drive pump.	**0**
BOOM CONTROL: 26	**0** 1	**NORMAL: Boom function coils are energized from the Ground Module.** ENHANCED: Boom function are energized from the Ground Module and the ground side of the drive coils and brought back to current feedback returns.	**0**
FUNCTION SPEED KNOB: 27	**0** 1	**YES: Machine is equipped with Function Speed Knob.** NO: Machine is equipped with Operation Speed Switch.	**0**
CLEARSKY: 28	**0** 1	**NO: Clearsky (telematics) option is disabled.** YES: Clearsky (telematics) option is enabled.	**0**

Table 6-2. Machine Configuration Programming Information

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
CRIBBING OPTION: 29	**0** 1	**NO: Cribbing Option is disabled.** YES: Cribbing Option is enabled.	**0**
FUEL TANK SIZE: 30	**0** 1	**31 Gallon Tank** 52 Gallon Tank	**0**
ALARM / HORN: 31	**0** 1	**SEPERATE: Separate alarm and horn.** COMBINED: Combination alarm / horn.	**0**
ALERT / BEACON: 32	**0** 1	**OFF FOR CREEP: Alert beacon will not flash while in Creep.** 20 FPS FOR CREEP: Alert beacon will flash at 20 FPS while in Creep.	**0**
TEMP CUTOUT: 33	**0** 1	**NO: Temp Cutout is Disabled** YES: Temp Cutout is Enabled	**0**
PLAT LVL OVR CUT: 34	**0** 1	**NO: Platform Level Override will always be functional.** YES: Platform Level Override will only be functional when In Transport.	**0**
WATER IN FUEL SENSOR: 35* *This menu item is only visible if Deutz EMR 4 engine is selected. *Only visible under certain market selections.	**0** 1	**NO: Water in Fuel Sensor Disabled.** YES: Water in Fuel Sensor Enabled.	**0**

4150364-U

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Settings

740AJ	ANSI USA	ANSI Export	CSA	CE	Australia	Japan
Model Number	**8**	**8**	**8**	**8**	**8**	**8**
Market	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**
Engine	**12**	**12**	**12**	**12**	**12**	**12**
Flywheel Teeth	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
Glow Plugs	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**
Starter Lockout	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Fuel Cutout	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	2	2	2	2	2
Engine Shutdown	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
Tilt	1	1	1	X	X	1
	2	2	2	X	X	2
	3	3	3	X	3	3
	4	4	4	X	X	4
	5	5	5	5	5	5
	6	6	6	X	X	6
	7	**7**	**7**	X	X	**7**
	8	8	8	X	X	8
	9	9	9	**9**	**9**	9
Jib	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
4 Wheel Steer	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
Soft Touch/Skyguard	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**
	3	3	3	3	3	3
Gen Set / Welder	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Gen Set Cutout	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Settings

740AJ	ANSI USA	ANSI Export	CSA	CE	Australia	Japan
Head & Taillights	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Cable Breaks Switch	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Load System	**0**	**0**	**0**	0	0	0
	X	*1*	X	X	X	**1**
	X	2	X	2	**2**	2
	X	3	X	**3**	X	3
	X	4	X	X	X	4
Load Sensor	X	0	X	0	0	0
	1	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
	X	2	X	2	2	2
Function Cutout	**0**	**0**	**0**	0	**0**	**0**
	X	1	1	**1**	1	1
	2	2	2	X	2	2
	X	3	3	X	3	3
Ground Alarm	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	2	2	2	2	2
	3	**3**	**3**	**3**	**3**	**3**
Drive Type	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	2	2	2	2	2
Display Units	**0**	**0**	0	0	0	0
	1	1	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
Leveling Mode	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Drive Control	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**	**2**
Drive Pump	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**	**1**
	X	X	X	X	X	X
	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Settings

740AJ	ANSI USA	ANSI Export	CSA	CE	Australia	Japan
Boom Control	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Function Speed Knob	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Clearsky	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Cribbing Option	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Fuel Tank Size	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Alarm / Horn	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Alert Beacon	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Temp Cutout	X	**0**	X	**0**	X	X
	X	1	X	1	X	X
Plat Lvl Ovr Cut	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**
	1	1	1	1	1	1
Water In Fuel Sensor	X	**0**	X	X	X	X
	X	1	X	X	X	X
Dual Capacity	0	**0**	0	**0**	0	**0**
	1	1	**1**	1	**1**	1

BOLD BLUE text indicates the default setting. Plain text indicates another available selection. ***RED ITALIC*** text indicates the default when option is factory installed. SHADED CELLS indicate hidden menu or selection.

6.2 MACHINE PERSONALITY SETTINGS AND FUNCTION SPEEDS

NOTE: *Personality settings can be adjusted within the adjustment range in order to achieve optimum machine performance.*

Table 6-4. Machine Personality Settings

SUBMENU (DISPLAYED ON ANALYZER 1ST LINE)	PERSONALITY	RANGE	DEFAULTS (740AJ Sauer Danfoss)	DEFAULTS (740AJ Eaton)
DRIVE:	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	2.0	2.0
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	2.0	1.5
	FORward MINimum speed	1 to 35%	4	15
	FORward MAXimum speed	1 to 100%	30	50
	REVerse MINimum speed	1 to 35%	4	15
	REVerse MAXimum speed	1 to 100%	30	50
	ELEVATED MAXimum speed	1 to 100%	15	32
	CREEP MAXimum speed	1 to 90%	15	32
STEER:	MAXimum speed	1 to 100%	100	100
MAIN LIFT:	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	2.5	2.5
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	0.7	0.7
	MINimum UP speed	1 to 60%	30	30
	MAXimum UP speed	1 to 100%	67	67
	CREEP maximum UP speed	1 to 65%	55	55
	MINimum DOWN speed	1 to 60%	45	45
	MAXimum DOWN speed	1 to 100%	76	76
	CREEP maximum DOWN speed	1 to 75%	55	55
TOWER LIFT:	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	1.5	1.5
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	0.5	0.5
	MINimum UP speed	1 to 60%	39	39
	MAXimum UP speed	1 to 100%	100	100
	MINimum DOWN speed	1 to 60%	38	38
	MAXimum DOWN speed	1 to 100%	100	100
	Medium Speed	0.01 to 1.00	0.60	0.60
SWING	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	2.0	2.0
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	1.8	1.8
	MINimum LEFT speed	1 to 50%	35	35
	MAXimum LEFT speed	1 to 100%	69	69
	CREEP maximum LEFT speed	1 to 65%	35	35
	MINimum RIGHT speed	1 to 50%	35	35
	MAXimum RIGHT speed	1 to 100%	73	73
	CREEP maximum RIGHT speed	1 to 65%	45	45

Table 6-4. Machine Personality Settings

SUBMENU (DISPLAYED ON ANALYZER 1ST LINE)	PERSONALITY	RANGE	DEFAULTS (740AJ Sauer Danfoss)	DEFAULTS (740AJ Eaton)
MAIN TELESCOPE:	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	3.5	3.5
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	0.8	0.8
	MINimum IN speed	1 to 65%	45	45
	MAXimum IN speed	1 to 100%	67	67
	MINimum OUT speed	1 to 65%	50	50
	MAXimum OUT speed	1 to 100%	75	75
	Medium Speed	0.01 to 1.00	0.60	0.60
PLATFORM LEVEL:	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	2.5	2.5
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	0.5	0.5
	MINimum UP speed	1 to 65%	48	48
	MAXimum UP speed	1 to 100%	52	52
	MINimum DOWN speed	1 to 65%	45	45
	MAXimum DOWN speed	1 to 100%	50	50
	Medium Speed	0.01 to 1.00	0.60	0.60
PLATFORM ROTATE:	ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	1.8	1.8
	DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	0.3	0.3
	MINimum LEFT speed	1 to 100%	34	34
	MAXimum LEFT speed	1 to 100%	50	50
	MINimum RIGHT speed	1 to 100%	34	34
	MAXimum RIGHT speed	1 to 100%	50	50
	Medium Speed	0.01 to 1.00	0.60	0.60
JIB LIFT	Lift ACCELeration	0.0 to 5.0s	5.0	5.0
	Lift DECELeration	0.0 to 3.0s	1.0	1.0
	MINimum UP speed	1 to 65%	46	46
	MAXimum UP speed	1 to 100%	52	52
	MINimum down speed	1 to 65%	45	45
	Max Down speed	1 to 100%	52	52
	Medium Speed	0.01 to 1.00	0.60	0.60

Table 6-4. Machine Personality Settings

SUBMENU (DISPLAYED ON ANALYZER 1ST LINE)	PERSONALITY	RANGE	DEFAULTS (740AJ Sauer Danfoss)	DEFAULTS (740AJ Eaton)
GROUND MODE	Tower LIFT UP speed	1 to 100%	99	99
	Tower LIFT DOWN speed	1 to 100%	99	99
	Main LIFT UP speed	1 to 100%	60	60
	Main LIFT DOWN speed	1 to 100%	60	60
	SWING speed	1 to 100%	60	60
	Main TELEscope speed	1 to 100%	66	66
	PLATFORM ROTATE speed	1 to 100%	49	49
	PLATFORM LEVEL speed	1 to 100%	49	49
	JIB LIFT speed	1 to 100%	50	50
NOTE: *Ground Mode speed are automatically limited to being lower than platform speed for a given function.*				

4150365I

6.3 MACHINE ORIENTATION WHEN SETTING FUNCTION SPEEDS

Tower Lift: Main Boom Horizontal, Telescoped In. Tower Lift Up, Record Time. Tower Lift Down, Record Time.

Lift: Tower Lift Fully Elevated, Tower Telescope Fully Extended, Main Telescope Fully Retracted.

Swing: Boom at Full Elevation. Telescope Retracted. Swing the Turntable off center and stop. Swing the opposite direction and start the test when the turntable is centered up. This eliminates ramp up and down on the controller affecting times.

Telescope: Boom at Full Elevation; Telescope Retracted; Telescope Out, Record Time. Telescope In, Record Time.

Drive (Forward/Reverse): Test should be done on a smooth level surface. Drive Select Switch should be set to high speed. Start approximately 25 ft. (7.62 m) from the starting point so that the unit is at maximum speed when starting the test. Results should be recorded for a 200 ft. (60.96 m) course. Drive Forward, Record Time. Drive Reverse, Record Time.

Drive (Above Horizontal): Test should be done on a smooth, level surface. Drive Select Switch should be set to Low Engine, Low Drive. The Platform Speed Control Knob should be positioned to Creep Speed. This simulates machine speed when the boom is above horizontal. Results should be recorded for a 50 ft. (15.2 m) course. Drive Forward, Record Time. Drive Reverse, Record Time.

Platform Rotate: Platform level and completely rotated one direction. Rotate the opposite direction, Record Time. Rotate the other direction, Record Time.

Articulating Jib: Platform level and centered with the boom. Start with the Jib down. Jib Up, Record Time. Jib Down, Record Time.

Test Notes

1. Stop watch should be started with the function, not with the controller or switch.
2. Drive test results reflect 15x19.5 or 18x19.5 tires, pneumatic or foam filled.
3. All speed tests are run from the platform. These speeds do not reflect the ground control operation.
4. The platform speed knob control must be at full speed (turned clockwise completely).
5. Function speeds may vary due to cold, thick hydraulic oil. Test should be run with the oil temperature above 100° F (38° C).
6. Some flow control functions may not work with the speed knob clicked into the creep position.

Table 6-5. Function Speeds

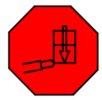
Function	Speed (In Seconds)
Main Lift Up	45 - 50
Main Lift Down	45 - 50
Swing Right & Left	79 - 101
NOTE: *No more than 10% difference between swing left and swing right.*	
Platform Rotate Right & Left	19 - 30
NOTE: *No more that 15% difference between rotator left and rotator right.*	
Jib Up	20-30
Jib Down	30-40
Tower Lift Up	57 - 70
Tower Lift Down	44 - 53
Drive (2WD) Forward & Reverse	33-45
Drive (4WD) Forward & Reverse	33-45
Drive Horizontal Above Elevation (2 & 4WD) Forward & Reverse (CE)	122 Min
Drive Horizontal Above Elevation 2WD Forward & Reverse (ANSI)	61-70
Drive Horizontal Above Elevation 4WD Forward & Reverse (ANSI)	122 Min

4150241 G

6.4 LSS SYSTEM

The JLG-designed Load Sensing System (LSS) measures platform load via a sensor mounted in the platform support structure. If the actual platform load exceeds the selected Rated Load, the following will occur:

1. The Overload Visual Warning Indicator will flash at the selected control position (platform or ground).



2. The Platform and Ground Alarms will sound 5 seconds On, and 2 seconds Off.
3. All normal movement will be prevented from the platform control position (optional - ground control functions may be prevented).
4. Further movement is permitted by:
    a. Removing the excess platform load until actual platform load is less than Rated Load.
    b. Operation of the overriding emergency system (Auxiliary Power Unit).
    c. By an authorized person at the ground control position (optional - ground control functions may be prevented).

NOTICE

THE LOAD SENSING SYSTEM MUST BE CALIBRATED WHEN ONE OR MORE OF THE FOLLOWING CONDITIONS OCCUR:

a. LSS Sensor removal or replacement.
b. Addition or removal of certain platform mounted accessories. (Refer to Calibration)
c. Platform is removed, replaced, repaired or shows evidence of impact.

NOTICE

THE LOAD SENSING SYSTEM REQUIRES PERIODIC FUNCTION VERIFICATION NOT TO EXCEED 6 MONTHS FROM PREVIOUS VERIFICATION. REFER TO TESTING & EVALUATION.

All calibration procedures are menu driven through the use of a JLG Analyzer.

Diagnostic Menu

The Diagnostic Menu is another troubleshooting tool for the Load Sensing System. Sensor and status information is presented in real-time for the technician. Several sub-menus exist to organize the data.

To access the Diagnostic Menu, use the LEFT and RIGHT arrow keys to select DIAGNOSTICS from the Top Level Menu. Press the ENTER key to view the menu.

Press the LEFT and RIGHT Arrow keys to view the displays and select the various sub-menus. To access a sub-menu, press the ENTER key. Once in a sub-menu, press the LEFT and RIGHT Arrow keys to view the various displays (just like a Top Level menu). To exit a sub-menu, press the ESC key.

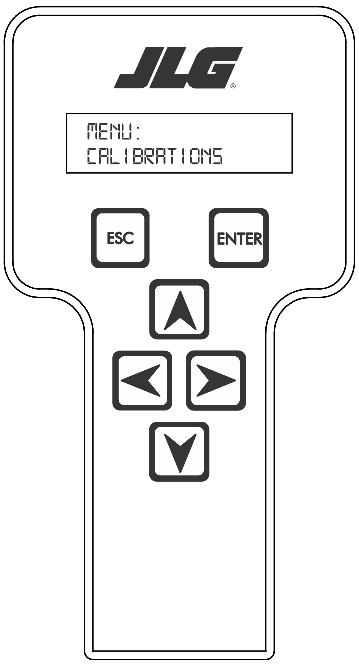
Table 6-6, Diagnostic Menu Descriptions details the structure of the Diagnostic Menu, and describes the meaning of each piece of information presented.

Table 6-6. Diagnostic Menu Descriptions

Diagnostics Menu (Displayed on Analyzer 1st Line)	Parameter (Displayed on Analyzer 2nd Line)	Parameter Value (Displayed on Analyzer 2nd Line)	Description
PLATFORM LOAD	STATE:	OK / OVERLOAD	LSS Status.
PLATFORM LOAD	ACTUAL:	XXX.X KG	Calibrated weight of the platform. ??? if Platform Load is Unhealthy**.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	GROSS:	XXX.X KG	Gross weight of the platform. ??? if both Cells are Unhealthy**.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	OFFSET 1:	XXX.X KG	Stored offset weight of Cell 1. ??? if LSS is not calibrated.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	OFFSET 2:	XXX.X KG	Stored offset weight of Cell 1. ??? if LSS is not calibrated.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	ACCESSORY	XXX.X KG	Stored accessory weight. ??? if LSS is not calibrated.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	UNRESTRICT	XXX.X KG	UGM will set Unrestricted Rated Load as defined by Machine Configuration.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	RESTRICT	XXX.X KG	UGM will set Restricted Rated Load as defined by Machine Configuration.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	RAW 1:	XXX.X KG	Gross value from Cell 1. ??? if Unhealthy**.
PLATFORM LOAD (service*)	RAW 2:	XXX.X KG	Gross value from Cell 2. ??? if Unhealthy**.
* Indicates only visible in service view mode ** Typically indicates a DTC is active			

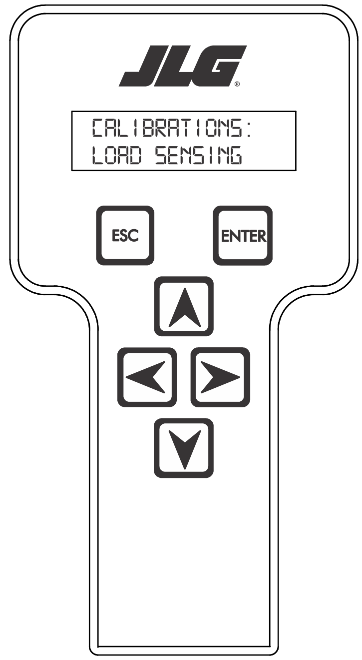
Calibration Procedure

1. Remove everything from the platform, except permanently fixed JLG Accessories, to allow the Load Sensing System to record its' weight during calibration. This includes all tools, debris, and customer-installed devices.
2. Plug the JLG Analyzer into the Machine at the Ground Station and enter Service Access Password 33271.
3. The platform should be approximately level for calibration. Level the platform from ground control (if necessary) to within +/- 5°.
4. To access the Calibration Menu, use the LEFT and RIGHT Arrow keys to select CALIBRATION from the Top Level Menu. The screen will read:

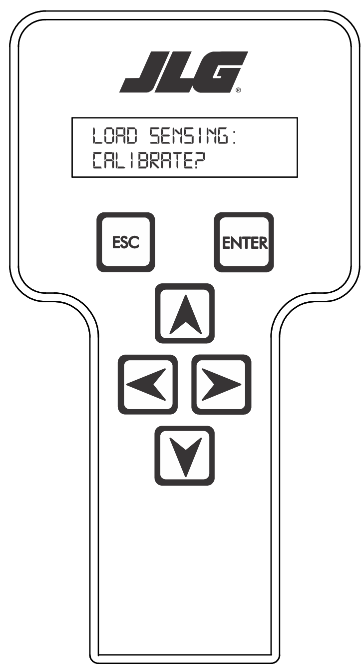


NOTE: *The Calibration Menu is not available in OPERATOR ACCESS.*

5. Press the ENTER key ENTER to view the menu. Upon entry to the Calibration Menu, the JLG Control System will link to the Analyzer and the screen will read:



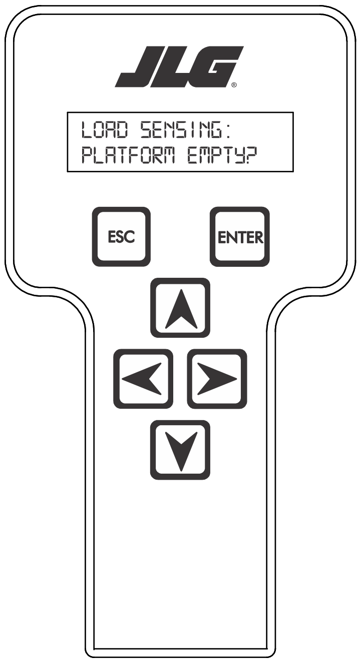
6. Press Enter ENTER. The Screen will read:



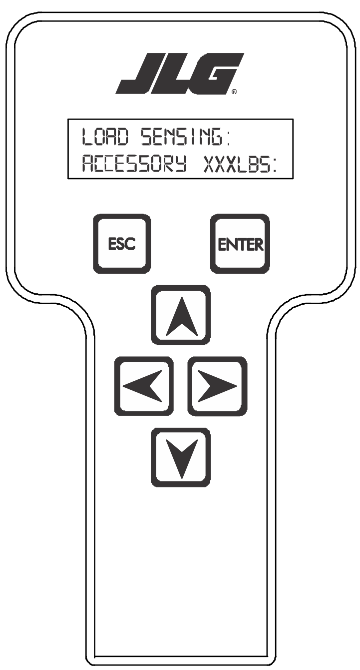
NOTE: *Calibration will auto fail if LSS DTC's are active (443, 444, 4479, 4480, 663, 821, 822, 823, 824, 8218, 8222 -> 8238, 991, 992, 993, 994 or 99285).*

Pressing the ESC key after starting calibration and before calibration is complete will display the CAL FAILED message. This will not disturb the prior calibration information.

7. Press ENTER. The analyzer screen will read:



8. If the platform is empty, press ENTER. The screen will read:



NOTE: *Accessory weight will reset to 0 lbs. each time the machine is re-calibrated and will need to be re-entered.*

NOTE: *The Accessory weight will be temporarily stored in the Control System until calibration has been completed successfully.*

Refer to Table 6-7, Accessory Weights. Use the up and down analyzer keys to enter the accessory weight(s) (in lbs). When all the accessory weights are entered, press ENTER. The screen will read:

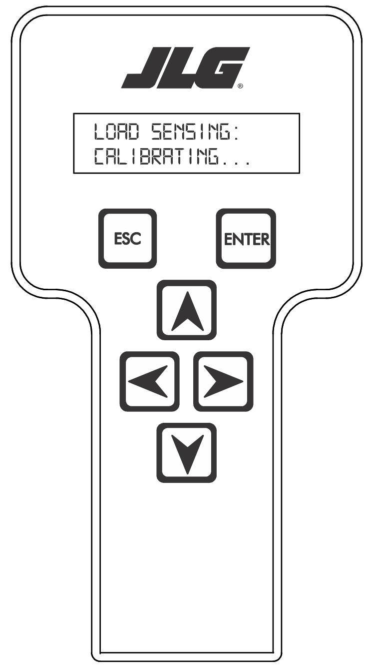
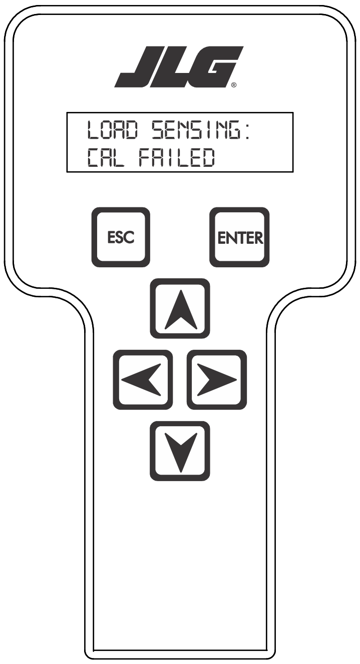


Table 6-7. Accessory Weights

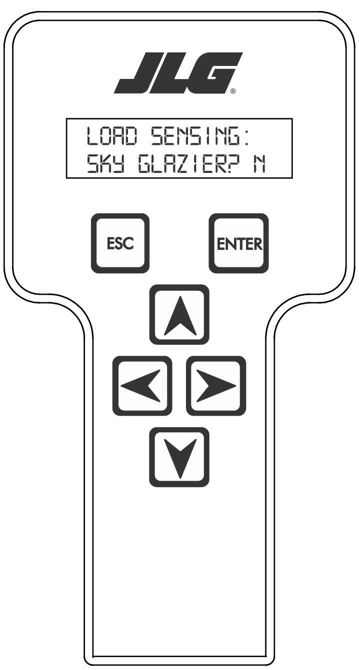
Accessory	Weight
SkyWelder (stick welder)	70 lb (32 kg)
SkyWelder Prep	Prep only = 15 lb (7 kg) Full install = 70 lb (32 kg)
SkyCutter (plasma cutter)	70 lb (32 kg)
SkCutter / SkyWelder Combo	140 lb (64 kg)
Fire Extinguisher	45 lb (20 kg)
Overhead SoftTouch	80 lb (36 kg)
Work Surface	20 lb (9 kg)
NOTE: *Not all Accessories are available on every JLG model. Some Accessory combinations are prohibited due to excessive weight and/or load restriction. If any installed JLG Accessories are labeled with weight decals but are not listed in the table above, include their weight when entering the ACC WEIGHT value.*	

9. The control system will calculate the load cell readings and ensure it is greater than 130 lbs. (59 kg), but less than 575 lbs.(261 kg).

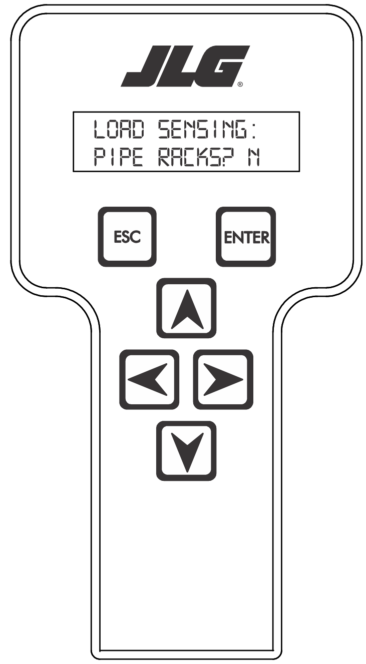
   If the platform weight is not within the allowed range, the calibration attempt will be unsuccessful and the Analyzer will show the following:



10. Press ENTER . The control system will ask for installed accessories. The screen will show the following:



11. Use the analyzer keys to select **N** for no or **Y** for yes. Press ENTER . The screen will read:



12. Use the analyzer keys to select N for no or Y for yes. Press ENTER. The control system will default to an estimate of unrestricted capacity, which can be adjusted if necessary. Refer to Table 6-8, SkyGlazier Capacity Reductions and Table 6-9, Pipe Rack Capacity Reductions.

The screen will read:

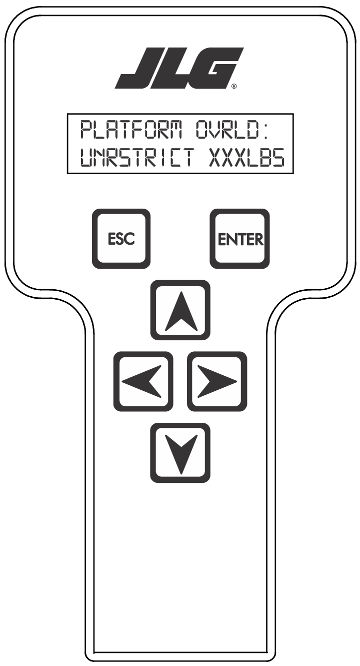


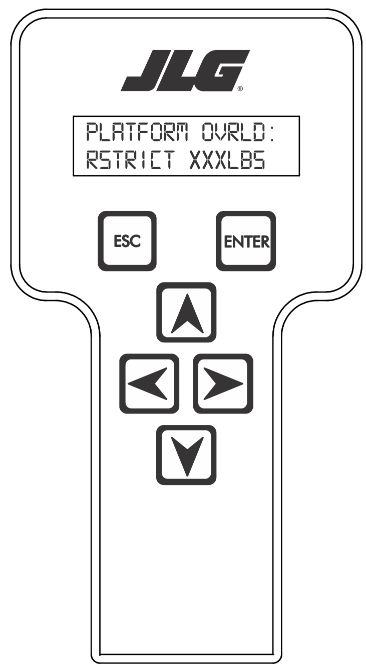
Table 6-8. SkyGlazier Capacity Reductions

Capacity	PLATFORM OVRLD	PLATFORM OVRLD RESTRICT
500 lb (227 kg)	400 lb (181 kg)	n/a
550 lb (250 kg)	400 lb (181 kg)	n/a
600 lb (272 kg)	400 lb (181 kg)	n/a
750 lb (340 kg)	n/a	590 lb (268 kg)
1000 lb (454 kg)	n/a	750 lb (340 kg)
Note: If both SkyGlazier and Pipe Racks are configured, capacity will be the lower of the two values.		

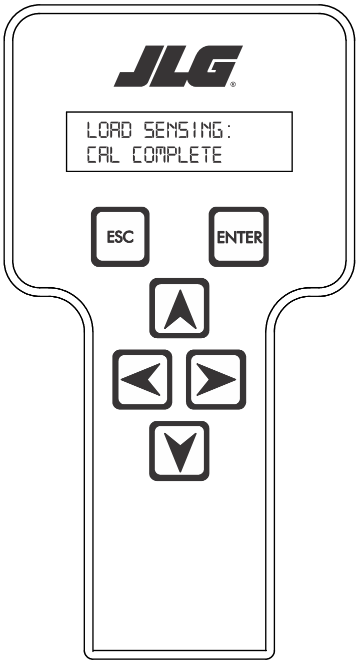
Table 6-9. Pipe Rack Capacity Reductions

Capacity	PLATFORM OVRLD	PLATFORM OVRLD RESTRICT
500 lb (227 kg)	400 lb (181 kg)	n/a
550 lb (250 kg)	450 lb (204 kg)	n/a
600 lb (272 kg)	500 lb (227 kg)	n/a
750 lb (340 kg)	n/a	650 lb (295 kg)
1000 lb (454 kg)	n/a	900 lb (408 kg)
Note: If both SkyGlazier and Pipe Racks are configured, capacity will be the lower of the two values.		

13. Press ENTER. The following screen will be displayed for restricted capacity, which can be adjusted if necessary. Refer to Table 6-8, SkyGlazier Capacity Reductions and Table 6-9, Pipe Rack Capacity Reductions.



14. Press ENTER . If calibration is successful, the screen will read:



Testing & Evaluation

Refer to Troubleshooting if the Load Sensing System fails to meet these guidelines.

1. Connect the JLG Analyzer.

2. Level the Platform. The platform should be approximately level for analysis, or the guidelines below will not be applicable. Level the platform from Ground Control (if necessary) to within ±5 degrees.

3. Observe the Empty Platform Weight. Proceed to the DIAGNOSTICS, PLTLOAD sub-menu and observe the measured platform load. All tools, debris, and customer-installed devices shall be removed during evaluation. Ideally, the PLTLOAD should be zero but can vary ±15 lbs (±7 kg). Further, the reading should be stable and should not vary by more than ±2 lbs (±1 kg) (unless there is heavy influence from wind or vibration).

4. Use the Technician's Weight to Evaluate. The technician should enter the platform and record the PLTLOAD reading while standing in the center of the platform.

5. Confirm Control System Warnings and Interlocks. Using the keyswitch, select Platform Mode and power-up. Start the vehicle's engine and ensure that all controls are functional and the Load Sensing System's Overload Visual and Audible Warnings are not active. Simulate an Overload by unplugging the Shear Beam Load Cell. The Overload Visual Warning should flash, and the Audible Warning (at Platform and Ground) should sound for 5 seconds On, and 2 seconds Off. With the engine running, all control should be prevented. Cycle the Platform EMS to stop the engine and then power-up again. The Overload Visual and Audible Warning should continue. Confirm that controls are responsive when using the Auxiliary Power Unit for emergency movement. Reconnect the Load Cell. The Overload Visual and Audible Warnings should cease and normal control function should return. Switch the vehicle's keyswitch to Ground Mode and repeat the above procedure. The Overload Visual Warning at the Ground Controls should flash, and the Audible Warning (at Platform and Ground) should sound for 5 seconds On, 2 seconds Off. However, the controls should remain functional when using the engine and the Auxiliary Power Unit (if the Control System's MACHINE SETUP, LOAD is set to "2=CUTOUT PLT". If set to "3=CUTOUT ALL", then Ground Controls will be prevented when using the engine as in the platform).

6. Confirm Control System Capacity Indication (optional for vehicles with Dual Capacity Ratings). For vehicles equipped with a Capacity Select switch on the Platform Console Box, it is necessary to examine an additional interface between the Load Sensing System and the Control System. Using the keyswitch, select Platform Mode and power-up. If necessary, put the boom in the transport position (completely stowed) and center the Jib Plus (if equipped). Place the Capacity Select switch in the unrestricted position and ensure that the proper indicator illuminates on the Platform Console Box. Plug the JLG Analyzer into the Analyzer connection and proceed to the DIAGNOSTICS, SYSTEM submenu. Ensure that the CAPACITY displays indicate OFF. Place the Capacity Select switch in the unrestricted position (if so equipped) and ensure that the proper indicator illuminates on the Platform Console Box (but does not flash). For vehicles with unrestricted capacity, ensure that the unrestricted CAPACITY display indicates ON but the restricted CAPACITY indicates OFF. For vehicles with restricted capacity, ensure that the unrestricted CAPACITY display indicates OFF but the restricted CAPACITY indicates ON.

7. Confirm Load Sensing System Performance with Calibrated Weights. Operate the vehicle from Ground Control and place the boom in the transport position (fully stowed) for safety. Plug the JLG Analyzer into the control system connection and proceed to the DIAGNOSTICS, PLTLOAD display. Place 500lbs (230kg) in the platform and ensure that PLTLOAD is with ±5% of the actual weight. For Dual Capacity vehicles, do the same for the alternate capacity (unrestricted or restricted).

Troubleshooting

The following tables are furnished to provide possible resolutions for common difficulties. Difficulties are classified as General, Calibration, Measurement Performance, and Host System Functionality.

Table 6-10. LSS Troubleshooting Chart

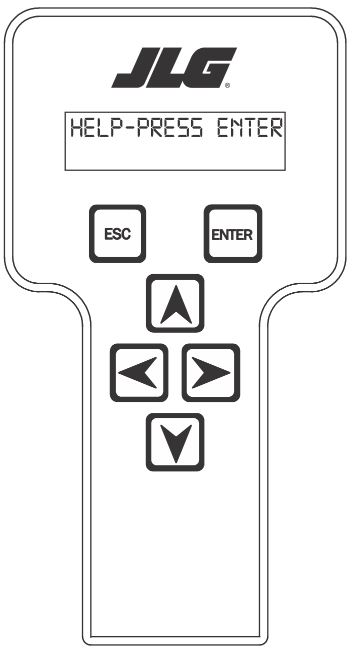
Difficulty	Possible Resolution
Empty Platform Weight (DIAGNOSTICS, PLATFORM LOAD) is not within ±15lbs (±7kg) of zero. or Platform Load readings (DIAGNOTICS, PLTLOAD) are unstable by more than ±2lbs (±1kg) (without the influence of vibration or wind). or There are large variations in Platform Load (DIAGNOSTICS, PLTLOAD) based on the location of the load. Tolerance to variations is 20lbs for an evaluation using the technician's weight, and ±5% of Rated Load when using calibrated weights.	The LSS System is unable to properly measure the platform weight. 1. The Load Cell is not properly plugged into the LSS Harness. It is possible poor electrical contact is made. 2. Wiring leading to the Load Cell is damaged. Carefully inspect sensor wiring where it passes through cable clamps for signs of damage. Inspect wiring where damage to the channel is apparent. 3. The Load Cell was not assembled properly during installation. Examine the sensor's reading using the JLG Analyzer. Proceed to the DIAGNOSTICS, CELL, LOAD displays and determine if the readings are reasonable. It is often helpful to apply slight downward pressure above the sensor and observe that its output increases (increasing force measurement; decreasing means the sensor is mounted upside-down). 4. The Load Cell is contaminated by debris or moisture. Examine the sensor's reading using the JLG Analyzer. Proceed to the DIAGNOSTICS, CELL, LOAD displays and determine if the readings are reasonable and stable (not changing by more than ±2lbs (±1kg) (without the influence of vibration or wind). Lack of measurement stability is a key indication of contamination. Unplug the connector and inspect for dirt or moisture. Look carefully into the female connector on the sensor's cordset for evidence of contamination. Debris should be brushed away with a soft bristle brush (do not introduce any cleaners as they will leave conductive residue). Moisture should be allowed to evaporate or accelerated with a heat-gun (use low heat and be carefully to not melt connector materials). Moisture intrusion into the molded portion of the connector (capillary action into the wire bundle) or the Shear Beam Load Cell itself will require replacement of the sensor. 5. The Load Cell has been mechanically damaged. If the Load Cell is physically deformed or has damage to the cover it should be replaced immediately. It is also possible to have invisible mechanical damage resulting from an extreme overload (>6000lbs [>2722kg]).
The Visual and Audible Overload Warnings fail to sound when platform is loaded beyond Rated Load, or when simulated by unplugging the Load Cell. Controls remain functional at Platform and Ground Control positions.	The Control System is failing to regard the overload signal from the LSS System, or the signal is shorted. 1. The Load Sensing System must be enabled within the Control System. Plug the JLG Analyzer into the Control System, enter the Access Level 1 password (33271), and examine the MACHINE SETUP, LOAD sub-menu. The selection "2=CUTOUT PLT" should be displayed (platform controls prevented during overload, ground controls remain operational). In country- or customer-specific circumstance, the selection "3=CUTOUT ALL" is used (platform and ground controls prevented during overload).
The Ground Audible Warning fails to sound, but the Platform Audible Warning sounds properly.	The Ground Alarm is missing or improperly installed. Verify that the device is mounted. Verify wiring from the Main Terminal Box and Ground Module.
Controls remain functional at the Ground Control position during an overload, or when simulated by unplugging the Load Cell. The Controls at the Platform Control position are prevented when using the engine, but not when using the Auxiliary Power Unit.	The JLG Control System is configured to prevent platform controls only in the event of overload. Alternately, the Host Control System can be configured to prevent ground and platform controls for country- or customer-specific circumstances. Using the JLG Analyzer, enter the Access Level 1 password (33271). Proceed to the MACHINE SETUP, LOAD sub-menu. Set this parameter to "2=CUTOUT PLT" to prevent platform controls in the event of overload. Set this parameter to "3=CUTOUT ALL" to prevent platform and ground controls in the event of overload.

6.5 RESETTING THE MSSO SYSTEM

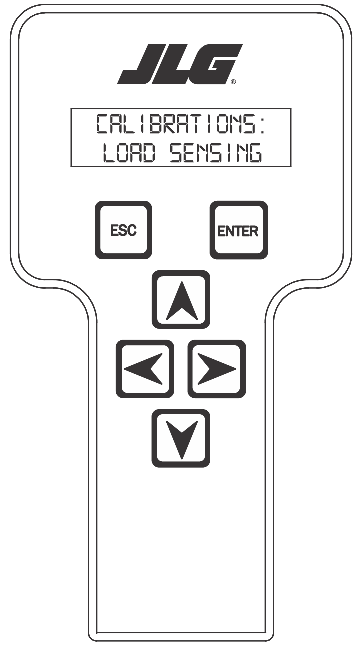
1. Use the following procedure to reset the MSSO system.
2. Position the Platform/Ground select switch to the desired position.
3. Plug the analyzer into the connector coming from the ground control module or from the platform console.

NOTE: *If performing the procedure from the platform console, the Emergency Stop switch on the ground console must also be pulled out.*

4. Pull out the Emergency Stop switch.
5. The analyzer screen should read:

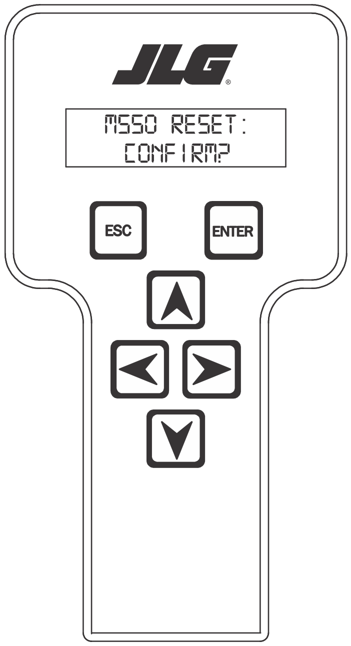


6. Use the arrow button to reach OPERATOR ACCESS. Press Enter .
7. Enter the Access Code, 33271.
8. Use the right Arrow key to reach MENU: CALIBRATIONS. Press Enter .
9. Use the arrow keys to reach the LOAD SENSING menu. The screen should read:



10. Press ENTER .
11. Use the Down  arrow to reach MSSO RESET.

12. Press Enter . The screen will read:



13. Press Enter . The JLG Control System will reset an active 873 DTC and the MSSO System will be reset. Press Escape to return to the CALIBRATIONS menu.

6.6 CANBUS COMMUNICATIONS

CANbus: CAN (Control Area Network) is a two wire differential serial link between the Platform Module, Jib Module, Ground Module, Boom Length Angle Module and the Chassis Module providing bi-directional communications.

Two-wire: One wire (red) is driven high (5v) and the other low (black) (0v) to send a signal; both wires ”float” (2.5v) when no signal is being sent.

Differential: Any electrical line noise can affect the high or the low wires but never both, so communications is not corrupted.

Serial Link: Messages are being sent bit by bit along the wires; the high bus speed allow all modules to be constantly updated around 20 times per second. Typical traffic is 300 - 500 messages per second.

A complete CANbus circuit is approximately 60 ohms, which can be verified at the ”T” fitting inside the ground station or below the BLAM. Each individual circuit from the modules is approximately 120 ohms.

The GROUND MODULE (UGM) is the master system controller. Most functions are dispatched and coordinated from this module, The PLATFORM MODULE handle sub-tasks. All characterized information (values) are stored into the ground module (i.e., Personalities or Calibrations).

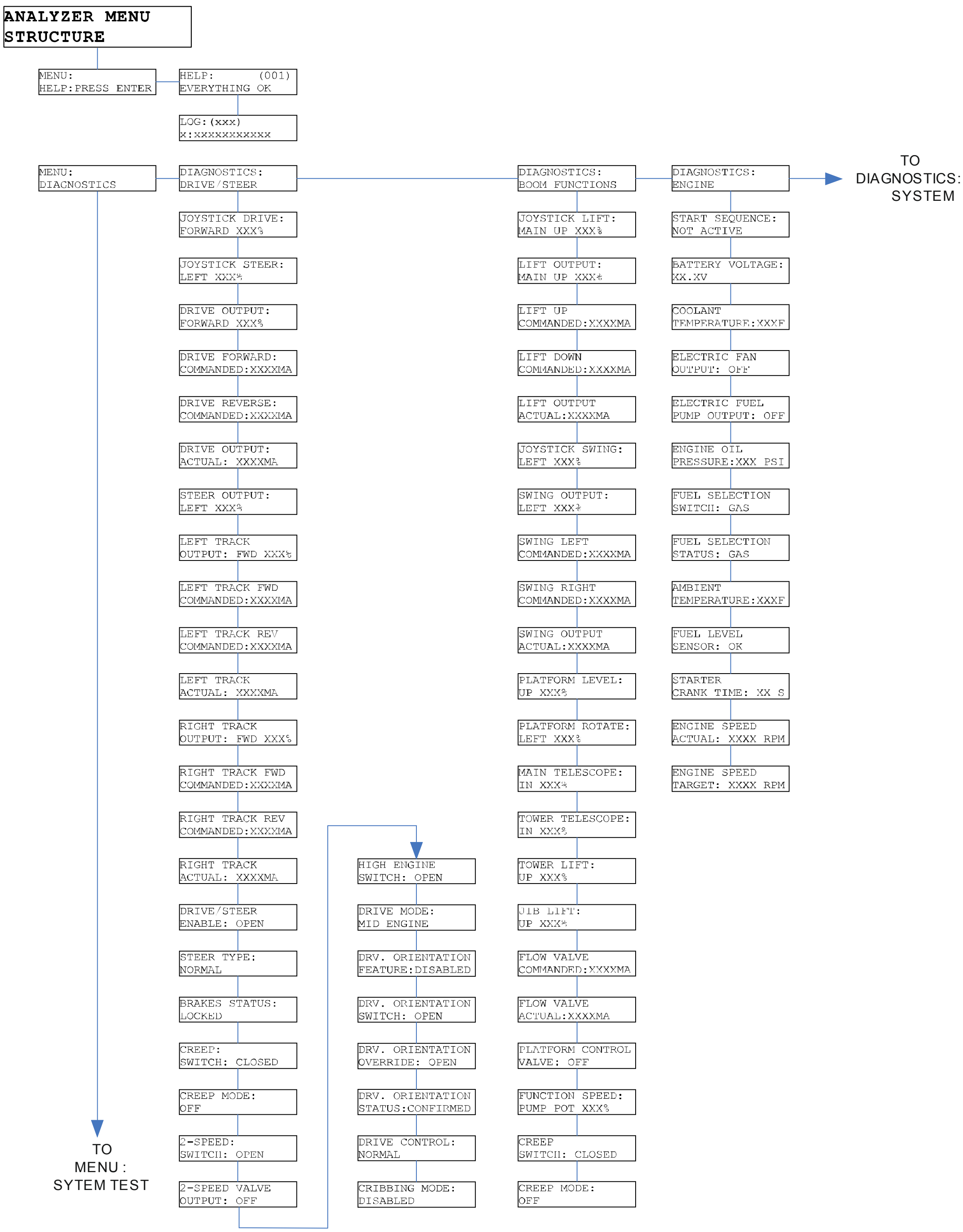
Interlocks: Any device that sends an electrical input (For an example a limit switch, proximity switch, etc;).

Platform Level: The GROUND MODULE stores the default values and handles interlocks. The PLATFORM MODULE reads the sensors mounted on the platform assembly and controls the Level Up / Down valves to maintain setpoint sent from the GROUND MODULE.

Steer: The GROUND MODULE stores crack points and sends desired drive direction, steering mode and axle extend/retract commands. The PLATFORM MODULE reports the steering switch position to the GROUND MODULE.

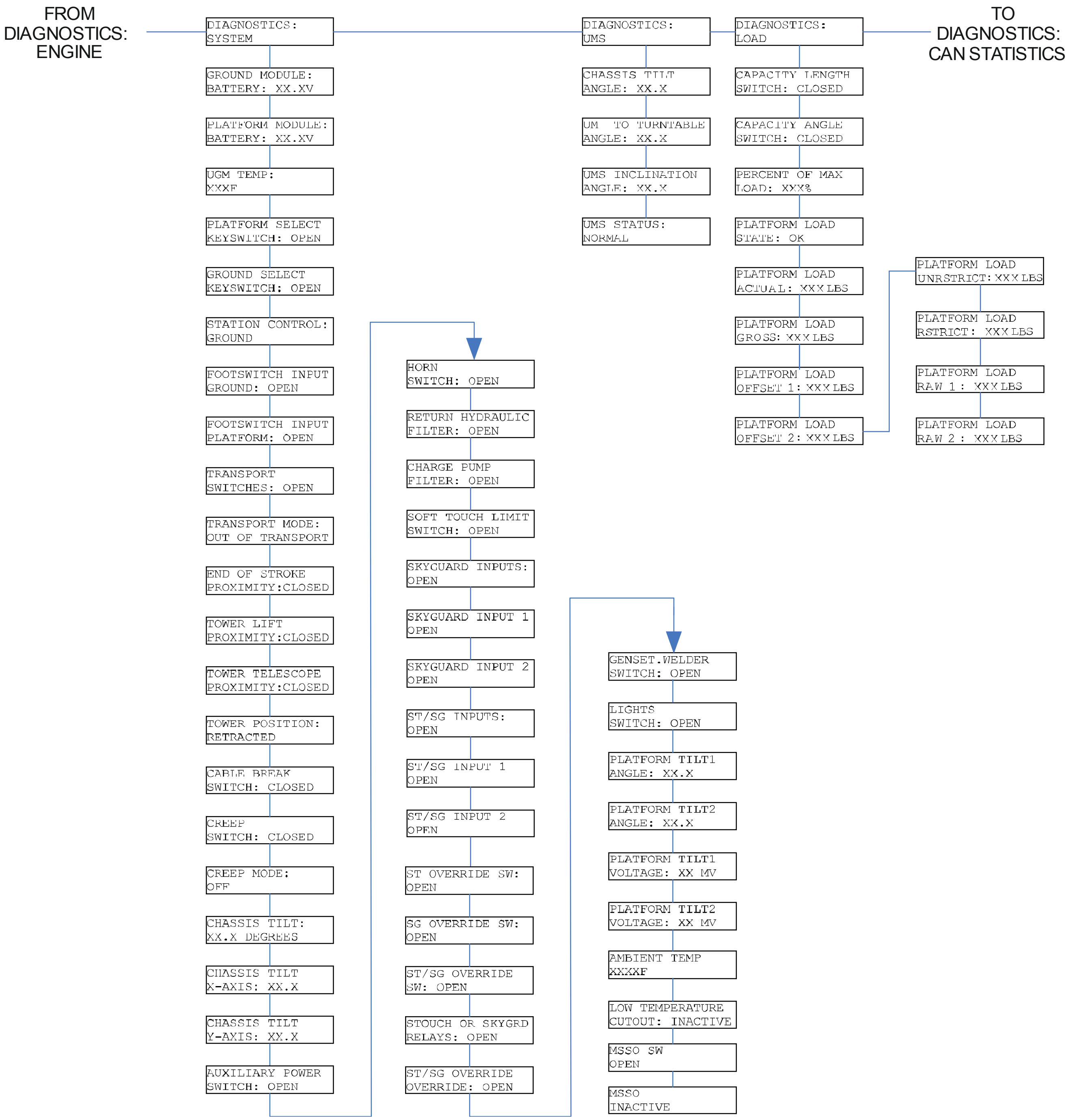
Drive: The GROUND MODULE stores crack points, sends commands for each drive pump (Command is computed from drive joystick input, interlocks, wheel angle, etc).

Lift, Tele, & Swing: The GROUND MODULE stores default values and handles interlocks and calibration information. Lift, Telescope and Swing commands are dependent upon interlocks through out the machine. Boom angle, length and swing are controlled by the GROUND MODULE.



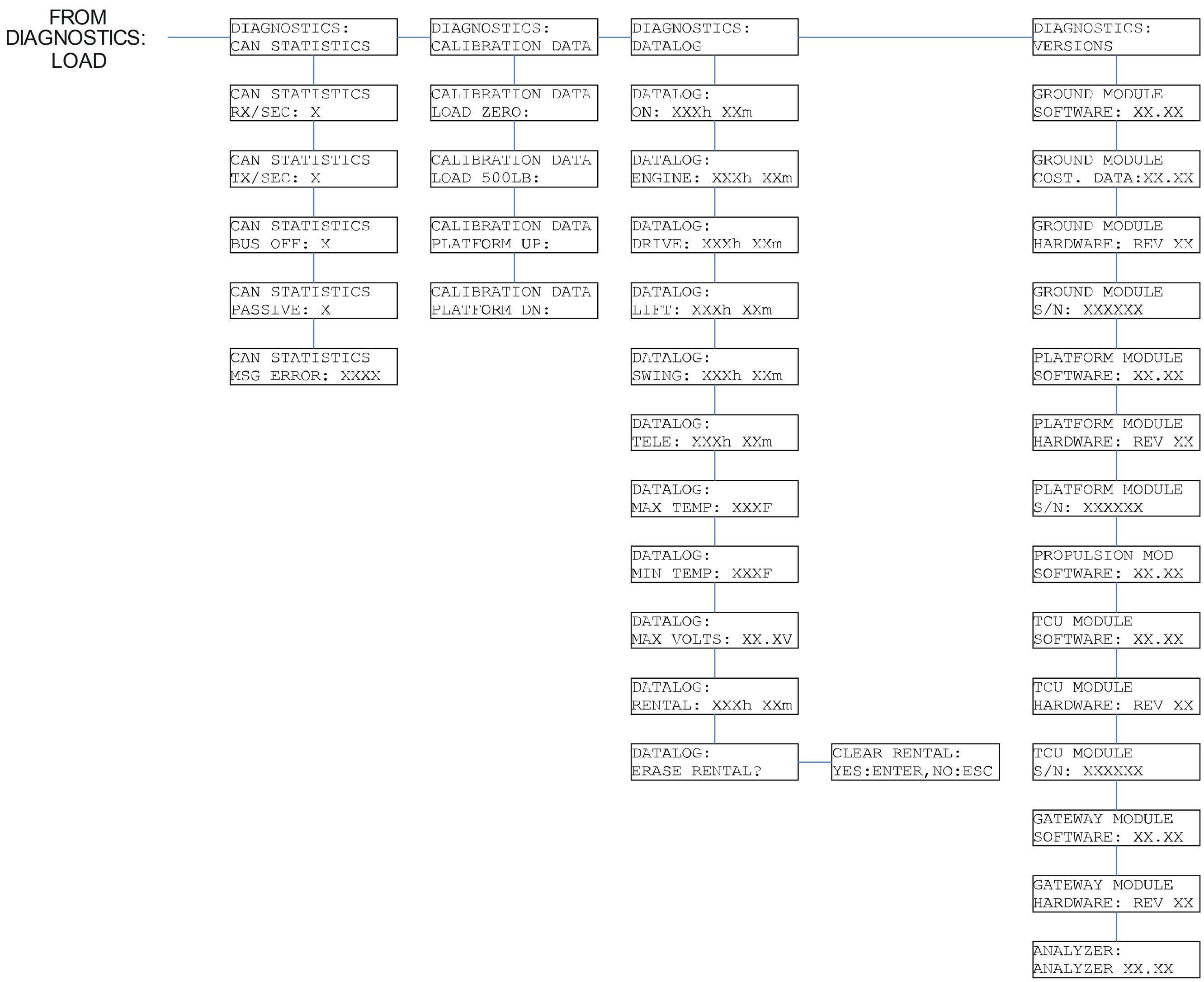
NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-3. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 1 of 8



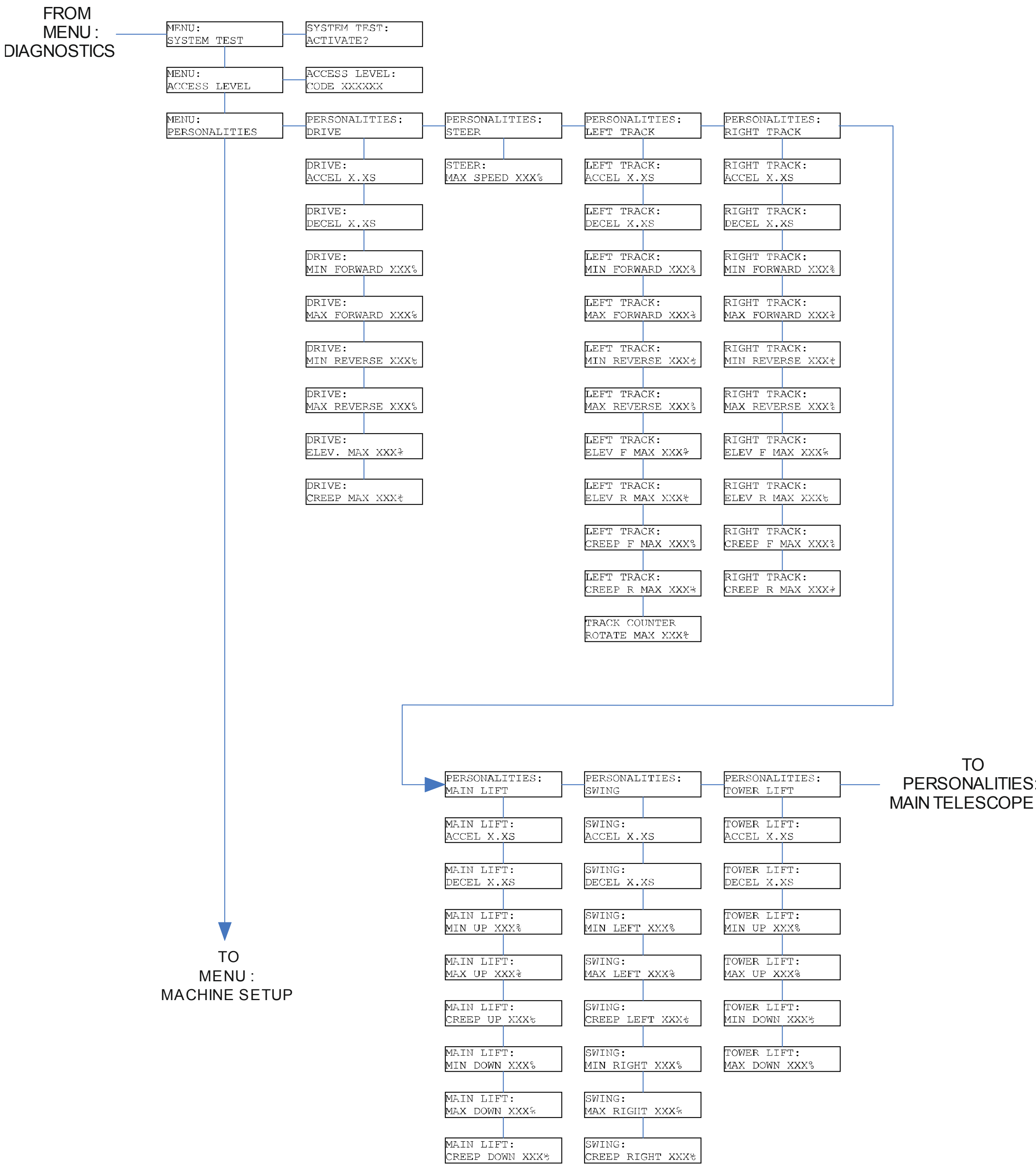
NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-4. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 2 of 8



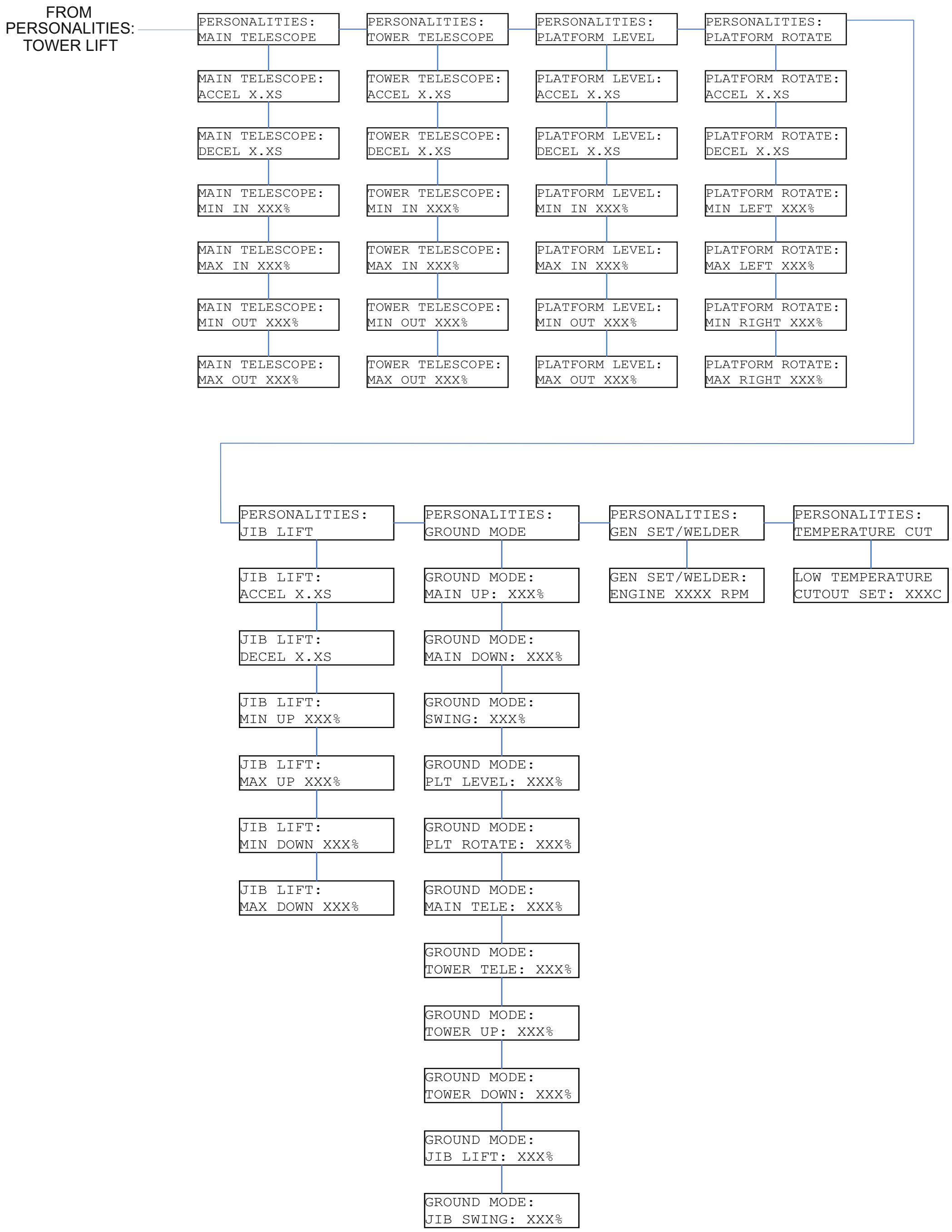
NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-5. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 3 of 8



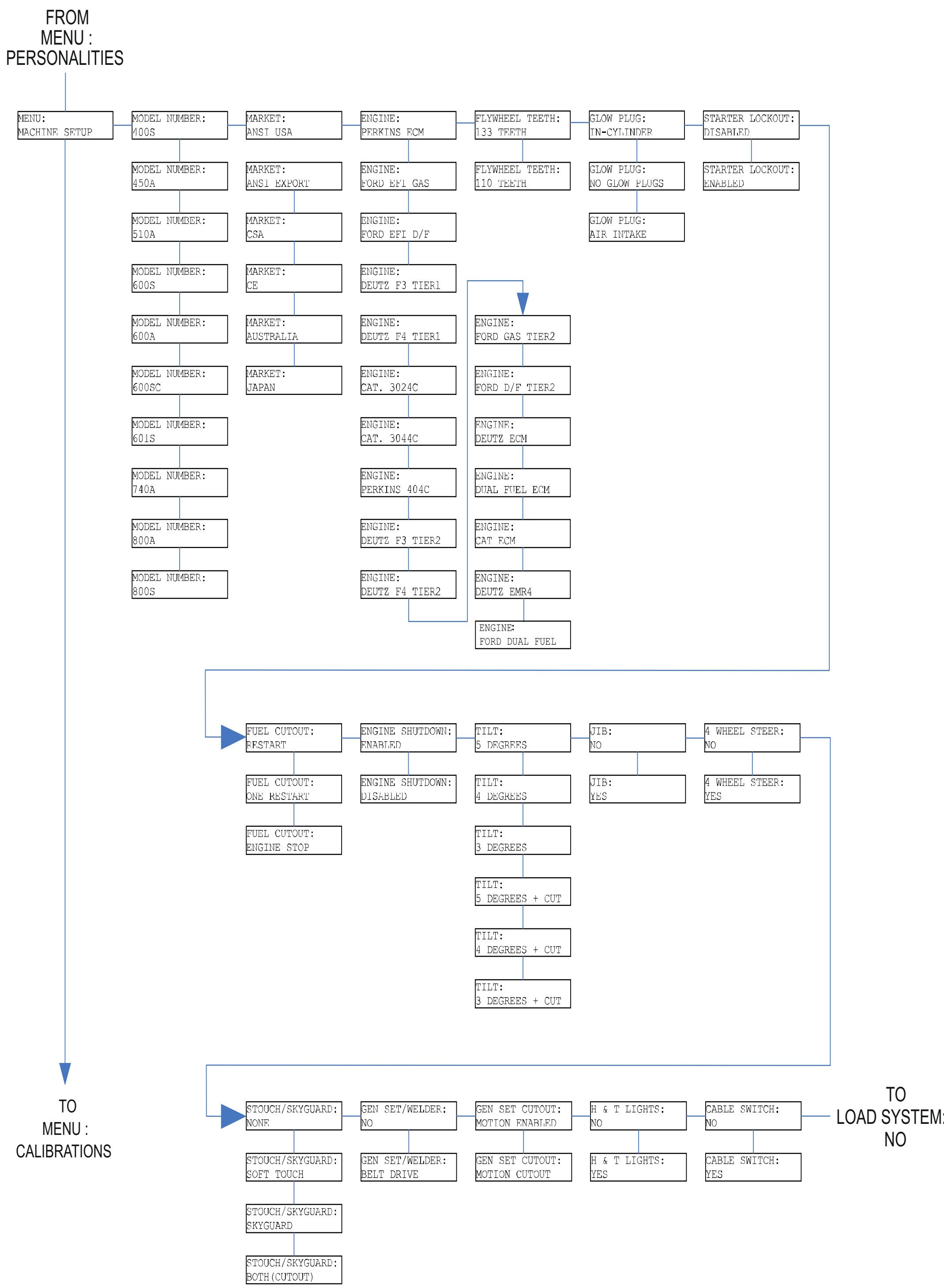
NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-6. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 4 of 8



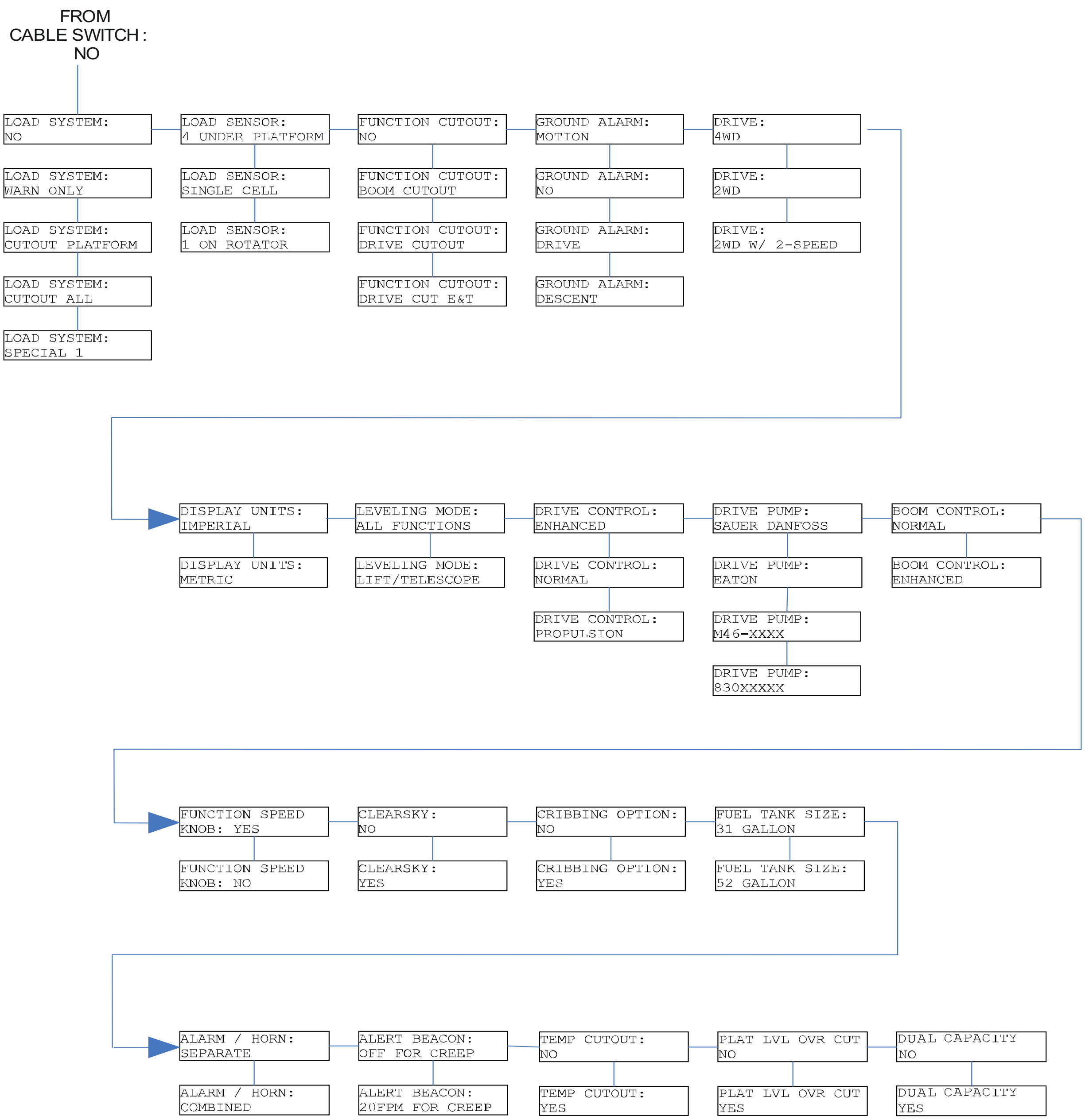
NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-7. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 5 of 8



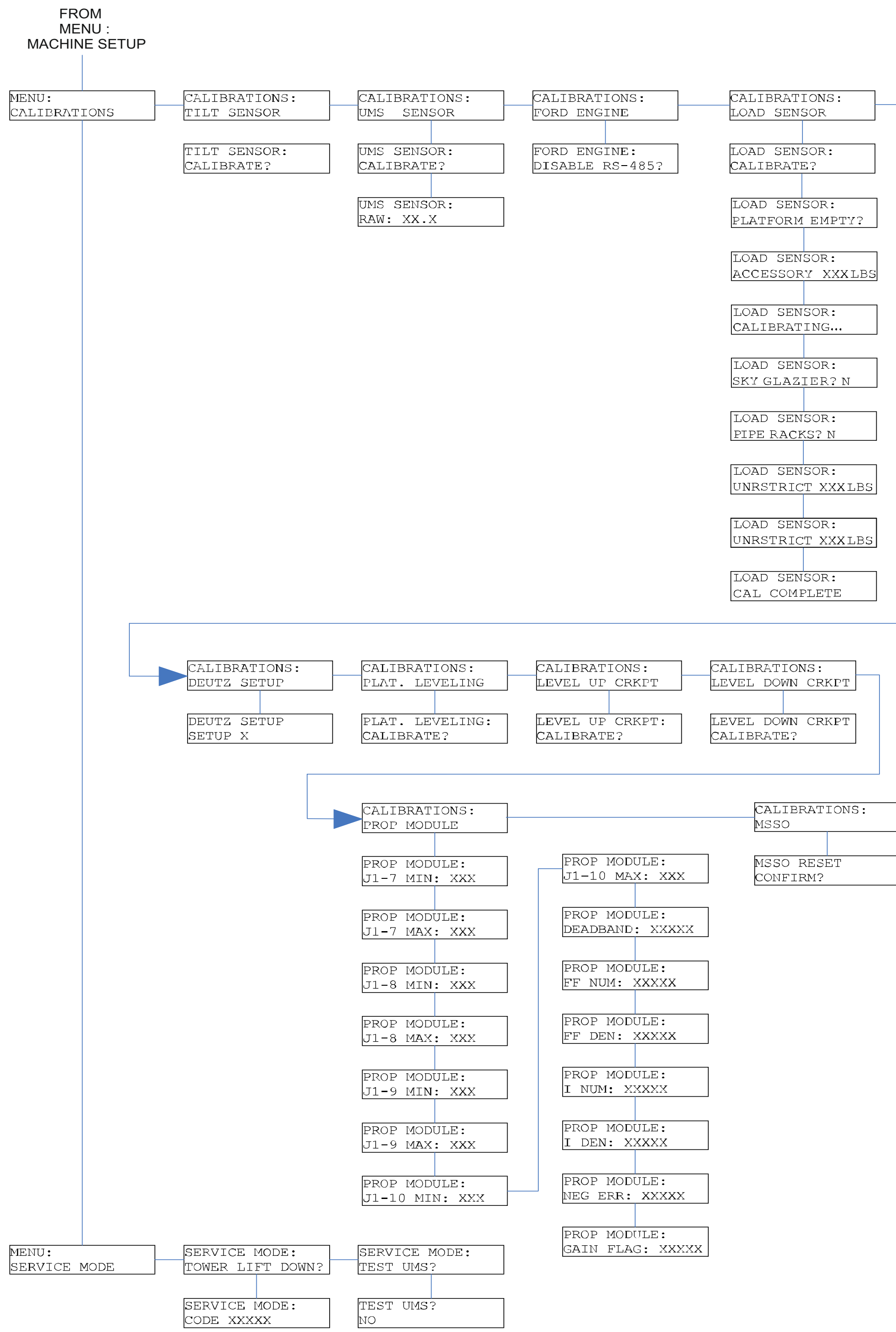
NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-8. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 6 of 8



NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-9. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 7 of 8



NOTE: *The layout shown includes all possible analyzer screens. Please note that some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration and software versions.*

Figure 6-10. Analyzer Flow Chart Version 6.X Software -Sheet 8 of 8

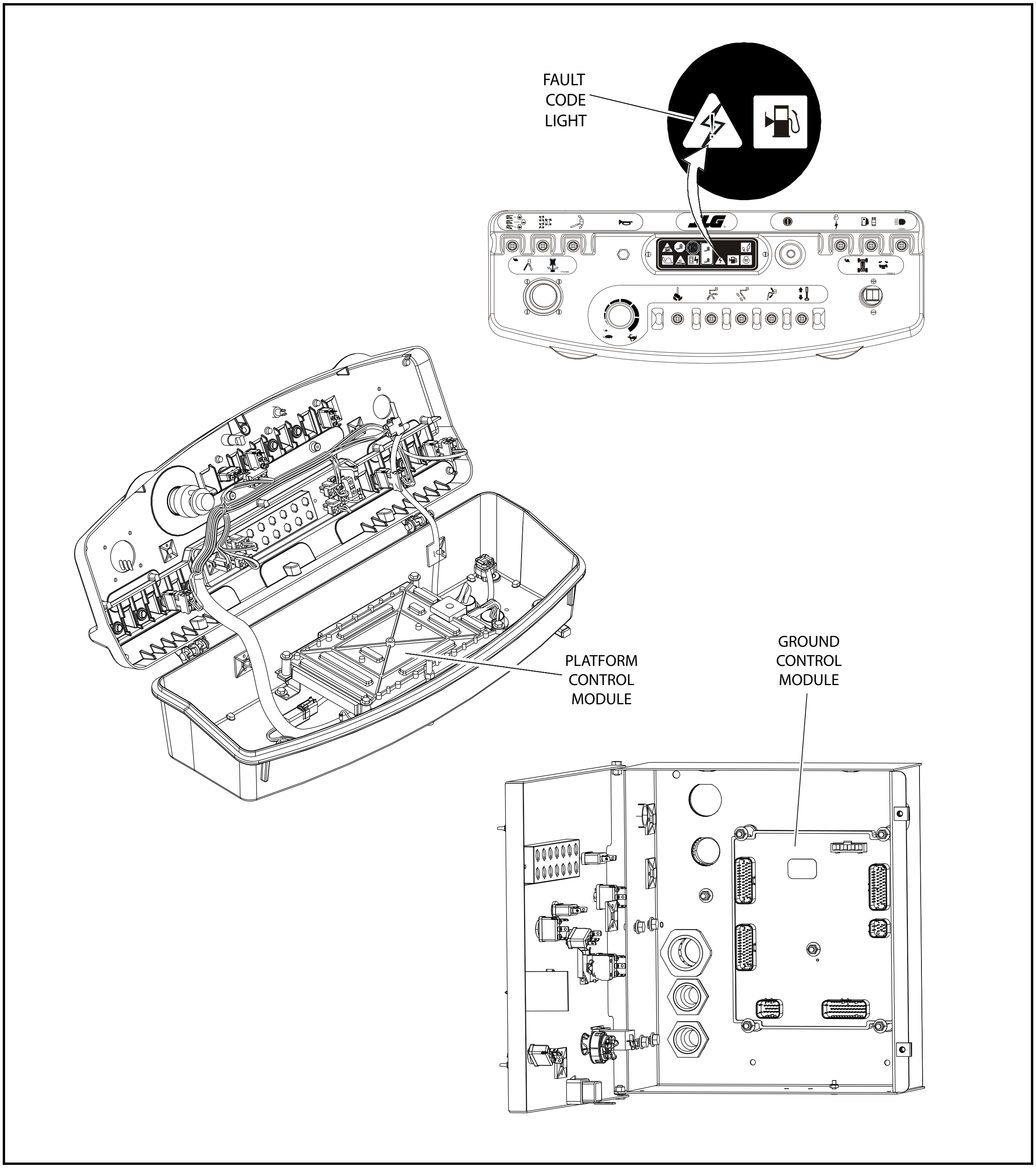
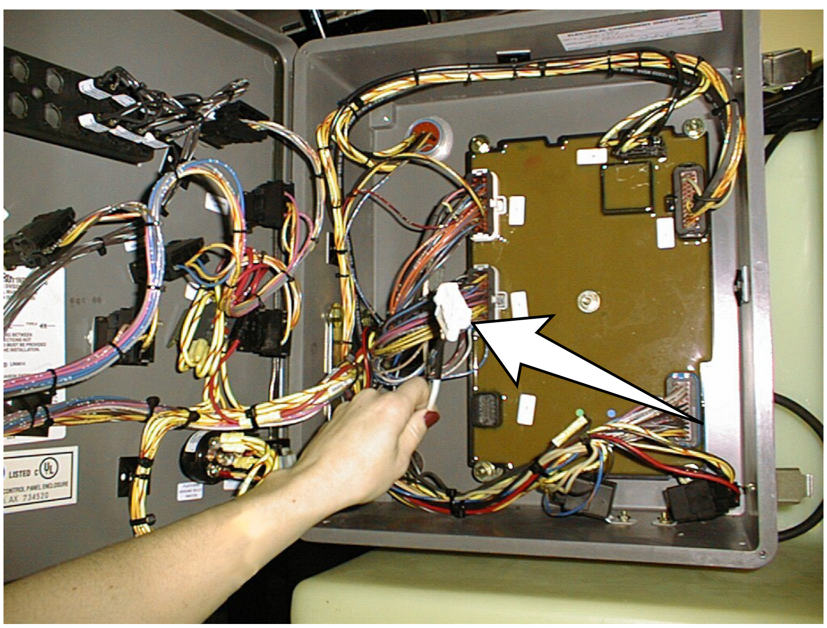


Figure 6-11. Fault Code Light Location

PLATFORM CONNECTION



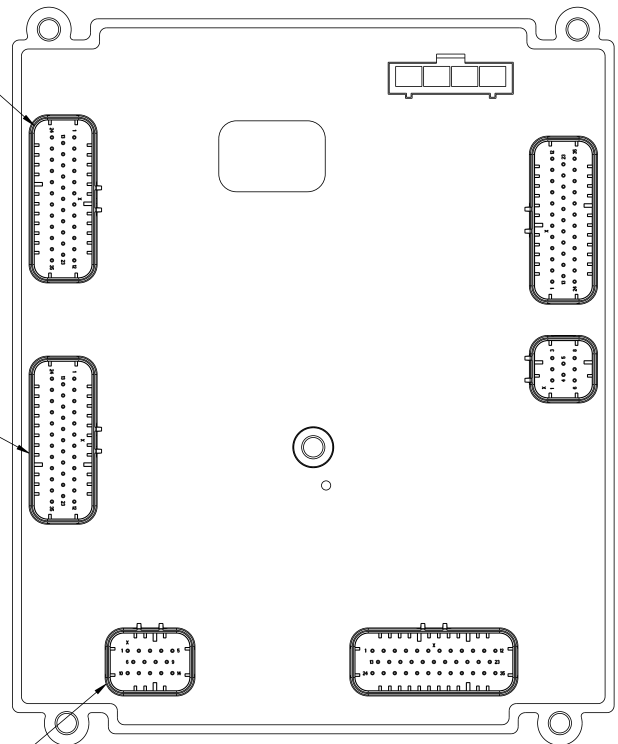
GROUND CONTROL CONNECTION

Figure 6-12. Analyzer Connecting Points

Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J1 (Natural)	1	ENGINE THROTTLE ACTUATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	2	LP START ASSIST	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	3	DRIVE / LEFT TRACK FORWARD COIL	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	4	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	5	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	6	DRIVE / LEFT TRACK REVERSE COIL	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	7	LP LOCK / ELECTRIC FAN DRIVE	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	8	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	9	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	10	IGNITION ON RELAY / ALTERNATOR EXCITATION / FUEL ON SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	11	START SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	12	ENGAGE GLOW PLUGS	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	13	APU ENABLE RELAY	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	14	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE	ANALOG	INPUT
	15	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE	ANALOG	INPUT
	16	ENGINE SPEED	FREQUENCY	INPUT
	17	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	18	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	19	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	20	2-SPEED VALVE	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	21	CHARGE PUMP FILTER BY-PASS	DIGITAL	INPUT
	22	GENERATOR ENABLE RELAY	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	23	BRAKE VALVE	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	24	NOT CONNECTED	N/C	N/C
	25	RS-485 HIGH	SERIAL	I/O
	26	RS-485 LOW	SERIAL	I/O
	27	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	28	ANALYZER POWER	VOLTAGE	OUTPUT
	29	ANALYZER RS-232 RX	SERIAL	INPUT
	30	ANALYZER RS-232 TX	SERIAL	OUTPUT
	31	ANALYZER GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	32	ALTERNATOR EXCITATION	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	33	RS-485 GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	34	AIR FILTER BY-PASS	DIGITAL	INPUT
	35	NOT CONNECTED	DIGITAL	INPUT

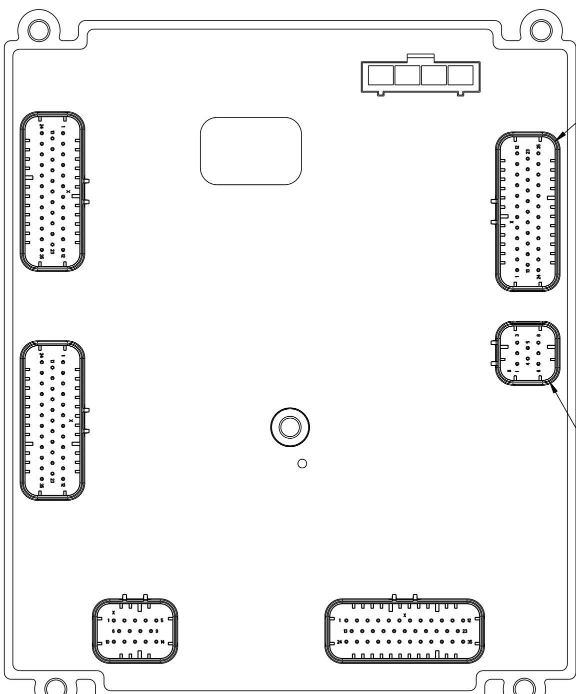
Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J2 (Gray)	1	STEER DUMP VALVE	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	2	HORN OUTPUT	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	3	TOWER TELESCOPE IN SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	4	MAIN TELESCOPE IN SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	5	PLATFORM LEVEL UP SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	6	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	7	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	8	RIGHT TRACK REVERSE COIL	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	9	NOT ALLOCATED	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	10	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	11	MAIN LIFT UP SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	12	JIB UP SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	13	MAIN DUMP VALVE	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	14	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	15	TOWER TELESCOPE OUT SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	16	MAIN TELESCOPE OUT SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	17	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	18	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	19	RIGHT TRACK FORWARD COIL	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	20	NOT ALLOCATED	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	21	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	22	MAIN LIFT DOWN SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	23	JIB DOWN SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	24	RETURN FILTER BY-PASS	DIGITAL	INPUT
	25	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR	ANALOG	INPUT
	26	HEAD / TAIL LIGHT ENABLE RELAY	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	27	ALARM OUTPUT	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	28	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	29	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	30	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	31	FLOW CONTROL VALVE	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	32	TOWER LIFT DOWN SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	33	TOWER LIFT UP SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	34	SWING LEFT SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	35	SWING RIGHT SOLENOID	DIGITAL	OUTPUT

Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J3 (Black)	1	DRIVE / LEFT TRACK CURRENT FEEDBACK	GROUND	INPUT
	2	RIGHT TRACK CURRENT FEEDBACK	GROUND	INPUT
	3	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	4	SWING CURRENT FEEDBACK	GROUND	INPUT
	5	NOT CONNECTED	GROUND	INPUT
	6	FLOW CONTROL CURRENT FEEDBACK	GROUND	INPUT
	7	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	8	UMS ANGLE SENSOR	DIGITAL	INPUT
	9	CRIBBING ENGAGE SWITCH	DIGITAL	INPUT
	10	NOT CONNECTED	DIGITAL	INPUT
	11	CONFIGURATION #1	DIGITAL	INPUT
	12	NOT CONNECTED	VOLTAGE	OUTPUT
	13	NOT CONNECTED	ANALOG	INPUT
	14	LIFT CURRENT FEEDBACK	GROUND	INPUT



1001103667 Y

Figure 6-13. Ground Control Module - Sheet 1 of 3



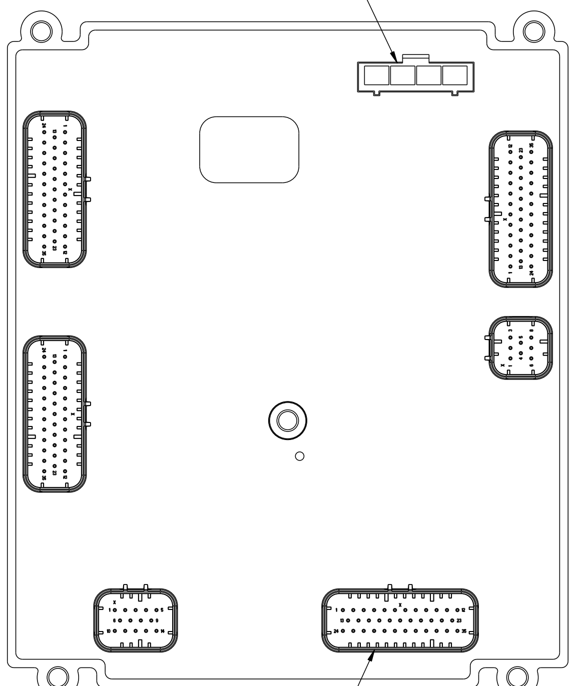
Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J7 (Black)	1	PLATFORM EMS	DIGITAL	INPUT
	2	PLATFORM MODE	DIGITAL	INPUT
	3	GROUND MODE	DIGITAL	INPUT
	4	CAPACITY ANGLE SWITCH	ANALOG	INPUT
	5	+5 VOLTS	VOLTAGE	OUTPUT
	6	CAN1 TERMINATOR	TERM	I/0
	7	CAPACITY LENGTH SWITCH	ANALOG	INPUT
	8	NOT CONNECTED	ANALOG	INPUT
	9	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	10	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	11	IN/OUT OF TRANSPORT SWITCHES	DIGITAL	INPUT
	12	BROKEN CABLE SWITCH	DIGITAL	INPUT
	13	CAN1 HIGH	SERIAL	I/0
	14	GROUND MODE POWER TO PLATFORM	DIGITAL	INPUT
	15	FOOTSWITCH	DIGITAL	INPUT
	16	+5 VOLTS	VOLTAGE	OUTPUT
	17	CAN1 TERMINATOR	TERM	I/0
	18	CAN1 SHEILD	GROUND	INPUT
	19	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	20	NOT CONNECTED	ANALOG	INPUT
	21	TOWER TELESCOPE PROXIMITY (800A ONLY)/DRIVE ORIENTATION SWITCH	DIGITAL	INPUT
	22	TOWER LIFT PROXIMITY (800A ONLY)	DIGITAL	INPUT
	23	GROUND FUNCTION ENABLE AVAILABLE	DIGITAL	INPUT
	24	CAN1 LOW	SERIAL	I/0
	25	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	26	+5 VOLTS	VOLTAGE	OUTPUT
	27	+5 VOLTS	VOLTAGE	OUTPUT
	28	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	29	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	30	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	31	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	32	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	33	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	34	BATTERY VOLTAGE (PROPULSION MODULE)	VBAT	OUTPUT
	35	BOOM ANGLE PROXIMITY SWITCH (800S ONLY)/DRIVE ORIENTATION SWITCH	DIGITAL	INPUT

Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J12 (Black)	1	NOT CONNECTED	FREQUENCY	INPUT
	2	NOT CONNECTED	FREQUENCY	INPUT
	3	CAN2 HIGH (TELEMATICS)	SERIAL	I/0
	4	CAN2 LOW (TELEMATICS)	SERIAL	I/0
	5	CAN2 SHIELD (TELEMATICS)	GROUND	INPUT
	6	CAN2 TERMINATOR	TERM	I/0
	7	CAN2 TERMINATOR	TERM	I/0
	8	MSSO	DIGITAL	INPUT

1001103667 Y

Figure 6-14. Ground Control Module - Sheet 2 of 3

Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J8 (Black)	1	MODULE GROUND	GROUND	OUTPUT
	2	MODULE POWER	VBAT	INPUT
	3	GROUND TO PLATFORM MODULE	GROUND	INPUT
	4	POWER TO PLATFORM MODULE	VBAT	OUTPUT

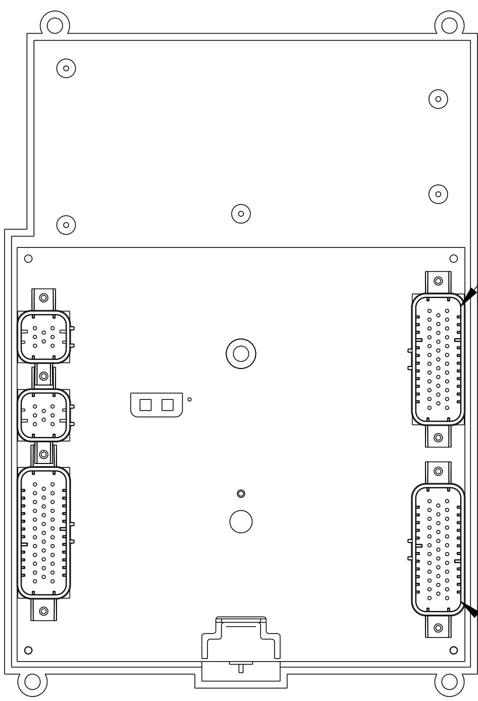


Connector	Pin	Function	Type	
J4 (Blue)	1	CRIBBING ENGAGED INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	2	500 LB CAPACITY LAMP	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	3	GLOWPLUG INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	4	ENGINE START	DIGITAL	INPUT
	5	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN	DIGITAL	INPUT
	6	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	7	MAIN TELESCOPE IN	DIGITAL	INPUT
	8	JIB DOWN	DIGITAL	INPUT
	9	JIB LEFT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	10	TOWER LIFT UP	DIGITAL	INPUT
	11	TOWER TELESCOPE IN	DIGITAL	INPUT
	12	HOURMETER	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	13	RETURN FILTER BY-PASS LAMP	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	14	PLATFORM OVERLOADED INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	15	BOOM MALFUNCTION INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	16	AUXILIARY POWER / FUNCTION ENABLE	DIGITAL	INPUT
	17	PLATFORM LEVEL UP	DIGITAL	INPUT
	18	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	19	JIB UP	DIGITAL	INPUT
	20	JIB RIGHT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	21	TOWER LIFT DOWN	DIGITAL	INPUT
	22	TOWER TELESCOPE OUT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	23	MAIN LIFT UP	DIGITAL	INPUT
	24	BATTERY VOLTAGE	VBAT	OUTPUT
	25	BATTERY VOLTAGE - (GROUND ENABLE PRESENT)	VBAT	OUTPUT
	26	BATTERY LOW / NOT CHARGING INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	27	CHARGE PUMP FILTER BY-PASS LAMP	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	28	ENGINE HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	29	ENGINE LOW OIL PRESSURE INDICATOR	DIGITAL	OUTPUT
	30	MAIN TELESCOPE OUT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	31	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	32	GROUND	GROUND	INPUT
	33	MAIN LIFT DOWN	DIGITAL	INPUT
	34	SWING LEFT	DIGITAL	INPUT
	35	SWING RIGHT	DIGITAL	INPUT

1001103667 Y

Figure 6-15. Ground Control Module - Sheet 3 of 3

CONNECTOR	PIN	ASSIGNMENT	FUNCTION
J1 NATURAL	1	TOWER LIFT UP	DIGITAL INPUT
	2	TOWER LIFT DOWN	DIGITAL INPUT
	3	TOWER TELESCOPE IN	DIGITAL INPUT
	4	TOWER TELESCOPE OUT	DIGITAL INPUT
	5	MAIN TELESCOPE IN	DIGITAL INPUT
	6	MAIN TELESCOPE OUT	DIGITAL INPUT
	7	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT	DIGITAL INPUT
	8	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT	DIGITAL INPUT
	9	PLATFORM LEVEL UP	DIGITAL INPUT
	10	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN	DIGITAL INPUT
	11	JIB UP	DIGITAL INPUT
	12	JIB DOWN	DIGITAL INPUT
	13	SPEED PUMP POTENTIOMETER GROUND	GROUND
	14	ENGINE START	DIGITAL INPUT
	15	AUXILIARY POWER	DIGITAL INPUT
	16	CRAB STEER SELECT	DIGITAL INPUT
	17	COORDINATED STEER SELECT	DIGITAL INPUT
	18	SWITCH POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	19	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	20	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	21	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	22	DRIVE ORIENTATION SYSTEM FEATURE ENABLE	DIGITAL INPUT
	23	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	24	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	25	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	26	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	27	TWO SPEED VALVE (HIGH ENGINE)	DIGITAL INPUT
	28	TORQUE MODE	DIGITAL INPUT
	29	SOFT TOUCH OVERRIDE	DIGITAL INPUT
	30	HEAD/TAIL LIGHT	DIGITAL INPUT
	31	HORN	DIGITAL INPUT
	32	CREEP MODE	DIGITAL INPUT
	33	DUAL-FUEL SELECT	DIGITAL INPUT
	34	SPEED PUMP POTENTIOMETER REFERENCE VOLTAGE	+7 REFERENCE VOLTAGE
	35	SPEED PUMP POTENTIOMETER	DIGITAL INPUT



CONNECTOR	PIN	ASSIGNMENT	FUNCTION
J2 GRAY	1	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	2	UNALLOCATED	DIGITAL INPUT
	3	BATTERY VOLTAGE	HS DIGITAL INPUT
	4	DRIVE ORIENTATION SYSTEM OVERRIDE SWITCH	HS DIGITAL INPUT
	5	UNALLOCATED	LAMP OUTPUT
	6	CHASSIS TILTED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	7	FUNCTION ENABLE INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	8	VEHICLE SYSTEM DISTRESS INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	9	CREEP SPEED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	10	BROKEN CABLE INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	11	PLATFORM OVERLOADED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	12	500 LB CAPACITY INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	13	1000 LB CAPACITY INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	14	DRIVE ORIENTATION SYSTEM INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	15	GENERATOR ON INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	16	SOFT TOUCH TRIGGERED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	17	GLOW PLUG ENGAGED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	18	LAMP RETURN	GROUND
	19	DRIVE DISABLED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	20	UPRIGHT TILTED INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	21	LOW FUEL INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	22	1/4 FUEL LEVEL INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	23	3/4 FUEL LEVEL INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	24	1/2 FUEL LEVEL INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT
	25	FUEL LEVEL INDICATORS RETURN	GROUND
	26	ANALYZER POWER	ANALYZER POWER
	27	ANALYZER GROUND	ANALYZER GROUND
	28	ANALYZER RX	ANALYZER RX
	29	ANALYZER TX	ANALYZER TX
	30	BATTERY VOLTAGE	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	31	BATTERY VOLTAGE	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	32	BATTERY VOLTAGE	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	33	BATTERY VOLTAGE	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	34	SWITCH POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	35	FULL FUEL LEVEL INDICATOR	LAMP OUTPUT

1001106938 C

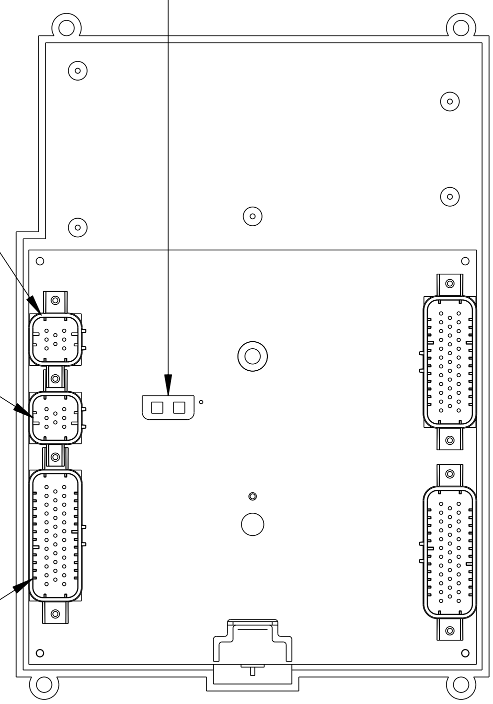
Figure 6-16. Platform Control Module - Sheet 1 of 2

CONNECTOR	PIN	ASSIGNMENT	FUNCTION
J8	1	MODULE GROUND	GROUND
	2	MODULE POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE

CONNECTOR	PIN	ASSIGNMENT	FUNCTION
J5 NATURAL	1	LIFT / SWING JOYSTICK SUPPLY VOLTAGE	SUPPLY VOLTAGE
	2	LIFT CENTER TAP	INPUT
	3	LIFT SIGNAL	INPUT
	4	SWING SIGNAL	INPUT
	5	SWING CENTER TAP	INPUT
	6	NOT CONNECTED	INPUT
	7	LIFT / SWING JOYSTICK RETURN	GROUND
	8	GROUND RETURN	GROUND

CONNECTOR	PIN	ASSIGNMENT	FUNCTION
J6 BLACK	1	DRIVE / STEER JOYSTICK SUPPLY VOLTAGE	SUPPLY VOLTAGE
	2	DRIVE CENTER TAP	INPUT
	3	DRIVE SIGNAL	INPUT
	4	STEER SIGNAL	INPUT
	5	STEER LEFT	INPUT
	6	STEER RIGHT	INPUT
	7	DRIVE / STEER JOYSTICK RETURN	GROUND
	8	GROUND RETURN	GROUND

CONNECTOR	PIN	ASSIGNMENT	FUNCTION
J7 BLACK	1	GROUND MODE	GROUND MODE
	2	PLATFORM EMS	PLATFORM EMS
	3	PLATFORM EMS TO GROUND MODULE	PLATFORM MODE
	4	FOOTSWITCH (FUNCTION ENABLE SWITCH) POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	5	GENERATOR SWITCH POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	6	JIB BLOCK LIMIT SWITCH POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	7	SOFT TOUCH LIMIT SWITCH POWER	BATTERY VOLTAGE
	8	FOOTSWITCH SIGNAL	DIGITAL INPUT
	9	GENERATOR ON SIGNAL	DIGITAL INPUT
	10	+7 REFERENCE VOLTAGE	+7 REFERENCE VOLTAGE
	11	LOAD CELL INPUT 1	ANALOG INPUT
	12	LOAD CELL INPUT 2	ANALOG INPUT
	13	UNALLOCATED	ANALOG INPUT
	14	GROUND RETURN	GROUND
	15	LOAD CELL REFERENCE VOLTAGE	+7 REFERENCE VOLTAGE
	16	LOAD CELL RETURN	GROUND
	17	JIB BLOCK LIMIT SWITCH	HS DIGITAL INPUT
	18	SOFT TOUCH LIMIT SWITCH	HS DIGITAL INPUT
	19	PLATFORM ALARM	LAMP OUTPUT
	20	ALARM RETURN	GROUND
	21	PLATFORM LEVEL UP	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	22	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	23	GROUND RETURN	GROUND
	24	GROUND RETURN	GROUND
	25	JIB UP	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	26	JIB DOWN	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	27	UNALLOCATED	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	28	UNALLOCATED	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	29	GROUND RETURN	GROUND
	30	CAN LOW	CAN LOW
	31	CAN HIGH	CAN HIGH
	32	CAN SHIELD	CAN SHIELD
	33	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	34	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT	ME DIGITAL OUTPUT
	35	GROUND RETURN	GROUND



1001106938 C

Figure 6-17. Platform Control Module - Sheet 2 of 2

Analyzer Diagnostics Menu Structure

In the following structure descriptions, an intended item is selected by pressing **ENTER** ; pressing **ESC** steps back to the next outer level. The **LEFT** /**RIGHT** arrow keys move between items in the same level. The **UP** or **DOWN** arrow keys alter a value if allowed.

Table 6-11. ADJUSTMENTS - Personality Descriptions

DRIVE	
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts drive acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts drive deceleration
MIN FORWARD	Displays/adjusts minimum forward drive speed
MAX FORWARD	Displays/adjusts maximum forward drive speed
MIN REVERSE	Displays/adjusts minimum reverse drive speed
MAX REVERSE	Displays/adjusts maximum reverse drive speed
ELEVATED MAX	Displays/adjusts maximum drive speed NOTE: used when elevation cutout switches are limiting maximum speed
CREEP MAX	Displays/adjusts maximum drive speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
STEER MAX	Displays/adjusts the maximum steer speed
LIFT	
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts main lift acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts main lift deceleration
MIN UP	Displays/adjusts minimum main lift up speed
MAX UP	Displays/adjusts maximum main lift up speed
CREEP UP	Displays/adjusts maximum main lift up speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
MIN DOWN	Displays/adjusts minimum main lift down speed
MAX DOWN	Displays/adjusts maximum main lift down speed
CREEP DOWN	Displays/adjusts maximum main lift down speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
SWING	
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts swing acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts swing deceleration
MIN LEFT	Displays/adjusts minimum swing left speed
MAX LEFT	Displays/adjusts maximum swing left speed

Table 6-11. ADJUSTMENTS - Personality Descriptions

CREEP LEFT	Displays/adjusts maximum swing left speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
MIN RIGHT	Displays/adjusts minimum swing right speed
MAX RIGHT	Displays/adjusts maximum swing right speed
CREEP RIGHT	Displays/adjusts maximum swing right speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
main TELESCOPE	
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts telescope acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts telescope deceleration
MIN IN	Displays/adjusts minimum telescope in speed
MAX IN	Displays/adjusts maximum telescope in speed
MIN OUT	Displays/adjusts minimum telescope out speed
MAX OUT	Displays/adjusts maximum telescope out speed
BASKET LEVEL	
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts basket level acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts basket level deceleration
MIN UP	Displays/adjusts minimum basket level up speed
MAX UP	Displays/adjusts maximum basket level up speed
MIN DOWN	Displays/adjusts minimum basket level down speed
MAX DOWN	Displays/adjusts maximum basket level down speed
BASKET ROTATE	
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts basket rotate acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts basket rotate deceleration
MIN LEFT	Displays/adjusts minimum basket rotate left speed
MAX LEFT	Displays/adjusts maximum basket rotate left speed
MIN RIGHT	Displays/adjusts minimum basket rotate right speed
MAX RIGHT	Displays/adjusts maximum basket rotate right speed
JIB LIFT	Not displayed if JIB = NO
ACCEL	Displays/adjusts jib acceleration
DECEL	Displays/adjusts jib deceleration
MIN UP	Displays/adjusts minimum jib up speed
MAX UP	Displays/adjusts maximum jib up speed
MIN DOWN	Displays/adjusts minimum jib down speed

Table 6-11. ADJUSTMENTS - Personality Descriptions

MAX DOWN	Displays/adjusts maximum jib down speed
MIN LEFT	Displays/adjusts minimum jib left speed
MAX LEFT	Displays/adjusts maximum jib left speed
MIN RIGHT	Displays/adjusts minimum jib right speed
MAX RIGHT	Displays/adjusts maximum jib right speed
STEER	
MAX SPEED	Displays/adjusts maximum steer speed, which applies when vehicle speed is at minimum
GROUND MODE	
LIFT UP	Displays/adjusts fixed lift up speed
LIFT DOWN	Displays/adjusts fixed lift down speed
SWING	Displays/adjusts fixed swing speed
TELE	Displays/adjusts fixed telescope speed
BASKETLEVEL	Displays/adjusts fixed basket level speed
BASKETROTATE	Displays/adjusts fixed basket rotate speed
JIB (U/D)	Displays/adjusts jib lift speed Not displayed if JIB = NO
JIB (L/R)	Displays/adjusts jib swing speed Not displayed if JIB = NO

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
001	00	1	EVERYTHING OK	The normal help message in Platform Mode.	No response required for this DTC.
002	00	2	GROUND MODE OK	The normal help message in Platform Mode.	No response required for this DTC.
0010	00	10	RUNNING AT CUTBACK - OUT OF TRANSPORT POSITION	Drive speed is limited to "ELEVATED MAX" while the vehicle is out of transport position.The normal help message in Ground Mode.	Response described in Drive Modes section.
000	**00**	**0**	**<<< HELP COMMENT >>>**		
0011	00	11	FSW OPEN (Foot switch open)	A drive / boom function was selected with the Footswitch open.	The UGM shall not Enable the Machine.
0012	00	12	RUNNING AT CREEP - CREEP SWITCH OPEN	All functions at creep while the Creep Switch is open.	The UGM shall limit the machine to Creep speed.
0013	00	13	RUNNING AT CREEP - TILTED AND ABOVE ELEVATION	All functions at creep while the Platform is elevated and the Chassis is tilted.	
0014	00	14	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR OUT OF RANGE	The Chassis is tilted > 19 degrees for more then 4 seconds.	Not reported during power-up.
0015	00	15	LOAD SENSOR READING UNDER WEIGHT	The Load Sensing System indicates > 20% under calibrated zero point.	
0031	00	31	FUEL LEVEL LOW - ENGINE SHUTDOWN	Engine Shutdown has occurred due to Fuel Level = EMPTY condition.	Response described in Fuel Shutdown section.
0035	00	35	APU ACTIVE	Auxiliary Power/Emergency Descent Mode is active.	Response described in Auxiliary Power/Emergency Descent Mode section.
0039	00	39	SKYGUARD ACTIVE - FUNCTIONS CUTOUT	Response described in Auxiliary Power/ Emergency Descent Mode section.	Response described in Sky-Guard section.
0040	00	40	RUNNING AT CREEP - CREEP SWITCH CLOSED	All Function speeds are limited to creep because the creep switch is closed.	
210	**21**	**0**	**<<< POWER-UP >>>**		
211	21	1	POWER CYCLE	The normal help message is issued at each power cycle.	
212	21	2	KEYSWITCH FAULTY	Both Platform and Ground modes are selected simultaneously.	The UGM shall assume a station selection of Ground.
213	21	3	FSW FAULTY	Both Footswitches are closed for more then one second.	The UGM shall not Enable the Machine.
220	**22**	**0**	**<<< PLATFORM CONTROLS >>>**		
227	22	7	STEER SWITCHES FAULTY	Both Steer Left and Steer Right inputs are closed simultaneously.	The UGM shall prohibit Steer; The UGM shall limit Drive to Creep The Steer Left switch input = Low; The Steer Right switch input = Low; Steer and full Drive speed permitted after controls are initialized
2211	22	11	FSW INTERLOCK TRIPPED	The Footswitch was closed for more then seven seconds.	Can be reported during power- up.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
2212	22	12	DRIVE LOCKED - JOYSTICK MOVED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	A drive function was selected with Foot-switch open.	Can be reported during power- up.
2213	22	13	STEER LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	A steer function was selected with Foot-switch open.	The UGM shall not Enable the Machine.
2214	22	14	DRIVE/STEER LOCKED - JOYSTICK MOVED BEFORE ENABLE	Drive/Steer was selected before Enable switch activated.	
2216	22	16	D/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE HIGH	The D/S Joystick reference voltage is > 8.1V.	Resistive joysticks. If the reference voltage is > 7.7V then the reference voltage is out of tolerance of a short to battery has occurred.
2217	22	17	D/S JOY. CENTER TAP BAD	The D/S Joystick center tap voltage is < 3.08V or > 3.83V.	Resistive joysticks. - There is a +/-.1V range. around these values due to resistor tolerances.
2219	22	19	L/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE HIGH	The L/S Joystick reference voltage is > 8.1V.	Resistive joysticks. - If the reference voltage is > 7.7V then the reference voltage is out of tolerance of a short to battery has occurred.
2220	22	20	L/S JOY. CENTER TAP BAD	The L/S Joystick center tap voltage is < 3.08V or > 3.83V.	Resistive joysticks. - There is a +/- .1V range. around these values due to resistor tolerances.
2221	22	21	LIFT/SWING LOCKED - JOYSTICK MOVED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	A lift / swing function was selected with Footswitch open.	If triggered by the Lift and/or Swing joystick not being in the neutral position at Startup, the UGM shall pro-hibit Lift and Swing. If triggered by Lift and/or Swing joystick is not in the neutral position when Foot-switch becomes active or while DTC 2212, 2213 or 2223 is active, the UGM shall not Enable the Machine.
2222	22	22	WAITING FOR FSW TO BE OPEN	The Footswitch was closed during Platform selection.	Can be reported during power- up.
2223	22	23	FUNCTION SWITCHES LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE ENABLE	A boom function was selected with Foot-switch open.	The UGM shall not Enable the Machine.
2224	22	24	FOOTSWITCH SELECTED BEFORE START	The Footswitch was closed during engine start.	The UGM shall prohibit Engine Start.
2269	22	69	FUNCTION PROBLEM - HIGH SPEED & CREEP ACTIVE TOGETHER		

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
234	23	4	FUNCTION SWITCHES FAULTY - CHECK DIAGNOSTICS/BOOM	A boom function has both directions selected together.	Disable whichever boom functions whose boom control inputs are triggering the fault. If Engine Start/Aux at fault, disable Engine Start but permit Auxiliary Power/ Emergency Descent.
235	23	5	FUNCTION SWITCHES LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE AUX POWER	A boom function was selected before aux power.	
236	23	6	FUNCTION SWITCHES LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE START SWITCH	A boom function was selected before engine start.	
237	23	7	START SWITCH LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE KEYSWITCH	The Start Switch was closed during power-up.	The UGM shall prohibit Engine Start.
23163	23	163	FUNCTION PROBLEM - MSSO PERMANENTLY SELECTED	The MSSO switch input = Low at Startup.	No response required for this DTC Power Cycled.
240	**24**	**0**	**<<< OTHER CONTROLS >>>**		
241	24	1	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OUT OF RANGE LOW	MACHINE SETUP > TEMP CUTOUT = YES; Ambient Temperature sensor reading - 50C.	The UGM shall set Low Temperature Cutout state = Faulty If the Machine is in Platform Mode and if the Boom is Above Elevation; The UGM shall suspend motion; If the Machine is in Ground Mode; No response required for this DTC.
242	24	2	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OUT OF RANGE HIGH	Ambient Temperature sensor reading ≥ 85C.	Check Ambient Temperature sensor reading < 85C.
250	**25**	**0**	**<<< FUNCTION PREVENTED >>>**		
259	25	9	MODEL CHANGED - HYDRAULICS SUSPENDED - CYCLE EMS	The model selection has been changed.	Disable all machine and engine functions (i.e., command engine shutdown and do not permit start).
2513	25	13	GENERATOR MOTION CUTOUT ACTIVE	Driving is not possible while the vehicle generator is running AND is configured to prevent drive.	The UGM shall not Enable the Machine.
2514	25	14	BOOM PREVENTED - DRIVE SELECTED	Boom functions are not possible while the vehicle is being driven AND is configured to not allow simultaneous drive & boom operation.	The UGM shall prohibit all boom functions.
2516	25	16	DRIVE PREVENTED - ABOVE ELEVATION	Driving is not possible while Boom functions are selected AND is configured to not allow simultaneous drive & boom operation.	The UGM shall prohibit Drive and Steer.
2517	25	17	DRIVE PREVENTED - TILTED & ABOVE ELEVATION	Driving is not possible while the vehicle is tilted and above elevation AND is configured to prevent drive while tilted and above elevation.	The UGM shall prohibit Drive and Steer.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
2518	25	18	DRIVE PREVENTED - BOOM SELECTED	MACHINE SETUP > FUNCTION CUTOUT = BOOM CUTOUT The boom is Above Elevation Any boom function is already active The operator attempts to activate Drive or Steer.	The UGM shall prohibit Drive and Steer.
2519	25	19	DRIVE PREVENTED - TILTED & EXTENDED OR HIGH ANGLE	Drive Selected while tilted and extended and tilt is configured to cutout drive.	
2520	25	20	FUNCTIONS LOCKED OUT - CONSTANT DATA VERSION IMPROPER		
2530	25	30	UMS SENSOR FORWARD LIMIT REACHED	The Upright angle relative to the turntable is less than -4.0 degree.	
2531	25	31	UMS SENSOR OUT OF USABLE RANGE	Both the turntable tilt sensor and the UMS sensor read greater then +/-10 degree in the same direction.	
2532	25	32	UMS SENSOR BACKWARD LIMIT REACHED	The Upright angle relative to the turntable is greater than +2.5 degree.	
2563	25	63	SKYGUARD SWITCH - DISAGREEMENT	MACHINE SETUP > SKYGUARD = YES; Machine is in Platform Mode; [(SkyGuard input #1 Platform Module J7-18) ≠ (SkyGuard input #2 Platform Module J1-23)] > 160ms	Response detailed in Sky-Guard section.
2568	25	68	TEMPERATURE CUTOUT ACTIVE - AMBIENT TEMPERATURE TOO LOW	Low Temperature Cutout = Active	If the Boom is Above Elevation; The UGM shall suspend motion; The UGM shall limit the machine to Creep speed after controls initialized If the Machine is in Platform Mode and if the Boom is not Above Elevation.
2576	25	76	PLATFORM LEVEL PREVENTED - ABOVE ELEVATION	Platform Level Override Cutout = Enabled; The Platform Level Up or Down switch input = High; Footswitch is active.	The UGM shall suspend Platform Level Up and Down commands; The UGM shall prohibit Platform Level Up and Down
2577	25	77	DRIVE PREVENTED - START BATTERY CONNECTED	Start battery is connected	Check the battery.
330	**33**	**0**	**<<< GROUND OUTPUT DRIVER >>>**		
331	33	1	BRAKE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Brake Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
332	33	2	BRAKE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Brake Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3311	33	11	GROUND ALARM - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Ground Alarm.	Ground Alarm equipped vehicles only.
3336	33	36	ALTERNATOR POWER - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Alternator/ECM.	Check Harness for damage.
3340	33	40	AUX POWER - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Auxiliary Power Pump Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3341	33	41	AUX POWER - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Auxiliary Power Pump Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3342	33	42	AUX POWER - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Auxiliary Power Pump Relay.	Check Harness for damage.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
3346	33	46	ELECTRIC FAN - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to ground to the Electric Fan.	Check Harness for damage.
3347	33	47	ELECTRIC FAN - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Electric Fan.	Check Harness for damage.
3348	33	48	ELECTRIC FAN - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Electric Pump.	Check Harness for damage.
3349	33	49	ELECTRIC PUMP - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Pump Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3350	33	50	ELECTRIC PUMP - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Pump Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3351	33	51	ELECTRIC PUMP - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Pump Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3352	33	52	LP LOCK - SHORT TO GROUND	There is an Open Circuit to the LP Lock.	Check Harness for damage.
3353	33	53	LP LOCK - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the LP Lock.	Check Harness for damage.
3354	33	54	LP LOCK - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the LP Lock.	Check Harness for damage.
3355	33	55	LP START ASSIST - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to ground to the LP Start Assist.	Check Harness for damage.
3356	33	56	LP START ASSIST - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the LP Start Assist.	Check Harness for damage.
3357	33	57	LP START ASSIST - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to battery to the LP Start Assist.	Check Harness for damage.
3358	33	58	MAIN DUMP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Main Dump Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3359	33	59	MAIN DUMP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Main Dump Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3360	33	60	MAIN DUMP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Main Dump Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3361	33	61	BRAKE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Brake Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3362	33	62	START SOLENOID - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Start Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3363	33	63	START SOLENOID - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Start Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3364	33	64	START SOLENOID - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Start Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3365	33	65	STEER DUMP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Steer Dump Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3366	33	66	STEER DUMP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Steer Dump Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3367	33	67	STEER DUMP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Steer Dump Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3368	33	68	TWO SPEED VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Two Speed Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3369	33	69	TWO SPEED VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Two Speed Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3370	33	70	TWO SPEED VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Two Speed Valve.	Check Harness for damage.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
3371	33	71	GROUND ALARM - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Ground Alarm.	Check Harness for damage.
3372	33	72	GROUND ALARM - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Ground Alarm.	Check Harness for damage.
3373	33	73	GEN SET/WELDER - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Generator Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3374	33	74	GEN SET/WELDER - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Generator Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3375	33	75	GEN SET/WELDER - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Generator Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3376	33	76	HEAD TAIL LIGHT - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Head Light Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3377	33	77	HEAD TAIL LIGHT - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Head Light Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3378	33	78	HEAD TAIL LIGHT - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Head Light Relay.	Check Harness for damage.
3379	33	79	HOUR METER - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Hour Meter.	Check Harness for damage.
3382	33	82	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Platform Level Up Valve	Check Harness for damage.
3383	33	83	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Level Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3384	33	84	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Platform Level Up Valve	Check Harness for damage.
3388	33	88	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Platform Level Down Valve	Check Harness for damage.
3389	33	89	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Level Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3390	33	90	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Platform Level Down Valve	Check Harness for damage.
3394	33	94	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Platform Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3395	33	95	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3396	33	96	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Platform Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3397	33	97	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Platform Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3398	33	98	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3399	33	99	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Platform Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33100	33	100	JIB LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33101	33	101	JIB LIFT UP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33102	33	102	JIB LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
33103	33	103	JIB LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33104	33	104	JIB LIFT DOWN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33105	33	105	JIB LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33106	33	106	TOWER LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Tower Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33107	33	107	TOWER LIFT UP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Tower Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33108	33	108	TOWER LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Tower Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33109	33	109	TOWER LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Tower Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33110	33	110	TOWER LIFT DOWN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Tower Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33111	33	111	TOWER LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Tower Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33112	33	112	TOWER TELESCOPE IN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Tower Telescope In Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33113	33	113	TOWER TELESCOPE IN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Tower Tele-scope In Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33114	33	114	TOWER TELESCOPE IN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Tower Telescope In Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33115	33	115	TOWER TELESCOPE OUT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Tower Telescope Out Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33116	33	116	TOWER TELESCOPE OUT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Tower Tele-scope Out Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33117	33	117	TOWER TELESCOPE OUT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Tower Telescope Out Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33118	33	118	SWING RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Swing Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33119	33	119	SWING RIGHT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Swing Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33120	33	120	TELESCOPE IN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Main Tele-scope In Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33121	33	121	SWING RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Swing Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33122	33	122	SWING LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Swing Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33123	33	123	TELESCOPE OUT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Main Tele-scope Out Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33130	33	130	THROTTLE ACTUATOR - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Throttle Actuator.	Check Harness for damage.
33131	33	131	THROTTLE ACTUATOR - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Throttle Actuator.	Check Harness for damage.
33132	33	132	THROTTLE ACTUATOR - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Throttle Actuator.	Check Harness for damage.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
33170	33	170	LIFT DOWN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is a Short to Ground to the Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33171	33	171	LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is an Open Circuit to the Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33172	33	172	LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Battery to the Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33175	33	175	JIB ROTATE LEFT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33176	33	176	JIB ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33177	33	177	JIB ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33178	33	178	JIB ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33179	33	179	JIB ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33180	33	180	JIB ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33182	33	182	LIFT VALVES - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Lift Valves.	Check Harness for damage.
33186	33	186	TELESCOPE OUT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Main Telescope Out Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33188	33	188	TELESCOPE OUT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Main Telescope Out Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33189	33	189	TELESCOPE IN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Main Telescope In Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33190	33	190	TELESCOPE IN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Main Telescope In Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33207	33	207	HORN - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Horn.	Check Harness for damage.
33208	33	208	HORN - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Horn.	Check Harness for damage.
33209	33	209	HORN - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Horn.	Check Harness for damage.
33279	33	279	GLOWPLUG - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Glow Plugs.	Check Harness for damage.
33280	33	280	GLOWPLUG - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Glow Plugs.	Check Harness for damage.
33281	33	281	GLOWPLUG - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Glow Plugs.	Check Harness for damage.
33287	33	287	LIFT - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING TOO LOW	The Engine State = ENGINE RUNNING; The UGM commanded current > 250mA; The difference between the commanded current and the measured feedback current > [the larger of (125mA) or (15% of the commanded function Max)] for longer than 1 second	The UGM shall suspend Lift Up and Down command and revert to Open Loop Current control for Lift; The UGM shall limit Lift Up and Down to Creep speed after controls initialized
33295	33	295	SWING LEFT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Swing Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
33306	33	306	SWING LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is short to Battery to the Swing Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33314	33	314	FLOW CONTROL VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Flow Control Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33315	33	315	FLOW CONTROL VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is short to Battery to the Flow Control Valve	Check Harness for damage.
33316	33	316	FLOW CONTROL VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is short to Ground to the Flow Control Valve	Check Harness for damage.
33317	33	317	DRIVE FORWARD VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Drive Forward Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33318	33	318	DRIVE FORWARD VALVE - SHORT TO BATTER	There is short to Battery to the Drive Forward Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33319	33	319	DRIVE FORWARD VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is short to Gropund to the Drive Forward Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33320	33	320	DRIVE REVERSE VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Drive Reverse Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33321	33	321	DRIVE REVERSE VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Drive Reverse Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33322	33	322	DRIVE REVERSE VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Drive Reverse Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33323	33	323	LIFT UP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33324	33	324	LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33325	33	325	LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33331	33	331	DRIVE - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING TOO LOW	The Engine State = ENGINE RUNNING; The UGM commanded current > 250mA; The difference between the commanded current and the measured feedback current > [the larger of (125mA) or (15% of the commanded function Max)] for longer than 1 second	The UGM shall suspend Drive Forward and Reverse command and revert to Open Current loop control for Drive; The UGM shall limit Drive Forward and Reverse to Creep speed after controls initialized
33410	33	410	DRIVE - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING LOST	Measured feedback current < 225mA while PWM output > 40% for a period of 100ms.	The UGM shall suspend Drive Forward and Reverse command and revert to Open Current loop control for Drive; The UGM shall limit Drive Forward and Reverse to Creep speed after controls initialized
33412	33	412	SWING VALVES - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Swing Valves.	Check Harness for damage.
33414	33	414	SWING - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING TOO LOW	Current feedback into controller is below threshold value.	Check wiring and coil.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
33415	33	415	FLOW CONTROL VALVE - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING TOO LOW	The Engine State = ENGINE RUNNING; The UGM commanded current > 250mA; The difference between the commanded current and the measured feedback current > [the larger of (125mA) or (15% of the commanded function Max)] for longer than 1 second .	The UGM shall suspend Flow Control and revert to Open Current loop control for Flow Control.
33417	33	417	LIFT - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING LOST	Measured feedback current < 225mA while PWM output > 40% for a period of 100ms.	The UGM shall suspend Lift Up and Down command and revert to Open Loop Current control for Lift; The UGM shall limit Lift Up and Down to Creep speed after controls initialized.
33418	33	418	SWING - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING LOST	Current feedback into controller not detected.	Check wiring and coil.
33419	33	419	FLOW CONTROL VALVE - CURRENT FEEDBACK READING LOST	Measured feedback current < 225mA while PWM output >40% for a period of 100ms.	The UGM shall suspend Flow Control and revert to Open Current loop control for Flow Control.
33488	33	488	SWING FLOW CONTROL VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to the Ground to the Swing Flow Control Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
33575	33	575	ECM PULL DOWN RESISTOR - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the ECM Pull Down Resistor.	Check Harness for damage.
340	**34**	**0**	**<<< PLATFORM OUTPUT DRIVER >>>**		
341	34	1	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Level Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
342	34	2	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the Platform Level Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
343	34	3	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the Platform Level Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
344	34	4	PLATFORM LEVEL UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY OR OPEN CIRCUIT	There is a Short to Battery or an Open Circuit to the Platform Level Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
345	34	5	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Level Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
346	34	6	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Platform Level Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
347	34	7	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to the Ground to the Platform Level Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
348	34	8	PLATFORM LEVEL DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY OR OPEN CIRCUIT	There is a Short to Battery or an Open Circuit to the Platform Level Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
349	34	9	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3410	34	10	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Platform Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3411	34	11	PLATFORM ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Platform Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3412	34	12	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the Platform Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
3413	34	13	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Platform Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3414	34	14	PLATFORM ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Platform Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3415	34	15	JIB LIFT UP VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3416	34	16	JIB LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3417	34	17	JIB LIFT UP VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the JIB Lift Up Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3418	34	18	JIB LIFT DOWN VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3419	34	19	JIB LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3420	34	20	JIB LIFT DOWN VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Lift Down Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3421	34	21	JIB ROTATE LEFT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3422	34	22	JIB ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3423	34	23	JIB ROTATE LEFT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Rotate Left Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3424	34	24	JIB ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an Open Circuit to the JIB Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3425	34	25	JIB ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a Short to Battery to the JIB Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
3426	34	26	JIB ROTATE RIGHT VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a Short to Ground to the JIB Rotate Right Valve.	Check Harness for damage.
430	**43**	**0**	**<<< ENGINE >>>**		
431	43	1	FUEL SENSOR - SHORT TO BATTERY OR OPEN CIRCUIT	The Fuel Sensor reading is > 4.3V.	Energize fuel sensor per System Indicators
432	43	2	FUEL SENSOR - SHORT TO GROUND	The Fuel Sensor reading is < 0.2V.	Energize fuel sensor per System Indicators
433	43	3	OIL PRESSURE - SHORT TO BATTERY	The Oil Pressure Sensor reading is > 6.6V.	Deutz engine only.
434	43	4	OIL PRESSURE - SHORT TO GROUND	The Oil Pressure Sensor reading is < 0.1V for more then 5 seconds.	Deutz engine only. - Not reported during engine start.
435	43	5	COOLANT TEMPERATURE - SHORT TO GROUND	The Coolant Temperature Sensor reading is < 0.1V.	Deutz engine only.
436	43	6	FORD FAULT CODE ##	All ford fault codes except 63 are simply passed through from the Ford ECM. They only occur if a Ford Engine is selected in the machine configuration digits. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
437	43	7	ENGINE TROUBLE CODE	Displays engine SPN FMI code.	Report and log in Help If [(MACHINE SETUP > DEUTZ EMR2) or (MACHINE SETUP > DEUTZ EMR4) and SPN:FMI = 535:7], prohibit engine cranking.
438	43	8	HIGH ENGINE TEMP	(Ford engine only) The engine temperature is > 117 C. (Deutz engine only) The engine temperature is > 130 C.	Ford / Deutz engine only.
439	43	9	AIR FILTER BYPASSED	The Air Filter is clogged.	Check Airfilter for clogging
4310	43	10	NO ALTERNATOR OUTPUT	Battery voltage is < 11.5 volts for more then 15 seconds after engine start.	Activate the No Charge indicator J4-26 per System Indicators.
4311	43	11	LOW OIL PRESSURE	(Ford engine only) The ECM has reported a low oil pressure fault. (Deutz engine only) Oil pressure is < 8 PSI for more then 10 seconds after engine start.	Ford / Deutz engine only.
4312	43	12	485 COMMUNICATIONS LOST	This fault only occurs with a Ford Engine. It occures when no response are received from the ECM for 2.5 seconds. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
4313	43	13	THROTTLE ACTUATOR FAILURE	The engine RPM is > XXX for more then XX seconds.	
4314	43	14	WRONG ENGINE SELECTED - ECM DETECTED	A ECM was detected with a non- ECM type engine selected.	
4322	43	22	LOSS OF ENGINE SPEED SENSOR	The engine RPM sensor indicates 0 RPM AND the Oil Pressure Sensor indicates > 8 PSI for three seconds.	Diesel engine only.
4323	43	23	SPEED SENSOR READING INVALID SPEED	The engine RPM sensor indicates > 4000 RPM.	Diesel engine only.
4331	43	31	SOOT LOAD WARNING - LOW	SPN/FMI 3719 / 16 3703 / 31	Check Engine.
4332	43	32	SOOT LOAD WARNING - HIGH	SPN/FMI 3719 / 0 3714 / 31	Check Engine.
4333	43	33	SOOT LOAD WARNING - SEVERE	SPN/FMI 3715 / 31	Check Engine.
4334	43	34	ENGINE COOLANT - LOW LEVEL	MACHINE SETUP > ENGINE = DEUTZ EMR4; ECM transmits a J1939 DM1 message for an engine coolant low level fault (SPN:FMI 111:1) on CAN2 or uses the J1939 Transport Protocol every one second to send this information if multiple engine faults exist.	MACHINE SETUP > ENGINE SHUTDOWN = ENABLED then shutdown the engine; Activate High Engine Temperature indicator J4-28.
440	**44**	**0**	**<<< BATTERY SUPPLY >>>**		
441	44	1	BATTERY VOLTAGE TOO LOW - SYSTEM SHUTDOWN	Battery voltage is < 9V.	
442	44	2	BATTERY VOLTAGE TOO HIGH - SYSTEM SHUTDOWN	Battery voltage is > 16V.	
445	44	5	BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW	Battery voltage is < 11V for more then 5 seconds.	

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
660	**66**	**0**	**<<<COMMUNICATION>>>**		
662	66	2	CANBUS FAILURE - PLATFORM MODULE	Platform Module CAN communication lost.	
664	66	4	CANBUS FAILURE - ACCESSORY MODULE	The accessory module is not receiving CAN messages. This is probably due to wiring problem.	Check the Wiring.
666	66	6	CANBUS FAILURE - ENGINE CONTROLLER	Engine Control Module CAN	ECM equipped engine only.
6620	66	20	CANBUS FAILURE - UMS SENSOR	communication lost.	
6622	66	22	CANBUS FAILURE - TCU MODULE	Machine Setup/ Telematics=YES, No device heartbeat for 30 sec	
6623	66	23	CANBUS FAILURE - GATEWAY MODULE	Machine Setup/ Telematics=YES, No device heartbeat for 30 sec	
6629	66	29	CANBUS FAILURE - TELEMATICS CANBUS LOADING TOO HIGH		
6657	66	57	CANBUS FAILURE - TEMPERATURE SENSOR	MACHINE SETUP > TEMP CUTOUT = YES; UGM does not receive any CAN messages from the Ambient Temperature sensor in 250ms	The UGM shall set Low Temperature Cutout state = Faulty If the Machine is in Platform Mode and if the Boom is Above Elevation; The UGM shall suspend motion; The UGM shall limit the machine to Creep speed after controls initialized If the Machine is in Platform Mode and if the Boom is not Above Elevation.
671	67	1	ACCESSORY FAULT		
680	**68**	**0**	**<<<TELEMATICS>>>**		
681	68	1	REMOTE CONTRACT MANAGEMENT OVERRIDE - ALL FUNCTIONS IN CREEP		
810	**81**	**0**	**<<<TILT SENSOR>>>**		
813	81	3	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR NOT CALIBRATED	The Chassis Tilt Sensor has not been calibrated.	
815	81	5	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR DISAGREEMENT		
816	81	6	UMS SENSOR NOT CALIBRATED	The Control System detects a sensor out of range condition or a not calibrated fault with UMS angle sensor	
817	81	7	UMS SENSOR FAULT	The system detects that the UMS sensor frequency outside the 100Hz+/- 5Hz range or the duty cycle is outside 50% +/- 21% Range	
820	**82**	**0**	**<<<PLATFORM LOAD SENSE>>>**		
825	82	5	LSS HAS NOT BEEN CALIBRATED	The Load Sensing System Module has not been calibrated.	UGM to set Platform Load State = Overloaded

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
826	82	6	RUNNING AT CREEP - PLATFORM OVERLOADED	All functions at creep, the Load Sensing System indicates the Platform is overloaded AND is configured to warn only while the Platform is overloaded.	
827	82	7	DRIVE & BOOM PREVENTED - PLATFORM OVERLOADED	Driving and boom functions are not possible while the Load Sensing System indicates the Platform is overloaded AND is configured to prevent drive and boom functions while the Platform is overloaded.	
828	82	8	LIFT UP & TELE OUT PREVENTED - PLATFORM OVERLOADED	Lift up and telescope out are not possible while the Load Sensing System indicates the Platform is overloaded AND is configured to prevent Lift up and telescope out while the Platform is overloaded.	
8639	86	39	FRONT LEFT STEER VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an open circuit to the Front Left Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8640	86	40	FRONT LEFT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Front Left Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8641	86	41	FRONT LEFT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Front Left Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8642	86	42	FRONT RIGHT STEER VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an open circuit to the Front Right Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8643	86	43	FRONT RIGHT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Front Right Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8644	86	44	FRONT RIGHT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Front Right Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8645	86	45	REAR LEFT STEER VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an open circuit to the Rear Left Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8646	86	46	REAR LEFT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Rear Left Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8647	86	47	REAR LEFT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Rear Left Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8648	86	48	REAR RIGHT STEER VALVE - OPEN CIRCUIT	There is an open circuit to the Rear Right Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8649	86	49	REAR RIGHT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO BATTERY	There is a short to Battery to the Rear Right Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
8650	86	50	REAR RIGHT STEER VALVE - SHORT TO GROUND	There is a short to Ground to the Rear Right Steer Valve	Check Harness for damage.
871	87	1	RETURN FILTER BYPASSED	Hydraulic Return Filter Clogged	Check Hydraulic Return Filter.
872	87	2	CHARGE PUMP FILTER BYPASSED	Charge Pump Filter Clogged	Check Charge Pump Filter.
873	87	3	MACHINE SAFETY SYSTEM OVERRIDE OCCURRED	MSSO = Active	Response described in MSSO Influence on Machine Operation section.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
998	99	8	EEPROM FAILURE - CHECK ALL SETTINGS	The Ground Module has reported an EEPROM failure.	Disable all machine and engine functions (i.e., command engine shutdown and do not permit start); reset the section of EEPROM where the failure occurred to defaults.
9910	99	10	FUNCTIONS LOCKED OUT - PLATFORM MODULE SOFTWARE VERSION IMPROPER	The Platform Module software version is not compatible with the rest of the system.	Activate the platform alarm continuously Creep mode is active If Platform Mode is active, disable all Drive, Steer, and Boom functions and do not permit Machine Enable.
9914	99	14	PLATFORM MODULE SOFTWARE UPDATE REQUIRED	The Platform Module software requires an update.	
9915	99	15	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR NOT GAIN CALIBRATED	The Chassis Tilt Sensor gain calibration has been lost.	
9916	99	16	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR GAIN OUT OF RANGE	The Chassis Tilt Sensor gain calibration has become corrupted.	
9919	99	19	GROUND SENSOR REF VOLTAGE OUT OF RANGE	The Ground Module has reported that its sensor reference voltage is outside acceptable range.	Not reported during power-up.
9920	99	20	PLATFORM SENSOR REF VOLTAGE OUT OF RANGE	The Platform Module has reported that its sensor reference voltage is outside acceptable range.	Not reported during power-up.
9921	99	21	GROUND MODULE FAILURE - HIGH SIDE DRIVER CUTOUT FAULTY	The Ground Module has reported that its high side driver cutout failed.	
9922	99	22	PLATFORM MODULE FAILURE - HWFS CODE 1	The Platform Module has reported that the V(Low) FET has failed.	
9923	99	23	GROUND MODULE FAILURE - HWFS CODE 1	The Ground Module has reported that the V(Low) FET has failed.	
9924	99	24	FUNCTIONS LOCKED OUT - MACHINE NOT CONFIGURED	The machine is powered up and no model has been selected yet in the MACHINE SETUP menu	Display ??? or NO MODEL at Analyzer MACHINE SETUP menu MACHINE SETUP->MODEL NUMBER Do not report any other faults Disable all machine and engine functions (i.e., command engine shutdown and do not permit start).
9944	99	44	CURRENT FEEDBACK GAINS OUT OF RANGE	The factory set current feedback gains are out of range.	A gain of 1 is used for the factory gain(s) that was out of range; all functions shall be placed in Creep mode.

Table 6-12. Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart

DTC	Flash Code	Sequence	Fault Message	Fault Description	Check
9945	99	45	CURRENT FEEDBACK CALIBRATION CHECKSUM INCORRECT	The factory set current feedback checksum is not correct.	
9979	99	79	FUNCTIONS LOCKED OUT - GROUND MODULE SOFTWARE VERSION IMPROPER	Temporary fault for the telematics project. The model needs to be a 600S or 1350S if not this fault will be generated and Platform controls will be prevented. This fault was to ensure that the software will only work for these two models.	Disable all machine and engine functions (i.e., command engine shutdown and do not permit start).

NOTES:

SECTION 7. BASIC ELECTRICAL INFORMATION & SCHEMATICS

7.1 GENERAL

This section contains basic electrical information and schematics to be used for locating and correcting most of the operating problems which may develop.

NOTE: *Some of the procedures/connectors shown in this section may not be applicable to all models.*

7.2 MULTIMETER BASICS

A wide variety of multimeters or Volt Ohm Meters (VOM) can be used for troubleshooting your equipment. This section shows diagrams of a common, digital VOM configured for several different circuit measurements. Instructions for your VOM may vary. Please consult the meter operator's manual for more information.

Grounding

"Grounding the meter" means to take the black lead (which is connected to the COM (common) or negative port) and touch it to a good path to the negative side of the Voltage source.

Backprobing

To "backprobe" means to take the measurement by accessing a connector's contact on the same side as the wires, the back of the connector. Readings can be done while maintaining circuit continuity this way. If the connector is the sealed type, great care must be taken to avoid damaging the seal around the wire. It is best to use probes or probe tips specifically designed for this technique, especially on sealed connectors. Whenever possible insert probes into the side of the connector such that the test also checks both terminals of the connection. It is possible to inspect a connection within a closed connector by backprobing both sides of a connector terminal and measuring resistance. Do this after giving each wire a gentle pull to ensure the wires are still attached to the contact and contacts are seated in the connector.

Min/Max

Use of the "Min/Max" recording feature of some meters can help when taking measurements of intermittent conditions while alone. For example, you can read the Voltage applied to a solenoid when it is only operational while a switch, far from the solenoid and meter, is held down.

Polarity

Getting a negative Voltage or current reading when expecting a positive reading frequently means the leads are reversed. Check what reading is expected, the location of the signal and that the leads are connected to the device under test correctly. Also check that the lead on the "COM" port goes to the Ground or negative side of the signal and the lead on the other port goes to the positive side of the signal.

Scale

M = Mega = 1,000,000 * (Displayed Number)

k = kilo = 1,000 * (Displayed Number)

m = mili = (Displayed Number) / 1,000

µ = micro = (Displayed Number) / 1,000,000

Example: 1.2 kW = 1200 W
Example: 50 mA = 0.05 A

Voltage Measurement

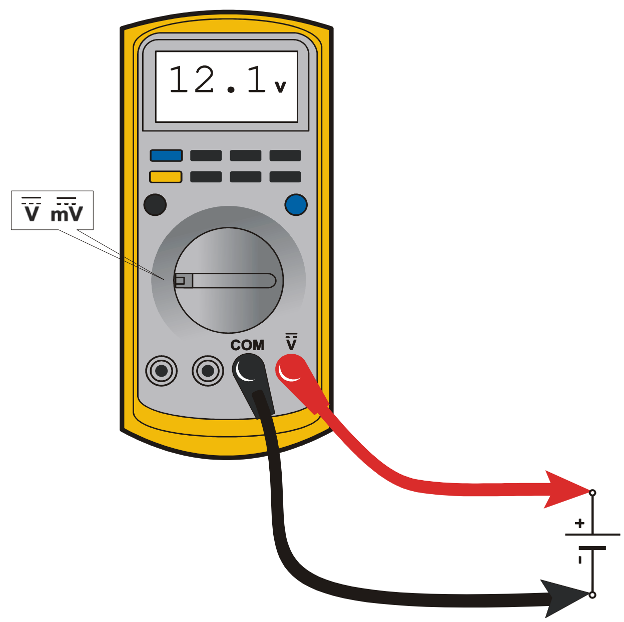


Figure 7-1. Voltage Measurement (DC)

- If meter is not auto ranging, set it to the correct range (See multimeter's operation manual).
- Use firm contact with meter leads.

Resistance Measurement

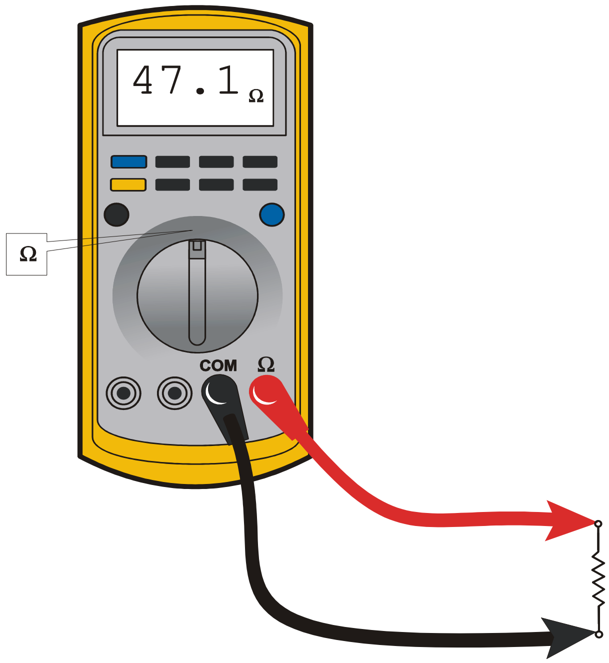


Figure 7-2. Resistance Measurement

- First test meter and leads by touching leads together. Resistance should read a short circuit (very low resistance).
- Circuit power must be turned OFF before testing resistance.
- Disconnect component from circuit before testing.
- If meter is not auto ranging, set it to the correct range (See multimeter's operation manual).
- Use firm contact with meter leads.

Continuity Measurement

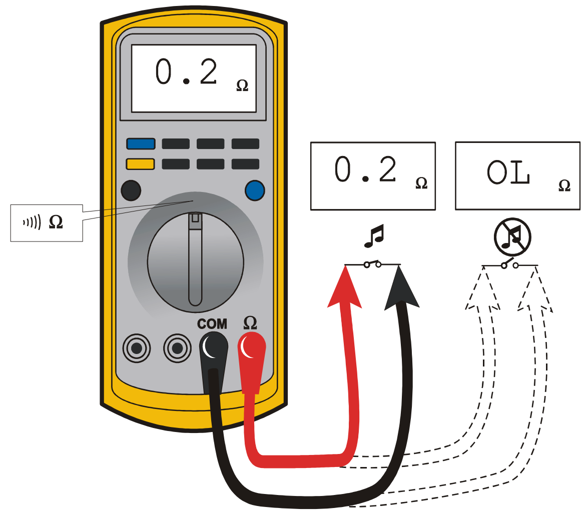


Figure 7-3. Continuity Measurement

- Some meters require a separate button press to enable audible continuity testing.
- Circuit power must be turned OFF before testing continuity.
- Disconnect component from circuit before testing.
- Use firm contact with meter leads.
- First test meter and leads by touching leads together. Meter should produce an audible alarm, indicating continuity.

Current Measurement

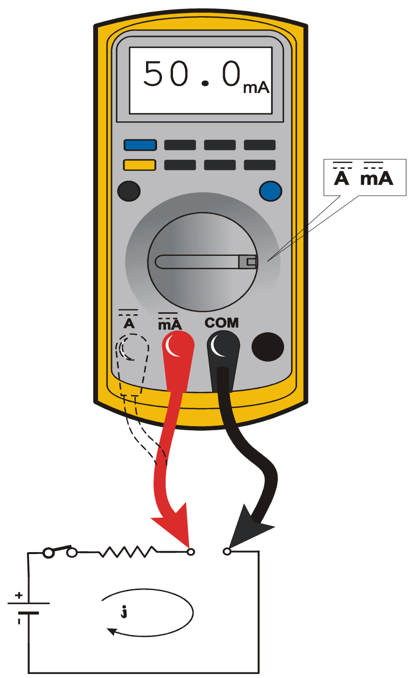


Figure 7-4. Current Measurement (DC)

- Set up the meter for the expected current range.
- Be sure to connect the meter leads to the correct jacks for the current range you have selected.
- If meter is not auto ranging, set it to the correct range (See multi meter's operation manual).
- Use firm contact with meter leads.

7.3 APPLYING SILICONE DIELECTRIC COMPOUND TO ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

NOTE: *This section is not applicable for battery terminals.*

NOTICE

JLG P/N 0100048 DIELECTRIC GREASE (NOVAGARD G661) IS THE ONLY MATERIAL APPROVED FOR USE AS A DIELECTRIC GREASE.

NOTE: *Do NOT apply dielectric grease to the following connections:*

- Main Boom Rotary sensor connections (on Celesco Sensor).
- LSS Modules connections.
- Deutz EMR 2 ECM connection.

Silicone Dielectric Compound must be used on all electrical connections except for those mentioned above for the following reasons:

- To prevent oxidation at the mechanical joint between male and female pins.
- To prevent electrical malfunction caused by low level conductivity between pins when wet.

Use the following procedure to apply Silicone Dielectric Compound to the electrical connectors. This procedure applies to all plug connections not enclosed in a box. Silicone grease should not be applied to connectors with external seals.

1. To prevent oxidation, silicone grease must be packed completely around male and female pins on the inside of the connector prior to assembly. This is most easily achieved by using a syringe.

NOTE: *Over a period of time, oxidation increases electrical resistance at the connection, eventually causing circuit failure.*

2. To prevent shorting, silicone grease must be packed around each wire where they enter the outside of the connector housing. Also, silicone grease must be applied at the joint where the male and female connectors come together. Any other joints (around strain reliefs, etc.) where water could enter the connector should also be sealed.

NOTE: *This condition is especially common when machines are pressure washed since the washing solution is much more conductive than water.*

3. Anderson connectors for the battery boxes and battery chargers should have silicone grease applied to the contacts only.

NOTE: *Curing-type sealants might also be used to prevent shorting and would be less messy, but would make future pin removal more difficult.*

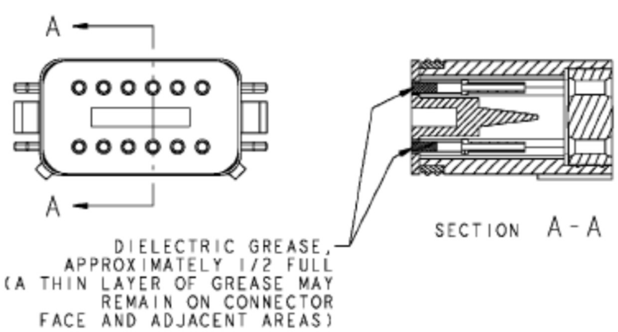
When applied to electrical connections, dielectric grease helps to prevent corrosion of electrical contacts and improper conductivity between contacts from moisture intrusion. Open and sealed connectors benefit from the application of dielectric grease.

Dielectric grease shall be applied to all electrical connectors at the time of connection (except those noted under Exclusions).

Installation of Dielectric Grease

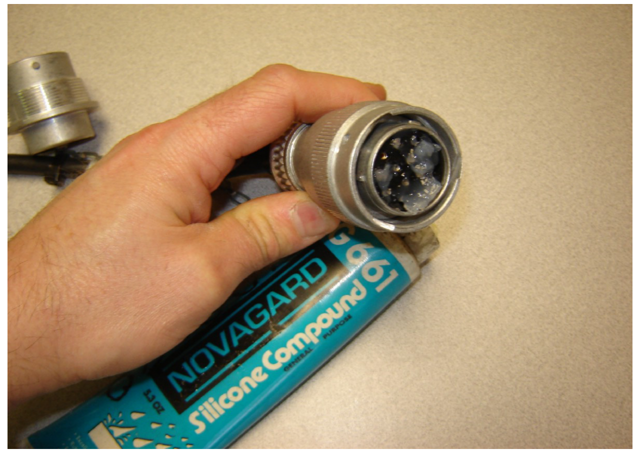
Before following these instructions, refer to excluded connector types (See Exclusions below).

1. Use dielectric grease in a tube for larger connection points or apply with a syringe for small connectors.
2. Apply dielectric grease to the female contact (fill it approximately ½ full; see example below).
3. Leave a thin layer of dielectric grease on the face of the connector.
4. Assemble the connector system immediately to prevent moisture ingress or dust contamination.
5. Pierce one of the unused wire seals prior to assembly if the connector system tends to trap air (i.e. AMP Seal) and then install a seal plug.



Deutsch HD, DT, DTM, DRC Series

The Deutsch connector system is commonly used for harsh environment interconnect. Follow the installation instructions.



AMP Seal

The AMP Seal connector system is used on the Control ADE Platform and Ground Modules.

Apply dielectric grease to the female contact. If trapped air prevents the connector from latching, pierce one of the unused wire seals. After assembly, install a seal plug (JLG #4460905) in that location to prevent moisture ingress.

Note that seal plugs may be installed by the wire harness manufacturer if an unused wire seal becomes compromised (wire inserted in the wrong cavity during assembly and then corrected).

Figure 7-5. Application to Female Contacts

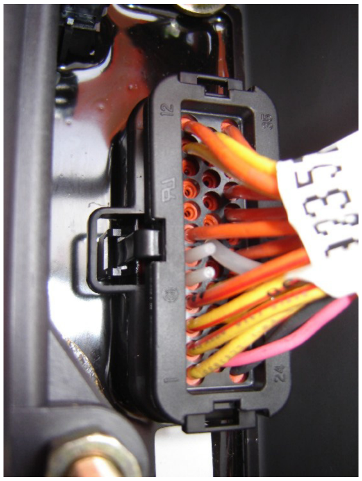
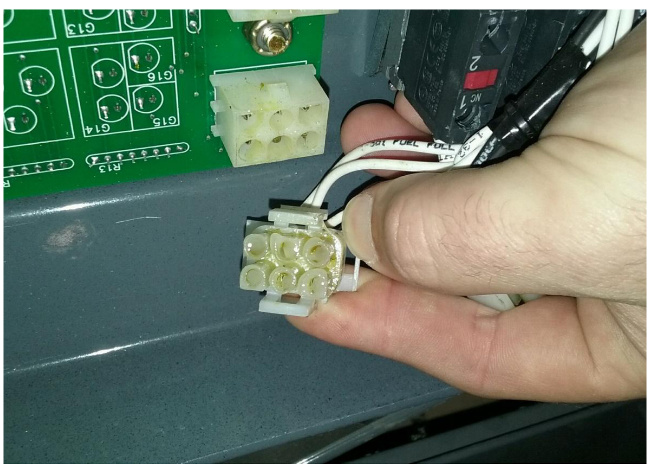


Figure 7-6. Use of Seal Plugs

AMP Mate-N-Lok

This connector system is widely used inside enclosures for general purpose interconnect. Follow the general guidance for installation.



DIN Connectors

This connector is typically used on hydraulic valves. Follow the installation instructions.

Exclusions

A limited number of connectors do not benefit from dielectric grease, or may be permanently damaged by application. Dielectric grease may not be required in properly sealed enclosures.

BRAD HARRISON / PHOENIX CONTACT M12

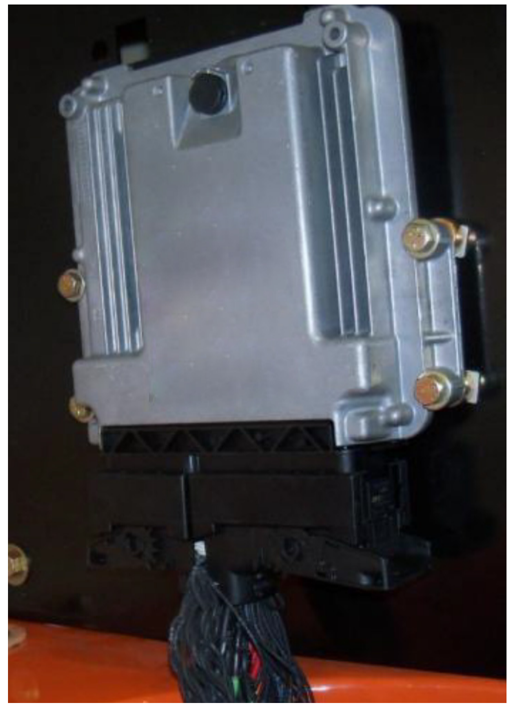
The connector uses gold contact material to resist corrosion and an o-ring seal for moisture integrity. If dielectric grease is mistakenly applied to this connector system, the low-force contacts cannot displace the grease to achieve electrical contact. Once contaminated, there is no practical way to remove the dielectric grease (replacement of female contacts required). The JLG Load Sensing System and Rotary Angle Sensors are examples of components with the M12 connector system.

Figure 7-7. Brad-Harrison M12

Figure 7-8. Phoenix Contact M12

ENGINE CONTROL UNIT CONNECTORS

moisture integrity. However, the low-force contacts cannot displace dielectric grease and create electrical contact. It is possible to use solvents (i.e. contact cleaner or mineral spirits) for the removal of improperly applied dielectric grease. The EMR4 engine control module from Deutz employs this connector system (for example).



SEALED ENCLOSURES

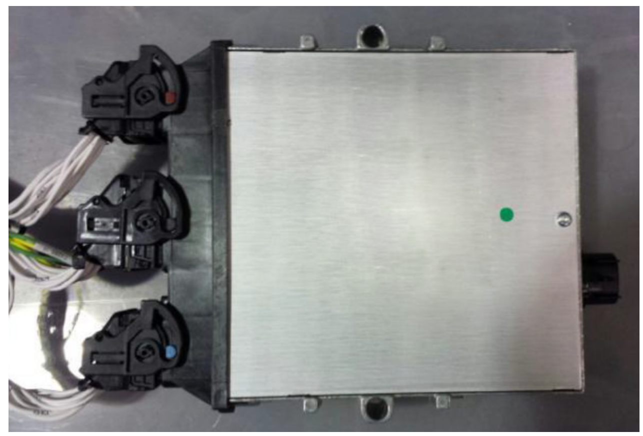
Application of dielectric grease is not required in properly sealed enclosures. To meet criteria, the enclosure must be rated to at least IP66 (dust tight; protected from powerful jets of water). The enclosure must be fitted with a high quality, continuous gasket and all wiring must pass through cable entrances.

MIL-C-5015 SPEC CONNECTOR'S

Crown Connector Inc's recommendation is to not use dielectric grease for this series connector. For similar model series connectors, the manufacturer should be contacted for confirmation before applying dielectric grease. A typical application for this connector is on David Clark Intercom connections in Aerial Work Platforms.

MOLEX CMC SERIES CONNECTORS

The CMC connector family is a sealed, high-density connection system using matte-seal technology for CP 0.635 and 1.50 mm terminals. To guarantee IP6K7 and IP6K9 sealing, a seal plug option is used. However, the low-force contacts cannot displace dielectric grease and create electrical contact. It is possible to use solvents (i.e. contact cleaner or mineral spirits) for the removal of improperly applied dielectric grease. The flexbox control modules from JDES employ this connector system (for example).



7.4 AMP CONNECTOR

Assembly

Check to be sure the wedge lock is in the open, or as-shipped, position (See Figure 7-9.). Proceed as follows:

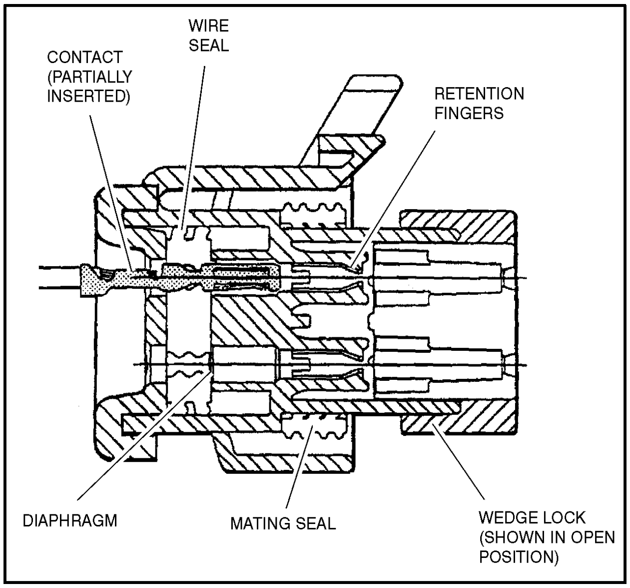


Figure 7-9. Connector Assembly Figure 1

1. To insert a contact, push it straight into the appropriate circuit cavity as far as it will go (See Figure 7-11.).
2. Pull back on the contact wire with a force of 1 or 2 lbs. to be sure the retention fingers are holding the contact (See Figure 7-11.).

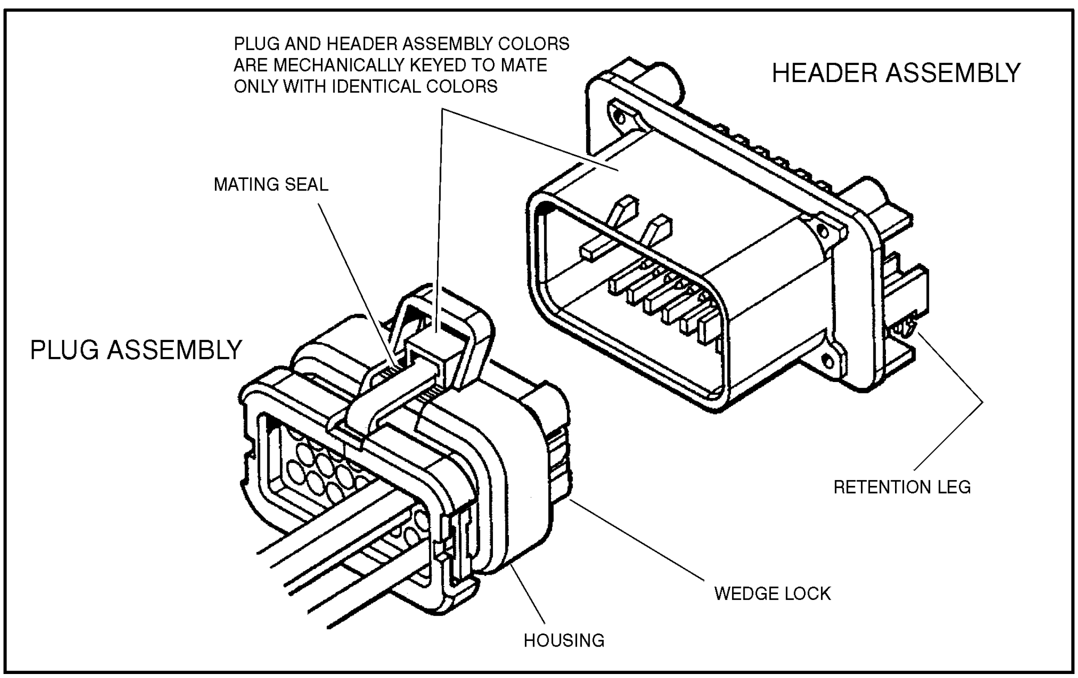


Figure 7-10. AMP Connector

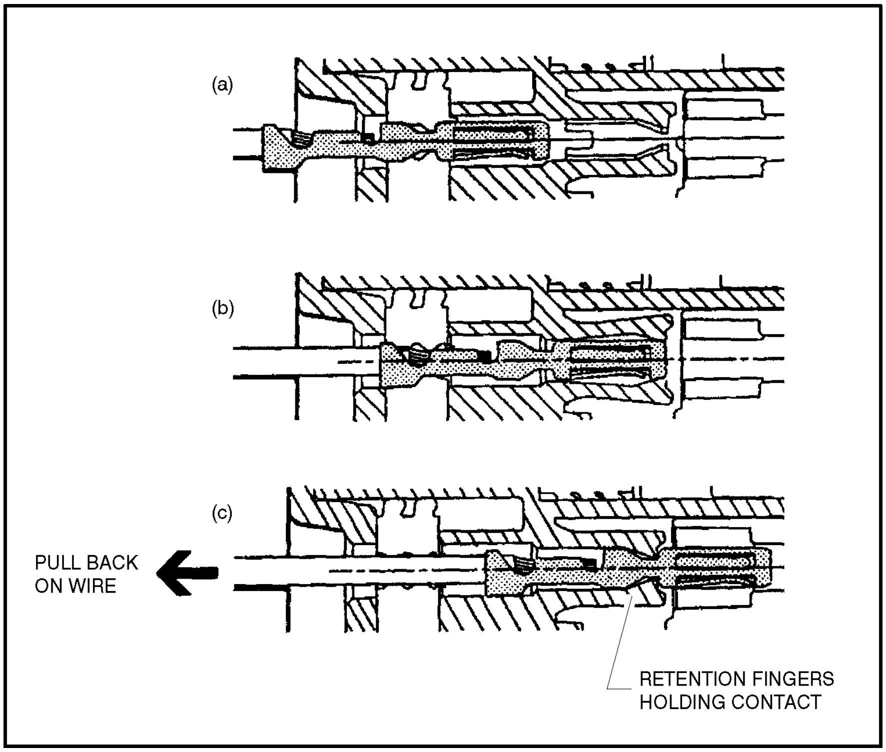


Figure 7-11. Connector Assembly Figure 2

3. After all required contacts have been inserted, the wedge lock must be closed to its locked position. Release the locking latches by squeezing them inward (See Figure 7-12.).

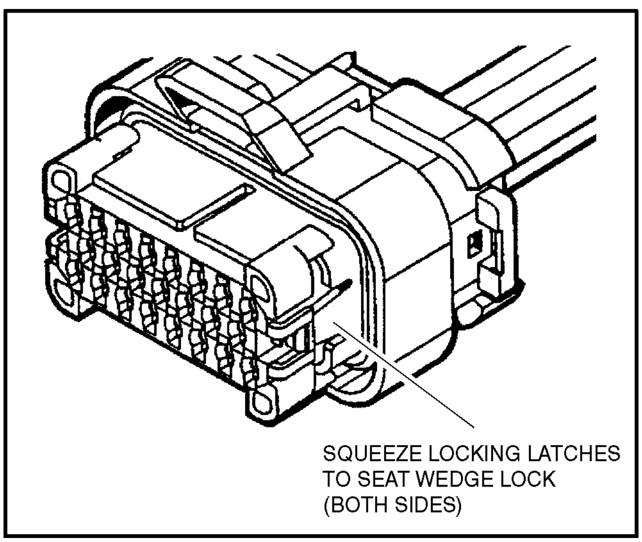


Figure 7-12. Connector Assembly Figure 3

4. Slide the wedge lock into the housing until it is flush with the housing (See Figure 7-13.).

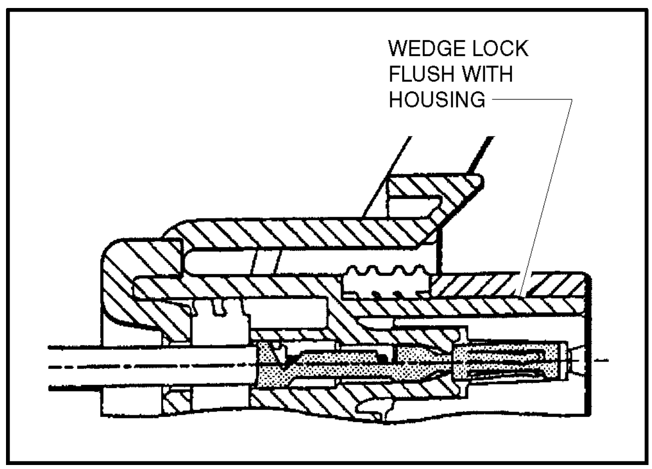


Figure 7-13. Connector Assembly Figure 4

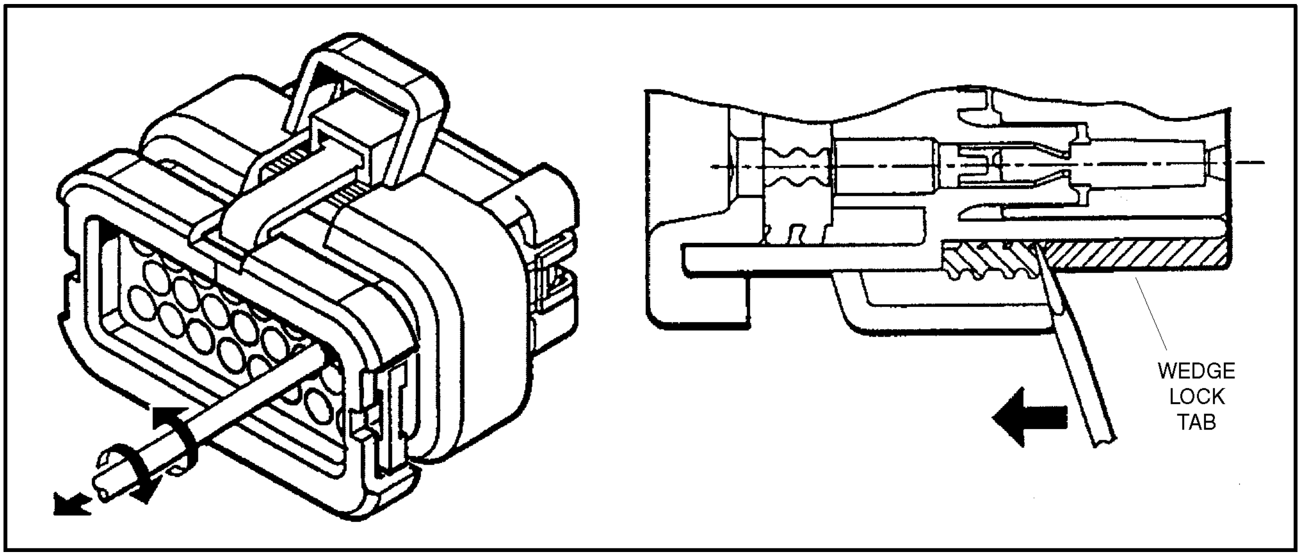


Figure 7-14. Connector Disassembly

Disassembly

5. Insert a 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) wide screwdriver blade between the mating seal and one of the red wedge lock tabs.
6. Pry open the wedge lock to the open position.
7. While rotating the wire back and forth over a half turn (1/4 turn in each direction), gently pull the wire until the contact is removed.

NOTE: *The wedge lock should never be removed from the housing for insertion or removal of the contacts.*

Wedge Lock

The wedge lock has slotted openings in the forward, or mating end. These slots accommodate circuit testing in the field, by using a flat probe such as a pocket knife. DO NOT use a sharp point such as an ice pick.

Service - Voltage Reading

NOTICE

DO NOT PIERCE WIRE INSULATION TO TAKE VOLTAGE READINGS.

It has been common practice in electrical troubleshooting to probe wires by piercing the insulation with a sharp point. This practice should be discouraged when dealing with the AMPSEAL plug assembly, or any other sealed connector system. The resulting pinholes in the insulation will allow moisture to invade the system by traveling along the wire strands. This nullifies the effectiveness of the connector seals and could result in system failure.

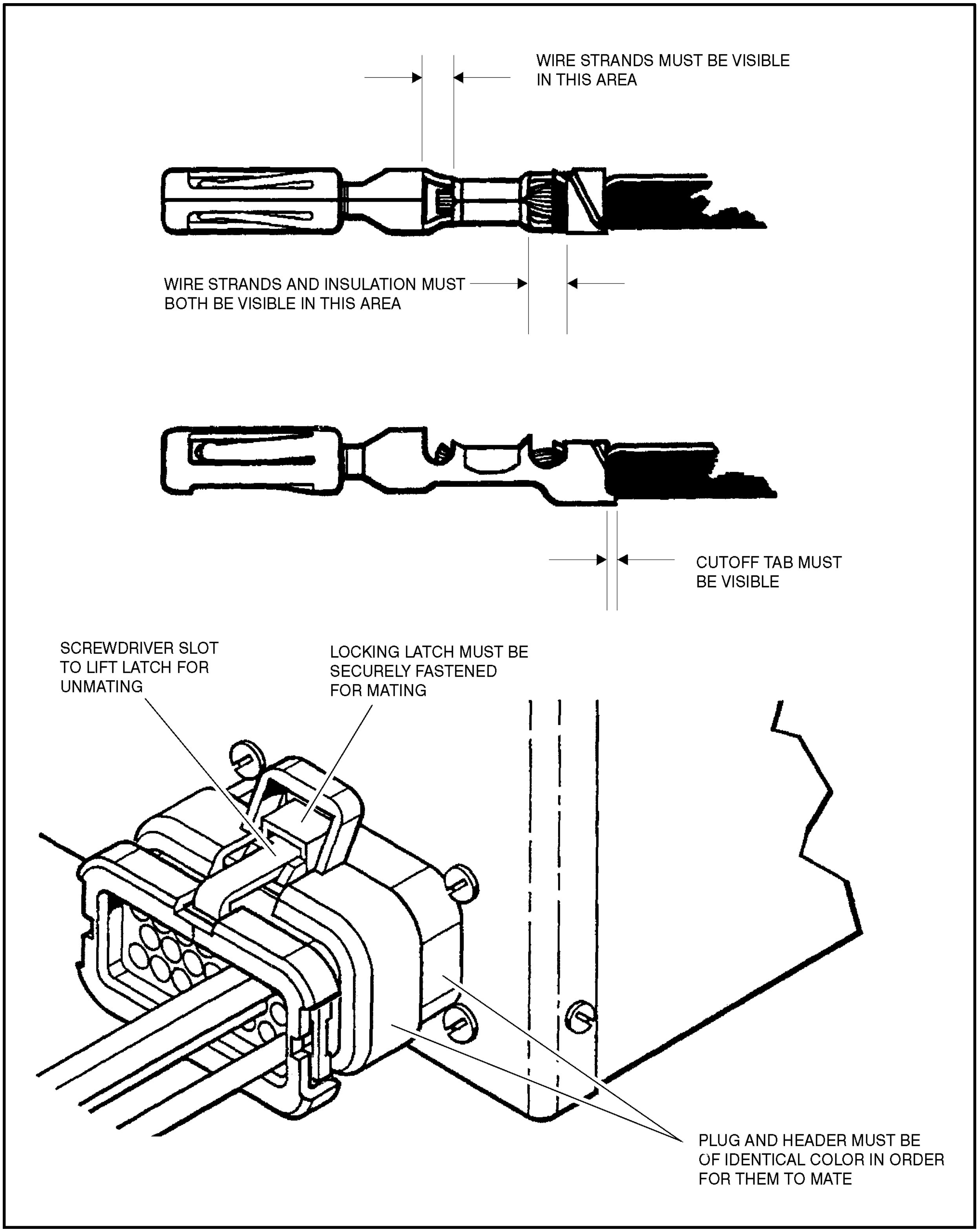
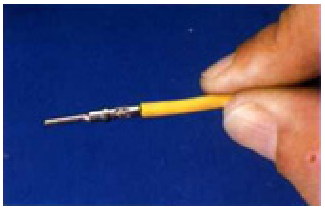
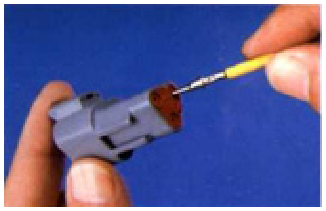


Figure 7-15. Connector Installation

7.5 DEUTSCH CONNECTORS

DT/DTP Series Assembly


A


B


C

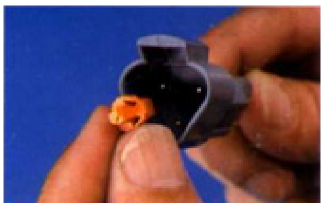

D

Figure 7-16. DT/DTP Contact Installation

1. Grasp crimped contact about 25mm behind the contact barrel.
2. Hold connector with rear grommet facing you.
3. Push contact straight into connector grommet until a click is felt. A slight tug will confirm that it is properly locked in place.
4. Once all contacts are in place, insert wedgelock with arrow pointing toward exterior locking mechanism. The wedgelock will snap into place. Rectangular wedges are not oriented. They may go in either way.

NOTE: *The receptacle is shown - use the same procedure for plug.*

DT/DTP Series Disassembly


A


B


C

Figure 7-17. DT/DTP Contact Removal

1. Remove wedgelock using needle nose pliers or a hook shaped wire to pull wedge straight out.
2. To remove the contacts, gently pull wire backwards, while at the same time releasing the locking finger by moving it away from the contact with a screwdriver.
3. Hold the rear seal in place, as removing the contact may displace the seal.

HD30/HDP20 Series Assembly

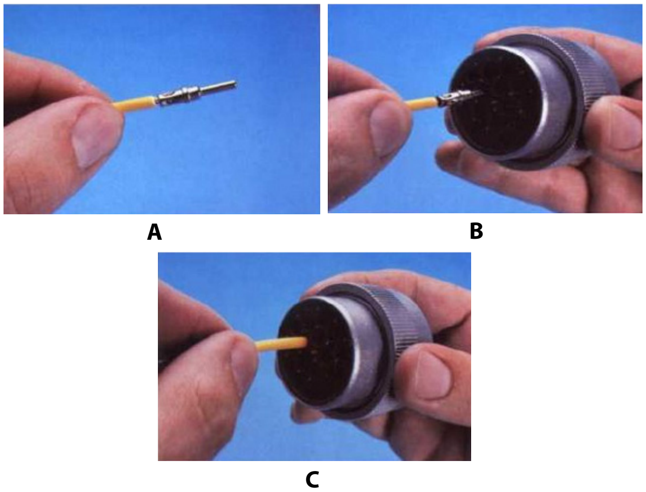


Figure 7-18. HD/HDP Contact Installation

1. Grasp contact about 25mm behind the contact crimp barrel.
2. Hold connector with rear grommet facing you.
3. Push contact straight into connector grommet until a positive stop is felt. A slight tug will confirm that it is properly locked in place.

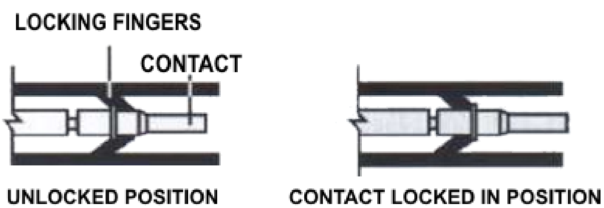


Figure 7-19. HD/HDP Locking Contacts Into Position

NOTE: *For unused wire cavities, insert sealing plugs for full environmental sealing.*

HD30/HDP20 Series Disassembly

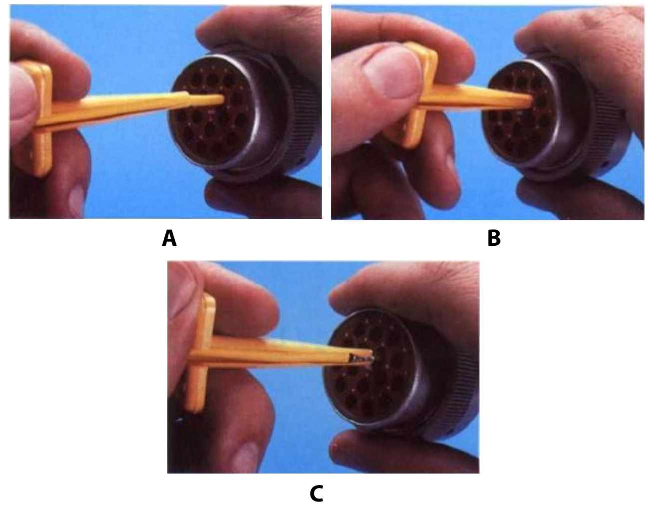


Figure 7-20. HD/HDP Contact Removal

1. With rear insert toward you, snap appropriate size extractor tool over the wire of contact to be removed.
2. Slide tool along into the insert cavity until it engages contact and resistance is felt.
3. Pull contact-wire assembly out of connector.

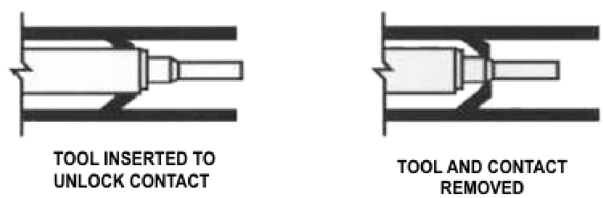


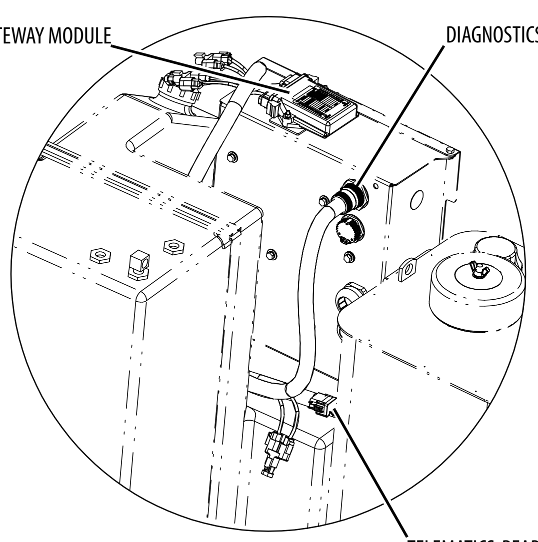
Figure 7-21. HD/HDP Unlocking Contacts

NOTE: *Do Not twist or insert tool at an angle.*

7.6 TELEMATICS GATEWAY

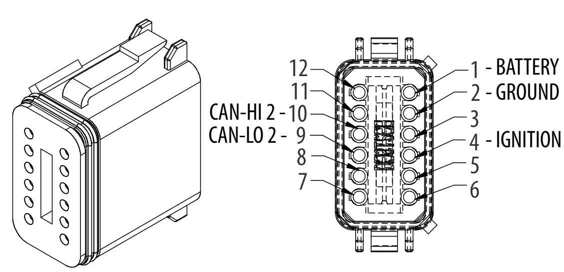
Personnel using machines equipped with an optional telematics gateway will be able to view the following data through their telematics device:

JLG LABEL	DESCRIPTION	UNIT
Engine Speed	Actual engine speed.	RPM
DEF Tank Level (If Equipped)	Indicates the level of DEF (diesel exhaust fluid) within the DEF tank if the machine is equipped with DEF tank. • 0% = Empty • 100% = Full	Percentage (%)
JLG Machine Faults: Active / Not-Active	• 00 - No Machine Faults • 01 - Active Machine Fault • 10 - Error • 11 - Not available	Bit
Total Idle Fuel Used	Total amount of fuel used during vehicle operation during idle conditions.	Liters
Total Idle Hours	Total time of engine operation during idle conditions.	Seconds
Total Engine Hours	Total time of engine operation.	Seconds
Total Fuel Used	Total amount of fuel used during vehicle operation.	Liters
Fuel Rate	Amount of fuel consumed by engine per unit of time.	Liters/Hour
Fuel Level	Ratio of fuel volume to the total volume of the fuel storage container. When a low fuel limit switch is present, the fuel level will indicate "full" until the switch opens, which will then indicate 10% fuel remaining. When Fuel Level 2 (SPN 38) is not used, Fuel Level 1 represents the total fuel in all fuel storage containers. When Fuel Level 2 is used, Fuel Level 1 represents the fuel level in the primary or left side fuel storage container.	Percentage (%)
DM1 Engine Faults	Shows actual engine fault codes.	N/A



Telematics-Ready (TCU) Plug

The telematics-ready (TCU) plug is a standard 12-pin Deutsch connector. Pin-out locations are shown below:



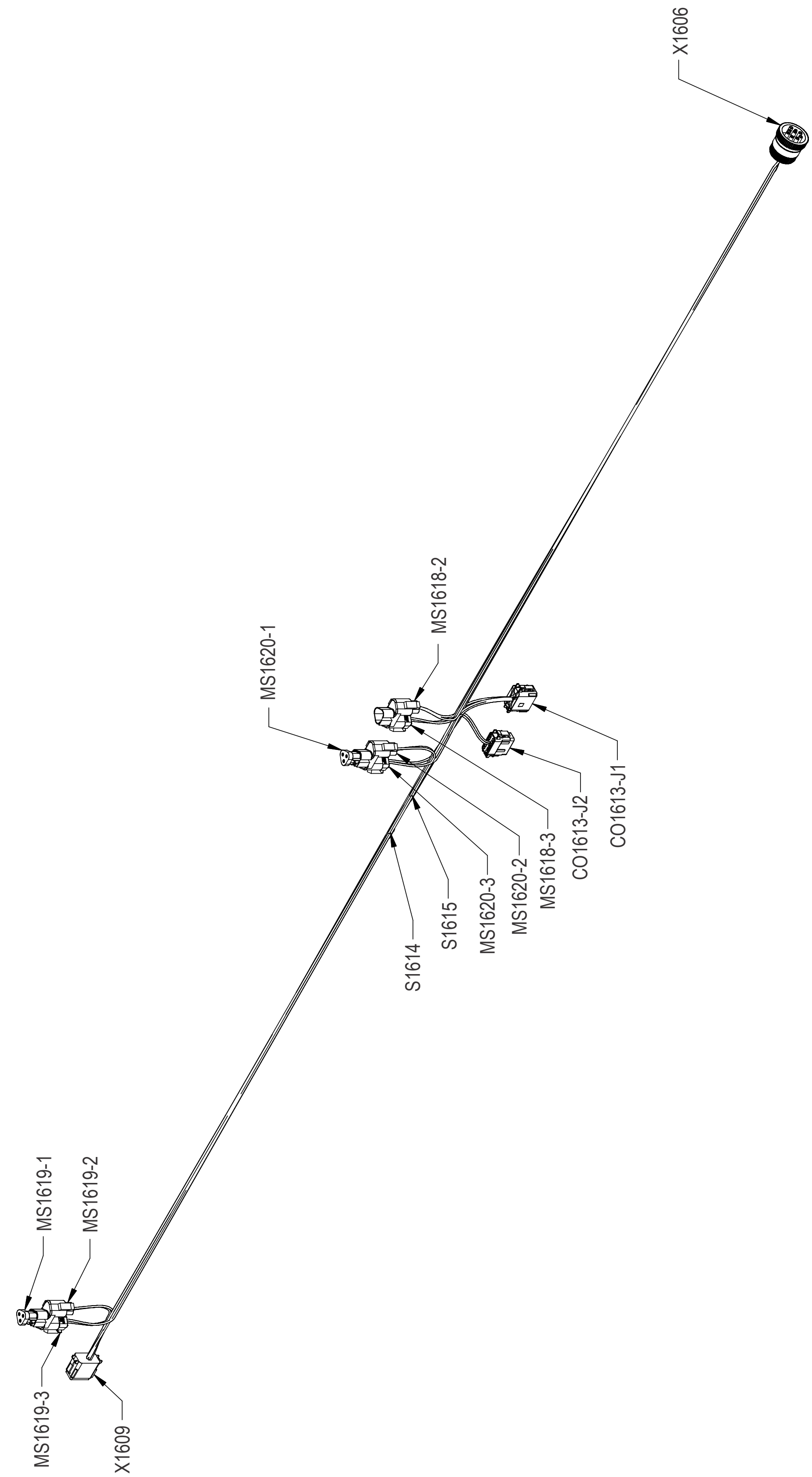


Figure 7-22. Telematics Gateway Harness - Sheet 1 of 3

X1609 (TCU)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
1	RED	1-0 BAT	16 AWG	GXL	X1606 (B)
2	BLK	0-0 GND	16 AWG	GXL	S1615 (1)
4	ORN	2-0 IGN	16 AWG	GXL	S1614 (1)
9	GRN	CANL2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1619-2 (B)
10	YEL	CANH2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1619-2 (A)

MS1619-2 (CAN-T 2)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	YEL	CANH2	18 AWG	GXL	X1609 (10)
B	GRN	CANL2	18 AWG	GXL	X1609 (9)

MS1619-3 (CAN-T 2)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	YEL	CANH2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1620-2 (A)
B	GRN	CANL2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1620-2 (B)

CO1613-J1 (GATEWAY 1)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
9	GRN	CAN1	18 AWG	GXL	MS1618-2 (B)
10	YEL	CANH1	18 AWG	GXL	MS1618-2 (A)
11	BLK	0-2 GND	16 AWG	GXL	S1615 (2)
12	ORN	2-2 IGN	16 AWG	GXL	S1614 (2)

CO1613-J2 (GATEWAY 2)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
9	GRN	CANL2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1620-3 (B)
10	YEL	CANH2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1620-3 (A)

MS1620-2 (CAN-T 2)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	YEL	CANH2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1619-3 (A)
B	GRN	CANL2	18 AWG	GXL	MS1619-3 (B)

MS1620-3 (CAN-T 2)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	YEL	CANH2	18 AWG	GXL	CO1613-J2 (10)
B	GRN	CANL2	18 AWG	GXL	CO1613-J2 (9)

S1614					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
1	ORN	2-0 IGN	16 AWG	GXL	X1609 (4)
2	ORN	2-1 IGN	16 AWG	GXL	X1606 (H)
2	ORN	2-2 IGN	16 AWG	GXL	CO1613-J1 (12)

S1615					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
1	BLK	0-0 GND	16 AWG	GXL	X1609 (2)
2	BLK	0-1 GND	16 AWG	GXL	X1606 (A)
2	BLK	0-2 GND	16 AWG	GXL	CO1613-J1 (11)

MS1618-2 (CAN-T 1)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	YEL	CANH1	18 AWG	GXL	CO1613-J1 (10)
B	GRN	CANL1	18 AWG	GXL	CO1613-J1 (9)

MS1618-3 (CAN-T 1)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	YEL	CANH1	18 AWG	GXL	X1606 (C)
B	GRN	CANL1	18 AWG	GXL	X1606 (D)

X1606 (DIAG)					
CONN POS	WIRE COLOR	WIRE LABEL	GAUGE	JACKET	TO
A	BLK	0-1 GND	16 AWG	GXL	S1615 (2)
B	RED	1-0 BAT	16 AWG	GXL	X1609 (1)
C	YEL	CANH1	18 AWG	GXL	MS1618-3 (A)
D	GRN	CANL1	18 AWG	GXL	MS1618-3 (B)
H	ORN	2-1 IGN	16 AWG	GXL	S1614 (2)

Figure 7-23. Telematics Gateway Harness - Sheet 2 of 3

					FROM		TO	
WIRE NO.	COLOR	WIRE GAUGE	LENGTH (mm)	JACKET	REFERENCE	PIN	REFERENCE	PIN
CAN L2	GRN	18 AWG	1151	GXL	MS1619-3	B	MS1620-2	B
CAN L2	GRN	18 AWG	151	GXL	X1609	9	MS1619-2	B
CAN L1	GRN	18 AWG	157	GXL	MS1618-2	B	CO1613-J1	9
CAN L2	GRN	18 AWG	225	GXL	MS1620-3	B	CO1613-J2	9
CAN L1	GRN	18 AWG	1076	GXL	MS1618-3	B	X1606	D
CAN H2	YEL	18 AWG	155	GXL	X1609	10	MS1619-2	A
CAN H2	YEL	18 AWG	233	GXL	MS1620-3	A	CO1613-J2	10
CAN H1	YEL	18 AWG	157	GXL	MS1618-2	A	CO1613-J1	10
CAN H2	YEL	18 AWG	1150	GXL	MS1619-3	A	MS1620-2	A
CAN H1	YEL	18 AWG	1079	GXL	MS1618-3	A	X1606	C
0-0 GND	BLK	16 AWG	1006	GXL	X1609	2	S1615	1
0-1 GND	BLK	16 AWG	1145	GXL	X1606	A	S1615	2
0-2 GND	BLK	16 AWG	223	GXL	CO1613-J1	11	S1615	2
1-0 BAT	RED	16 AWG	2150	GXL	X1609	1	X1606	B
2-0 IGN	ORN	16 AWG	939	GXL	X1609	4	S1614	1
2-1 IGN	ORN	16 AWG	1212	GXL	S1614	2	X1606	H
2-2 IGN	ORN	16 AWG	287	GXL	CO1613-J1	12	S1614	2

Figure 7-24. Telematics Gateway Harness - Sheet 3 of 3

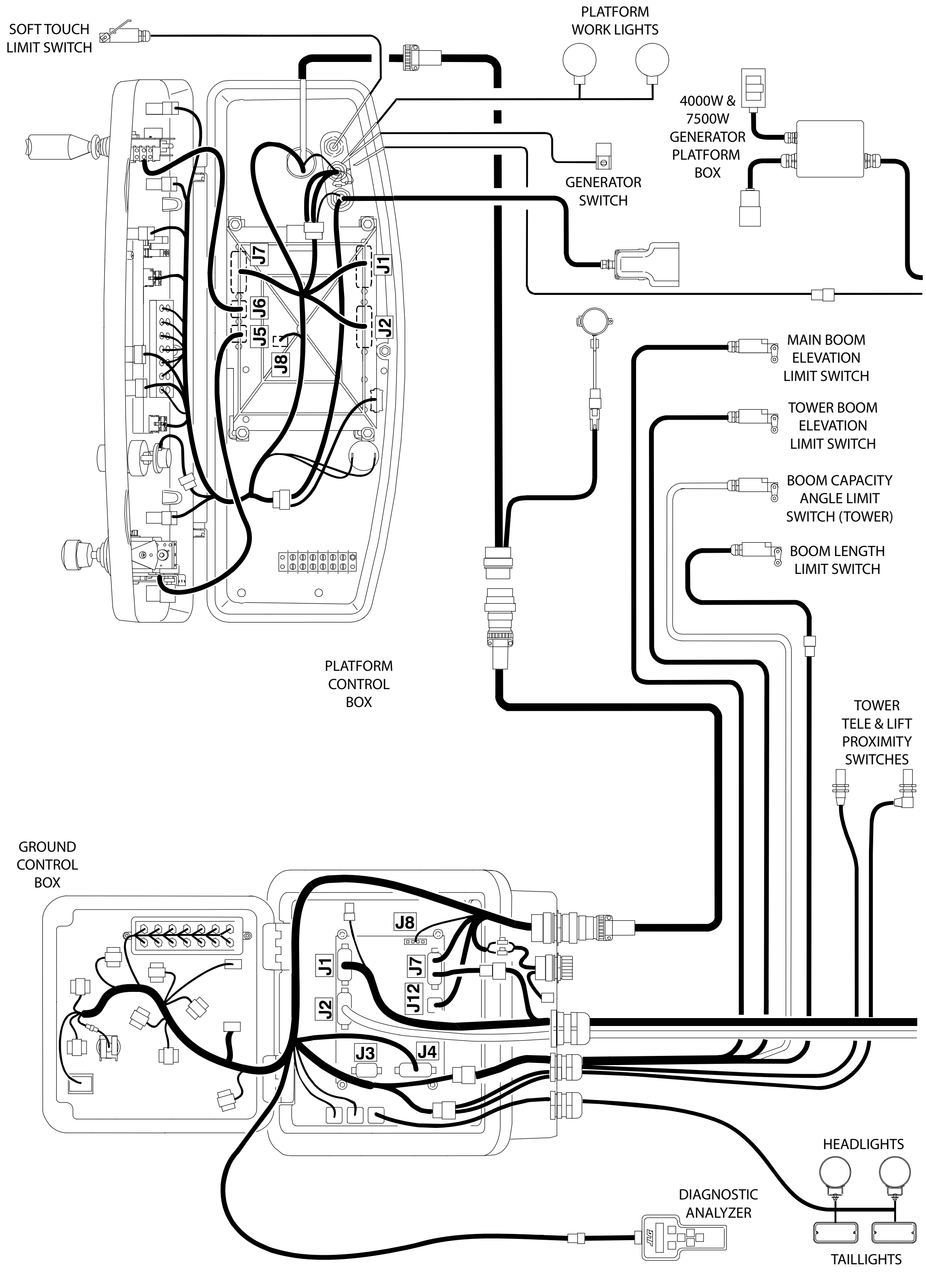


Figure 7-25. Electrical Components Installation - Sheet 1 of 2

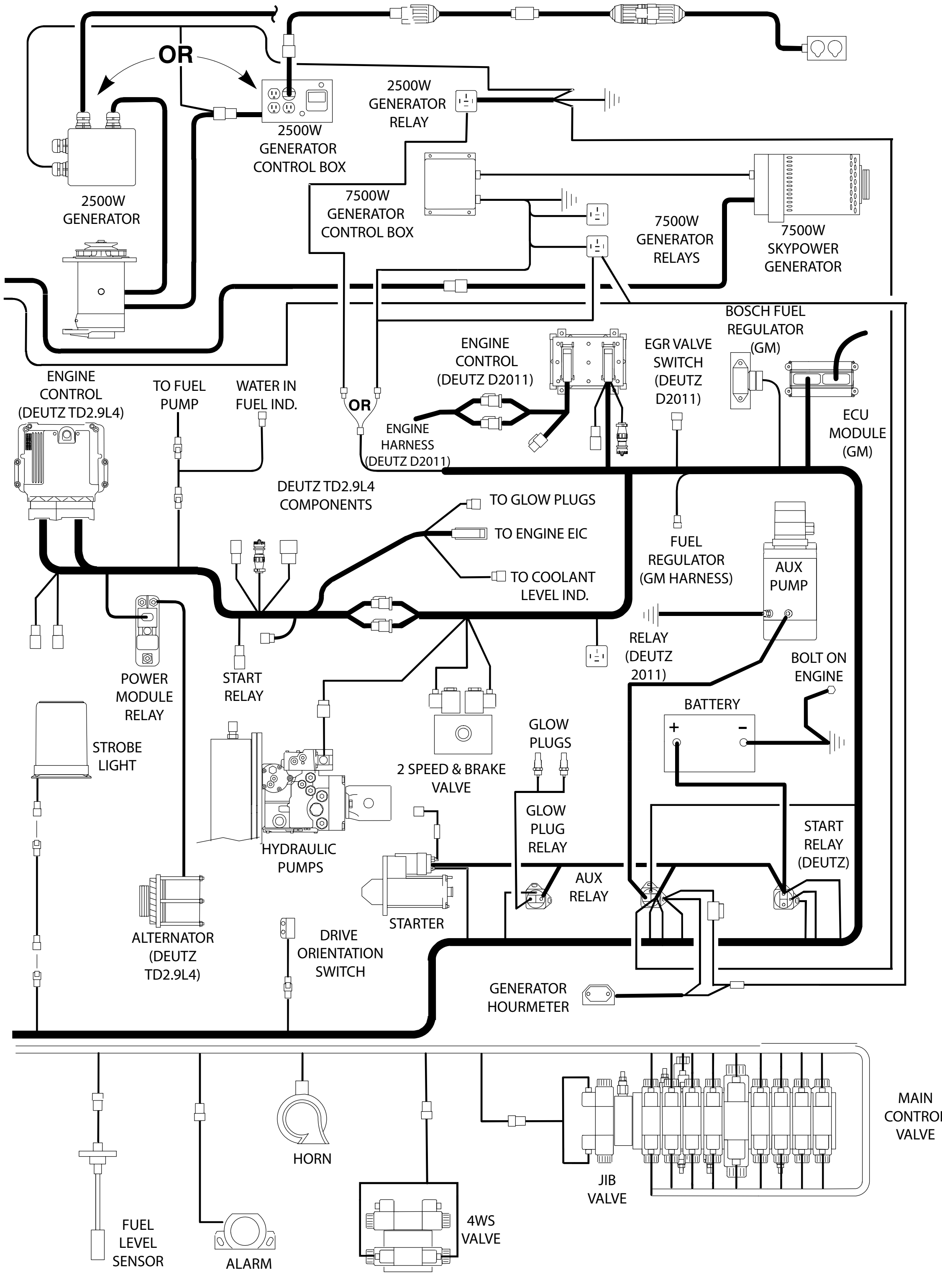


Figure 7-26. Electrical Components Installation - Sheet 2 of 2

7.7 ELECTRICAL SCHEMATICS

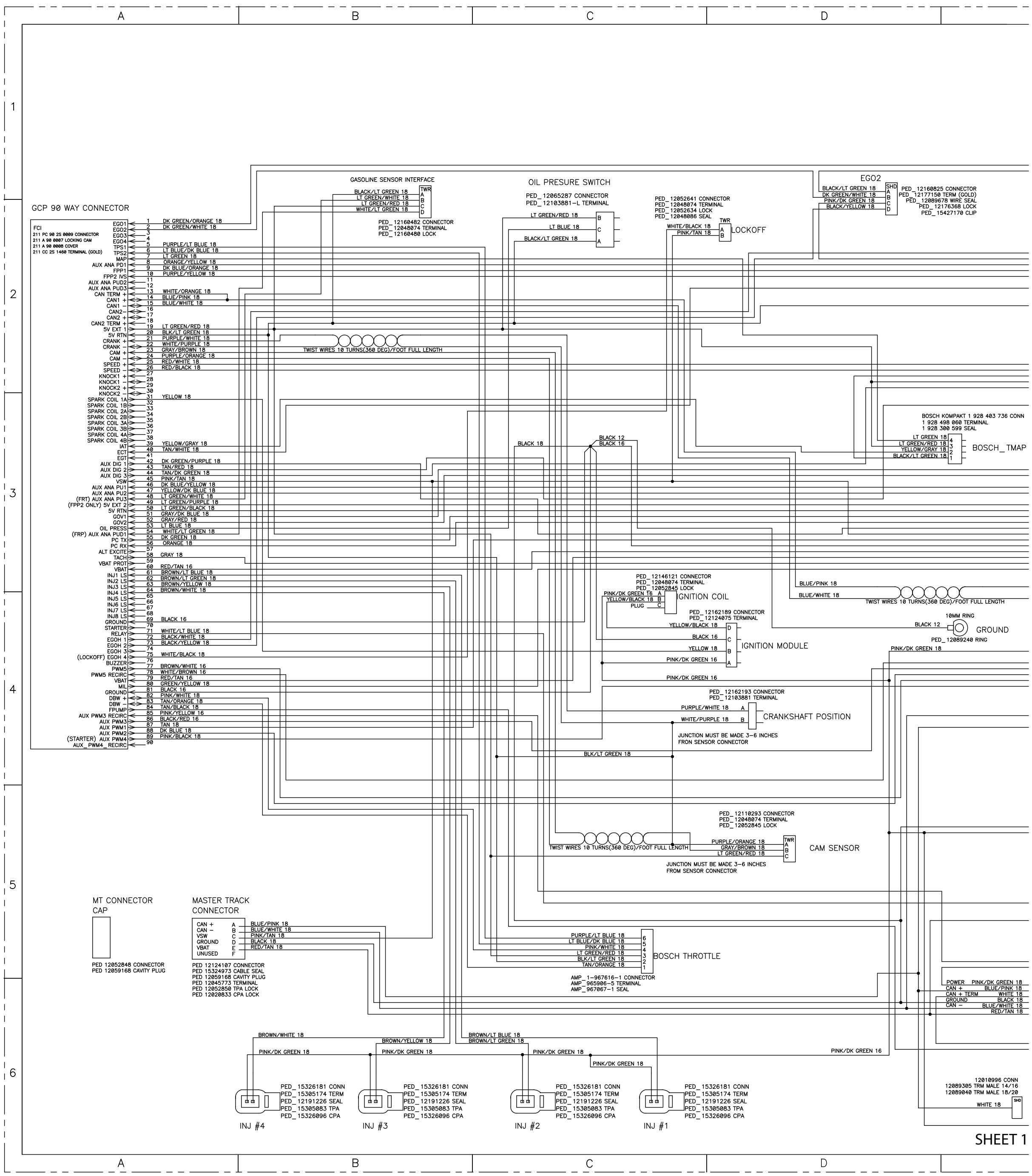


Figure 7-27. Electrical Schematic GM - Sheet 1 of 2

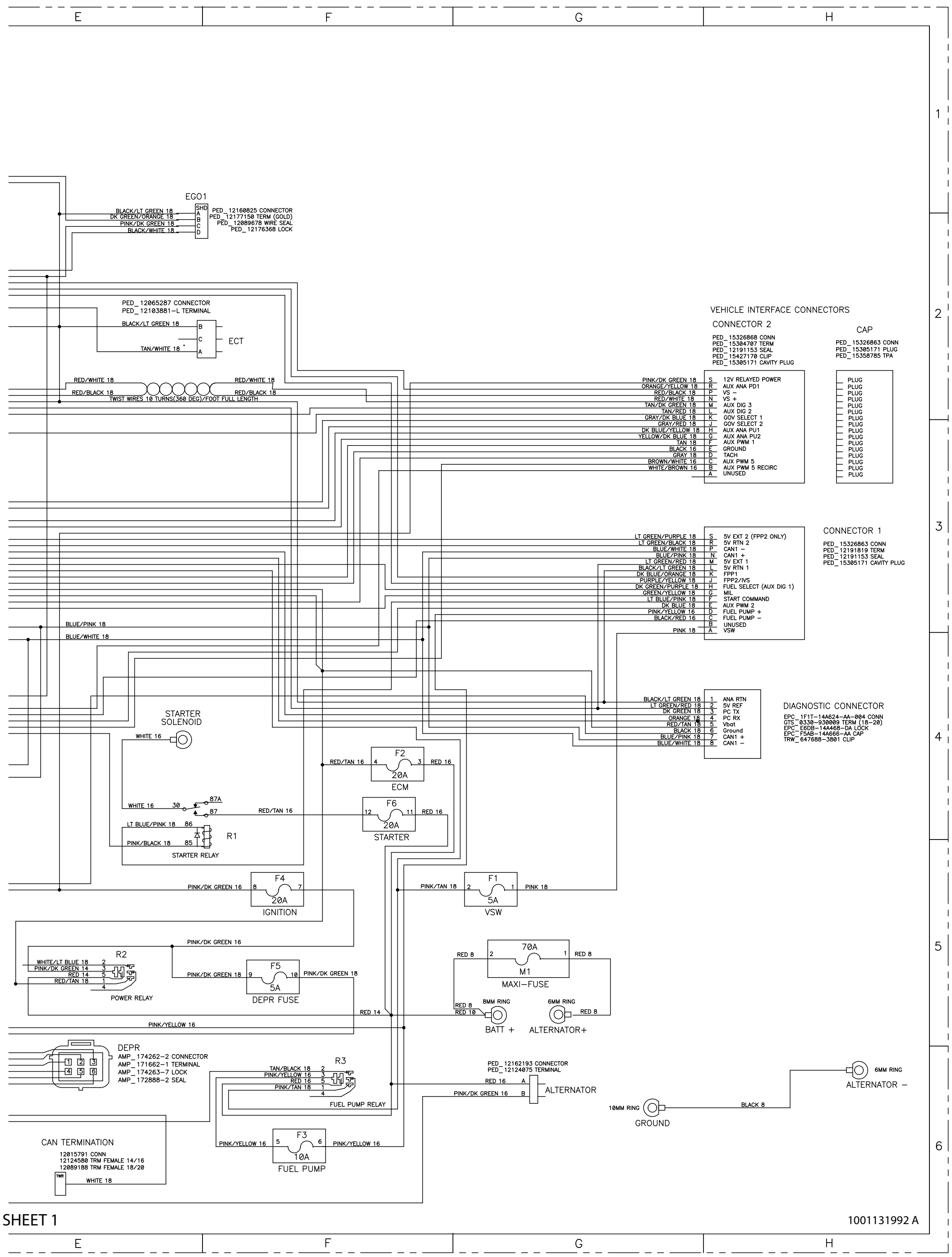


Figure 7-28. Electrical Schematic GM - Sheet 2 of 2

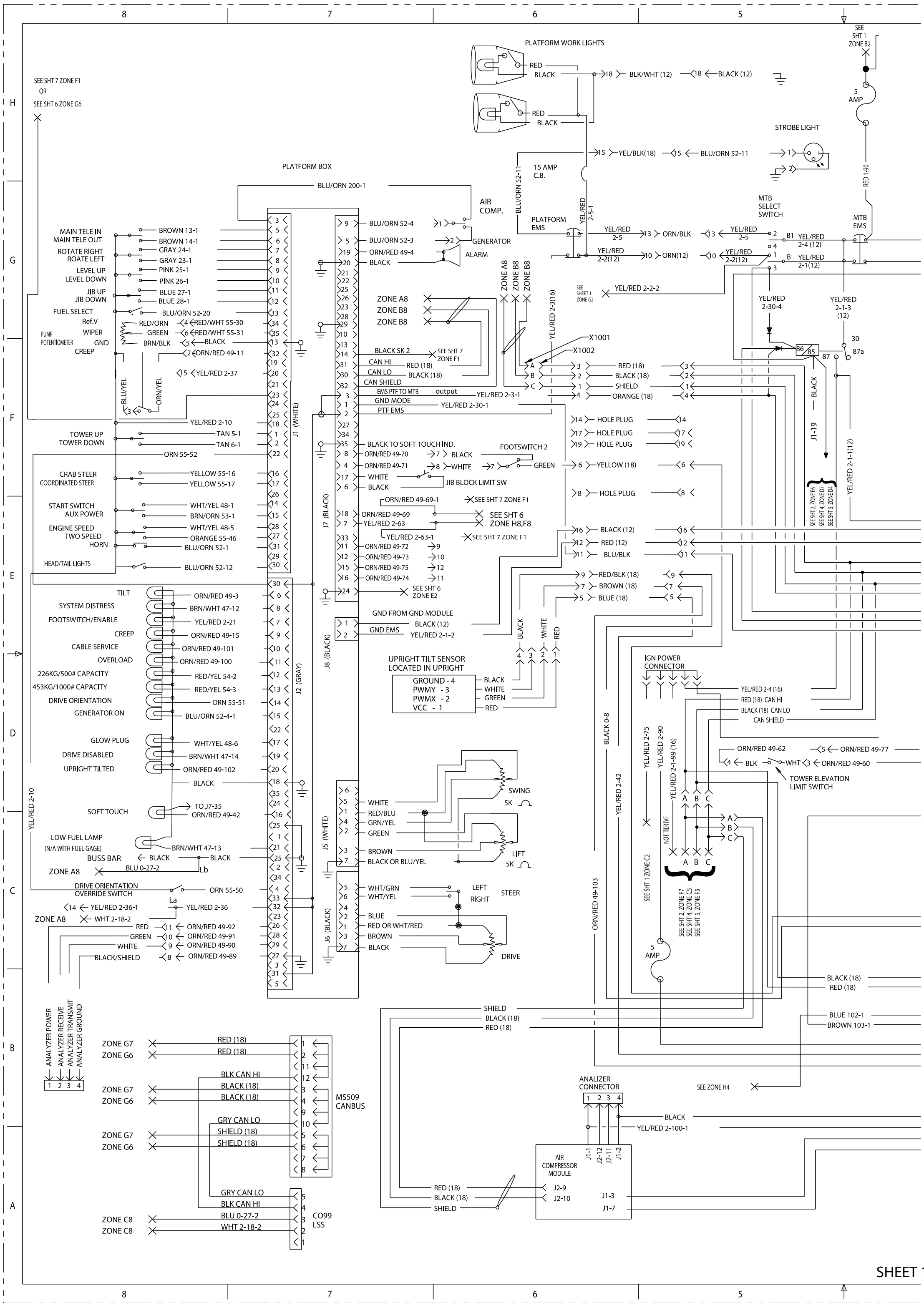


Figure 7-29. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 1 of 14

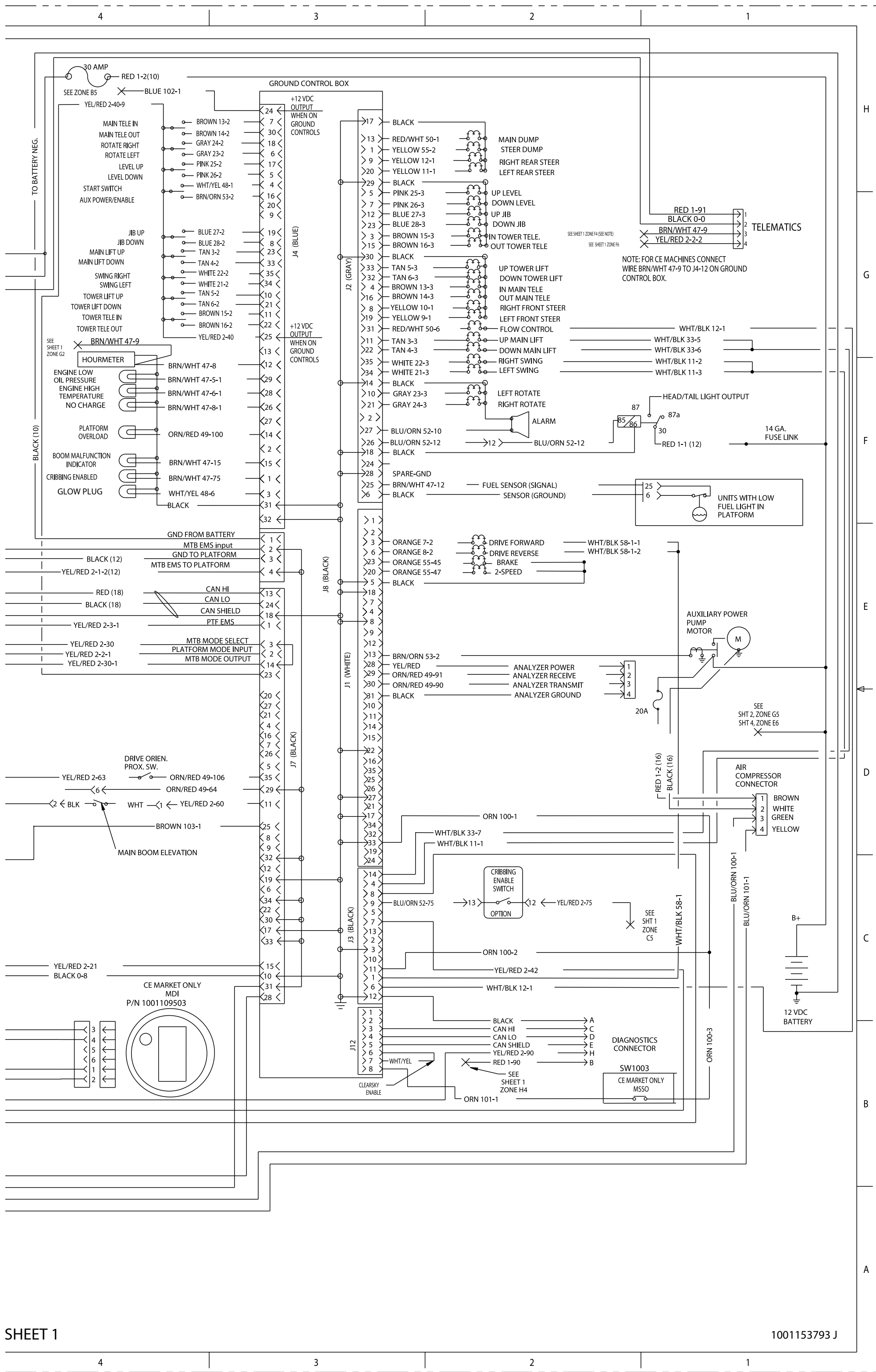


Figure 7-30. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 2 of 14

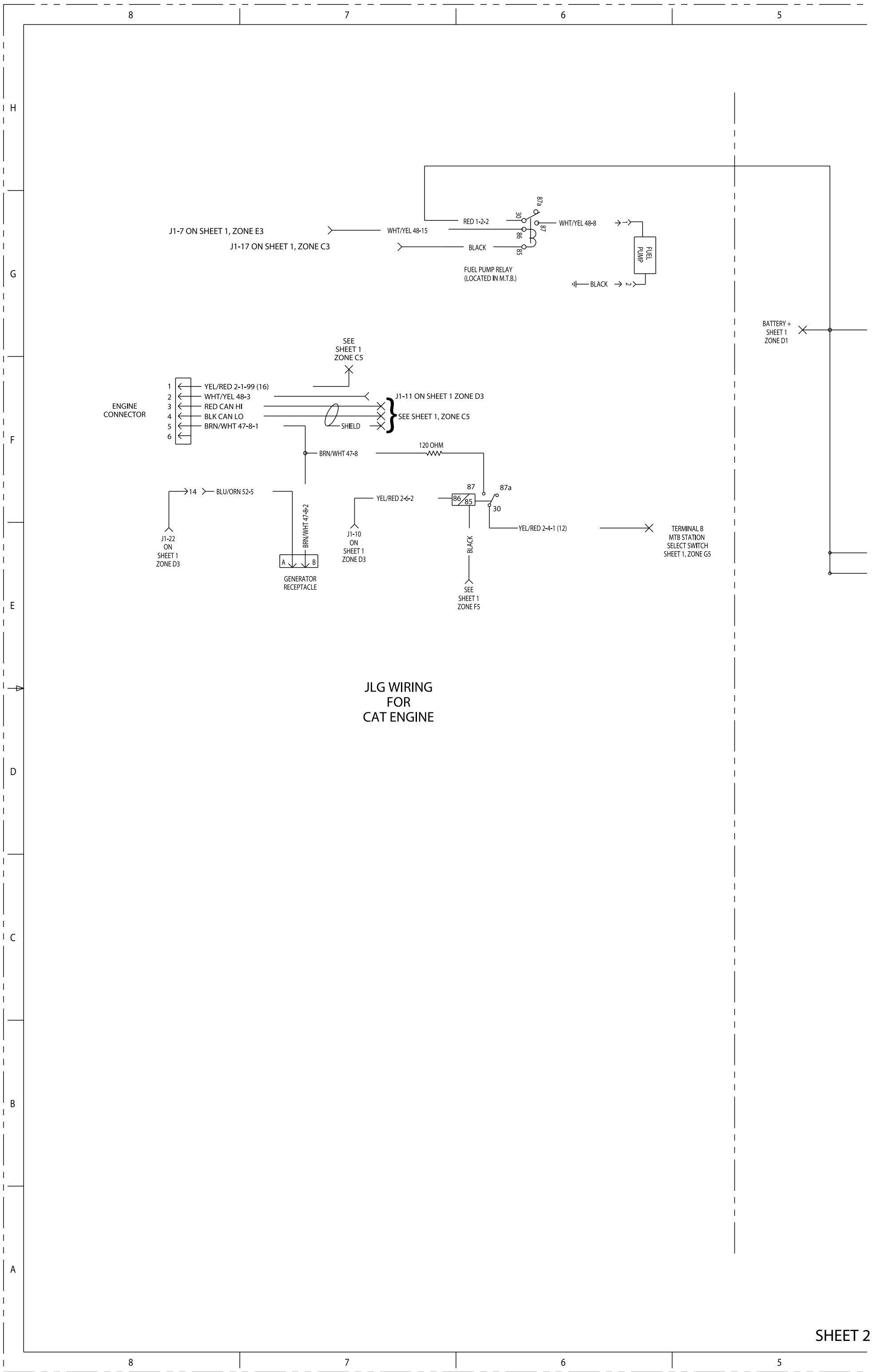


Figure 7-31. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 3 of 14

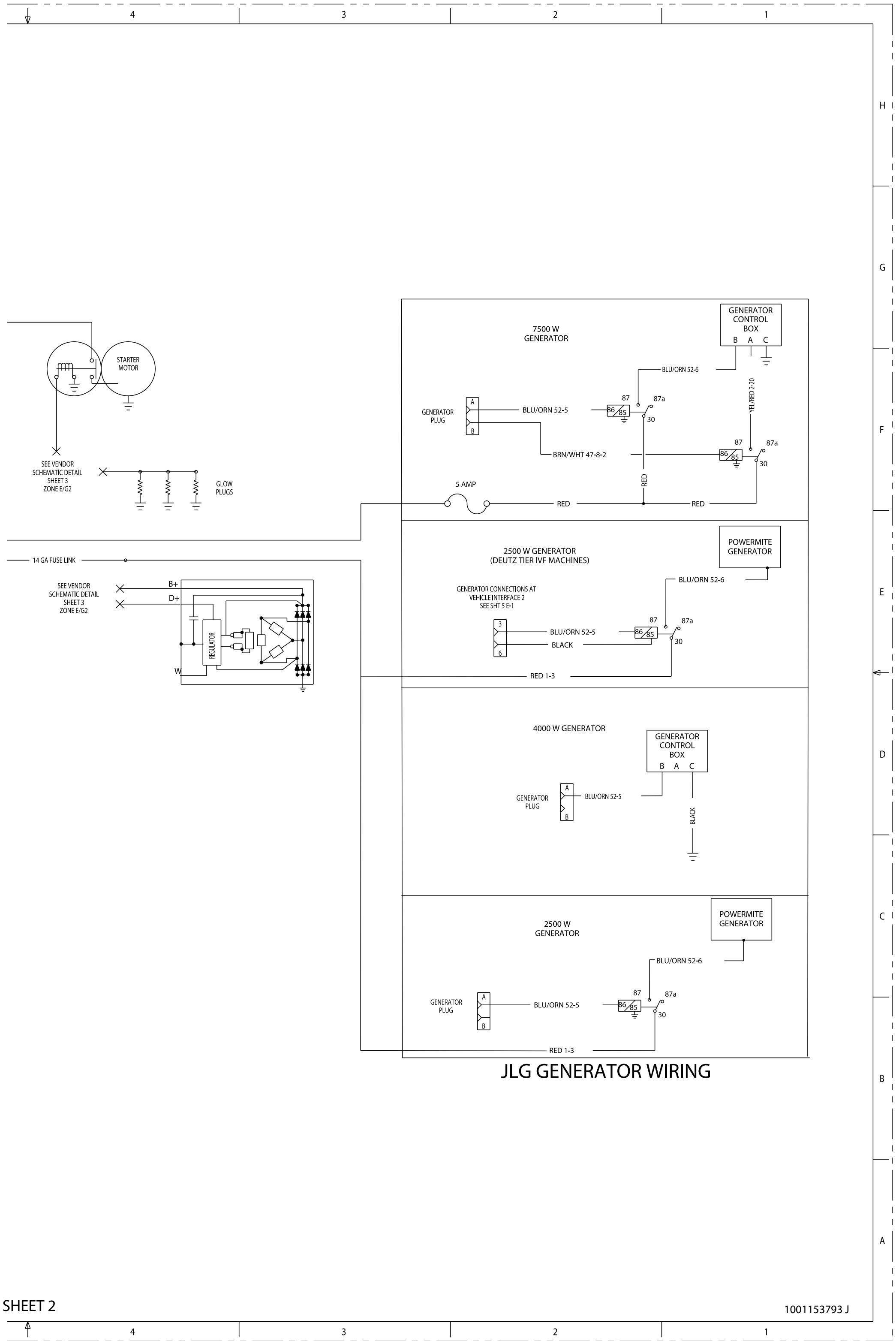


Figure 7-32. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 4 of 14

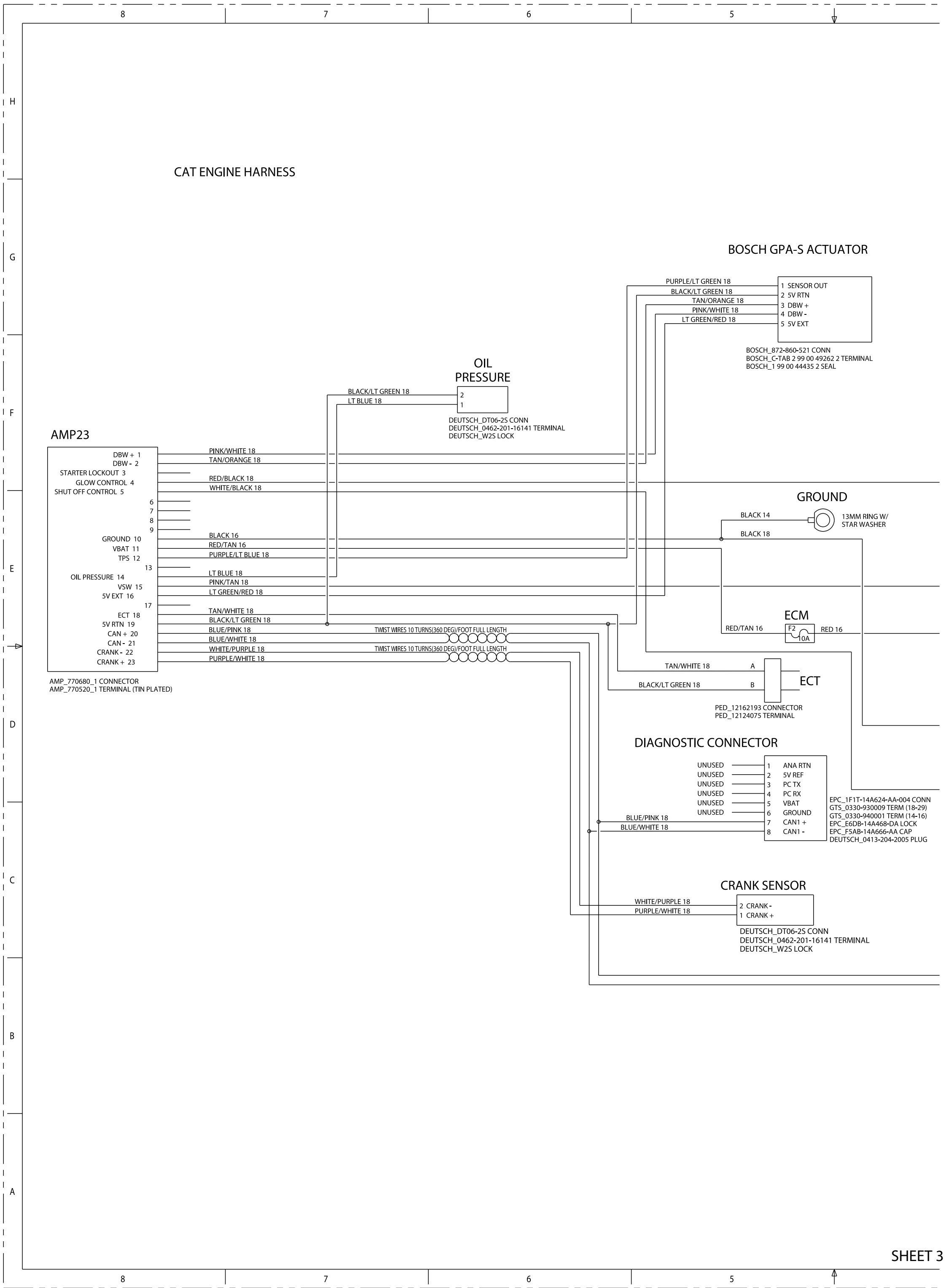


Figure 7-33. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 5 of 14

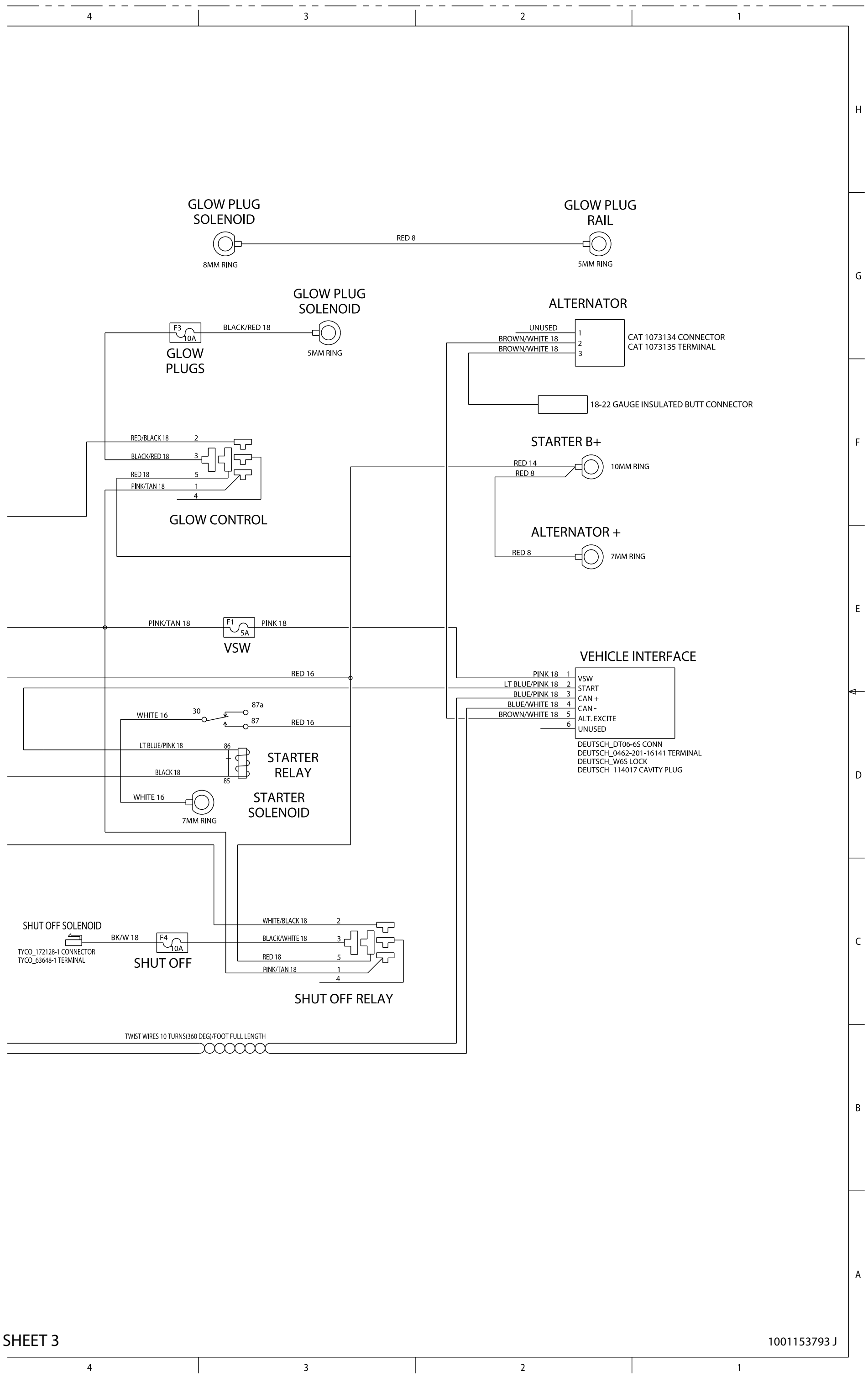


Figure 7-34. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 6 of 14

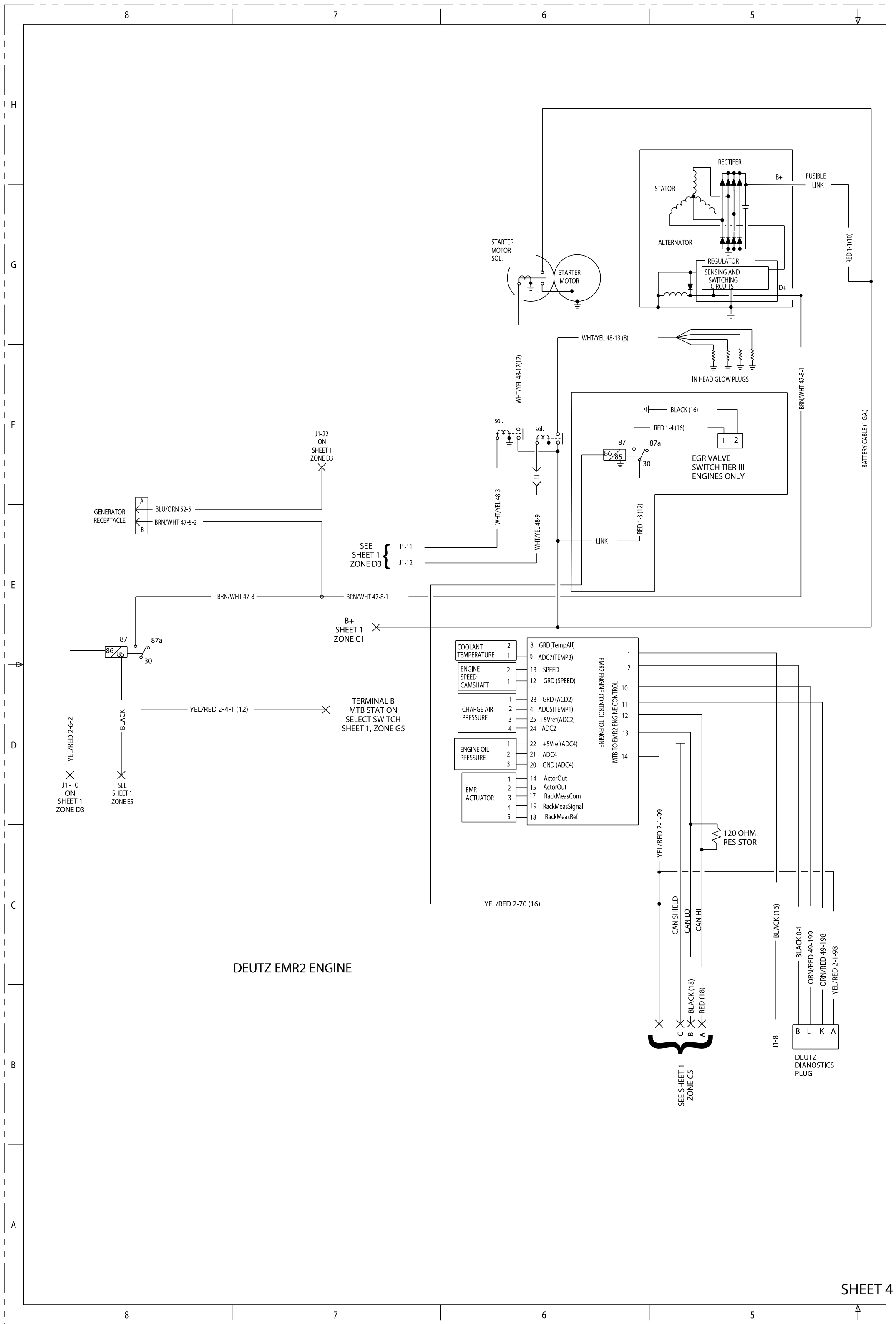


Figure 7-35. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 7 of 14

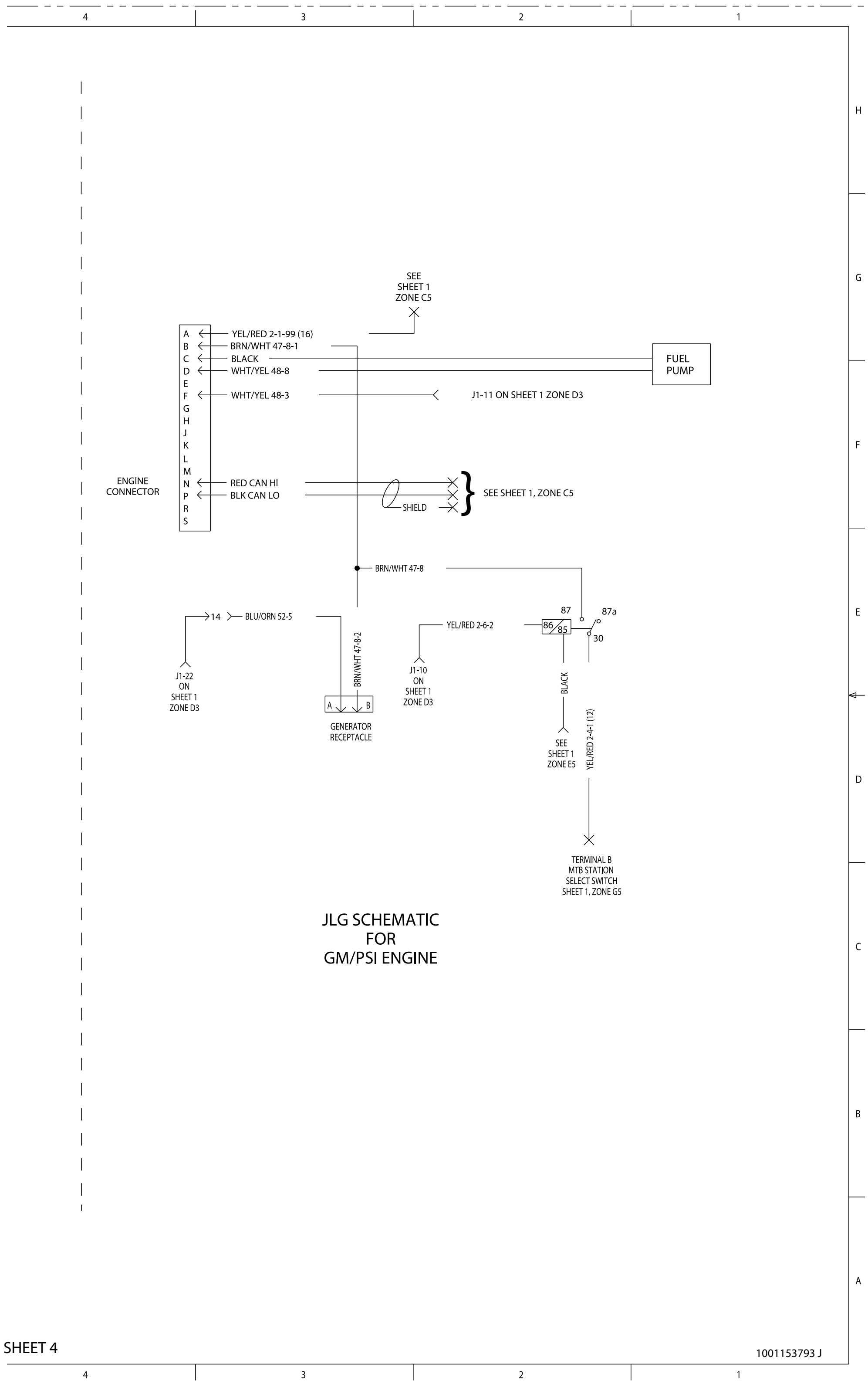


Figure 7-36. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 8 of 14

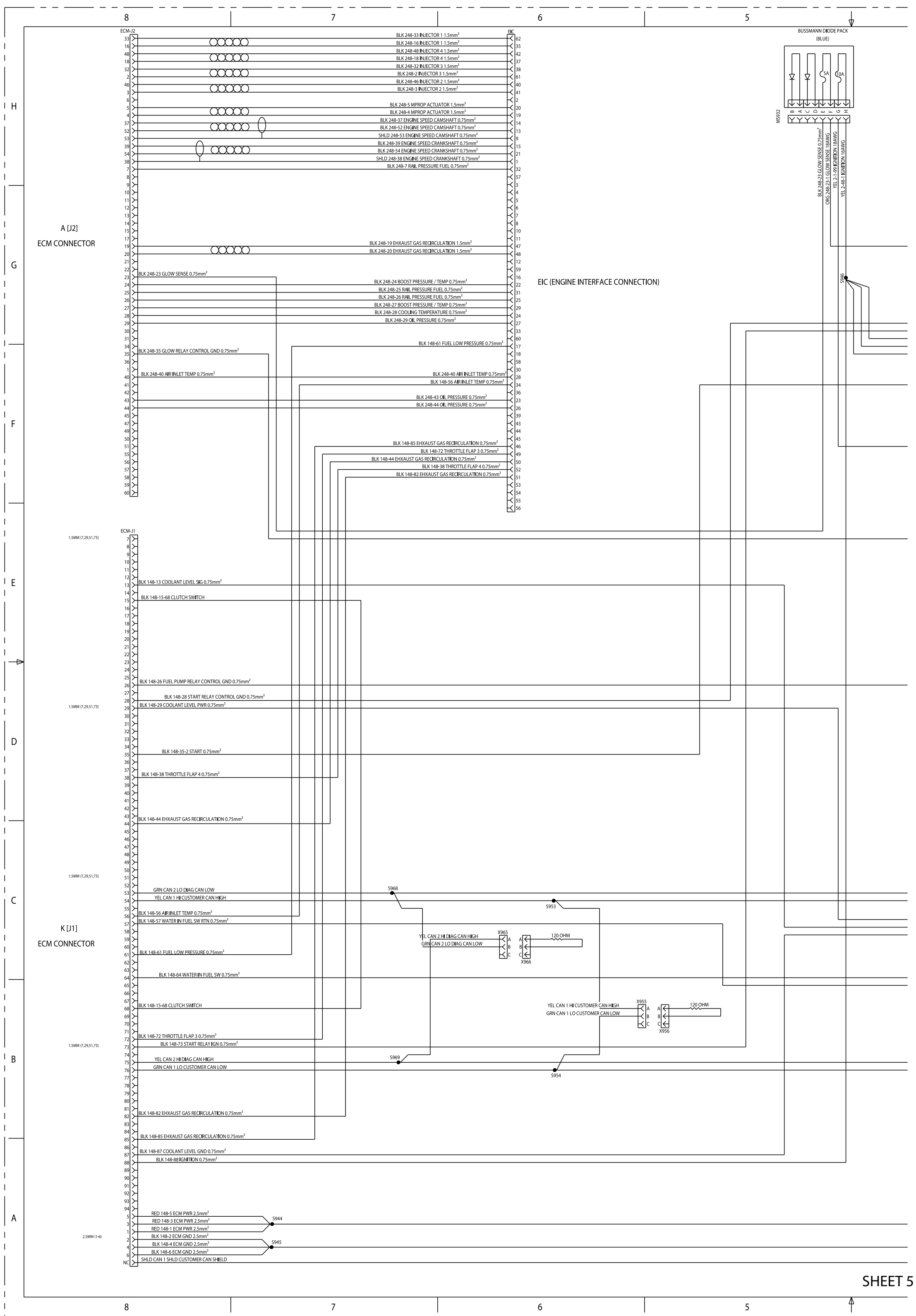


Figure 7-37. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 9 of 14

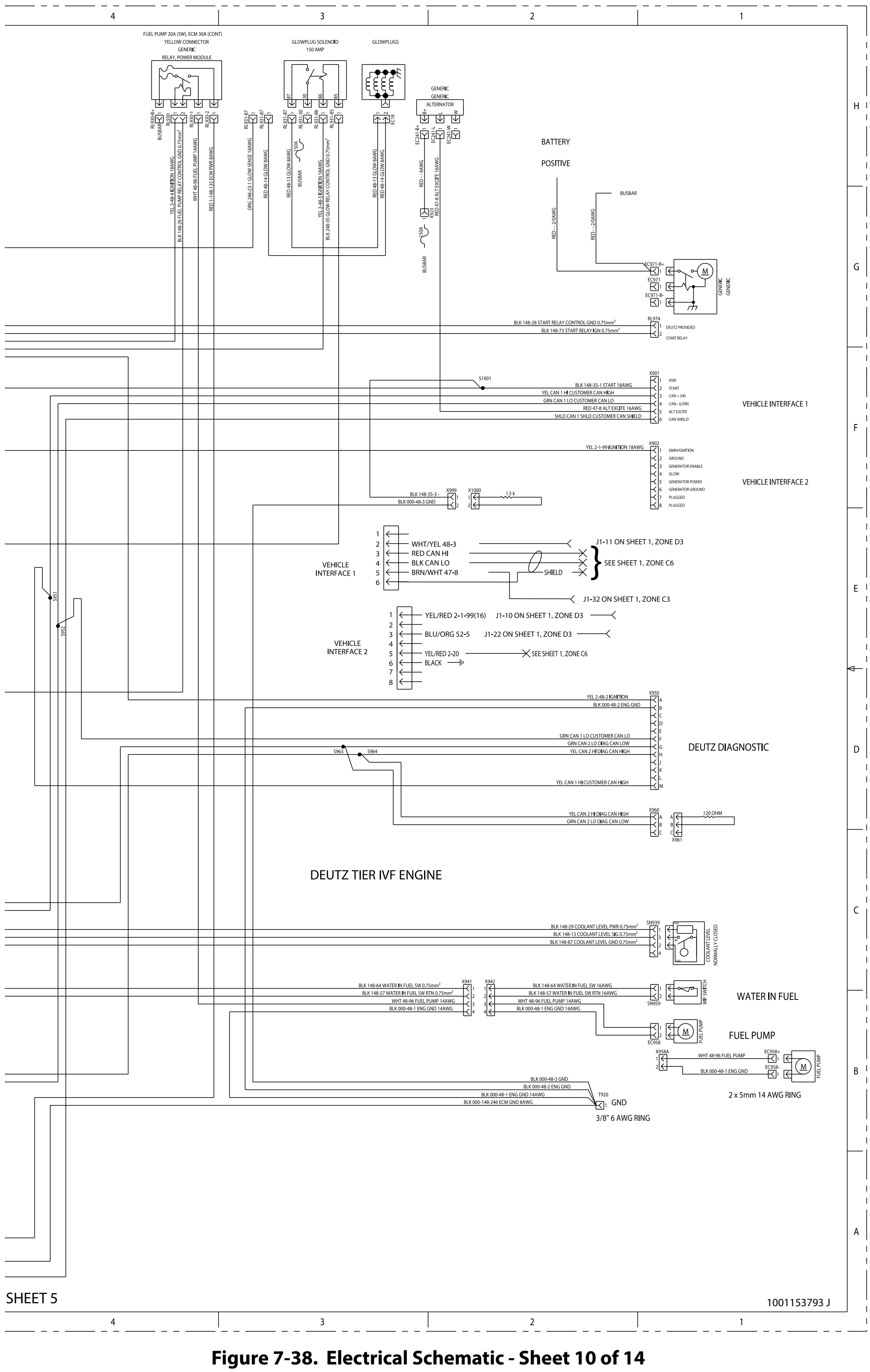


Figure 7-38. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 10 of 14

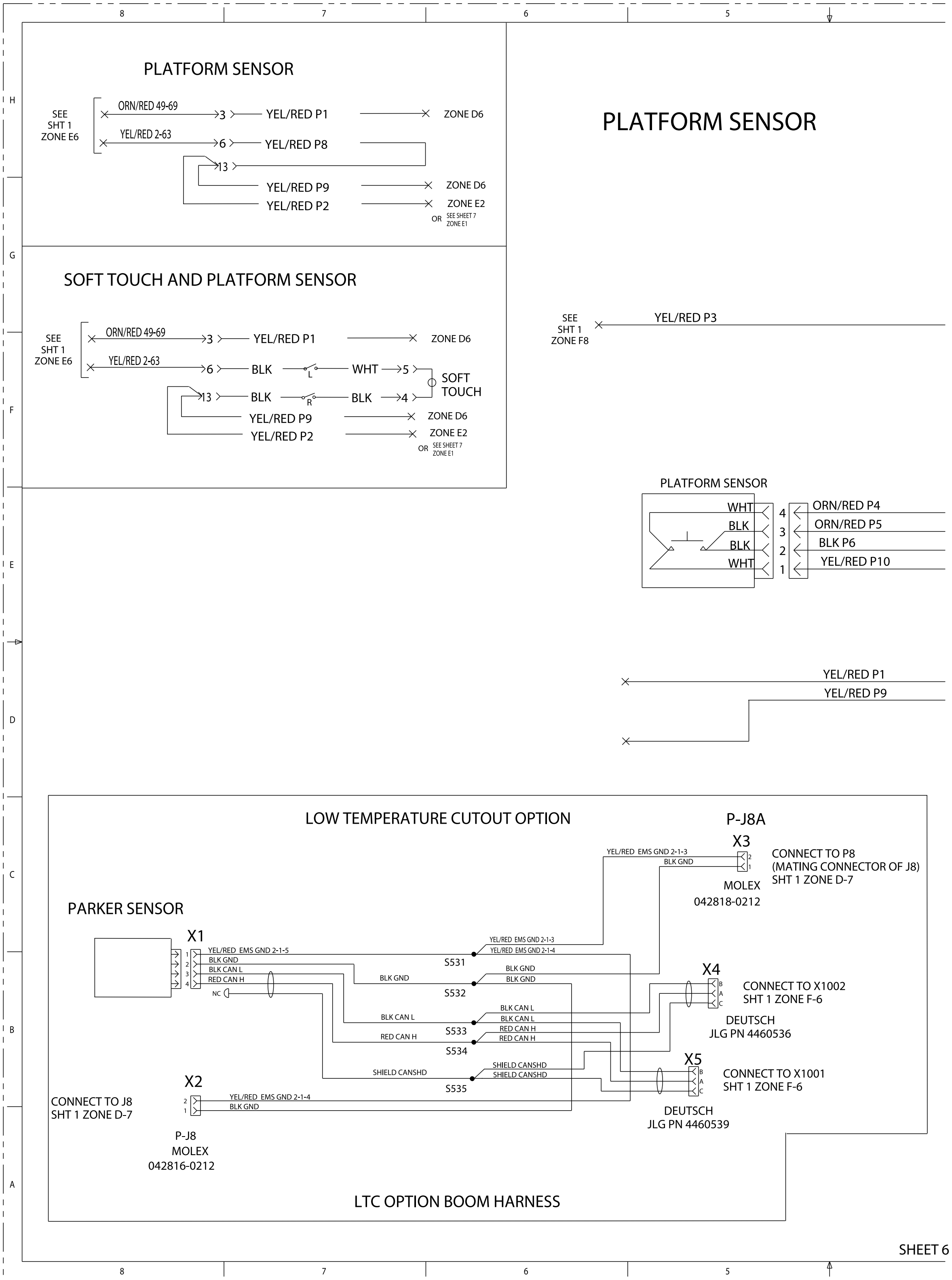


Figure 7-39. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 11 of 14

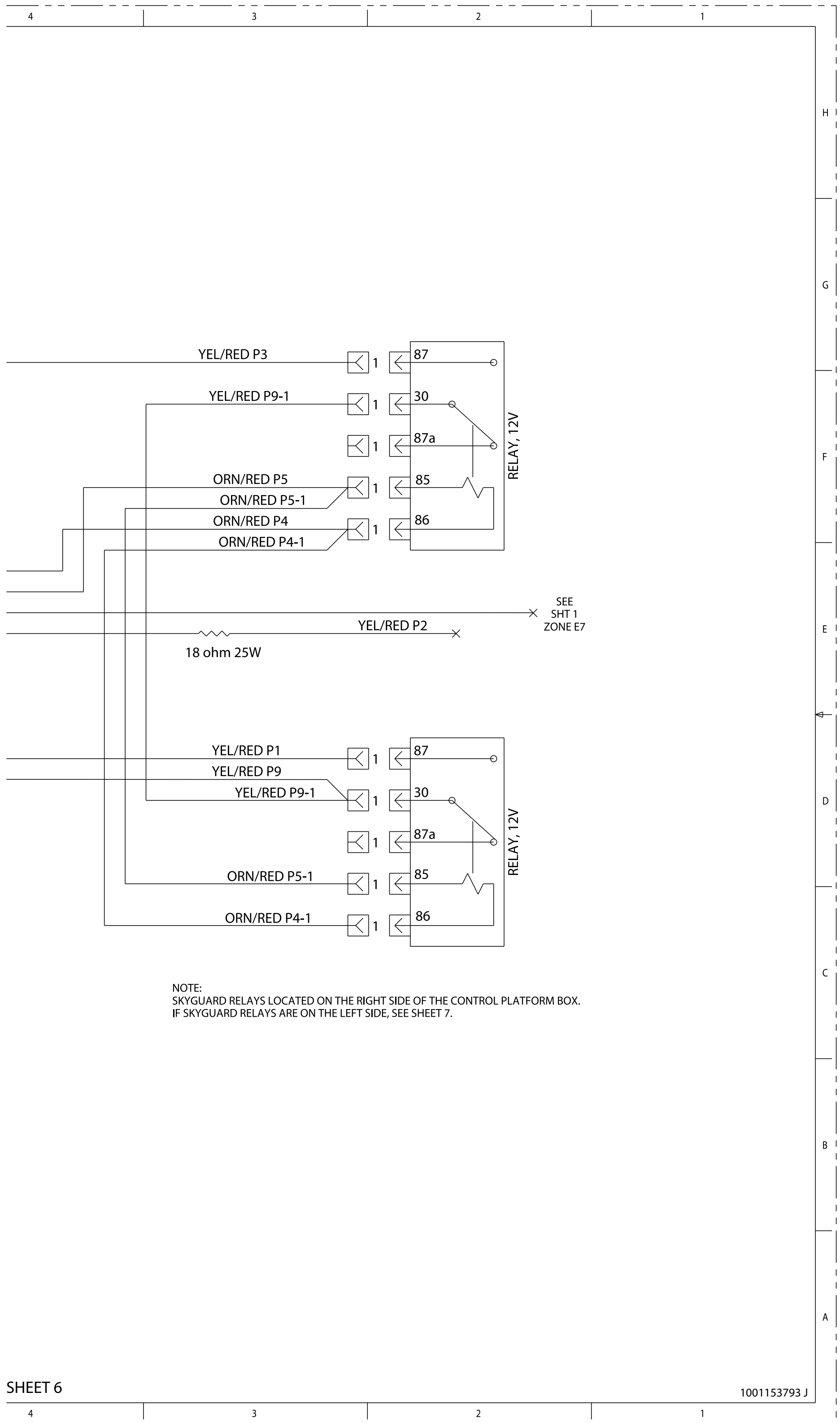


Figure 7-40. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 12 of 14

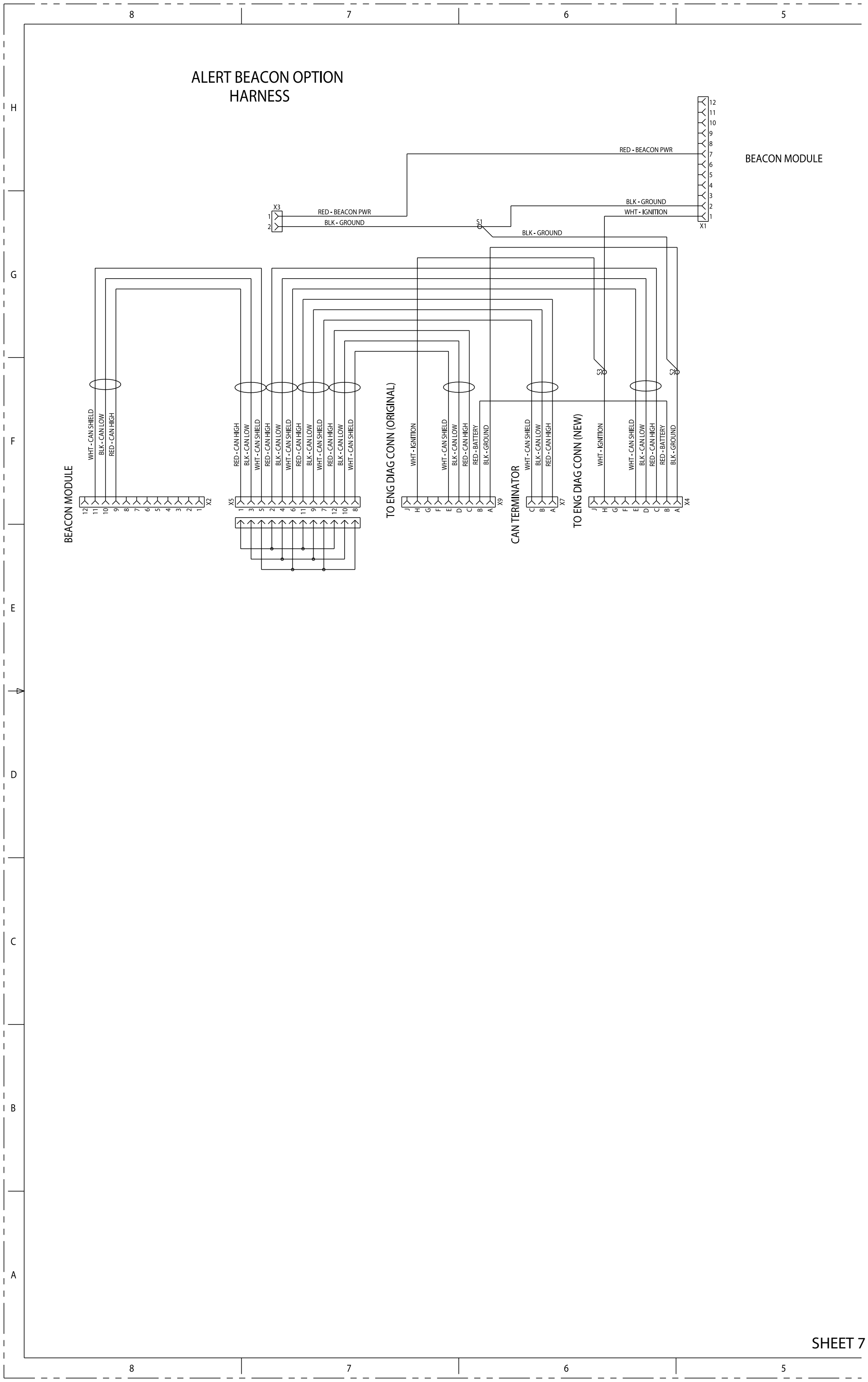


Figure 7-41. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 13 of 14

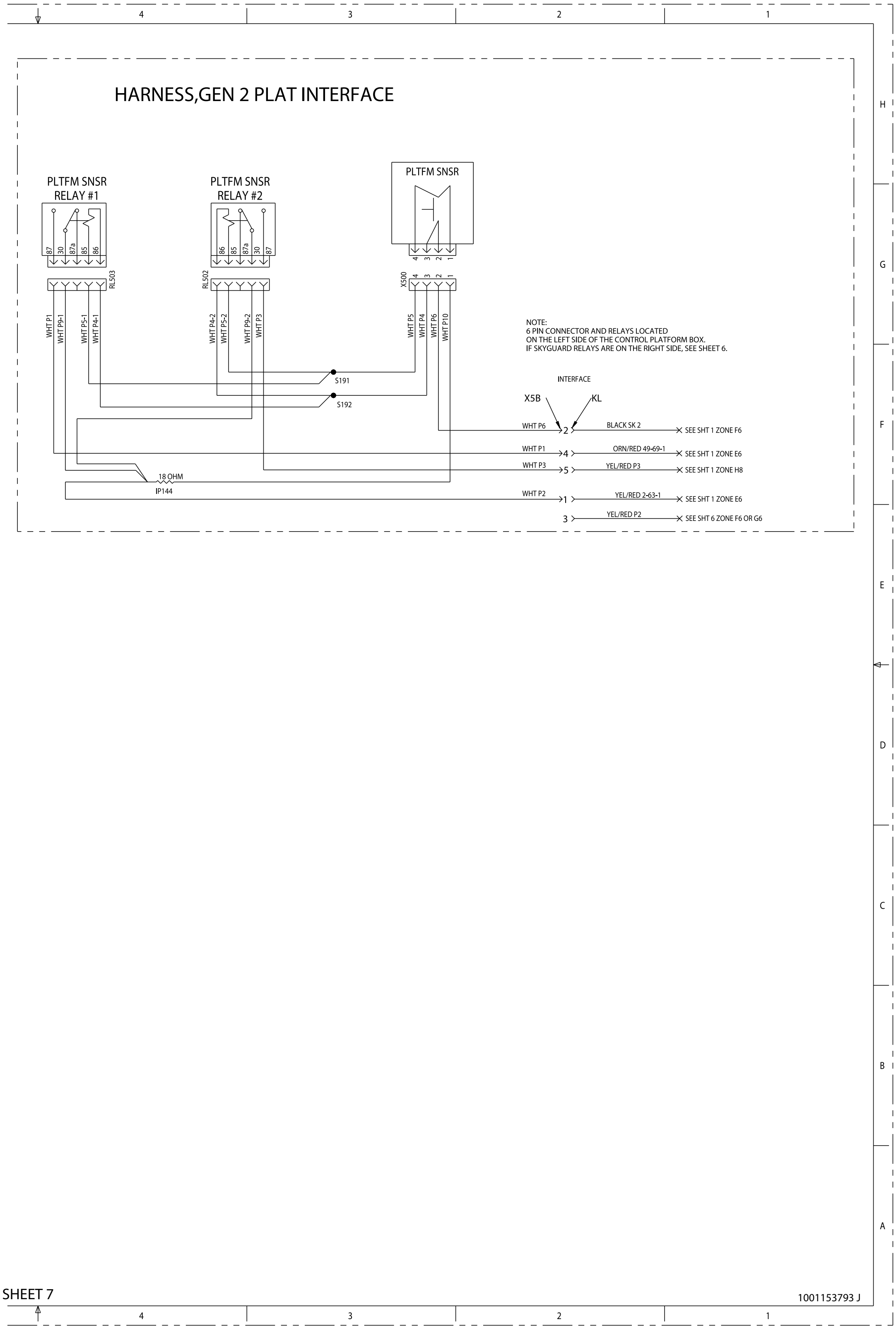


Figure 7-42. Electrical Schematic - Sheet 14 of 14

NOTES:

3121651

An Oshkosh Corporation Company

Corporate Office
JLG Industries, Inc.
1 JLG Drive
McConnellsburg, PA 17233-9533 USA
(717) 485-5161 (Corporate)
(877) 554-5438 (Customer Support)
(717) 485-6417

Visit our website for JLG Worldwide Locations.
www.jlg.com